



## Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

## Linee guide per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

## Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

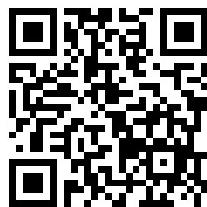
La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>





Olin  
PA  
2087  
646  
1894a

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 1924 109 450 142



In compliance with current  
Copyright law, Cornell University  
Library produced this  
replacement volume on paper  
that meets the ANSI Standard  
Z39.48-1992 to replace the  
irreparably deteriorated original.

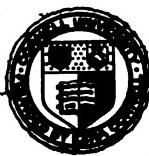
2008





PA  
2087  
~~C 56~~  
~~1894~~

CORNELL  
UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY



BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME  
OF THE SAGE ENDOWMENT  
FUND GIVEN IN 1891 BY  
HENRY WILLIAMS SAGE

# GILDERSLEEVE'S LATIN GRAMMAR

*THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED*

BY

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

AND

GONZALEZ LODGE

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY  
NEW YORK                    BOSTON                    NEW ORLEANS  
AND LONDON

1894

A.74977

COPYRIGHT, 1894, BY  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING CO.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

\*•\* 1581      Br. Pat. 4/7/8

for 12

7/27

Press of J. J. Little & Co.,  
Astor Place, New York

## PREFACE.

IN the preparation of this third edition of GILDERSLEEVE'S LATIN GRAMMAR, the office of the senior collaborator has been chiefly advisory, except in the Syntax. In the Syntax, Professor LODGE is responsible for nearly everything that pertains to the history of usage, but for all deviations from the theory of the old grammar we bear a joint responsibility. During the progress of the work we have been cheered and aided by the encouragement and advice of distinguished scholars and experienced teachers, and whereas the Preface of the old grammar mentioned but two faithful helpers, Professor THOMAS R. PRICE and Professor WILLIAM E. PETERS, the present work has had the advantage of liberal coöperation.

Especial mention must be made of the close attention paid to every detail by W. GORDON McCABE, Esq., himself a Latinist of exact and penetrating scholarship, and by his accomplished assistant, Mr. C. W. BAIN. Professor MINTON WARREN, of the Johns Hopkins University, has lent us the aid of his wide and accurate knowledge of the history of the Latin language, and Professor CHAPMAN MAUPIN, one of the revisers of GILDERSLEEVE'S LATIN PRIMER, has given us the benefit of his practical experience and his acute observation. Professor E. M. PEASE, of Leland Stanford Junior University, whose removal to the distant West interrupted a collaboration which promised valuable results, has, in spite of his arduous labors as teacher and editor, put at our service his copious notes on the Revised Grammar of 1872.

Among the scholars who have read the book either in proof or in advance sheets, and suggested improvements

here and corrections there, we would gratefully mention Principal BANCROFT, of Phillips Andover Academy, President JESSE, of the University of Missouri, Professor M. W. HUMPHREYS, of the University of Virginia, Professor WM. C. LAWTON, of Philadelphia, Professor W. P. MUSTARD, of Haverford College, Professor J. E. GOODRICH, of the University of Vermont, Professor JAS. H. DILLARD, of Tulane University, and Professor J. W. REDWAY, of New York. Finally we desire to express our joint thanks to Dr. C. W. E. MILLER, Associate of the Johns Hopkins University, who has laid us both under especial obligations by his careful studies in the difficult chapter of Versification.

As in the Preface to the old grammar, so in the Preface to the new, it is considered out of place to enlarge on the excellence of the methods followed; but as the new grammar embraces a multitude of details that were not taken up in the old grammar, it has been thought fit that Professor LODGE should indicate the sources of the notes with which he has enriched a manual that has held its modest place for more than a quarter of a century, and has so far justified its existence.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE,  
GONZALEZ LODGE.

*August 1, 1894.*

THE following supplementary note may serve to embody a partial bibliography of the more important works used in this revision, and some necessary explanations of the method:

Fairly complete bibliographies of works on Latin Etymology and Syntax may be found in REISIG's *Vorlesungen über lateinische Sprachwissenschaft* (new edition, by HAGEN, SCHMALZ, and LANDGRAF, 1881-1888), and in the *Lateinische Grammatik* of STOLZ and SCHMALZ (in MÜLLER's *Handbuch der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft*; 2d edition, 1890). Important also are the Grammars of KÜHNER (1877, 1878)\* and ROBY (1881, 1882); though many statements in both, but especially in the former, must be corrected in the light of more recent study. Some indications of more modern theories may be found in

\* A new Historical Grammar, by STOLZ, SCHMALZ, LANDGRAF, and WAGENER, was announced by TEUBNER in 1891.

the *Erläuterungen zur lateinischen Grammatik* of DEECKE (1893). Many matters of importance both in Etymology and Syntax are treated in the *Archiv für lateinische Lexicographie*, and the constructions with individual words are often well discussed in KREBS' *Antibarbarus der lateinischen Sprache* (6th edition, by SCHMALZ, 1886).

For the accentuation and pronunciation of Latin we have also CORSEN'S *Aussprache, Vocalismus und Betonung der lateinischen Sprache* (1868, 1870), and SEELMANN'S *Die Aussprache des Latein* (1885).

For the Etymology we must refer to BÜCHELER'S *Grundriss der lateinischen Declination* (2d edition, by WINDEKILDE, 1879) and to SCHWEIZER-SIDLER'S *Lateinische Grammatik* (1888); also to many articles in various journals, most of which are given by STOLZ. Indispensable is NEUE's *Formenlehre der lateinischen Sprache*, of which the second volume of the third edition has already appeared (1892) and the first parts of the third volume (1894), under the careful revision of WAGENER; also GEORGES' *Lexikon der lateinischen Wortformen* (1890).

For the Formation of Words and the relation of Latin forms to those of the related languages we have HENRY'S *Précis de Grammaire Comparée* and BRUGMANN'S *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik*, both now accessible in translations. On these, in connection with SCHWEIZER-SIDLER, the chapter on the Formation of Words has been based.

In the historical treatment of the Syntax we must still rely in large measure on DRAEGER'S *Historische Syntax der lateinischen Sprache* (2d edition, 1878, 1881), faulty and inaccurate though it often is: many of the false statements have been corrected on the basis of more recent individual studies by SCHMALZ; but even SCHMALZ is not always correct, and many statements of his treatise have been silently emended in the present book. For the theoretical study of some problems of Latin Syntax HAASE's *Vorlesungen über lateinische Sprachwissenschaft* (1880) should not be overlooked. Since the appearance of the second edition of SCHMALZ, in 1890, considerable progress has been made in the various journals and other publications, as may be seen from DEECKE's summary in BURSIAN'S *Jahresbericht* for 1893. Every effort has been made to incorporate in this grammar the main results of these studies as far as practicable. We may also draw attention to the following important articles, among others, some of which are mentioned in the books above referred to:

WÖLFFLIN'S numerous articles in the *Archiv*; THIELMANN's articles in the *Archiv* on *habere* with Perfect Participle Passive, and on the Reciprocal Relation; LANDGRAB'S articles on the *Figura Etymologica*, in the second volume of the *Acta Seminarii Erlangensis*, and on the Future Participle and the Final Dative, in the *Archiv*; HALE'S treatise on *The Cum Constructions*, attacking the theories of HOFFMANN (*Lateinische Zeitpartikeln*, 1874) and LÜBBERT (*Die Syntax von Quom*, 1869);

HOFFMANN's reply to HALE (1891), and WETZEL's *Der Streit zwischen HOFFMANN und HALE* (1892); DAHL's *Die lateinische Partikel ut* (1882), with GUTJAHR-PROBST's *Der Gebrauch von ut bei Terenz* (1888); ZIMMERMANN's article on *quod und quia im älteren Latein* (1880); SCHERER's article on *quando*, in *Studemund's Studien*; MORRIS's articles on the *Sentence Question in Plautus and Terence* in the A.J.P. (vols. x. and xi.); HALE's articles on the *Sequence of Tenses* in the A.J.P. (vols. viii. and ix.), containing a discussion of the earlier Literature; ELMER's articles on the *Latin Prohibitive* in A.J.P. (vol. xv.)

A bibliography of the treatises on Prosody and Versification may be found in GLEDITSCH's treatise in the second volume of MÜLLER's *Handbuch*; this, with PLESSIS' *Métrique Grecque et Latine* (1889), has been made the basis of the chapter on Prosody; but in the treatment of early metres, regard has been had to KLOTZ (*Altromische Metrik*, 1890), and to LINDSAY's recent papers on the Saturnian in the A.J.P. (vol. xiv.). In the matter of the order of words we have followed WEIL's treatise on the Order of Words, translated by SUPER (1887).

The question of the correct measurement of hidden quantities is still an unsettled one in Latin; for the sake of consistency the usage of MARX, *Hilfsbüchlein für die Aussprache der lateinischen Vokale in positionslängen Silben* (2d edition, 1889) has been followed.

The quotations have been made throughout from the Teubner Text editions except as follows: *Plautus* is cited from the Triumvirate edition of RITSCHL; *Vergil* from the Editio Maior of RIBBECK; *Ovid* and *Terence* from the Tauchnitz Texts; *Horace* from the Editio Minor of KELLER and HOLDER; *Lucretius* from the edition of MUNRO; *Ennius* and *Lucilius* from the editions of L. MÜLLER; fragmentary Scenic Poets from the edition of RIBBECK. Special care has been taken to make the quotations exact both in spelling and wording; and any variation in the spelling of individual words is therefore due to the texts from which the examples are drawn.

Where it has been necessary to modify the quotations in order to make them suitable for citation, we have enclosed within square brackets words occurring in different form in the text, and in parentheses words that have been inserted; where the passage would not yield to such treatment, *Cf.* has been inserted before the reference. We have not thought it necessary to add the references in the Prosody except in the case of some of the citations from early Latin.

In the spelling of Latin words used out of quotation, as a rule *u* and *v* have been followed by *o* rather than by *u*; but here the requirements of clearness and the period of the language have often been allowed to weigh. Otherwise we have followed in the main BRAMBACH'S *Hilfsbuchlein für lateinische Rechtschreibung* (translation by McCABE, 1877).

G. L.

# C O N T E N T S .

## E T Y M O L O G Y .

	S E C T I O N
<b>L e t t e r s a n d S y l l a b l e s . . . . .</b>	1-15
Alphabet, 1; Vowels, 2, 3; Diphthongs, 4; Consonants, 6, 7; Phonetic Variations, 8, 9; Syllables, 10, 11; Quantity, 12-14; Accentuation, 15.	
<b>P a r t s o f S p e e c h . . . . .</b>	16
<b>I n f l e c t i o n o f t h e S u b s t a n t i v e . . . . .</b>	17-71
Definitions, 18; Gender, 19-21; Number, 22; Cases, 23-25; Declensions, 26; Endings, 27; First Declension, 29, 30; Second Declension, 31-34; Third Declension, 35-60; Fourth Declension, 61, 62; Fifth Declension, 63, 64; Greek Substantives, 65, 66; Irregular Substantives, 67-71.	
<b>I n f l e c t i o n o f t h e A d j e c t i v e . . . . .</b>	72-90
Definition, 72; First and Second Declension, 73-76; Pronominal Adjectives, 76; Third Declension, 77-83; Irregular Adjectives, 84, 85; Comparison of Adjectives, 86-90.	
<b>A d v e r b s . . . . .</b>	91-98
Formation of Adverbs, 91, 92; Comparison, 98.	
<b>N u m e r a l s . . . . .</b>	94-98
Cardinals, 94; Ordinals, 94; Distributives, 97; Adverbs, 98.	
<b>P r o n o u n s . . . . .</b>	99-111
Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinites, 107; Adjectives, 108; Correlative, 109-111.	
<b>I n f l e c t i o n o f t h e V e r b . . . . .</b>	112-175
Definitions, 112, 118; Endings, 114, 115; Inflection of <i>esse</i> , 116, 117; of <i>prōdēsse</i> , 118; of <i>posse</i> , 119. Regular Verbs, 120-167; Division, 120; Rules for forming Tenses, 121. First Conjugation, 122; Second Conjugation, 123, 124; Third Conjugation, 125, 126; Fourth	

## SECTION

Conjugation, 127; Deponents, 128; Periphrastic, 129; Notes, 130, 131. Formation of the Stems, 132-135; Change in Conjugation, 136; List of Verbs, 137-167. Irregular Verbs, 168-174; <i>ire</i> , 169, 2; <i>quire</i> , nequire, 170; <i>ferre</i> , 171; <i>edere</i> , 172; <i>fieri</i> , 173; <i>velle</i> , nōlē, mālē, 174; Defective Verbs, 175.	
<b>Formation of Words . . . . .</b>	176-200
Simple Words, 179-192; Substantives, 180, 181; Adjectives, 182; Substantives without Suffixes, 183; Suffixes, 184-189; Verbs, 190-192; Compound Words, 193-200; Substantives, 194-198; Verbs, 199, 200.	
 SYNTAX.	
<b>Simple Sentence . . . . .</b>	202-471
Subject, 203, 204; Predicate, 205-209; Concord, 210, 211; Voices, 212-221. Tenses, 222-252; Present, 227-230; Imperfect, 231-234; Perfect, 235-240; Pluperfect, 241; Future, 242, 243; Future Perfect, 244, 245; Periphrastic, 246-251; Tenses in Letters, 252. Moods, 253-283; Indicative, 254; Subjunctive, 255-265; Imperative, 266-275; Tenses in Moods and Verbal Substantives, 276-283.	
<b>Simple Sentence Expanded . . . . .</b>	284-471
Multiplication of the Subject . . . . .	285-287
Qualification of the Subject . . . . .	288-325
Adjectives, 289-303; Numerals, 292-295; Comparatives and Superlatives, 296-303; Pronouns, 304-319; Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 305-307; Determinative and Reflexive, 308-311; Possessive, 312; Indefinite, 313-319; Apposition, 320-325; Predicative Attribution and Apposition, 325.	
Multiplication of Predicate . . . . .	326
Qualification of Predicate . . . . .	327-449
The Cases . . . . .	328-418
Accusative, 328-343; Dative, 344-359; Genitive, 360-383; Ablative, 384-410; Locative, 411; Prepositions, 412-418; with Accusative, 416; with Ablative, 417; with Accusative and Ablative, 418.	
Infinitive . . . . .	419-424
Subject, 422; Object, 423; Predicate, 424.	

## CONTENTS.

xx

	SECTION
<b>Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .</b>	<b>435-433</b>
Genitive, 428; Dative, 429; Accusative, 480; Ablative, 431; with Prepositions, 432, 433.	
<b>Supine . . . . .</b>	<b>484-486</b>
Accusative, 435; Ablative, 486.	
<b>Participles . . . . .</b>	<b>487, 488</b>
<b>Adverbs . . . . .</b>	<b>489-449</b>
Negatives, 441-449.	
<b>Incomplete (Interrogative) Sentence . . . . .</b>	<b>450-471</b>
Direct Simple Questions, 453-457; Direct Disjunctive Questions, 458, 459; Indirect Questions, 460; Moods in Direct, 462-466; Moods in Indirect, 467.	
<b>Compound Sentence . . . . .</b>	<b>472-670</b>
Coordinate Sentence . . . . .	473-503
Copulative, 474-482; Adversative, 483-491; Disjunctive, 492-497; Causal and Illative, 498-503.	
Subordinate Sentences . . . . .	504-670
Moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses, 509-519; Reflexive in, 520-522.	
Object Sentences . . . . .	523-537
Introduced by <i>quod</i> , 524, 525; in Accusative and Infinitive, 526, 527, 532-535; in Nominative and Infinitive, 528; in Participle, 536, 537.	
Causal Sentences . . . . .	538-542
Introduced by <i>quod</i> , <i>quia</i> , <i>etc.</i> , 539-541; by <i>quod</i> , with verbs of Emotion, 542.	
Sentences of Design and Tendency . . . . .	543-558
Final, 544-550; Pure Final, 545; Complementary Final, 546-549; After verbs of Fear, 550.	
Consecutive, 551; Pure Consecutive, 552; Complementary Consecutive, 553-557; Exclamatory Questions, 558.	
Temporal Sentences . . . . .	559-588
Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 568, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent Action, 574-577; Sentences with <i>cum</i> , 578-588.	
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	589-602
Logical, 595; Ideal, 596; Unreal, 597; Incomplete, 598-601; Of Comparison, 602.	
Concessive Sentences . . . . .	603-609

	SECTION
<b>Relative Sentences . . . . .</b>	<b>610-637</b>
Concord, 614-621 ; Tenses, 622, 623 ; Moods, 624-637.	
<b>Comparative Sentences . . . . .</b>	<b>638-644</b>
Correlative, 642; with <i>atque</i> or <i>sc.</i> , 643; with <i>quam</i> , 644.	
<b>The Abridged Sentence . . . . .</b>	<b>645-663</b>
Historical Infinitive, 647 ; <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> , 648 ; Moods in, 650-652 ; Tenses in, 653-655 ; Conditional Sentences in, 656-659 ; Pronouns, 660 ; Partial Obliquity, 662, 663.	
<b>Participial Sentences . . . . .</b>	<b>664-670</b>
<b>Arrangement of Words and Clauses . . . . .</b>	<b>671-687</b>
<b>Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric . . . . .</b>	<b>688-700</b>
<b>Principal Rules of Syntax . . . . .</b>	<b>Pp. 437-444</b>

## PROSODY.

<b>Quantity . . . . .</b>	<b>702-717</b>
General Rules, 702-706 ; of Final Syllables, 707-713 ; of Stem Syllables, 714 ; of Compounds, 715 ; in Early Latin, 716, 717.	
<b>Figures of Prosody . . . . .</b>	<b>718-728</b>
<b>Versification . . . . .</b>	<b>729-827</b>
Definition, 729-754 ; Versus Italicus, 755 ; Saturnian Verse, 756 ; Iambic Rhythms, 757-767 ; Trochaic Rhythms, 768-776 ; Anapaestic Rhythms, 777-782 ; Dactylic Rhythms, 783-789 ; Logacedic Rhythms, 790-805 ; Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms, 806-814 ; Ionic Rhythms, 815-819 ; Compound Verses, 820-823 ; Cantica, 824, 825 ; Metres of HORACE, 826, 827.	

---

	PAGES
<b>Appendix . . . . .</b>	<b>491-493</b>
Roman Calendar, Roman Weights and Measures, Roman Money, Roman Names.	
<b>Index of Verbs . . . . .</b>	<b>494-502</b>
<b>General Index . . . . .</b>	<b>503-546</b>

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## ETYMOLOGY.

### Alphabet.

1. THE Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters :

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z

REMARKS.—1. The sounds represented by C and K were originally distinct, C having the sound of G, but they gradually approximated each other, until C supplanted K except in a few words, such as *Kalendas*, *Kaesō*, which were usually abbreviated, *Kal.*, *K.* The original force of C is retained only in C. (for *Genius*) and Cn. (for *Gnaeus*).

2. J, the consonantal form of I, dates from the middle ages. V represented also the vowel u in the Latin alphabet ; and its resolution into two letters—V for the consonant, and U for the vowel—also dates from the middle ages. For convenience, V and U are still distinguished in this grammar.

3. Y and Z were introduced in the time of Cicero to transliterate Greek ν and ζ. In early Latin ν was represented by u (occasionally by i or ei), and ζ by ss or s. Z had occurred in the earliest times, but had been lost, and its place in the alphabet taken by G, which was introduced after C acquired the sound of K.

NOTE.—The Latin names for the letters were : a, be, ee, de, e, ef, ge, ha, i, ka, el, em, en, o, pe, qu (= cu), er, es, te, u, ex (ix), to be pronounced according to the rules given in 3, 7. For Y the sound was used, for Z the Greek name (ζήτα).

### Vowels.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, (y) ; and are divided :

1. According to their *quality* (i. e., the position of the organs used in pronunciation), into

*guttural* (or *back*), a, o, u;      *palatal* (or *front*), e, i, (y).

2. According to their *quantity* or *prolongation* (i. e., the time required for pronunciation), into

*long*, (—);

*short*, (—).

**REMARK.**—Vowels whose quantity shifts in poetry are called *common* (see 13), and are distinguished thus :

$\overline{\text{—}}$ , by preference *short*;       $\overline{\text{—}}$ , by preference *long*.

## 3.

## Sounds of the Vowels.

$\text{æ}$	=	$\text{a}$	in father.	$\text{o}$	=	$\text{o}$	in bone.
$\text{e}$	=	$\text{e}$	in prey.	$\text{ü}$	=	$\text{oo}$	in moon.
$\text{i}$	=	$\text{i}$	in caprice.	$\text{y}$	=	$\text{u}$	in <i>sûr</i> (French), German $\text{ü}$ .

**REMARK.**—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

## Diphthongs.

4. There are but few *diphthongs* or *double sounds* in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds; for example, in the last century of the republic  $\text{ae}$  was gliding into  $\text{e}$ , which took its place completely in the third century A. D. Hence arose frequent variations in spelling : as *glaeba* and *glæba*, *sod*; so *obœdîre* and *obœdîre*, *obey*; *fænum* (*foenum*) and *fænum*, *hay*.

$\text{ae}$	=	$\text{aye}$ (ăh-eh).	$\text{ei}$	=	$\text{ei}$	in <i>feint</i> (drawled).
$\text{oe}$	=	$\text{oy}$ in <i>boy</i> .	$\text{eu}$	=	$\text{eu}$	in Spanish <i>deuda</i> (ĕh-oo).
$\text{au}$	=	$\text{ou}$ in <i>our</i> .	$\text{ui}$	=	$\text{we}$ ,	almost.

**NOTE.**—Before the time of the Gracchi we find *ai* and *oi* instead of *ae* and *oe*.

5. The sign .. (*Dieresis*—Greek = *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately :  $\ddot{\text{æ}}$ , *air*; *Oenomatis*, *aloë*.

## Consonants.

6. Consonants are divided :

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

*Labials* (lip-sounds):  $\text{b}$ ,  $\text{p}$ ,      ( $\text{ph}$ ),  $\text{f}$ ,  $\text{v}$ ,  $\text{m}$ .

*Dentals* (tooth-sounds):  $\text{d}$ ,  $\text{t}$ ,      ( $\text{th}$ ),  $\text{l}$ ,  $\text{n}$ ,  $\text;r$ ,  $\text{s}$ .

*Gutturals* (throat-sounds):  $\text{g}$ ,  $\text{k}$ ,  $\text{qu}$ , ( $\text{ch}$ ),  $\text{h}$ ,  $\text{n}$  (see 7).

**NOTE.**—Instead of *dental* and *guttural*, the terms *lingual* and *palatal* are often used.

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels* : of which

$\text{l}$ ,  $\text{m}$ ,  $\text{n}$ ,  $\text;r}$ , are *liquids* ( $\text{m}$  and  $\text{n}$  being *nasals*).

$\text{h}$             is a *breathing*.

$\text{s}$             is a *sibilant*.

**B. Mutes:** to which belong

P-mutes,	p,	b,	(ph),	f,	<i>labials.</i>
T-mutes,	t,	d,	(th),		<i>dentals.</i>
K-mutes,	k,	c,	qu,	g,	(ch), <i>gutturals.</i>

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

*Mutes* are further divided into

Tenuis (thin, smooth):	p,	t,	k,	c,	qu,	hard (surd).
Mediae (middle):		b,	d,	g,		soft (sonant).
[Aspiratae (aspirate, rough):	ph,	th,	ch,			aspirate.

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same order*.

The aspirates were introduced in the latter part of the second century B. C. in the transliteration of Greek words, and thence extended to some pure Latin words; as, *palcher, Gracchus*.

3. *Double consonants* are: z = dz in *adze*; x = cs (*ks*), gs; i and u between two vowels are double sounds, half vowel, half consonant.

#### Sounds of the Consonants.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

C is hard throughout = k.

Ch is not a genuine Latin combination (6, 2). In Latin words it is a k; in Greek words a kh, commonly pronounced as ch in German.

G is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

H at the beginning of a word is but slightly pronounced; in the middle of a word it is almost imperceptible.

I consonant (J) has the sound of a broad y; nearly like y in *yule*.

N has a guttural nasal sound before e, g, q, as in *anchor, anguish*.

Qu = kw (nearly); before e, qu = c. In early Latin qu was not followed by u. Later, when e was weakened to u, qu was replaced by e; thus quoniam became eam. Still later qu replaced e, yielding quam.

R is trilled.

S and X are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

T is hard throughout; never like t in *nation*.

U consonant (V) is pronounced like the vowel, but with a slur. In the third century A. D. it had nearly the sound of our w. In Greek it was frequently transliterated by Οὐ; so Οὐαλιός = Valerius.

#### Phonetic Variations in Vowels and Consonants.

##### 8. Vowels.

1. *Weakening.*—In the formation of words from roots or stems short vowels show a tendency to weaken; that is, a tends to become e

and then i, or o and then u, while e tends towards e or i, and u towards i. This occurs most frequently in compound words, to a less degree in words formed by suffixes. Diphthongs are less frequently weakened and long vowels very rarely. The principal rules for these changes are as follows, but it must be remembered that to all there are more or less frequent exceptions :

- A.—1. In the second part of compound words, and in reduplicated words, the root-vowel ē is weakened to ē, which usually passes over into I in open syllables (11, n.), and often to ū before l and labial mutes : *ōm-ēcēndō* (*scandō*); *con-ēdō* (*cadō*); *dō-sultō* (*saltō*); *fēfēllō* (*fallō*). 2. As final vowel of the stem ē is weakened in the first part of a compound word, usually to I, rarely to ē or ū: *aquili-fer* (*aquila-*); *causi-dicōus* (*causa-*). 3. In or before suffixes, ē becomes I: *domi-tus* (*doma-*).

**Note.**—A frequently resists change, especially in verbs of the First and Second Conjugations : *as*, *sō-parē* (*parē*); *circum-iacēre* (*iacēre*); *so satis-facere* (*facere*) and others.

**E.**—1. In the second part of compound words, root vowel ē is usually retained in a close (11, n.) syllable, and weakened to I in an open syllable ; but it is invariably retained before r: *in-flectō* (*fectō*); *ob-tineō* (*teneō*); *ad-vertō* (*vertō*). 2. In or before suffixes, and in the final syllable of a word, it also becomes I: *geni-tor* (*gene-*); *tin-decim* (*decem*).

L.—At the end of a word I is changed to ē : *mare* (*marī*).

O.—1. In composition final stem-vowel ē is usually weakened to I; before labials sometimes to ū: *agri-cola* (*agro-*); *auru-fax* (usually *aurifex*). 2. In suffixes, and in final syllables, it is weakened to I: *amici-tia* (*amico-*); *gracili-s* (also *gracilis*).

U.—In composition final stem-vowel ū is usually weakened to I; the same weakening occurs sometimes within a word or before a suffix : *mani-festus* (also *manu-festus*); *lacrima* (early *lacrumā*).

**AE, AU.**—In the second part of a compound word root-diphthong ae is usually weakened to I, but often there is no change ; au is occasionally changed to ū : *ex-quirō* (*querō*); *con-clūdō* (*claudō*).

2. *Omission.*—Vowels are frequently omitted both in simple and compound words, either within the word (*syncope*) or at the end (*apocope*): *dextera* and *dextra*; *princeps* (for *primoepta*, from *primiceps*); *pergō* (for *perregō*); *ut* (*utī*); *nōve* (*nōvē*).

3. *Epenthesis.*—Vowels are sometimes inserted to ease the pronunciation, but usually before liquids or in foreign words : *ager* (*agro-*) see 31; *Daphnis* (= *Daphnē*); *drachuma* (= *drachma*).

4. *Assimilation.*—Two vowels in adjoining syllables tend to become like each other; this assimilation is usually *regressive* (i. e., of the first to the second), especially when l separates them ; it is rarely *progressive*. Compare *facilius* with *facul*, *familia* with *famulus*, *bene* with *bonus*.

5. A vowel before a liquid tends to become *ī*, less often *ō* or *e*: *adul̄escēns* and *adol̄escēns*; *vulgus* and *volgus*; *decumus* (*decem*); compare *tempus* with *temporis*; *peperi* (from *pariō*), etc.

### 9. Consonants.

1. *Assimilation*.—When two consonants come together in Latin, they tend to assimilate one to the other. This assimilation is usually *regressive*; sometimes it is *progressive*. It is either *complete*, that is, the two consonants become the same; or *partial*, that is, the one is made of the *same order* or *same organ* as the other. These changes occur both in inflection and in composition, but they are especially noteworthy in the last consonant of prepositions in composition.

*Scriptum* for *scrib-tum* (regressive partial); *ac-cēdere* for *ad-cēdere* (regressive complete); *cur-sum* for *cur-tum* (progressive partial); *celer-rimus* for *celer-simus* (progressive complete).

2. *Partial Assimilation*.—(a) The sonants *g* and *b*, before the surd *t*, or the sibilant *s*, often become surds (*c, p*); the surds *p, c, t* before liquids sometimes become sonants (*b, g, d*); the labials *p, b* before *n* become *m*; the labial *m* before the gutturals *c, q, g, h, i (j)*, the dentals *t, d, s, n*, and the labials *f, v*, becomes *n*; the dental *n* before labials *p, b, m*, becomes *m*; *rēo-tum* (for *rēg-tum*); *script-al* (for *scrib-al*); *seg-mentum* (for *sec-mentum*); *som-nus* (for *sop-nus*); *prin-ceps* (for *prim-ceps*).

NOTE.—Similar is the change of *q (qu)* to *c* before *t or s*: *coc-tum* (for *coqu-tum*).

(b) After *l* and *r, t* of the suffixes *tor, tus, tum*, becomes *s* by *progressive assimilation*: *cur-sum* (for *cur-tum*).

3. *Complete Assimilation*.—There are many varieties, but the most important principle is that a mute or a liquid tends to assimilate to a liquid and to a sibilant: *puella* (*puer*); *cur-rere* (for *cur-sere*); *cē-si* (for *cē-dēi*); *corrīla* (*corīna*), etc.

4. *Prepositions*.—*Ab* takes the form *s* before *m* or *v*, and in *s-ful*; appears as *as* in *au-ferō, au-fugiō*; as *abs* before *c, t*; as *as* before *p*. *Ad* is assimilated before *c, g, l, p, r, s, t*, with more or less regularity; before *gn, sp, sc, st*, it often appears as *s*. *Ante* appears rarely as *anti*. *Cum* appears as *con* before *b, m, p*; *con* before *c, d, f, g, i, q, s, v*; *cō* before *gn, n*; assimilated sometimes before *l* and *r*. *Ex* becomes *s* before *b, d, g, i (j), l, m, n, r, v*; *ef* or *ee*, before *f*. *In* usually becomes *im* before *b, m, p*; before *l, r* it is occasionally assimilated; the same holds good of the negative prefix *in*. *Ob* is usually assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; appears as *o* in *o-mittō, o-periō, obs* in *obs-olēscō*, and *os* in *ostendō*. *Sub* is assimilated before *c, f, g, p, r*; appears as *sus* in a few words, as *sus-cipīō*; occasionally *sū* before *s*, as *sū-spiciō*. *Trāns* sometimes becomes *trā* before *d, i (j), n*; *trān* before *s*. *Amb-* (inseparable) loses *b* before a consonant, and *am* is sometimes assimilated. *Circum* sometimes drops *m* before *i*. *Dis* becomes *dif* before *f*; *dir* before *a*.

vowel ; **dī** before consonants, except **c, p, q, t, s**, followed by a vowel, when it is usually unchanged. The **d** of **red** and **sed** is usually dropped before consonants.

**NOTE.**—In early Latin assimilation is much less common than in the classical period.

5. *Dissimilation*.—To avoid the harshness of sound when two syllables begin with the same letter, the initial letter of the one is often changed ; this is true especially of liquids, but occasionally of other letters : **singu-lā-ris** (for **singu-lis**) ; **merl-diē** (for **medi-dis**).

**NOTE.**—This principle often regulates the use of **-brum** or **-bulum**, and of **-crum** or **-culum** in word formation (181, 6) : compare **periculum** with **simulcrum**.

6. *Omission*.—(a) When a word closes with a doubled consonant or a group of consonants, the final consonant is regularly dropped in Latin ; sometimes after the preceding consonant has been assimilated to it. In the middle of a word, after a long syllable, **m̄** and **ll̄** are simplified ; **ll̄** is sometimes simplified after a short vowel, which is then lengthened if the syllable is accented (*compensatory lengthening*) ; but if the syllable is unaccented, such lengthening need not take place. In this case other doubled consonants may also be simplified.

**fel** (for **fell**) ; **lac** (for **lact**) ; **vigil** (for **vigils**) ; **lapis** (for **lapid-a, lapis**) ; **mis̄i** (for **mis-di**) ; **villa** and **vilius** ; but **currus** and **cūrlis**.

**NOTE.**—**X** is retained, even after **l** and **r**, as in **calx, arx** ; also **ps, bs**, as in **stirps, urbs** ; **ms̄** is found in **hiems** only.

(b) In the tendency to easier pronunciation consonants are often dropped both at the beginning and in the middle of a word : **stimulus** (for **stigmulus**) ; **pātor** (for **pāsector**) ; **shīō** (for **shīō**) ; **nātus** (for **gnātus**, retained in early Latin, rarely later) ; **lātus** (for **tītus**) , etc.

7. *Epenthesis*.—Between **m** and **l**, **m** and **s**, **m** and **t**, a **p** is generated : **ex-em-p-lum** (**ex-imō**) ; **cdm-p-si** (**cdmō**) ; **dm-p-tus** (**dmō**).

8. *Metathesis* or *transposition* of consonants occurs sometimes in Latin, especially in Perfect and Supine forms : **cernō** ; **Pf. crō-vi**, etc.

### Syllables.

10. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation ; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second : **a-mō**, *I love* ; **li-xa**, *a sutler*.

Any combination of consonants that can begin a word (including *mn*, under Greek influence) belongs to the following vowel ; in other combinations the first consonant belongs to the preceding vowel : *a-sper*, *rough* ; *fau-stus*, *lucky* ; *li-bri*, *books* ; *a-mnia*, *river*.

**REMARKS.—I.** The combinations incapable of beginning a word are (*a*) doubled consonants : *sic-cus*, *dry* ; (*b*) a liquid and a consonant : *al-mus*, *fostering* ; *am-bō*, *both* ; *an-guis*, *snake* ; *ar-bor*, *tree*.

2. Compounds are treated by the best grammarians as if their parts were separate words : *ab-igō*, *I drive off* ; *rē-pūblica*, *commonwealth*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate* (*ultima*, *last*) ; the next to the last the *penult* (*paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*) ; the one before the penult, the *antepenult* (*ante*, *before*, and *paenultima*).

**REMARK.**—A syllable is said to be *open* when it ends with a vowel ; *close*, when it ends with a consonant.

### Quantity.

12. 1. A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong : *mōs*, *custom* ; *caelum*, *heaven*.

**REMARKS.—I.** A vowel before *nf*, *ns*, *gm*, *gn*, is long *by nature* : *infīx*, *unlucky* ; *mēnsa*, *table* ; *ḡmen*, *train* ; *ḡnna*, *lamb*. In many cases, however, the *n* has disappeared from the written word ; so in some substantival terminations : *ōs* (Acc. Pl., 2d decl.), *tis* (Acc. Pl., 4th decl.) ; in adjectives in *ōsus* (*formōsus*, *shapely*, for *formōnsus*) ; in the numerical termination *ōsimus* (= *ōsimus*). See 95, n. 5.

2. Before *i* *consonant* (*j*) a vowel is long *by nature* : *Pompēius*, *Pompey* ; except in compounds of *ingum*, *yoke* (*bi-ingus*, *two-horse*), and in a few other words.

**NOTE.**—From about 184 to about 74 B. C. *ā*, *ē*, *ī*, were often represented by *aa*, *ee*, *uu* ; *i* by *ei*. From the time of Augustus to the second century *i* was indicated by a lengthened *I*. From Sulla's time until the third century long vowels (rarely, however, *ī*) were indicated by an Apex (').

2. A syllable is said to be long *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *ārā*, *art* ; *cōlūm*, *neck* ; *ābrumpō*, *I break off* ; *pēr māre*, *through the sea* ; *nēx*, *murder*.

3. A syllable is said to be *short* when it contains a short vowel, which is not followed by two or more consonants : *lōcus, place*; *tābūla, picture*.

REMARK.—A vowel is short by *nature* when followed by another vowel, or by nt, nd : *dēus, God*; *innocētia, innocence*; *amāndus, to be loved*.

13. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with l or r, is said to be *common* (*ancep̄a, doubtful*) : *tēnd̄brae, darkness*.

REMARK.—In prose such syllables are always short. In poetry they were short in early times, common in the Augustan period.

14. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is *long*: *saevus, cruel*; *conclūdō, I shut up* (from *claudō, I shut*); *cōgō* (from *co-agō, I drive together*).

### Accentuation.

15. 1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult : *équus, horse*.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long ; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common : *mandārē, to commit*; *mándērē, to chew*; *int̄egrum, entire*; *circūmdare, to surround*; *supérstites, survivors*.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), *que, ve, ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult : *lumināque, and lights*; *lumināve, or rivers*; *vñmerēne ! from a plowshare !* Dissyllables and words accented on the penult are said to shift their accent to the final syllable before an enclitic : *egómet, I indeed*; *amárēve, or to love*; but it is more likely that the ordinary rule of accentuation was followed.

2. Compounds (not prepositional) of *facere* and *dare* retain the accent on the verbal form : *calefácit, vñnumdáre*.

3. Vocatives and genitives of substantives in *ius* of the second declension, as well as genitives of substantives in *ium*, retain the accent on the same syllable as the nominative : *Vergill*.

NOTE.—Other exceptions will be noted as they occur. In the older language the accent was not bounded by the antepenult : *áccipiō* (*accipiō*), *cónoutiō* (*concutiō*).

### Parts of Speech.

**16.** The Parts of Speech are the Noun (Substantive and Adjective), the Pronoun, the Verb, and the Particles (Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction), defined as follows :

1. The *Substantive* gives a name : *vir, a man ; Cocles, Cocles ; dōnum, a gift.*
2. The *Adjective* adds a quality to the Substantive : *bonus vir, a good man.*
3. The *Pronoun* points out without describing : *hic, this ; ille, that ; ego, I.*
4. The *Verb* expresses a complete thought, whether assertion, wish, or command ; *amat, he loves ; amet, may he love ; amā, love thou !*
5. The *Adverb* shows *circumstances*.
6. The *Preposition* shows *local relation*.
7. The *Conjunction* shows *connection*.

**REMARKS.—1.** Substantive is short for noun-substantive, and adjective for noun-adjective. Substantives are often loosely called nouns.

**2.** The *Interjection* is either a mere cry of feeling : *Ah ! ah !* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

**3.** The Particles are mainly mutilated forms of the noun and pronoun.

**NOTES.—1.** The difference between substantive and adjective is largely a difference of mobility ; that is, the substantive is fixed in its application and the adjective is general.

**2.** Noun and pronoun have essentially the same inflection ; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of certain peculiarities of the pronominal forms.

### Inflection.

**17.** *Inflection* (*inflexiō, bending*) is that *change* in the form of a word (chiefly in the end) which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected ; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

### The Substantive.

**18.** A Substantive is either *concrete* or *abstract*; *concrete* when it gives the name of a person or thing; *abstract* when it gives the name of a quality; as **amicitia**, *friendship*.

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*:

Proper when they are proper, or peculiar, to certain persons, places, or things: **Horatius**, *Horace*; **Neapolia**, *Naples*; **Padus**, *Po*.

Common when they are common to a whole class: **dominus**, *a lord*; **urbs**, *a city*; **amnis**, *a river*.

### Gender of Substantives.

**19.** For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine. Masculine: **Römulus**; **Iuppiter**; *vir, man*; *equus, horse*. Feminine: **Cornelia**; **Iunō**; *femina, woman*; *equa, mare*.

**20.** Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:

I. All names of *months* and *winds*, most names of *rivers*, and many names of *mountains* are *masculine*; as: **Aprilis**, *April, the opening month*; **Aquilo**, *the north wind*; **Albis**, *the River Elbe*; **Athōs**, *Mount Athos*.

REMARKS.—I. Names of months, winds, and rivers were looked upon as adjectives in agreement with masculine substantives understood (*mēnīs, month*; *ventus, wind*; *fluvius, amnis, river*).

2. Of the rivers, **Allia**, **Lēthē**, **Matrona**, **Sagra**, **Styx** are feminine; **Albula**, **Acherōn**, **Garumna** vary, being sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

3. Of the mountains, **Alpēs**, *the Alps*, is feminine; so, too, sundry (Greek) names in **α** (G. *ae*), **ε** (G. *ēs*): **Aetna** (usually), **Calpā**, **Cyllēnā**, **Hybla**, **Ida**, **Ossa** (usually), **Oeta** (usually), **Rhodopē**, **Pholos**, **Pyrēnā**, and **Carambis**, **Pelōris**. **Pélion** and **Strakte** (usually), and names of mountains in **η** (G. *ērum*), as **Maenala** (G. *Maenalōrum*), are neuter.

II. Names of *countries* (*terrae, fem.*), *islands* (*insulae, fem.*), *cities* (*urbēs, fem.*), *plants* (*plantae, fem.*), and *trees*

(*arborēa, fem.*), are *feminine*: *Aegyptus, Egypt*; *Rhodus, Rhodes*; *pirus, a pear-tree*; *abies, a fir-tree*.

**REMARKS.—1.** Names of countries and islands in *us (os)* (G. *i*) are masculine, except *Aegyptus, Chius, Chersonesus, Cyprus, Delos, Epirus, Lemnos, Lesbos, Peloponnesus, Rhodus, Samos, Bosporus* (the country).

2. Many Greek names of cities follow the termination. Towards the end of the republic many feminine names change the ending *-us* to *-um* and become neuter: *Abydus* and *Abydum*, *Saguntus* and *Saguntum*.

3. Most names of trees with stems in *-tro* (N. *-ter*) are masculine: *oleaster, wild olive; pinaster, wild pine*. So also most shrubs: *dūmus, bramble-bush; rhūs, sumach*. Neuter are *acer, maple; līser, a plant; papaver, poppy* (also masc. in early Latin); *rōbur, oak; sīler, willow; nīser, skirrel* (occasionally masc.); *sūber, cork-tree; tuber, mushroom*.

**III.** All indeclinable substantives, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable substantives, are *neuter*: *fas, right; a longum, a long; scire tuum, thy knowing; triste vals, a sad “farewell.”*

**21. 1.** Substantives which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common gender*: *civis, citizen* (male or female); *comes, companion*; *iūdex, judge*.

**2.** *Substantiva mōbilia* are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: *māgister, master, teacher; magistra, mistress; servus, serva, slave* (masc. and fem.); *victor, victrix, conqueror* (masc. and fem.).

**3.** If the male and female of animals have but one designation, *mās, male*, and *fēmina, female*, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: *pāvō mās (masculus), peacock; pāvō fēmina, peahen*. These substantives are called *epicenes* (*ἐπίκοντα, utriusque generi commūnia, common to each gender*).

### Number.

**22.** In Latin there are two numbers: the *Singular*, denoting *one*; the *Plural*, denoting *more than one*.

**REMARK.**—The *Dual*, denoting *two*, occurs in Latin only in two words (*duo, two; ambō, both*), in the nominative and vocative of the masculine and neuter.

## Cases.

23. In Latin there are six cases :

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

Answers : *who* ? *what* ?

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).

Answers : *whose* ? *whereof* ?

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).

Answers : *to whom* ? *for whom* ?

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).

Answers : *whom* ? *what* ?

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

Answers : *where* ? *whence* ? *wherewith* ?

**NOTE.**—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative (answers : *where* ?), is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions ; in the 2d Declension it is lost in the Genitive ; it is often blended with the Ablative in form, regularly in syntax. The Instrumental (answers : *wherewith* ?), which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. 1. According to their *form*, the cases are divided into *strong* and *weak* : The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

2. According to their *syntactical use*, the cases are divided into **Cāsus Rēcti**, or Independent Cases, and **Cāsus Obliqui**, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are **Cāsus Rēcti**, the rest **Cāsus Obliqui**.

25. The case-forms arise from the combination of the *case-endings* with the *stem*.

1. The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

**NOTES.**—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the case-ending, and the case-ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm *mēnsa*, the stem is not *mēnsa*, but *mēnsk*, the final *s* having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural *mēnsis*. So -d, the ending of the Ablative Singular, has nearly disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (§, §1, I, §). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to com-

parative etymology. The stem may be of any length, the root was probably a monosyllable. In *penna* the stem is *pennā-*; in *pennula*, *pennulā-*; in *pennatulus*, *pennatulō-*; the root is *PET* (*penna*, *penna*, *penna*), and is found in *pet-ere*, *to fah upon*, *to fly at*; Greek, *πετ-ομει*, *πεπόν*; English, *feather*.

2. The case-endings are as follows, early forms being printed in parenthesis :

Sg.—N. V.	Wanting or m. f. -e; n. -m.	Pl.—N. V.	-es (eis, ls); -i; n. -a.
G.	-is (-os, -us, -es); -i.	G.	-um (om); -rum (som).
D.	-i (-s, -ei).	D.	-bus; -is.
Ac.	-m, -em.	Ac.	-s (for -ns); n. -a.
Ab.	Wanting (or -d); -e.	Ab.	-bus; -is.

### Declensions.

26. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem-characteristic*).<sup>1</sup>

For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also improperly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

#### STEM CHARACTERISTIC. GENITIVE SINGULAR.

I.	ā (ē).	ās.
II.	ō.	ōs.
III.	ī, ī, a consonant.	īs.
IV.	ū.	ūs.
V.	ā.	ās.

REMARK.—The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions ; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, ī and ū being semi-consonants.

27. The case-endings in combination with the stem-characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations :

#### SINGULAR.

	I.	II.	III.
N.	ā.	us (os) ; wanting ; um (om).	s; wanting.
G.	āe (ās, īl, ai).	i (ēl).	is (us, es).
D.	āe (āl).	ō (oi).	i (ēl, i).
Ac.	am.	ūm (om).	ēm, im.
V.	ā.	ō ; wanting ; um (om).	ā.
Ab.	ā (ād).	ō (ōd).	e, i (ēd, id).

## FIRST DECLENSION.

	IV.	V.
N. V.	us ; <u>ū</u> .	ēs.
G.	īs (uos, uis).	īt, ī (es).
D.	ūt, <u>ū</u> (ūt).	īt, ī.
Ac.	ūm ; <u>ū</u> .	ēm.
Ab.	<u>ū</u> .	ē.

	PLURAL.	
L	II.	III.
N. V.	īs.	ēs (ēls, is) ; a, ia.
G.	īrum.	um (om), īrum.
D. A.	īs (ēls) ; ībus.	īs (ēls), ibus.
Ac.	ēs.	īs, ēs ; a, ia.

	IV.	V.
N. V.	īs (ues, uus) ; ua.	ēs.
G.	uum.	īrum.
D. A.	ubus, ibus.	ībus.
Ac.	īs ; ua.	ēs.

NOTE.—Final -s and -m are frequently omitted in early inscriptions.

### 28. General Rules of Declension.

#### I. For the strong cases.

Neuter substantives have the Nominative and the Vocative like the Accusative; in the Plural the strong cases always end in ā.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in -us.

#### II. For the weak cases :

The Dative and the Ablative Plural have a common form.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in ā, which is weakened from an original a. The Nominative has no ending.

Sg.—N.	mēnsa (f.), <i>the table,</i>	<i>a table.</i>
G.	mēnsae, <i>of the table,</i>	<i>of a table.</i>
D.	mēnsae, <i>to, for the table,</i>	<i>to, for a table.</i>
Ac.	mēnsam, <i>the table,</i>	<i>a table.</i>
V.	mēnsa, <i>O table!</i>	<i>table!</i>
Ab.	mēnsā, <i>from, with, by, the table,</i>	<i>from, with, by, a table.</i>

PL.—N.	mēnsae,	<i>the tables,</i>	<i>tables.</i>
G.	mēnskrum,	<i>of the tables,</i>	<i>of tables.</i>
D.	mēnsis,	<i>to, for the tables,</i>	<i>to, for tables.</i>
Ac.	mēnsis,	<i>the tables,</i>	<i>tables.</i>
V.	mēnse,	<i>O tables!</i>	<i>tables!</i>
Ab.	mēnsis,	<i>from, with, by, the tables,</i>	<i>from, with, by, tables.</i>

REMARKS.—1. The early ending of the Gen., *īs*, found in a few cases in early poets, is retained in the classical period (but not in CAESAR or LIVY) only in the form *familīs*, *of a family*, in combination with *pater*, *father*, *māter*, *mother*, *filius*, *son*, *filia*, *daughter*, viz.: *paterfamilīs*, *māterfamilīs*, *filius familiis*, *filia familiis*.

2. The Loc. Sing. is like the Genitive: *Rōmae*, *at Rome*; *militiae*, *abroad*.

3. The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form *-um* instead of *-krum*; this occurs chiefly in the Greek words *amphora* (*amphora, measure of tonnage*), and *drachma*, *franc*—(*Greek coin*). The poets make frequent use of this form in Greek patronymics in *-da*, *-dis*, and compounds of *-cola* (*from cold*, *I inhabit*) and *-gena* (*from root gen, beget*).

4. The ending *-ibus* is found (along with the regular ending) in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of *dea*, *goddess*, and *filia*, *daughter*. In late Latin the use of this termination becomes more extended.

NOTES.—1. A very few masc. substantives show Nom. Sing. in *īs* in early Latin.

2. A form of the Gen. Sing. in *īlī*, subsequent to that in *īs*, is found in early inscriptions, and not unfrequently in early poets, but only here and there in classical poetry (VERG., A., 3, 384, etc.) and never in classical prose.

3. The early ending of the Dat. *īlī* (sometimes contracted into *ī*), is found occasionally in inscriptions throughout the whole period of the language.

4. The older ending of the Abl., *īdī*, belongs exclusively to early Latin. Inscriptions show *īdīs* for *īs* in Dat. and Abl. Pl., and once *īdī* in the Dat. Plural.

30. *Rule of Gender.*—Substantives of the First Declension are feminine, except when males are meant.

*Hadria, the Adriatic*, is masculine.

#### SECOND DECLENSION.

31. The stem ends in *ī*, which in the classical period is weakened to *ī*, except after *ī* (vowel or consonant), where *ī* is retained until the first century A.D. In combination with the case-endings it merges into *ī* or disappears altogether. In the Vocative (except in neutrals) it is weakened to *ī*.

The Nominative ends in *s* (m. and f.) and *m* (n.). But many masculine stems in which the final vowel, *ī*, is preceded by *r*, drop the (*os*) *us* and *e* of the Nominative and Vocative, and insert *ī* before the *r* if it was preceded by a consonant.

**32.** 1. Stems in -ro. The following stems in -ro do not drop the (es) us and e of the Nom. and Voc.: *erūs, master*; *hesperus, evening star*; *icterus, jaundice*; *iūniperus, juniper*; *mōrus, mulberry*; *numerus, number*; *taurus, bull*; *vīrus, venom*; *umerus, shoulder*; *uterus, womb*.

NOTE.—*Socer* is found in early Latin. *Plantus nesciūt uterūm (n.) once.*

2. In the following words the stem ends in -ero and the e is therefore retained throughout: *adulter, adulterer*; *gener, son-in-law*; *Liber, god of wine*; *puer, boy*; *socer, father-in-law*; *vesper, evening*; and in words ending in -fer and -ger, from *ferō, I bear*, and *gerō, I carry*, as, *signifer, standard-bearer*, *armiger, armor-bearer*.

Also *Iber* and *Celtiber* (names of nations) have in the Plural *Iberi* and *Celtiberi*.

**33.** *Hortus* (m.), *garden*; *puer* (m.), *boy*; *ager* (m.), *field*; *bellum* (n.), *war*; are thus declined:

Se.—N.	<i>hortus,</i>	<i>puer,</i>	<i>ager,</i>	<i>bellum,</i>
G.	<i>hortī,</i>	<i>puerī,</i>	<i>agrī,</i>	<i>bellī,</i>
D.	<i>hortō,</i>	<i>puerō,</i>	<i>agrō,</i>	<i>bellō,</i>
Ac.	<i>hortūm,</i>	<i>puerūm,</i>	<i>agrūm,</i>	<i>bellūm,</i>
V.	<i>hortē,</i>	<i>puer,</i>	<i>ager,</i>	<i>bellūm,</i>
Ab.	<i>hortō.</i>	<i>puerō.</i>	<i>agrō.</i>	<i>bellō.</i>
PL.—N.	<i>hortī,</i>	<i>puerī,</i>	<i>agrī,</i>	<i>bellā,</i>
G.	<i>hortōrum,</i>	<i>puerōrum,</i>	<i>agrōrum,</i>	<i>bellōrum,</i>
D.	<i>hortīs,</i>	<i>puerīs,</i>	<i>agrīs,</i>	<i>bellīs,</i>
Ac.	<i>hortōs,</i>	<i>puerēs,</i>	<i>agrōs,</i>	<i>bellās,</i>
V.	<i>hortī,</i>	<i>puerī,</i>	<i>agrī,</i>	<i>bellā,</i>
Ab.	<i>hortīs.</i>	<i>puerīs.</i>	<i>agrīs.</i>	<i>bellīs.</i>

REMARKS.—1. Stems in -io have Gen. Sing. for the most part in I until the first century A. D., without change of accent: *ingēni* (N. *ingenium*), *of genius*, *Vergili*, *of Vergil*. See 15, R. 3.

2. Proper names in -ius (stems in -ie) have Voc. in I, without change of accent: *Antōni, Tulli, Gai, Vergili*. *Filius, son*, and *genius, genius*, form their Voc. in like manner: *fili, geni*. In solemn discourse -us of the Nom. is employed also for the Vocative. (See Liv. I. 24, 7.) So regularly *dēus, God!*

3. The Loc. Sing. ends in I (apparent Genitive), as *Rhodi, at Rhodes*, *Tarenti, at Tarentum*.

4. In the Gen. Pl. -um instead of -ōrum is found in words denoting coins and measures; as, *nummum, of moneys* (also -ōrum) = *sēstertium, of sestercies*; *dēmārium* (occasionally -ōrum); *talentum* (occasionally -ōrum); *tetrachmum*; *modium* (also -ōrum), *of measures*; *īugerum*; *medimnum*; *stadium* (also -ōrum). Likewise in some names of persons: *dēnum* (also

-**rum**); **fabrum** (in technical expressions; as **praefectus fabrum**, otherwise -**rum**); **liberum** (also -**rum**); **virum** (poetical, except in technical expressions, as **triumvirum**); **socium** (also -**rum**). Some other examples are poetical, rare or late.

5. The Loc. Pl. is identical with the Dative: **Delphīs, at Delphi.**

6. **Dēus, God,** is irregular. In addition to the forms already mentioned, it has in Nom. Pl. **dēi, dīl, dī;** in Dat. and Abl. Pl. **dēis, dīl, dīs.**

**Notes.**—1. The ending -**sl** for -**i** in the Gen. Sing. is found only in inscriptions subsequent to the third Punic War.

2. **Puer, boy,** forms Voc. **puere** in early Latin.

3. The original Abl. ending -**d** belongs to early inscriptions.

4. In early inscriptions the Nom. Pl. ends occasionally in -**sa, dīs, ls:** **magistr̄s** (for **magistr̄i**) **vīrl̄s** (for **vīrl̄i**). The rare endings -**ee** and -**ē** (**ploirum̄s** for **plūrīm̄i**) and the not uncommon ending -**sl** belong to the same period.

5. Inscriptions often show -**ls** for -**ls** in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

**34. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives in -**us** are masculine; in -**um** neuter.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, **Corinthus, Samus.** 2d. Most trees, as, **fīagus, beech; pīrus, pear-tree.** 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, **atomus, atom; dialectus, dialect; methodus, method; paragraphus, paragraph; periodus, period.** 4th. **Alvus, belly** (m. in **PLAUT.**); **colus** (fīl, N. 5), **distaff** (also m.); **humus, ground; vannus, wheat-fan.**

Neuters are: **palagus, sea; virus, venom; vulgus, the rabble** (sometimes masculine).

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**35. 1.** The stem ends in a consonant, or in the close vowels **i** and **u.**

**2.** The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

#### I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in **l, m, n, r.**

B. Sibilant stems, ending in **s.**

C. Mute stems, { 1. Ending in a P-mute, **b, p.** (Compare the Fourth Declension.)  
2. Ending in a K-mute, **g, c.**  
3. Ending in a T-mute, **d, t.**

#### II.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in **ī.**

2. Ending in **u,**

**36. 1.** The Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, ends in **s**, which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s,** and combines with a K-mute to form **x.** The final vowel of the stem undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative.

In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

2. Neuters always form :

The Nominative without the case-ending **s**.

The Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.

The Nominative Plural in **s**.

Notes on the Cases.

37. Singular.

1. GENITIVE.—In old Latin we find on inscriptions the endings **-ns** (Gr. **-es**) and **-es**.

2. DATIVE.—The early endings of the Dat. are **-li** and **-s**. These were succeeded by **i** after the second century B. C., **s** being retained in formulas like *ītūs dīcundō* (Liv., 42, 28, 6), in addition to the usual form.

3. ACCUSATIVE.—The original termination **-im**, in stems of the vowel declension, loses ground, and stems of this class form their Acc. more and more in **-em**, after the analogy of consonant stems. For the classical usage see 57, n. 1.

4. ABLATIVE.—In inscriptions of the second and first centuries B. C. we find **-li**, **i**, and **e**. But **-li** soon disappears, leaving **e** and **i**. In general **e** is the ending for the consonant stems and **i** for the vowel. But as in the Acc., so in the Abl., the **e** makes inroads on the **i**, though never to the same extent. (See 57, n. 2.) On the other hand, some apparently consonant stems assume the ending **i**. Thus some in **-es**, **-ēs**: *hērēditēs* (200 B. C.), *aetēti* (rare); *līti* (rare), *supellēctili* (classical; early **e**); also the liquid stems which syncopate in the Gen., as *imber*. The ending **-d** is rare and confined to early inscriptions.

5. LOCATIVE.—Originally coincident in form with the Dat., the Loc. of the Third Declension was finally blended with Abl., both in form and in syntax. In the following proper names the old form is frequently retained : *Karthāgīni*, *at Carthage*. *Sulmōni*, *at Sulmo*, *Lacedaemoni*, *at Lacedaemon*, *Sicīyōni*, *Troesēni*, *Anxuri*, *Tiburi*. Also *Acherunti*. In the case of all except *Anxur*, *Tibur*, *Acherūna*, the regular form is more common.

The following Loc. forms of common nouns are found : *heri*, *līci*, *nootī* (principally in early Latin), *orbī* (Cic.), *peregrī* (early Latin), *praefiscīnī* (early Latin), *rūri*, *temperi* (the usual form in early Latin), *vesperī*. In all cases the Abl. form in **e** is also found.

38. Plural.

1. NOMINATIVE.—Early Latin shows **-īls**, **-īs** in the masc. and feminine. The latter was usually confined to vowel stems, but also occurs occasionally in consonant stems (doubtless). Later the ending was **-īs** for all kinds of stems.

2. GENITIVE.—The ending **-ūm**, uniting with the vowel in vowel stems, gives **-īum**. But many apparently consonant stems show their original vowel form by taking **-īum**: (1) Many fem. stems in **-tēt-** (N. **tās**) with **-īum** as well as **-ūm**. (2) Monosyllabic and polysyllabic stems in **-t**, **-c**, with preceding consonant. (3) Monosyllables in **-p** and **-b**, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preceding consonant. (4) Stems in **-ss-**; see 48, n.

3. ACCUSATIVE.—Old Latin shows also **-īls**. The classical form is **-īs** for consonant and **-īs** for vowel stems. But **-īs** begins to drive out **-īs** in some vowel stems and wholly supplants it in the early Empire. On the other hand, some apparently original consonant stems show **-īs** in early Latin, but the cases are not always certain.

## I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

## A.—Liquid Stems.

## 1. LIQUID STEMS IN L

39. Form the Nominative without s and fall into two divisions\* :

A. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel :

1. *-al, -alis* : *sil* (with compensatory lengthening), *salt*; Punic proper names like *Adherbal*, *Hannibal*.

2. *-il, -ilis* : *mūgil* (*mūgilis* is late), *mullet*; *pugil* (*pugilis* in *VARRO*), *boxer*; *vigil*, *watchman*.    *-il, -ilis* : *sil*, *ochre*; *Tanaquil* (with shortened vowel), a proper name.

3. *-ūl, -ūlis* : *sūl*, *sun*.

4. *-ul, -ulīs* : *cōnsul*, *consul*; *exsul*, *exile*; *praesul*, *dancer*.

B. Two neuter substantives with stems in *-ll*, one of which is lost in the Nominative : *mel*, *mellis*, *honey*; *fel*, *fellis*, *gall*.

Sg.—N. <i>cōnsul</i> , <i>consul</i> (m.).	PL.—N. <i>cōnsulēs</i> , <i>the consuls</i> .
--	---

G. <i>cōnsulīs</i> ,	G. <i>cōnsulūm</i> ,
----------------------	----------------------

D. <i>cōnsulī</i> ,	D. <i>cōnsulibūs</i> ,
---------------------	------------------------

Ac. <i>cōnsulēm</i> ,	Ac. <i>cōnsulēs</i> ,
-----------------------	-----------------------

V. <i>cōnsul</i> ,	V. <i>cōnsulēs</i> ,
--------------------	----------------------

Ab. <i>cōnsulē</i> .	Ab. <i>cōnsulibūs</i> .
----------------------	-------------------------

*Rules of Gender.*—1. Stems in *-l* are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS : *sil*, *ochre*, and *sil*, *salt* (occasionally, but principally in the Sing.), are neuter.

2. Stems in *-ll* are neuter.

## 2. LIQUID STEMS IN M.

40. Nominative with *a*. One example only : *hiem(p)a*, *winter* (f.) ; Gen., *hiem-is*, Dat., *hiem-l*, etc.

## 3. LIQUID STEMS IN N.

41. *Most masculine and feminine stems form the Nominative Singular by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to o.*

---

\* In the following enumerations of stem-varieties, Greek substantives are as a rule omitted.

Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem-characteristic in the Nominative and change a preceding i to e.

The following varieties appear :

1. *-ēn, -ēnis* : the masculine substantives *lēn, splēn, spleen*; *rēnēs* (pl.), *kidneys*.

2. *-ō, -inis* : *homō, man*; *nāmō, no one*; *turbō, whirlwind*; *Apollo, Apollo*. Also substantives in *-dō* (except *praedō, G. -ōnia, robber*) ; and in *-gō* (except *harpagō, G. -ōnia, grappling-hook*; *ligō, G. -ōnia, mattock*) ; as, *grandō, hail*; *virgō, virgin*. *-en, īnis* : the masc. substantives *fīlēnēn, priest*; *ōoen* (also f.), *dirinēn bird*; *pecten, comb*; musical performers, *cōrnoen, fidioen, lītioen, tibioen, tubioen*. Also many neuters : as *nōmen, name*.

3. *-o* (in early Latin *ō*, in classical period weakened), *-ōnis* : *lēō, lion*; and about seventy others. *-o, -onis* : *Saxo, Saxon* (late).

4. Irregular formations : *carō, G. carnis, flesh*; *Anīō, G. Anīēnis, a river*; *Nārīō, G. Nārīēnis, a proper name*. *Sangūis, blood*, and *pollis, flour*, drop the stem characteristic and add *s* to form nominative ; G. *sanguinis, pollinis*.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Sg.—N.	<i>leō, lion</i> (m.).	<i>imāgō, likeness</i> (f.).	<i>nōmen, name</i> (n.).
G.	<i>leōnis,</i>	<i>imāginis,</i>	<i>nōminis,</i>
D.	<i>leōnī,</i>	<i>imāgīni,</i>	<i>nōminī,</i>
Ac.	<i>leōnēm,</i>	<i>imāgīnem,</i>	<i>nōmen,</i>
V.	<i>leō,</i>	<i>imāgō,</i>	<i>nōmen,</i>
Ab.	<i>leōne,</i>	<i>imāgīne,</i>	<i>nōmine,</i>
PL.—N.	<i>leōnēs,</i>	<i>imāgīnēs,</i>	<i>nōmina,</i>
G.	<i>leōnum,</i>	<i>imāgīnum,</i>	<i>nōminum,</i>
D.	<i>leōnibus,</i>	<i>imāgīnibus,</i>	<i>nōminibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>leōnēs,</i>	<i>imāgīnēs,</i>	<i>nōmina,</i>
V.	<i>leōnēs,</i>	<i>imāgīnēs,</i>	<i>nōmina,</i>
Ab.	<i>leōnibus.</i>	<i>imāgīnibus.</i>	<i>nōminibus.</i>

NOTE.—Early Latin shows *homōnēm, etc.*, occasionally.

43. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Substantives in *-ō* are masculine, except *carō, flesh*, and those in *-dō, -gō*, and *-iō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are *carō, hinge*; *ōrdō, rank*; *harpagō, grappling-hook*; *ligō, mattock*; *margō, border* (occasionally fem. in late Latin) ; and concrete nouns like *pūgiō, dagger*, *tītiō, firebrand*, *vespertiliō, bat*.

2. Substantives in *-en (-men)* are neuter. See exceptions, 41, 1, 2.

## 4. LIQUID STEMS IN R.

## 44. Form Nominative without a.

Stems fall into the following classes :

1. *-ar, -aris* : *salar, trout*; proper names like *Caesar, Hamilcar*; the neuters *bacoar*, a plant; *inbar, radiance*; *nectar, nectar*.    *-är, -äris* : *Lär, a deity*.    *-är, äris* : *När* (ENN., VERG.), a river.    *-är, arris* : *fär* (n.) spelt.

2. *-er, -eris* : *asipenser, a fish*; *agger, mound*; *anser, goose*; *asser, pole*; *aster, a plant*; *cancer, the disease*; *carcer, prison*; *later, brick*; *mullier (f.), woman*; *passer, sparrow*; *tuber* (m. and f.), *apple*; *vesper, evening* (68, 10); *vämmer, plowshare* (47, 2). The neuters *aer, maple*; *cadäver, dead body*; *cicer, pea*; *läser, a plant*; *laver, a plant*; *papdiver, poppy*; *piper, pepper*; *stler, willow*; *siser, skirret*; *stiber, cork*; *tiber, tumor*; *tiber, teat*; [verbier], *thong*.    *-er, -ris* : four words, *accipiter, hawk*; *fräter, brother*; *mäter, mother*; *pater, father*. Also some proper names, as *Däspitzer, Falacer*, and the names of the months, *September, October, November, December*. Also, *imber, shower*, *linter, skiff*, *läter, bag*, *venter, belly*, which were probably vowel stems originally (see 45, R. 1).    *-är, -äris* : *läx, air*; *astär, ether*.    *-är, -äris* : *vär, spring*.

3. *-or, -oris* : *arbor (f.), tree* (stem originally in -os); some Greek words in -tor, as *rhetor, rhetorician*; slave names in -por, as *Märdipor*; the neuters : *ador, spell* : *aequor, sea*; *marmor, marble*.    *-or, -öris* : very many abstract words, as *amor, love*; *color, color*; *clamor, outcry*; *soror, sister*; *uxor, wife*; these may come from stems in ös (see 47, 4); also verbals in -tor, as *victor*.

4. *-ur, -uris* : *augur, augur*; *furfur, bran*; *turtur, dove*; *vultur, vulture*; *lemurës* (pl.), *ghosts*, and a few proper names; also the neuters *fulgur, lightning*; *guttur, throat*; *murmur, murmur*; *sulfur, sulphur*.    *-ür, -üris* : *für, thief*.

5. Four neuters, *ebur, ivory*; *femur, thigh*; *iecur, liver*; *röbur, oak*, show Gen. in -oris; two of these, *femur, iecur*, have also the irregular forms *feminis* and *iecineria, iecinoris, iocinoris*. *Iter, way*, has G. *itineris*; and *supellæx, furniture*, has G. *supellæctilis*.

45. SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>labor, toil</i> (m.),	<i>labörës,</i>	<i>pater, father</i> (m.),
G.	<i>laböris,</i>	<i>labörum,</i>	<i>patris,</i>
D.	<i>labörl,</i>	<i>laböribus,</i>	<i>patri,</i>
Ac.	<i>labörem,</i>	<i>labörës,</i>	<i>patrem,</i>
V.	<i>labor,</i>	<i>labörës,</i>	<i>pater,</i>
Ab.	<i>laböre.</i>	<i>laböribus.</i>	<i>patre.</i>

**REMARKS.**—1. *Imber*, *shower*, *linter*, *skiff*, *itter*, *bag*, *venter*, *belly*, show the vowel nature of their stems by having Gen. Pl. in -ium. *Imber* has also sometimes Abl. Sing. in L. (See 37, 4.)

2. *Rōbur*, *strength*, also forms a Nom. *rōbus* (47, 4), and *vōmer*, *plow-share*, *vōmis* (47, 2).

**NOTE.**—*Arbor*, and many stems in -or, were originally stems in -s; the s became r (47) between two vowels in the oblique cases, and then reacted upon the Nominative. But many Nominatives in -s are still found in early Latin; and some are still retained in the classical times: *arbōs* (regularly in *Verg.*, frequently in *Luca.*, *Hor.*, *Ov.*), *honōs* (regularly in *Verg.*, commonly in *Cic.*, *Livy*), and others.

**46. Rules of Gender.**—1. Substantives in -er and -or are masculine. 2. Substantives in -ar and -ur are neuter.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—Masculine are *salar*, *trout*, and proper names in -ar; *angur*, *augur*; *furfur*, *bran*; names of animals in -ur and a few proper names in -ur.

Feminine are *arbor*, *tree*; *mulier*, *woman*; *soror*, *sister*; *uxor*, *wife*. Neuter are *acer*, *maple*; *adūr*, *spill*; *aequor*, *sea*; *cadāver*, *dead body*; *cicer*, *pea*; *itter*, *way*; *lāser*, *a plant*; *laver*, *a plant*; *marmor*, *marble*; *papāver*, *poppies*; *piper*, *pepper*; *siler*, *willow*; *siser*, *skirt*; *sūber*, *cork*; *tūber*, *tumor*; *fiber*, *teat*; *vēr*, *spring*; [*verbēr*], *thong*.

#### B.—Sibilant Stems.

**47.** The Nominative has no additional s, and changes in masculines e to i, and in neutrals e or o to u before s.

In the oblique cases, the s of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into r (*rhotacism*).

There are the following varieties of stems :

1. -ās, -āris : *mās*, *male*.    -ās, -āsis : *vās* (n.), *vessel*.    -ās, -assīs : *ās* (m.), *a copper* (vowel long in Nom. by compensatory lengthening), and some of its compounds (with change of vowel), as *bēs*, *semis*.

2. -ēs, -ēris : *Cērēs*, *Ceres*.    -is, -ēris : *ciniš*, *ashes*; *cucumis*, *cucumber* (see 57, R. 1). *pulvis* (occasionally *pulvis*), *dust*; *vōmis*, *plow-share* (see 45, R. 2).    -us, -ēris : *Venus*, and occasionally *pignus*, *pledge* (see 4).

3. -īs, -īris : *glīs*, *dormouse*.

4. -ōs, -ōsis : old Latin *ianitōs*, *labōs*, *clāmōs* (see 45, N.).    -os, -ossīs : *os* (n.), *bone*.    -ōs, -ōris : *flōs*, *flower*; *glōs*, *sister-in-law*; *lepsīs*, *charm*; *mōs* (in.), *custom*; -s (n.), *mouth*; *rōs*, *dew*.    -us, -ōris : *corpus*, *body*; *decuria*, *grace*; *pignus*, *pledge*, and twelve others; on *rōbus* (see 45, R. 2).

5. -us, -ūris : *Ligūs*, *Ligurian*.    -ūs, -ūris : *tellūs* (f.), *earth*; *mīs* (m.), *mouse*; the neutrals : *crūs*, *leg*; *iūs*, *right*; *pūs*, *pus*; *rūs*, *country*; *tūs*, *incense*.

6. *aes*, *aeris*, *brass*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. A. V.	<i>genus, kind</i> (n.), <i>genera</i> ,		<i>corpus, body</i> (n.), <i>corpora</i> ,	
G.	<i>generis,</i>	<i>generum,</i>	<i>corporis,</i>	<i>corporum,</i>
D.	<i>generi,</i>	<i>generibus,</i>	<i>corpori,</i>	<i>corporibus,</i>
Ab.	<i>genero.</i>	<i>generibus.</i>	<i>corpore.</i>	<i>corporibus.</i>

REMARK.—*Ās, a copper*, and *os, bone*, form the Gen. Pl. in *-ium*, after the usage of vowel stems (see 88, 2). So also *mūs, mouse*.

49. *Rule of Gender.*—Masculine are substantives in *-is* (*-eris*), and *-ōs, -ōris*: except *ōs, mouth* (G. *ōris*), which is neuter.

Neuter are substantives in *-us* (G. *-eris, -oris*), and in *-ūs* (G. *-ūris*); except *tellūs, earth* (G. *tellūris*), which is feminine; and the masculines, *lepus, hare* (G. *leporis*); *mūs, mouse* (G. *mūris*).

#### C.—Mute Stems.

50. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the Nominative. Before *s* a P-mute is retained, a K-mute combines with it to form *x*, a T-mute is dropped.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel *i* into *e* in the Nominative.

The stems show variations as follows :

#### 51. Stems in a P-mute.

1. *-abs, -abit* : *trabs, beam*; *Arabs*.      *-aps, -apis* : [daps], *feast*.
2. *-ēbs, ēbit* : *plēbs, commons*.
3. *-eps, -ipte* : *princeps, chief*, and fourteen others.      *-ips, -ipit* : *stips, dole*.
4. *-ops, -opti* : [ops], *power*.
5. *-eps, upit* : *aceps, fowler*, and the old Latin *manceps, contractor*.
6. *-rbis, -rbit* : *urbs, city*.
7. *-rps, -rpit* : *stirps, stock*.

Sc.—N.	<i>princeps, chief</i> (m.),	PL.— <i>principēs,</i>
G.	<i>principis,</i>	<i>principūm,</i>
D.	<i>principi,</i>	<i>principibūs,</i>
Ac.	<i>principem,</i>	<i>principē,</i>
V.	<i>princeps,</i>	<i>principē,</i>
Ab.	<i>principo.</i>	<i>principibūs.</i>

#### 52. Stems in a K-mute.

1. *-ax, -actis* : *ax, torch*, and many Greek words in *-ax*, *Aταξ*, proper name.      *-ūx, -ūctis* : *fornūx, furnace*; *lūmūx, snail*; *pūx, peace*; and Greek *cordūx, thūrūx*.

2. *-ex, -ēcis*: *fānīsex*, mover; *nex*, *murder*; [*prex*], *prayer*; [*resex*], *stump*. *-ēx, -ēcis*: *allēx* (also *allō*), *brine*; *vərvēx*, *wesher*. *-ex, -ēgis*: *grex*, *herd*; *aquilex*, *water-inspector*. *-ēx, -ēgis*: *interrāx*; *lēx*, *law*; *rēx*, *king*.

3. *-ex, -ēcis*: *anspēx*, *soothsayer*, and about forty others. *-ex, -ēgis*: *rāmēx*, *rover*. *-ix, -ēcis*: *cervix*, *neck*, and about thirty others; verbals in *-ix*, as *victrix*. *-ix, -ēcis*: *appendix*, *appendix*, and ten others. *-ix, -ēgis*: *strīx*, *screech-owl*; also many foreign proper names, as *Dumnorix*, which may, however, be forms in *-ix, -ēgis*.

4. *-ōx, -ōcis*: *celōx*, *cutter*; *vōx*, *voice*. *-ox, -ōcis*: *Cappadocia*, *Cappadocian*. *-ox, -ōgis*: *Allobrox*, *Allobrogian*.

5. *-ux, -ūcis*: *crux*, *cross*; *dux*, *leader*; *nux*, *nut*. *-ūx, -ūcis*: *lūx*, *light*; *hallūx*, *gold-dust*; *Pollūx*. *-ux, -ūgis*: *coniux* (-*unx*), *spouse*. *-ūx, -ūgis*: *frūx*, *fruit*.

6. *-rx, -rcis*: *arx*, *citadel*; *merx*, *wares*. *-lx, -lcis*: *falc*, *sickle*; *calx*, *heel, lime*. *-nx, -ncis*: *lanx*, *dish*; compounds of *-unx*, as *quinqunx*, and a few names of animals; *phalanx* has G. *phalangis*.

7. Unclassified: *nix* (G. *nivis*), *snow*; *bōs* (G. *bovis*; see 71), *ox*; [fau] (G. *faucis*), *throat*; *faex* (G. *faecis*), *dregs*.

Sg.—N. *rēx*, *king* (m.).

G. *rēgis*,

D. *rēgl*,

Ac. *rēgem*,

V. *rēx*,

Ab. *rēge*,

Pl.—*rēgēs*,

*rēgum*,

*rēgibus*,

*rēgē*,

*rēgē*,

*rēgibus*.

### 53. Stems in a T-mute

1. *-ās, -ātis*: many feminine abstracts, as *aetās*, *age*; some proper names, as *Maeōnās*. *-as, -atis*: *anas*, *duck*. *-as, -adis*: *vas*, *basil*; *lampas*, *torch*.

2. *-es, -ētis*: *indiges*, *patron deity*; *interpres*, *interpreter*; *praepes*, *bird*; *seges*, *crop*; *teges*, *mat*. *-ēs, -ētis*: *abīs*, *fir*; *ariēs*, *ram*; *parīs*, *wall*. *-ēs, -ētis*: *quiēs*, *quiet*; *requīs*, *rest*. *-ēs, -ēdis*: *pēs*, *foot*, and its compounds. *-ēs, -ēdis*: *hērēs*, *heir*; *merōs*, *hire*.

3. *-es, -ētis*: *antistes*, *overseer*; *caespes*, *sod*, and some fifteen others. *-es, -ēdis*: *obses*, *hostage*; *praeses*, *protector*. *-ēs, -ētis*: *lia*, *suit*. *-is, -ēdis*: *capis*, *bowl*; *cassis*, *helmet*, and nearly forty others, mostly Greek.

4. *-ōs, -ōtis*: *ōs*, *whetstone*; *dōs*, *dowry*; *nepōs*, *grandson*; *sacerdōs*, *priest*. *-ōs, -ōtis*: *cūstōs*, *guard*.

5. *-ūs, -ūtis*: *glūs*, *glue*, and some abstracts: *iuvēntūs*, *youth*; *salīs*, *safety*; *senectūs*, *old age*; *servitūs*, *servitude*; *virtūs*, *manliness*.

*-us, -ūdis*: *pecus*, *sheep*. *-ūs, -ūdis*: *incūs*, *anvil*; *paltūs*, *marsh*; *subsecūs*, *tenon*.

6. *-aes, -aedis* : *praes, surely.*    *-aus, -audis* : *laus, praise;*  
*fraus, fraud.*

7. *-is, -itis* : *puls, porridge.*    *-ns, -nitis* : *infans, infant; dens,*  
*tooth; fons, fountain; mensa, mountain; frons, brow; pons, bridge; gens,*  
*tribe; lنس, lentil; mensa, mind; rudens, rope; torrens, torrent.*    *-s,*  
*-nis* : *latinized Greek words like gigas, giant.*    *-rs, -rtis* : *ars, art;*  
*cohors, cohort; fors, chance; Mars; mors, death; sorta, lot.*

8. Unclassified : *cor* (G. *cordis*), *heart*; *nox* (G. *noctis*), *night*; *caput* (G. *capitis*), *head*; *lac* (G. *lactis*), *milk*.

Sc.—N.	<i>aetās, age</i> (f.).	PL.— <i>aetātēs,</i>	Sc.— <i>pēs, foot</i> (m.).	PL.— <i>pedēs,</i>
G.	<i>aetātia,</i>	<i>aetātūm,</i>	<i>pedis,</i>	<i>pedum,</i>
D.	<i>aetāti,</i>	<i>aetātibus,</i>	<i>pedi,</i>	<i>pedibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>aetātem,</i>	<i>aetātēs,</i>	<i>pedem,</i>	<i>pedēs,</i>
V.	<i>aetās,</i>	<i>aetātēs,</i>	<i>pēs,</i>	<i>pedēs,</i>
Ab.	<i>aetāte,</i>	<i>aetātibus.</i>	<i>pēde,</i>	<i>pedibus.</i>

54. Many substantives of this class were originally vowel stems (see 56), and show their origin by having the termination *-ium* in the Gen. Pl. and *-i* in the Abl. Singular. Some not originally vowel stems do the same. (See 38, 2.)

Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Gen. Pl. in *-ium* : *urbium, of cities;* *arcium, of citadels;* *montium, of mountains;* *partium, of parts;* *noctium, of the nights.* But *-um* is also found in *gentium* (ATTIUS), *partum* (ENNIIUS); so always *opum*.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary : *dōt-ium, lit-ium, fau-ium, fraud-um (-um), laud-um (-um).* But *praed-um, vōcum.*

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristic preceded by a short vowel have *-um*; but *fao-ium, nuo-um (-um), niv-ium (-um).*

The polysyllabic stems in *-nt* and *-rt* have more frequently *-ium*, as *clientium (-um), of clients;* *cohortium (-um), of companies.* So *adulscentium (-um), amantium (-um), infantium (-um), parentum (-um), serpentium (-um), torrentium (-um); rudentum (-um);* but only *quadrantum.*

Of other polysyllabic stems feminine stems in *-at* have frequently both *-um* and *-ium*, as *aetātūm* and *aetātium, civitātūm* and *civitātium, etc.*; the rest have usually *-um*: but *artifex, (h)aruspex, extispex, iūdex, supplex, oīniux, rēmex,* and usually *forñix* have *-ium.* *Forçeps, manoëps, mūnicioëps, princeps* have *-um.* *Pallus* has usually *pallidium.*

Notes.—1. The accusative *lentim* from [lēns] is occasionally found, and *partim* from *pars*, as an adverb.

2. Sporadic ablatives in *-i* occur as follows: *animanti* (Cic.), *bidenti* (Lucr.), *tridenti* (SIL., VERG.), *capiti, cōsonanti* (gram.), *hēredī* (Inscr.), *legī* (Inscr.), *lenti* (TITIN., COL.), *lūci* (early), *menti* (COL.), *occipiți* (PERS., AVS.), *pīci* (VANNO), *parti, rudenti* (VIRG.), *sorti, torrenti* (SEN.).

**55. Rule of Gender.**—Mute stems, with Nominative in **s**, are feminine.

1. *Exceptions in a k-mute.*

Masculines are substantives in **-ex**, **-sx**, **-ix**, and **-unx**; except *cortex*, *bark*, *torax*, *shears*, *frutex*, *shrub*, *imbrex*, *tile*, *latex*, *fluid*, *obex*, *bolt*, *silex*, *flint*, *varix*, *varicose vein*, which are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine; and *fæx*, *dregs*, *forpex*, *tongs*, *læx*, *law*, *nex*, *slaughter*, *vibex*, *weal*, and forms of [prex], *prayer*, which are feminine. *Calx*, *heel*, and *calx*, *chalk*, are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

2. *Exceptions in a t-mute.*

Masculine are substantives in **-es**, **-itis**, except *merges* (f.), *sheaf*; also *pēs*, *foot*, and its compounds; *parīs*, *wall*; *lapis*, *stone*.

Masculines in **-ns** are : *dēns*, *tooth*, and its compounds; *fēns*, *spring*; *mōns*, *mountain*; *pīns*, *bridge*; *rudēns*, *rope*; *torrēns*, *torrent*; also some substantivized adjectives and participles.

Neuters are only : *cor*, *heart*, *lac*, *milk*, and *caput*, *head*.

## II.—VOWEL STEMS.

### 1.—Vowel Stems in **i**.

**56.** Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in **s**.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel **i** into **e**.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel **i** into **e**. This **e** is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after **l** and **r**.

Stems in **i** have Genitive Plural in **-ium**.

Neuter stems in **i** have the Ablative Singular in **i**, and Nominative Plural in **-ia**.

The varieties of stems are :

1. **-is**, **-is** : nearly one hundred substantives, like *civis*, *citizen*.
2. **-ēs**, **-is** : thirty-five, like *vulpēs*, *fox*. Some of these have also variant nominatives in **-i** in good usage.

3. **-e**, **-is** : some twenty neuters, as *mare*, *sea*.

4. **—**, **-īs** : twenty-four neuters, which form Nominative by dropping the stem characteristic and shortening the preceding vowel : *animal*, *-alia*, *animal*; *calcar* (G. *calcāris*), *spur*.

5. For substantives in **-er**, **-ris**, see 44, 2. Irregular is *senex*, (G. *senis*; see 57, R. 3), *old man*.

M.	F.	F.	N.	N.
Sc.—N. collis, <i>hill</i> . turris, <i>tower</i> .	vulpes, /ox.	mare, sea.	animal, living being.	
G. collis,	turris,	vulpis,	maris,	animalis,
D. collī,	turri,	vulpī,	marī,	animalī,
Ac. collēm,	turrim(em),	vulpem,	mare,	animal,
V. collis,	turris,	vulpes,	mare,	animal,
Ab. collie,	turri(e),	vulpe,	marī,	animalī,
Pl.—N. collēs,	turpēs,	vulpēs,	maria,	animalia,
G. collūm,	turri-um,	vulpiūm,	marūm,	animalium,
D. collibūs,	turri-bus,	vulpibūs,	maribūs,	animalibus,
Ac. collis(es),	turris(es),	vulpis(es),	maria,	animalia,
V. collēs,	turpēs,	vulpēs,	maria,	animalia,
Ab. collibūs.	turri-bus.	vulpibūs.	maribūs.	animalibus.

57. REMARKS.—1. The proper ending of the Acc. Sing. -im, is retained *always* in amnis, bōris, cucumis (see 47, 2), fūtis, mephitis, rāvis, rūmis, sitis, tussis, vis; and in names of towns and rivers in -is, as Nēapolis, Tiberis; *usually* in febris, puppis, pelvis, restis, scōtris, turris; *occasionally* in bipennis, clāvis, crātis, cutis, len(ti)s (see 54, N. 1), messis, nāvis, neptis, præsaepis, sēmentis, strigilis.

2. The Abl. in -i is found in substantives that regularly have -im in Acc. (except perhaps restis): also not unfrequently in amnis, avis, bipennis, canis, civis, clāssis, finis (in formulæ), fūtis, ignis (in phrases), orbis, sēmentis, strigilis, unguis; occasionally in anguis, bilis, clāvis, collis, convallis, corbis, messis, neptis; regularly in neuters in e, al, and ar, except in rēte, and in the towns Caere, Praeneste.

NOTE.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: annūlis (sc. liber, book), chroniclē; nātālis (sc. diēs, day), birthday; Apriliis (sc. mēnsis, month), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Abl., annūli, nātāli, Aprili, Septembri, etc. But iuvenis, young man; and aedilis, aedile, have Abl., iuvene, aedile; adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Abl. in -e, as, Iuvenālis, Iuvenāle.

3. In the Gen. Pl., instead of the ending -ium, -um is found *always* in canis, dog, iuvenia, young man, pānis, bread, senex, old, strūta, heap, volucra, bird; *usually* in apis, bee, sēdēs, seat, vātēs, bard; *frequently* in mēnsis, month. On imber, etc., see 45, E. I. Post-classical and rare are ambigūm, cādūm, clādūm, vēprūm, and a few others; marūm (the only form found) occurs once.

4. In the Nom. Pl. -is and -is are found in early Latin. So occasionally in consonant stems (see 38, 1), but in classical times such usage is doubtful.

5. The proper ending of the Acc. Pl., -is (archaic, -sis), is found frequently in the classical period along with the later termination -es, which supplants -is wholly in the early empire. On the other hand, -is for -es in consonant stems is confined to a few doubtful cases in early Latin.

**58. Rule of Gender.**—1. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-ēs* are feminine; those with Nominative in *-is* are partly masculine, partly feminine.

*Masculine* are : *amnis, river* (f., early) ; *antēs* (pl.) , *roue* ; *axis, axle* ; *būris, plow-tail* ; *cassēs* (pl.) , *tōls* ; *canlis, stalk* ; *collis, hill* ; *crinis, hair* ; *ēmis, glaive* ; *fascis, fagot* ; *foliis, bellows* ; *funis, rope* (f., *Luca.*) ; *fustis, cudgel* ; *ignis, fire* ; *māns (pl.), Munes, month* ; *mūgilis, mullet* ; *orbis, circle* ; *pānis, bread* ; *poetis, door-post* ; *torris, fire-brand* ; *unguis, nail* ; *vectis, lever* ; *vermis, worm*.  
*Common* are : *callis, footpath* ; *canalis, canal* ; *cūnīs, haunch* ; *corbis, basket* ; *finis, end* ; *rētis, net* (also *rēte, n.*) ; *sentis* (usually pl.) , *bramble* ; *scrubis, ditch* ; *torquis (es), necklace* ; *tōlēs* (pl.) , *goitre* ; *vērēs* (pl.) , *bramble*.

**REMARK.**—Of the names of animals in *-is*, some are masculine ; *tigris, tiger* (fem. in poetry) ; *canis, dog* (also fem.) ; *piscis, fish* ; others feminine : *apis, bee* ; *avis, bird* ; *ovis, sheep* ; *felis, cat* (usually *fēta*).

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-e, -al, -ar*, are neuter.

## 2. Vowel Stems in *u*.

**59.** Of stems in *u*, the *monosyllabic* stems, two in number, belong to the Third Declension.

Sg.—N.	<i>grūs, crane</i> (f.)	PL.—	<i>grūs</i>
G.	<i>gruis</i>		<i>gruum</i>
D.	<i>grui</i>		<i>gruibus</i>
Ac.	<i>gruem</i>		<i>grūs</i>
V.	<i>grūs</i>		<i>grūs</i>
Ab.	<i>grue</i>		<i>gruibus.</i>

*Stūs, swine* (commonly f.), usually *subus*, in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

## TABLE OF NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The \* before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

## 60. A. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A LIQUID.

NOM.	GEN.	NOM.	GEN.
-al	<i>-ali-s animal, animal.</i>	-är	<i>*-arr-is fir,</i> <i>spell.</i>
-äl	<i>-äl-is Hannibal, proper name.</i>	-er	<i>-er-is änsler,</i> <i>gooses.</i>
-äl	<i>*-äl-is säl, salt.</i>	-r-is	<i>pater,</i> <i>father.</i>
-el	<i>-ell-is mel, honey.</i>	*-iner-is	<i>iter,</i> <i>journey.</i>
-il	<i>-il-is pugil, boxer.</i>	-är	<i>*-är-is vär,</i> <i>spring.</i>
-il	<i>-il-is Tanaquil, proper name.</i>	-or	<i>-ör-is color,</i> <i>color.</i>
-öi	<i>*-öli-s ööl, the sun.</i>	-or-is	<i>aequor,</i> <i>expans.</i>
-ul	<i>-ul-is cōsul, consul.</i>	*-ord-is	<i>cor,</i> <i>heart.</i>
-en	<i>-en-is rēnēs (pl.), kidneys.</i>	-ur	<i>-ur-is fulgur,</i> <i>lightning.</i>
-en	<i>-in-is nōmen, name.</i>	-or-is	<i>röbur,</i> <i>oak.</i>
-ar	<i>-ari-s calcar, spur.</i>	-är	<i>-är-is fir,</i> <i>thief.</i>
	<i>-ari-s nectar, nectar.</i>		

## B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH **s**, OR **x** (cf. **gs**).

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.			
-is	*-is-is	vīs,	dish.	-ls	*-lt-is	puls,	porridge.
	*-ar-is	mās,	male.	-m(p)s	*-m-is	hiems,	winter.
	*ass-is	ās,	a copper.	-ns	-nd-is	frōns,	leafy branch.
	-st-is	actīs,	age.		-nt-is	frōns,	forehead.
-as	*-ad-is	vas,	surety.	-rs	-rd-is	concoris,	concordant.
	*-at-is	anas.	duck.		-rt-is	pars,	part.
-aes	*-aed-is	præs,	surety.	-bs	-b-is	urbe,	city.
	*aer-is	aes,	bræs.	-ps	-p-is	stirps,	stalk.
-aus	-and-is	fraus,	cheatery.	-eps	-ip-is	princeps,	chief.
-ss	-is	nūbēs,	cloud.		*-up-is	auceps,	fowler.
	-ed-is	pēs,	foot.	-sx	-sc-is	pāx,	peace.
	*-er-is	Cerēs,	Ceres.	-ax	*-ac-is	fax,	torch.
	-et-is	abīs,	fr.	-sex	-aco-is	faex,	dregs.
	-st-is	quiēs,	rest.	-aux	-aue-is	[faux,]	throat.
es	-et-is	seges,	crop.	-ex	-eo-is	nex,	death.
	-id-is	obses,	hostage.		-io-is	iūdex,	judge.
	-it-is	miles,	soldier.		-eg-is	grex,	lock.
-is	-is	annis,	river.	-lx	*-lo-is	rēmex,	rover.
	-id-is	lapis,	stone.		*-lo-is	allēx,	pickle.
	-in-is	sanguis,	blood.		*-ig-is	vibēx(lx),	weal.
	-er-is	cinis,	ashes.		-gēs	rēx,	king.
-is	*-it-is	lis,	suit at law.	-ix	-lo-is	cervix,	neck.
	*-ir-is	glis,	dormouse.	-ix	-ic-is	calix,	cup.
-ss	*-dō-is	cūtōs,	keeper.		*-ig-is	strix,	screech-owl.
	-tr-is	flōs,	flower.	-ix	*-iv-is	nix,	snow.
	-st-is	cōs,	whetstone.	-ox	-dō-is	vōx,	voice.
	*-ov-is	bōs,	ox.	-ox	*-oo-is	praecox,	early-ripe.
-es	*-oss-is	os,	bone.		*-og-is	Allobrox,	Allobrogian.
-us	*-ud-is	pecus,	cattle, sheep.		*-oct-is	nox,	night.
	*-ur-is	Ligūs,	a Ligurian.	-ux	-o-is	crux,	cross.
	-or-is	corpus,	body.		-ug-is	cōniux,	spouse.
	-er-is	scelus,	crime.	-lx	-uo-is	lūx,	light.
-is	-u-is	sūs,	vine.		-fig-is	[frūx,]	fruit.
	-ūd-is	incūs,	anvil.	-lx	-le-is	falx,	sickle.
	-ūr-is	īls,	right.	-nx	-ne-is	lanx,	dish.
	-ūt-is	salūs,	veal.	-rx	-re-is	ark,	citadel.

### C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

-ac \*-act-is lac, milk. -ut \*-it-is caput, head.  
-ec \*-eo-is all eo, pickle (68, 12).

#### D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-e	-i-e	mare, sea.
-o	-on-is	Saxo, Saxon.
-ɔ	-ɒn-is	pávð, peacock.
-i	-in-is	homð, man.
-ɛ	*-n-is	card, flesh.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

**61.** The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in **u**.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and in the Nominate, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the **u** of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long. In the Dative and Ablative Plural it is weakened to **i** before the ending **-bus**.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending **-m**, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in **-i-m** of the stems in **i**), hence **-u-m**.

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
Sg.—N. <i>fructus</i> , <i>fruit</i> .	Pl.— <i>fructūs</i> ,	Sg.— <i>cornū</i> , <i>horn</i> .	Pl.— <i>cornūs</i> ,
G. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>fructūm</i> ,	<i>cornūs</i> ,	<i>cornūm</i> ,
D. <i>fructū (fructū)</i> ,	<i>fructibūs</i> ,	<i>cornū</i> ,	<i>cornibūs</i> ,
Ac. <i>fructūm</i> ,	<i>fructū</i> ,	<i>cornū</i> ,	<i>cornua</i> ,
V. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>cornū</i> ,	<i>cornua</i> ,
Ab. <i>fructū</i> .	<i>fructibūs</i> .	<i>cornū</i> .	<i>cornibūs</i> .

**REMARKS.**—1. *Dat. Abl.* The original form **-u-bus** is retained always in *acus*, *arcus*, *querens*, *tribus*, and in classical times in *partus*. But *artus*, *genit*, *lacus*, *portus*, *specus*, *tonitru*, *vert*, have both forms.

2. *Domus*, *house*, is declined : G. *domu-o* (archaic), *domu-is* and *domi* (early), *domu-us* (late), *domūs*. D. *domō* (early), *domul*. Ac. *domum*. V. *domus*. Ab. *dom-u* (sporadic), *domō*. Loc. *domi*. Pl. N. *domūs*. G. *domōrum* (LUCR. always, VERG., FLOR.), *domuum* (late). D. Ab. *domibus*. Ac. *domōs*, *domūs*. Classical forms are those in black-faced type. A classical variant for *domi* (Loc.) is *domul*.

**NOTES.**—1. *Singular: Genitive.* In early inscriptions we find the ending **-os**, as *senātūs*; and in early authors not unfrequently **-is**, along with the contraction **-is** (**-uis**), which becomes the regular form in classical times. In inscriptions under the empire **-us** is occasionally found, as *exercitūs*. The termination **-i**, after the analogy of the Second Declension, is common in early Latin, and is still retained in some words even into the classical period; as *senāti* (CIC., SALL., LIVY), *tumulti* (SALL.).

2. *Dative.* In the early time **-u-f** is found very rarely for **-ui**. Also **u**, as *senātū*, *fructū*, which became the only form for neuters. In classical times **-i** in masc. and fem. is poetical only (CAESAR uses, however, *cāsi*, *exeritū*, *magistratū*, *senātū*, *quaestū*), but extends to prose in the Augustan age and later.

3. *Plural: Nom., Acc., Voc.* In imperial inscriptions **-us** occurs.

4. *Genitive.* The poets frequently contract **-um** into **-um** for metrical reasons, and this usage was sometimes extended to prose (not by CICERO) in common words; as *passum* for *passuum*.

5. *Colus*, *distaff*, belongs properly to the Second Declension, but has variants: G. *colūs*, Ab. *colū*, Pl. N., Ac., *colūs*, from the Fourth.

**62. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives in *-us* are masculine; those in *-ū* are neuter.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—*Feminines* are *acus*, *needle* (usually), *domus*, *house*, *idū* (pl.), *the Ides*, *manus*, *hand*, *penus*, *victuals* (also m.), *porticus*, *piazza*, *quinquātrūs* (pl.), *festival of Minerva*, *tribus*, *tribe*. Early and late Latin show some further variations.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

**63. The stem ends in -ē;** Nominative in *s*.

In the Genitive and Dative Singular *-ē* has been shortened after a consonant.

In the Accusative Singular we find always *ē*.

The ending in the Genitive Singular is that of the Second Declension, *-i*; the other endings are those of the Third.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
Sg.—N.	<i>diēs</i> , <i>day</i> .	Pl.— <i>diēs</i> ,	Sg.— <i>rēs</i> , <i>thing</i> .
G.	<i>diētī</i> ,	<i>diērum</i> ,	<i>rētī</i> ,
D.	<i>diētī</i> ,	<i>diēbus</i> ,	<i>rētī</i> ,
Ac.	<i>diem</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rem</i> ,
V.	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
Ab.	<i>diē</i> .	<i>diēbus</i> .	<i>rē</i> .
			<i>rēbus</i> .

**REMARKS.—1. Plural:** *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Abl.* Common in but two substantives, *diēs*, *rēs*. Late Latin shows also *speciēbus*, and very rarely *spēbus* and *aciēbus*.

2. Many words of the Fifth Declension have a parallel form, which follows the First Declension, as *mollitīs*, *softness*, and *mollitīa*. Where this is the case, forms of the Fifth Declension are usually found only in the Nom.; Acc., and Abl. Singular.

**NOTES.—1. Singular: Genitive.** The older ending *-ēs* is found sporadically in early Latin, but usually the ending *-ētī*, which became later *-ētī* after consonants, though early poets show numerous examples of *rētī*, *spētī*, *fidelī*. *tī* was occasionally scanned as one syllable, whence arose the contraction *ē*, which is retained not unfrequently in the classical period; so *aciētī* (*Cæs.*, *Sall.*), *diētī* (*Pl.*, *Cæs.*, *Sall.*, *Livy*, later), *fidelī* (*Pl.*, *Hor.*, *Ov.*, late Prose), and other less certain cases; it occurs very rarely, principally in early Latin (but *dīf*, *Vere.*, *perniciē*, *Cic.*). *Plēbēs*, in combination with *tribūnus*, *aedilis*, *scitum*, often shows a Gen. *plēbētī* (*plēbētī*).

**2. Dative.** The contraction *-ē* is found, but less often than in the Gen.; *aciētī* (*Sall.*); *diētī*, *faciētī* (early Latin); *fidiētī* (early Latin, *Cæs.*, *Sall.*, *Livy*), *perniciētī* (*Livy*), and a few other forms. The Dat. in *-ī* is found very rarely in early Latin.

**64. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine except *diēs* (which in the Sing. is common, and in the Pl. masculine), and *meridiēs* (m.), *midday*.

### Declension of Greek Substantives.

65. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many substantives, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the Singular, in the Plural the declension is usually regular.

### Singular Forms of Greek Substantives.

#### First Declension.

N.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidās,	Anchisē,
G.	Pēnelopēs,	Leōnidae,	Anchise,
D.	Pēnelopae,	Leōnidai,	Anchise,
Ac.	Pēnelopēn,	Leōnidam, ēn,	Anchisen, am,
V.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidā,	Anchise, ē, ē,
Ab.	Pēnelopē.	Leōnidā.	Anchise.

#### Second Declension.

N.	Dēlos, us,	Ilion, um,	Panthūs,	Androgeōs, us,
G.	Dēli,	Ilii,	Panthī,	Androgeī,
D.	Dēlō,	Iliō,	Panthō,	Androgeō,
Ac.	Dēlon, um,	Ilion, um,	Panthūn,	Androgeōn, ī, ūna,
V.	Dēle,	Ilion, um,	Panthū,	Androgeōs,
Ab.	Dēlō.	Iliō.	Panthō.	Androgeō.

#### Third Declension.

N.	Solōn, Solo,	āēr, āēr.	Xenophōn,	Atlās,
G.	Solōnis,	āēris,	Xenophōntis,	Atlantis,
D.	Solōni,	āēri,	Xenophōnti,	Atlanti,
Ac.	Solōna, em,	āēra, ēm,	Xenophōnta, em,	Atlanta,
V.	Solōn,	āēr,	Xenophōn,	Atla.
Ab.	Solōne.	āēre.	Xenophōnte.	Atlante.

N.	Thalēs,	Parīs,	hārōs, herō,
G.	Thalētis, -is,	Parīdis, os,	hārōtis,
D.	Thalēti, -i,	Parīdi, i,	hārōtī,
Ac.	Thalēta, -ēn, -ēm,	Parīda, -īm, -īn,	hārōtā, em,
V.	Thalēs,	Parī, Parīs,	hārōs,
Ab.	Thalēs.	Parīde.	hārōe.

#### Mixed Declensions.

	II. III.	II. III.	II. III.
N.	Orphēus,	Athōs,	Oedipūs,
G.	Orphēi, ēl,	Athō, ēnis,	Oedip-ōdis, -ī,
D.	Orphēō,	Athō,	Oedipōdī,
Ac.	Orpheum, ea,	Athō, ēn, ēnem,	Oedip-um, -oda,
V.	Orphēū,	Athōs,	Oedipe,
Ab.	Orphēō.	Athōne.	Oedip-ode, -ō.

	II. III.	II. III.	III. IV.
N.	Achillēa, eus,	Sōcratēs,	Dīdō,
G.	Achillīs, ei, i, eōs,	Sōcratīs, i,	Dīdūs, ūnis,
D.	Achillī,	Sōcratī,	Dīdō, ūni,
Ac.	Achillēm, ea, ūn,	Sōcratēn, em,	Dīdō, ūnem,
V.	Achillēs, ū, e,	Sōcratēs, es,	Dīdō,
Ab.	Achillī, ū, i,	Sōcratē.	Dīdū, ūne.

REMARKS.—1. In the Gen. Pl. -ēn and -ēn̄ are found in the titles of books; as, *Geōrgicōn*, *Metamorphōsēōn*.

2. Many Greek names, of the Third Declension in Latin, pass over into the First Declension in the Plural; as, *Thūcīdīdēs*, *Hyperīdēs*, and many names in -atēs; as *Sōcratēs*; Pl., *Sōcratae* (also *Sōcratēs*).

3. In transferring Greek words into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem:

So κρατήρ, Acc. κρατῆρα, (*punch*) *bowl*.  
 crāter, crāteris (masc.), and crātera (crāterra) crāteras (fem.).  
 Σελαμίς, Acc. Σελαμίνα, *Salamis*.  
*Salamis*, *Salaminius*, and *Salamina*, ae.

66. NOTES.—1. *Singular*: *Genitive*. The Greek termination οος (oos) appears rarely in early Latin, but οι (oii) is more frequent, especially in geographical names, etc. The termination -os (os) is rare except in feminine patronymics in -is, -as, (G. -idos, -ades).

2. *Dative*. The ending -I is very rare; and rarer still is the Dat. in -ō from feminines in -ō, and Dat. in -y from Nominatives in -ys.

3. *Accusative*. -a is the most common termination in the Third Declension, and is found regularly in some words otherwise Latinized; as *Kera*, *aethera*. Stems in -ō usually have -ō, very rarely -ōn.

4. *Plural*. In the Second Declension οο is found occasionally in the Nom., in early Latin; as, *adelphoe*. The Third Declension shows frequently ūs in the Nom. and ūs in the Accusative; also occasionally ū in the Nom. and Acc. of neuters, and -ei (but only in the poets) in the Dative.

5. For other peculiarities, not observable in the paradigms, the dictionaries should be consulted. Sometimes the forms are merely transliterations of Greek cases.

### IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

#### 1. Redundant Substantives. (Abundantia.)

67. A. *Heterogeneous* Substantives, or those whose gender varies:

1. The variation occurs in several cases in either number or in both.

abrotōnum, -us,	a plant (rare),	clīpus, -um,	shield,
aevōm (um), -us,	age,	collum, -us,	neck,
baculum, -us,	staff,	costum, -us,	a plant (rare),
balteus, -um,	girdle,	forum, -us,	market,
buxus, -um,	box-wood (rare),	gladius, -um,	sword,
[calamister], -um,	curling-iron (rare),	intibus, -um,	succory (rare),
cīsus, -um,	cheese,	iugulum, -us,	collar-bone,
cavōm (um), -us,	cavity,	nardum, -us,	nard (rare),
cingulum, -us,	belt,	nāsus, -um,	nose,

<i>palatum</i> ,	<i>-us</i> ,	<i>palate</i> ,	<i>thēsauros</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>treasure</i> ,
<i>pilus</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>cap</i> ,	<i>uterus</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>womb</i> ,
<i>sagum</i> ,	<i>-us</i> ,	<i>cloak</i> ,	<i>vallus</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>palisade</i> ,
<i>tergum</i> ,	<i>-us</i> ,	<i>back</i> ,			and many others.

2. The gender varies in Singular and Plural. *a.* The Plural has -a sometimes, while the Singular ends in -us (or -er) : *clivus*, *hill*, *locus*, *jest*, *locus* (*loca*, *localities*; *loci*, usually *passages in books, topics*), and many others, especially names of places.

*b.* The Plural has -i, while the Singular ends in -um : *filum*, *thread*, *frenum*, *bit*, *r̄strum*, *hoe*, and many others.

68. B. *Heteroclites*, or substantives which show different stems with the same Nominative; *Metaplasts*, or those which have certain forms from another than the Nominative stem.

1. 1st, 2d. <i>esseda</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>chariot</i> ,	<i>margarita</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>pearl</i> ,
<i>oestra</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,	<i>oyster</i> ,			
2. 1st, 5th. <i>dūritia</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,	<i>hardness</i> ,	<i>mīsteria</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,	<i>matter</i> ,
and many others. See 68, n. 2.					
3. 2d, 1st. <i>mendum</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,	<i>sault</i> ,	<i>seratum</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,	<i>wreath</i> .

The following form their Plural according to the First Declension only : *balneum*, *bath*, *dilectum*, *pleasure*, *opulum*, *banquet*, *fulmentum*, *prop.*

4. 2d, 3d. *sequester*, *trustee*, *Mulciber*, *Vulcan*.

5. 2d, 4th. Many names of trees of the Second Declension have certain cases according to the Fourth; never, however, the Gen. and Dat. Pl., and very rarely the Dat. Sing.; as *cornus*, *cypressus*, *fagus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *myrtus*, *pinus*, and a few others.

Also *angiportus*, *alley*, *colus*, *distaff*, *domus*, *house*, and a large number of substantives of the Fourth Declension which have one or two cases of the Second; so *arcus* has G. *arof*; *cōnatus* (-um), *iūsus* (-um), *vultus* have Nom. Pl. in a; *senitus* has Gen. Sing. *senātī*. See 61, nr. NN.

Finally, some substantives of the Second Declension form individual cases according to the Fourth: *fīstī* (Ac. Pl. *fīstītū*), *fretum* (N. *fretus*, Ab. *fretī*), *lectus* (G. *lectūtū*), *tributūm* (N. *tributūs*), and others.

6. 2d, 5th. *diluvium*, -īs, *flood*.

7. 3d, 2d. *Vās*, *vessel*, and *vāsum*; *palumbes*, *pigeon*, and *palumbus*; *iūger*, *acre*, and *iūgerum*; all Greek nouns in -a (G. *atis*), *as poēma*, *poem* (G. *poēmatīs*), but Pl. Gen. *poēmatōrum*, Dat. Abl. *poēmatīs*.

8. 3d, 5th. *Fames*, *hunger*, *tābes*, *corruption*, have Abl. *famē*, *tābē*; *requīs*, *quiet* (G. -ītīs) has Acc. *requīem*, Abl. *requīs*; *satiās* (G. *ātīs*) is early and late for *satiētās*, *sufficiency*, and a form *satiētās* is cited from late authors; *plēbs* (G. *plēbīs*), *conūns*, and *plēbētīs* (G. *plēbētīs*).

9. 4th, 3d. *Specus*, *cave*, has occasionally forms of the Third Declension.

10. 2d, 3d, 1st. *Vesper*, *evening*, has Acc. *vesperum*; Dat. Abl. *vesperō*; Pl. Nom. *vespera* of the Second Declension; Acc. *vesperam*; Abl. *vesperī* of the First; Gen. *vesperis*; Abl. *vespere*; Loc. *vespere*, *vesperi* of the Third.

11. 4th, 2d, 3d. *Penus*, *food*, (G. *īs*). Forms of the Second Declension are rare; of the Third early and late.

12. Variations in the same Declension: *femur* (G. *femoris*, *feminis*, etc.); *iecur* (G. *iecoris*, *iecorioris*, etc.); *pecus*, early, also *pecu* (G. *pecoris*, *pecudis*, etc.).

Also *allōc* and *allōx*, *baccar* and *baccaris*, *cassis* and *cassida*, *lac* and *lacte* (early), *pānis* and *pāne* (early), *rēte* and *rētis*, *satiās* and *satiētās*.

## II. Defective Substantives.

## I. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

69. A. Substantives used in Singular only : *Singulāria tantum.*

Most abstract substantives, and names of materials; such as  
*iustitia*, *justice*, *aurum*, *gold*.

B. Substantives used in Plural only : *Plūrālia tantum.*

<i>altaria, ium,</i>	<i>altar</i> (sing. late).	<i>insidiae,</i>	<i>ambuscade.</i>
<i>ambigēs,</i>	<i>round about.</i>	<i>lactes,</i>	<i>interlines.</i>
<i>angustiae,</i>	<i>strait.</i>	<i>lamenta,</i>	<i>lamentations.</i>
<i>antae,</i>	<i>door-poets.</i>	<i>lautomiae,</i>	<i>stone-quarries.</i>
<i>antēs,</i>	<i>rows (of vines).</i>	<i>liberi,</i>	<i>children.</i>
<i>arma, īrum,</i>	<i>arms.</i>	<i>māns,</i>	<i>shades of the dead.</i>
<i>armamenta, īrum,</i>	<i>tackle.</i>	<i>manubiae,</i>	<i>spoils.</i>
<i>bellaria, īrum,</i>	<i>dessert.</i>	<i>minae,</i>	<i>threats.</i>
<i>bigae, quadrigae,</i>	<i>two-horses, four-horses.</i>	<i>moenia, ium,</i>	<i>town-wall.</i>
	<i>chariot</i> (sing. late).	<i>nūndinae (-num),</i>	<i>market.</i>
<i>cancelli,</i>	<i>lattice.</i>	<i>nuptiae,</i>	<i>wedding.</i>
<i>caseēs,</i>	<i>toile (snare).</i>	<i>palpebrae,</i>	<i>eyelids (sing. late).</i>
<i>cauiae,</i>	<i>opening.</i>	<i>parentalia,</i>	<i>festival for dead relations.</i>
<i>cervicēs,</i>	<i>neck</i> (sing. early, late, and poet.).	<i>parietinae,</i>	<i>ruins.</i>
<i>cibaria,</i>	<i>victuals.</i>	<i>penatēs,</i>	<i>the Penates.</i>
<i>claustrum,</i>	<i>lock</i> (sing. late).	<i>phalerae,</i>	<i>trappings.</i>
<i>clitellae,</i>	<i>pack-saddle.</i>	<i>praecordia, īrum,</i>	<i>diaphragm.</i>
<i>cōdīcilli,</i>	<i>a short note.</i>	<i>praestrigiae,</i>	<i>jugglers' tricks.</i>
<i>compedita,</i>	<i>settlers.</i>	<i>precēs, -um,</i>	<i>prayer.</i>
<i>crepundia, īrum,</i>	<i>rattle.</i>	<i>primitiae,</i>	<i>first-fruits.</i>
<i>cūnae,</i>	<i>cradle.</i>	<i>quisquiliae,</i>	<i>rubbish.</i>
<i>divitiae,</i>	<i>riches.</i>	<i>reliquiae,</i>	<i>remains.</i>
<i>dūmēta, īrum,</i>	<i>thorn-bush.</i>	<i>rēnēs,</i>	<i>kidneys.</i>
<i>epulæ (epulum),</i>	<i>banquet.</i>	<i>salinæ,</i>	<i>salt-pits.</i>
<i>exubiae,</i>	<i>watching.</i>	<i>scālæc,</i>	<i>stairway.</i>
<i>exsequiae,</i>	<i>funeral procession.</i>	<i>sentēs,</i>	<i>brambles.</i>
<i>exta, īrum,</i>	<i>the internal organs.</i>	<i>spolia, īrum,</i>	<i>spoils</i> (sing. late, and poet.).
<i>exuviae,</i>	<i>equipments.</i>		<i>betrothal.</i>
<i>facētiae,</i>	<i>willīctism</i> (sing. ear- ly and late).	<i>spōnsalia, ium,</i>	<i>succor (early and late).</i>
<i>fāsti (fāstis),</i>	<i>calendar.</i>	<i>suppetiae,</i>	<i>winged sandals.</i>
<i>fauēs,</i>	<i>gullet.</i>	<i>tālkria, ium,</i>	<i>darkness.</i>
<i>fāriae,</i>	<i>holidays.</i>	<i>tenebrae,</i>	<i>warm baths.</i>
<i>fibra,</i>	<i>breezes.</i>	<i>thermae,</i>	<i>tonills.</i>
<i>forēs,</i>	<i>door</i> (sing. early, late and poet.).	<i>tūnsillae,</i>	<i>colic.</i>
<i>frāga, īrum,</i>	<i>strawberries.</i>	<i>tormina,</i>	<i>tricks.</i>
<i>grātēs,</i>	<i>thanks.</i>	<i>trīcae,</i>	<i>necessaries.</i>
<i>hiberna,</i>	<i>winter quarters.</i>	<i>ūtēnsilia, ium,</i>	<i>folding-doors.</i>
<i>Idūs, Kalendae,</i>	<i>Ides, Calenda,</i>	<i>valvae,</i>	<i>scouring</i> (sing. poet and late).
<i>Nōnae,</i>	<i>Nones.</i>	<i>verbera, um,</i>	<i>a legal claim.</i>
<i>incūnabula,</i>	<i>swaddling-clothes.</i>	<i>vindiciæ,</i>	<i>shrubbery.</i>
<i>indūtiae,</i>	<i>truce.</i>	<i>virgulta, īrum,</i>	<i>entrails</i> (sing. poet and late).
<i>inferiae,</i>	<i>sacrifices for the dead.</i>	<i>viscera,</i>	

NOTES.—1. Four of these have the Abl. Sing. in -e: *ambige, compede, fauce, preece.*

2. Names of persons or towns, and collectives and the like, may be either *singularia tantum, as Hippiter; Roma; capillus, hair; or pluralia tantum, as mādrēs, ancestors; Quirītēs; liberī, children; pulmōnēs, lungs.* Many of these are not included in the above list, which is meant to contain only the principal forms.

Akin to *pluralia tantum* are :

C. Substantives used in Plural with a special sense : *Heterologa.*

<i>aedēs, is,</i>	<i>temple (better aedēs),</i>	<i>aedēs,</i>	<i>house, palace.</i>
<i>aqua,</i>	<i>water,</i>	<i>aquaē,</i>	<i>mineral springs.</i>
<i>auxilium,</i>	<i>help,</i>	<i>auxilia,</i>	<i>auxiliaries, reinforcements.</i>
<i>carcer,</i>	<i>prison,</i>	<i>carcerēs,</i>	<i>barriers.</i>
<i>castrum,</i>	<i>fort,</i>	<i>castra,</i>	<i>camp.</i>
<i>cōra,</i>	<i>wax,</i>	<i>cōrae,</i>	<i>waxen tablets.</i>
<i>comitium,</i>	<i>place of assemblage,</i>	<i>comitia,</i>	<i>assemblage for voting.</i>
<i>cōpia,</i>	<i>abundance,</i>	<i>cōpiae,</i>	<i>forces, troops.</i>
<i>dēlicium,</i>	<i>pleasure,</i>	<i>dēliciae,</i>	<i>pet.</i>
<i>facultās,</i>	<i>capability,</i>	<i>facultatēs,</i>	<i>goods.</i>
<i>finis,</i>	<i>end, limit,</i>	<i>finēs,</i>	<i>territory, borders.</i>
<i>fortūna,</i>	<i>fortune,</i>	<i>fortūnae,</i>	<i>possessions.</i>
<i>habēna,</i>	<i>strap,</i>	<i>habēnae,</i>	<i>reins.</i>
<i>impedimentum,</i>	<i>hindrance,</i>	<i>impedimenta,</i>	<i>baggage.</i>
<i>littera,</i>	<i>letter (of the alphabet),</i>	<i>litterae,</i>	<i>epistle, literature.</i>
<i>lūdus,</i>	<i>game, school,</i>	<i>lūdi,</i>	<i>public games.</i>
<i>opera,</i>	<i>work,</i>	<i>operae,</i>	<i>workmen.</i>
<i>pars,</i>	<i>part,</i>	<i>partēs,</i>	<i>also role.</i>
<i>rōstrum,</i>	<i>beak,</i>	<i>rōstra,</i>	<i>the tribunal at Rome.</i>
<i>sors,</i>	<i>lot,</i>	<i>sorsēs,</i>	<i>also oracle.</i>
<i>tabula,</i>	<i>board, tablet,</i>	<i>tabulæ,</i>	<i>also accounts.</i>
<i>vigilia,</i>	<i>a night-watch,</i>	<i>vigiliæ,</i>	<i>pickets.</i>

2. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

70. A. Substantives occurring in only one case : Gen. *dicīs, form*; Acc. *infītīs* (*fre*), (*to lie*); *peccūm* (*fre*), (*to perish*); Abl. *pondō, in weight*; Sponte, *of free will*; *tābō, corruption* (Gen. late); and many verbs in *ū*, as *accūtū, admonītū, arcessūtū, cōcōtū, compressū, concēsū, domītū, inductū, interponītū, invitātū, iūsū* (other forms late), *initītū, mandātū, missū, nātū, permītū, prōmptū, rogātū*. A few others occur occasionally in anti-classical and post-classical Latin.

B. Substantives with only two cases : *fīs, nefīs*, Sing. N. Ac.; *instar*, Sing. N. Ac.; *internecīd*, Sing. Ac. Ab.; *naucum*, Sing. G. Ac.; *secūn*, Sing. N. Ac.; *spinter*, Sing. N. Ac.; *suppetīa*, Plur. N. Ac., and a few others. Some verbs in -us have in Plural only Nom. and Acc., as *impētūs, monītūs*. Greek neutrals in -os have only Nom. and Acc. Singular.

C. Substantives with three cases : *faex*, Sing. N., D., Plur. Ab.; *vīrus, vīme*; Sing. N., G., Ab.

D. Defective substantives with more than three cases are numerous, but in the classical period the most important are : *calx, līme, obs, [daps], dīca, [dīciō], fīmen, blāst, forum, [frīx], [indīgō], later, lux, [opē], dīs, mōnū, pāx, rēmex, vīs, [vīx]*, and most substantives of the Fifth Declension. The Nominatives in brackets do not occur, but only oblique cases.

E. *Nēmō, nobody*, substitutes for Gen. and Abl. *nīllīs homīnis*, and *nīllīs homīne*. In the Dat. and Acc. it is normal ; *nēmīnī, nēmīnēm*.

71.

## III. Peculiarities.

ās, assis (m.), <i>a copper.</i>	iter, itineris (n.), <i>way, route.</i>
ānceps, ancupis, <i>fooler.</i>	īecur, īecoris (n.), <i>īiver.</i>
bōs (for bova), bovis (c.), ox, cow.	īecinoris, īecineris, īocineris.
G. Pl. bōum.	īappiter, Iovis.
D. Ab. bōbus, bōbus.	mei, mellis (n.), <i>honey.</i>
caput, capitū (n.), <i>head.</i>	nix, nivis (f.), <i>snow.</i>
anceps, ancipitis, <i>two-headed.</i>	os, ossis (n.), bone (48 n.).
praeceps, -cipitis, <i>headlong.</i>	ōs, ōris (n.), <i>mouth.</i>
carō, carnis (f.), <i>meat.</i>	pollis, pollinis (m.), <i>flour.</i>
Pl. G. carnūm.	sanguis, sanguinis (m.), <i>blood.</i>
Cerēs, Cereris, Ceres.	senex, senis, <i>old man.</i>
farr, farris (n.) <i>spelt.</i>	supellōx, supellōtillis (f.), <i>furniture.</i>
fel, fellis (n.), <i>gall.</i>	Venus, Veneris, Venus.
femur, femoris (n.), <i>leg.</i>	
feminis.	

## ADJECTIVES.

72. The adjective adds a quality to the substantive. Adjectives have the same declension as substantives, and according to the stem-characteristic are of the First and Second, or Third Declension.

## Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

73. Stems in -o for masculine and neuter, -a for feminine; nominative in -us, -a, -um; (er), -a, -um. The same variations in termination occur as in the substantives; except that adjectives in -ius form Singular Genitive and Vocative regularly. See 33, R. 1 and 2.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sc.—N. bonus,	bona,	bonum.	Pl.—boni,	bonae,	bona.
G. boni,	bonae,	boni.	bonōrum,	bonōrum,	bonōrum.
D. bonō,	bonae,	bonō.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis.
Ac. bonum,	benam,	bonum.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona.
V. bone,	bona,	bonum.	boni,	bonae,	bona.
Ab. bonō,	bonē,	bonō.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

Miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*

Sc.—N. miser,	miserā,	miserum.	Pl.—miseri,	miserae,	misera.
G. miserī,	miserāe,	miserī.	miserōrum,	miserōrum,	miserōrum.
D. miserō,	miserāe,	miserō.	miseris,	miseris,	miseris.
Ac. miserum,	miseram,	miserum.	miserōs,	miserās,	misera.
V. miser,	miserā,	miserum.	miseri,	miserae,	misera.
Ab. miserō,	miserē,	miserō.	miseris,	miseris,	miseris.

*Piger, pigra, pigrum, slow.*

Sc.—N.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.	Pl.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
G.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī.		pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum.
D.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō.		pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.
Ac.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum.		pigrōs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.
V.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.		pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
Ab.	pigrō,	pigrē,	pigrō.		pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

REMARK.—For irregularities in the declension of *ambō, both, duo, two*, see 95; for *meus, my*, see 100, n. 1.

74. Stems in *-ro* follow the same principle in the formation of the Nominative masculine as the substantives, except that *-us* is retained in *ferus, wild, properus, quick, praeproperus, praeposterus, absurd, inferus, lower* (*infer* is early), *superus, upper* (*super* is early), and a few others in late Latin; also when *-ro* is preceded by a long vowel; as, *austērus, harsh, mātūrus, early, prōcerus, tall, pūrus, pure, sevērus, seriosus, sincērus, sincere, sērus, late, vērus, true*.

REMARKS.—1. *Dextera, dexterum, etc., right*, are found side by side with *dextra, dextrum, etc.*, throughout the language (see 8, 2). *CAESAR* uses only the shorter form.

2. A few adjectives of this class lack the Nom. Sing. wholly or in part; so there is no *cōterus* or *posterus* in the classical period.

75. NOTES ON THE CASES.—1. The Gen. Sing. in *-i* from adjectives in *-ius* occurs occasionally in inscriptions and in late authors. The Gen. Sing. fem. in early Latin had sometimes *-ī*, and in inscriptions occasionally *-aes* and *-os*.

2. The Dat. Sing. fem. in early Latin occasionally ended in *-ī*, and in the oldest inscriptions in *-ī*.

3. In early inscriptions the *-d* of the Abl. is occasionally retained.

4. Very rarely in early inscriptions does the Nom. Pl. masc. end in *-īs*, and in one case the Nom. Pl. fem. of a perfect participle ends in *-ī*.

5. In poetry, but at all periods, we find *-um* alongside of *-īrum* and *-īrum* in the Gen. Plural.

6. In the Dat. and Abl. Pl. *-īs* from adjectives in *-ius* is often contracted to *-ī*; usually in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names. In early inscriptions *-ībus* is found occasionally for *-īs* in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. feminine.

76. The so-called pronominal adjectives *alter, one of the two*; *alteruter* (a combination of *alter* and *uter*), *either of the two*; *alius, other*; *neuter, neither*; *nullus, none*; *sólus, sole*; *tōtus, whole*; *ūllus, any*; *ūnus, one*; *uter, which of the two*, and their compounds, show the following variations in declension:

1. They usually make the Gen. Sing. *in-ius* for all genders.

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. *alius* is very rare, and as a possessive its place is usually taken by *alienus*.

2. The *i* of the ending *-ius* (except in *alius*) could be shortened in poetry. This was usually the case with *alter*, and regularly in the compounds of *uter*; as, *utriusque*.

*Note*.—The regular forms are early and rare; in classical prose only *nulli* (*Cic. Roec. Com.* 16, 48) and occasionally *aliae*.

2. They usually make the Dat. Sing. in *-i*.

*Note*.—Regular forms are sometimes found, but in classical prose only *alterae*, *nulli*, *toti*, and perhaps *totae*. *All* is found in early Latin for *aliis*.

3. In the compound *alteruter* we find usually both parts declined; sometimes the second only.

4. *Alius* makes Nom. and Acc. Sing. neuter irregularly: *aliud*.

*Note*.—*Aliis* and *aliid*, for *alius* and *aliud*, are early and rare; the latter, however, occurs several times in *Luca.* and once in *CATULLUS*.

#### Adjectives of the Third Declension.

77. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in *-i*, with two (rarely three) endings in the Nominative.

The remaining adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the Nominative.

#### ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

78. 1. These have (except stems in *-ri*) one ending in the Nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter.

Most stems in *-i* form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in *s*; but the Nominative neuter weakens the characteristic *i* into *e*. (Compare *mare*, *sea*.)

2. Several stems in *-i*, preceded by *r* (*cr*, *tr*, *br*), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing *s*, but by dropping the *i* and inserting short *e* before the *r*, as, stem *ācri*, *sharp*, Nom., *ācer* (m.), *ācris* (f.), *ācre* (n.).

These adjectives are *celer*, *alacrer*, *campester*, *celeber*, *celer*, *equester*, *palūster*, *pedester*, *puter*, *salūber*, *silvester*, *terrester*, *voluener*, and the last four months; and are sometimes called adjectives of *three endings*.

The *e* belongs to the stem in *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*, and therefore appears in all cases.

	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.—N.	facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile,	ſcēr, <i>sharp</i> ,	ſcris,	ſcēr,
G.	faciliſ,	faciliſ,	ſcriſ,	ſcriſ,	ſcriſ,
D.	faciliſ,	faciliſ,	ſcriſ,	ſcriſ,	ſcriſ,
Ac.	facilem,	facile,	ſcērem,	ſcērem,	ſcēre,
V.	faciliſ,	facile,	ſcēr,	ſcriſ,	ſcēr,
Ab.	faciliſ.	faciliſ.	ſcriſ.	ſcriſ.	ſcriſ.
Pl.—N.	faciliſe,	faciliſa,	ſcēſe,	ſcēſe,	ſcriſa,
G.	faciliſum,	faciliſum,	ſcriſum,	ſcriſum,	ſcriſum,
D.	faciliſbus,	faciliſbus,	ſcriſibus,	ſcriſibus,	ſcriſibus,
Ac.	faciliſe (is),	faciliſa,	ſcēſe (is),	ſcēſe (is),	ſcriſa,
V.	faciliſe,	faciliſa,	ſcēſe,	ſcēſe,	ſcriſa,
Ab.	faciliſbus.	faciliſbus.	ſcriſibus.	ſcriſibus.	ſcriſibus.

**REMARK.**—Stems in -ali and -ari differ from the substantival declension in not suffering apocope in the Nom. Sing. neuter, except occasionally capital. See 56.

**79. REMARKS.—1.** Many adjectives of two endings (except stems in -ri) have also -e in the Ablative. This is found chiefly in the poets, very rarely, if ever, in classical prose, occasionally in early and pre-Augustan prose, and more often in inscriptions. When, however, these adjectives become proper names, -e is the rule. See 57, R. 2, N.

**2.** The Gen. Pl. in -um is found occasionally in inscriptions, frequently in the poets. In classical prose are found only *Titienum* and *familiārum*.

**NOTES.—1.** The Nom. Pl. has in early Latin not unfrequently -is.

2. In the Acc. Pl., masc. and fem., of adjectives, the ending -is (fīs) is found alongside of -e in every period of the language, though in decreasing proportion, and after the Augustan period principally in *omnis*.

#### ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

**80.** Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) close with l, r, s, a p mute, or a t mute. Examples are :

vigil, *alert*, memor, *mindful*, pauper, *poor*, cicur, *tame*, pūbēs, *adult*, vetus, *old*, vigilis. memoris. pauperis. cicuris. pūberis. veteris.

particeps, *sharing*, participis. caelēbs, *unmarried*, caelibis. inops, *poor*, inopis.

audāx, *bold*, felix, *lucky*, duplex, *double*, ferōx, *ferocious*, trux, *savage*, audācis. felicis. duplicitis. ferōcis. trucis.

dives, *rich*, dēses, *lothful*, compos, *possessed of*, prūdēns, *wise*, concors, *harmonious*, divitis. dēsidis. compotis. prūdentis. concordis.

Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

**81. The stem varieties are :**

1. Liquid stems in (a) -l: *vigil* (G. *vigil-is*), *alert*, *pervigil*; (b) -r: *pár* (G. *par-is*), *equal*, *impár* (these two lengthen the vowel in the Nom.), *compar*, and three others; *pauper* (G. *pauper-is*), *poor*, *über*; *memor* (G. *memor-is*), *mindful*, *immemor*; *concolor* (G. -ör-is), and three other compounds of color; *dégener* (G. -er-is), from *genus* (G. *gener-is*).

2. Sibilant stems in (a) -s: *exos* (G. *exoss-is*), *bonesless* (LUCR.); (b) -r: *gnárus* (G. *gnárur-is*; PLAUT.), *Lignus*, *vetus*; *púbēs* (G. *púber-is*), *impúbēs*.

3. Mute stems in (a) A K-mute: *andáx* (G. *audáx-is*), *bold*, and four others: *félix* (G. *filio-is*), *pernix*, *atrōx* (G. *atrōc-is*), *ferōx*, *vélōx*; *exlōx* (G. -lōg-is) ; *trux* (G. *true-is*), *redux*; the multiplicatives in -plex (G. -pliç-is), as *simplex*, etc. (b) A P-mute: *inops* (G. *inop-is*); *cælebs* (G. *caelib-is*); compounds of -ceps (G. -cip-is, from *capere*), as *particeps*, and of -ceps (G. -cipit-is, from *caput*), as *anceps*, *praeceps* (PLAUT. sometimes uses, in the Nom., *ancipes*, *praedipes*, etc.). (c) A T-mute: *hebes* (G. *hebet-is*) and three others; *locuplēs* (G. -plēt-is) and three others: *dives* (G. *divit-is*), for which in poetry *dis* (G. *dit-is*), *sūspes*; *compos* (G. *compt-is*), *impos*; *superstes* (G. -sti-tis), *clēs*; *exhārēs* (G. -dēt-is); *dēces* (G. *dēcid-is*), *recess*; compounds from substantives: *cōnsors* (G. -sort-is), *exsors*; *concors*, *discors*, *miseriōrs*, *zōors*, *vēors*; *expers* (G. -ert-is), *iners*, *solliers*; *āmēns* (G. *āment-is*), *dēmēns*; *intercor* (G. *cut-is*); *pernox* (G. *nōct-is*); *bipēs* (G. -ped-is), *quadrupēs*, *ālipēs*; adjectives and participate in -āns, -āns (G. -ant-is, -ent-is); and proper names in -ās (G. -t-is), -is (G. -rt-is), -ns (G. -nt-is), -rs (G. -rt-is), *Arpīns*, *Sannīs*, *Vaiēns*, *Camers*.

**82. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.**

In the oblique cases they follow in part the declension of vowel stems; thus,

1. In the Ablative Singular they have i and e—when used as adjectives commonly i; when used as substantives commonly e.

The participles, as such, have e; but used as substantives or adjectives, either e or i, with tendency to i.

2. In the neuter Plural they have ia; except *vetus*, *old*, which has *vetera*. Many have no neuter.

3. In the Genitive Plural they have: ium, when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles have ium.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sg.—N.	<i>felix, lucky, felix,</i>		<i>prudēns, wise, prudēns,</i>		<i>vetus, old, vetus,</i>	
G.	<i>felicis,</i>	<i>felicis,</i>	<i>prudentis,</i>	<i>prudentis,</i>	<i>veteris,</i>	<i>veteris,</i>
D.	<i>felici,</i>	<i>felici,</i>	<i>prudenti,</i>	<i>prudenti,</i>	<i>veteri,</i>	<i>veteri,</i>
Ac.	<i>felicem,</i>	<i>felix,</i>	<i>prudentem,</i>	<i>prudēns,</i>	<i>veterem,</i>	<i>vetus,</i>
V.	<i>felix,</i>	<i>felix,</i>	<i>prudēns,</i>	<i>prudēns,</i>	<i>vetus,</i>	<i>vetus,</i>
Ab.	<i>felici (e)</i>	<i>felici (e)</i>	<i>prudenti (e)</i>	<i>prudenti (e)</i>	<i>vetero (I)</i>	<i>vetero (I)</i>
Pl.—N.	<i>felicēs,</i>	<i>felicia,</i>	<i>prudentēs,</i>	<i>prudentia,</i>	<i>veterēs,</i>	<i>vetera,</i>
G.	<i>felicium,</i>	<i>felicum,</i>	<i>prudentium,</i>	<i>prudentium,</i>	<i>veterum,</i>	<i>veterum,</i>
D.	<i>felicibus,</i>	<i>felicibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>
Ac.	<i>felicēs,</i>	<i>felicia,</i>	<i>prudentēs,</i>	<i>prudentia,</i>	<i>veterēs,</i>	<i>vetera,</i>
V.	<i>felicēs,</i>	<i>felicia,</i>	<i>prudentēs,</i>	<i>prudentia,</i>	<i>veterēs,</i>	<i>vetera,</i>
Ab.	<i>felicibus,</i>	<i>felicibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sg.—N.	<i>amans, loving,</i>	<i>amans,</i>	Pl.—amantēs,		amantia,	
G.	<i>amantis,</i>	<i>amantis,</i>			amantium,	
D.	<i>amanti,</i>	<i>amanti,</i>			amantibus,	
Ac.	<i>amantem,</i>	<i>amans,</i>		<i>amantes (I),</i>	<i>amantia,</i>	
V.	<i>amans,</i>	<i>amans,</i>		<i>amantes,</i>	<i>amantia,</i>	
Ab.	<i>amante (I).</i>	<i>amante (I).</i>		<i>amantibus.</i>	<i>amantibus.</i>	

83. REMARK.—In early and late Latin, and at all periods in the poets, -e is often found for -i in the Abl. Singular. In classical prose we find regularly *compte*, *dēside*, *impibere*, *participe*, *paupere*, *pibere*, *superstite*, *vitere*, and frequently *divite* (but always *diti*), *quadrupede*, *sapiente*. With participles, -i is usual when they are used as adjectives, but classical prose shows -e also in *antecēns*, *candēns*, *cōsentīens*, *dēspiciēns*, *effūns*, *hiāns*, *imminēns*, *inflūns*, *prōflūns*, *cōsequēns* (but *sequēns* not before LIVY), *titubāns*, *vertēns*.

NOTES.—1. In the Nom. and Acc. Pl. -is for ē belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of the Acc. are still found in CICERO. In the case of participles -is is very common, and is the rule in VERGIL and HORACE. In the neuter, -a for -ia is found only in *tibera*, *vetera*; *ditia* is always used for the unsyncopated form *divitiae*.

2. Compound adjectives, whose primitives had -um in Gen. Pl., have usually -um instead of -ium; *quadrupēs*, *quadrupēdium*, and other compounds of pēs; *inops*, *inopum*; *supplex*, *supplicum*. Also, *dicur*, *dicurum*; *vetus*, *veterum*; *dives*, *divitum*; *locuplēs*, *locuplētum* (rare, usually -ium). In the poets and in later writers, -um is not unfrequently found where classical prose uses -ium.

#### Irregular Adjectives.

##### 84. A. ABUNDANTIA.

- Some adjectives which end in -us, -a, -um, in the classical times, show occasionally in early Latin, in the poets, and in later Latin, forms in -is, -e, e. g., *imbēcillus* and *imbēcillis*; *infrēns* and *infrēnis*; *biugus* and *biugis*, *violentus* and *violēns*; *indecōrus* and *indecōris*; so also *perpetuus* and *perpes*. In a number of other adjectives the variant forms are very rare or disputed.

2. Many adjectives which end in *-is*, *-e*, in the classical times, show parallel forms in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, in early Latin, and more rarely in late Latin. Adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, in early Latin, seem to have had a tendency to go over into forms in *-is*, *-e*. Thus, *hilarus* is the regular form in early Latin ; in CICERO it is used side by side with *hilaris*, and later *hilaris* is universal. Other examples in the classical period are *inermis* and *inermus*; *imberbis* and *imberbus*; *timaris* and *timarius*; *auxiliaris* and *auxiliarius*; *intercalaris* and *intercalarius*; *talaris* and *talarius*.

### 85. B. DEFECTIVE.

1. Several adjectives lack a Nom. Singular, wholly or in part : *as*, *ostera* (*f.*), *ostерum*, *perperum* (*n.*), *mfperum* (*n.*), *primoris* (*G.*), *bimaris* (*G.*), *bimatrix* (*G.*), *tricorporis* (*G.*), and a few others.

2. Some adjectives are defective in other cases : thus, *exspes* and *perdiua*, *-a* are found only in the Nom.; *exlex* only in the Nom. and Acc. (*exlēgem*); *pernox* only in Nom., Abl. (*pernocta*), and Nom. Pl. (*pernoctēs*, rare); *centimanus* has only the Acc. Sing. (*Hor.*, *Ov.*) ; also *unimanus* (*Liv.*), and a few others.

### C. INDECLINABLES.

*Nquam*; *potis*, and *pote* (early); *frigi*; *macte* (*mactus*, *-um*, very rare); *necesse*, *necessum*, and *necessus* (early and poetical); *volup* and *volupe* (early); and the judicial *damnā*.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of Comparison are : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings *-ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings *-is-simus*, *-a*, *-um* (earlier *-is-sumus*).

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.
<i>altus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>high</i> ,	<i>altior</i> , <i>higher</i> , <i>altius</i> ,	<i>altissimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>highest</i> .
<i>fortis</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>brave</i> ,	<i>fortior</i> ,	<i>fortissimus</i> .
<i>utilis</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>useful</i> ,	<i>utilior</i> ,	<i>utilissimus</i> .
<i>audax</i> ,	<i>audacior</i> ,	<i>audacissimus</i> .
<i>prudens</i> ,	<i>prudentior</i> ,	<i>prudentissimus</i> .

NOTE.—In early Latin we find very rarely *-ios* for *ior*; also *-ior* used for the neuter as well.

## Peculiarities.

87. 1. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative ending (-rumus) -rimus (for -simus by assimilation ; see 9, 1) directly to the Nominative masculine. The Comparative follows the rule.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
miser, a, um,	wretched,	miserior,
celer, is, e,	swifl,	celerior,
ſoer, ſcris, ſare,	ſharp,	ſerior,

miserius, celerius, ſarius,

miserrimus. celerrimus. ſoerrimus.

REMARKS.—1. *Dexter, right*, and *sinister, left*, have always *dexterior* and *sinisterior* in the Comparative. *Dexterior, worse*, *dexterimus*, lacks a Positive.

2. *Vetus, old*, has Comp. *veterior* (archaic) or *vetustior*; Sup., *veterimus*. *Maturus, ripe*, has occasionally Sup. *maturimus* in addition to the normal *maturissimus*.

NOTE.—In early Latin and in inscriptions this rule is occasionally violated. Thus *celerissimus* in ENNIUS; *integrissimus, miserissimus*, in inscriptions.

2. Some Comparatives in -er-ior, whose Positive is lacking or rare, form the Superlative either in -remus by metathesis ; or in -imus or -umus ; or in both. These are : *citerior, on this side*, *citimus* (rare) ; *exterior, outer*, *extrēmus, extimus* (latter not in Cic.) ; *dexterior* (87, 1, n. 1 ; once in Cic.), *dextimus* (rare ; not in Cic.) ; *inferior, lower*, *infimus, imus* ; *interior, inner*, *intimus* ; *posterior, hinder*, *postrēmus, postimus* ; *superior, upper*, *suprēmus, summus*.

3. Six adjectives in -ilis add -limus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative ; perhaps by assimilation : *facilis, easy* ; *difficilis, hard* ; *similis, like* ; *dissimilis, unlike* ; *gracilis, slender*, and *humilis, low*.

facilis,	Comp. facilior,	Sup. facillimus.
----------	-----------------	------------------

4. Adjectives in -dicus, -ficus, -volus, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in -dicēns, -ficēns, and -volēns.

benevolus, benevolent,	Comp. benevolentior,	Sup. benevolentissimus.
maledicus, accurvus.	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus.
magnificus, distinguished.	magnificentior,	magnificentissimus.

NOTE.—*Benevolēns, malevolēns, maledicēns*, still occur in early Latin.

5. In like manner *egēnus* and *prōvidus* form their Comparative and Superlative.

egēnus, needy,	egentior,	egentissimus.
prōvidus, far-sighted,	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus.

6. Adjectives in *-us* (*os*), preceded by a vowel (except those in *-quos*), form the Comparative and Superlative by means of *magis* and *máximus*, *more* and *most*.

<i>idōneus, M.</i>	Comp. <i>magis idōneus,</i>	Sup. <i>máximus idōneus.</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

But

<i>antiquus, old,</i>	Comp. <i>antiquior,</i>	Sup. <i>antiquissimus.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------	----------------------------

REMARK.—But *pius*, *pious*, which lacks the Comparative, forms the Superlative regularly, *piissimus* (in inscriptions also *plentissimus*) ; likewise in late Latin, *impius*.

NOTES.—1. A few words, chiefly in early Latin, show the normal comparison. In Cic. only, *assiduissimus* (adv.) and *alius*.

2. Comparison by means of *plus* and *plurimum* is late.

7. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

So *déterior* (87, 1, n. 2) ; *scior*, *swif*t, *scissimus*; *potion*, *better*, *potissimus* ; exterior, outer (87, 2), from *externus*, *on the outside*, and prep. *extra*, *without* ; superior, upper (87, 2), from *superus*, *on the top*, and prep. *suprā*, *above* ; inferior, lower (87, 2), from *inferus*, *below*, and prep. *infra*, *below* ; posterior, hinder (87, 2), from *posterus*, *coming after*, and prep. *post*, *after* ; citor, *on this side* (87, 2), from *citer*, and prep. *citri*, *on this side*.

8. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is sometimes met with only in a preposition or an adverb ; as, *ante*, *before* ; *anterior*, *that is before* ; *prope*, *near* ; *propior*, *proximus* ; *ulterior*, *further*, *ultimus*, from *ultrā*, *beyond* ; *interior*, *inner*, *intimus*, from *intrā*, *within* ; *prior*, *former*, *primus*, *first*, from *prū*, *before* ; *sequior* (late), *worse*, from *secus*.

9. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison ; especially those denoting *material*, *relationship*, *time*, etc.

*Novus, new, falsus, untrue, meritus, deserved*, have no Comparative.

*Longinquus, afar, propinquus, near, salutaris, healthful, iuvenis, young* (Comparative *funior*), and *senex, old* (Comparative *senior*), have no Superlative.

"Youngest" and "oldest" are expressed by *minimus*, *máximus* (*náttū*).

NOTE.—The Platine and late *mediocimus*, *middlemost*, lacks Positive and Comparative.

10. *Dives, rich*, shows in Cic. only *divitior* and *divitissimus* ; otherwise the Comparative and Superlative are found principally in poetry and later prose, the more usual forms being the syncopated *ditior*, *ditissimus*.

88. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison : as, *amans*, *loving*, *amantior*, *amantissimus* ; *apertus, open*, *apertior*, *apertissimus*.

89. The Superlative follows the declension of adjectives of Three Endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative is declined according to the Third Declension, thus :

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sc.—N.	altior,	altius.	Pl.—altiorēs,	altiora.
G.	altioris,	altioris.	altiorum,	altiorum.
D.	altiorī,	altiorī.	altioribus,	altioribus.
Ac.	altiorem,	altius.	altiorēs,	altiora.
V.	altior,	altius.	altiorēs,	altiora.
Ab.	altiore and -i,	altiore and -i.	altioribus,	altioribus.

REMARKS.—1. In classical prose the Abl. Sing. ends in -e. In the poets and in early and late prose, often in -i.

2. Extremely rare is the ending -is for -es in the Nom. Plural. In the Acc. Pl. this ending -is (-ēis) is more common but still not frequent, and confined mainly to plūris, minōris, mājoris, meljoris. The neuter in -ia is found rarely in complūria, and perhaps once in plūria.

3. The Gen. Pl. in -ium is found in plūrium and complūrium only.

## 90.

### Irregular Comparison.

bonus,	good,	meliōr,	melius,	optimus.
malus,	bad,	pēior,	pēius,	peccimius.
māgnus,	great,	māior,	māius,	māximus.
parvus,	small,	minor,	minus,	minimus.
multus,	much,	S. —	plūs (no Dat. nor Abl.),	plūrimus.
		Pl. plūrēs,	plūra,	
		complūrēs,	complūra and -ia.	
nēquam,	worthless,	nēquior,	nēquius,	nēquissimus.
frūgl (indecl.), frugal,		frūgallor,		frugallissimus.

## ADVERBS.

91. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of nominal or pronominal stems.

The cases from which they are derived are principally the Accusative and the Ablative.

1. (a) From the Accusative are Substantival Adverbs in -tim. This was a favorite formation, and is used very often in all periods. In the classical times the adverbs of this form are :

Acervātim, articulātim, centuriātim, certātim, generātim, gradātim, gregātim, membrātim, paullātim, privātim, sēparātim, singulātim, statim, summātim, viritātim, tributātim, strictim, pedetemptim, raptim, furtim, partim, praesertim, obnōstim, and a few others; disguised forms of -tim are : caesim, insim, sēnsim, cursim, passim, vicissim, for caed-tim (9, 1-3), etc.: also interim.

(b) A few very common adverbs are, perhaps, from Accusative Singular feminine of adjectives and pronominal stems. Chiefly *clam*, *secretly*, *cōram*, *in one's presence*, *palam*, *openly*, *perperam*, *wrongly*, *tam*, *so*, *quam*, *as*, *aliquam*, *some*, *iam*, *already*; and forms in *-friam*, *as bifariam*, *multifariam*, etc.

(c) The Accusative Singular neuter of many adjectival and pronominal stems is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

*Multum*, *much*; *paullum*, *a little*; *nimum*, *too much*; *ceterum*, *for the rest*; *primum*, *first*; *postremum*, *finally*; *potissimum*, *chiefly*; *facile*, *easily*; *dulce*, *sweetly*; *triste*, *sadly*; *impine*, *scot-free*; *aliquantum*, *somewhat*, and others.

To the Comparatives belong *magis*, *more*; *nimis*, *too*; *satis*, *enough*.

(d) The Accusative Plural feminine is found in *alia*, *at other times*, perhaps in *forūs*, *out-of-doors*. The Accusative Plural neuter is found in *alia*, *cetera*, *omnia*, and occasionally in *reliqua* and a few others.

2. (a) From the Ablative are some substantival adverbs; the principal ones in classical Latin being *domī*, *at home*; *impeditī*, *greatly*; *initiī*, *at the outset*; *modo*, *only*; *opidī*, *very*; *principiī*, *in the beginning*; *privatī*, *privately*; *vulgī*, *commonly*; *forte*, *by chance*; *magnopere*, *greatly*, and other compounds of *-opere*; *gratīa*, *for nothing*, and *ingratiīa*, and a few others.

(b) Ablatives are also adverbs in *ē* from adjectives in *-us* and *-er*:

*altus*, *lofty*, *altē*;  *pulcher*, *beautiful*, *pulchrē*; *miser*, *wretched*, *miserē*.

Also *ferē* and *fermē* (Sup.), *almost*.

(c) The Ablative of some adjectives and pronouns serves as an adverb:

*tutē*, *safely*; *falsē*, *falsely*; *perpetuē*, *ceaselessly*; *continuē*, *forthwith*; *imprōvisē*, *unexpectedly*; *primē*, *at first*; *hēc*, *here*; *istē*, *there*, etc.

(d) In a few cases the adverbial form is the Abl. Sing. feminine:

*aliē*, *otherwise*; *aliquē*, *somehow*; *dexterē* and *dextrē*, *to the right*; *sinistrē* and *laevē*, *to the left hand*; *quē*, *on which side*; *rēctē*, *straightway*, and some others.

(e) A large number of these adjectives show adverbs in two endings, sometimes with a difference in meaning:

*cōnsultē* and *cōnsultī*, *purposely*; *certē*, *at least*, and *certī*, *certainly* (*certē scī*, *I certainly know*; *certī scī*, *I know for certain*); *rēctē*, *thinly*, and *rārē*, *seldom*; *vērē*, *in truth*, and *vērī*, *true but*; *rēctē*, *correctly*, and *rēctī*, *straightway*; *dexterē* or *dextrē*, *to the right*; and *dexterē*, *skillfully*.

(f) Ablatives are also *qui*, *how* (archaic), *nōquicquam*, *to no purpose*; *alioqui*, *otherwise*; perhaps also *diū*, *by day*, and its compounds.

3. Locative in origin are the following, in addition to those mentioned under 37, 5 : *dīs* (in combination with numeral adjectives in early Latin, as *dīs septimi*) and its compounds *cottidiā*, *daily*, *hodiā*, *today*, *pridiā*, *the day before*, *postridiā*, *the day after*; *quotannī*, *yearly*; *foris*, *outside*. Also many forms from the pronominal stems, as *hic*, *illīc*, *istīc* (*isti* belongs to early Latin and VERG.); *sīc*, *so*, *ut* (*uti*, *utēl*), *as*; *ibi*, *there*, and its compounds *alibi*, *ibidem*; *ubi* (*oubi*), *where*, and its compounds.

4. A number of adverbs cannot be referred to a definite case, as : adverbs of *separation* : *hinc*, *hence*, *illino* (*illim*), *istino* (*istim*), *thence*; temporal adverbs : *tunc*, *then*, *cum*, *when*, *quondam*, *once*, *quando*, *when?* and its compounds; also, *ante*, *before*; *post* (*poste*), *after*; *paene*, *almost*; *prope*, *proper*, *near*; *saepē*, *often*; *circiter*, *around*; *praeter*, *past*; *ergō*, *therefore*; *crās*, *to-morrow*; *haut* (*hau*, *haut*), *not*; *item*, *likewise*; *susque dēque*, *up and down*; *vix*, *scarcely*.

**92.** 1. Adjectives and participles of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding *-ter* (-*iter*) to the stem ; stems in *-nt* dropping the *t*, and stems in a *k*-inute inserting the connecting vowel *i* before the ending ; also a few adjectives of the Second Declension :

*fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*; *ferōx*, *wild*, *ferōriter*; *prudēns*, *foresighted*, *prudenter*.

Exceptions : *audāx*, *bold*, *audāc-ter* (seldom *audāciter*); *difficilis*, *hard to do*, *difficulter*, *difficiliter* (but generally, *nōn facile*, *vix*, *aegrō*), and others.

2. A large number of adjectives of the Second Declension in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, and *-er*, *-era*, *-erum*, form in early and late Latin their adverbs by dropping the stem vowel and adding *-iter* (those in *-tus* added *-er* only). Many of these occur in classical writers alongside of the normal form in *-s*: *hūmāniter* and *hūmāns*, *humanely*; *largiter* and *largē*, *lavishly*; *turbulenter* and *turbulents*, *riotously*.

3. Some adverbs of *origin* are formed from substantival or adjectival stems by the ending *-tus*. In classical Latin mainly *antiquitus*, *from early time*; *divinitus*, *from the gods*; *funditus*, *from the foundation*; *penitus*, *from the depths*; *rādicitus*, *from the roots*; also *intus*, *from within*.

4. The termination *-vorsus*, *-vorum*, is used to show *direction whither*; but in classical Latin it is found principally in the adverbs : *intrōversus* (*intrōvorsus*), *inwards*; *prōversus* (*-um*), *onwards*; *rūrsus* (*-um*, *rūsum*), *back*; *sūrsum* (*sūsum*), *up*; *vorsum*, *towards*.

5. A very large number of adverbs are formed by adding various other terminations : *as*, *-de* : *inde*, *thence*, *unde*, *whence*; *-dem* : *pridem*, *long ago*, *itidem*, *likewise*, etc.; *-dō* : *quando*, *when*, etc.; *-dam* : *quondam*, *once*; *-dum* : *dūdum*, *a while ago*; *vixdum*, *hardly yet*, etc.; *-per* : *nūper*, *lately*, *parumper*, *a little*, *semper*, *always*, etc.; *-quam* : *unquam*, *ever*, *numquam*, *never*, etc.; *-secus* : *extrinsecus*, *outside*, etc.; *-tenus* : *quātūnus*, *how far?* etc.

6. Syntactical and miscellaneous : *admodum, very (to a degree), dēnuō, anew, imprimis; super, above, and its compounds, dēsuper, insuper; exemplū, at once; usque, to, and its compounds; in loco, in turn; adeō, so; antea, before; interea, meanwhile; postea, after; praeterea, besides; propter ea, on that account, and a few others.*

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

93. The Comparative of the adverb is the Accusative neuter of the Comparative of the adjective. The Superlative ends in *-is-simē, -er-rimē, etc.*, according to the Superlative of the adjective.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altē, <i>lo'ely,</i>	altius,	altissimē.
pulchrē, <i>beautifuly,</i>	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē.
miserē, <i>poorly,</i>	miserius,	miserrimē.
fortiter, <i>bravely,</i>	fortius,	fortissimē.
audācter, <i>boldly,</i>	audāctius,	audāctissimē.
tūtē, <i>safely,</i>	tūtius,	tūtissimē.
facile, <i>easily,</i>	facilius,	facillimē.
bene, <i>well,</i>	malius,	optimē.
male, <i>ill,</i>	pēius,	peccimē.
[parvus], <i>small,</i>	minus, <i>less,</i>	minimē, <i>least.</i>
[magnus], <i>great,</i>	magis, <i>more,</i>	maximē, <i>most.</i>
multum, <i>much,</i>	plus, <i>more,</i>	plūrimū.
cito, <i>quickly,</i>	citius,	citissimē.
dū, <i>long,</i>	dūtius,	dūtissimē.
saepe, <i>often,</i>	saepeius,	saepeissimē.
nūper, <i>recently,</i>	—,	nūperrimē.
satis, <i>enough,</i>	satius, <i>better,</i>	

## NUMERALS.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

94. The Cardinal numerals answer the question *quot, how many?* and are the numbers used in counting. The Ordinal numerals are derived from these and answer the question *quotus, which one in the series?* They are as follows :

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1	I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum
2	II	duo, duae, duo
3	III	trēs, tria
4	IV	quattuor
5	V	quinque
6	VI	sex
7	VII	septem

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

primus, -a, -um (prior)
secundus (alter)
tertius
quārtus
quintus
sextus
septimus

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

8	VIII	octō	octāvus
9	IX	novem	nōmūs
10	X	decem	decimūs
11	XI	undecim	ūndēcimūs
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimūs
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimūs
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimūs
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimūs
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimūs
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimūs
18	XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsimūs
19	XIX	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcēsimūs
20	XX	vigintī	vīcēsimūs
21	XXI	vigintī unus	vīcēsimūs primūs
22	XXII	vigintī duo	vīcēsimūs secundūs
23	XXIII	vigintī trēs	vīcēsimūs tertius
24	XXIV	vigintī quattuor	vīcēsimūs quārtus
25	XXV	vigintī quinque	vīcēsimūs quintus
26	XXVI	vigintī sex	vīcēsimūs sextus
27	XXVII	vigintī septem	vīcēsimūs septimus
28	XXVIII	duodētrigintā	duodētrīcēsimūs
29	XXIX	ūndētrigintā	ūndētrīcēsimūs
30	XXX	trigintā	trīcēsimūs
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimūs
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimūs
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimūs
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimūs
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimūs
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimūs
100	C	centum	centēsimūs
101	CI	centum et unus	centēsimūs primūs [mus
115	CXV	centum et quindecim	centēsimūs (et) quintus deci-
120	CXX	centum et vigintī	centēsimūs vīcēsimūs
121	CXXI	centum vigintī unus	centēsimūs vīcēsimūs primūs
200	CC	ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēsimūs
300	CCC	trecenti	trecentēsimūs
400	CCCC	quadringenti	quadringentēsimūs
500	D (IO)	quingenti	quingentēsimūs
600	DC	sēcenti	sēcentēsimūs
700	DCC	septingenti	septingentēsimūs
800	DCCC	octingenti	octingentēsimūs
900	DCCCU	nōngenti	nōngentēsimūs
1000	M (IO)	mille	mīllēsimūs

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.			2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.	
1001	MI	mille et <i>unus</i>	millēsimus	primus
1101	MCI	mille centum <i>unus</i>	millēsimus	centēsimus primus
1120	MCXX	mille centum <i>viginti</i>	millēsimus	centēsimus <i>vicē-</i>
			[ <i>unus</i>	<i>simus</i> [simus primus
1121	MCXXI	mille centum <i>viginti</i>	millēsimus	centēsimus <i>vicē-</i>
1200	MCC	mille <i>ducenti</i>	millēsimus	ducentēsimus
2000	MM	duo <i>milia</i> ( <i>millia</i> )	bis millēsimus	<i>bina milia</i>
2222		duo <i>milia ducenti vi-</i>	bis millēsimus	<i>ducentēsimus</i>
		<i>ginti duo</i>		<i>vicēsimus secundus</i>
5000	I <sup>C</sup> O	quīque <i>milia</i>	quinquiē	millēsimus
		<i>quaīa milia</i>		
10,000	CCIOO	decem <i>milia</i>	decīē	millēsimus
		<i>dēna milia</i>		
21,000		<i>tinum et viginti milia</i>	semel et	<i>vicēsimus millēsimus</i>
100,000		<i>centum milia</i>	centīē	millēsimus
		<i>centēna milia</i> [ <i>milias</i>		
1,000,000		<i>decīē centēna (centum)</i>	decīē	<i>centēsimus millēsimus</i>

95. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except : *unus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti*, *two hundred*, and the plural *milia*, *thousands*, which forms *miliūm* and *milibus*.

			M and F.	N.
N.	<i>duo</i> , <i>two</i> ,	<i>duae</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> , <i>three</i> , <i>tria</i> .
G.	<i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>trīum</i> ,
D.	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,
A.	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duās</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> , <i>tris</i> , <i>tria</i> ,
Ab.	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,

Like *duō* is declined *ambō*, -ae, -ō, *both*.

REMARKS.—1. For the declension of *unus* see 76. It occurs also in plural forms in connection with *plūrlia tantum*, as *finis litteris* (CIC. Att., v. 9, 2), or with another numeral in the sense *only*; in the latter sense also with substantives.

2. The Gen. of the hundreds, *ducenti*, etc., ends in -um and not -ōrum. This must be distinguished from the use of the neuter singular in -um as a collective, as *argenti sēcentum* (LUC.), *a six hundred of silver*.

3. The Pl. *milia*, *miliūm*, *milibus*, are treated almost always as substantives, the adjectival form being the Singular.

NOTES.—1. The form *oīnos* for *finus* is found in early Latin. A Voc. *fine* is occasional (CAT., 37, 17).

2. For *duae* late Latin shows occasionally *duo*, and in inscriptions *dua*, for neuter

**duo**, is sometimes found. The Gen. **duum** (old **duom**) for **duorum** is not unfrequent. In the Dat. and Abl., **duo** is found in inscriptions, and for **ambōbus** occasionally **ambis**. In the Acc. Pl. masc., **duo** and **ambō** for **duōs** and **ambōs** are quite common in early Latin, and also in classical times, but the better forms are **duōs**, **ambōs**.

3. **Quattuor** is found for **quattuor** occasionally in inscriptions, and in early poetry **quattuor** was sometimes scanned as a dissyllable.

4. In inscriptions the forms **mēlia** and **mīlia** are also found.

5. In regard to spelling of the Ordinals we find in early Latin **quintus** as well as **quintus**; **septimus** and **decimus** regularly, and often the endings **-quāsimus** and **-ēsimus** in Ordinals from **vīcēsimus** on.

## 96.

### 1. Compound Numerals.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately : **decem** et **trēs**.

2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, etc., are commonly expressed by subtraction ; occasionally, as in English, but never in Cicero, and very rarely in other classical authors. **duodecentum** is not found, and **tūndacentum** but once (PLIN. MAI.).

3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English : *twenty-one, viginti unus* ; or, *one and twenty, unus et (atque) viginti* ; as, *twenty-one years old : annūs unum et viginti (viginti unum), unum et viginti annōs natus*. But compounds like **septuaginta** et **trēs** are not uncommon, though avoided by good writers.

4. From 100 on, **et** may be inserted after the first numeral, if there be but two numbers ; as, **centum quattuor**, or **centum et quattuor**. If the smaller number precedes, the **et** should be inserted ; likewise in all cases where a word is inserted within the compound numeral, as **ducenti anni et viginti**. If there be three numerals, the **et** is regularly omitted ; exceptions are very rare.

5. In compound ordinals **alter** is preferred to **secundus**.

6. **Centēna mīlia** is often omitted after the numeral adverb **decies** = 1,000,000 ; especially in stating sums of money.

7. Fractions are expressed by **pars** (omitted or expressed) in combination with **dimidia** ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ), **tertia** ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ), **quārtā** ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), etc. A Plural numerator is expressed by a Cardinal ; as, **duae quintae** ( $\frac{2}{5}$ ). The fraction is often broken up ; as, **pars dimidia et tertia** ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}$ ). The even denominators could be divided ; as, **dimidia tertia** ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$ ). Instead of **dimidia** without **pars**, **dimidium** is used.

### 2. Numeral Signs.

D is short for IO, M for CIO. Adding O on the right of IO multiplies by 10 ; IO = 5000 ; IOO = 50,000. Putting C before as often as O stands after multiplies the right-hand number by 2 ; CIO = 1000 ; CCCIO = 10,000 ; CCCIOO = 100,000. A line above multiplies by 1000 ; V = 5000. A line above and at each side multiplies by 100,000 : |XIII| = 1,400,000. These signs may be combined : thus, |XIII| |XXXVII| D or |XIII| |XXXVII| MD = 1,337,500. PLIN., N. H. IV., 12, 24. Other signs are  $\text{I}_{\text{I}}$ ,  $\text{I}_{\text{L}}$  (inscr.) for 50,  $\text{C}_{\text{C}}$ ,  $\infty$ ,  $\text{D}_{\text{D}}$  (inscr.) for 1000, and  $\text{P}_{\text{P}}$  for 100,000 (inscr.), and Q for 500,000 (inscr.).

97.

## 3. Distributive Numerals.

1	singuli, -ae, -a, <i>one each.</i>	30	triōēni
2	bini, -ae, -a, <i>two each.</i>	40	quadrāgēni
3	terni (trīni)	50	quinquāgēni
4	quaterni	60	sexāgēni
5	quini	70	septuāgēni
6	sēni	80	octōgēni
7	septēni	90	nōnāgēni
8	octēni	100	centēni
9	novēni	102	centēni bini
10	dēni	125	centēni viōēni quini
11	tūndēni	200	duoēni
12	duodēni	300	treoēni
13	terni dēni	400	quadringēni
14	quaterni dēni	500	quinqēni
15	quini dēni	600	sexōēni (sēcoēni)
16	sēni dēni	700	septingēni
17	septēni dēni	800	octingēni
18	octēni dēni, duodēviōēni	900	nōngēni
19	novēni dēni, tūndēviōēni	1000	singula milia
20	viōēni	2000	bina milia
21	viōēni singuli	3000	trīna milia
22	viōēni bini, bini et viōēni	10,000	dēna milia
28	duodētriōēni	100,000	centēna milia
29	tūndētreoēni		

These answer the question *quotēni, how many each?*

REMARKS.—I. The Gen. Pl. masc. and neuter ends usually in *-um*, except that *singulus* has always *singulūrum*, and CICERO uses *bīndūrum*.

2. The Distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when *singuli* is expressed, the Cardinal may be used.

3. The Distributives are used with *plūrēlia tantum*: *bīnae litterae, two epistles.* But with these *ūni* is used for *one*, *trīni* for *three*: *ūnae litterae, trīnae litterae.*

4. The same rules as to the insertion or omission of *et* apply to the Distributives as to the Ordinals (96, 1. 3. 4).

NOTES.—1. The poets and later prose writers occasionally use the Distributives for Cardinals, with words other than *plūrēlia tantum* (n. 3); also some forms of the Singular. Especially noteworthy is the combination *trīnum nōndīnum*, which is technical, and therefore found also in model prose.

2. Parallel forms not found in classical times are *quadrāni* (early, late), and the late *duoēcentēni*, *trecentēni*, *quadringēntēni*, *quinqēntēni*, *ses(x)centēni*, *millēni*, etc.

## 4. Multiplicative Numerals.

Only the following forms occur :

1	simplex,	<i>single,</i>	5	quinquplex
2	duplex,	<i>double,</i>	7	septemplex
3	triplex,	<i>triple,</i>	10	decempex
4	quadruplex,	<i>quadruple.</i>	100	centuplex

These answer the question, *how many fold?*

## 5. Proportional Numerals.

Only the following forms occur :

1	simplus, -a, -um,	<i>single,</i>	4	quadruplus
2	duplicius,	<i>double.</i>	7	septuplus
3	triplicius		8	octuplus

These answer the question, *how many times as great?*

## 98.

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1	semel,	<i>once,</i>	22	bis et viciēs, viciēs et bis, viciēs bis *
2	bis,	<i>twice.</i>	80	tricēs
3	ter		40	quadragēs
4	quater		50	quinquagēs
5	quinquagēs (-ēns)		60	sexagēs
6	sexagēs (-ēns)		70	septuagēs
7	septuagēs (-ēns)		80	octōgēs
8	octōgēs (-ēns)		90	nōnagēs
9	nōnagēs (-ēns)		100	centiēs
10	decīes (-ēns)		200	ducentiēs
11	tūndeciēs (-ēns)		400	quadrūgentiēs
12	duodeciēs, etc.		500	quingentiēs
13	ter decīes, tredecīes		600	sexcentiēs (sēcentiēs)
14	quater decīes, quattuordecīes		700	septingentiēs
15	quinquagēs decīes, quindecīes		800	octingentiēs
16	sexagēs decīes, sēdecīes		900	nōngentiēs
17	septuagēs decīes		1,000	milliēs
18	duodēviciēs, octīes decīes		2,000	bis milliēs
19	tūndēviciēs, noviēs decīes		100,000	centiēs milliēs
20	viciēs			
21	semel et viciēs, viciēs et semel,	1,000,000	milliēs milliēs, decīes cen-	
	viciēs semel *		viciēs milliēs	

These answer the question *quotiēns (ēs) : how often?*

\* Not *semel viciēs, bis viciēs, etc.*, because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times; this, however, does not hold for numerals between 10 and 20.

**REMARKS.**—1. These adverbs, from *quinquies* on, have an older form in -*ens*; *quinquiens*. In *totiens*, *so often*, and *quotiens*, *how often*, this remained the more usual form in classical times.

2. The combination of an adverb with a distributive adjective was much liked by the Romans: as *bis bina* for *quaterna*, etc. But the normal forms are not unfrequent.

**NOTE.**—For the adverbs from *findicēs* on, examples are very rare, and some are cited only from the grammarians. So, when two forms are given, one is often due to the grammarians; thus *quinquīes dec̄es*, *sexīes dec̄es*, are cited only from PRISCIAN. The order, too, of compound adverbs varies.

## PRONOUNS.

### 99. Pronouns point out without describing.

**NOTE.**—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun simply points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as *ego*, *I*, *tū*, *thou*; it cannot express local appurtenance, as *hic*, *this (here)*, *ille*, *that (there)*.

### A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### 100. I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	Possessive.
Se.—N.	<i>ego</i> , I,	
G.	<i>mei</i> , <i>of me</i> ,	<i>meus</i> , -a, -um, <i>mine or my</i> .
D.	<i>mīhi</i> , <i>to, for me</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>mē</i> , <i>me</i> ,	
Ab.	<i>mē</i> , <i>from, with, by me</i> .	
Pl.—N.	<i>nōs</i> , <i>we</i> ,	
G.	<i>nostrī</i> , <i>of us</i> ,	
	<i>nostrum</i> ,	<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our or ours</i> .
D.	<i>nōbīs</i> , <i>to, for us</i> .	
Ac.	<i>nōs</i> , <i>us</i> ,	
Ab.	<i>nōbīs</i> , <i>from, with, by us</i> .	

**REMARKS.**—1. The Voc. Sing. masc. of *meus* is *mi*, except when *meus* is used with a substantive which does not change its form in the Voc.; thus, *meus ocellus* (PLAUT. ; possibly, however, appositional), but *mi anime*.

2. *Nostrum* in the Gen. Pl. is the form for the Partitive Genitive.

**NOTES.**—1. Early Latin shows the following: Sg., N. *egō*; G. *mis*; D. *mi*, *mīhi* (inscr.); *mīhē* (inscr.); Ac. *mēd*, *mēmē*; Ab. *mēd* (*mēmē* is doubtful); Pl., N. Ac. *nōs* (in *Carmen Arvale* only); G. *nostrūrum*, *nostrārum* (for *nostrum*); D. Ab. *nōbīs* (inscr.).

2. In late Latin *mi* also serves for the Voc. Sing. fem. and Voc. Pl. masc. *Meum*, *nostrum*, in the Gen. Pl. of the Possessives, are not unfrequent in early Latin.

3. The forms of *meus*, of *tui* and *tuos*, of *sui* and *suos*, very frequently suffer Synizesis (727) in early Latin.

4. On the combination of these pronouns with -met and -pte see 102, N. 2, 3.

## 101. II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Se.—N. V.	<b>tū,</b> <i>thou,</i>	
G.	<b>tūi,</b> <i>of thee,</i>	
D.	<b>tibī,</b> <i>to, for thee,</i>	<b>tūus (-os), -a, -um (-om), thy or thine</b>
Ac.	<b>tō,</b> <i>thee,</i>	
Ab.	<b>tōbī,</b> <i>from, with, by thee.</i>	
Pl.—N.	<b>vōs,</b> <i>ye or you,</i>	
G.	<b>vestrī,</b> <i>of you,</i>	
	<i>vestrum,</i>	<b>vester (archaic voster), vestra, vestrum,</b>
D.	<b>vōbīs,</b> <i>to, for you,</i>	<i>your or yours.</i>
Ac.	<b>vōs,</b> <i>you,</i>	
Ab.	<b>vōbīs,</b> <i>from, with, by you.</i>	

NOTES.—1. Early forms are: G. **tis**; D. **tibēl** (inscr.), **tibē** (inscr.); Ac. Ab. **tōd**, **tōtē**; Pl. G. **vestri**, **vostrūm**, **-ārum**.

2. **Vestrum** is for the Partitive Genitive.

3. **Tuom** and **vostrom** in the Gen. Pl. of the Possessives are rare and confined to early Latin.

4. On Synizesis see 100, N. 3. On combination with **-met** or **-pte** see 102, N. 2, 3.

## III. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

102. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a Nominative. Its place is taken in the oblique cases by the Determinative **is** (103).

	SUBSTANTIVE.	DETERMINATIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Se.—N.	[ <b>is</b> , <b>ea</b> , <b>id</b> ], <i>he, she, it,</i>		supplied by the Genitive.
G.	<b>īius,</b> <i>of him,</i>		<b>īius, his, hers, its.</b>
	<i>etc.</i>		
Pl.—N.	[ <b>eī</b> , <b>īi</b> , <b>I</b> ; <b>eae</b> , <b>ea</b> ], <i>they,</i>		
G.	<b>eōrum</b> , <b>eārum</b> , <b>eōrum</b> , <i>of them,</i> <b>eōrum</b> , <b>eārum</b> , <b>eōrum</b> , <i>their or theirs.</i>		
	<i>etc.</i>		

## REFLEXIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Se.—N.	—	
G.	<b>sūl,</b> <i>of him, her, it(self),</i>	<b>sūus (-os), -a, -um (-om), his,</b>
D.	<b>sibī,</b> <i>to, for, him(self), her(self),</i>	<i>her(s), its (own).</i>
Ac.	<b>sō, sēsō,</b> <i>him(self), her(self),</i>	
Ab.	<b>sō, sēsō,</b> <i>from, with, by him(self).</i>	
Pl.—N.	—	
G.	<b>sūl,</b> <i>of them(selves),</i>	<b>sūus (-os), -a, -um (-om), their</b>
D.	<b>sibī,</b> <i>to, for them(selves),</i>	<i>(own), theirs.</i>
Ac.	<b>sō, sēsō,</b> <i>them(selves),</i>	
Ab.	<b>sō, sēsō,</b> <i>from, with, by them(selves).</i>	

NOTES.—1. Inscriptions show *sibēl*. The use of *sibēs* in classical prose is regulated mainly by artistic reasons. *Suom* in Gen. Pl. from *sūus* is rare and early.

2. The enclitic *-met* may be added to all the forms of *ego* (except *nōstrum*), to all the forms of *tū* (except *tū* and *vestrum*), to *sibi*, *sē*, and some forms of *sūus*; *egomet*, *I myself*. Instead of *tūmet*, *tūtē* is found; from which early poets formed occasionally *tūtēmet*, *tūtēmet*. *Met* is also occasionally appended to forms of *meus* (early) and *tūus* (late).

3. The enclitic *-pte* is joined very rarely to forms of the Personal Pronoun (*mēpte*, Pl., *Mēn*. 1059); more often to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessives; it is especially common with *sūd*; *sūōpte ingeniō*, *by his own genius*.

4. From *nōster* and *vester* and also from *cūius*, *whose?* are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: *nōstrās*, *of our country*; *vesterās*, *of your country*; *cūstrās*, *of whose country?* G. *nōstrātis*, *vesterātis*, *cūstrātis*.

### 103. B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *is, he, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	<i>ii</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>I</i> ,	<i>eae</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
G.	<i>īius</i> ,	<i>īius</i> ,	<i>īius</i> ,	<i>ērūm</i> ,	<i>ērūm</i> ,	<i>ērūm</i> ,
D.	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,		<i>iis</i> , <i>eis</i> , <i>is</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	<i>eōs</i> ,	<i>eōs</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
Ab.	<i>eō</i> ,	<i>eō</i> ,	<i>eō</i> ,		<i>iis</i> , <i>eis</i> , <i>is</i> .	

NOTE.—The following variations in the forms are found: N. *it* for *id* (post-cl.); G. *īius* (inscr.), *īius* (early poetry); D. *īlēl* (inscr.), *īl*, *īl* (early poetry), *eae* (f.); Ac. *em*, *im* (early), for *eum*; Pl. N. *īls*, *eōls*, *iōls*, *īl* (early and rare), for *ei*; the usual classical form is *ii*; G. *eum* (inscr.) for *ērūm*; D. *īlēls*, *īlēls*, *īlēls* (inscr.), *ībus* (early poetry and rare); the usual classical form is *iis*. The early forms *sum*, *sam*, *sōs*, *sīs*, for *eum*, *eam*, *eōs*, *eīs*, are cited by *Festus*. Acc. and Abl. Sing. and Gen. Pl. often suffer Synizesis in early poetry.

2. *Idem* (*is* + *dēm*), *the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> , <i>iidem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,
G.	<i>īusdem</i> ,	<i>īusdem</i> ,	<i>īusdem</i> ,	<i>ērūndem</i> ,	<i>ērūndem</i> ,	<i>ērūndem</i> ,
D.	<i>eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> ,		<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,
Ab.	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> ,		<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i> .	

NOTE.—Variations in form: N. *īdem*, *isdem* (inscr., early) for *idem*; D. *idem* (inscr.) for *eidem*; Pl. N. *idem* (more usual in poetry), *īsdem*, *īsdem* (inscr.); D. Ab. *īsdem* (rare), *eisdem* (uncommon in classical prose). Synizesis is common.

3. *ipse* (perhaps *is* + *pse*), *he, self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipse</i> ,
G.	<i>ipsfus</i> ,	<i>ipsfus</i> ,	<i>ipfus</i> ,	<i>ipērūm</i> ,	<i>ipērūm</i> ,	<i>ipērūm</i> ,
D.	<i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipel</i> ,	<i>ipel</i> ,	<i>ipais</i> ,	<i>ipais</i> ,	<i>ipais</i> ,
Ac.	<i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipeam</i> ,	<i>ipum</i> ,	<i>ipēs</i> ,	<i>ipēs</i> ,	<i>ipēs</i> ,
Ab.	<i>ipēd</i> ,	<i>ipēs</i> ,	<i>ipēd</i> ,	<i>ipais</i> ,	<i>ipais</i> ,	<i>ipais</i> .

NOTES.—1. In the earlier time the first part of *ipse* was also declined, thus: N. *ipse*; A. *ipsea*, *ipseae*; Ab. *ipse*, *ipse*. Other forms are doubtful.

2. For *ipse* the form *ipsus* was very commonly employed in early Latin, but fades out with TERENCE, and later is only sporadic.

3. Inflectional variations are: D. *ipso*, *ipsea* (late); Pl. N. *ipset* (inscr.). The few other forms are uncertain. *Ipsus* is disyllabic twice in TERENCE.

4. PLAUTUS shows *ipsissimus* (comp. Gr. *αὐτόρραστος*), and in late Latin *ipsimus* and *ipsum* are found. A post-Ciceronian colloquialism was *isse, issa*.

5. *Ipse* combines with -met: *ipsemet* and *ipsemet* (N. Pl.), both rare.

#### 104. C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

##### I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

*hic, this.*

Sg.—N.	<i>hic</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> ,	PL.— <i>hi</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,	<i>these</i> ,
G.	<i>hūius</i> ,	<i>hūius</i> ,	<i>hūius</i> ,	<i>hōrum</i> ,	<i>hārum</i> ,	<i>hōrum</i> ,	
D.	<i>hūic</i> ,	<i>hūic</i> ,	<i>hūic</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> ,	<i>hōs</i> ,	<i>hās</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,	
Abl.	<i>hōc</i> ,	<i>hāc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> .	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	

NOTES.—1. The full forms of *hic* in -ce are still found in limited numbers in early Latin; G. *hūiſce* (in the phrase *hūiſce modi*, the form is common in the classical period and later); D. *hōloē* (inscr.); Pl. N. *hēſce*, *hīſce* (not uncommon); G. *hōrūnē* (rare); D., Ab. *hīſce* (in PLAUT. and TER. usually before vowels); Ac. *hōſce*, *hāſce* (not uncommon; occasionally in Cic.).

2. Other variations in form are: G. *hītūs* and *hītūs* (in early poetry for metrical reasons); D. *hae* (rare and early); Ac. *hōnc*; Pl. N. *hēt*, *hēla* for *hi*, *haec* for *hae* (in PLAUT. and TER. regularly before vowels or *h*, occasionally before consonants; occasionally also in classical times and later); G. *hōrūnō*, *hārūnō* (early). Pl. N. *hic* for *hi* and D. Ab. *hīſbus* for *his* are doubtful.

3. *Hic* combines with -ne. Usually -ne was appended to *hīſce*, etc., and the e weakened to i. Sometimes -ne is added directly to the regular forms. The examples are frequent in early Latin, but occur also in Cic. and later writers: *hīſcine*, *haecine*, *hōcine*, *hūcine*, *hūcine*, *hancine*, *hōcine*, *hācine*, *haecine* (N. Pl. fem.), *haecine* (N. Pl. neut.), *hīſcine*, *hōcine*, *hācine*; also *hīſne*, *haecne*, *hōcne*, *hūiſne*, *hūcne*, *hōcne*, *haecne*, *hōcne*, *hācne*.

##### II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

*iste, that.*

Sg.—N.	<i>iste</i> ,	<i>ista</i> ,	<i>istud</i> ,	PL.— <i>isti</i> ,	<i>istae</i> ,	<i>ista</i> ,
G.	<i>istius</i> ,	<i>istius</i> ,	<i>istius</i> ,	<i>istōrum</i> ,	<i>istārum</i> ,	<i>istōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,
Ac.	<i>istum</i> ,	<i>istam</i> ,	<i>istud</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>ista</i> ,
Abl.	<i>istō</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> .	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> ,	<i>isti</i> .

NOTES.—1. The Dat. Sing. shows *istō* in late and *istae* in early Latin.

2. *Iste* combines with -ce. In a very few cases (three times in early, once in late Latin) this -ce is retained unchanged, but usually it is shortened to -o. The following forms occur, all except *istuo* (more common than *istud* in classical Latin) and *istae*

(nenter, occasionally in Cic., Ep. and later), being wholly confined to early and late Latin. N. *istic*, *istaeo*, *istuo* (*istoo*, once); D. *istic*; A. *istunc*, *istano*; Ab. *istōe*, *istāe*. Pl. N. *istace* (f.), *istace* (n.).

3. In a few cases in PLAUT. and TER. -ne is appended to *istic*, etc., the preceding e being weakened to i: *istuncine*, *istōcine*, *istācine*, *istōcin*'.

### III. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.

Sg.—N.	<i>ille</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,	<i>illud</i> ,	PL.— <i>illi</i> ,	<i>illae</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,
G.	<i>illus</i> ,	<i>illus</i> ,	<i>illus</i> ,	<i>illōrum</i> ,	<i>illārum</i> ,	<i>illōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>illi</i> ,	<i>illi</i> ,	<i>illi</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,
A.	<i>illum</i> ,	<i>illam</i> ,	<i>illud</i> ,	<i>illōs</i> ,	<i>illās</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,
Ab.	<i>illōs</i> ,	<i>illās</i> ,	<i>illōs</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> .

NOTES.—1. The older forms from stem *ollo-* occur on early inscriptions, in laws, and in the poets (except PLAUT. and TER.), even to a very late period, as follows: N. *ollus*, -e (early); D. *ollī*; Pl. N. *ollī*, *olla*; G. *ollom*, *ollōrum* (early); D. *ollēs*, *ollis*; A. *ollōs* (early).

2. Inscriptions show *illut* occasionally for *illud*. Other rare forms are: G. *illī* (doubtful); D. *illas*; Pl. N. *illēl*. *Illut* is often disyllabic in early Latin.

3. *Illi* often combines with -ce, which is, however, usually shortened to -e: *illuce*, *illāce*, *illōce*, *illōce*, *illīce*, all in early Latin; shortened forms: N. *illīc*, *illāc*, *illūc*; D. *illīc*; A. *illunc*, *illanc*; Ab. *illōc*, *illāc*; Pl. N. *illace* (f.), *illace* (n.), all with rare exceptions confined to PLAUTUS and TERENCE.

4. A few cases of combination with -ne: *illicine*, *illancine* occur in PLAUTUS and TERENCE.

### 105.

### D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*qui* (Substantive and Adjective), *who*.

Sg.—N.	<i>qui</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	PL.— <i>qui</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,
G.	<i>cūius</i> ,	<i>cūius</i> ,	<i>cūius</i> ,	<i>quōrum</i> ,	<i>quārum</i> ,	<i>quōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>cūi</i> ,	<i>cūi</i> ,	<i>cūi</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,
A.	<i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quōs</i> ,	<i>quās</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,
Ab.	<i>quō</i> ,	<i>quā</i> ,	<i>quō</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> .

General Relatives are :

*Substantive.* *quisquis*, *whoever*,      *quidquid*, *quoquid*, *whatever*.

*Adjective.*    *(quipui*, *quaequa*, *quodquod*),      *whosoever*.  
*quipunque*, *quaeunque*, *quodunque*,      *whichever*.

NOTES.—1. Archaic and legal are *quis* and *quid* as relatives.

2. The prevalent form of Gen. on inscriptions of the Republican period and in early Latin is *quōius*; *quius*, *cūius*, and other variations are also found. Other archaic forms are: D., *quoi*. D. Pl., *quēs*. D. Pl. *quīs* is common in the poets at all periods; and also in prose writers; but not cited from CAESAR, and only from the letters of CICERO.

3. The Abl. Sing. *qui* for all genders is the prevalent form in early times, and in combination with *cum* is preferred to *quō*, *quā* by CICERO.

4. *Quisquis* is occasionally used as an adjective, but not in classical Latin. Occasionally, also, but rarely in CICERO, it is used for *quisque*, *quidque*. The Nom. Sing. of the adjective *quipui*, etc., probably does not occur. In the other cases the forms are

the same as those of **quisquis** and can be distinguished only by the usage. In combination with **modi** we find **cicouli** in Gen. sometimes in CICERO. In the Plural the only form found is **quibusquibus**. (Lrv. XII., 8, 10.)

5. In **quicunque** the -**cumque** is often separated by tmesis. The only variations in form are **quālīcumque**, **quāscumque** in early Latin, and occasionally **quiccumque** for **quibuscumque** (several times in CICERO).

### 106. E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>Substantive.</i>	<b>quis</b> ? <i>who?</i>	<b>quid</b> ? <i>what?</i>
<i>Adjective.</i>	<b>qui</b> ?	<b>quae</b> ? <b>quod</b> ? <i>which?</i>
<i>Subst. and Adj.</i> <b>uter</b> ?	<b>utra</b> ?	<b>utrum</b> ? <i>who, which of two?</i>

<b>Sg. N.</b>	<b>quis</b> ? <b>quid</b> ? <i>who? what?</i>	<b>Possessive.</b>
<b>G.</b>	<b>cūius</b> ? <b>cūius</b> ? <i>whose?</i>	<b>cūius, cūia, cūium, whose?</b>
<b>D.</b>	<b>cūi</b> ? <b>cūi</b> ? <i>to, for whom?</i>	
<b>Ae.</b>	<b>quem</b> ? <b>quid</b> ? <i>whom? what?</i>	
<b>Ab.</b>	<b>quō</b> ? <b>quō</b> ? <i>from, with, by whom or what?</i>	

The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, **who**, **which**.

#### Strengthened Interrogatives.

<i>Substantive.</i>	<b>quisnam</b> ? <i>who, pray?</i>	<b>quidnam</b> ? <i>what, pray?</i>
	<b>equis?</b> <i>is there any one who?</i>	<b>equid?</b>
<i>Adjective.</i>	<b>quīnam</b> ? <b>quaenam</b> ?	<b>quodnam</b> ? <i>which, pray?</i>

**qui** ? **ecqua** ? (**equae**) ? **equod** ?

**REMARK.**—In the poets **qui** is sometimes found as a substantive for **quis** in independent sentences. In dependent sentences the use always fluctuates. A difference in meaning can hardly be made other than that **qui** is generally used in much the same sense as **qualsis**. On the other hand, **quis** is often used as an adjective for **qui**; usually, however, the substantive which follows is best looked upon as in apposition. In the classical period **qui** is the normal form for the adjective in dependent questions.

**NOTES.**—1. Inscriptions show here and there **quit** and **quot** for **quid** and **quod**. **Quid** is sometimes used for **quod**, but usually in the phrase **quid nōmen tibi est** and only in early Latin. Sometimes **quae** seems to be used as a substantive, but another explanation is always possible.

2. In the oblique cases the same variations occur as in the oblique cases of the relative. The Abl. **qui** means *how?*

3. For the declension of **uter** see 76.

4. The possessive **cūius** (**quālius**), -**a**, -**um** was used both as relative and as interroga-

tive. It is frequent in PLAUT. and TEE., but rare in other authors. Besides the Nom. the only forms found are Ac. *quōdium*, *quōdiam*; Ab. *quōdīs*; Pl. N. *quōdiasē*, and, perhaps, G. Pl. *quōdium*.

5. *Quianam* is sometimes used as an adjective for *quiñam* and *quifnam* occasionally for *quisnam* as a substantive. The -nam may be separated by tmesis. *Equis* and *equei* are not common, and are subject to the same fluctuations as *quis* and *qui*. *Equis* combines with -nam to form *equisnam* and a few other occasional forms, as : *equaenam*, *equeidnam*, *equeodnam*, *equeñnam*, *equeñnam*.

## 107.

## F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *Substantive.* *aliquis*, *aliqua* (rare), *aliquid*, } *somebody, some one*  
*quis*, *qua*, *quid*, } *or other.*

*Adjective.* *aliqui*, *aliqua*, *aliquid*, } *some, any.*  
*qui*, *quae*, *qua*, *quod*,

**REMARK.**—The common rule is that *quis* and *qui* occur properly only after *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, *num*, or after a relative ; otherwise *aliquis*, *aliqui*.

**Notes.**—1. *Aliquis* and *quis* are not unfrequently used as adjectives instead of *aliqui*, *qui*, but rarely in early Latin. Occasionally (not in early Latin) *aliqui* is used as a substantive. *Qui* is also so used, but only after *si*, *sīn*, *sive*, *nē*.

The use of *quid* and *aliquid* for *quod* and *aliquid*, and of *aliquid* for *aliquid*, is very rare and late.

2. Besides the variations in form mentioned under the relative and interrogative, the indefinite *quis* shows *quēs* as an early form for *qui* (N. Pl.), and in Pl. Nom. Acc. neut. *quae* and *qua* in equally good usage. *Aliquis* shows in Abl. Sing. *aliqui* (rare and early), in the Pl. Nom. Acc. neut. always *aliqua*, and not unfrequently in post-classical Latin *aliquis* for *aliquibus*.

2. *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* (and *quoddam*), *a certain, certain one.*

**REMARK.**—*Quidam*, *quaeدام* occur both as substantives and adjectives, but *quiddam* is always substantive, *quoddam* always adjective. The Plural is rare in early Latin (never in PLAUTUS).

3. *quispiam*, *quaepiam*, *quidpiam* (and *quodpiam*), *some one, some quisquam*, —————, *quicquam*, *any one (at all).* No plural.

**Notes.**—1. *quispiam*, *quaepiam* are rare as adjectives. In the neuter, *quippiam* and *quoppiam* occur rarely. The comic poets do not use the Plural, and it is rare elsewhere.

2. *Quisquam* is seldom used as an adjective, except with designations of persons ; *scriptor quisquam*, *any writer (at all)*, *Gallus quisquam*, *any Gaul (at all)*. The corresponding adjective is *fillus*. The use of *quisquam* as a feminine is only in early Latin. *Quidquam* is a poor spelling for *quicquam*. In Abl. Sing. *quiquam* occurs occasionally. In Sing. Gen. Dat. Acc. frequently, and in Plural always, forms of *fillus* were used.

4. *quivis, quaevis, quidvis* (and *quodvis*), } *any one you please,*  
*quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet* (and *quodlibet*), } *you like.*

NOTE.—*Quivis, quaevis, quilibet* (archaic *-lubet*), *quaelibet* may be used either as substantives or adjectives, but *quidvis, quidlibet* are substantives only, *quodvis, quodlibet* are adjectives only. Peculiar forms of *quivis* are G. *quivis* in *quoivis-modi* (*PLAUT.*); D., *quōvis* (*LATE*); Abl., *quivis* (*PLAUT.*, *TEN.*), and the compounds *otiusviscumque* (*LUCA. III.*, 388) and *quōviscumque* (*MART. XIV.*, 2, 1). *Quilibet* may be separated by tmesis into *qui* and *libet* (*SALL.*, *Cat.* 5, 4).

5. *quisque, quaeque, quidque* and *quodque, each one.*  
*finusquisque, finaquaque, finumquidque* and *finumquodque, each one severally.*

NOTE.—*Quisque* occurs occasionally in early Latin as a feminine, and with its forms is not unfrequently found in early and late Latin for *quisquis*, or *quiouique*. *Quidque* is substantive, *quodque* adjective. In the Abl. Sing. *quique* occurs occasionally. The Plural is regular, but rare until post-classical times. In Nom. Pl. *quaeque* is either fem. or neuter.

108. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given in 76. They are :

*nullus, -a, -um, any; nullus, -a, -um, no one, not one.* The corresponding substantives are *nēmō* (76) and *nihil*, the latter of which forms only *nihilis* (Gen.) and *nihilis* (Abl.), and those only in certain combinations.

*nōnullus, -a, -um, some, many a, declined like nullus.*

*alius, -a, -nd, another; the Possessive of *alius* is *aliēnus*.*

*alter, -era, -erūm, the other, one (of two).*

*neuter, neutra, neutrūm, neither of two.*

*alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two.*

*uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either. ambō, -ae, -ɔ, both.*

*utervis, utravis, utrumvis, } whichever you please of the two.  
 uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, }*

## CORRELATIVES.

### 109. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

INTERROGATIVES.	DEMONSTRATIVES.	RELATIVES.
<i>quis ? who ?</i>	<i>is, that,</i>	<i>qui, who.</i>
<i>quālis ? of what kind ?</i>	<i>tālis, such (of that kind),</i>	<i>quālis, as (of which kind).</i>
<i>quantus ? how much ?</i>	<i>tantus, so much,</i>	<i>quantus, as much.</i>
<i>quot ? how many ?</i>	<i>tot, so many,</i>	<i>quot, as many.</i>

## 110. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of *place*.

<i>ubl</i> ?	<i>where</i> ?	<i>ibi</i> ,	<i>there.</i>	<i>ubl</i> ,	<i>where.</i>
<i>quā</i> ?	<i>where,</i>	<i>hic, hāc,</i>	<i>here, this way.</i>	<i>quā,</i>	<i>where, which</i>
		<i>which way?</i>			<i>way.</i>
			<i>istic, istā,</i>	<i>there, that way.</i>	
			<i>illīc, illāc,</i>	<i>there, yonder way.</i>	
<i>unde</i> ?	<i>whence</i> ?	<i>inde,</i>	<i>thence.</i>	<i>unde,</i>	<i>whence.</i>
		<i>hinc,</i>	<i>hence.</i>		
		<i>istinē,</i>	<i>thence.</i>		
		<i>illinē,</i>	<i>thence, from yonder.</i>		
<i>quō</i> ?	<i>whither</i> ?	<i>etū,</i>	<i>thither.</i>	<i>quō,</i>	<i>whither.</i>
		<i>hūc, (hāc,)</i>	<i>hither.</i>		
		<i>istidū, (istidāc,)</i>	<i>thither.</i>		
		<i>illidū, (illidāc,)</i>	<i>thither, yonder.</i>		

2. Pronominal adverbs of *time*.

<i>quandō</i> ?	<i>when</i> ?	<i>tum,</i>	<i>then.</i>	<i>quandō,</i>	<i>when.</i>
		<i>tunc,</i>	<i>at that time.</i>	<i>quom, cum,</i>	
		<i>nunc,</i>	<i>now.</i>		
<i>quotidēns</i> ?	<i>how often</i> ?	<i>totidēns,</i>	<i>so often.</i>	<i>quotidēns,</i>	<i>as often as.</i>

3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner*.

<i>quāmodo</i> ?	<i>qui</i> ?	<i>how</i> ?	<i>ita, sic, so, thus.</i>	<i>ut, uti,</i>	<i>as.</i>
<i>quam</i> ?		<i>how much</i> ?	<i>tam, so much.</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>as.</i>

## 111. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become *indefinite* by prefixing *ali-*:

*aliquantus, somewhat great; aliquot, several, some; alioubi, somewhere; alicunde, from somewhere; aliquandō, at some time.*

2. The simple relatives become *universal* by doubling themselves, or by suffixing *-cunque (-cumque)*, sometimes *-que*:

*quantusunque, however great; quālisunque, of whatever kind; quotquot, however many; ubiqueunque, wheresoever; quandōunque, whenever; quotidēnque, however often; utut, in whatever way; utcunque, howsoever; quamquam, however, although.*

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with *-vis* or *-libet*:

*quantuslibet, quantusvis, as great as you please; ubivis, where you will; quamvis, as you please, though.*

## THE VERB.

**112.** The inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses :

1. Person and Number ;
2. Voice—Active or Passive.

The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject : *amō, I love.*

The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb : *amor, I am loved.*

3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future,  
Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Present, *amō, I love*; Future, *amābō, I shall love*;  
Pure Perfect, *amāvi, I have loved*; Future Perfect, *amāverō, I shall have loved*, are called *Principal Tenses*.

The Imperfect, *amābam, I was loving*; Historical Perfect, *amāvī, I loved*; Pluperfect, *amāveram, I had loved*, are called *Historical Tenses*.

**REMARK.**—The Pure and Historical Perfects are identical in form.

4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

The Indicative Mood is the mood of the *fact* : *amō, I love.*

The Subjunctive Mood is the mood of the *idea* : *amem, may I love, I may love*; *amet, may he love, he may love*; *si amet, if he should love.*

The Imperative Mood is the mood of *command* : *amā, love thou!*

For further distinctions see Syntax.

5. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

The Infinitive active and the Supine are related to the noun, the former being originally a Dative or Locative and the Supine showing two cases, Accusative and Ablative.

No adequate uniform translation can be given, but for the general meaning see paradigms.

**113.** A large number of Verbs have the passive form but

are active in meaning : *hortor*, *I exhort*. These are called *deponent* (from *dēponere*, *to lay aside*).

**114.** The Inflection of the Finite Verb is effected by the addition of personal endings to the verb stems.

1. The personal endings are mostly pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice. They are :

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Sg.—1. -m (or a vowel, coalescing with the characteristic ending); Pf. i,	-r.
2. -s; Pf. -s-ti; Impv. -tō(d) or wanting,	-ris or -re; Impv. -re or -tor.
3. -t; Impv. tō(d),	-tur; Impv. -tor.
PL.—1. -mns,	-mnr.
2. -tis; Pf. -s-tis-; Impv. -te or -tōte,	-minī.
3. -nt; Pf. -tūnt or -tē; Impv. -ntō(d),	-ntur; Impv. -ntor.

2. The personal endings are added directly to the stem in the Present Indicative and Imperative only, except in the third conjugation, in some forms of the Future Indicative. In the other tenses certain modifications occur in the stem, or tense signs are employed :

(a) In the Present Subjunctive final *s* of the stem is changed to *s(e)*; final *t* to *ts* (*ta*); final *i* to *ti* (*ia*); final *e* to *si* (*a*). In the Future Indicative final *e* is changed to *a* or *s(e)*; final *i* to *ia* (*ie, ie*).

(b) The tense signs are : for the Imperfect Indicative, *bā* (*ba*); for the Imperfect Subjunctive, *rā* (*re*); for the Future Indicative in *s* and *t* verbs *bl* (*b, bu*); for the Perfect Indicative, *tī* (*t*); for the Perfect Subjunctive, *erī*; for the Pluperfect Indicative, *erā* (*era*); for the Pluperfect Subjunctive, *issā* (*isse*); for the Future Perfect Indicative, *erī* (*er*).

3. The stem itself is variously modified ; either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms :

(a) The *Present* stem; being the stem of the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. These forms are called the *Present System*.

(b) The *Perfect* stem; being the stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. These forms are called the *Perfect System*.

(c) The *Supine\** stem; being the stem of the Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles and of the Supine. These forms are called the *Supine System*.

**NOTE.**—For details as to the formation of these stems, see 132 ff.

---

\* This designation is retained because it is an established *terminus technicus*; as a matter of fact the Supine stem is not the stem of the Participles.

**115.** 1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by the combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with forms of the verb **sum**, *I am*.

2. The Future Passive Infinitive is formed by the combination of the Supine with the Present Passive Infinitive of **es**, *I go*.

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the stems :

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<b>INFINITIVE.</b>	Pr. -re, Pf. -isse, Fut. -tūrum (-a, -um), <b>esse</b> ,	ri, i. -tus (-ta, -tum), <b>esse</b> . -tum iri.
<b>PARTICIPLES.</b>	Pr. -ns (G. -ntis), Pf. —— Fut. -tūrus (-a, -um).	-tus (-ta, -tum).
	<b>GERUND.</b> -ndi (-dō, -dum, -dō).	<b>GERUNDIVE.</b> -ndus (-a, -um).
		<b>SUPINE.</b> -tum ; -tū.

### 116. THE VERB **sum**, *I am*.

(Pres. stem **es-**, Perf. stem **fu-**)

	INDICATIVE.	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sg.—1.	<b>sum</b> ,	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sim,</i> <i>I be,</i>
2.	<b>es</b> ,	<i>thou art,</i>	<i>sis,</i> <i>thou be,</i>
3.	<b>est</b> ,	<i>he, she, it is.</i>	<i>sit,</i> <i>he, she, it be.</i>
PL.—1.	<b>sumus</b> ,	<i>we are,</i>	<i>simus,</i> <i>we be,</i>
2.	<b>estis</b> ,	<i>you are,</i>	<i>sitis,</i> <i>you be,</i>
3.	<b>sunt</b> ,	<i>they are.</i>	<i>sint,</i> <i>they be.</i>
		<b>IMPERFECT.</b>	
Sg.—1.	<b>eram</b> ,	<i>I was,</i>	<i>essem,</i> <i>I were</i> (forem),
2.	<b>erās</b> ,	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>essēs,</i> <i>thou wert</i> (forēs),
3.	<b>erat</b> ,	<i>he was.</i>	<i>asset,</i> <i>he were</i> (foret).
PL.—1.	<b>erāmus</b> ,	<i>we were,</i>	<i>essēmus,</i> <i>we were,</i>
2.	<b>erātis</b> ,	<i>you were,</i>	<i>essētis,</i> <i>you were,</i>
3.	<b>erant</b> ,	<i>they were,</i>	<i>essent,</i> <i>they were</i> (forent). X
		<b>FUTURE.</b>	
Sg.—1.	<b>erō</b> ,	<i>I shall be,</i>	
2.	<b>eris</b> ,	<i>thou will be,</i>	
3.	<b>erit</b> ,	<i>he will be.</i>	
PL.—1.	<b>erimus</b> ,	<i>we shall be,</i>	
2.	<b>eritis</b> ,	<i>you will be,</i>	
3.	<b>erunt</b> ,	<i>they will be.</i>	

## PERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *fui*, *I have been*, *I* fuerim, *I have, may have, been, was*,  
 2. *fuistī*, *thou hast been*, *thou wast*, fueris, *thou have, mayest have, been,*  
 3. *fuit*, *he has been*, *he was*. fuerit, *he have, may have, been.*

- PL.—1. *fuimus*, *we have been*, *we were*, fuerimus, *we have, may have, been,*  
 2. *fuistis*, *you have been*, *you were*, fueritis, *you have, may have, been,*  
 3. *fuérunt*, *fuēre*, *they have been*, *they were*. fuerint, *they have, may have, been.*

## PLUPERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *fueram*, *I had been*, fueras, *I had, might have, been,*  
 2. *fuerās*, *thou hadst been*, fuerās, *thou hadst, mightst have, been,*  
 3. *fuerat*, *he had been*. fuerat, *he had, might have, been.*

- PL.—1. *fuerāmus*, *we had been*, fuerātis, *we had, might have, been,*  
 2. *fuerātis*, *you had been*, fuerātis, *you had, might have, been,*  
 3. *fuerant*, *they had been*. fuerant, *they had, might have, been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *fuerō*, *I shall have been*,  
 2. *fueris*, *thou will have been*,  
 3. *fuerit*, *he will have been*.

- PL.—1. *fuerimus*, *we shall have been*,  
 2. *fueritis*, *you will have been*,  
 3. *fuerint*, *they will have been*.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	FUTURE.	PRES.	INFINITIVE.
Sg.—1. ——,	—,	PRES. esse, <i>to be</i> ,	PRES. esse, <i>to be</i> ,
2. <i>es</i> , <i>be thou</i> , <i>estō</i> , <i>thou shalt be</i> ,	<i>estōtē</i> , <i>you shall be</i> ,	PRES. fuīsse, <i>to have been</i> ,	PRES. fuīsse, <i>to have been</i> ,
3. ——,	<i>estō</i> , <i>he shall be</i> .	FUT. futūrum (-am, -um) esse (fore), <i>to be about to be</i> .	FUT. futūrum (-am, -um) esse (fore), <i>to be about to be</i> .
PL.—1. ——,			PARTICIPLE.
2. <i>este</i> , <i>be ye</i> ,	<i>estōtē</i> , <i>you shall be</i> ,		
3. ——,	<i>suntō</i> , <i>they shall be</i> .	FUT. futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i> .	

NOTES.—1. Early forms are :

(a) In the Pres. Ind. *ss* for *es*; regularly in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, but the quantity of the vowel is disputed.

(b) In the Pres. Subjv. *sitem*, *sīēs*, *siet*, *sient*; regular in inscriptions until the first century B. C. and common in early poets chiefly for metrical reasons; side by side with this occur *fūam*, *fūēs*, *fuat*, *fuant* (also LUCA. IV., 687, VERA. X., 108, LIV. XXV., 12, 6), which are taken up again by very late poets. *Sit* is also common.

(c) In the Impf. Subjv. the forms *forem*, *forēs*, *foret*, *forent* were probably in very early times equivalent to *futūrus essem*, *etc.*; and occasionally this force seems to be still present in the later period, especially in SALLUST; usually, however, they are equivalent to *essem*, *essēs*, *esest*, *esent*; in the Inf. *fore* always remained the equivalent of *futūrum esse*.

(d) In all the Perfect forms the original length was *fu-*, which is still found occasionally in early Latin.

(e) Early and principally legal are the rare forms *escit*, *escet*, *exit*, *for erit*; *essint* for *erunt*.

2. The Pres. Part. is found only in the compounds; *ab-sēns*, *absent*, and *prae-sēns*, *present*.

### 117. COMPOUNDS OF sum, *I am*.

*ab-sum*, *I am away, absent*. Pf. *ob-sum*, *I am against, I hurt*. Pf.

(*abfui*) *afful*. *obfui* or *offul*.

*ad-sum*, *I am present*. Pf. *affui*. *pos-sum*, *I am able*.

*dī-sum*, *I am wanting*. *prae-sum*, *I am over, I superintend*.

*in-sum*, *I am in*. *prō-sum*, *I am for, I profit*.

*inter-sum*, *I am between*. *sub-sum*, *I am under*. No Pf.

*super-sum*, *I am, or remain, over*.

These are all inflected like *sum*; but *prōsum* and *possum* require special treatment by reason of their composition.

### Prōsum, *I profit*.

### 118. In the forms of *prōsum*, *prōd-* is used before vowels.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	<i>prō-sum</i> , <i>prō-es</i> , <i>prō-est</i> ,	<i>prō-sim</i> ,
	<i>prō-sumus</i> , <i>prō-estis</i> , <i>prō-sunt</i> ,	
IMPERFECT.	<i>prō-eram</i> ,	<i>prō-essem</i> ,
FUTURE.	<i>prō-erō</i> ,	
PERFECT.	<i>prō-fui</i> ,	<i>prō-fuerim</i> ,
PLUPERFECT.	<i>prō-fueram</i> ,	<i>prō-fuissem</i> .
FUT. PERF.	<i>prō-fuerō</i> ,	

INFINITIVE. Pres. *prōd-esse*; Fut. *prō-futūrum esse* (-fore); Perf. *prō-fuisse*.

### Possum, *I am able, I can*.

119. Possum is compounded of *pot* (*potis*, *pote*) and *sum*; *t* becomes *s* before *s*; in the perfect forms, *f* (*pot-fui*) is lost.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

- Sg.—1. pos-sum, *I am able, can,*      pos-sim, *I be able.*  
       2. pot-es,  
       3. pot-est.
- pos-als,  
     pos-sit.

- PL.—1. pos-sumus,  
       2. pot-estis,  
       3. pos-sunt.
- pos-simus,  
     pos-sitis,  
     pos-sint.

## IMPERFECT.

- Sg.—1. pot-eram, *I was able, could,*      pos-sem, *I were, might be, able.*  
       2. pot-erās,  
       3. pot-erat.
- pos-sēs,  
     pos-set.

- PL.—1. pot-erāmus,  
       2. pot-erātis,  
       3. pot-erant.
- pos-sēmus,  
     pos-sētis,  
     pos-sent.

## FUTURE.

- Sg.—1. pot-erō, *I shall be able.*  
       2. pot-eris,  
       3. pot-erit.

- PL.—1. pot-erimus,  
       2. pot-eritis,  
       3. pot-erunt.

## PERFECT.

- Sg.—1. pot-uī, *I have been able,*      pot-uerim, *I have, may have, been  
able.*  
       2. pot-uistī,  
       3. pot-uīt.
- pot-uerīs,  
     pot-uerit.

- PL.—1. pot-uīmus,  
       2. pot-uīstis,  
       3. pot-uērunt.
- pot-uerīmus,  
     pot-uerītis,  
     pot-uerint.

## PLUPERFECT.

- Sg.—1. pot-ueram, *I had been able.*      pot-uissēm, *I had, might have,  
been able.*  
       2. pot-uerās,  
       3. pot-uerat.
- pot-uissēs,  
     pot-uissēt.

- PL.—1. pot-uerāmus,  
       2. pot-uerātis,  
       3. pot-uerant.
- pot-uissēmus,  
     pot-uissētis,  
     pot-uissēnt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *pot-uerō*, *I shall have been* Pl.—1. *pot-uerimus*,  
 2. *pot-ueris*, [able, 2. *pot-ueritis*,  
 3. *pot-uerit*. 3. *pot-uerint*.

INFINITIVE. PRES., *posse*, *to be able*. PERR., *potuisse*, *to have been able*.

NOTES.—1. In the early Latin the fusion of the two parts of the compound has not fully taken place ; we accordingly find not unfrequently : *potis sum*, *potis es*, *potis est*, *potis sunt*; *potis siem*, *potis sis*, *potis sit*, *potis sint*; *potis erat*; *pote fuisset*; and sometimes (even in classical and Augustan poets) *potis* and *pote* alone, the copula being omitted. Partial fusion is seen in Inf. *pot-esse*, *potuisse*; Subjv. *poti-sit* (inscr.), *poti-set*.

2. Occasional passive forms (followed by a passive infinitive) are found in early Latin (not in PLAUT. or TER.) and LUCRETIUS : *poteatur*, *possetur*, *possitur*, *poter-ātur*. *Poterint* for *poterunt* is doubtful.

## REGULAR VERBS.

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

120. 1. There are two Systems of Conjugation, the Thematic and the Non-thematic (132). The Non-thematic is confined to a small class. The Thematic System comprises four Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, ā, ē, ḫ, i, which may be found by dropping -re from the Present Infinitive Active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem-characteristic is called the consonant stem-characteristic.

2. From the *Present* stem, as seen in the Present Indicative and Present Infinitive active; from the *Perfect* stem, as seen in the Perfect Indicative active; and from the *Supine* stem, can be derived all the forms of the verb. These tenses are accordingly called the *Principal Parts*; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERR. IND.	SUPINE.
I. am-ā,	amā-re,	amā-vi,	amā-tum, <i>to love</i> .
II. dēle-ē,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vi,	dēlē-tum, <i>to blot out</i> .
mone-ē,	monē-re,	mon-ē-i,	mon-i-tum, <i>to remind</i> .
III. em-ā,	eme-re,	ēm-i,	ēm(p)-tum, <i>to buy</i> .
statu-ē,	statue-re,	statu-i,	statū-tum, <i>to settle</i> .
scrib-ē,	scribe-re,	scrip-ē-i,	scrip-tum, <i>to write</i> .
capi-ē,	cape-re,	ōp-i,	cap-tum, <i>to take</i> .
IV. audi-ē,	audi-re,	audi-vi,	audi-tum, <i>to hear</i> .

## Rules for forming the Tenses.

**121.** i. *The Present System.* From the Present stem as obtained by dropping -re of the Pres. Inf. Active, form

a. *Pres. Subjv.* by changing final e to a, ɔ to ə, ɛ to ə (or -ia), ɪ to ia, and adding -m for active, -r for passive; *Pres. Impv. Passive* by adding -re; *Fut. Impv.* by adding -to for Active and -tor for the Passive; *Pres. Part.* by adding -ns and lengthening preceding vowel; *Gerund* by adding -ndi after shortening e and ɔ, changing ɪ to ie, and in a few verbs e to ie. *Pres. Impv. Active* is the same as the stem; *Pres. Indic. Passive* may be formed from Pres. Indic. Act. by adding -r (after shortening ɔ).

b. *Impf. Indic.* by adding -bam for active and -bar for passive to the stem in the first and second conjugations; to the lengthened stem in the third and fourth (e to ɔ or ɪ, ɪ to ɪ); *Impf. Subjv.* by adding the endings -rem and -rer, or by adding -m and -r respectively to the Pres. Inf. Active.

c. *Future*, by adding -bɔ and -bor to the stem in the first and second conjugations; -m and -r in the third and in the fourth (e being changed to a (ia); ɪ, to ia).

2. *The Perfect System.* From the Perfect stem as obtained by dropping final i of the Perfect, form

a. *Perf. Subjv. Active* by adding -erim; *Perf. Inf. Active* by adding -isse.

b. *Plupf. Indic. Active* by adding -eram; *Plup. Subjv. Active* by adding -issem.

c. *Fut. Perf. Active* by adding -erɔ.

3. *The Supine System.* From the Supine stem as obtained by dropping final -m of the Supine, form

a. *Perf. Part. Passive* by adding -s.

b. *Fut. Part. Active* by adding -rus (preceding u being lengthened to ʊ).

c. The Compound Tenses in the Passive and the Periphrastic forms by combining these Participles with forms of esse, to be.

REMARK.—*Euphonic changes in the consonant stem-characteristic.* Characteristic b before s and t becomes p; g and qu before t become ɛ; e, g, qu, with s, become x; t and d before s are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped. See further, 9.

scrib-ɔ, scrip-əi, scrip-tum; leg-ɔ, ləo-tum; coqu-ɔ, coo-tum; dic-ɔ, dixi (dlo-əi); iung-ɔ, iūnɔ-ɪ (iūng-əi); coqu-ɔ, coxi (coqu-əi); ed-ɔ, ɔ-sum (ed-sum); ced-ɔ, cəs-əi (ced-əi); mitt-ɔ, mi-əi (mit-əi), mis-sum (mit-sum).

## 122.

## First Conjugation.

**CONJUGATION OF amāre, to love.**

**PRIN. PARTS : am-ō, amā-re, amā-vi, amā-tum.**

**ACTIVE.**

**INDICATIVE.**

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

**PRESENT.**

*Am loving, do love, love.*

Sg.—1. am-ō,

2. amā-s,

3. amā-t,

*Be loving, may love.*

ame-m,

amē-s,

ame-t.

PL.—1. amā-mus,

2. amā-tis,

3. amā-nt,

amē-mus,

ainē-tis,

ame-nt.

**IMPERFECT.**

*Was loving, loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-ba-m,

2. amā-bā-s,

3. amā-ba-t,

*Were loving, might love.*

amā-re-m,

amā-rā-s,

amā-re-t.

PL.—1. amā-bā-mus,

2. amā-bā-tis,

3. amā-ba-nt,

amā-rā-mus,

amā-rā-tis,

amā-re-nt.

**FUTURE.**

*Shall be loving, shall love.*

Sg.—1. amā-b-ō,

2. amā-bi-s,

3. amā-bi-t,

PL.—1. amā-bi-mus,

2. amā-bi-tis,

3. amā-bu-nt,

**PERFECT.**

*Have loved, did love.*

Sg.—1. amā-v-ī,

2. amā-v-istī,

3. amā-v-it,

*Have, may have, loved.*

amā-v-eri-m,

amā-v-erī-s,

amā-v-eri-t.

PL.—1. amā-v-imus,

2. amā-v-istis,

3. amā-v-ērunt (-ēre),

amā-v-erī-mus,

amā-v-erī-tis,

amā-v-erī-nt.

## First Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.**Had, might have, loved.*Sg.—1. *amā-v-era-m,**amā-v-issee-m,*2. *amā-v-era-s,**amā-v-issee-s,*3. *amā-v-era-t,**amā-v-issee t.*PL.—1. *amā-v-era-mus,**amā-v-issee-mus,*2. *amā-v-era-tis,**amā-v-issee-tis,*3. *amā-v-era-nt,**amā-v-issee-nt.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have loved.*Sg.—1. *amā-v-er-ō,*2. *amā-v-er-l-e,*3. *amā-v-er-i-t.*PL.—1. *amā-v-er-l-mus,*2. *amā-v-er-l-tis,*3. *amā-v-er-i-nt.*

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

Sg.—1. —, —,

2. *amā,* *love thou,* *amā-tō,* *thou shall love.*3. —, —, *amā-tō,* *he shall love.*

PL.—1. —, —,

2. *amā-te,* *love ye,* *amā-tō-te,* *ye shall love.*3. —, —, *ama-ntō,* *they shall love.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. *amā-re,* *to love.*Perf. *amā-v-issee,* *to have loved.*Fut. *amā-tūr-nm, -am, -nm esse,* *to be about to love.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], *loving.*G. *ama-nd-l,* *of loving.*D. *ama-nd-ō,* *to loving.*

Ac. [amā-re],

Ac. *amā-tum,* *to love.*(ad) *ama-nd-um,* *loving, to love.*Ab. *ama-nd-ō,* *by loving.*Ab. *amā-tū,* *to love, in the loving.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. *amā-n-s* (G. *ama-nt-is*), *loving.*FUTURE. *amā-tūr-us, -a, -um,* *being about to love.*

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am loved.**Be, may be, loved.*

- Sg.—1. amo-r,  
2. amā-ris (-re),  
3. amā-tur,

- ame-r,  
amē-ris (-re),  
amē-tur.

- Pl.—1. amā-mur,  
2. amā-mini,  
3. amā-natur,

- amē-mur,  
amē-mini,  
amē-natur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loved.**Were, might be, loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-bo-r,  
2. amā-be-ris (-re),  
3. amā-bi-tur,

- amā-re-r,  
amā-rē-ris (-re),  
amā-rē-tur.

- Pl.—1. amā-bā-mur,  
2. amā-bā-mini,  
3. amā-ba-natur,

- amā-rē-mur,  
amā-rē-mini,  
amā-re-natur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-bo-r,  
2. amā-be-ris (-re),  
3. amā-bi-tur.

- Pl.—1. amā-bi-mur,  
2. amā-bi-mini,  
3. amā-bu-natur.

## PAST.

*Have been loved, was loved.**Have, may have, been loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um sum,  
2. es,  
3. est,

- amā-t-us, -a, -um sim,  
sia,  
sit,

- Pl.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a sumus,  
2. estis,  
3. sunt.

- amā-t-i, -ae, -a simus,  
sitis,  
sint.

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been loved.**Had, might have, been loved.*

Sg.—1.	<i>amā-t-us, -a, -um</i>	<i>eram,</i>	<i>amā-t-us, -a, -um</i>	<i>essem,</i>
2.		<i>erās,</i>		<i>esēs,</i>
3.		<i>erat,</i>		<i>eset,</i>
PL.—1.	<i>amā-t-i, -ae, -a</i>	<i>erimus,</i>	<i>amā-t-i, -ae, -a</i>	<i>essēmus,</i>
2.		<i>eritis,</i>		<i>essētis,</i>
3.		<i>erunt.</i>		<i>essent.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been loved.*

Sg.—1.	<i>amā-t-us, -a, -um</i>	<i>erō,</i>
2.		<i>eris,</i>
3.		<i>erit.</i>
PL.—1.	<i>amā-t-i, -ae, -a</i>	<i>erimus,</i>
2.		<i>eritis,</i>
3.		<i>erunt.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

Sg.—1.	<i>—,</i>	<i>—,</i>
2.	<i>amā-re,</i> <i>be thou loved.</i>	<i>amā-tor,</i> <i>thou shall be loved.</i>
3.	<i>—,</i>	<i>amā-tor,</i> <i>he shall be loved.</i>
PL.—1.	<i>—,</i>	<i>—,</i>
2.	<i>amā-min<i>i</i>,</i> <i>be ye loved.</i>	<i>—,</i>
3.	<i>—.</i>	<i>ama-n<i>tor</i>,</i> <i>they shall be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>amā-ri,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>
PERF.	<i>amā-t-um, -am, -um esse,</i>	<i>to have been loved.</i>
FUT.	<i>amā-tum iri,</i>	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
FUT. PR.	<i>amā-t-um, -am, -um fore.</i>	

## PARTICIPLE.

## GERUNDIVE.

PERF.	<i>amā-t-us, -a, -um, loved.</i>	<i>ama-n<i>nd</i>-us, -a, -um, (one) to be loved.</i>
-------	----------------------------------	---

## 123.

## Second Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *dēlēre*, *to destroy (blot out)*.PRIN. PARTS : *dēle-ō*, *dēlē-re*, *dēlē-vi*, *dēlē-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PRESENT.

Sg.— <i>dēle-ō</i> ,	<i>dēlea-m</i> ,	<i>dēle-o-r</i> ,	<i>dēlea-r</i> ,
<i>dēle-s</i> ,	<i>dēlea-s</i> ,	<i>dēle-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>dēlea-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>dēle-t</i> ,	<i>dēlea-t</i> ,	<i>dēle-tur</i> ,	<i>dēlea-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>dēle-mus</i> ,	<i>dēlea-mus</i> ,	<i>dēle-mur</i> ,	<i>dēle-ō-mur</i> ,
<i>dēle-tis</i> ,	<i>dēlea-tis</i> ,	<i>dēle-mini</i> ,	<i>dēle-ō-mini</i> ,
<i>dēle-nt</i> .	<i>dēlea-nt</i> .	<i>dēle-natur</i> .	<i>dēle-ō-natur</i> .

## IMPERFECT.

Sg.— <i>dēle-ba-m</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-m</i> ,	<i>dēle-ba-r</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-r</i> ,
<i>dēle-ba-s</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-s</i> ,	<i>dēle-ba-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>dēle-ba-t</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-t</i> ,	<i>dēle-ba-tur</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>dēle-ba-mus</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-mus</i> ,	<i>dēle-ba-mur</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-mur</i> ,
<i>dēle-ba-tis</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-tis</i> ,	<i>dēle-ba-mini</i> ,	<i>dēle-re-mini</i> ,
<i>dēle-ba-nt</i> .	<i>dēle-re-nt</i> .	<i>dēle-ba-natur</i> .	<i>dēle-re-natur</i> .

## FUTURE.

Sg.— <i>dēle-b-ō</i> ,	<i>dēle-bo-r</i> ,
<i>dēle-bi-s</i> ,	<i>dēle-be-ris (re)</i> ,
<i>dēle-bi-t</i> ,	<i>dēle-bi-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>dēle-bi-mus</i> ,	<i>dēle-bi-mur</i> ,
<i>dēle-bi-tis</i> ,	<i>dēle-bi-mini</i> ,
<i>dēle-bu-nt</i> .	<i>dēle-bu-natur</i> .

## PAST.

Sg.— <i>dēle-v-ō</i> ,	<i>dēle-v-eri-m</i> ,	<i>dēle-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>dēle-t-us sim</i> ,
<i>dēle-v-isti</i> ,	<i>dēle-v-eri-s</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>sis</i> ,
<i>dēle-v-it</i> ,	<i>dēle-v-eri-t</i> ,	<i>est</i> ,	<i>sit</i> .
PL.— <i>dēle-v-imus</i> ,	<i>dēle-v-eri-mus</i> ,	<i>dēle-t-i sumus</i> ,	<i>dēle-t-i simus</i> ,
<i>dēle-v-istis</i> ,	<i>dēle-v-eri-tis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>sit</i> ,
<i>dēle-v-erunt (-re)</i> ,	<i>dēle-v-eri-nt</i> ,	<i>sunt</i> ,	<i>sint</i> .

## Second Conjugation.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PLUPERFECT.			
Sg.—dēlē-v-era-m, dēlē-v-erā-s, dēlē-v-era-t,	dēlē-v-isso-m, dēlē-v-isso-s, dēlē-v-isso-t.	dēlē-t-us eram, erās, erat,	dēlē-t-us essem, esēs, eset.
PL.—dēlē-v-erā-mus, dēlē-v-erā-tis, dēlē-v-era-nt,	dēlē-v-isso-mus, dēlē-v-isso-tis, dēlē-v-isso-nt.	dēlē-t-i erāmus, erātis, erant,	dēlē-t-i esēmus, esētis, essent.
FUTURE PERFECT.			
Sg.—dēlē-v-er-d, dēlē-v-erī-s, dēlē-v-erī-t,		dēlē-t-us erō, eris, erit.	
PL.—dēlē-v-erī-mus, dēlē-v-erī-tis, dēlē-v-erī-nt,		dēlē-t-i erāmus, erātis, erunt.	
IMPERATIVE.			
PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sg. —, dēlē, —, —,	—, dēlē-tō, —, dēlē-tō,	—, dēlē-re, —, —,	—, dēlē-tor, —, dēlē-tor.
PL. —, dēlē-te, —, —,	—, dēlē-tōtē, —, dēlē-ntō,	—, dēlē-minī, —, —,	—, —, —, dēlē-nor.
INFINITIVE.			
PRES. dēlē-re.	.	PRES. dēlē-rl.	
PERF. dēlē-v-isso.	.	PERF. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um esse.	
FUT. dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um esse.	.	FUT. dēlē-tum iri.	
	.	FUT. PF. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um fore.	
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
N. [dēlē-re].		PRES. N. dēlē-n-s; G. dēlē-nd-is.	
G. dēlē-nd-i.		FUT. dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um.	
D. dēlē-nd-ō.		PERF. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um.	
AC. [dēlē-re] (ad) dēlē-nd-um.	AC. dēlē-tum.	GERUNDIVE.	
AB. dēlē-nd-ō.	AB. dēlē-ta.	dēlē-nd-us, -a, -um.	

**124.** Like *dölere*, *to destroy*, are conjugated only, *nère*, *to spin*, *fère*, *to weep*, and the compounds of *-plère*, *fill*, and *-olère* *grow* (the latter with Supine in *-itum*); also *cíere*, *to stir up*. See 137(b).

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic *e* in the Present System, but drop it in the Perfect System, changing *vi* to *ui*, and weaken it to *i* in the Supine System.

#### Second Conjugation.

##### CONJUGATION OF *monère*, *to remind*.

PRIN. PARTS : *mone-ō*, *monē-re*, *monē-ui*, *monē-tum*.

##### ACTIVE.

##### PASSIVE.

INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PRESENT.			
Se.— <i>mone-ō</i> ,	<i>monea-m</i> ,	<i>mone-o-r</i> ,	<i>monea-r</i> ,
<i>monē-s</i> ,	<i>moneā-s</i> ,	<i>monē-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>moneā-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>monē-t</i> ,	<i>moneā-t</i> ,	<i>monē-tur</i> ,	<i>moneā-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>monē-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-mur</i> ,	<i>monē-mur</i> ,
<i>monē-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-mini</i> ,	<i>monē-mini</i> ,
<i>monē-nt</i> .	<i>monē-nt</i> .	<i>monē-natur</i> .	<i>monē-a-natur</i> .
IMPERFECT.			
Se.— <i>monē-ba-m</i> ,	<i>monē-re-m</i> ,	<i>monē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>monē-re-r</i> ,
<i>monē-ba-s</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-s</i> ,	<i>monē-ba-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>monē-ba-t</i> ,	<i>monē-re-t</i> ,	<i>monē-ba-tur</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>monē-ba-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-ba-mur</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-mur</i> ,
<i>monē-ba-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-ba-mini</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-mini</i> ,
<i>monē-ba-nt</i> .	<i>monē-re-nt</i> .	<i>monē-ba-natur</i> .	<i>monē-rē-natur</i> .
FUTURE.			
Se.— <i>monē-b-ō</i> ,		<i>monē-bo-r</i> ,	
<i>monē-bi-s</i> ,		<i>monē-be-ris (-re)</i> ,	
<i>monē-bi-t</i> ,		<i>monē-bi-tur</i> ,	
Pl.— <i>monē-bi-mus</i> ,		<i>monē-bi-mur</i> ,	
<i>monē-bi-tis</i> ,		<i>monē-bi-mini</i> ,	
<i>monē-bu-nt</i> .		<i>monē-bu-natur</i> .	
PAST.			
Se.— <i>mon-u-l</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-m</i> ,	<i>moni-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>moni-t-us sim</i> ,
<i>mon-u-isti</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-s</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>sis</i> ,
<i>mon-u-it</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-t</i> ,	<i>est</i> ,	<i>sit</i> ,
Pl.— <i>mon-u-imus</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-mus</i> ,	<i>moni-t-i sumus</i> ,	<i>moni-t-i simus</i> ,
<i>mon-u-itis</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-tis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>sitis</i> ,
<i>mon-u-erunt (-ere)</i> .	<i>mon-u-eri-nt</i> .	<i>sunt</i> .	<i>sint</i> .

## Second Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—mon-u-era-m,	mon-u-issem,	moni-t-us eram,	moni-t-us esse,
mon-u-eris-a,	mon-u-issem-a,	eris,	essis,
mon-u-era-t,	mon-u-issem-t,	erat,	esset,
Pl.—mon-u-erimus,	mon-u-issemus,	moni-t-i erimus,	moni-t-i essimus,
mon-u-erit-tis,	mon-u-issem-tis,	eritis,	essitis,
mon-u-era-nt.	mon-u-issem-nt.	erant.	essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—mon-u-er-ō,	moni-t-us erō,
mon-u-erit-a,	eris,
mon-u-erit-t,	erit,
Pl.—mon-u-erit-mus,	moni-t-i erimus,
mon-u-erit-tis,	eritis,
mon-u-erit-nt.	erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

	PRES.	FUT.	PRES.	FUT.
Sg.	—	—	—	—
	monē,	monē-tō,	monē-re,	monē-tor,
	—	monē-tō,	—	monē-tor,
Pl.	—	—	—	—
	monē-te,	monē-tōtē,	monē-minī,	—
	—	monē-ntō,	—	mone-nator.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	monē-re.	PRES.	monē-ri.
P.P.P.	mon-u-issem.	P.P.P.	moni-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT.	moni-tūr-um, -am, um esse.	FUT.	moni-t-um iri.
		FUT. P.P.	moni-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

N.	[monē-re].	PRES. N.	monē-n-s; G. mone-nt-iā.
G.	mone-nd-i.	FUT.	moni-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D.	mone-nd-ō.	P.P.P.	moni-t-us, -a, -am.
Ac.	[monē-re]	Ac.	moni-tum.
	(ad) mone-nd-um.		GERUNDIVE.
Ab.	mone-nd-ō.	Ab.	moni-tūl.
			mone-nd-us, -a, -um.

## 125.

## Third Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *emere*, *to buy*.

PRIN. PARTS : em-o, eme-re, ēm-i, ēm(p)-tum.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PRESENT.

Sg.—em-o,	ema-m,	em-o-r,	ema-r,
emi-s,	emā-s,	eme-ris (-re),	emā-ris (-re),
emi-t,	ema-t,	emi-tur,	emā-tur,
PL.—emi-mus,	emā-mus,	emi-mur,	emā-mur,
emi-tis,	emā-tis,	emi-mini,	emā-mini,
emu-nt.	ema-nt.	emu-ntur.	ema-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

Sg.—emē-ba-m,	eme-re-m,	emē-be-r,	eme-re-r,
emē-bē-s,	eme-rē-s,	emē-be-ris (-re),	eme-rē-ris (-re),
emē-ba-t,	eme-re-t,	emē-be-tur,	eme-rē-tur,
PL.—emē-bē-mus,	eme-rē-mus,	emē-be-mur,	eme-rē-mur,
emē-bē-tis,	eme-rē-tis,	emē-be-mini,	eme-rē-mini,
emē-ba-nt.	eme-re-nt.	emē-be-ntur.	eme-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

Sg.—ema-m,		ema-r,	
emē-s,		emē-ris (-re),	
eme-t,		emē-tur,	
PL.—emē-mus,		emē-mur,	
emē-tis,		emē-mini,	
eme-nt.		emē-ntur.	

## PERFECT.

Sg.—ēm-i,	ēm-eri-m,	ēmp-t-us sum,	ēmp-t-us sim,
ēm-isti,	ēm-eri-s,	ea,	ais,
ēm-it,	ēm-eri-t,	eet,	sit,
PL.—ēm-imus,	ēm-eri-l-mus,	ēmp-t-i sumus,	ēmp-t-i simus,
ēm-istis,	ēm-eri-l-tis,	eetis,	sitis,
ēm-ērunt (-re).	ēm-eri-nt.	sunt.	sint.

## Third Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—ēm-era-m,	ēm-isso-m,	ēmp-t-us	eram,	ēmp-t-us	essem,
ēm-erā-s,	ēm-isso-s,		erās,		essās,
ēm-era-t,	ēm-isso-t,		erat,		asset,
PL.—ēm-erā-mus,	ēm-isso-mus,	ēmp-t-i	erāmus,	ēmp-t-i	essāmus,
ēm-erā-tis,	ēm-isso-tis,		erātis,		essātis,
ēm-era-nt.	ēm-isso-nt.		erant.		asset.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—ēm-erā,	ēmp-t-us	erō,
ēm-erā-s,		eris,
ēm-erā-t,		erit,
PL.—ēm-erā-mus,	ēmp-t-i	erāmus,
ēm-erā-tis,		erātis,
ēm-erā-nt.		erānt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sg. —	—	—	—
eme,	emi-tō,	eme-re,	emi-tor,
—	emi-tō,	—	emi-tor,
PL. —	—	—	—
emi-te.	emi-tōte,	emi-minī.	—
—	emū-ntō.	—	emū-nator.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. eme-re.	PRES. em-i.
PERF. em-isso.	PERF. ēmp-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT. ēmp-tūr-um, -am, -um esse.	FUT. ēmp-tum iri. FUT. PF. ēmp-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

N. [eme-re].	
G. em-e-nd-i.	
D. em-e-nd-ō.	
Ac. [em-e-re]	Ac. ēmp-tum.
(ad) em-e-ndum.	
Ab. em-e-nd-ō.	Ab. ēmp-tū.

## SUPINE.


## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. N. emē-n-s; G. emē-nt-i.
FUT. ēmp-tūr-ns, -a, -um.
PERF. ēmp-t-us, -a, -um.

## GERUNDIVE.

em-e-nd-us, -a, -um.
----------------------

**126.** Many verbs of the third conjugation with stem in *ie* (Pres. Indic. in *iō*) weaken this *ie* to *e* before *-re*, and to *i* before *m, s, t*, and *t* in all tenses of the Present System except the Future. Otherwise they follow the inflection of *eme-re*.

These verbs are *capiō*, *cipiō*, *faciō*, *fodiō*, *fugiō*, *iaciō*, *pariō*, *quatiō*, *rapiō*, *sapiō*, and their compounds; also compounds of *-liciō*, *-spiciō*, and the deponents *gradior* and its compounds, *morior* and its compounds, *patior* and its compounds.

#### SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF *capi-re*, *to take*.

PRIN. PARTS : *capi-ō*, *capi-re*, *capi-s*, *capi-tum*.

##### ACTIVE.

##### PASSIVE.

###### INDIC.

###### SUBJV.

###### INDIC.

###### SUBJV.

###### PRESENT.

Sg.— <i>capi-ō</i> ,	<i>capia-m</i> ,	<i>capi-o-r</i> ,	<i>capia-r</i> ,
<i>capi-s</i> ,	<i>capi-s</i> ,	<i>capi-e-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>capi-s-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>capi-t</i> ,	<i>capia-t</i> ,	<i>capi-tur</i> ,	<i>capi-s-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>capi-mus</i> ,	<i>capiū-mus</i> ,	<i>capi-mur</i> ,	<i>capiū-mur</i> ,
<i>capi-tis</i> ,	<i>capiū-tis</i> ,	<i>capi-minī</i> ,	<i>capiū-minī</i> ,
<i>capiu-nt</i> .	<i>capia-nt</i> .	<i>capiu-ntur</i> .	<i>capia-ntar</i> .

###### IMPERFECT.

Sg.— <i>capiē-ba-m</i> ,	<i>cap-e-re-m</i> ,	<i>capiē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>cape-re-r</i> ,
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

###### FUTURE.

Sg.— <i>capia-m</i> ,	<i>capia-r</i> ,
<i>capiē-s</i> ,	<i>capiē-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

###### IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	FUT.	PRES.	FUT.
Sg.— <i>cape</i> ,	<i>cap-i-tō</i> ,	<i>cape-re</i> ,	<i>capi-tor</i> ,
	<i>cap-i-tō</i> ,		<i>capi-tor</i> ,
<i>capi-te</i> .	<i>capi-tōte</i> ,	<i>capi-minī</i> ,	
	<i>capiu-ntō</i> .		<i>capiu-ntor</i> .

###### INFINITIVE.

PRES. <i>cape-re</i> .	<i>cap-L</i>
------------------------	--------------

###### PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>capiē-n-s</i> .	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
	G. <i>capiē-nd-L</i> .	<i>capiē-nd-us, -a, -um</i> .

## 127.

## Fourth Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *audire*, *to hear*.PRIN. PARTS : audi-**ō**, audi-re, audi-vi, audi-tum.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJ.V.

## INDIC.

## SUBJ.V.

## PRESENT.

Sc.—audi- <b>ō</b> ,	audi-a-m,	audi-o-r,	audi-a-r,
audi-a,	audi-a-s,	audi-ris (re),	audi-a-ris (-re),
audi-t,	audi-a-t,	audi-tur,	audi-a-tur,
Pl.—audi-mus,	audi-a-mus,	audi-mur,	audi-a-mur,
audi-tis,	audi-a-tis,	audi-mini,	audi-a-mini,
audi-nt.	audi-a-nt.	audi-u-natur.	audi-a-natur.

## IMPERFECT.

Sc.—audiē-ba-m,	audi-re-m,	audiē-ba-r,	audi-re-r,
audiē-ba-s,	audi-re-s,	audiē-ba-ris (re),	audi-re-ris (-re),
audiē-ba-t,	audi-re-t,	audiē-ba-tur,	audi-re-tur,
Pl.—audiē-ba-mus,	audi-re-mus,	audiē-ba-mur,	audi-re-mur,
audiē-ba-tis,	audi-re-tis,	audiē-ba-mini,	audi-re-mini,
audiē-ba-nt.	audi-re-nt.	audiē-ba-natur.	audi-re-natur.

## FUTURE.

Sc.—audi-a-m,	audi-a-r,
audi-a-s,	audi-a-ris (-re),
audi-a-t,	audi-a-tur,
Pl.—audiē-mus,	audiē-mur,
audiē-tis,	audiē-mini,
audiē-nt.	audiē-natur.

## PERFECT.

Sc.—audi-v-i,	audi-v-eri-m,	audi-t-us sum,	audi-t-us sim,
audi-v-isti,	audi-v-eri-s,	es,	sis,
audi-v-it,	audi-v-eri-t,	est,	sit,
Pl.—audi-v-imus,	audi-v-eri-mus,	audi-t-i sumus,	audi-t-i simus,
audi-v-istis,	audi-v-eri-tis,	estis,	sitis,
audi-v-erunt (-re).	audi-v-eri-nt.	sunt.	sint.

## Fourth Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJ.V.

INDIC.

SUBJ.V.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—audi-v-era-m,	audi-v-inse-m,	audi-t-us eram,	audi-tu-s essem,
audi-v-erā-s,	audi-v-inse-s,	erās,	essēs,
audi-v-era-t,	audi-v-inse-t,	erat,	eset,
PL.—audi-v-erā-mus,	audi-v-inse-mus,	audi-t-i erāmus,	audi-t-i essēmus,
audi-v-erā-tis,	audi-v-inse-tis,	erātis,	essētis,
audi-v-era-nt.	audi-v-inse-nt.	erant.	esent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—audi-v-er-i,	audi-t-us erā,
audi-v-erī-s,	erīs,
audi-v-erī-t,	erīt,

Pl.—audi-v-erī-mus,	audi-t-i erāmus,
audi-v-erī-tis,	erātis,
audi-v-erī-nt.	erānt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

—	—	—	—
audi,	audi-tō,	audi-re,	audi-tor,
—	audi-tō,	—	audi-tor,

—	—	—	—
audi-te.	audi-tōte,	audi-minī.	—
—	audiu-ntō.	—	audiu-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audi-re.

PRES. audi-ri.

PERF. audi-v-inse.

PRES. audi-t-um, -am, um esse.

FUT. audi-tūr-um, -am, -um esse.

FUT. audi-tum iri.

FUT. PF. audi-t-um, -am, -um fore.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

PARTICIPLES.

N. [audi-re].

PRES. N. audiē-n-s, G. audie-nt-is.

G. audie-nd-i.

FUT. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um.

D. audie-nd-ō.

PERF. audi-t-us, -a, -um.

Ac. [audi-re]

Ac. audi-tum.

GERUNDIVE.

(ad) audie-nd-um.

—

Ab. audie-nd-ō.

Ab. audi-tū.

audie-nd-us, -a, -um.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**128.** Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Future Active Infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a Present, Future, and Perfect Participle, all with active meaning. The Gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

## I. First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *hortārī*, *to exhort*.PRIN. PARTS: *hort-or*, *hort-ri*, *hort-tus sum*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Exhort.**Be exhorting, may exhort.*Sc.—*hort-o-r,**hort-e-r,**hortā-ris (-re),**hortē-ris (-re),**hortā-tur,**hortē-tar,*Pl.—*hortā-mur,**hortē-mur,**hortā-mini,**hortē-mini,**hortā-natur.**hortē-natur.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Was exhorting.**Were exhorting, might exhort.*Sc.—*hortā-ba-r,**hortē-re-r,**hortā-ba-ris (-re),**hortē-re-ris (-re),**hortā-ba-tur,**hortē-re-tur,*Pl.—*hortā-ba-mur,**hortē-re-mur,**hortā-ba-mini,**hortē-re-mini,**hortā-ba-natur.**hortē-re-natur.*

## FUTURE.

*Shall exhort.*Sc.—*hortā-bo-r,**hortā-bo-ris (-re),**hortā-bo-tur,*Pl.—*hortā-bo-mur,**hortā-bo-mini,**hortā-bo-natur.*

## PERFECT.

*Have exhorted, exhorted.*

Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um sum,	sumus,
es,	estis,
est,	sunt.
PL.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	

*Have, may have, exhorted.*

hortā-t-us, -a, -um sim,	simus,
sis,	sitis,
sit,	sint.
hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had exhorted.*

Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um eram,	eramus,
erās,	erātis,
erat,	erant.
PL.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	

*Had, might have, exhorted.*

hortā-t-us, -a, -um esseim,	esseimus,
esseis,	esseitis,
esseit,	esseant.
hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have exhorted.*

Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um erō,	erimus,
eris,	eritis,
erit,	erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Sg. —	hortā-re, exhort thou.
—	
PL. —	hortā-mi, exholt ye.

## FUTURE.

hortā-tor, thou shall exhort.
hortā-tor, he shall exhort.
—

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. hortā-ri, to exhort.
FUT. hortā-tūr-um, am, -um esse, to be about to exhort.
PERF. hortā-t-um, -am, -um esse, to have exhorted.
F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. hortā-n-a, exhorting.
FUT. hortā-tūr-us, -a, um, about to exhort.
PERF. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, having exhorted.

## GERUNDIVE.

hortā-n-d-us, -a, -um, [one] to be exhorted.
--

## GERUND.

Ab. hortā-tūl, to exhort, in the exhorting.
G. horta-n-d-l, of exhorting.

## 2. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations.

**SYNOPSIS OF verērī, to fear; loqui, to speak; mentiri, to lie.**

**PRIN. PARTS:** verō-or, verē-rī, veri-tus sum; loquō-or, loqu-i, locū-tus sum;  
menti-or, menti-rī, menti-tus sum.

## INDICATIVE.

	II.	III.	IV.
PRES.	vere-o-r, verē-rīs (-re), etc.,	loqu-o-r, loque-rīs (-re), etc.,	menti-o-r, menti-rīs (-re), etc.,
IMPERF.	verē-ba-r,	loquē-ba-r,	mentiē-ba-r,
FUT.	verē-bo-r,	loqua-r,	mentia-r,
PERF.	veri-tus sum,	locū-tus sum,	menti-tus sum,
PLUFF.	veri-tus eram,	locū-tus eram,	menti-tus eram,
FUT. P. <sup>r.</sup>	veri-tus erō.	locū-tus erō.	menti-tus erō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	vere-a-r, vereā-rīs (-re), etc.,	loqua-r, loquā-rīs (-re), etc.,	mentia-r, mentiā-rīs (-re), etc.,
IMPERF.	verē-re-r,	loque-re-r,	menti-re-r,
PERF.	veri-tus sim,	locū-tus sim,	menti-tus sim,
PLUFF.	veri-tus essem.	locū-tus essem.	menti-tus essem.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	verē-re,	loque-re,	menti-re,
FUT.	verē-tor.	loqui-tor.	menti-tor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	verē-rī,	loqu-i,	menti-rī,
FUT.	veri-tūr-um esse,	locū-tūr-um esse,	menti-tūr-um esse,
PERF.	veri-tūm esse,	locū-tūm esse,	menti-tūm esse,
FUT. P. <sup>r.</sup>	veri-tūm fore.	locū-tūm fore.	menti-tūm fore.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	verē-n-s,	loquē-n-s,	mentiē-n-s,
FUT.	veri-tūr-ns,	locū-tūr-ns,	menti-tūr-ns,
PERF.	veri-tūs.	locū-tūs.	menti-tūs.
GERUND.	vere-nd-i, etc.,	loque-nd-i,	mentie-nd-i,
GERUNDIVE.	vere-nd-us,	loque-nd-us,	mentie-nd-us,
SUPINE.	veri-tūm,	locū-tūm,	menti-tūm,
	veri-tū,	locū-tū,	menti-tū,

## Periphrastic Conjugation.

129. The Periphrastic Conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Participle active and the Gerundive with forms of the verb *sum*.

## ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>amātūrus (-a, -um) sum,</i> <i>Am about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus (-a, -um) sim,</i> <i>Be about to love.</i>
IMPF.	<i>amātūrus eram,</i> <i>Was about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus essem,</i> <i>Were about to love.</i>
FUT.	<i>amātūrus erō,</i> <i>Shall be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	<i>amātūrus ful,</i> <i>Have been, was, about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerim,</i> <i>Have, may have, been about to love.</i>
PLUFF.	<i>amātūrus fueram,</i> <i>Had been about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuisse,</i> <i>Had, might have, been about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>amātūrus fuerō,</i> <i>Shall have been about to love.</i>	
INFINITIVE.	PRES. <i>amātūr-um (-am, -um) esse,</i> <i>To be about to love.</i>	
	PERF. <i>amātūr-um fuisse,</i> <i>To have been about to love.</i>	

## PASSIVE.

PRES.	<i>amandus (-a, -um) sum,</i> <i>Have to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus (-a, -um) sim,</i> <i>Have to be loved.</i>
IMPF.	<i>amandus eram,</i> <i>Had to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus essem, forem,</i> <i>Had to be loved.</i>
FUT.	<i>amandus erō,</i> <i>Shall have to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	<i>amandus ful,</i> <i>Have had to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus fuerim,</i> <i>Have had to be loved.</i>
PLUFF.	<i>amandus fueram,</i> <i>Had had to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse,</i> <i>Should have had to be loved.</i>
INFINITIVE.	PRES. <i>amandum (-am, -um) esse,</i> <i>To have to be loved.</i>	
	PERF. <i>amandum fuisse,</i> <i>To have had to be loved.</i>	

## Notes on the Four Conjugations.

130. *The Present System.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.—(a) In the third person Singular active, early Latin, and occasionally later poets, often retain the original length of vowel in the endings -*et*, -*et*, and -*it* of the first, second, and fourth conjugations. Final -*It* in the third conjugation is rare, and due, perhaps, to analogy or to metrical necessity. In the first person Plural the ending -*mis* is found a few times in poetry. In third person Plural an earlier ending, -*ont*, is found only in a *Carmen Sallare*, and is disputed. The ending -*ont* is frequent in early Latin for -*unt*.

(b) In the second Singular, passive, in all tenses of the Present stem, the ending -*re* is much more common in early Latin than -*ris*, and is regular in Cic. except in the Pr. Indic., where he prefers -*ris* on account of confusion with Pr. Inf., admitting -*re* only in deponents, and then but rarely. In general, in the Pr. Indic. -*re* is rare in the first and second conjugations, more rare in the third, and never found in the fourth, in prose authors. Post-Ciceronian prose writers, e. g., Livy, Tacitus, prefer -*ris*, even in the other tenses of the Present stem. The poets use -*ris* or -*re* to suit the metre.

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.—In the fourth conjugation, instead of -*is*, we find in early times -*I-*. This is common in early Latin (especially *scibam*), in the poets to suit the metre, and occasionally in later prose. In the verb *ed*, and its compounds (but *ambire* varies), this form was regular always.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE.—PLAUTUS shows sporadic cases of -*It*, as *erit*, *vénbit* (*vénēb*). In the fourth conjugation -*ibō* for -*iam* is very common in early Latin (especially *scibō*), and forms in -*ibō* of the third conjugation are occasional.

4. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Final -*et* of the third person Singular active is occasional in early Latin and also in later poets. In early Latin the active endings -*im*, -*is*, -*it*, -*int* are found in *dare* (and some compounds), which forms very often *duim*, *dus*, *dut*, *dunt*. On similar forms from *esse*, see 116; from *edere*, see 172.

5. IMPERATIVE.—(a) Four verba, *dicere*, *dūcere*, *faoere*, *ferre* (171), form the Pr. Impv. active *dic*, *dūc*, *fao*, *fer*. But in early Latin *dice*, *dūce*, *faoe* are not uncommon. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verba, except non-prepositional compounds of *faciō*. *Seffre*, *to know*, lacks the Pr. Impv. scf.

(b) The original ending of the Fut. Impv. active -*tōd* is found in early inscriptions, but very rarely.

(c) The Pr. Impv. passive (second and third Singular) ends occasionally in early Latin in -*minō*.

6. PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE.—The early ending -*rier* (-*ier*) is very common in early Latin and occasionally in poetry at all periods. PLAUTUS shows about 140 such formations. In literary prose it does not appear till very late.

7. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE occurs sporadically in early Latin with the ending -*is*, -*es*, the *n* having been omitted owing to its weak sound; see 12, n. 1.

8. The older ending of the GERUND and GERUNDIVE in the third and fourth conjugations was -*undus*; and -*endus* was found only after *u*. In classical times -*undus* is frequent, especially in verbs of third and fourth conjugations. Later, -*endus* is the regular form.

131. *The Perfect System.*

1. SYNCOPATED FORMS.—The Perfects in -*svi*, -*svl*, -*lv*, often drop the *v* before *s* or *r*, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -*lv*, which admit the contraction only before *s*.

The syncopated forms are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the metre.

## PERFECT.

SING. 1.			
2.	amāvisti, amāsti.	dēlēvisti, dēlesti.	audivisti, audisti.
3.	—	—	—
PLUR. 1.			
2.	amāvistis, amāstis.	dēlēvistis, dēlestis.	audivistis, audistis.
3.	amāvērunt, amārunt.	dēlēvērunt, dēlerunt.	audivērunt, audirunt.
SUBJV.	amāverim, amārim,	dēlēverim, dēlerim,	audiverim, audierim,
	etc.	etc.	etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.	amāveram, amāram,	dēlēveram, dēlēram,	audiveram, audieram,
	etc.	etc.	etc.
SUBJV.	amāvissem, amāssem,	dēlēvissem, dēlēssem,	audivissem, audissem,
	etc.	etc.	etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, amārō,	dēlēverō, dēlērō,	audiverō, audierō,
etc.	etc.	etc.

## INFINITIVE PERFECT.

amāuisse, amāsse.	dēlēuisse, dēlēsse.	audivisse, audisse.
-------------------	---------------------	---------------------

2. In the first and third persons Sing. and in the first person Pl. of the Perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in Perfects in *Ivi*, and no contraction ensues. It is most common in the Perfects of *ire* (169) and *petere*. In other verbs this syncopation is post-Ciceronian, except in a few forms. So CICERO uses *dormiit*, *ārudiit*, *expediti*, *molliti*, *cupiit* (also PLAUTUS); CAESAR, *communiuit*, *reasciit*, *quaesiit*. *Dēsinere* forms *dēsii* and *dēsait*, once each in early Latin (CICERO uses *dēstii* and *dēstitit* instead), and then in post-Augustan Latin; *dēsimus* is cited once from CICERO. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of *ire* (169), which are very rare in classical prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

NOTE.—The forms *nōmus* (ENN. = *nōvimus*), *ānārrāmus* (TER., *Ad.*, 365), *flāmus*, *mūtāmus*, and *nārrāmus* (PROP.), *suēmus* (LUCR.), in the Perfect, are sporadic and sometimes doubtful.

3. *nōvi*, *I know*, and *mōvi*, *I have moved*, are also contracted, in their compounds especially.

SING.—2. *nōsti*. PLUR.—2. *nōstis*. 3. *nōrunt*. SUBJV. *nōrim*, etc.

PLUR. *nōram*, etc. SUBJV. *nōseum*, etc. INF. *nōsse*.

But the Fut. Perf. *nōrō* is found only in compounds.

Similar contractions are seen in *mōvi*, but not so often; *īfūvi* shows also a few cases of syncope in poetry.

4. (a) In the early Latin poets frequently and occasionally in later, syncope takes place in Perfects in *-si*. These drop the *s* and contract. A few cases are found in CICERO, especially in the letters. Examples are *dixti* (found also in Cic. and probably an earlier formation, and not by syncope for *dixistī*) ; *dūxti*, principally in compounds; *intellexti* (once in Cic.); *scripti*; *mīsti* (*mīsistī*) and several others; also *scriptis*.

(b) Akin to these are a number of forms in *-sō* for Fut. Perfect; *-sim* for Pf. Subjv. and more rarely *-sem* for Plur. Subjv. These forms are most usual in the third conjugation, but are also not unfrequent in the other three; thus,

1. *Future Perfect*: *faxō* (*facere*) ; *capso* (*capere*) and compounds ; *īfissō* (*iubēre* ; *Vere*.); *amīssō* (*amēre*) ; *servissō* (*servire*) and compounds, together with some others.

2. *Perfect Subjunctive*: *faxim* and compounds ; *dixim* ; *asim* (*audēre*, also used by CIC.) ; *īfissim* ; *ēmpāsim* (*emere*) ; *lockissim* (*lockēre*) ; *negāsim* (*negāre*). In the second and third persons Sing., where the Fut. Pf. Indic. and the Pf. Subjv. are identical, the forms are much more common. The plural forms are much less frequent.

3. *Piuperfect Subjunctive*: *faxem* ; *prō-missem* ; *intel-lexēs* ; *re-ōasset* and a few other forms ; *ērōpāēmus* (HOR. S. i. 5. 79). These forms are rare.

4. *Infinitive*: *dixe* ; *dō-spexe* ; *ad-dixe*, etc. ; *intel-lexe* ; *dō-trāxe*, etc. ; *ad-vexe* ; *ad-misse*, and a few others. Also the Future forms *ēverūnōssere*, *reconciliōssere*, *impetrāssere*, *oppīgnōssere*.

The exact origin of these forms is still a matter of dispute, but the common view is that they are aoristic formations.

5. From the earliest times the third Plural of the Pf. Indic. active shows two endings, *-ērunt* (later *-ērunt*) and *-ēre*. The form in *-ērunt* was always preferred, and in classical prose is the normal form. The form in *-ēre* seems to have been the popular form, and is much liked by LIVY and later writers. TACITUS seems to have preferred *-ērunt* for the Pure Perfect, and *-ēre* for the Historical Perfect. The poets scan, according to the exigencies of the metre, at all periods also *-ērunt*.

6. In regard to the other endings, we have to notice in early Latin *-is* occasionally in the Pf. Subjv. and Fut. Pf. Indic. active ; Perfects in *-if* are always written with *-iēl* on inscriptions ; in other Perfects the third person Singular in *-ēt* (older *-ēt*), or *-It* ; as *dedit* ; occasionally the first person ends in *-ēl* and the second in *-iēl*. Peculiar forms are *dedrot* (*dedire*), (for *dederunt*), *fīcōd* (for *fīcīt*), and a few others.

## THE STEM.

132. With the exception of the verbs *sum*, *I am*, *edō*, *I eat*, *eō*, *I go*, *ferō*, *I bear*, *vōlō*, *I wish* (perhaps *dō*, *I give*), and their compounds, most of whose forms come directly from the root, all verbs in Latin form their stems from the root by the addition of a vowel or of a combination of a vowel with a consonant. This vowel is called the *thematic vowel* ; see 190.

In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in some verbs of the third conjugation, the stem thus formed is found throughout the whole conjugation ; in other verbs the present stem shows different forms from the other stems.

### 1. THE PRESENT STEM.

133. I. *The Stem or Thematic class* : To this class belong those verbs whose stems are formed by the addition of a thematic vowel (usually *i*, sometimes *u*) to the root, as in the third conjugation, or to a stem formed by the addition of *g*, *k*, or *i* to the root, as in the first, second, and fourth conjugations. The stem thus formed is seen (with lengthened vowel sometimes) in all forms of the verb. To this class belong verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in the

third (*a*) verbs formed from a strong root, *i. e.*, verbs with **I**, **U**, **E**, **ɔ**, **æ**, **əu**; and with **e** in the stem; as **dioð** (= *deioð*), **dūoð** (= *douoð*), **rāðð**, **oðð**, **rūðð**, **caedð**, **plaudð**; **vehð**, **vergð**, **pendð**, *etc.*; (*b*) verbs formed from a weak root, *i. e.*, those with vowel **I**, **U**, **ɔ**, and probably those with **ɛ**: as **di-viðð**, **furð**, **olð** (*olere*), **ago**.

**II. The Reduplicated class:** The Present stem is formed by reduplication, with **i** in the reduplicated syllable:

**gen-**, **gi-gnð** (for **gi-GEN-o**), **gi-gne-re**, *to beget*; **sta-**, **si-stð**, **si-ste-re**, *to set, stand*. Compare **stāre**, *to stand*. Other forms, as **sidð** (for **si-S(E)DO**), **serð** (for **si-so**), and perhaps **bibð**, have the Reduplication concealed.

**III. The T class:** The root, which usually ends in a guttural, is strengthened by **to**, **te**: **fleotð** (**FLEC-**), **flecte-re**, *to bend*.

**IV. The Nasal class:** In this class the root is strengthened by **no**, **ne**, the nasal being inserted

A. In vowel-stems : **sínð** (**SI-**), **sine-re**, *to let*; **linð** (**LI-**), **line-re**, *to smear*.

B. After the characteristic liquid : **cernð** (**CER-**), **cerne-re**, *to sift, separate*; **temnð** (**TEM-**), **temne-re**, *to scorn*.

**NOTES.**—1. After **l** assimilation takes place : **pellð** (for **pel-nð**), **pelle-re**, *to drive*.

2. In a few verbs the strengthened forms (-no after a vowel, -ino after a liquid) are confined mainly to the third person Plural active of the Present, and are found not later than the close of the sixth century of the city: **danunt** (= *dant*), **explēnunt** (= *explet*), **nequinont** (= *nequeunt*), and a few others.

C. Before the characteristic mute : **vinoð** (**VIC-**), **vince-re**, *to conquer*; **frangð** (**FRAG-**), **frange-re**, *to break*; **fundð** (**FUD-**), **funde-re**, *to pour*.

Before a p-mute **n** becomes **m**: **rumpð** (**RUP-**), **rumpe-re**, *to rend*; **cumbð** (**CUB-**), **cumbe-re**, *to lie down*.

D. Here belong also those verbs in which the root is strengthened by **-nuð**, **nue**; as **sternuð** (**STER-**), **sternue-re**, *to sneeze*.

**NOTE.**—In verbs like **tinguð**, *I soak*, the consonantal **u** disappears before a consonant in the Pf. and Supine: **tinxí**, **tino-tum**.

**V. The Inchoative class:** The Present stem has the suffix **-soo**, **-sce**. **irð-soor**, *I am in a rage*; **crð-soð**, *I grow*; **ob-dormi-soð**, *I fall asleep*; **api-soor**, *I reach*; **pro-fici-soor**, *I set out*; **nanci-soor** (**NAC-**), *I get*; **nð-soð** (= **gnð-soð**), *I become acquainted*; **pð-soð** (= **poro-soð**), *I demand*; **mis-soð** (= **mic-sce-ed**), *I mix*; **disoð** (= **di-de-soð**), *I learn*. A number of Inchoatives are derivative formations from substantives; as, **lapidēsoð** (from **lapis**), *I become stone*.

**VI. The I class:** Instead of the simple thematic vowel **i** the root is increased by the form **ie**. In some forms of the Present stem, *i. e.*, the Pr. Inf., Impf. Subjv., second Sing., Pr. Impv., this appears in the form **e**; in some other forms it appears as **i**: **capið** (**CAP-**), **cape-re**, *to take*.

NOTE.—Verbs of the fourth conjugation also belong to the *i* class; but for convenience the *i* class is here restricted as above.

VII. *The Mixed class*: Some verbs that originally belong to the *i*-class have gone over in the Present stem to the forms of the stem class: as *veniō* (*VEN-*), *veni-re*, *to come*; *videō* (*VID-*), *vidē-re*, *to see*; *sonō* (*SON-*), *sonō-re*, *to sound*.

## II. THE PERFECT STEM.

134. I. *Perfect in -vi* (or *-ui*): These are formed by the addition

(a) Of *-vi* to the stem as it appears in the Present Inf. in combination with the thematic vowel. To this class belong the Perfects of the first and fourth conjugations, and the few verbs of the second conjugation mentioned in 124; *amā-re*, *amā-vi*; *audi-re*, *audi-vi*; *dela-re*, *dela-vi*.

(b) Of *-ui* to the Present stem after its characteristic vowel is dropped. Here belong the majority of the verbs of the second conjugation: *monō-re*, *mon-ui*.

II. *Perfect in -si*: These are formed by the addition of *-si* to the root; which is, as a rule, long either by nature or position. This class comprises a large number of verbs in the third conjugation in which the stem-characteristic consonant is a mute; three in which it is *-m* (*preme-re*, *to press*; *stūme-re*, *to take*; *con-tēm(n)e-re*, *to scorn*); and a few in which it is *-s*, as *ūr-s*, *I burn*, *ūs-si*; *haesō-s*, *I stick*, *haes-si* (= *haes-si*).

Examples are *rēpō*, *I creep*, *rēp-si*; *scribō*, *I write*, *scrip-si*; *dīō*, *I say*, *dīxi* (= *dīo-si*); *carpō*, *I pluck*, *carp-si*; *rīdō*, *I scrape*, *rīd-si* (= *rād-si*).

NOTE.—But verbs in *-ndō*, take *I* in the Perfect: *dēfend-s*, *I strike (ward) off*; *dēfend-I*; perhaps because they formed originally a *reduplicated perfect*; as, *mandō*, *I chew*, *man(dī)dī*; so (*fe)dēfendī*, *I have struck*.

III. *Reduplicated Perfects*: These are formed by prefixing to the unstrengthened root its first consonant (or consonantal combination) together with the following vowel, *a* and *ae* being weakened to *e*, or, if the root began with a vowel, by prefixing *e*, and adding the termination *-I*. In Latin but few of these forms remain, and they have been variously modified: *discō*, *I learn*, *di-dīdī*; *spondō*, *I pledge*, *spo(s)pondī*; *tangō*, *I touch*, *te-ti-gī*; *tundō*, *I strike*, *tu-tud-I*; *ago*, *I act*, *ēgī* (= *e-ag-i*); *emo*, *I buy*, *ēmī* (= *e-em-I*).

In composition the reduplication is in many cases dropped; so always in compounds of *cade-re*, *to fall*; *caede-re*, *to fell*; *cane-re*, *to sing*; *falle-re*, *to deceive*; *pange-re*, *to fix*; *parce-re*, *to spare*; *pare-re*, *to bear*; *pende-re*, *to hang*; *pungō-re*, *to prick*; *tange-re*, *to touch*; *tende-re*, *to stretch* (occasionally retained in late Latin); *tondē-re*, *to shear* (but occasionally retained in late Latin); *tunde-re*, *to strike*. *Disc-ere*, *to learn*, always retains it, and so *pōsco-re*, *to demand*, and *ad-mordē-re*, *to bite*. Of compounds of *curre-re*, *to run*, *succurrere* always

drops the reduplication, *praecurrere* always retains it ; the others vary. Of compounds of *dare*, *abscondere* usually drops it, but all trisyllabic compounds that change the *a*, and all quadrисyllabic compounds, retain it. Compounds of *sisterē*, *to set*, and *stāre*, *to stand*, retain it.

**IV. Perfect in *I*.** Verbs of the third conjugation, with a short stem-syllable, take *i* in the Perfect, after lengthening the stem-syllable and changing *ā* into *ā*. In many cases these Perfects are the remains of reduplicated forms : *legō*, *I read*, *leg-i*; *videō*, *I see*, *vid-i*; *fodiō*, *I stab*, *fod-i*; *fugō*, *I flee*, *fug-i*; *frangō*, *I break*, *frang-i*.

**V. Denominative verbs in -uō**, like *acuō*, *I sharpen*; *metuō*, *I fear*; also *sternuō*, *I sneeze*, form the Perfect in -u-i after the analogy of primary verbs, and the formation in -ui gradually extended in Latin.

### III. THE SUPINE STEM.

**135. I. Supine in -tum, Perfect Passive Participle in -tus:** The stems are formed by the addition of -tu or -to

(a) To the stem as it appears in the Present Infinitive active. Here belong most verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, and those verbs of the second conjugation that are mentioned in 124 : *am̄-tum*, *d̄al̄-tum*, *audi-tum*. Those verbs of the second conjugation which form Perfect in -ui, form the Supine stem by weakening the thematic vowel e to i, and adding -tu, -to, except *cēnē-re*, *to deem*, *doē-re*, *to teach*, *mīscē-re*, *to mix*, *tēnē-re*, *to hold*, *torrē-re*, *to scorch*, which omit the thematic vowel, and form *cēnsum*, *doctum*, *mixtum*, (*tentum*), *tōstum*.

(b) To the unstrengthened stem. Here belong most verbs of the third conjugation and the five verbs of the second just given, with sporadic forms in the other conjugations : *cap-tum* (*capō*, *I take*), *rēp-tum* (*rēpō*, *I creep*), *dic-tum* (*diō*, *I say*), *fao-tum* (*faciō*, *I do*).

In combinations of -t- with a dental, assimilation took place, giving usually ss after a short vowel and s after a long vowel : *scissum* (*scindō*, *I cleave*), *caesum* (*caedō*, *I fell*). On the analogy of this and under the influence often of Perfect in -st, we find -s- also in some other stems :

1. In stems with a guttural characteristic : ss, *fix-um* (*figō*, *I fix*) ; often with a preceding liquid : *mersum* (*mergō*, *I dip* ; Pf. *mersi*) ; *tersum* (*tergo*, *I wipe* ; Pf. *tersi*) ; *parsum* (*parcō*, *I spare* ; Pf. *parsi*, old) ; *sparsum* (*spargō*, *I sprinkle* ; Pf. *sparsi*) ; *mul-sum* (*mulgeō*, *I milk* ; Pf. *mul-si*) ; but *far-tum* (*fariō*, *I stuff* ; Pf. *farai*) ; *tortum* (*torquēō*, *I twist* ; Pf. *torsi*) ; *indul-tum* (rare and post-classical, from *indulgeō*, *I indulge* ; Pf. *indulsi*).

2. In one with a labial characteristic : *lāp-sum* (*lābor*, *I slip*).

3. In some stems with characteristic s : ss, *cēnsum* (*cēnēō*, *I deem* ; see I. a.) ; *haesum* (*haecreō*, *I stick*) ; *pinsum* (*pinsō*, *I pound*).

4. In some stems with a nasal characteristic : *pressum* (*premō*, *I press* ; Pf. *pressi*) ; *mānsum* (*mānēō*, *I remain* ; Pf. *mānsi*).

5. In stems where ll, rr has arisen by assimilation : *pulsum* (*pellō*, *I drive*) ; *falsum* (*fallō*, *I falsify*) ; *vulsum* (*velliō*, *I pluck*) ; *cursum* (*currō*, *I run*) ; *versum* (*verrō*, *I sweep*).

**III. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE IN -tūrus.**—The same changes occur in the stem as are found in the case of the Supine.

1. In some stems ending in -u a thematic vowel i is inserted ; as *arguiturus* (*arguere, to prove*) ; *luiturus* (*luere, to loose*) ; *abnuiturus* (*abnuere, to deny*) ; *ruiturus* (*ruere, to rush*) ; *fruiturus* (*fruere, to root out*) ; *fruiturus* (*frui, to enjoy*).

2. Some Future Participles are found without corresponding Perfect : *caliturus* (*calere, to be warm*) ; *cariturus* (*carere, to lack*) ; *doliturus* (*dolere, to grieve*) ; *iaciturus* (*iacere, to lie*) ; *pāriturus* (*pārēre, to obey*) ; *valiturus* (*valēre, to be well*).

3. Irregular are : *agniturus*, *agnitūrus* (*agnoscere, to know well*) ; *disciturus* (*discere, to learn*) ; *hausturus*, *haustūrus* (*haudire, to drain*) ; *nīturus* (*nīti, to lean*) ; *moriturus* (*mori, to die*) ; *nōsciturus* (*nōscere, to know*) ; *oriturus* (*oriri, to arise*) ; *pariturus* (*parere, to bear*).

### Change of Conjugation.

**136.** A change of Conjugation occurs in verbs which show a long thematic vowel in the Present stem, but not in the Perfect stem, or the reverse.

1. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed regularly, according to the third conjugation, have the Present stem formed according to one of the other three :

<i>auge-ō,</i>	<i>augē-re,</i>	<i>aux-i,</i>	<i>aux-tum,</i>	<i>to increase.</i>
<i>senti-ō,</i>	<i>senti-re,</i>	<i>sēn-si,</i>	<i>sēn-sum,</i>	<i>to feel.</i>
<i>saepi-ō,</i>	<i>saepi-re,</i>	<i>saep-ai,</i>	<i>saep-tum,</i>	<i>to hedge about.</i>
<i>veni-ō,</i>	<i>veni-re,</i>	<i>vēn-i,</i>	<i>ven-tum,</i>	<i>to come.</i>
<i>vide-ō,</i>	<i>vidē-re,</i>	<i>vīd-i,</i>	<i>vī-tum,</i>	<i>to see.</i>
<i>vinci-ō,</i>	<i>vinci-re,</i>	<i>vīn-x-i,</i>	<i>vīno-tum,</i>	<i>to bind.</i>

2. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed according to the first, second, or fourth conjugations, have the Present stem formed according to the third, in consequence of strengthening :

<i>ster-n-ō,</i>	<i>ster-ne-re,</i>	<i>strē-vi,</i>	<i>strē-tum,</i>	<i>to strew.</i>
<i>crē-sc-ō,</i>	<i>crē-sce-re,</i>	<i>crē-vi,</i>	<i>crē-tum,</i>	<i>to grow.</i>
<i>li-n-ō,</i>	<i>line-re,</i>	<i>lē-vi (li-vi),</i>	<i>li-tum,</i>	<i>to smear.</i>

3. Verbs with the Present formed regularly according to the third conjugation, have the Perfect and Supine formed according to (a) the second, or (b) the fourth conjugation :

(a) *accumbere, to recline, tremere, to rage, gemere, to groan, gignere, to beget, molere, to grind, strepere, to resound, vomere, to vomit*, form Perfect in -ul, Supine in -itum.

(b) *alere, to nourish, colere, to cultivate, cōsulere, to consult, frendere, to show the teeth, oculere, to conceal, rapere, to snatch*, and its compounds form Perfect in -ul, Supine in -tum (-sum). For *ali-tus*, see 149, 3.

*comp̄scere, to check, con-cinere, to sing together, and other compounds of canere, to sing, excellere, to excel, stertare, to snore, tremere, to tremble, form Perfect in -ul, but no Supine.*

(b) *arcessere, to summon, incessere, to enter, cupere, to desire, petere, to seek, querere, to search, and its compounds, rudere, to roar, sapere, to savor, form Perfect in -iui, Supine in -itum.*

4. Stems vary among the first, second, and fourth conjugations.

(a) Verbs with the Present formed according to the first, and Perfect and Supine according to the second conjugation :

*crepare, to crackle, cubare, to lie, dom̄are, to conquer, mic̄re, to flash, plicare, to fold, sonare, to sound, tonare, to thunder, vetare, to forbid, with Perfect in -ul, Supine in -itum :*

*fricare, to rub, necare, to kill, secare, to cut, with Perfect in -ul, Supine in -tum (but participles in *stus* are occasional, principally in later Latin).*

(b) Verbs with Present formed according to fourth, and Perfect and Supine according to the second : *amic̄re, to wrap, aperire, to open, operire, to cover, salire, to leap, and compounds.*

(c) Of the second and fourth conjugations is *cie-5 (ci-o), ci5-re (ci-re), ci5, ci5-tum (ci-tum), to stir up*, and its compounds ; while *pōt̄5, pōtf̄re, to drink*, forms Sup. *pōt̄-tum* or *pōt̄-tātum*, and Fut. Part. *pōt̄-tūrus* or *pōt̄s-tūrus*.

5. *dare, to give, and stāre, to stand*, pass over to the third conjugation in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication.

### LIST OF VERBS ACCORDING TO THE PERFECT FORM.

PERFECT: -vi; SUPINE: -tum.

137. Stem class :

(a) Verbs of *first* and *fourth* conjugations, except those mentioned in 136, 4. Irregular in Supine is

*sepeli-5, sepeli-re, sepeli-vi, sepul-tum, to bury.*

(b) In the *second* conjugation :

*dēle-5, dēle-re, dēle-vi, dēle-tum, to destroy.*

*fie-5, fie-re, fie-vi, fie-tum, to weep.*

*ne-5, ne-re, ne-vi, ne-tum, to spin.*

*-ole-5 (ab-, in-), -olē-re, -olē-vi, —, to grow.*

These compounds form Supine in *itum*; *abolitum*, *inolitus*.

*-ple5, -plē-re, plē-vi, plē-tum, to fill.*

So the compounds with *com-*, *in-*, *ex-*, *re*, *sup-*.

*vie-5, vi5-re, —, vi5-tus, to plait.*

Irregular is

*cie-5 (ci-5), ci5-re (ci-re), ci-vi, ci-tum (ci-tum), to stir up.*

In the compounds we find the Participle *concitus* or *conclitus*, *percitus*, *excitus* or *exitus*, but *accitus*.

(c) In the *third* conjugation :

*arcess-ō*,      *arcess-e re*,      *arcessi vi*,      *arcessi-tum*,      *to send for.*

So, too, *lacess-ō*, *I tease*, *capess-ō*, *I lay hold of*. In early Latin we often find *accersō*, the relation of which to *arcessō* is variously explained. The forms *arcessiri*, and later *arcessirētur*, from the fourth conjugation, also occur.

*in-cess-ō*,      *in-cess-e re*,      *in-cessi-vi* (*cessal*),      *to attract.*  
So *facess-ō*, *I cause, make off.*

*pet-ō*,      *pete re*,      *peti-vi*,      *peti-tum*,      *to seek (fly at).*  
*quaer-ō*,      *quaere re*,      *quaezi-vi*,      *quaezi-tum*,      *to seek.*  
*con quir-ō*,      *con-quire-re*,      *conquisi-vi*,      *con-quisi-tum*,      *to hunt up.*  
So other compounds of *-quirō* (*quaerō*).

*rudi-ō*,      *rude-re*,      *rudi-vi*,      *rudi-tum*,      *to roar.*  
*ter-ō*,      *tere-re*,      *tri-vi*,      *tri-tum*,      *to rub.*

Tin., I. 4, 46, has *at-teruisse*, and APULMIUS has similar forms.

### 138. Reduplicated class :

*ser-ō*,      *sere-re*,      *ss-vi*,      *sa-tum*,      *to sow.*  
So *cōserō*, but with Sup. *cōn-situm*.

### 139. Nasal class :

A. *li-n-ō*,      *li-ne-re*,      *lī-vi*,      *li-tum*,      *tobeamor.*  
So compounds of *linō*. Pl. *li vi* is rare.

*si-n-ō*,      *si-ne-re*,      *si-vi*,      *si-tum*,      *to let.*  
So *dē-sinō*, *I leave off*, and in early Latin, *pōnō* (= *po-sinō*), *I put.*

B. *cer-n-ō*,      *cer-ne-re*,      *cr̄-vi*,      *(cr̄-tum)*,      *to separate.*  
So *dēcernō*, *I decide.*

*sper-n-ō*,      *sper-ne-re*,      *spr̄-vi*,      *spr̄-tum*,      *to despise.*  
*ster-n-ō*,      *ster-ne-re*,      *str̄-vi*,      *str̄-tum*,      *to strew.*

### 140. Inchoative class :

*inveterā-sc-ō*, *inveterā-sce-re*, *inveterā-vi*, *inveterā-tum*, *to grow old.*

*pā-sc-ō*,      *pā sce-re*,      *pā-vi*,      *pās-tum*,      *to graze (trans.).*

*vesperā-sc-ō*,      *vesperā-sce-re*, *vesperā-vi*,      —      *to become evening.*  
No *advesperāscō*.

*cr̄-sc-ō*,      *cr̄-sce-re*,      *cr̄-vi*,      *cr̄-tum*,      *to grow.*  
No the compounds.

*con-cupi-scō*, *-cupi-sce-re*,      *-cupi-vi*,      *-cupi-tum*,      *to long for.*  
*ob-dormi-scō*, *-dormi-sce-re*,      *-dormi-vi*,      *-dormi-tum*,      *to fall asleep.*

No *condormiso*, *ēdormiso*.

*ex-olē-sc-ō*,      *-olē sce-re*,      *-olē-vi*,      *-olē-tum*,      *to get one's growth.*  
No *ob-solēscō*, *I grow old.* But *ab olēscō*, *I disappear*, has *abolitum*; *co-alēscō*, *I grow together*, *co-alitum*; *ad-olēscō*, *I grow up*, *ad-ultum* in the Sup.; and *inolēscō* lacks the *tum*ine.

*quiē-sc-ō*,      *quiē-sce-re*,      *quiē-vi*,      *quiē-tum*,      *to rest.*  
*sci-sc-ō*,      *sci-sce-re*,      *sci-vi*,      *sci-tum*,      *to decree.*  
So *ad-scisō*, *I take on.*

**su-sco-δ,**      **su-sco-re,**      **su-s-vi,**      **su-s-tum,**      *to accustom one's self.*  
 So compounds as-, con-, dē-, man-.

(g) **nō-sco-δ,**      **nō-sco-re,**      **nō-vi,**      **(nō-tum),**      *to know.*  
 So *ignōscō*, *I pardon*; but *ob-gnōscō*, *I recognize*, and other compounds of *nōscō*,  
 have Sup. in -itum.

**re-sip-isco-δ,**      **-sipi-sce-re,**      **-sipi-vi,**      —      *to come to one's senses.*

**141. I-class :**

<b>cupi-δ,</b>	<b>cupe-re,</b>	<b>cupi-vi,</b>	<b>cupi-tum,</b>	<i>to desire.</i>
<b>sapi-δ,</b>	<b>sa-pe-re,</b>	<b>sapi-vi (-uf),</b>	—	<i>to have a flavor.</i>

**PERFECT : -ui; SUPINE : (i)tum.**

**142. Stem class :**

1. The majority of the verbs of the *second* conjugation; see 134, I, b,  
 and 135, a. But

**sorbē-δ,**      **sorbē-re,**      **sorb-ui,**      —      *to step up.*  
 Pf. *sorp-ai* occurs in *VAL.* *MAX.* and *LUCAN.*

2. Of the *first* conjugation :

**crep-δ,**      **crepā-re,**      **crep-ui,**      **crepi-tum,**      *to rattle.*  
 So the compounds, but in early and late Latin the regular forms of *dis-crepāre*  
 and *in-crepāre* are occasional.

**cub-δ,**      **cubā-re,**      **cub-ui,**      **cubi-tum,**      *to lie.*  
 Occasional regular forms in post-Ciceronian Latin.

**dom-δ,**      **domā-re,**      **dom-ui,**      **domi-tum,**      *to tame.*

**frio-δ,**      **fričā-re,**      **frio-ui,**      **frio-tum (-ī-tum),**      *to rub.*  
 Occasionally in early and more often in post-classical Latin, the regular forms are  
 found in the compounds; so always *-fričā-tūrus*.

**mīc-δ,**      **mīcā-re,**      **mīc-ui,**      —      *to quiver, flash.*  
 But *di-mīcāre*, *to sight (out)*, is regular, except occasionally in *OVID.*

**nec-δ,**      **necā-re,**      **necā-ui,**      **necā-tum,**      *to kill.*  
 The compound *ēnecā-re*, *to kill off*, has *ēnecāvī* in early Latin, otherwise *ēnecāvī* (rare); and *ēnectus* (but *PLIN. MAI.*, *ēnecātus*).

**plic-δ,**      **plicā-re,**      **(plicā-ūf),**      **plici-tum,**      *to fold.*

The simple forms of *plicāre* are rare. The compounds *ap-*, *com-*, *ex-*, *im-*, vary  
 between -vī and -ui in the Pf., and -tūm and -itum in the Sup.; but CICERO uses  
 always *applicāvī*, *applicātūm*; *complicāvī*, *complicātūm*; and usually *explicāvī*,  
 always *explicātūm*; always *implicātūm*; *circumplicāre* is always regular;  
 forms of *replicāre* are rare.

**sec-δ,**      **secā-re,**      **sec-ui,**      **sec-tum,**      *to cut.*  
 Regular forms are early, late, and rare.

**son-δ,**      **sonā-re,**      **son-ui,**      **soni-tum,**      *to sound.*  
 But regularly *sonātūrus*. Regular forms are late. In early Latin the forms *sonere*,  
*sonit*, *sonunt*, *resonit*, *resonunt*, show that the simple verb was *sonere*.

**ton-δ,**      **tonā-re,**      **ton-ui,**      —      *to thunder.*  
 But *at-tonitus* and *intonātus* (*HOR.*, *Epid.* 2, 51).

<b>vet-ō,</b>	<b>vetō-re,</b>	<b>vet-ūl,</b>	<b>vetō-tum,</b>	<i>to forbid.</i>
But PERNARUS (5, 90) uses <b>vetō-vi.</b>				

3. Of the *third* conjugation :

<b>frem-ō,</b>	<b>freme-re,</b>	<b>frem-ūl,</b>	—	<i>to roar, rage.</i>
<b>gem-ō,</b>	<b>geme-re,</b>	<b>gem-ūl,</b>	—	<i>to groan.</i>
<b>vom-ō,</b>	<b>vome-re,</b>	<b>vom-ūl,</b>	<b>vomi-tum,</b>	<i>to vomit.</i>
<b>al-ō,</b>	<b>ale-re,</b>	<b>'al-ūl,</b>	<b>al-tum,</b>	<i>to nourish.</i>
Participle <i>ali-tus</i> occurs from Livy on.				
<b>col-ō,</b>	<b>cole-re,</b>	<b>col-ūl,</b>	<b>cul-tum,</b>	<i>to cultivate.</i>
<b>cōn-cin-ō,</b>	<b>-cine-re,</b>	<b>-cin-ūl,</b>	—	<i>to sing together.</i>
So <i>coccinere, praecinere.</i>				

<b>cōn-sul-ō,</b>	<b>cōn-sule-re,</b>	<b>cōn-sul-ūl,</b>	<b>cōn-sul-tum,</b>	<i>to consult.</i>
<b>depe-ō,</b>	<b>depe-re,</b>	<b>depe-ūl,</b>	<b>depe-tus,</b>	<i>to knead.</i>
<b>mol-ō,</b>	<b>mole-re,</b>	<b>mol-ūl,</b>	<b>mol-tum,</b>	<i>to grind.</i>
<b>occul-ō,</b>	<b>occul-e-re,</b>	<b>occul-ūl,</b>	<b>occul-tum,</b>	<i>to conceal.</i>
<b>pins-ō,</b>	<b>pinse-re,</b>	<b>pins-ūl,</b>	<b>pinsi-tum,</b>	<i>to pound.</i>

Sup. also *pinsum, pistum.* Collateral forms of *pisō, pisere*, are early and rare; so also *pinsphant.*

<b>ser-ō,</b>	<b>sere-re,</b>	—	( <b>ser-tum,</b> )	<i>to string (out).</i>
Common in compounds : as, <i>dāserō, dāserere, dāserul, dāsertum, to desert.</i> The same forms are found occasionally in compounds of <i>serere, to sow</i> (188), but not in classical Latin.				

<b>stert-ō,</b>	<b>sterte-re,</b>	<b>stert-ūl,</b>	—	<i>to snore.</i>
<b>strep-ō,</b>	<b>stroepe-re,</b>	<b>strep-ūl,</b>	( <b>strep-i-tum,</b> )	<i>to make a din.</i>
<b>tex-ō,</b>	<b>texe-re,</b>	<b>tex-ūl,</b>	<b>tex-tum,</b>	<i>to weave.</i>

Irregular are

<b>met-ō,</b>	<b>mete-re,</b>	<b>mess-ūl,</b>	<b>mes-sum,</b>	<i>to mow.</i>
<b>vol-ō,</b>	<b>vel-le,</b>	<b>vol-ūl,</b>	—	<i>to wish.</i>

So *nūlō, mālō*; see 174.

4. In the *fourth* conjugation :

<b>amici-ō,</b>	<b>amicī-re,</b>	<b>amicī-ūl (amicīl),</b>	<b>amicī-tum,</b>	<i>to clothe.</i>
<b>aperi-ō,</b>	<b>aperī-re,</b>	<b>aperī-ūl,</b>	<b>aper-tum,</b>	<i>to open.</i>
<b>operi-ō,</b>	<b>operī-re,</b>	<b>operī-ūl,</b>	<b>oper-tum,</b>	<i>to cover up.</i>
<b>salli-ō,</b>	<b>salī-re,</b>	<b>salī-ūl,</b>	<b>sal-tum,</b>	<i>to leap.</i>

The regular Perfects *salīlī, salīlī*, are found in compounds, but usually in post-classical writers, and often syncopated.

## 143. Reduplicated class :

<b>gl-gn-ō (GEN.),</b>	<b>gl-gne-re,</b>	<b>gen-ūl,</b>	<b>geni-tum,</b>	<i>to beget.</i>
Early Latin has the Present forms <i>genit, genunt, genat, genitur, genuntur, genendi, geni.</i>				

144. *Nasal class:*

frend-ō,	fren-de-re,	—	frē-sum, frēs-sum,	<i>to gnash.</i>
Also in the form frende-ō, frendō-re.				
ae-cumb-ō,	-cumbe-re,	cub-ul,	cubi-tum,	<i>to lie down.</i>
So also the compounds con-, dis-, in-; but re-cumbō lacks the Supine.				
ex-cell-ō,	-celle-re,	(cell-ul),	(cel-sus),	<i>to surpass.</i>
But per-cellere, <i>to beat down</i> , has Pf. per-culi, Sup. per-culsum. Excellērunt is found in GELL. XIV. 3, 7, and in AUGUSTINE; otherwise forms of Pf. and Sup. do not occur.				

145. *The Inchoative class:*

dispēse-ō,	dispēsse-re,	dispēse-ul,	—	<i>to let loose.</i>
So compēscere, <i>to check.</i>				

A large number of verbs are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, or from substantives or adjectives, and take Pf. in -ul; as,

co-alēse-ō,	alēsce-re,	al-ul,	ali-tum,	<i>to grow together.</i>
See 140.				
ē-vānēse-ō,	vānēsce-re,	vān-ul,	—	<i>to disappear.</i>
con-valēse-ō,	valēsce-re,	val-ul,	vali-tum,	<i>to get well.</i>
in-gemīse-ō,	gemīsce-re,	gem-ul,	—	<i>to sigh.</i>
nōtēse-ō,	nōtēsce-re,	nōt-ul,	—	<i>to become known.</i>
incalēse-ō,	incalēsce-re,	incal-ul,	—	<i>to get warm.</i>

146. *The I-class:*

rapi-ō,	rape-re,	rap-ul,	rap-tum,	<i>to snatch.</i>
cor-ripiō,	ripe-re,	rip-ul,	rep-tum,	<i>to seize.</i>
So other compounds. In early Latin, <i>surripere</i> syncopates some of its forms, as <i>surpuit</i> , <i>surpere</i> ; <i>surpuerat</i> occurs in HOR.; aoristic forms, as <i>rapuit</i> , <i>surrepit</i> , belong also to the early period. 181, 4, b. 2.				

**PERFECT: -si; SUPINE: -tum, -sum.**

147. *Stem class:*

## i. In the second conjugation :

iube-ō,	iubē-re,	iūs-si,	iūs-sum,	<i>to order.</i>
On sorbeō see 142, 1.				
ārde-ō,	ārdē-re,	ār-si,	ār-sum,	<i>to be on fire.</i>
ridē-ō,	ridē-re,	ri-si,	ri-sum,	<i>to laugh (at).</i>
hae-ō,	haerē-re,	hae-si,	(hae-sum),	<i>to stick (to).</i>
manē-ō,	manē-re,	mān-si,	mān-sum,	<i>to remain.</i>
suādē-ō,	suādē-re,	suā-si,	suā-sum,	<i>to counsel.</i>
With dental dropped before ending of Pf. and Supine.				
auge-ō,	augē-re,	auxi,	auge-tum,	<i>to cause to wax.</i>
frige-ō,	frigē-re,	(frīxī),	—	<i>to be chilled.</i>
lūce-ō,	lūcē-re,	lūxi,	—	<i>to give light.</i>

<i>läge-ō,</i>	<i>läge-re,</i>	<i>läxi,</i>	—	<i>to be in mourning.</i>
<i>alge-ō,</i>	<i>alge-re,</i>	<i>al-al,</i>	—	<i>to freeze.</i>
<i>fulge-ō,</i>	<i>fulge-re,</i>	<i>ful-al,</i>	—	<i>to glow.</i>

In early Latin, forms of the third conjugation occur : *fulgit*, *fulgere*, *effulgere* (VERG., 4, VIII. 677).

<i>indulge-ō,</i>	<i>indulgē-re,</i>	<i>indul-al,</i>	( <i>indul-tum</i> ),	<i>to give way.</i>
<i>mulce-ō,</i>	<i>mulcē-re,</i>	<i>mul-al,</i>	<i>mul-sum,</i>	<i>to stroke.</i>

Rarely *mulc-tus* in compounds.

<i>mulge-ō,</i>	<i>mulgē-re,</i>	<i>mul-al,</i>	<i>mul-sum(otum),</i>	<i>to milk.</i>
<i>terge-ō,</i>	<i>tergē-re,</i>	<i>ter-al,</i>	<i>ter-sum,</i>	<i>to wipe.</i>

Forms of the third conjugation : *tergit*, *tergitur*, *terguntur*, are occasionally found ; and so too in some late compounds. VARRO has *tertus*.

<i>torque-ō,</i>	<i>torquē-re,</i>	<i>tor-al,</i>	<i>tor-tum,</i>	<i>to twist.</i>
<i>turge-ō,</i>	<i>turgē-re,</i>	<i>tur-al,</i>	—	<i>to swell.</i>
<i>urge-ō,</i>	<i>urgē-re,</i>	<i>ur-al,</i>	—	<i>to press.</i>
<i>ob-nive-ō (gnigv), -nivē-re,</i>	<i>-nixi (fvl),</i>	—	—	<i>to close the eyes.</i>

## 2. In the third conjugation :

<i>carp-ō,</i>	<i>carpe-re,</i>	<i>carp-al,</i>	<i>carp-tum,</i>	<i>to pluck.*</i>
<i>dē-carp-ō,</i>	<i>dē-cerpe-re,</i>	<i>dē-cerp-al,</i>	<i>dē-cerp-tum,</i>	<i>to pluck off.</i>

<i>clep-ō,</i>	<i>clepe-re,</i>	<i>clep-al</i> ( <i>clēp-I</i> ),	<i>clep-tum,</i>	<i>to flinch.</i>
----------------	------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------	-------------------

Rare and ante-classic.

<i>nūb-ō,</i>	<i>nūbe-re,</i>	<i>nūp-al,</i>	<i>nūp-tum,</i>	<i>to put on a veil (as a bride).</i>
---------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------	---

<i>rēp-ō,</i>	<i>rēpe-re,</i>	<i>rēp-al,</i>	<i>rēp-tum,</i>	<i>to creep.</i>
<i>scalp-ō,</i>	<i>scalpe-re,</i>	<i>scalp-al,</i>	<i>scalp-tum,</i>	<i>to scrape.</i>

<i>scrib-ō,</i>	<i>scribe-re,</i>	<i>scrip-al,</i>	<i>scrip-tum,</i>	<i>to write.</i>
<i>sculp-ō,</i>	<i>sculpe-re,</i>	<i>sculp-al,</i>	<i>sculp-tum,</i>	<i>to chisel.</i>

<i>serp-ō,</i>	<i>serpe-re,</i>	<i>serp-al,</i>	<i>serp-tum,</i>	<i>to creep.</i>
<i>prem-ō (-primō), preme-re,</i>	<i>pres-al,</i>	<i>pres-sum,</i>	—	<i>to press.</i>

Some compounds of *emo*, *I take, buy*, have Pf. in *-al*, Sup. in *-tum*, before which a euphonic p develops :

<i>obm-ō,</i>	<i>obme-re,</i>	<i>obm-p-al,</i>	<i>obm-p-tum,</i>	<i>to adorn.</i>
<i>dēm-ō,</i>	<i>dēme-re,</i>	<i>dēm-p-al,</i>	<i>dēm-p-tum,</i>	<i>to take away.</i>

<i>prōm-ō,</i>	<i>prōme-re,</i>	<i>prōm-p-al,</i>	<i>prōm-p-tum,</i>	<i>to take out.</i>
<i>sūm-ō,</i>	<i>sūme-re,</i>	<i>sūm-p-al,</i>	<i>sūm-p-tum,</i>	<i>to take.</i>

On *contemn-ō* see 149, c.

<i>dīo-ō,</i>	<i>dīoe-re,</i>	<i>dīxi (dīo-al),</i>	<i>dīo-tum,</i>	<i>to say.</i>
---------------	-----------------	-----------------------	-----------------	----------------

Impv. *dīo*, see 130, 5. Occasionally in old Latin *dīo* for Future.

<i>dūc-ō,</i>	<i>dūce-re,</i>	<i>dūxi,</i>	<i>dūc-tum,</i>	<i>to lead.</i>
---------------	-----------------	--------------	-----------------	-----------------

Imperative *dūc*, see 130, 5.

<i>fig-ō,</i>	<i>fige-re,</i>	<i>fixi,</i>	<i>fixum,</i>	<i>to fasten.</i>
---------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------	-------------------

Part. *fictus* for *fixus* is occasional in early Latin.

<i>-flig-ō (con-, af-, in-),</i>	<i>-flige-re,</i>	<i>-flīxi,</i>	<i>-flīc tum,</i>	<i>to strike.</i>
----------------------------------	-------------------	----------------	-------------------	-------------------

Simple verb is found occasionally in early Latin.

<i>frig-ō,</i>	<i>frige-re,</i>	<i>frīxi,</i>	<i>frīc tum,</i>	<i>to parch.</i>
----------------	------------------	---------------	------------------	------------------

sūg-ō,	sūge-re,	sūxi,	sūo-tum,	<i>to suck.</i>
<i>Fut. exsūgōbō is found in PLAUT., Ep. 188.</i>				
merg-ō,	merge-re,	mer-si,	mer-sum,	<i>to plunge.</i>
sparg-ō,	sparge-re,	spar-si,	spar-sum,	<i>to strew.</i>
cōn-sperg-ō,	cōn-sperge-re,	cōn-sper-si,	cōn-sper-sum,	<i>to desprinkle.</i>
coqu-ō,	coque-re,	coxi,	coo-tum,	<i>to cook.</i>
[lig-ō (leg-),	-lige-re,	-lēxi,	[lēo-tum.]	
di-lig-ō,	di-lige-re,	di-lēxi,	di lēo-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
intelligō, or				
intellecō,	intellege-re,	intel-lēxi,	intel-lēo-tum,	<i>to understand.</i>
negligō, or				
neg-leg-ō,	neg-leg-e-re,	neg-lēxi,	neg-lēo-tum,	<i>to neglect.</i>
Other compounds have lēgi.	SALL., J. 40, 1, has neg-lēgīset.			
reg-ō,	rege-re,	rēxi,	rēo-tum,	<i>to keep right.</i>
di-rig-ō,	di rige-re,	di-rēxi,	di-rēo-tum,	<i>to guide.</i>
per-g-ō,	per-ge-re,	per-rēxi,	per-rēo-tum,	<i>to go on.</i>
su-rg-ō,	su-rge-re,	sur-rēxi,	sur-rēo-tum,	<i>to rise up.</i>
<i>But expergō formed expergitus in early and late Latin.</i>				
teg-ō,	tege-re,	tēxi,	tēo-tum,	<i>to cover.</i>
claud-ō,	claude-re,	clau si,	clau-sum,	<i>to shut.</i>
con-, ex-clūd-ō,	ex-clūde-re,	ex-clū-si,	ex-clū-sum,	<i>to shut up, out.</i>
<i>Early Latin shows also clūdō, clūdere.</i>				
laed-ō,	laede-re,	lae si,	lae-sum,	<i>to harm.</i>
col-lid-ō,	col-lide-re,	col-li-si,	col-li-sum,	<i>to strike together.</i>
lūd-ō,	lūde-re,	lū-si,	lū-sum,	<i>to play.</i>
plaud-ō (ap-plaud-ō),	plaud-e-re,	plan-si,	plau-sum,	<i>to clap.</i>
ex-plōd-ō,	ex-plōde-re,	ex-plō-si,	ex-plō-sum,	<i>to hoot off.</i>
rād-ō,	rāde-re,	rā-si,	rā-sum,	<i>to scratch.</i>
rōd-ō,	rōde-re,	rō-si,	rō-sum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
trūd-ō,	trūde-re,	trū-si,	trū-sum,	<i>to push.</i>
vād-ō (in-, -s-),	-vāde-re,	-vā-si,	-vā-sum,	<i>to go.</i>
cōd-ō,	cōde-re,	cōs-si,	cōs-sum,	<i>to give way.</i>
quati-ō,	quate-re,	(quas-si),	quas-sum,	<i>to shake.</i>
con-cutīō (per-, ex-),	con-cute-re,	con cus-si,	con-cus-sum,	<i>to shatter.</i>
mitt-ō,	mitte-re,	mi-si,	mis-sum,	<i>to send.</i>
di-vid-ō,	di-vide-re,	di-vi-si,	di-vi-sum,	<i>to part.</i>
fū-ō,	fūre-re,	fū-si,	fū-tum,	<i>to burn.</i>
com-būr-ō,	com-būre-re,	com-būs-si,	com-būs-tum,	<i>to burn up.</i>
ger-ō,	gere-re,	ges-si,	ges-tum,	<i>to carry.</i>
flu-ō (flugv-),	flu-e-re,	fluxi,	(flux-us),	<i>to flow.</i>
stru-ō (strugv-),	strue-re,	strixi,	stric-tum,	<i>to build.</i>
trah-ō (tragh-),	trahe-re,	trāxi,	trāo-tum,	<i>to drag.</i>
veh-ō (vegh-),	vehe-re,	vezxi,	vec-tum,	<i>to carry.</i>
viv-ō (vigv-),	vive-re,	vixi,	vic-tum,	<i>to live.</i>

148. *The T-class:*

fect-5,	fecte-re,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend.
nect-5,	necte-re,	nexi (nexu <i>l</i> )	nexus,	to knot.
The Pf. forms : in-nexu <i>l</i> (Vnse., A. v., 425).				
pect-5,	pecte-re,	pexi,	plexum,	to comb.
plect-5,	plecte-re,	(plexi),	plexum,	to plait.

149. *The Nasal class:*

## (a) Supine without N :

fing-5,	inge-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	fie-tum,	to form.
ming-5,	minge-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	mio-tum,	to urinate.
ping-5,	inge-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	pio-tum,	to paint.
string-5,	inge-re,	strinx <i>l</i> ,	stro-tum,	to draw tight.

## (b) Supine with N :

ang-5,	ange-re,	anxi,	—	to throttle, vex.
cinc-5,	cinge-re,	cinx <i>l</i> ,	cino-tum,	to gird.
ē-mung-5,	ē-munge-re,	ē-munxi,	ē-muno-tum,	to wipe the nose.
fung-5,	unge-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	idno-tum,	to yoke, join.
ling-5,	inge-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	line-tum,	to lick.
ning-5,	inge-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	—	to snow.
pang-5,	pange-re,	panxi,	pane-tum,	to drive in.
Perfect also pag <i>l</i> , and Supine plectum. Compare 155 and pacisoor, 165.				
plang-5,	plange-re,	planxi,	plano-tum,	to smile.
-stingu-5,	-stingue-re,	-stinx <i>l</i> ,	-stino-tum,	to put out.
So the compounds ex-, dis-, re-; the simple verb is ante-classic.				
ting-5 (tingu-5), ting(u)e-re,	tinxi,	tingo-tum,	to wet, dye.	
ung-5 (ungu-5), ung(u)e-re,	inx <i>l</i> ,	tingo-tum,	to anoint.	

## (c) tem-n-5 (rare) and its compounds form the Pf. with a euphonic p:

con-tem-n-5, -temne-re, -tem-p-al, -tem-p-tum, to despise.

150. *The I-class:*

## 1. In the third conjugation :

[-lic-5 (LAC),	lice-re,	-lexi,	-lec-tum],	to lure.
pel-lic-5,	pel-lice-re,	pel-lexi,	pel-lec-tum,	to allure.
So allicere, illicere, which, however, have early Pf. in -ni, as does pellicere also.				
But ē-licere has -ni regularly in classical times, and ē-lexi only later.				
[-spici-5 (SPSC),	-spice-re,	-spexi,	-spec-tum],	to peer.
per-spici-5,	per-spice-re,	per-spexi,	per-spec-tum,	to see through.
So the compounds with ad-, con-, dis-, in-.				

2. In the *fourth* conjugation :

sae <i>p</i> - <i>ō</i> ,	sae <i>p</i> -re,	sae <i>p</i> - <i>sl</i> ,	sae <i>p</i> -tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
sanc <i>i</i> - <i>ō</i> ,	sanc <i>i</i> -re,	sanc <i>i</i> - <i>sl</i> ,	sanc <i>i</i> -tum,	<i>to hallow.</i>
The Sup. sanc <i>i</i> -tum is rare.				
vinc <i>i</i> - <i>ō</i> ,	vinc <i>i</i> -re,	vinc <i>i</i> - <i>sl</i> ,	vinc <i>i</i> -tum,	<i>to bind.</i>
farc <i>i</i> - <i>ō</i> (-ferci- <i>ō</i> ),	farc <i>i</i> -re,	far- <i>sl</i> ,	far-tum,	<i>to stuff.</i>
fulci- <i>ō</i> ,	fulci- <i>re</i> ,	ful- <i>sl</i> ,	ful-tum,	<i>to prop.</i>
sarci- <i>ō</i> ,	sarci- <i>re</i> ,	sar- <i>sl</i> ,	sar-tum,	<i>to patch.</i>
senti- <i>ō</i> ,	senti- <i>re</i> ,	sēn- <i>sl</i> ,	sēn-sum,	<i>to feel.</i>
hauri- <i>ō</i> ,	hauri- <i>re</i> ,	hau- <i>sl</i> ,	haus-tum,	<i>to drain.</i>
VERB., A. iv., 383, has hausturus. Early Latin shows hausrībant (Lucr.) and haurierint; haurītūrus is very late.				
ranc <i>i</i> - <i>ō</i> ,	ranc <i>i</i> -re,	rāu- <i>sl</i> ,	rāu-sum,	<i>to be hoarse.</i>
This verb is very rare.				

## PERFECT: -I WITH REDUPLICATION; SUPINE: -sum, -tum.

151. In the *first* conjugation :

I. d- <i>ō</i> ,	da-re,	ded-i,	da-tum,	<i>to give, put, do.</i>
Everywhere à, except in dās, thou givest, and dā, give thou.				

1. Like dō, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as : circum-dō, I surround; satis-dō, I give bail; pessum-dō, I ruin; vēnum-dō, I sell; thus : circum-d-ō, circum-da-re, circum-de-di, circum-da-tum, to surround.

2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the Third Conjugation.

ab-d-ō,	ab-de-re,	ab-did-i,	ab-di-tum,	<i>to pull away.</i>
ad-d-ō,	ad-de-re,	ad-did-i,	ad-di-tum,	<i>to pull to.</i>
con-d-ō,	con-de-re,	con-did-i,	con-di-tum,	<i>to pull up (found).</i>
abs-con-dō, abe-con-de-re,	abs-con-d-i,	abs-con-di-tum,	abs-con-di-tum,	<i>to pull far away.</i>
Pr. abscondidi is found in Pl., Mer. 380, then not until late Latin.				

crē-d-ō,	crē-de-re,	crē-did-i,	crē-di-tum,	<i>to put faith.</i>
dē-d-ō,	dē-de-re,	dē-did-i,	dē-di-tum,	<i>to give up.</i>
ē-d-ō,	ē-de-re,	ē-did-i,	ē-di-tum,	<i>to pull out.</i>
in-d-ō,	in-de-re,	in-did-i,	in-di-tum,	<i>to pull in.</i>
per-d-ō,	per-de-re,	per-did-i,	per-di-tum,	<i>to fordo (ruin).</i>
prō-d-ō,	prō-de-re,	prō-did-i,	prō-di-tum,	<i>to betray.</i>
red-d-ō,	red-de-re,	red-did-i,	red-di-tum,	<i>to give back.</i>
trā-d-ō,	trā-de-re,	trā-did-i,	trā-di-tum,	<i>to give over.</i>
vēn-d-ō,	vēn-de-re,	vēn-did-i,	vēn-di-tum,	<i>to pull up to sale.</i>

NOTE.—In early Latin dare formed the Pr. Subjv., also duim. So in some of its compounds, as perduim. See 180, 4.

2. st-ō,	stā-re,	stet-i,	(stā-tū-rus),	<i>to stand.</i>
----------	---------	---------	---------------	------------------

So the compounds :

ad-st-ō,	ad-stā-re,	ad-stit-i,	—	<i>to stand by.</i>
cōn-st-ō,	cōn-stā-re,	cōn-stit-i,	—	<i>to stand fast.</i>

<i>in-stāt-</i>	<i>in-stāt-īre,</i>	<i>in-stit-ī,</i>	—	<i>to stand upon.</i>
<i>ob-stāt-</i>	<i>ob-stāt-īre,</i>	<i>ob-stit-ī,</i>	—	<i>to stand out against.</i>
<i>per-stāt-</i>	<i>per-stāt-īre,</i>	<i>per-stit-ī,</i>	—	<i>to stand firm.</i>
<i>prae-stāt-</i>	<i>prae-stāt-īre,</i>	<i>prae-stit-ī,</i>	—	<i>to stand ahead.</i>
<i>re-stāt-</i>	<i>re-stāt-īre,</i>	<i>re-stit-ī,</i>	—	<i>to stand over.</i>
<i>di-stāt-</i>	<i>di-stāt-īre,</i>	—	—	<i>to stand apart.</i>
<i>ex-stāt-</i>	<i>ex-stāt-īre,</i>	—	—	<i>to stand out.</i>

All compounds of *stare* with dissyllabic prepositions have, however, -*steti* in the Perfect, as : *ante-stō*, *I am superior*; *inter-stō*, *I am between*; *super-stō*, *I stand upon*; thus :

**circum-st-5, circum-st5-re, circum-stet-1** — *to stand round*

**NOTE.**—Compare *sistō* and its compounds; 154, i.

### **152. In the second conjugation :**

**morde-*d*,**      *mordē-re,*      *mo-mord-i,*      *mor-sum,*      *to bite.*  
**pende-*d*,**      *pendē-re,*      *pe-pend-i,*      —      *to hang (intr.).*  
**sponde-*d*,**      *spondē-re,*      *spo-pond-i,*      *spōn-sum,*      *to pledge oneself.*

Compounds omit the reduplication, but PLAUT. shows also *dē-spo-pondise* and *dē-spo-ponderā.*

**153** In the third conjugation :

(a) *Storm glass*

#### **Hednaphilic lost in the compounds:**

<i>cad-5,</i>	<i>cade-re,</i>	<i>ce-cid-i,</i>	<i>ce-sum,</i>	<i>to fall.</i>
<i>cc-cid-5,</i>	<i>cc-cide-re,</i>	<i>cc-cid-i,</i>	<i>cc-cc-sum,</i>	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>re-cidere</i> sometimes forms <i>reccidi</i> , as well as <i>recidi</i> , in the Perfect.				
<i>caed-5,</i>	<i>caede-re,</i>	<i>ce-cid-i,</i>	<i>cae-sum,</i>	<i>to fall.</i>
<i>cc-old-5,</i>	<i>cc-cide-re,</i>	<i>cc-cid-i,</i>	<i>cc-ol-sum,</i>	<i>to kill.</i>
<i>can-5,</i>	<i>cane-re,</i>	<i>ce-cin-i,</i>	<i>(can-tum),</i>	<i>to sing.</i>

Compounds form the Pt. in -us. For (*cantum*), *cantitum* was used.  
**paro-5,**      *parce-re,*      *pe-perc-i*(*par-si*), (*par-surus*), *to spare.*  
*com-paro*(-*pero*), *com-parce-re,* *com-pars-i,*      *com-par-sum,* *to save.*  
*parci* is common in early Latin, and is the only form used by PLAUTUS. Early  
Latin shows rarely *parciūl*. TBS. uses *comperxit*.

**154. (b) Reduplicated class:**

1. *stidō* (= *si-st-ō*), as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive meaning, *I stand*. Compare *stō*, *I stand*, and its compounds (151):

sist-ə,      siste-re,      (stɪt-ɪ),      sta-tum, *to (cause to) stand.*

So the compounds :

**cōn-sist-ə,**    **cōn-siste-re,**    **cōn-stit-ɪ,**    **cōn-sti-tum,** *to come to a stand.*  
**dē-sist-ə (ab-),**    **dē-siste-re,**    **dē-stit-ɪ,**    **dē-sti-tum,** *to stand off.*

## LIST OF VERBS

<i>ex-sist-ō</i> ,	<i>ex-siste-re</i> ,	<i>ex-stit-i</i> ,	<i>ex-sti-tum</i> ,	<i>to stand up.</i>
<i>ob-sist-ō</i> ,	<i>ob-siste-re</i> ,	<i>ob-stit-i</i> ,	<i>ob-sti-tum</i> ,	<i>to take a stand against.</i>
<i>re-sist-ō</i> ,	<i>re-siste-re</i> ,	<i>re-stit-i</i> ,	<i>re-sti-tum</i> ,	<i>to withstand.</i>
<i>ad-sist-ō</i> ,	<i>ad-siste-re</i> ,	<i>ad-stit-i</i> ,	—	<i>to stand near.</i>
<i>in-sist-ō</i> ,	<i>in-siste-re</i> ,	<i>in-stit-i</i> ,	—	<i>to stand upon.</i>
<i>circum-sist-ō</i> ,	<i>circum-siste-re</i> ,	<i>circum-stet-i</i> ,		<i>to take a stand round.</i>
2. <i>bi-bō</i> ,	<i>bi-be-re</i> ,	<i>bi-bi</i> ,	( <i>bi-bi-tus</i> ),	<i>to drink.</i>

No Supine. The Pf. Part. is late.

155. (c) *Nasal class:*

<i>fall-ō</i> ,	<i>falle-re</i> ,	<i>fe-fell-i</i> ,	<i>fal-sum</i> ,	<i>to cheat.</i>
The compound <i>refellō</i> has the Perfect <i>refelli</i> , and lacks Supine.				

<i>pell-ō</i> ,	<i>olle-re</i> ,	<i>pe-pul-i</i> ,	<i>pul-sum</i> ,	<i>to push, drive back.</i>
<i>repellō</i> loses the reduplicating vowel in Pf. <i>reppull</i> .				

<i>toll-ō</i> ,	<i>tolle-re</i> ,	—	—	<i>to lift up.</i>
Pf. and Sup. are formed <i>sus-tulli</i> (from reduplicated Pf. <i>tetulli</i> , 171, n. 1) and <i>sub-latum</i> (for <i>t'la-tum</i> ) ; a recent view makes <i>su-stulli</i> from ( <i>s</i> ) <i>tollō</i> .				

<i>(pang-ō)</i> ,	<i>(pange-re)</i> ,	<i>pe-pig-i</i> ,	<i>pig-tum</i> ,	<i>to drive a bargain.</i>
The Pr. forms are supplied by <i>pacisori</i> , 165. The Pf. <i>p̄sgl</i> , rare in the simple form, is regular in the compounds <i>com-</i> , <i>im-</i> , <i>op.</i> See 149, d.				

<i>tang-ō</i> (TAG),	<i>tange-re</i> ,	<i>te-tig-i</i> ,	<i>tig-tum</i> ,	<i>to touch.</i>
<i>at-ting-ō</i> ,	<i>at-tinge-re</i> ,	<i>at-tig-i</i> ,	<i>at-tig-tum</i> ,	<i>to border upon.</i>
So with other compounds.				

<i>pend-ō</i> ,	<i>pende-re</i> ,	<i>pe-pend-i</i> ,	<i>pēn-sum</i> ,	<i>to hang (trans.).</i>
<i>tend-ō</i> ,	<i>tende-re</i> ,	<i>te-tend-i</i> ,	<i>tēn-sum and -tum</i> ,	<i>to stretch.</i>
<i>ex-tend-ō</i> ,	<i>ex-tende-re</i>	<i>extend-i</i> ,	<i>ex-tēn-sum and -tum</i> ,	<i>to stretch out.</i>

<i>os-tend-ō</i> ,	<i>os-tende-re</i> ,	<i>os-tend-i</i> ,	<i>os-tēn-sum (-tus)</i> ,	<i>to stretch at, show.</i>
The compounds prefer the Sup. in <i>-tum</i> ; so always <i>attentus</i> , <i>contentus</i> , usually <i>distantus</i> and <i>intentus</i> .				

<i>pung-ō</i> ,	<i>punge-re</i> ,	<i>pu-pug-i</i> ,	<i>punc-tum</i> ,	<i>to prick.</i>
<i>inter-pungo</i> , <i>inter-punge-re</i> , <i>inter-punxi</i> , <i>inter-puno-tum</i> ,				<i>to place points between.</i>

<i>tund-ō</i> ,	<i>tunde-re</i> ,	<i>tu-tud-i</i> ,	<i>tūn-sum, tū-sum</i> ,	<i>to thump.</i>
Simple form has usually <i>tūnsus</i> in the Participle; in the compounds more often <i>tūsus</i> . The reduplicating vowel is lost in <i>rettudi</i> .				

<i>curr-ō</i> ,	<i>curre-re</i> ,	<i>cu-curr-i</i> ,	<i>cur-sum</i> ,	<i>to run.</i>
The compounds vary in their use of the reduplication; <i>praecurrere</i> always has the reduplication, <i>succurrere</i> always omits it; other compounds vary. See 184, III.				

<i>156. (d) Inchoative class:</i>	•			
<i>disco</i> (= <i>di-d(e)c-soō</i> ),	<i>disce-re</i> ,	<i>di-dio-i</i> ,	—	<i>to learn.</i>
A late form is Fut. Part. <i>disciturus</i> . Compounds retain reduplication. See 184, III.				

<i>pōsc-ō</i> (= <i>poro-scō</i> ),	<i>pōsce-re</i> ,	<i>po-pōsc-i</i> ,	—	<i>to claim.</i>
Compounds retain the reduplication. See 184, III.				

<i>157. (e) The I-class:</i>				
<i>pari-ō</i> ,	<i>pare-re</i> ,	<i>pe-per-i</i> ,	<i>par-tum</i> ( <i>paritūrus</i> ),	<i>to bring forth.</i>
The compounds drop the reduplication and form the Inf. in <i>-ire</i> . But <i>reperi</i> , <i>to find</i> , forms its Pf., <i>repperi</i> , with omission of the vowel of reduplication.				

## PERFECT: -i; SUPINE: -tum, -sum.

158. In the *first* conjugation :

iuv- <i>ā</i> ,	iuvā-re,	iuv- <i>I</i> ,	iū-tum (iuvātūrus),	<i>to help.</i>
ad-iuv- <i>ā</i> ,	-iuvā-re,	-iuv- <i>I</i> ,	-iū-tum (-iūtūrus),	<i>to stand by as aid.</i>
(lav- <i>ā</i> ),	(lav-ere),	lav- <i>I</i> ,	lau-tum (lō-tum),	<i>to wash.</i>
lav- <i>ā</i> ,	lavā-re,	(lavā-v <i>I</i> ),	lavā-tum,	<i>to wash.</i>

The Present forms of *lavare* belong principally to early Latin, with occasional forms in Augustan poets and late writers; *lautum* and *lōtum* are both used in classical times; but *lautum* belongs rather to early, *lōtum* to post-classical Latin. The form *lavātūm* is early and poetical.

159. In the *second* conjugation :

cave- <i>ā</i> ,	cavā-re,	cāv- <i>I</i> ,	cāu-tum,	<i>to take heed.</i>
fave- <i>ā</i> ,	favā-re,	fāv- <i>I</i> ,	fāu-tum,	<i>to be well-disposed.</i>
ferve- <i>ā</i> (o),	fervē-re (ere),	ferv- <i>I</i> (ferb- <i>u</i> ),	—	<i>to seethe.</i>

The Pr. forms of the third conjugation belong to early Latin and the poets. The Pf. in -uf is post-Ciceronian.

fove- <i>ā</i> ,	fovā-re,	fōv- <i>I</i> ,	fō-tum,	<i>to keep warm.</i>
move- <i>ā</i> ,	movā-re,	mōv- <i>I</i> ,	mō-tum,	<i>to move.</i>
pave- <i>ā</i> ,	pavā-re,	pāv- <i>I</i> ,	—	<i>to quake (with fear).</i>
prande- <i>ā</i> ,	prandā-re,	prand- <i>I</i> ,	prān-sum,	<i>to breakfast.</i>
sedē- <i>ā</i> ,	sedē-re,	sēd- <i>I</i> ,	ses-sum,	<i>to sit.</i>
stride- <i>ā</i> (-dō),	stridē-re(-e-re),	strid- <i>I</i> ,	—	<i>to whistle, screech.</i>
vōve- <i>ā</i> ,	vōvā-re,	vōv- <i>I</i> ,	vō-tum,	<i>to vow.</i>

The Present forms of the third conjugation belong almost entirely to Augustan poets and later writers.

vide- <i>ā</i> ,	vidē-re,	vid- <i>I</i> ,	vi-sum,	<i>to see.</i>
------------------	----------	-----------------	---------	----------------

160. In the *third* conjugation :

With long vowel in the Perfect.

i. *The Stem class :*

ag-o,	age-re,	āg- <i>I</i> ,	āo-tum,	<i>to do, drive.</i>
ōō-g-ā,	ōō-ge-re,	ōō-āg- <i>I</i> ,	ōō-āo-tum,	<i>to compel.</i>
dō-g-ā,	dō-ge-re,	—	—	<i>to pass (time).</i>
red-ig-ā,	red-ige-re,	red-āg- <i>I</i> ,	red-āō-tum,	<i>to bring back.</i>
em-o,	eme-re,	ām- <i>I</i> ,	āmp-tum,	<i>to take, to buy.</i>
inter-im-ā,	ime-re,	ām- <i>I</i> ,	āmp-tum,	<i>to make away with.</i>

co-em-ā, *I buy up*, is conjugated like em-o. But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-, red-, take-im-ā. So, too, dir-im-ā, *I sever.*

ed-ā,	ede-re,	ād- <i>I</i> ,	āt-sum,	<i>to eat.</i>
-------	---------	----------------	---------	----------------

NOTE.—In *agere*, *edere*, *emere*, the reduplication has coalesced with the root; as, *agī = agtī*.

cūd-ā,	cūde-re,	(cūd- <i>I</i> ),	(cūt-sum),	<i>to hammer.</i>
--------	----------	-------------------	------------	-------------------

The Pf. and Sup. occur in compounds only.

leg-o,      lege-re,      lēg-i,      lēo-tum,      *to pick up, read.*  
 col-lig-ō,      col-lige-re,      col-lēg-i,      col-lēo-tum,      *to gather.*  
 So the other compounds, except dil-lig-ō, intel-leg-ō, neg-leg-ō, see 147, a.

īo-ō (defective), īoe-re,      īe-i,      īo-tum,      *to strike.*  
 Present stem rare: īe-it, īe-itur, īe-imur.

āld-ō,      side-re,      āld-i,      —      *to sit down.*  
 The Pf. was originally reduplicated as the Present; see 138, ii. In composition the  
 Pf. is -ādī, -āssum, from āde-ō, thus:

cōn-sid-ō,	cōn-alde-re,	cōn-sid-i,	cōn-ses-sum,	<i>to settle down.</i>
scab-ō,	scabe-re,	scab-i,	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
solv-ō,	solve-re,	solv-i,	solv-tum,	<i>to loose, pay.</i>
vert-ō,	verte-re,	vert-i,	ver-sum,	<i>to turn.</i>
re-vert-or,	re-vert-i,	revert-i (active),	re-ver-sum,	<i>to turn back.</i>
verr-ō,	verre-re,	verr-i (rare),	ver-sum,	<i>to sweep.</i>
vīs-ō,	vīse-re,	vīs-i,	—	<i>to visit.</i>
volv-ō,	volve-re,	volv-i,	volv-tum,	<i>to roll.</i>

On percellō, perculli, see 144. On tollō, sustulli, see 155.

## 2. The Nasal class:

psall-ō,      psalle-re,      psall-i,      —      *to play on the cithern.*  
 sall-ō,      sall-e-re,      (sall-i),      sal-sum,      *to salt.*  
 Very rare except in the past participle salsus.

vell-ō,      velle-re,      vell-i (vul-si),      vul-sum,      *to pluck.*  
 The Pf. vulsi is post-Augustan.

lamb-ō,	lambe-re,	lamb-i,	—	<i>to lick.</i>
rump-ō,	rumpe-re,	rup-i,	rup-tum,	<i>to break.</i>
ac-oend-ō,	ac-oende-re,	ac-cend-i,	ac-cēn-sum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
dē-fend-ō,	dē-fende-re,	dē-fend-i,	dē-fen-sum,	<i>to strike away.</i>
fund-ō (FUD),	funde-re,	fūd-i,	fū-sum,	<i>defend.</i>
mand-ō,	mande-re,	mand-i,	mān-sum,	<i>to pour.</i>
pand-ō,	pande-re,	pand-i,	pas-sum,	<i>to chew.</i>
pān-sum in Supine is late.				<i>to spread out.</i>

prehend-ō,      prehende-re,      prehend-i,      prehēn-sum,      *to seize.*  
 Often shortened to prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēnsum.

scand-ō,	scande-re,	scand-i,	scān-sum,	<i>to climb.</i>
ā(d)-, dē-scend-ō, dē-scende-re,	dē-scend-i,	dē-scēn-sum,	—	<i>to climb up, down.</i>
frang-ō,	frange-re,	frēg-i,	frāo-tum,	<i>to break.</i>
per-frang-ō,	per-fringe-re,	per-frēg-i,	per-frāo-tum,	<i>to shiver.</i>
linqu-ō,	linque-re,	linqu-i,	—	<i>to leave.</i>
re-linqu-ō,	re-linque-re,	re-linqu-i,	re-lic-tum,	<i>to leave behind.</i>
(pang-ō),	(pange re),	(pēg-i),	(pēc-tum),	<i>to drive in.</i>
com-ping-ō,	com-pinge-re,	com-pēg-i,	com-pēc-tum,	<i>to drive tight.</i>
See 149, b, 150.				

vinc-ō (vic),      vince-re,      vic-i,      vic-tum,      *to conquer.*

3. *The I-class.*

(a) With long vowel in the Perfect.

capi-5 (cap-),	cape-re,	cōp-i,	cap-tum,	<i>to take.</i>
ac-cipi-5,	ac-cipe-re,	ac-cōp-i,	ac-cep-tum,	<i>to receive.</i>
faci-5,	face-re,	fēc-i,	fao-tum,	<i>to make.</i>
cale-faci-5 (calf.),	cale face-re,	cale-fēc-i,	cale-fao-tum,	<i>to make warm.</i>
per-faci-5,	per-fice-re,	per-fēc-i,	per-fao-tum,	<i>to achieve.</i>

The Pf. was originally reduplicated; on Impv. fac, see 180, 5.

fodi-5,	fode-re,	fōd-i,	fōs-sum,	<i>to dig.</i>
fugi-5,	fuge-re,	fūg-i,	(fug-i-tūrus),	<i>to flee.</i>
iaci-5,	iace-re,	iāc-i,	iac-tum,	<i>to cael.</i>
con-ici-5,	con-ice-re,	con-iēc-i,	con-iec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>

(b) With short vowel in the Pf. due to the loss of the reduplication:

find-5,	finde-re,	fid-i,	fi-sum,	<i>to cleave.</i>
scind-5,	scinde-re,	scid-i,	scis-sum,	<i>to split.</i>

The reduplicated form sci-cidi is found in early Latin.

161. In the *fourth conjugation*:

amici-5 forms rarely in late Latin amicī; see 142, 4.

com-peri-5,	com-peri-re,	com-per-i,	com-per-tum,	<i>to find out.</i>
re-peri-5,	re-peri-re,	rep-per-i,	re-per-tum,	<i>to find.</i>

See the simple verb parere, 157.

veni-5,	veni-re,	vēn-i,	ven-tum,	<i>to come.</i>
In early Latin sporadic tenses from a form venerē occur, as advenat, ēvenat.				

162. A number of verbs of the *third conjugation* have a characteristic -u-; these form the perfect in -i.

ab-lu-5,	ab-lue-re,	ab-lu-i,	ab-lū-tum,	<i>to wash off.</i>
ab-nu-5,	ab-nue-re,	ab-nu-i,	(ab-nu-itūr-us),	<i>to dissent.</i>
acu-5,	acue-re,	acu-i,	actu-tum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
ad-nu-5 (an-nu-5),	ad-nue-re,	ad-nu-i,	—	<i>to nod assent.</i>
argu-5,	argue-re,	argu-i,	argu-tum,	<i>to accuse.</i>
batu-5,	batue-re,	batu-i,	—	<i>to beat.</i>
con-gru-5,	con-grue-re,	con-gru-i,	—	<i>to agree.</i>
dē-libu-5,	dē-libue-re,	dē-libu-i,	dē-libu-tum,	<i>to anoint.</i>
ex-u-5,	ex-ue-re,	ex-u-i,	ex-ū-tum,	<i>to put off, doff.</i>
im-bu-5,	im-bue-re,	im-bu-i,	im-bū-tum,	<i>to dip, dye.</i>
in-du-5,	in-due-re,	in-du-i,	in-dū-tum,	<i>to put on, don.</i>
lu-5,	lue-re,	lu-i,	lu-itūr-us,	<i>to alone for.</i>
metu-5,	metue-re,	metu-i,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
minu-5,	minue-re,	minu-i,	mindū-tum,	<i>to loosen.</i>
plu-5,	plue-re,	plu-i, plūv-it,	—	<i>to rain.</i>
ru-5,	rue-re,	ru-i,	ru-tum (ruitūr-us),	<i>to rush down.</i>
spu-5,	spue-re,	spu-i,	spū-tum,	<i>to open.</i>
statu-5,	statue-re,	statu-i,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
sternu-5,	sternue-re,	sternu-i,	—	<i>to sneeze.</i>
su-5,	sue-re,	su-i,	sū-tum,	<i>to sew.</i>
tribu-5,	tribue-re,	tribu-i,	tribū-tum,	<i>to allot.</i>

## DEONENTS.

**163.** The majority of the deponent verbs belong to the *first* conjugation. In many instances they have parallel active forms in early or in late Latin. The principal verbs are as follows :

In the *first* conjugation :

**adul-or,**      **adulā-ri,**      **adulā-tus sum,**      *to fawn upon.*

Occasionally active in ante-classical Latin (Lucr. v., 1070) and more often in later Latin.

**altero-or,**      **alterō-ri,**      **alterō-tus sum,**      *to wrangle.*

In early Latin *alterasti* (Ter., *And.* 638), *alterās*. Active forms more common in late Latin.

**arbitr-or,**      **arbitrā-ri,**      **arbitrā-tus sum,**      *to think.*

PLAUT. uses this verb also as an active, but later this usage is rare.

**ancup-or,**      **ancupā-ri,**      **ancupā-tus sum,**      *to try to catch.*

Active forms are common in early Latin.

**augur-or,**      **augurā-ri,**      **augurā-tus sum,**      *to take the auguries.*

Active forms are early, legal, and late. Use as a passive is occasional in the classical period.

**auspic-or,**      **auspicā-ri,**      **auspicā-tus sum,**      *to take the auspices.*

Active forms are early and late. CIC. and LIVY use the verb as a passive in a few instances.

**comit-or,**      **comitā-ri,**      **comittā-tus sum,**      *to accompany.*

Poets (Ov., PROP., etc.) use the active forms frequently. The Perfect Part. *comittātus* is common as a passive, also in classical Latin.

**comment-or,**      **commentā-ri,**      **commentā-tus sum,**      *to discuss.*

CIC. uses *commentātus* as a passive in *Br.* 88, 301, *Fam.* XVI., 26, 1.

**conflict-or,**      **conflictā-ri,**      **conflictā-tus sum,**      *to struggle.*

Occasionally found for *conflictare*. See TER., *And.*, 93.

**cōspic-or,**      **cōspicā-ri,**      **cōspicā-tus sum,**      *to descry.*

So *dēspicor*, *suspicio*. But a few forms are occasionally (usually in early Latin) used as passives, especially *dēspicātus* (PLAUT., TER.), compared *dēspicātissimus* by CIC. (*Sest.* 16, 36, *Verr.* III., 41, 98). PLAUT., *Cas.* 394, *suspicio*.

**contempl-or,**      **contemplā-ri,**      **contemplā-tus sum,**      *to survey.*

The active forms are used frequently in early Latin (regularly by PLAUT.).

**cōpul-or,**      **cōpulā-ri,**      **cōpulā-tus sum,**      *to join.*

So PLAUT., *Aul.* 116. Otherwise everywhere *cōpulare*.

**crimin-or,**      **criminā-ri,**      **criminā-tus sum,**      *to charge.*

PLAUT. uses *crimināret*, ENNIUS *crimināt*.

**cunct-or,**      **cunctā-ri,**      **cunctā-tus sum,**      *to delay.*

Active forms are occasional in early and late Latin.

**dign-or,**      **dignā-ri,**      **dignā-tus sum,**      *to deem worthy.*

This verb is predominantly poet-classical and poetical. The active forms are early and rare; perhaps once in CICERO.

**fabric-or,**      **fabricā-ri,**      **fabricā-tus sum,**      *to forge.*  
     The active forms belong to poetry and to post-Augustan prose.

**fænær-or,**      **fænærā-ri,**      **fænærā-tus sum,**      *to lend on interest.*  
     Active forms occasional in early Latin and more frequent in late Latin.

**fluctu-or,**      **fluctuā-ri,**      **fluctuā-tus sum,**      *to undulate.*  
     Active forms are rare in PLAUT. and in CIC., but not uncommon later. The deponent forms are post-Ciceronian.

**(for),**      **flī-ri,**      **flī-tus sum,**      *to speak.*  
     See 175, 3.

**frustr-or,**      **frustrā-ri,**      **frustrā-tus sum,**      *to deceive.*  
     Active forms rare, but at all periods.

**illacrim-or,**      **illacrimā-ri,**      **illacrimā-tus sum,**      *to weep over.*  
     In CIC. and HOR.; otherwise active.

**interpret-or,**      **interpretā-ri,**      **interpretā-tus sum,**      *to interpret.*  
     CIC. uses **interpretātus** occasionally as a passive; likewise LIVY and others.

**luct-or,**      **luctā-ri,**      **luctā-tus sum,**      *to wrestle.*  
     PLAUT., TER., ENNIUS, VARRO show sporadic forms of the active.

**lūdific-or,**      **lūdificā-ri,**      **lūdificā-tus sum,**      *to make sport.*  
     Active frequent in PLAUT., and occasionally later.

**medic-or,**      **medicā-ri,**      **medicā-tus sum,**      *to heal.*  
     The active is once in PLAUT., and frequent in poets and post-Augustan prose.

**medit-or,**      **meditā-ri,**      **meditā-tus sum,**      *to think over.*  
     The form **meditātus** is very commonly found as a passive.

**mūner-or,**      **mūnerā-ri,**      **mūnerā-tus sum,**      *to bestow.*  
     Active forms in early Latin and occasionally in CIC. and later.

**nūtric-or,**      **nūtricā-ri,**      **nūtricā-tus sum,**      *to suckle.*  
     Active forms in early Latin.

**odōr-or,**      **odōrā-ri,**      **odōrā-tus sum,**      *to smell.*  
     Active forms occasional at all periods.

**opin-or,**      **opinā-ri,**      **opinā-tus sum,**      *to think.*  
     **opinō** is frequent in early Latin, and **opinātus** as passive is common in CICERO.

**palp-or,**      **palpā-ri,**      **palpā-tus sum,**      *to stroke.*  
     Is occasional (principally in early Latin) for **palpāre**.

**popul-or,**      **populā-ri,**      **populā-tus sum,**      *to ravage.*  
     Active forms in simple verb and compounds are early, poetical, and post-classic.

**sciscit-or,**      **sciscitā-ri,**      **sciscitā-tus sum,**      *to inquire.*  
     PLAUT., MERC. 339, **sciscitare** (active).

**scrifit-or,**      **scrifitā-ri,**      **scrifitā-tus sum,**      *to search.*  
     PLAUT., AUL. 657, **perscrifitāvi**. The use as a passive occurs first in SENNOA.

**sect-or,**      **sectā-ri,**      **sectā-tus sum,**      *to pursue.*  
     Active forms and passive usages are early.

**stabul-or,**      **stabulā-ri,**      **stabulā-tus sum,**      *to stable.*  
     Active forms begin with VERGIL.

**tūt-or,**      **tūtā-ri,**      **tūtā-tus sum,**      *to protect.*  
     Active forms and passive usages are early and rare.

tumultu-or, tumultu-rī, tumultu-tus sum, *to raise a riot.*  
But PLAUTUS uses active forms; and passive uses are occasional later.

vag-or, vag-rī, vag-tus sum, *to wander.*  
Active forms belong to early Latin.

vener-or, vener-rī, vener-tus sum, *to reverence.*  
But PLAUT. uses venerō, venerem; VERG., HOR., and later writers show passive uses.

#### 164. In the second conjugation :

fate-or, fat-rī, fas-sus sum, *to confess.*  
cōnfite-or, cōnfit-rī, cōnfes-sus sum, *to confess.*  
Both fateor and cōfiteor are used occasionally as passives by CIC. and later.

lice-or, lice-rī, lici-tus sum, *to bid (at a sale).*

mero-or, mer-rī, meri-tus sum, *to deserve.*

Especially in the phrases merērī bene dē aliquō, *to deserve well of any one.*  
Otherwise the active is usual.

miserē-or, miser-rī, miseri-tus sum, *to pity.*  
In early Latin the active forms are found occasionally, e. g., LUCR. III., 881.

pollicē-or, pollic-rī, pollici-tus sum, *to promise.*  
Occasionally used as a passive in post-classical Latin.

re-or, rē-rī, ra-tus sum, *to think.*  
Pr. Part. Active is wanting.

tue-or, tu-rī, tui-tus (tūtus) sum, *to protect.*

In early Latin and occasionally later, a parallel form, tuor, tul, tuitus sum,  
occurs. For tuitus usually tutus.

vere-or, ver-rī, veri-tus sum, *to fear.*

#### 165. In the third conjugation :

apisc-or, apiso-l, ap-tus sum, *to get.*

Simple verb is frequent in early and late Latin. Of the compounds, adipiscor,  
adipisci, adeptus sum, is usually deponent in classical times, but occurs occasionally  
as a passive in SALL. and later writers. The compounds ind-, red-, are rare.

am-plect-or, am-plect-l, am-plex us sum, *to twine round, embrace.*  
So the compounds complector, circumplector. In early Latin active forms are

occasionally found; e. g., amplectitōtē, circumplete (PLAUT.).

com-min-isc-or, com-min-isc-l, com-men-tus sum, *to think up, devise.*  
OVID and later writers use commentus as a passive.

experg-isc-or, (-reg-) ex-perg-isc-l, ex-per-rētus sum, *to (right one's self  
up) awake.*

fung-or, fung-l, fung-tus sum, *to discharge.*

This verb is used passively very rarely: TER., Ad. 508. LUCR. III., 908. CIC., Sest.  
4, 10.

fru-or (frugv-), fru-l, fru-tus (fru-i-tus) sum, *to enjoy.*  
The form fruitus is rare and late.

gradi-or,	grad-i,	gres-sus sum,	<i>to step,</i>
ag-gredi-or,	ag-gred-i,	ag-gres-sus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>
Occasionally active forms of the fourth conjugation are found in early Latin.			
lēb-or,	lēb-i,	lēp-sus sum,	<i>to glide.</i>
loqu-or,	loqu-i,	locū-tus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
mori-or,	mor-i,	mortu-us sum,	<i>to die.</i>
Early Latin shows parallel forms of the fourth conjugation, as moriri, ñmoriri. Fut. Part. moritūrus; see 125, n. 3.			
nanc-iso-or,	nanc-iso-i,	nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum,	<i>to get.</i>
nāso-or (gnās-),	nāsc-i,	nās-tus sum,	<i>to be born.</i>
Fut. Part. nāscitūrus.			
nīt-or (gnīot-;	nit-i,	nī-sus (nix-us) sum,	<i>to stay one's self on.</i>
from genī),		nī-sūrus,	
ob-liv-iso-or,	ob-liv-iso-i,	ob-li-tus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>
pac-iso-or,	pac-iso-i,	pae-tus sum (pepigī),	<i>to drive (a bargain).</i>
Occasionally active forms are found in early Latin; in Cic. pactus is frequently used as a passive. See pangō.			
pati-or,	pat-i,	pas-sus sum,	<i>to suffer.</i>
per-peti-or,	per-pet-i,	per-pes-sus sum,	<i>to endure to the end.</i>
pro-fic-iso-or,	pro-fic-iso-i,	pro-fec-tus sum,	<i>to (get forward) set out.</i>
But PLAUT., M.G. 1829, proficisciō.			
quer-or,	quer-i,	ques-tus sum,	<i>to complain.</i>
sequ-or,	sequ-i,	secū-tus sum,	<i>to follow.</i>
ulo-iso-or,	ulo-iso-i,	ul-tus sum,	<i>to avenge.</i>
Active forms are rare; so once in ENNIUS. But SALL., LIVY, and later writers use the verb as a passive sometimes.			
ūt-or,	ūt-i,	ū-sus sum,	<i>to use.</i>
PLAUT. shows the compound abūtīs as a passive ( <i>Aetn.</i> 190).			
veh-or,	veh-i,	vec-tus sum,	<i>to (wagon) ride.</i>
vesc-or,	vesc-i,	—	<i>to feed.</i>

166. In the *fourth* conjugation :

assenti-or,	assenti-ri,	assēn-sus sum,	<i>to assent.</i>
Active forms are not uncommon in early Latin. Cic. uses the Pf. active forms frequently; likewise later writers.			
com-peri-or,	comperi-ri,	—	<i>to find out.</i>
Occasionally found (but rarely in classical Latin; as, SALL., J., 45, 1; 108, 3) for comperiō, comperfīre. But experior, experīrī, expertus sum, <i>to try</i> , is regularly deponent; though Cic. and others use often the Pf. active forms.			
lārgi-or,	lārgi-ri,	lārgi-tus sum,	<i>to bestow.</i>
menti-or,	menti-ri,	menti-tus sum,	<i>to lie.</i>
The poets and later prose writers use this as a passive also.			
mēti-or,	mēti-ri,	mēn-sus sum,	<i>to measure.</i>
Pneive usage is common, especially in the compounds: dēmēnsus, dīmēnsus, ñmēnsus, permēnsus, remēnsus.			

**ordi-or,**      **ordi-ri,**      **or-sus sum,**      *to begin.*  
*Orsus*, and more commonly *exorsus*, are also found as passives.

**ori-or,**      **ori-ri,**      **or-tus sum,**      *to arise.*

The Pr. Indic. is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the Impf. Subjv. always *orerer*; but the Fut. Part. is *oriturus*. The compounds follow the same usage except *adoriri*, *to rise up at, attack*, which follows the fourth conjugation.

**parti-or,**      **parti-ri,**      **parti-tus sum,**      *to share.*

Active forms and passive uses are found in early Latin, and sporadically in Cic. and later.

**poti-or,**      **poti-ri,**      **poti-tus sum,**      *to get possession of.*

The Pr. Indic., Impf. Subjv., and occasionally other forma, are also found in early Latin and the poets, inflected according to the third conjugation; so regularly after PLAUT. *potitur*, frequently *poteretur*, *poteremur*.

**puni-or,**      **puni-ri,**      **puni-tus sum,**      *to punish.*

Occasionally in Cic. and late writers for *punire*.

**sorti-or,**      **sorti-ri,**      **sorti-tus sum,**      *to cast lots.*

Active occasionally in early Latin, and passive uses later of the Pf. Participle.

## SEMI-DEONENTS.

### 167. 1. A few verbs form the Perfect forms only as deponents :

**aude-5,**      **aude-re,**      **au-sus sum,**      *to dare.*  
 On the sorist forms *ausim*, etc., see 181, 4, b.

**fid-5,**      **fid-ere,**      **fi-sus sum,**      *to trust.*

**gaude-5,**      **gaude-re,**      **gāv-isus sum,**      *to rejoice.*

**sole-5,**      **sol-5-re,**      **sol-itus sum,**      *to be wont.*  
 The Pf. active is found in early Latin; but rarely.

### 2. The reverse usage is found in :

**re-vert-or,**      **re-vert-i,**      **re-vert-i,**      *to turn back.*

So also *dēverti*, but without Pf. Part. *Reversus* is also used actively, but *reversus sum* for *reverti* is post-classic.  
 See also *assentior*, etc., 166.

NOTES.—1. Some active verbs have a Perfect Participle passive with active meaning, as : *cēnitus*, *one who has dined*, from *cēnare*, *to dine*; *prānsus*, *having fasted*, from *prāndi*, *I breakfast*; *pōtus*, *drunken*, from *pōtī*, *I drink*; *ifirātus*, *having taken the oath*, *sworn*, from *ifirō*, *I swear*; *conifirātus*, *a conspirator*, from *conifirō*, *I conspire*. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: *cōnsiderātus*, *circumspect*, from *cōnsiderō*; *cautus*, *wary*, from *caveō*, *I beware*.

2. The Perfect Participle of many deponent Verbs has both active and passive meaning: *adeptus* (*adipiscor*), *having acquired, or being acquired*; *comitātus* (*comitor*, *I accompany*); *effātus* (*effor*, *I speak out*); *expertus* (*experior*, *I try*); *exscrūtātus* (*exsecrō*, *I curse*); *imitātus* (*imitor*, *I copy*); *meritus* (*meror*, *I deserve*); *opīnātus*, *necopīnātus* (*opinor*, *I think*); *pactus* (*paciscor*, *I contract*); *partitus* (*partior*, *I distribute*); *sortitus* (*sortior*, *I cast lots*); *tūtor*, *I protect*; *tūtus*, *safe*.  
 For others, see the list of deponents.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

## 168. Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems :

1. Nine verbs of the third conjugation, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Pf. in -*et*, viz. :

*elepō, I fetch ; rego, I keep right ; tegō, I cover in ; coquō, I bake ;* and the compounds of *lego*, *I pick up* ; *lacitō, I lure* ; *speciō, I spy (-ligō, -lidiō, -spiciō)* ; *dividō, I part* ; *quatiō, I shake*. See 147, 2.

From *lego*, however, only *diligō, I love* ; *intelligō, I understand* ; and *neglegō, neglect*, are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 147, 2.

2. Five verbs of the third conjugation, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Pf. in -*e*, viz. :

*lambō, I lick* ; *cūdō, I hammer* ; *sidō, I sit* (160, 1) ; *stridēō, I whistle* (159) ; *vertō, I turn* (160, 1).

3. Assimilation between *be* and *me* occurs in the Pf. and Sup. of

<i>iubeō,</i>	<i>I order.</i>	See 147, 1.
<i>premō (-primō),</i>	<i>I press.</i>	See 147, 2.

4. Special irregularities occur in :

<i>bibō,</i>	<i>I drink.</i>	154, 2.
<i>maneō,</i>	<i>I remain.</i>	147, 1.
<i>mēti-or,</i>	<i>I measure.</i>	166.
<i>metō,</i>	<i>I mow.</i>	148, 3.
<i>mori-or,</i>	<i>I die.</i>	165.
<i>rauciō,</i>	<i>I am hoarse.</i>	150, 2.
<i>re-or,</i>	<i>I think.</i>	164.

5. Formed from different tense-stems, are the tenses of

<i>ferō,</i>	<i>I bear.</i>	171.
<i>tollō,</i>	<i>I lift.</i>	155.

## 169. Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem :

1. *ori-or, ori-ri, or-tus sum, to arise.*

See 166.

2. *i-re, to go.*

The stem is *i*, which, before *a, o, u*, becomes *e*.

PRIN. PARTS : *eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I go.*

*I be going.*

PRÉS. SG.—1. <i>eō</i> ,	PL. — <i>i-mus</i> ,	SG. — <i>ea-m</i> ,	PL. — <i>ei-mus</i> ,
2. <i>i-e</i> ,	<i>i-tis,</i>	<i>ei-s,</i>	<i>ei-tis,</i>
3. <i>i-t</i> ,	<i>eu-nt.</i>	<i>ea-t,</i>	<i>ea-nt.</i>

IMPF.	I-ba-m, <i>I went.</i>	I-re-m, <i>I were going.</i>
FUT.	I-b-ō, <i>I shall go.</i>	
PERF.	I-v-i (i-ti), <i>I have gone.</i>	I-v-eri-m (i-eri-m).
PLUFF.	I-v-era-m (i-era-m), <i>I had gone.</i>	I-v-isso-m (i-isso-m, I-sse-m).
FUT. PR.	I-v-er-ō (i-er-ō), <i>I shall have gone.</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2. I,	go thou.	I-tō,	thou shall go.
3. —		I-tō,	he shall go.
PL.—2. I-te,	go ye.	I-tōte,	ye shall go.
3. —		Ieu-natō,	they shall go.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. i-re.		PARTICIPLES.
FUT. i-tūr-um esse.		PRES. iē-ns (G. eu-nt-is).
PERF. I-v-isso (I-sse).		FUT. i-tūr-us.

## GERUND.

eu-nd-i, etc.

## SUPINE.

i-tum, to go.

REMARKS.—1. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the Perfect system, where syncope regularly takes place (see 181, 2). *Ven-ēō*, *I am for sale*, and *per-ēō*, *I perish*, serve as passives to *vēn-dō*, *I sell*, and *per-dō*, *I destroy*, whose regular passives occur only in the forms *vēnditus*, *vēndendus*, and *perditus* (but see HOR., *Sat.*, ii. 6, 59). *Amb-ēō*, *I solicit*, follows the fourth conjugation throughout, but in post-Ciceronian writers (LIVY, TAC., PLIN. MIN.) shows occasional forms like those of *ēō*. Some compounds show occasionally Fut. in -eām after the time of SENECA.

2. The passive of the simple verb is found only in the impersonal forms *itur*, *ib&ntilde;tur*, *itum est*, *fī* (in combination with the Supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly; so, *praeter-ēō* forms *praeter-eor*, *-iris*, *itur*, *-imur*, *-imini*, *-euntur*, *ibar*, etc., *-itus sum*, *eram*, *erō*, *-eantor*, *-itor*, *-iri*, *-eundus*.

3. *quire*, *to be able*; *require*, *to be unable*.

170. (a) *que-ō*, *I am able*, is found in the following forms, of which those in parenthesis are unclassical, occurring in early and late Latin and the poets; CÆSAR uses no form of *quēō*.

PR. INDIC. *queō*, (*quis*), (*quit*), *quimus*, (*quitis*), *queunt*. PR. SUBJ. *queam*, *queās*, *queat*, *queāmus*, *queātis*, *queant*. IMPF. (*quibam*), (*quifrem*). FUT. (*quibō*). PR. *quivi*, etc.; *quiverim*, etc. PLUFF. *quiveram*, etc.; *quivissem*, etc. FUT. PR. *quiverō*, etc. PR. INF. *quire*. PF. *quivisse*. PAST. *quiēns*.

(b) *neque-ō*, *I am unable*, has the same forms, all of which seem to be classic excepting the Future Indicative, which is not cited.

4. *fer-re, to bear.*

171. The endings beginning with *t*, *s*, and *r* are added directly to the root (132). Some parts are supplied by *tul-* (*tol-*, *tsa-*).

PRIM. PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.*

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	<i>I bear.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>I be bearing.</i>
Sg.—1.	<i>ferō,</i>	Sg.—	<i>fera-m,</i>
	<i>PL.—fer-i-mus,</i>	PL.—	<i>ferā-mus,</i>
2.	<i>fer-s,</i>	ferā-s,	<i>ferā-tis,</i>
3.	<i>fer-t,</i>	fera-t,	<i>fera-nt.</i>

IMPF. *ferā-be-m, I was bearing.*

FUT. *fera-m, I shall bear.*

PERF. *tul-i, I have borne.*

PLUFP. *tul-era-m.*

FUT. PR. *tul-er-ō.*

*fer-re-m, I were bearing.*

*tul-eri-m.*

*tul-isso-m.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2.	<i>fer,</i>	<i>bear thou.</i>	<i>fer-tō,</i>	<i>thou shall bear.</i>
3.	—		<i>fer-tō,</i>	<i>he shall bear.</i>
PL.—2.	<i>fer-to,</i>	<i>bear ye.</i>	<i>fer-tōs,</i>	<i>ye shall bear.</i>
3.	—		<i>feru-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall bear.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *fer-re.*

FUT. *lā-tur-um esse.*

PERF. *tul-isso.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *ferā-nas, bearing.*

FUT. *lā-tur-us.*

## GERUND.

*ferē-nā-i, etc.*

## SUPINE.

*lā-tum (t(o)lā-tum).*

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

*I am borne.*

PRES.	Sg.—1.	<i>fer-o-r,</i>	<i>feri-mur,</i>	Sg.—	<i>fera-r,</i>	<i>ferā-mur,</i>
	2.	<i>fer-i-s,</i>	<i>feri-mini,</i>		<i>ferā-s,</i>	<i>ferā-mini,</i>
	3.	<i>fer-tur,</i>	<i>feru-ntur.</i>		<i>ferā-tur,</i>	<i>fera-ntur.</i>

IMPF. *ferā-be-r.*

FUT. *fera-r.*

PERF. *lā-tus sum.*

PLUFP. *lā-tus eram.*

FUT. PR. *lā-tus erō.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I be borne.*

*fer-re-r.*

*lā-tus sim.*

*lā-tus essem.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2.	fer-re,	<i>be thou borne.</i>	fer-tor,	<i>thou shall be borne.</i>
3.	—		fer-tor,	<i>he shall be borne.</i>
PL.—2.	feri-mini,	<i>be ye borne.</i>	—	
3.	—		feru-ntor,	<i>they shall be borne.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	fer-ri,	<i>to be borne.</i>	PERF.	lē-t-us, -a, -um, <i>borne.</i>
FUT.	lē-tum iſi.			GERUNDIVE.
PERF.	lē-tum esse,	<i>to have been borne.</i>		fere-nd-us.

## COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-ō,	af-fer-re,	at-tul-i,	al lē-tum,	<i>to bear to.</i>
au-fer-ō,	au-fer-re,	abs-tul-i,	ab-lē-tum,	<i>to bear away.</i>
cōn-fer-ō,	cōn-fer-re,	con-tul-i,	col-lē-tum,	<i>to collect.</i>
dif-fer-ō,	dif-fer-re,	dis-tul-i,	di-lē-tum,	<i>to put off.</i>
ef-fer-ō,	ef-fer-re,	ex-tul-i,	ē-lē-tum,	<i>to carry out.</i>
of-fer-ō,	of-fer-re,	ob-tul-i,	ob-lē-tum,	<i>to offer.</i>

NOTES.—1. The Pf. tull was originally reduplicated te-tull. See 134, III., 155. Traces of this are seen in rettull.

2. Suf-ferō, *I undergo*, has the Pf. sus-tin-ūf (sus-tul-i, sub-lē-tum, being appropriated to tell-ō). (155.)

5. ed-ere, *to eat.*

172. In certain forms the endings beginning with s, t, and r are added directly to the root (132); d before s (r) is dropped or assimilated (as ss), and before t becomes s.

PRIN. PARTS: edō, edore (ēsse), ēdī, ēsum.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I eat.*

*I be eating.*

Sg.—1.	ed-ō,	PL.—edi-mus,	Sg.—eda-m,	PL.—edē-mus,
2.	edi-s, ēs-s,	edi-tis, ēs-tis,	edē-s,	edē-tis,
3.	edi-t, ēs-st,	edu-nt.	eda-t,	eda-nt.

IMPF.      edē-ba-m,      *I ate.*      edē-re-m, ēs-se-m, *I were eating.*

FUT.      eda-m.

edē-ri-m.

PERF.      ed-ī.

edē-is-sē-m.

PLUFF.      edē-era-m.

FUT. PF.      ed-er-ō.

## IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2. <i>ede, es,</i>	<i>eat thou.</i>	<i>edi-to, es-tō,</i>	<i>thou shall eat.</i>
3. —		<i>edi-to, es-tō,</i>	<i>he shall eat.</i>
PL.—2. <i>edi-te, es-te,</i>	<i>eat ye.</i>	<i>edi-tōte, es-tōte,</i>	<i>ye shall eat.</i>
3. —		<i>edu-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall eat</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. <i>ede-re, es-se,</i>	<i>to eat.</i>
FUT. <i>es-fūr-um esse.</i>	
PERF. <i>edisse.</i>	

GERUND.  
*ede-nd-i, etc.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>(edē-ms).</i>
FUT. <i>es-fūr-us.</i>

SUPINE.  
*es-um, es-i.*

## PASSIVE.

In the passive voice the only peculiarities are as follows: Pr. Indic. Sing. Third, *editor* and *estur*. Impf. Subjv. Sing. Third, *ederetur* and *estetur*. The Pf. Part. is *esus* and the Gerundive *edendus*.

NOTE.—In the Pr. Subjv. Active, early Latin shows *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, *edimus*, *editis*, *edint*. Also *sesum* and *sesi* in the Sup., *esturus* in the Fut. Part. *Comedere* also shows *comestus* for *comisus*.

6. *fi-eri, to become.*

173. *Fi-ō* is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive the stem is increased by *e*; thus, *fi-e-rem*, *I were becoming*; *fi-e-ri*, *to become*. In these forms the *i* is short, but elsewhere it is long even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in *-ri*, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to *factū*, *I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from *factū*.

PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fieri, factus sum.*

## ACTIVE.

PRES. <i>factō, I make.</i>
IMP. <i>factōbam, I made.</i>
FUT. <i>factōam, I shall make.</i>
PERF. <i>factō.</i>
PLUR. <i>factōram.</i>
FUT. PR. <i>factōrdū.</i>
etc.

## PASSIVE.

INDIC. <i>fiō, I am made, I become.</i>
<i>fiō, fit (fimus, fitis), fiunt.</i>
<i>fiōbam, I was made, I became.</i>
<i>fiōam, I shall be made (become).</i>
<i>factus sum.</i>
<i>factus eram.</i>
<i>factus erō.</i>

SUBJV. *fiō, fiōs, fiat, etc.*

*fierem, fierēs, etc.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. <i>fieri.</i>
PERF. <i>factum esse, to have become.</i>
FUT. <i>factūrum esse or fore.</i>
FUT. PP. <i>factum fore.</i>

IMPERATIVE.  
*(fi), (fi-tō).*  
*(fi-te).*

NOTES.—1. Occasionally in early Latin the form *fieri* is found for the Infinitive, which indicates that the verb was originally active. The forms *fieri* and *fierem* are very common in early Latin, along with the normal forms. Of the forms in parenthesis *fimis* and *fitis* do not certainly occur, and the Imperative forms are early. Passive forms of *fīō* are very rare; never in PLAUTUS or TERENCE.

2. The compounds of *faciō* with Prepositions change the *a* of the stem into *i*, and form the Passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: *perficiō*, *I achieve*, Pass. *perficior*; *interficiō*, Pass. *interficior*, *I am destroyed*. But *interfieri*, *cōfieri*, and several other forms are found in early Latin, and occasionally in classical times. When compounded with words other than prepositions, *faciō* retains its *a*, and uses *fīō* as its Passive:

*patefaciō*, *I lay open*, Pass. *patefīō*; *calefaciō*, *I warm*, Pass. *calefīō*.

For the accent, see 15, 2, n. 2.

#### 174. 7. vel-le, to be willing.

*nōlle*, to be unwilling; *mālle*, to be willing rather.

PRIN. PARTS: *vold*, *velle*, *volui*; *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui*; *mālō*, *mālle*, *mālui*.

##### INDICATIVE.

Pras.	<i>vold</i> ,	<i>nōlō</i> ,	<i>mālō</i> ,
	<i>vis</i> ,	<i>nōn vis</i> ,	<i>māvis</i> ,
	<i>vult</i> ,	<i>nōn vult</i> ,	<i>māvult</i> ,
	<i>volumus</i> ,	<i>nōlumus</i> ,	<i>mālumus</i> ,
	<i>vultis</i> ,	<i>nōn vultis</i> ,	<i>māvultis</i> ,
	<i>volunt</i> .	<i>nōlunt</i> .	<i>mālunt</i> .
IMPF.	<i>volēbam</i> ,	<i>nōlēbam</i> ,	<i>mālebam</i> .
FUT.	<i>volam</i> ,	<i>nōlam</i> ,	<i>mālam</i> ,
	<i>volō</i> , etc.	<i>nōlō</i> , etc.	<i>mālō</i> , etc.
PERF.	<i>volui</i> ,	<i>nōlui</i> ,	<i>mālui</i> , etc.
PLUFP.	<i>volueram</i> ,	<i>nōlueram</i> ,	<i>mālueram</i> , etc.
FUT. P <sub>Y</sub> .	<i>voluerō</i> ,	<i>nōluerō</i> ,	<i>māluerō</i> , etc.

##### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pras.	<i>velim</i> ,	<i>nōlim</i> ,	<i>mālim</i> ,
	<i>velia</i> ,	<i>nōlis</i> ,	<i>mālis</i> ,
	<i>velit</i> ,	<i>nōlit</i> ,	<i>mālit</i> ,
	<i>velimus</i> ,	<i>nōlimus</i> ,	<i>mālimus</i> ,
	<i>velitis</i> ,	<i>nōlitis</i> ,	<i>mālitis</i> ,
	<i>velint</i> .	<i>nōlint</i> .	<i>mālint</i> .
IMPF.	<i>vellem</i> ,	<i>nōllem</i> ,	<i>māllem</i> .
PERF.	<i>voluerim</i> ,	<i>nōluerim</i> ,	<i>māluerim</i> , etc.
PLUFP.	<i>voluissem</i> ,	<i>nōluissem</i> ,	<i>māluissem</i> , etc.

IMPV.	Sg.—nōli, nōlitō.	
	PL.—nōlite, nōlitōte, nōluntō.	
INF. Pr. velle,	nōlle,	mālle.
Pr. voluisse,	nōluisse,	māluisse.
PART. volāns,	nōlans.	

NOTE.—1. To the time of CICERO, and occasionally later, volt, voltis, are employed for vult, vultis. In familiar language si vis, si vultis, were contracted to sis, sultis; vis was further combined with -ne into vin.

2. Nūlō is a contraction of nevolō (= nōn volō), and in early Latin we find, along with the forms given above, also nevis, nevolt; also occasionally we find nōm velle, nōn velit, nōn velint, nōn vellem, for nōlis, etc.; but the feeling is slightly different.

3. Mālō = ma volō, from mag(image, magis)-volō. Frequently in PLAUT., but rarely in TEE., we find mavolō, mavolunt, mavolet, mavelim, -is, -it, mavellem, instead of mālō, malim, mālis, etc.

### 175. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

#### 1. sīō, I say aye.

INDIC. PRES. Sg.—1. sīō,	2. aīs,	3. aīt,	PL.—3. sīunt.
IMPF. sīōbam, etc.			
PERR.		3. aīt.	
SUBJ. PRES. Sg.—	2. sīs,	3. sīst,	3. sīant.
PART. sīns (as adj.), affirmative.		IMPV. sī.	

NOTE.—In early Latin aīn (= aīsne i) was scanned often as a monosyllable; and in the Impf., sībam, sībīs, sībat, sībant were frequently employed along with the normal forms. The Impv. is rare, and found only in early Latin. Pr. Subjv. sīam is emended into PL., sīs.

#### 2. inquam, I say, quoth I.

INDIC. PRES. Sg.—1. inquam,	2. inquis,	3. inquit.
PL.—1. inquimus,	2. inquitis,	3. inquiunt.
IMPF. Sg.—		3. inquiōbat.
FUT. Sg.—	2. inquiōs,	3. inquist.
PERR. Sg.—1. inquiī,	2. inquistī,	3. inquit.

IMPV. inque, inquitō.

#### 3. fā-rl, to speak.

INDIC. PRES. fātūr. FUT. fābitūr. PERR. fātūs sum, etc. IMPV. fāre. PART. PRES. fāns, fāntis, fānti, fāntēm. GER. fāndī, fāndō. SUP. fātū.

NOTE.—In addition to these, compounds show also PRES. : -fāris, -fāmūr, -fāmīni, -fāntūr; IMPF. : -fābar, -fābāntūr; FUT. : -fābere, -fābūrūr; PART. : -fānte and others. These forms, as well as the uncompounded forms, though occasionally found in prose, are peculiar to the poets until post-Augustan times. The Pt. Part. is sometimes used passively; so especially fātūm, fate; effātūs, designated.

## 4. havē-re (avē-re), salvē-re.

IMPV.	havē,	salvē, salvēbis, <i>hail thou!</i>
	havētō,	salvētō.
	havēte,	salvēte, <i>hail ye!</i>
INF.	havēre,	salvēre.

Corresponding to these are the forms of valēre, viz.: valē, valēte, valēre, *farewell.*

## 5. coepi, memini, ödi, növi.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are coepi, *I have begun*, which serves as a Perfect to incipiō, and memini, *I remember*, ödi, *I hate*, növi (from nöscō, see 181, 3, 140), *I know, am aware*, önsuövi (from consuöscō), *I am wont*, which have the force of Presents.

a. INDIC.	coepi, <i>I have begun.</i>	SUBJV.	cooperim.
	cooperam.		cooperissem.
	cooperō.	INF.	cooperisse, <i>to have begun.</i>

NOTE.—Early Latin shows coepiō, coepiās, coepiat, coepiam, coopere, cooperet. Future Participle coeptūrus is Post-Augustan. Incöpi is ante-classical.

Passive forms coeptus sum, etc., occur with the same meaning in combination with a Passive Infinitive. See 423, N. 3.

b. INDIC.	memini, <i>I remember.</i>	SUBJV.	meminerim.
	memineram.		meminissem.
	meminerō.	INF.	meminisse, <i>to remember.</i>
IMPV.	Sg.—mementō.	PL.	mementōtē.
c. INDIC.	ödi, <i>I hate.</i>	SUBJV.	öderim.
	öderam.		ödissem.
	öderō.	INF.	ödisse, <i>to hate.</i>

## FUT. PART. öfūrus.

NOTE.—Occasionally in early Latin, the poets, and later prose, deponent forms of the Perfect are found, ösus sum, etc. For the Passive the phrase ödī esse is used.

d. INDIC.	növi.	SUBJV.	növerim (nörim).
	növeram (nöram).		növissem (nösem).
	növerō (nörō).	INF.	növisse (nösse) <i>to know.</i>

## 6. cedo, quæsō.

Other defective forms are :

Sg.—cedo, .	give ! (old Impv.)	PL.—cette.
INDIC. PRES.	quæsō, <i>please</i> (i. e., <i>I seek, beg</i> ),	quæsumus.

NOTE.—Other forms of quæsō are found occasionally in early Latin, and sporadically in Cic., Sall., and later; the Pf. forms have been attached to quæserere, 187, c.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

176. By the formation of words is meant the way in which stems are made of roots, new stems of old, and in which words are compounded.

177. All roots of the Latin language are probably monosyllabic.\* They can be ascertained only by scientific analysis.

The difference between Root and Stem has been set forth in 25, nn. Sometimes the Stem is the same as the Root ; so especially in the Root Verbs (182). But it is usually different.

178. Words are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* word is one that is formed from a single root : *sól*, *sun*; *stá-re*, *stand, stay*.

A *compound* word is one that is made up of two or more roots : *sól-stiti-num*, *sun-staying, solstice*.

## A.—Simple Words.

179. Simple words are partly *primitive*, partly *derivative* or *secondary*.

1. Primitive words come from the root, and as this usually appears in the simplest form of the verb-stem, primitive words are called *verbals*. Examples are the root-verbal forms (184, n., 182, 185, i.), some substantives of the third declension, as *dux* (*du-e-s*), *leader*, root *dux* (see 183, i), many substantives of the first, second, and fourth declensions, as : *scrib-a* (*scribō*, *I write*), *scribe*.

2. Derivative words are formed from a noun-stem ; hence called *denominatives* : *vetus-tis*, *age*, from *vetus-* (N. *vetus*), *old*.

*NOTE.*—Denominative verbs include many verbs which cannot definitely be referred to any substantive ; such as many frequentatives and intensives. In its narrower signification the term refers to the special class of verbs made from substantives in use.

180. Substantives are generally formed by means of a *suffix*. A suffix is an addition to a stem, and serves to define its meaning or show its relations. So from the verbal stem *scrib-* (*scribō*, *I write*) comes *scrip-tor*, *writ-er*; *scrip-tiō(n)*, *writ-ing*.

---

\* The theory of monosyllabic roots is adopted here as being somewhat more convenient than the theory of polysyllabic roots, now held by some important scholars. Of course it will be understood that the actual existence of mere roots can be assumed only for a very early period in the development of language, long before the independent existence of Latin.

Suffixes are either *primary* or *secondary*. A primary suffix is one added to a root (or verb stem) to form primitive words. A secondary suffix is one used in the formation of derivative words. Thus, -tor in scrip-tor is a primary suffix ; -tis in vetus-tis is secondary.

NOTES.—1. By the fading out of the difference between primary and secondary suffixes, primary suffixes come to be used sometimes to form secondary derivatives.

2. Consonant stems before consonant suffixes undergo the usual changes (9). So scrip-tor becomes scrip-tor; r̄g-a becomes r̄g-x. Stems are sometimes extended by a vowel, usually i, less often u, to facilitate pronunciation : val-i-dus, *strong*; doc-u-men-tum, *proof*; sometimes they change the stem vowel : teg, *cover*; tog-a, *toga*; tug-urium, *hut*.

3. Vowel stems lengthen the final vowel : acu-, *sharpen*; acu-men, *sharp part, point*.

The final vowel often disappears before the suffix : opta-, *choose*; opt-iū, *choice*.

### 181. FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The suffixes, as applied to various roots, have often special functions, and form words of definite meaning. The most important are as follows :

#### 1. Agency is indicated by

-tor, -tric (N. tor (m.), trīx (f.)) : ambi-tor, *lover*; via-trix, *conqueress*; occasionally -ter (N. ter, G. -trī) : ar-bi-ter (= ad + be, *step*), *umpire*; -ōn (N. &, G. ūnis) : com-bib-ō (*fellow-drinker*), *boon companion*; occasionally -o, -a (N. -us, -a) : serv-oa, *slave*; scrib-a, *scribe*; -ōno, -ōna (N. ūnu-a, -ōna) : col-ōnu-a, *settler*; -(i)t (N. ea, G. itis) : mil-ea, *soldier*, and a few others.

#### 2. Action, Activity, and Event are indicated by

a. -tu (N. tu-s, su-s, G. -sī) : ad-ven-tus, *arrival*; -tri-na (N. tri-na) : doc-trina, *instruction*; -in-a (N. -īna) : rap-inā, *rapine*; -men (N. men, G. min-is) : ag-men, *train*; -mento (N. mentum) : tor-mentu-m, *torture*; -ē-la (ella) : loqu-ēla, *speech*; quer-ēla, *complaint*; -cinio (N. -u-m) : latrō-cinio-m, *highway robbery*; -mōnio, -mōnia (N. mōnia, mōniu-m) : queri-mōnia, *complaint*; testi-mōniu-m, *testimony*.

b. Abstracts. Masculine : -ōr- (N. -or, G. -ōr-is) : ang-or, *anguish*. Feminine : -on (N. dō, gō, G. in-is) : imā-gō, *image*; cup-i-dō, *desire*; -ia : audie-ia, *boldness*; -iōn (N. iō) : leg-iō, *legion*; -tia : avāri-tia, *avarice*; collateral are some with Nom. in -tiēs, as dūri-tia, *hardness*; -tiōn (N. tiō, siō) : amb-i-tiō, *ambition*; cō-fu-siō, *confusion*; -tāt (N. tis) : aequāli-tis, *equality*; -tūra : pio-tūra, *painting*; -tūt- (N. tis, sus) : iuven-tūs, *youth*; -tu (-su) (N. tu-s, su-s), s̄m-eus, *perception*; -tūdon (N. tūd-ō, G. -inis) : aegri-tūdō, *sickness of heart*. Neuter: -tū (N. tū-m) : servi-tiu-m, *bondage*.

#### 3. An Artisan or Tradesman is indicated by

-ārio (N. ūriu-s) : argent-āriu-s, *money changer*.

4. The *Trade* is indicated by

**-āria**: *argent-āria, silver mine, bank.*

5. The *Locality* of the work (or trade) is indicated by

**-ārio** (N. *āria-m*): *sēmin-āriu-m, seed-plot; -ōnīo* (N. *ōniu-m*): *full-ōnium, fuller's shop; -īna*: *offīo-īna, workshop; -cro, -culo* (N. *crū-m, culu-m*): *lavr-ēra-m, bath; -trino, -trina* (N. *trīna, trinu-m*): *sū-trina, shoemaker's shop; piś-trinu-m, mill.*

6. *Instrument* and *Means* are indicated by

**-bro, -bra** (N. *bra, bru-m*): *li-bra, balance; crī-brum, sieve; -cro, -culo* (N. *crū-m, culu-m*): *ba-culu-m, walking stick; -lo, -la* (N. *·ia, -lu-m*): *pi-la, pillar; tā-lu-m, weapon; -ulo, -ula* (N. *ulu-s, ulā, ulu-m*): *cap-ulu-s, handle; rēg-ulā, rule; cing-ulu-m, girdle; -mento* (N. *mentu-m*): *al-i-mentu-m, nourishment; -tro, -tra* (N. *tra, tru-m*): *fenee-tra, window; arā-tru-m, plow.*

7. *Relationship* is indicated by

**-ter** (N. *ter, G. tr-is*): *pa-ter, father; mā-ter, mother.*

8. *Condition or Relation* by

**-īna**: *discipl-īna, discipline; medio-īna, medicina.*

9. *Function* is indicated by

**-tūra** (*sūra*): *cult-tūra, cultivation.*

10. *Office* is indicated by

**-ātu** (N. *ātus, G. ātūs*): *cōnsul-ātus, consulship; -tūra (-sūra)*: *dicts-tūra, dictatorship.*

11. *Dense Growths* are indicated by

**-ēto** (N. *ētu-m*): *murt-ētu-m, myrtle grove; -to* (N. *tu-m*): *virgul-tu-m, brushwood.*

12. *Diminutives* are indicated by

**-lo, -la** (N. *īn-s, etc.*), before which a liquid is assimilated (9, 3): *(ager), agel-lu-s, little field; (tabul-s), tabel-la, tablet; (cordū-s), cordilla, chapter; Catul-lu-s (= Catōn-lu-s); homul-lu-s (= homōn-lu-s), manikin; -olo, -ulo*: *olo after e, i, u, otherwise -ulo* (N. *olu-s, ola, ulu-s, ulā*): *(alve-us), alve-olu-s, little hollow; (fili-s), fili-ola, little daughter; (valv-s), valv-olae, pod (little flaps); (circu-s), circ-ulu-s, little ring. -culo, -cula* (N. *culu-s, etc.*), after e, i, u, and consonant stems: *(spēs), spē-cula, slight hope; (amni-s), amni-culu-s, streamlet; (versu-s), versi-culu-s, versicle; (homē, homin-), homun-culu-s, manikin; (flōs), flō-culu-s, floweret; (cor, cord-), cor-culu-m, dear heart.*

NOTE.—Diminutives have, as a rule, the gender of their primitives. Exceptions are sometimes due to difference in signification.

## 182. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The significance of the most important adjective suffixes, which are often identical with the substantive suffixes, are as follows :

1. *Action* is indicated by

*-bundo, -bunda* : *cunot-bundu-s*, *lingering*. *Repeated action* by *-ulo, -ula* : *crēd-ulu-s*, *quick to believe*; *quer-ulu-s*, *complaining*. *Passive action* is indicated by *-bill* : *am̄-billi-s*, *lovable*; *vānd-i-billi-s*, *to be sold*.

2. *Capacity and Inclination* are indicated by

*-cundo, -cunda* : *fi-cundu-s*, *of ready speech*; *ver̄-cundu-s*, *modest*. *Passive Capacity* by *-ili* : *ag-ili-s*, *readily moved, quick*; *doc-ili-s*, *teachable*. *The Capacity and Resulting Condition* by *-tilli* : *duo-tilli-s*, *ductile*; *fio-tilli-s*, *capable of being moulded, of clay*.

3. *Tendency* is indicated by

*-act* (N. *ix*) : *aud-ix*, *bold*; *rap-ix*, *greedy*.

4. *Likeness and Composition or Material* are indicated by

*-aceo, -acea* : *arundin-aceo-s*, *reedy*; *cret-acea-s*, *chalky*; *-ictio* : *later-ictio-s*, *made of brick*; *-no, -na* : *aer-nu-s*, *of maple*; *-neo, -nea* : *ae-neu-s*, *brazen*.

5. *Belonging to* is indicated by

*-io, -ia* : *imperatōr-iu-s*, *belonging to a general*; *-ictio, -ictia* : *adil-ictio-s*, *belonging to an adile*; *-āno, -āna* : *hūm-ānu-s*, *human*; *urb-ānu-s*, *urbane, city*.

6. *Appurtenance and Medium* are indicated by

*-tico, -tica* : *aqua-tico-s*, *aquatic*; *-tilli* : *aqua-tilli-s*, *aquatic*; *plum̄-tilli-s*, *(embroidered) like feathers*.

7. *Origin* is indicated by

*-io, -ia* : *Cornēl-ia* (*lax*), *Corinth-ia-s*; *-āno, -āna, -īno, -īna* : *Rām-ānu-s*, *Lat-īnu-s*.

8. *Time* is indicated by

*-tino, -tina* : *cris-tinu-s*, *of to-morrow*; *-terno, -terna* : *hes-ternu-s*, *of yesterday*; *-urno, -urna* : *noct-urnu-s*, *by night*; *-tino, -tina* : *matt-tinu-s*, *of early morning*.

9. *Locality, where, whence*, is indicated by

*-ia* : *Gall-ia*, *Gaul*; *-tino* : *intes-tinu-s*, *inner, intestine*; *-ēnsi* : *circ-ēnsi-s*, *from the circus*; *Sicili-ēnsi-s*, *Sicilian*; *-āti* (N. *-as*) : *cū-ās*, *of what country* ?

10. *Fullness* is indicated by

*-ōsō, -ōsa* : anim-ōsu-a, *full of spirit*; verb-ōsu-a, *wordy*; *-lento, lenta* : sanguin-o-lentu-a, *bloody*; op-u-lentu-a, *with abundant means*.

11. *Descent* and *Relationship* are indicated in Latin mainly by Greek adjectives, made by the addition of Greek suffixes to proper names. These suffixes are

M. *-īdēs* (G. *īdae*), F. *-is* (G. *īdis*), from Nominatives in *us*, or, *īs*, and *s* preceded by a consonant; M. *-īdēs* (G. *īdae*), F. *-ētis* (G. *ītidis*), from Nominatives in *eus*; M. *-ādēs* (G. *ādae*), F. *-ētis* (G. *ītidis*), from Nominatives in *ās* (G. *āe*) and *-ēs* (G. *-ēe*); M. *-īadēs* (G. *īadae*), F. *-īas* (G. *īadis*), from Nominatives in *īus*, *īs*, *īn*, *ī*; F. *-īnē*, from Nominatives in *-us* and *-eus*; F. *-īōnē*, from Nominatives in *īus*: (*Tantalus*) *Tantal-īda*, *son of Tantalus*; *Tantal-īs*, *daughter of Tantalus*; (*Pelops*) *Pelopidēs*; (*Thēs-eus*) *Thēs-īda*, *Thēsēis*; (*Aeneās*) *Aene-ādēs* (*Aeneadēs* also); (*Lærtēs*) *Lært-īda*; (*Neptūnus*) *Neptūn-īmē*; (*Acriśius*) *Acriśiūnē*, etc.

12. *Diminutive* adjectives are formed by the same suffixes as diminutive substantives (181, 12) : *albus*, *white*, *albu-lus*, *whitish*; *miser*, *wretched*, *mis-ellus*, *poor (little)*; *soer*, *sharp*, *scri-calu-s*, *somewhat sharp*.

### 183. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SUFFIXES.

(Root Substantives.)

A few substantives are formed from roots without a suffix :

1. With weak root : *duc-s* (*dux*), *leader*, from root *duc*, *lead*; *nec-s* (*nex*), *killing*, from root *nec*, *kill*.
2. With strong root : *lū-s* (*lux*), *light*, from root *lū*, *light*; *rēg-s* (*rāx*), *king*, from root *rēg*, *rule*.
3. With reduplication : *car-car*, *jail*; *marm-or*, *marble*; *murm-mur*, *murmur*.

### THE SUFFIXES IN DETAIL.

#### 184. Vowels.

*-o, -a* (N. *u-s, a, u-m*). Primary and secondary adjectives, and primary substantives. The primary adjectives resemble somewhat active participles in meaning; *fer-u-s*, *wild*; *vag-u-s*, *wandering*. Secondary are especially adjectives in *-ōs*, as *deō-dru-s*, *graceful*, from *decor*, *grace*, and many others. Masculine substantives in *-u-s* are often nouns of *agency*, sometimes *nōmina actiōnis* and concretes therefrom: *coqu-o-s*, *cook*; *rog-u-s*, *pyre*. Those in *-a* (*ī*) are regularly *nōmina agentis*, especially in composition; *scrib-a*, *scribe*; *agri-cola*, *husbandman (land-tiller)*. Feminines are in *-o* (which are principally names of trees: *pīr-u-s*, *pear tree*) and in *-a*: *lup-a*, *she-wolf*, as well as *lup-u-s*. Neuters are those in *-u-m*, especially names of fruits: *pīr-u-m*, *pear*.

**-i** (N. *i-s, e*). Substantives : M. *orb-i-s, circle*; *piso-i-s, fish, etc.*; F. *av-i-s, bird*; *nâv-i-s, ship*; N. *mar-e, sea*; *conclav-e, room*. Adjectives : *dule-i-s, sweet*; *turpi-s, ugly*.

NOTE.—In adjectives especially, *i* is often weakened from *-o*, as *inermis* and *inermus, etc.* Sometimes in substantives the Nom. shows *ës* instead of *s*, as *caedës* and *caedis, etc.*

**-io, -ia** (N. *iu-s, ia, iu-m*).—1. This is the principal secondary suffix, and is found in many combinations; but it is also found as primary in substantives : M. *gen-iu-s, genius*; *glad-iu-s, sword*; F. *pluv-iu-s, rain*; *tib-iu-s, fife*; N. *fol-iu-m, leaf*; *od-iu-m, hate*; and in adjectives *ex-im-iu-s, pre-eminent (taken out)*; *sano-iu-s, wounded*, *pluv-iu-s, rainy*.

2. The suffix occurs as secondary in the forms *-lio (-eo)*, *-io, eo, io, ie*, in a large number of Gentile names : *Flev-ieu-s, Flav-ieu-s*; *Luo-ieu-s, Loo-ieu-s, Luo-ieu-s*; similar to these are those in *ed-iu-s, id-iu-s, id-iu-s, -il-iu-s, ll-iu-s*, as *Llo-id-iu-s, Corn-dl-iu-s, Llo-ll-iu-s*. Also in some adjectives of material in *eu-s*, as *aur-eu-s, golden*; *ferr-eu-s, iron*. It occurs, moreover, in many compound adjective and substantive endings, to be discussed later, and in many abstract substantives in *-antia, -entia*, as *abundantia, abundance*; *sci-entia, knowledge, etc.*

NOTE.—Instead of *-ia*, we find *-ea* in a few words : *cav-ea, cage*; *cochl-ea, snail*.

**-u** (N. *u-s, u*). M. *arc-u-s, bow*; *curr-u-s, chariot*; F. *aso-u-s, needle*; *man-u-s, hand*; N. *gel-u-s, frost*; *gen-u-s, knee*. Secondary is *soer-u-s, mother-in-law*. This suffix is found occasionally in adjectives compounded with *manus*, as *centi-manus, hundred-handed*; also in the form *-ui* in a few adjectives, as *ten-ui-s, thin*.

NOTE.—The suffix *-o* often alternates with *-u*.

**-uo, -ua** (N. *uo-s, ua, uo-m*). Primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *eq-uo-s, horse*; F. *al-vo-s, belly*; N. *ar-vo-m, field*; *par-vo-s, small*. Secondary : M. *patr-uo-s, uncle*; *cer-vo-s, stag*; F. *ian-na, gate*; *cern-uo-s, stooping*; *aestiv-uo-s, of the summer*.

NOTE.—*Ivo-s* is found in *voc-ivo-s* (*vacuous*), *rediv-ivo-s, etc.* *-yo* is weakened to *-vi* in *pel-vi-s, basin*.

### 185. Suffixes with Cetturals.

1. **-co, -ca** (N. *cu-s, ca, cu-m*). This forms both adjectives and substantives, but is usually secondary. As primary it is found in : *lo-cu-s, jest*; *lo-ca-s, place*; as secondary in : *medi-cu-s, physician*; *ped-i-co, fetter*. Adjectives are primary : *cas-cu-s, very old*; or secondary : *civili-cu-s, civic*.

2. **-aco, -aca** (N. *scu-s, sca, scu-m*). Primary in *clo-sca, sewer*; secondary in *ver-ben-sca, vervain*, and in adjectives, as *mer-scu-s, pure*.

3. **-ico, -ica** (N. *icu-s, ica, icu-m*). In substantives, such as : M. *umbil-icu-s, navel*; F. *lect-icu, litter*; *urt-ica, nettle*. In adjectives, as : *am-icu-s, friendly, etc.*

4. **-ūco, -ūca** (N. *ūcu-s, ūca, ūcu-m*). Primary in the adjectives : *cad-ūcu-s, tottering*; *mand-ūcu-s, voracious*; secondary in *alb-ūcu-s, as-phodel*; and in substantives in *-ūca*, as *fr-ūca, caterpillar*; *verr-ūca, wart*.

**Note.**—Similar is the secondary suffix *-inquo* in *long-inquo-s, distant*; *pro-pinquo-s, near*.

5. **-āc** (N. *āx*) forms substantives and adjectives; the latter expressing *inclination*. Primary : *aud-āx, bold*; *fug-āx, fleeing*. Secondary : F. *forn-āx, furnace*; *lim-āx, snail*; *vér-āx, truthful*.

6. **-ēc** (N. *āx*) is found in *verv-āx, wether*.

7. **-ic** (N. *āx*) forms a number of substantives that are mainly *masculine*, except names of *plants* and *trees*. Primary : M. *ap-āx, point*; *cort-āx, bark*; F. *il-āx, holm-oak*. Secondary : F. *imbr-āx, gutter-tile*.

8. **-īc** (N. *āx*) forms substantives and adjectives. Primary : F. *rād-īx, root*; *fat-īx, happy*. Secondary : *corn-īx, crow*, and feminines in *-īrix*.

9. **-ōc** (N. *āx*) is found in the substantive *cel-āx, yacht*, and in a number of adjectives : *atr-āx, ferocious*.

10. **-āceo, -ācea** (N. *āceu-s, ācea, āceu-m*), forms adjectives of *material* or *likeness* : *erst-āceu-s, chalk-like*.

**Note.**—Notice also the suffix *-ēo-ō*, especially in proper names : *Vér-ācea*.

11. **-ic-eo, -ic-to** (N. *icu-s, etc., icu-s, etc.*), form adjectives indicating *material*, the latter suffix also some indicating *relation* : *palm-icu-s, of palms*; *tribūn-icu-s, proceeding from a tribune*.

12. **-īc-to** (N. *īdu-s, etc.*) is found in *nov-īdu-s, new*, and in words of participial meaning coming from forms in *-to*, as *advent-īdu-s, stranger*.

13. **-ūc-eo, -ūc-to**, occurs in *pann-ūceu-s* or *pann-ūciu-s*.

14. **-ci-n-o** and **ci-n'-to** occur (perhaps) in *vāti-cinu-s, prophetic*, and in some secondary neuter substantives, which denote *action* or *event*, as *latrū-cinu-m, robbery*.

15. **-cro, -cri, -clo, -culo** (N. *cer, cris, clu-m, culu-m*) are found in some adjectives with participial force, and in a few neuter substantives indicating *instrument* or *locality*; as *ala-cer, quick*; *medio-cris, mediocre*; *peri-clum (-clu-m)*, *danger*; *ba-culu-m, stick* (also m.); *sepul-crum, grave*. Also the primary *rādi-culu-s, laughable*, and the secondary *anni-culu-s, aged*.

## 186.

## Suffixes with a Dental.

1. **-d** (N. (d)e). Substantives only : *frau-s, cheatery; mercē-s, pay; custō-s, guard.*

2. **-do, -di** (N. du-s, etc., di-e). A secondary suffix used especially for the formation of adjectives : *frig-i-du-s, cold; vir-i-dis, blooming.*

3. **-to (-so)** (N. tu-s, ta, tu-m). This forms substantives and adjectives, and is both primary and secondary. Primary : M. *cub-i-tu-s, elbow; dig-i-tus, finger*; also substantives in -ta after Greek analogy : *poē-ta, poet; F. has-ta, spear; am-i-ta, aunt; N. lu-tu-m, mud; tē-tum, roof; ap-tu-s, fit; bē-tu-s, blessed.* Secondary : M. *nau-ta, sailor; F. iuven-ta, youth; N. dense growths in ȳ-tu-m: frutio-ȳ-tu-m, copse; iū-tu-s, just; and passive adjectives like barb-ȳ-tus, bearded.*

4. **-ti (-st) [N. tis (sis)]** forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *fus-ti-s, club; cas-ti-s, hunting-net; F. cu-ti-s, skin; si-ti-s, thirst; for-ti-s, brave; mi-ti-s, mild.* Secondary : (1) in adjectives and substantives indicating *home, origin*, usually preceded by *s, l*, more rarely *t*: Camer-s (Camer-ti-s), from *Camerinum; Arpinī-s (Arpinī-ti-s), of Arpinum; nostrī-s, from our country; (2) in the form -āni (for ent-ti) in adjectives of *origin and locality: Sidli-āni-s, from Sicily; castr-āni-s, belonging to a camp.**

5. **-t** (N. (t)e) forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *com-e-s, companion; dēn-s, tooth; F. qui-ȳ-s, real; ar-s, art; locupl-ȳ-s, wealthy;* with preceding e : *div-e-s, rich.* Note also the Particles in -ns. Secondary : M. *ȳl-e-s, bird; equ-e-s, horseman.*

6. **-ento-** (N. -entu-s, etc.) forms substantives and adjectives ; the latter are participial in nature. M. *v-entu-s, wind; F. pol-enta, cluster; N. ungu-entu-m, salve; crū-entu-s, bloody.* Secondary adjectives : *gradil-entu-s, slender; and by false analogy corporul-entu-s, corpulent, and the like.*

7. **-tāt, -tūt** (M. ts-s, tu-s), forms secondary feminine abstracts and collectives : *div-i-ts-s, citizenship; liber-tāt-s, freedom; iuven-tūt-s, youth; virtūt-s, manliness.*

8. **-tio, -tia, -tiē** (N. tiu-m, tia, tiē-s), likewise form abstracts and collectives, some neuter, most masculine : *servi-tiu-m, slavery; molli-tia and molli-tiē-s, gentleness, etc.*

NOTES.—1. In *in-i-tiu-m, beginning*, and *spa-tiu-m, room*, the suffix is primary.

2. Many roots form various derivatives of similar meaning, thus : *dīr-i-tia, dīr-i-tiē-s, dīr-i-ts-s, hardness, etc.*

9. **-ti-co** (N. ti-cu-s, etc.) forms secondary adjectives signifying *pertaining to : domes-ticu-s, domestic; aquā-ticu-s, aquatic.*

**Norm.**—In such substantives as *cantil-eu-m*, *triti-o-um*, the ending *-eo* has been added to a participial form in *-to* (*canto*, *trito*).

10. *-ter* forms primary substantives of *kinship*; as, *pa-ter*, etc. Different in formation is *soror*, which, like *ux-or*, has no feminine ending.

11. *-tor (-sor)*, F. *-tric* (N. *tor*, *trix*), form substantives of *agency*, those in *trix* being all secondary: *aud-i-tor*, *hearer*; *vénit-trix*, *huntress*; *-tor* is secondary in *gladiá-tor*, etc.

12. *-tūro-*, *-tūr-a* (N. *tūru-s*, etc.), forms participles in *tūru-s*, as *amā-tūr-u-s*, and feminine substantives denoting *activity* or *office*: *cultūr-a*, *cultivation*; *cen-sūr-a*, *censorship*.

13. *-tōr-io (-sōr-io)* (N. *tōriu-s*, etc.), form neuter substantives of *place* and *instrument*, and adjectives denoting that which *pertains to the actor*: *audi-tōr-iu-m*, *lecture hall*; *elef-tōr-iu-s*, *pertaining to a dice-player*.

14. *-tro*, *-tra* (N. *tra*, *tru-m*), forms substantives, mostly neuter, of *means*: *arā-tru-m*, *plow*; *fenes-tra* (f.), *window*. From words like *mōn-e-tru-m*, *monster*, come by false analogy those in *-ster*, as *pin-aster*, *wild pine*.

15. *-tero*, *-tera* (N. *ter*, *tra*, *tru-m*) forms comparatives: *al-ter*, *other*; *dex-ter*, *right*; *nos-ter*, *our*; perhaps also adjectives of *relation*, *appurtenance*, or *locality* in *-ter* (G. *strix*), such as: *palūs-ter* (= *palud-ter*), *swampy*; *eques-ter*, *equestrian*; *campes-ter*, *champaign*; *tarres-ter*, *of the earth*, *terrestrial*.

16. *-trīno*, *-trīna* (N. *trīna*, *trīnu-m*), forms substantives of *activity* (f.), or of *locality* (f., n.): *doo-trīna*, *instruction*; *pīs-trīna*, *bakery*; *pīs-trīnu-m*, (*pounding*) *mill*.

17. *-tīli-* (-*sīli*) (N. *tīli-s*, *tile*) forms primary adjectives of *capacity* and *adaptation*, and with preceding & secondary adjectives of *relation* or *belonging*: *duo-tīli-s*, *ductile*; *mis-allī-s*, *missile*; *aquā-tīli-s*, *belonging to the water*.

18. *-ter-no* (N. *ternu-s*, etc.) forms adjectives indicating *time*: *he-ternu-s*, *of yesterday*.

19. *-tur-no* (N. *turnu-s*, etc.) forms substantives and adjectives indicating *continuance*, from which come proper names: *sc̄-turnu-s*, *Vol-turnu-s*, *tac-i-turnu-s*, *silent*.

20. *-tīno*, *-tīno* (N. *tinu-s*, *tinu-s*, etc.), forms adjectives of *time*, the latter also of *place*: *crīs-tinu-s*, *of to-morrow*; *intes-tinu-s*, *inner*, *intestine*; *mātū-tinu-s*, *of early morning*.

21. *-tu (-su)* (N. *tu-s*, *su-s*) forms substantives of *action* and its *result*: *adven-tu-s*, *arrival*; *cur-su-s*, *course*; *or-tu-s*, *rising*.

22. *-ā-tu* (N. *ā-tu-s*) forms secondary substantives of *office*: *cōsul-ā-tu-s*, *consulship*; *sen-ā-tu-s*, *senate*.

## 187.

## Suffixes with a Labial.

1. **-bo, -ba** (N. *bu-s*, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives : M. *mor-bu-s*, *disease*; F. *bar-ba*, *beard*; N. *ver-bu-m*, *word*; *pro-bu-s*, *up-right*.

2. **-bro, -bra** (N. *bra*, *bru-m*), forms substantives indicating *means* or *instrument*. Primary : F. *dol-bra*, *cell*; *li-bra*, *balance*; *ter-e-bra*, *borer*; N. *ari-bru-m*, *sieve*. Secondary : *candēl-bra-m*, *candlestick*.

NOTE.—Very rare are masculines; as, *fa-ber*, *wright*; *Mulci-ber*, *Vulcan*.

3. **-bulo, -bula** (N. *bul-s*, *bulu-m*), form substantives : F. *fl-bula*, *tale*; *fl-bula* (*fig-*), *brooch*; N. *p̄-bulu-m*, *fodder*; *sta-bulu-m*, *stall*.

4. **-bill** (N. *bili-s*) forms adjectives, mostly of *passive meaning* in classical prose : *am̄-bili-s*, *lovable*; *nō-billi-s*, *noble*; *fl̄-bili-s*, *weeping*.

## 188.

## Suffixes with an original S.

1. **-is** (N. *is*, G. *er-is*) forms a few substantives : *vñm-is* (also *vñm-er*), *plowshare*; *cin-is*, *ashes*; *pulv-is*, *dust*; *cucum-is*, *cucumber*.

2. **-us** (N. *us*, G. *er-is*, or *is*) forms primary and secondary neuter substantives. Primary : *feod-us*, *bond*; *gen-us*, *race*; *temp-us*, *time*. Secondary : *peot-us*, *breast*; *fun-us*, *funeral*.

NOTE.—Some such words have become monosyllabic, as *aes*, *iſis*, *rūs*.

3. **-ōs (-ōr)** (N. *ōs*, or, G. *ōr-is*) forms many primary and a few secondary masculine abstracts. Primary : *fl-ōs*, *flower*; *am-or*, *love*. Secondary : *aegr-or*, *sickness*.

NOTE.—Noteworthy are M. *lep-us*, *hare*; F. *arb-ōs*, *tree* (45 n.); Ven-us (G. *Ven-iris*), and the adjective *vet-us* (G. *veteris*), *old*.

4. **-es** (N. *es*, *śs*, G. *is*, *ī*) forms a few substantives of the third and fifth declension : *vät-es*, *bard*; *fam-śs*, *hunger*; *pl̄sh-śs*, *people*.

5. **-ōr-o** (N. *ōru-s*, etc.) forms secondary adjectives, as : *can-ōru-s*, *sounding*; *hon-ōru-s*, *honorable*; and a few substantives, as : *aur-ōra*, *morning*; *Flōra*, *etc.*

## 189.

## Suffixes with a Liquid.

1. **-lo, -la** (N. *lu-s*, etc.), forms many feminine and neuter, and a few masculine substantives : M. *mä-lu-s*, *mast*; F. *pi-la*, *pillar*; N. *cae-lu-m* (= *caed-lu-m*), *chisel*; *fl̄-lu-m*, *thread*.

2. **-i-lo, -i-la** (N. *lu-s*, etc.), forms primary and secondary sub-

stantives and adjectives. M. *sib-i-lu-s*, *missing*; N. *cae-in-m* (= *cav-i-lu-m*, *hollow*), *heaven*; *nub-i-lu-s*, *cloudy*.

3. (-o-lo), -u-lo, -u-la (N. ulu-s, etc.), form primary and secondary substantives, most of which indicate *instrument*, and primary adjectives indicating *repeated action* or *tendency*: M. *ang-u-lu-s*, *corner*; *oc-u-lu-s*, *eye*; F. *rég-u-la*, *rule*; *tag-u-la*, *tile*; N. *iac-u-lu-m*, *javelin*; *spec-u-lu-m*, *mirror*; *bib-u-lu-s*, *bibulous*; *créd-u-lu-s*, *quick to believe*; *quer-u-lu-s*, *complaining*; *caer-u-lu-s*, *blue* (secondary), and *caer-u-leu-s*. Also *fam-u-lu-s*, *servant*, and the extension *fam-illi-s*, *family*.

4. -li (N. li-s, le) occurs in the substantive: M. *cau-li-s*, *stalk*; and in adjectives: *subti-li-s*, *fine*; *incid-li-s*, *cut in*. Secondary in *fids-li-s*, *faithful*.

5. -i-li (N. ili-s, ile) forms a few substantives and many adjectives indicating *passive capacity*: F. *strig-i-li-s*, *scraper*; N. *teg-i-ja*, *roof*. Also *vig-il*, *watchman*; *ag-i-li-s*, *readily moved*; *doo-illi-s*, *teachable*. Secondary in *hum-i-li-s*, *low*, and in the terminations *-tilli-s*, *-illi-s*.

6. -olo, -ola (after e, i, v), -ulo, -ula (N. olu-s, ulu-s, etc.), form diminutives: *alve-olu-s*, *little belly*; *filii-olu-s*, *little son*; *riv-ulu-s*, *brooklet*; *rég-ulu-s*, *chief*; *vōo-ula*, *voice*; *grān-ulu-m*, *grain*; *alb-ulu-s*, *whitish*; *parv-olu-s*, *small*.

7. -ello, -ella (N. ellu-s, etc.), forms diminutives after l and by assimilation after n, r: *pop-ellu-s*, *tribelet*; *tab-el-la*, *tablet*; *pu-el-la*, *girl*; *bel-lu-s* (*bonus*), *good*; *miser-illu-s* (*miser*), *wretched*. Doubly diminutive are *catal-lu-s*, *puppy*; *cistel-la*, *basket*; *capital-lu-m*, *head*.

8. -illo, -illa (N. illu-s, etc.), forms diminutives, and is formed like *ello*, but usually after a preceding i: *pulv-illu-s*, *small cushion*; *pistrilla*, *small mill*; *sig-illu-m*, *small image*; *bov-illu-s*, *bovine*. Also *codic-illu*, *billlets*; *paux-illu-s*, *sight*; *pus-illu-s*, *tiny*.

9. -olla is found in *cor-öll-la*, *wreath*; *öll-la*, *jar* (*aula*).

10. -ullo, -ulla, occurs in *tl-lu-s*, *any*. *Sul-la* (= *sur-u-la*), *Catul-lu-s* (*Catin-lus*), *homullus* (= *homōn-lu-s*).

11. (-co-lo), -cu-lo (N. culu-s, etc.), forms diminutives, especially after consonantal and e, i, u stems: M. *fids-culu-s*, *floweret*; *homun-culu-s*, *manikin* (irregular); *avu-n-culu-s*, *uncle* (*mother's brother*, irregular); F. *spé-cula*, *little hope*; *auri-cula*, *ear*; *arbuc-cula*, *little tree* (irregular); *domu-n-cula*, *little house* (irregular); N. *cor-culu-m*, *(dear) heart*; *minus-culu-m*, *little gift*. Adjectives are *dulci-culu-s*, *sweetish*, and especially diminutives from comparative stems, *melius-culu-s*.

12. -cello (-cillo) (N. cellu-s, etc.) stands to *culo* as *ello* to *ulo*: M. *peni-cillu-s*, *-m*, *painter's brush*; *ös-cillu-m*, *little mouth*; *molli-cellu-s*, *softish*.

13. **-uleo** (N. *ullen-s*) forms substantives that were originally adjectival : *actullen-s, sting*.

14. **-āli, -ārt** (N. *āli-s, āri-s, etc.*), form secondary adjectives, some of which are substantivized in the neuter, and a few substantives : *vēn-ālis, venal; mort-āli-s, mortal; singul-āri-s, unique; vulg-āri-s, common; can-āli-s, canal; animal, living being; calo-ar, spur*.

15. **-ēla (-ella)** forms primary and secondary substantives, most of which indicate *action* : *loqu-ēla (loqu-ella), talking; cand-ēla, candle; cūstōd-ēla, watching*.

16. **-ēli** (N. *ēli-s, etc.*) forms secondary substantives and adjectives : *cardu-ēli-s, linnet; crūd-ēli-s, cruel*.

REMARK.—A further development of **-ēli** is **-ēlia**, **-ēlia** : *Aur-ēli-us, contum-ēli-a, contumely*.

17. **-īli** (N. *īli-s, īle*) forms secondary substantives and adjectives : M. *aed-īli-s, aedile*; N. *cub-īle, couch; sed-īle, seat; civ-īli-s, civic; eri-īli-s, master's*.

18. **-mo, -ma** (N. *mu-s, etc.*), forms primary substantives and primary and secondary adjectives. The feminine substantives express usually the *result of an action*: M. *an-i-mu-s, spirit; cal-mu-s, cal-a-mu-s, stalk; F. fī-ma, fame; flam-ma, flame; N. ar-ma, arms; pī-mum, fruit*. Adjectives, primary: *al-mu-s, fostering; fīr-mu-s, strong*. Secondary: *op-i-mu-s, fat; patr-i-mu-s, mātr-i-mu-s, with father, mother, living*.

19. **-men** (N. *mem, G. min-is*) forms primary, neuter substantives, mostly indicating *activity or results of activity* : *fg-men, train; flū-men, river; but M. fīs-men, priest*.

20. **-men-to** (N. *mentu-m*) forms substantives (mostly primary) indicating *instrument* : *al-i-mentu-m, nourishment; tor-mentu-m, torture*.

NOTES.—1. **-men** and **-mentum** are often formed from the same radical. In that case **mentu-m** is the more common : *teg-u-men, teg-u-mentu-m, covering*.

2. Rare and archaic are feminines in **-menta**: *armenta = armentu-m*.

3. **-menti** occurs in **gēmenti-s** (f.), *seed = sēmen* (n.).

21. **-met** (N. *mes, G. mit-is*) forms a few masculine substantives : *trē-mes, path; fī-mes, fuel; li-mes, cross-path*.

22. **-mino, -mina, -mno, -mna** (N. *minu-s, etc.*), form substantives : M. *ter-minu-s, boundary; F. al-u-mna, foster-daughter; fē-mina, woman; N. da-mnu-m, loss*.

23. **-mōn** (N. *mō, G. mōn-is*) forms primary and secondary masculine substantives : *pul-mō, lung; ser-mō, discourse; tē-mō, pole (of a chariot)*.

24. **-mōn-io, -mōn-ia** (N. *mōnia, mōniu-m*), forms primary and

secondary substantives. Primary : F. al-i-mōnia, *nourishment*; quer-i-mōnia, *complaint*; N. al-i-mōniu-m, *nourishment*. Secondary: F. scri-mōnia, *tartness*; N. mātr-i-mōniu-m, *marriage*.

25. *-mōr* forms primary masculine substantives : cro-mor, *broth*; rū-mor, *rumor*.

26. *-mic* (N. *max*, G. *mic-is*) forms a few substantives : cf-max, *bug*; pū-max, *pumice*.

27. a. *-no, -na* (N. *nu-s, etc.*), forms primary and secondary adjectives ; the primary are participial in meaning ; the secondary indicate material or *relation*, and occasionally *locality* ; when added to local comparatives and adverbs, *distributive numerals* are also formed with this suffix. Primary : dig-nu-s, *worthy*; plē-nu-s, *full*. Secondary : diur-nu-s, *daily*; frāter-nu-s, *brotherly*; acer-nu-s, *maple*; ex-ter-nu-s, *outer*; bi-ni, *two each*.

*Note*.—Adjectives denoting material have also *-neō* (= n'-eo), as ae-nu-s, *brass*; illig-neu-s, quer-neu-s.

b. *-no, -na* (N. *nu-s, etc.*), forms primary and a few secondary substantives. Primary : M. fur-nu-s, *oven*; pīg-nu-s, *fat*; F. et-na, *meal*; lk-na, *wool*. N. dō-nu-m, *gift*; rēg-nu-m, *kingdom*. Secondary : M. tribū-nu-s, *tribune*; F. fortū-na, *fortune*; albur-nu-m, *sap-wood*.

*Note*.—This suffix is extended in *pecū-nia, money*.

28. *-bundo-, -cundo* (N. *bundu-s, etc.*, *cundu-s, etc.*), form adjectives of *activity* : cunct-ē-bundu-s, *delaying*; fl-cundu-s, *eloquent*.

29. *-ni* (N. *ni-s*) forms primary substantives and adjectives : am-ni-s, *stream*; pē-ni-s, *tail*; pī-ni-s, *bread*; im-mē-ni-s, *wild*; sēg-ni-s, *lazy*.

30. *-ino, -ina* (N. *inu-s, etc.*), forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. dom-inu-s, *lord*; F. pīg-in-a, *page*; ho-inu-s, *curled upwards*. Secondary : M. ped-ic-inu-s, *foot*; F. fīe-in-a, *basket*; N. sūo-inu-m, *amber*; face-inu-s, *making dredges*.

*Note*.—The suffix is extended in the proper name *Lic-iniu-s*.

31. *-āno, -āna* (N. *ānu-s, etc.*), forms secondary adjectives, some of which are substantivized. They indicate *origin* or *appurtenance* ; decum-ānu-s, *belonging to the tenth*; hūm-ānu-s, *human*; alt-ānu-s, *sea-wind*. Primary in *Volo-ānu-s, Di-āna*.

32. *-ān-eo* (N. *āneu-s, etc.*) forms primary and secondary adjectives. Primary : cōsent-āneu-s, *harmonious*. Secondary : subit-āneu-s, *sudden*. This suffix becomes *ānio* (= ān'io) in proper names : Afr-āniu-s, Fund-āniu-s.

33. *-ēno, -ēna* (N. *ēnu-s, etc.*), forms secondary substantives and

adjectives : M. Vihidi-*šnu-s*; F. cat-*šna*, *chain*; hab-*šna*, *rain*; N. ven-*šnu-m*, *poison*; eg-*šnu-s*, *needy*; ali-*šnu-s*, *strange*.

NOTE.—This is extended to *šn-on* in toll-*šnō*, (*well*) *sweep*.

34. *-ino*, *-ina* (N. *inu-s*, etc.), forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. cat-*inu-s*, -*m*, *dish*; F. rap-*ina*, *rapine*; ru-*ina*, *ruin*; nec-op-*inu-s*, *unexpected*. Secondary : M. pulv-*inu-s*, *cushion*; sal-*inu-m*, *salt-cellar*, and many feminines, especially those denoting *shops* and *factories*; reg-*ina*, *queen*; cul-*ina*, *kitchen*; offo-*ina*, *workshop*; šgn-*inu-s*, *belonging to a lamb*; div-*inu-s*, *divine*.

NOTE.—An extension of this suffix is found in rlo-*inu-m*, *veil*.

35. *-en* (N. *en*, G. *in-is*) forms a few substantives : M. pect-*en*, *comb*; N. glut-*en*, *glue*.

36. *-ōn* (N. *ō*, G. *in-is*) forms a few substantives : M. card-*ō*, *hinge*; marg-*ō*, *rim*; ūrd-*ō*, *row*; F. a-sperg-*ō*, *sprinkling*; virg-*ō*, *maid*; car-*ō*, *flesh*.

NOTE.—1. Noteworthy is hom-*ō*, hom-in-*is*, *man*.

2. This suffix occurs very commonly in compounds forming feminine abstracts :

—ēdōn (N. *ēdō*), dulo-*ēdō*, *sweetness*; —idōn (N. *idō*), cup-*idō*, *desire*; form-*idō*, *scar*; —ūdōn (N. *ūdō*), tēst-*ūdō*, *tortoise*; —tūdōn (N. *tūdō*), segri-*tūdō*, *sickness*; —āgōn (N. *āgō*), im-*āgō*, *image*; —ūgōn (N. *ūgō*), aer-*ūgō*, *rust*; —igōn (N. *igō*), cal-*igō*, *thick darkness*; or-*igō*, *origin*, etc.

37. *-ōn* (N. *ō*, G. *ōnis*) forms primary and secondary substantives. The primary are nouns of *agency* : combib-*ō*, *fellow-drinker*; prae-c-*ō*, *herald*; ti-r-*ō*, *recruit*. The secondary indicate often the possession of some bodily or mental peculiarities ; kle-*ō*, *dice-player*; centuri-*ō*, *centurion*.

38. *-iōn* (N. *iō*) forms a few masculine and many feminine primary and secondary substantives. Primary : M. pīg-*iō*, *dagger*; F. opin-*iō*, *opinion*; reg-*iō*, *region*. Secondary : M. pell-*iō*, *furrier*; vespertil-*iō*, *bat*; F. com-min-*iō*, *communion*.

NOTE.—Especially frequent are feminine abstracts in t-*iō* (s-*iō*) : amb-i-*iō*, *ambition*; op-pūgnā-ti-*iō*, *siege*. Noteworthy are the secondary diminutives, homunc-*iō*, senec-*iō*.

39. *-ōno*, *-ōna* (N. *ōniu-s*, *ōna*), forms few primary and many secondary substantives ; the masculines indicate *agents*, especially *person employed* : M. col-*ōniu-s*, *settler*; F. mātr-*ōna*, *matron*; Bell-*ōna*.

40. *-ōnio*, *-ōnia* (N. *ōniu-s*, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives : M. Fav-*ōniu-s*, *zephyr*; Pomp-*ōniu-s*, etc.; caup-*ōniu-s*, *belonging to a host*. Neuters indicate the *trade* or *shop* : full-*ōniu-m*, *fuller's shop*.

41. *-ro*, *-ra* (N. (e)r, -*ra*, ru-*m*), forms primary substantives and adjectives : M. ag-e-*r*, *field*; cap-e-*r*, *goat*; mü-ru-*s*, *wall*; F. lau-ru-*s*, *laurel*;

ser-ra, *saw*; N. flag-ru-m, *whip*; lab-ru-m, *lip*; clā-ru-s, *bright*; pū-rus, *clean*.

Often a short vowel precedes : M. num-e-rus, *number*; F. cam-era, *vault*; N. fūg-eru-m, *measure of land*. So hil-arn-a, *joyous*; lib-er, *free*; cam-urn-a, *vaulted*; sat-ur, *full*.

Notes.—1. Extensions are Mer-curiu-s, tug-uriu-m, *hat*.

2. In a number of primary substantives and adjectives simple r is preceded by a short vowel : M. late-r, *tile*; kñs-er, *goose*; F. mul-i-er, *woman*; N. ac-er, *maple*; vēr (= ves-er), *spring*; cīc-ur, *tame*.

42. -rī (N. -(e)-r, -ris, G. ris) forms substantives and adjectives : M. imb-e-r, *rain-storm*; sc-e-r, *sharp*; funeb-ri-s, *funeral*; perhaps celeb-er, *thronged*.

43. -dro forms adjectives, as : av-đru-s, *greedy*; am-đru-s, *bitler*.

44. -āri, -āli (N. āri-s, āli-s, etc.), forms secondary substantives and adjectives ; -āri when the stem has l, -āli when it has an r : pugill-ārē-s, *tablets*; primipil-āri-s, *one who has been primipilus*; some neuters in ar (from -are) : calo-ar, *spur*; ex-em-pł-ar, *pattern*; pulvin-ar, *(sacred) couch*; auxili-āri-s, *auxiliary*; milit-āri-s, *military*; cōsul-āri-s, *consular*.

45. -ārio, -āria (N. āriu-s, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives. There are sometimes collateral forms in -āri-s. The substantives, when masculine, indicate *artisans*; when feminine, *business* or *profession* ; when neuter, the *place* where the work is carried on. M. argent-āriu-s, *money-changer*; ferr-āriu-s, *iron-worker*; F. argent-āria, *silver mine, bank or banking*; N. api-āriu-m, *beehive*; pōm-āriu-m, *apple orchard*.

46. -ēro (N. āri-s, etc.) forms sev-āriu-s, *earnest*, and the substantive gal-āru-s, -m, *bonnet*.

47. -ūri forms the substantive sev-āriu-s, *axe*, and by extension pān-āria, *want*.

48. The letter r appears often in combination with other suffixes, as : -er-oo in lup-erou-s, *Pan*; nov-erca, *step-mother*; -er-to in lae-ertu-s, *arm*; lae-ertu-s, *a lizard*; -er-bo in ac-erbū-s, *sour*; sup-erbū-s, *proud*; -er-vo in ae-ervō-s, *heap*; cat-erva, *crowd*; -er-na in cav-erna, *hollow*; lu-erna, *lamp*; -ter-na in lan-ter-na, *lantern*; -ur-no in alb-urnu-s, *white fish*; lab-urnu-m, *laburnum*.

## 190. FORMATION OF VERBS.

1. Primitives are confined to the Third Conjugation, to some forms of the Irregular verbs, and to some Inchoatives. The various stem-formations are shown in 133.

2. Derivatives comprise the verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth

Conjugations, and some verbs of the Third Conjugation. They are all (except the Inchoatives and the Meditatives) formed with the suffix *io*, *ie* (*yo*, *ye*), which is added either to simple verbal stems, or to noun (16) stems already existing or presupposed. The *i* in *io*, *ie*, contracts with the preceding vowels *ī*, *ē*, *ī*, *ū*, leaving the ordinary forms of the regular conjugations. Certain categories of these verbs have obtained special names according to their various meanings :

The *Causatives*, formed by a change in the stem-vowel.

The *Desideratives*, formed by the addition of *-io* to *nōmina agentis* in *-tor*; afterwards a desiderative force was associated with the combination *-tor-io* (-tar-*io*), and it was applied indiscriminately.

The *Frequentatives* come originally probably from participial stems in *-to*; Latin developed also the suffix *-ito*; further, this being added again to *-to* gave rise to *-tito* (-site).

The *Inchoatives*, formed by a special suffix, *-eo* (asko), are treated in conjugation as primitives belonging to the Third Conjugation.

The *Meditatives* have not been explained.

**NOTE.**—Theoretically the *Verbalia* are all *Dēnōminativa*, but owing to the wide working of Analogy, it has been impossible in many cases, as in *amī-re*, *monī-re*, to discover an original noun; while in other cases, as the verbal is formed from a part of a denominative verb, it is convenient to retain the division.

### 191. A. *Verbālia* (derived from verb-stems, 190, N.):

1. *Frequentatives* or *Intensives*, denoting *repeated* or *intense Action*. These verbs end in *-tare* (-ſſare), *-itare*, *-titare* (-ſſitare), and follow the supine stem (perfect passive form).

(a) *cantare*, *sing*; compare *cāntō* (*cantum*): *cursātare*, *run to and fro*; compare *currō* (*cursum*): *dictātare*, *dictate*; compare *dicō* (*dictum*): *dormītare*, *be sleepy*; compare *dormītō* (*dormitum*): *habitātare*, *keep, dwell*; compare *habeo* (*habitum*): *pollicitātī*, *promise freely*; compare *pollicēor* (*pollicitus*): *pulsātare*, *beat*; compare *pellō* (*pulsum*).

(b) *agitātare* (*ago*), *nōscitātare* (*nōscō*), *sciscitātare* (*sciso*), *visitātare* (*visō*), *vocitātare* (*voo*), *volitātare* (*volō*).

(c) *cantitātare* (*cantātare*), *dictitātare* (*dictātare*), *curritātare* (*cursātare*).

**NOTES.**—1. The simple verb presupposed by the frequentative or intensive is often out of use, as in the case of : *gus-tātare*, *taste*; *hor-tātī*, *exhort*. The frequentative or intensive in *-tare* is often out of use : *lētitātare*, *repeatedly or zealously agitate* (no *lētātare*), from *ago*, *lētum*: *lētitātare*, *read carefully* (no *lētātare*), from *legō*, *lētum*.

2. The verbs of the Fourth Conjugation form no frequentatives except *dormītō*, *sleep*, *dormītō*; *mūniō*, *fortify*, *mūnitō* (rare); *salītō*, *leap*, *salītō*; *apertō*, *lay bare*, and *opertō*, *cover*, and compounds of *ventō* (*veniō*, *come*).

2. *Inchoatives* indicate *entrance upon an action*. For their formation see 133, V.

3. *Desideratives* denote *Desire* or *Tendency*. They are formed

by means of the suffix *-turiō* (-*turiō*) : *surire* (for *ed-t*), *to be sharp-set for eating, hungry*; *em-p-turire*, *to be all agog for buying*.

4. *Causatives* signify the *Effecting* of the *Condition* indicated by their original verb. They are found mainly in the Second Conjugation, and show usually a change in the stem-vowel.

*Change* : *cadere, fall*, and *caedere, fell*; *liquare, melt* (trans.), and *liquere, melt* (intr.); from root *men-* (as in *me-men-tō*) comes *monître, remind*; *needre, kill*, and *nootre, be death to*; *plaōtre, please*, and *placōtre, cause to be pleased, appease*; *sedēre, sit*, and *stidēre, settle*.

*No change* ; *fugere, flee*, and *fugāre, put to flight*; *iacere, throw*, and *iacōtre, (lie) thrown*; *pendere (hang) weigh*, and *pendōtre, hang* (intr.).

5. *Meditatives* : (verbs that look forward to an action). These end in *-essere* : *arcessere, to summon*; *capessere, to catch at*; *facessere, to do eagerly*; *incessere, to enter*; *iacessere, to irritate* (186, 8, b).

## 192. B. *Denominatives* (derived from noun-stems) :

1. These are most commonly found in the First Conjugation, even though the stem-vowel of the noun is *i* or *u*.

(a) *aervā-re, heap up* (from *aervos-s*); *aestuā-re, seethe* (*aestus-s*); *cordū-re, wreathe* (*cordōn-s*); *levā-re, lighten* (*lev-i-s*); *maculā-re, besmear* (*macula*); *nūminā-re, name* (*nōmen, nūmin-is*); *onerā-re, load* (*onus, oner-is*).

The Deponents signify *Condition, Employment* : *ancilla-rī, be maid* (*ancilla*); *aqua-rī, be a drawer of water* (*aqua*); *fūrā-rī, thief* (*fūr*); *laetā-rī, be glad* (*laetus-s*).

(b) *albā-re, be white* (*albu-s*); *fūrā-re, be in bloom* (*flēs, flōris*); *frondā-re, be in leaf* (*frōns, frondi-s*); *lūcē-re, be light* (*lūx, lūc-is*).

(c) *argē-re* (*be bright, sharp*), *prove*; *laede-re, hurt*; *mētue-re, be in fear* (*metu-s*).

(d) *cūstōdi-re, guard* (*cūstōs, cūstōd-is*); *fini-re, end* (*fini-s*); *lāni-re, soften* (*lāni-s*); *vesti-re, clothe* (*vesti-s*).

3. Noteworthy are the *Diminutives* formed by the suffix *-illare* : *st-illare, drop* (*st-illa*); *saint-illare, sparkle* (*saint-illa*); *ōso-illare, to swing* (*ōso-illum*). Similar in function but of different formation are *pullū-lare, sprout* (*pul-lus*); *fodū-lare, punch* (*fodare, dig*); *albū-lare, whiten* (*albu-s*).

NOTES.—1. The Denominatives of the First, Third, and Fourth Conjugations are regularly *transitive*, those of the Second Conjugation are regularly *intransitive*.

2. These verbs are often found only in combination with prepositions : *ab-undāre, run over, abound* (from *unda, wave*); *ac-cūsāre, accuse* (from *causa, case*); *ex-ag-gerāre, pile up* (from *agger*); *ex-stirpāre, root out* (*stirps-s*); *il-lūmināre, illumine* (from *lūmen, lūmin-is*).

## B.—Compound Words.

## I. FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS.

**193.** 1. By composition words are so put together that a new word is made with a signification of its own. The second word is regularly the fundamental word, the first the modifier.

NOTE.—Properly speaking, composition occurs only in the case of substantives, i. e., where two or more simple stems come together. In verbs, there is either juxtaposition, where the parts still retain their original force, or the combination of a verb with a preposition. Broadly speaking, however, composition applies to all combinations of words.

2. Composition is either *proper* or *improper*.

**194. Substantive.**

In *Composition Improper* there are either traces of construction or the first part is still inflected : *ē-nōrmis* = *ex nōrma*, *out of all rule*; *legis-lētor*, *lawgiver*; *Senātū-cōnsultum*, *decree of the Senate*.

Many of these compounds have gradually become inflectional : *dēll-rus* (*dē-lira*), *crazy from fear*; *ēgregius* (*ē-grege*), *distinguished (from the crowd)*; *p̄cōnsul* (*p̄cōnsule*); *trium-vir* (*from trium virum*), etc.

NOTE.—From composition we must distinguish juxtaposition. So a preposition is brought into juxtaposition with a substantive, or a substantive with a substantive : *ad-modum*, *to a degree, very*; *ob-viam*, *in the way, meeting*; *fūsūfructus*, *usu-fruct*; *Itāpīter*, *Father Jose*. Noteworthy are the *Copulative* compounds; such are compound numerals like *tin-decim*, *duo-decim*, etc., and occasional others : *su-ovētaur-illia*, *offerings of swine, sheep, and bulls*.

**195. Composition Proper.**

1. The first part of the compound may be a particle, as *ne-fār-i-n-s*, *nefarious*; *vē-sān-u-s*, *mud, out of one's sound senses*: or a substantive.

If it is a substantive—

(a) The stems in -a, -o, -u regularly weaken these vowels into i before the consonants of the second part, which i may vanish : *causidicus*, *pleader, lawyer (causa)*; *signi-fex*, *standard-bearer (signu-m)*; *corni-ger*, *horn-wearer (cornū)*; *man-cep*s (*manu- and cap-*), *one who takes in hand, contractor*. The i-stems retain i or drop it : *igni-vomu-s*, *fire-vomiting (igni-s)*; *nau-fragu-s*, *shipwrecked (nāvi-s)*.

(b) Vowel-stems drop their vowel before the vowel of the second part : *māgn-animu-s*, *great-souled*; *tin-animu-s*, *of one mind*.

(c) Consonant-stems either drop their consonants or add i: *homici-dia*, *manslayer (homin-)*; *lapi-cid-a*, *stone-cutter (lapid-)*; *mātri-cid-a*, *mother-murderer, matricide*.

NOTE.—The first part is rarely, if ever, a verb. *APULMIUS* uses the form *pōsci-nummīus*.

2. The second part of the composition is a noun : *tri-enn-iu-m, space of three years (annus)*; *miseri-cor-s, tender-hearted (cor)*.

When the second part ends in a vowel, it adapts itself, if an adjective, to changes of gender, as *flav-i-comus, yellow-haired (comus, hair)*, but more often this final vowel becomes i and the adjective follows the third declension : *tri-rēmi-s, trireme (rēmu-s, oar)*; *ab-nōrm-i-s, abnormal (nōrma, norm)*.

When the second part ends in a consonant, the last term usually undergoes no change : *bi-dān-s, two-pronged*; *simplex (sim-plo-s), simple*.

*Note.*—From genus (*G. generis*), is formed *dā-gener*.

## II. SIGNIFICATION OF COMPOUNDS.

196. Compound substantives and adjectives are divided according to their signification into two main classes : Determinative and Possessive.

In Determinative compounds one of the terms is subordinate to the other. They fall into two classes : Attributive or Appositional, and Dependent.

197. 1. *Attributive compounds.* The first part is the attribute of the second.

The first word is, (1) a substantive : *ali-pēs, wing-foot(ed)*; (2) an adjective : *māgn-animus, great-hearted*; *lāti-fundium, large estate*; (3) a numeral : *bi-enni-um (i. e., spatium), space of two years*.

2. *Dependent compounds.* In these the second word is simply limited by the other, its signification not being altered.

(a) The first word is : (1) an adjective : *meri-dis* (from *medi-dis* = *medīs dis*), *mid-day*; (2) an adverb : *bene-ficūs (well-doing), beneficent*; *male-ficūs, evil-doing*; (3) a numeral : *ter-geminus, triple*; (4) a particle : *dis-sonus, harsh-sounding*; *per-māgnus, very large*; *in-dignus, unworthy*; (5) a verb-stem : *horri-i-ficūs, horrible (horror-stirring)*.

(b) The first word gives a case relation, such as (1) the Accusative : *armi-ger = arma gerēs, armor-bearer*; *agri-cola = agrum colēs (land-tiller), husbandman*; (2) the Genitive : *sōl-stitium = sōlis statīs (sun-staying), solstice*; (3) the Locative : *aliēni-gena (born elsewhere), alien*; (4) the Instrumental : *tibi-ocēn = tibī canēs, flute-player*.

198. *Possessive Compounds* are adjectival only, and are so called because they imply the existence of a Subject possessing the quality indicated.

The first term is, (1) a substantive : *angui-manus, (having a) snake-hand (elephant)*; (2) an adjective : *flav-i-comus, (having) yellow hair*; (3) a numeral : *bi-frōns, (having) two front(s)*; (4) a particle : *dis-eors, discordant*; *in-ers, inactive*.

NOTE.—Notice that these divisions run into each other; thus *m̄ign-animus* is possessive, attributive, and dependent.

### 199. *Verb.*

In *Composition Improper* the verb is joined to a verb, substantive, or adverb. In *Composition Proper* the verb is combined with a preposition.

### 200. 1. *Composition Improper.*

(a) *Verb with verb*: This only takes place when the second part of the compound is *faciō* or *fiō* (178, n. 2). The first part of the compound is regularly an intransitive of the second conjugation: *cale-faciō*, *cale-fiō*, *warm*, *am warmed*.

(b) *Verb with substantive*: *anim-advertō* = *animum advertō*, *take notice*; *manū-mittō*, *set free*; *ūstū-capiō*, *acquire by use*.

(c) *Verb with adverb*: *bene-dicō*, *bless*; *male-dicō*, *curse*; *mālō*, *nōlō* (for *māge* (*magis*)) *voltō*, *ne- voltō*, *satis-faciō*, *satisfy*.

### 2. *Composition Proper.*

The verb combines with separable or inseparable prepositions. Compare 418, R. 3.

(a) *With inseparable prepositions*: *amb-eō*, *go about*; *am-plexor*, *en-fold*; *an-hālō*, *draw deep breath*, *pant*; *dis-currō*, *run apart*; *dir-imō*, 180, I, and 715, R. I.; *por-tendō*, *hold forth*, *portend*; *red-dō*, *give back*; *re-solvō*, *resolve*; *sē-iungō*, *separate*.

(b) *With separable prepositions*: *ab-eō*, *go away*; *ad-eō*, *come up*; *ante-currō*, *run in advance*; *com-pōndō*, *put together*; *dō-currō*, *run down*, *finish a course*; *ex-essdō*, *oversleep*; *in-clūdō*, *shut in*; *ob-dūdō*, *draw over*; *per-agrō*, *wander through*; *post-habēdō*, *keep in the background*; *prae-dicō*, *foretell*; *praeter-eō*, *pass by*; *prōd-eō*, *go forth*; *prae-vidē*, *foresee*; *sub-idō*, *put under*; *subter-fugiō*, *flee from under*; *super-sum*, *remain over*; *trāns-gredior*, *pass beyond*.

## S Y N T A X.

---

201. SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

A sentence is the expression of a thought (*sententia*) in words.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once; for the compound sentence see 472.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

*Luna fulget, The moon shines.*

*Luna* is the *subject*; *fulget*, the *predicate*.

REMARKS.—1. The Interjection (16, n. 2) and the Vocative case (28, 5) stand outside the structure of the sentence, and therefore do not enter as elements into Syntax, except that the Vocative is subject to the laws of Concord. See n. 8.

2. The Vocative differs from the Nominative in form in the second declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose.

*Almae filius Mīiae, H., O., I. 2, 48 ; son of mild Maia ! Audi tū, populus Albānus, L., I. 24, 7 ; hear thou, people of Alba !*

ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:

*ō formōse puer, nimium nē crēde colōri, V., Ec. 2, 17 ; O shapely boy ! trust not complexion all too much.*

The Vocative is commonly interjected in prose, except in highly emotional passages.

3. On the use of the Vocative of an adjective or participle in apposition, attribution, or predication, see 289, 825, n. 1.

### SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

202. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb : *su-m*, *I am* ; *docē-s*, *thou teachest* ; *scribi-t*, *he writes*.

**REMARK.**—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 114), the persons being indicated by the endings. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

**203. SUBJECT.**—The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

- REMARKS.**—1. The subj. of the Inf. is in the Accusative (343, 2).  
2. The use of the Nom. in Latin is the same as in English.

**204.** The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive :

*Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe. Ego reges tibi, [C.] ad Her., IV. 53, 60; I drove out kings. Sapiens res adversas non timet, THE SAGE does not fear adversity. Victi in servitatem rediguntur, THE VANQUISHED are reduced to slavery. Contendisse deorum est, Ov., M., IX. 6; TO HAVE STRUGGLED is honorable. Magnum beneficium [est] naturae quod necesse est mori, SEN., E.M., 101, 14; it is a great boon of nature, THAT WE MUST NEEDS DIE. Vidēs habet duas syllabas, (the word) "VIDES" has two syllables.*

**NOTES.**—1. Masculine and feminine adjectives, and to a less degree participles, are used as substantives, but with the following limitations :

(a) Many adjectives in *-arius* and *-icus* (the latter mostly Greek), designating *office* or *occupation*, and words expressing *friendship*, *kinship*, or other *relationship*, are used often as substantives both in the Sing. and the Pl. of the masculine and feminine : *aquarius*, *waterman*; *librarius*, *bookman* (*seller*, *writer*, etc.); *grammaticus*, *grammarian*; *amicus*, *friend*; *cognitus*, *kinsman*; *socius*, *partner*. Many of these have become almost wholly fixed as substantives, as *amicus*, *friend*. See 16, N. 1.

(b) Adjectives are very often used as substantives in the masc. Pl. when they designate a *class* : *pauperes*, *the poor*; *divites*, *the rich*. In the oblique cases of the Sing., this use is also not uncommon ; but in the Nom. the substantive is generally expressed : *vir bonus*, *a good man*; *mulier peregrina*, *a foreign woman*. So regularly, if used with a proper name : *Plato*, *doctissimus homini*, *the learned Plato*. Exceptions are rare and scattering in prose : *ego et subvisimus Cloerū valsumus*, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 5, 1.

(c) On the use of participles as substantives see 437, N.

(d) When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood : *cāni* (*capilli*), *gray hair*; *calida* (*aqua*), *warm water*; *dextra* (*manus*), *right hand*.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers ; in the Pl. usually in Nom. and Acc., in the Sing. in all cases, but especially in connection with prepositions : *medium*, *the mid*; *extrēmum*, *the end*; *reliquum*, *the residue*; *futurum*, *the future*; *bonum*, *good*; *bona*, *blessings, possessions*; *malum*, *evil*; *mala*, *misfortunes*. The Plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the Singular : *vēra*, *the truth*; *omnia*, *everything*.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Gen., after words of quantity or pronouns : *aliquid boni*, *something good*; *nihil malī*, *nothing bad*. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second, and even then very rarely (369, N. 1).

Usually the adjective of the Third Declension draws the adjective of the Second

into its own construction : *Quid habet ista r̄s aut laetabili aut gloriōsum?* C., *Tusc.*, i. 21, 49; *what is there to be glad of or to brag about in that?*

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word *r̄s, thing*, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders, and consequently ambiguous ; so *bonārum r̄rum*, *of blessings*, rather than *bonōrum* (masc. and neut.).

5. In Latin the Pl. of abstract substantives occur more frequently than in English ; *adventus imperiōrum*, *the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract substantives often makes them concrete : *fortitudinēs*, *gallant actions*; *formidinēs*, *bugbears*; *frāe, quarrels*.

6. Other Pl. expressions to be noted are : *nivēs*, *snow*(*flakes*); *grandinēs*, *hail*(*stones*); *pluviae*, *(streams of) rain*; *ligna*, *(logs of) wood*; *carnēs*, *pieces of meat*; *aera*, *articles of bronze*; also symmetrical parts of the human body : *cervicēs*, *neck*; *pectorēs*, *breast*.

The Pl. is freely used in poetry and in later prose : *Ötia si tollit, periſre Cupidinis arcū*, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 139; *if you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined*.

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person Pl. for the First Person Singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. It is never very common, and is not found before CICERO : *Librum ad tē dī seneccūte minimus*, C., *Cat. M.*, i, 3; *we (I) have sent you a treatise on old age*.

In poetry there is often an element of shyness ; *Sitque memor nostri neone, reſerte mihi*, Ov., *Tv.*, iv. 3, 10; *bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me among others) or no.*

8. (a) The Sing., in a collective sense, is also used for the Pl., but more rarely : *faba, beans*; *porcus, pig (meat)*; *gallina, fowl* (as articles of food); *vestis, clothing*.

(b) The use of the Sing. in designations of nationalities and divisions of troops is introduced by LIVY : *Rōmānus, the Roman forces*; *Poemus, the Carthaginians*; *hostis, the enemy*; *miles, the soldiers*; *pedes, the infantry*; *eques, the cavalry*.

**205. PREDICATE and COPULA.**—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, but in the form of an adjective or substantive, or equivalent, the so-called copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief copula is the verb *sum, I am*.

*Fortūna caeca est*, C., *Lael.*, 15, 54; *fortune is blind*. *Ūsus magister est optimus*, C., *Rab. Post.*, 4, 9; *practice is the best teacher*.

**NOTE.**—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb : *est Deus, there is a God, God exists*; *rēctē semper erunt r̄s, things will always be (go on) well*; *sic vita hominū est, C., Rosc. Am.*, 30, 84; *such is human life*; “*So runs the world away*.”

**206.** Other copulative verbs are : *vidēri, to seem*; *nāsci, to be born*; *fieri, to become*; *ēvādere, to turn out*; *creāri, to be created*; *dēligi, to be chosen*; *putāri, to be thought*; *habēri, to be held*; *dīci, to be said*; *appellāri, to be called*; *nōmināri, to be named*. Hence the rule :

Verbs of *seeming, becoming*, with the passive of verbs of

*making, choosing, showing, thinking, and calling*, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate :

. Nämō nascitur dives, SEN., *E.M.*, 20, 13; *no one is born rich*. Aristides iūtus adpellātur, *Aristides is called just*. [Servius] rēx est dēclarātus, L., I. 46, 1; *Servius was declared king*. [Thucydidēs] numquam est numeratū orātor, C., O., 9, 81; *Thucydides has never been accounted an orator*.

REMARKS.—1. With *esse*, *serve as*; *vidērī*, *seem*; *habērī*, *be held*; *dēci*, *be deemed*, and rarely with other verbs, instead of the Predicate Nom., a phrase may be employed, as : *prō* with Abl., (*in*) *locū*, *in numerū*, with Gen., etc.

Audācia prō mūrō habētur, S., C., 58, 17; *boldness is counted as a bulwark*. In *filli locū*, C., *Red. in Sen.*, 14, 35; *as a son*.

2. The previous condition is given by *ex* or *dē* and the Abl. (396, n. 2).

Ex frātē arāter factus, C., *Ph.*, III. 9, 22; *a pleader turned plowman*.

3. All copulative verbs retain the Nom. with the Inf. after auxiliary verbs (428).

Bēatus esse sine virtute nämō potest, C., *N.D.*, I. 18, 48; *no one can be happy without virtue*.

4. On the Double Acc. after Active Verbs, see 340.

NOTES.—1. The verbs mentioned, with some others, are found in good prose. Others are either poetical or unclassical, thus : *perhibērī*, *to be held*, is early ; *appārēre*, *to appear*, is poetic and post-classical for *vidērī*; *reddī* is not used for *fieri*; *sistī*, *to be set down*, is Plautine ; *manēre*, *to remain*, is late (*permanēre* once in CICERO).

2. Noteworthy is the use of *audire*, like the Greek *ἀκούειν*, *to be called*, which is confined to HORACE ; *rēque paterque audisti*, *Ep.*, I. 7, 38 ; S., II. 6, 20, just as "hear" in this sense is said to be confined to MILTON.

207. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The personal pronoun is not expressed in classical prose, unless it is emphatic, as, for example, in contrasts :

Anīmus parentēs, *We love (our) parents*. Ego rēgēs sīscī, vōs tyranīs intrōdūcīs, [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 53, 66; *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants*.

NOTE.—The insertion of the pronoun without emphasis is very common in the comic poets, and seems to have been a colloquialism. Also common in CATULLUS, SAL-LUST (as an archaism), and PETRONIUS.

208. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Impersonal Verbs are verbs in which the agent is regularly implied in the action, the subject in the predicate, so that the person is not expressed. Chief of these are :

1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather : *tonat*, *it thunders*, *the thunder thunders*, or rather, *the Thunderer thunders*; *fulget*, *fulgu-*

rat (less common), fulminat (poet.), *it lightens*; pluit (poet.), *it rains*; ningit, *it snows*, etc.

Nocte pluit tota, V., (POET. LAT. MIN., IV. 155, B.); *all night it (he, Jupiter) rains*.

NOTES.—The divine agent is sometimes expressed; so, naturally, in religious or popular language: *Iove tonante, fulgurante, C., Div., II. 18, 43; Iove fulcente, C., N.D., II. 25, 65.*

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dat. (217): vivitur, *people live*; curritur, *there is a running*; pugnatur, *there is a battle*; mihi invidetur, *I am envied*. The subject is contained in the verb itself: *sic vivitur = sic vita vivitur, such is life*; pugnatur = pugna pugnatur, *a battle is (being) fought*. In the same way explain taedet, *it wearies*; miseret, *it moves to pity*; piget, *it disgusts*; pudet, *it puts to shame*.

NOTES.—1. With all other so-called Impersonal Verbs an Inf. (429, 585) or an equivalent (528) is conceived as a subject: Non habet mihi deplorare vitam, C., Cat. M., 23, 84. Sed accidit perincommodus quod eum nūquam vidisti, C., Att., I. 17, 2.

2. Other uses coincide with the English. So the Third Person Pl. of verbs of Saying, Thinking, and Calling. Also the ideal Second Person Singular (585). To be noticed is the occasional use of *inquit, quoth he*, of an imaginary person, but not by CAESAR, SALLUST, or TACITUS: Num conoscds, inquit, Epicidrō, C., Ac., II. 32, 101; *I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus.*

**209. COPULA OMITTED.**—Est or sunt is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short statements and questions, in rapid changes, in conditional clauses, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum ictus summa iniuria, C., Off., I. 10, 88; *the height of right (is) the height of wrong*. Nemo malus felix, Juv., IV. 8; *no bad man (is) happy*. Quid dulcissim quam habere quicunq; omnia audebis loqui? C., Lael., 7, 23; *what sweeter than to have some one with whom you can venture to talk about everything?* Sed haec vetera; illud vērō recens, C., Ph., II. 11, 25. Aliquamdiū certātum, S., Iug., 74, 8. Cūr hostis Spartacus, si tū civis? C., Parad., 4, 80.

So also esse, with participles and the like:

Caesar statuit expectandam clāsem, CAES., B.G., III. 14, 1; *Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.*

NOTES.—1. The omission of esse is not common with the Nom. and Infinitive.

2. Popular speech omits freely; so, mirum nū, mirum quin, factum, in Latin comedy; likewise potius and pote for forms of posse. To a like origin are due mirum quantum, nimium quantum, etc., found at all periods.

3. The ellipsis of other forms of the copula is unusual. Thus CICERO occasionally omits sit in the Indirect Question, and TACITUS other forms of the Subjv. besides. Fuisse is omitted by LIVY, and not unfrequently by TACITUS.

4. The Ellipsis of esse was sometimes due to the desire of avoiding the heaping up

of Infinitives. Thus sentences like *nōn dubitō tō esse sapientem dicere* (*to declare you to be wise*) were regularly cut down to *nōn dubitō tō sapientem dicere* (*to declare you wise*).

5. The ellipsis of other verbs, such as *facere*, *ire*, *venire*, *dicere*, etc., is characteristic of popular speech; it is therefore not uncommon in CICERO's letters (*ad Att.*), in PLINY's letters, and in works involving dialogue, such as CICERO's philosophical writings. The historians avoid it, and it never occurs in CAESAR and VELLERIUS.

#### CONCORD.

**210. THE THREE CONCORDS.**—There are three great concords in Latin :

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject (211).
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive (285, 321).
3. The agreement of the relative with antecedent (614).

**211. Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.**

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject { in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject { in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

Substantive *mōbilis* (21, 2) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

*Ego rēgēs tīsōi, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis*, [C.] *ad Her.*, iv. 53, 66 (207). *Vērāe amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32; *true friendships are abiding*. *Dōs est decem talenta*, *Ter.*, *And.*, 950; *the dowry is ten talents*. *Ūsus magister est optimus*, C., *Rab. Post.*, 4, 9 (205). *Arx est monosyllabum*, “*Arx*” is a monosyllable. Compare *Ignis cōfector est et cōsumptor omnium*, C., *N.D.*, II. 15, 41; *fire is the doer-up (destroyer) and eater-up (consumer) of everything*, with *cōfactiva rērum omnium vetustas*, C., *Frag.*

**REMARKS.**—I. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes; either the natural relation is preferred to the artificial (*cōstrūctiō ad sēnsūm, per synesin, according to the sense*), or the nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence the following

**EXCEPTIONS.**—(a) Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: *pars*, *part*; *vis* (*power*), *quantity*; *multitudo*, *crowd*; organized bodies more rarely. Also, but not often, such words as *quisque*, *uterque*, *nēmō*, etc.

*Pars māior recēperant sēsē*, L., xxxiv. 47, 6; *the greater part had retired*. *Omnis multitudo abeunt*, L., xxiv. 3, 15; *all the crowd depart*.

**Magna vis & minus missa telorum multa nostris vulnera inferabant, CARS., B.C., II. 6, 5.** *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt, CAES., B.C., III. 30, 8.*

NOTE.—This usage is very common in comedy, but extremely rare in model prose. LIVY shows a greater variety and a larger number of substantives than any other author, and poets and late prose writers are free. Yet HORACE uses regularly the Sing. with a collective, while VIRGIL varies, often employing first a Sing. and then a Pl. verb with the same substantive (as *A.*, II. 64). TACITUS often uses quisque with a Plural.

(b) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject; so especially with *milia*. This usage belongs pre-eminently to the historians.

*Capita coniuratiōnis virgis caesi (sunt), L., x. 1, 3 ; the heads of the conspiracy were flogged. Samnitium caesi tria milia, Cf. L., x. 34, 8 ; of the Samnites (there) were slain three thousand.*

The passive verb often agrees in gender with the predicate: *Nōn omnis error stultitia dicienda est, C., Div., II. 43, 90 ; not every false step is to be called folly.*

(c) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"):

*Amantium irae (204, n. 5) amoris integratio est, TER., And., 555 ; lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.*

2. A superlative adjective defined by a Partitive Gen. follows the gender of the subj. when it precedes:

*Indus, qui est omnium fluminum maximus, C., N.D., II. 52, 180 ; the Indus, which is the greatest of all rivers.*

Otherwise it follows the Genitive; but this usage is post-classic:

*Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus, PLIN., N.H., IX. 8, 20 ; the dolphin is the swiftest of all animals.*

3. The Voc. is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 825, E. I.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject:

*Triste lupus stabulis, V., Ec., 3, 80 ; the wolf is a baleful thing to the folds. Varium et mutabile semper feminam, V., A., IV. 569 ; "a thing of moods and fancies" is woman ever.*

This construction is poetical; in CICERO it is used with a few words only; such as *extremum, commune*:

*Omnium rerum (204, n. 4) mors [est] extremum, Cf. C., Fam., VI. 21, 1 ; death is the end of all things.*

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate:

*Negat Epictetus ; hoc enim vostrum lumen est, C., Fin., II. 22, 70 ; Epictetus says No ; for he is your great light. Ea nōn media sed nulla via est, L., XXXII., 21, 33 ; that is not a middle course, but no course at all.*

But in negative sentences, and when the pronoun is the predicate, there is no change. So in definitions :

*Quid aut quale [est] Deus?* Cf. C., N.D., I. 22, 60; *what or what manner of thing is God?* *Nec sopor illud erat,* V., A., III. 173. *Quod ita erit gestum, id lèx erit,* C., Ph., I. 10, 26.

Exceptions are but apparent. C., O., II. 38, 157.

6. The adjective predicate sometimes agrees with a substantive in apposition to the subject. So especially when the appositive is *oppidum, civitas, and the like :*

*Corioli oppidum captum, [est], L., II. 33, 9; Corioli-town was taken. Corinthum, tōdūs Graeciae lumen, existinctum esse volvārunt,* C., Imp., 5. 11; *they would have Corinth, the eye of all Greece, put out.*

NOTES.—1. Peculiar is the occasional use of the Fut. participle in -ūrum for feminines in early Latin : *Alterō (gladii) tē occisūrum ait (Casina), alterō vīlīcum.* Pl., Cas., 693. So Truc., 400.

2. *Age* is often used in early Latin as if it were an adverb, with the Plural ; occasionally also *cavē* : *Age modo fabricāmini.* Pl., Cas., 488.

Akin is the use of a Voc. Sing. with a Pl. verb, which is occasionally found in classical prose also : *Tum Scaevola; quid est, Cotta? inquit, quid taoētis?* C., O., I. 35, 180.

The use of *aliquis, some one of you,* in this way is early : *Aperite aliquis Actūtūm ēstium,* Tser., Ad., 634.

3. Other less usual constructions *ad sēnsūm* are : the use of a neuter demonstrative where a substantive of a different gender is expected, and the construction of rēs as if it were neuter (both found also in CICERO) ; the neuter Singular summing up a preceding Plural :

In Graeciā mūsici floruārunt, discēbantque id (*that [accomplishment]*) omnēs, C., Tusc., I. 2, 4. *Servitia repudiābat, cūius (of which [class]) initio ad eum magnae cōpīe concurrēbant,* C., 56, 5. See also C., Div., II. 57, 117.

### Forms of the Verbal Predicate.

#### VOICES OF THE VERB.

##### 212. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive.

REMARK.—The Latin Passive corresponds to the Greek Middle, and, like the Greek Middle, may be explained in many of its uses as a Reflexive.

213. ACTIVE.—The Active Voice denotes that the *action proceeds from the subject.* Verbs used in the Active Voice fall into two classes, as follows :

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* to an object (*trānseō, I go over*) ; *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyond* the subject : *occidere, to fell = to kill* (Transitive) ; *occidere, to fall* (Intransitive).

**REMARK.**—Properly speaking, a Transitive Verb in Latin is one that forms a personal passive, but the traditional division given above has its convenience, though it does not rest upon a difference of nature, and a verb may be trans. or intrans. according to its use. So

(a) Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, in which case they serve simply to characterize the agent. This is true especially of verbs of *movement*; as *dēclināre*, *inclināre*, *mōvēre*, *mūtāre*, *vērtere*, and the like, and is found at all periods.

(b) On the other hand, many intrans. verbs are often used transitively. This occurs also at all periods, but the Acc. is usually the *inner object* (332).

(c) On the use of the Inf. active, where English uses the passive, see 532, N. 2.

**214. PASSIVE.**—The Passive Voice denotes that the *subject receives the action of the verb.*

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

*Virgis caedētur*, C., *Verr.*, III. 28, 69; *he shall be beaten with rods.*  
[*Ignis*] *lamine p̄dūtur sūb*, Ov., *Her.*, 15, 8; *the fire is betrayed by its own light.*

The agent is put in the Ablative with *ab* (ā).

*Ab amicis p̄dūmur*, C., *Cluent.*, 52, 148; *we are betrayed by friends.*  
*Virgis caesi tribūni ab līgatō sunt*, L., xxix. 18, 18; *the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.*

**REMARKS.—I.** Intrans. verbs of passive signification are construed as passives: *fam̄ perire*, C., *Inv.*, II. 57, 172, *to perish of hunger.* So *vēnire*, *to be sold*; *vīpulīre* (chiefly vulgar), *to be beaten*, *ab aliquā*, *by some one.*

*Ab rōtībus* [vīpulīvit], Cf. QUINT., IX. 2, 12; *he was whacked with cudgels by the defendant.* *Salvōbis & meō Cicerōne*, C., *Att.*, VI. 2, 10; *greeting to you from Cicero.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

*Vinci & Voluptate*, C., *Off.*, I. 20, 68; *to be overcome by Dame Pleasure.*  
*Patricis iuuenib⁹ saepserant latera*, L., III. 37, 6; *they had flanked him with a guard of patrician youths.*

The latter construction is very rare in CICERO, and seems to belong pre-eminently to the historians.

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like persons.

*A cane nōn māgnō saepe tenētur aper*, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 422; *a boar is often held fast by a little dog.*

Animals, as instruments, are treated like things.

Compare *equū vehi*, *to ride a horse* (*to be borne by a horse*), with *in equū*, *on horseback.*

215. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. See 354.

1. With the Perfect passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

*Mihī rēs tōta p̄ovīna est*, C., *Verr.*, iv. 42, 91; *I have had the whole thing provided for.* *Carmīna nūlla mihī sunt scripta*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 35; *poems—I have none written* (*I have written no poems*).

2. With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

*Nihil [est] homini tam timendum quam invidia*, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7; *there is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy.*

216. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

*Alexander Dārēum vicit*, *Alexander conquered Darius.*

*Dārēus ab Alexandrō victus est*, *Darius was conquered by Alexander.*

217. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object (333, 1).

Active: *Miseri invident bonis*, *The wretched envy the well-to-do.*

Passive: *mihī invidētur*, *I am envied,*  
*tibī invidēstar*, *thou art envied,*  
*ei invidēstur*, *he is envied,*  
*nōbis invidēstur*, *we are envied,*  
*vōbis invidēstur*, *you are envied,*  
*īs invidēstur*, *they are envied,*

} *ab aliquā, by some one.*

*Nihil facile persuādetur invītis*, QUINT., iv. 3, 10; *people are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.* *Anūlis nostrīs plūs quam animis creditur*, SEN., *Ben.*, iii. 15, 8; *our seals are more trusted than our souls.*

REMARKS.—1. In like manner a Gen. or Abl. in dependence upon an active verb cannot be made the subj. of the passive.

2. On the exceptional usage of personal Gerundives from intrans. verbs see 427, N. 5.

NOTES.—1. The poets and later prose writers sometimes violate the rule, under Greek influence or in imitation of early usage: *Cūr invidētor!* (for *cūr invidēstur mihi!*), H., *A.P.*, 56; *vix quidem crēdar*, Ov., *Tr.*, iii. 10, 35; *persuāsus vidēstur*

*esse*, [C.] *ad Her.*, i. 6, 9. (*Persuāsēd hospitem*, *Petr.*, 6a, 2, is perhaps an intentional solecism.)

2. Similar liberties are taken by poets and late prose writers with the passive of other intrans. verba, such as *concēdere*, *permittēre*, *praedipere*, *prōfūntīrē*: *Fatīs numquam conōcessa* (= *cui conōcessum est*) *movāri Camarina*. V., A., III. 700

**218. REFLEXIVE.**—Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English :

*Omne animal sē ipsum diligit*, C., *Fn.*, v. 9, 24, *Every living creature loves itself.*

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the passive (middle) is employed : *lavor*, *I bathe*, *I bathe myself*.

*Pūrgārī* [nequivarunt], Cf. L., xxiv. 18, 4; *they could not clear themselves*. *Cum in mentem vēnit, pōnor ad scribendum*, C., *Fam.*, IX. 15, 4; *when the notion strikes me I set myself to writing*.

**NOTE.**—Some of these verba approach the deponents, in that the reflexive meaning of the passive extends also to some active forms ; thus, from *vehor*, *I ride*, we get the form *vehōns*, *riding* (rare) : *Adulscētiam per mediās laudēs quasi quadrigis vehentem*, C., *Br.*, 97, 331.

**219.** As the active is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the passive in its reflexive (middle) sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself : *trahor*, *I let myself be dragged*; *tondeor*, *I have myself shaved*.

*Duōs Mysēs* [insuistī] *in cūleum*, Cf. C., *Q.F.*, i. 2, 2, 5; *you sewed two Mysians into a sack (had them sewn)*. *Sine gemītū adūruntur*, C., *Tusc.*, v. 27, 77; *they let themselves be burned without a moan*. *Diruit, aedi-fact*, H., *Ep.*, i. 1, 100; *he is pulling down, he is building*. *Ipse docet quid agam*; *his est et ab hoste docērī*, Ov., *M.*, iv. 428; *he himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe)*.

**220. DEONENT.**—The Deponent is a passive form which has lost, in most instances, its passive (or reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a transitive or intransitive active : *hortor*, *I am exhorting* (trans.); *morior*, *I am dying* (intrans.).

**NOTES.**—1. A number of intrans. verba show also a Perfect Part. passive used actively ; not, however, in classical prose combined with *esse* to take the place of the regular Perfect. On the use of such participles as substantives, see 167, n. 1.

*Quid causae exōgitārī potest, cur tē lautum voluerit, cōñstum nōluerit occidere?* C., *Dei.*, 7, 20.

2. Many verbs show both active and deponent forms side by side. In this case the active forms belong more often to early authors. See 163–167.

**221. RECIPROCAL.**—Reciprocal relations (“*one another*”) are expressed by *inter*, *among*, and the personal pronouns, *nōs, us*; *vōs, you*; *sē, themselves*. *Inter sē amant, They love one another.*

REMARKS.—1. Combinations of *alter alterum, aliis alium, uterque alterum*, and the like, also often give the reciprocal relation: sometimes there is a redundancy of expression.

*Placeat Stoicis hominēs hominū causā esse generitōs, ut ipsi inter sē aliī aliis prōcessere possent, C., Off., I. 7, 22; it is a tenet of the Stoics that men are brought into the world for the sake of men, to be a blessing to one another.*

2. Later writers use *invicem* or *mītūs*, *inter sē, vicissim*; and early Latin shows occasionally *uterque utrumque*.

*Quae omnia hīc spectant, ut invicem ardenter diligimus, PLIN., Ep., VII. 20, 7; all these things look to our loving one another more fervently. Uterque utriusque cordi, TER., Ph., 800; either is dear to other.*

### TENSES.

**222.** The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*.  
The second tells whether the action is *past, present, or future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

**223.** There are six tenses in Latin:

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance in the present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance in the future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance in the past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion in the present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion in the future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion in the past*.

**224.** An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*. *Continuance* and *completion* require a point of reference for definition; *attainment* does not. This gives rise to the aoristic or *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-

form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present ; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future ; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance are the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Present and the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Perfect (Aorist), which differ materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure* Present and Perfect.

**225.** The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Historical Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich :

Talia tentabat, sic et tentaverat ante,  
Vixque dedit viotis utilitate manus. Ov., Tr., I. 3, 87.

### 226. Table of Temporal Relations.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### ACTIVE.

	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>Attainment.</i>
PRES.	scribō, <i>I am writing.</i>	script̄, <i>I have written.</i>	scribō, <i>I write.</i>
FUT.	scribam, <i>I shall be writing.</i>	script̄erō, <i>I shall have written.</i>	scribam (script̄erō), <i>I shall write.</i>
PAST.	scribōbam, <i>I was writing.</i>	script̄eram, <i>I had written.</i>	script̄, <i>I wrote.</i>

##### PASSIVE.

	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>Attainment.</i>
PRES.	scribitur (epistula), <i>The letter is written</i>	scripta est, <i>has been written,</i> <i>(writing).</i>	scribitur, <i>is written.</i>
FUT.	scribitur, <i>The letter will be</i>	scripta erit, <i>will have been,</i> <i>written (writing).</i>	scribitur, <i>will be written.</i>
PAST.	scribēbitur, <i>The letter was writ-</i>	scripta erat, <i>had been written,</i> <i>ten (writing).</i>	scripta est, <i>was written.</i>

**REMARK.**—The English passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the active.

*A letter was written :* { Continuance, *Some one was writing a letter.*  
 Completion, *Some one had written a letter.*  
 Attainment, *Some one wrote a letter.*

### Present Tense.

**227.** The Present Tense is used as in English of *that which is going on now* (Specific Present), and of statements that apply to all time (Universal Present).

Specific Present :

*Auribus teneō lupum, Ter., Ph., 506 ; I am holding a wolf by the ears.*

Universal Present :

*Probitās landātur et alget, Juv., I. 74 ; honesty is bepraised and freezes.  
 Dulce et deodrum est prō patriā mori, H., O., III. 2, 18 ; sweet and seemly  
 'tis to die for fatherland.*

So regularly of the quoted views of authors, the inscriptions of books, etc.:

*Dē iuvenum amīre scribit Alcaeus, C., Tusc., IV. 33, 71 ; Alcaeus writes concerning the love of youths.*

**NOTES.**—1. The Specific Pr. is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Pr. is Aoristic, true at any point of time.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Pr. (see 233) is used of attempted and intended action (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Pr. this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Impf. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the verb for the Endeavor which lies in the tense.

*Periculum vitant, C., Rosc. Am., I. 1 ; they are trying to avoid danger.* In the example sometimes cited : *Quintus frāter Tusculānum vänditat, C., Att., I. 14, 7 ; Brother Quintus is "trying to sell" his Tuscan villa ; vänditare itself means to offer for sale.* Translate : *intends to offer for sale.* if the notion lies in the Tense.

3. The Pr. when used with a negative often denotes *Resistance to Pressure* (233) ; this is, however, colloquial : *Tacō : nōn tacēō, Pl., Cas., 826 ; keep quiet ! I won't,*

4. The ambiguity of our English passive often suggests other translations. Use and Wont make Law ; hence the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done ; what is not done is not to be done : *(Dens) nec bene p̄tmeritis capitur, nec tangitur irā, LUCR., II. 651 ; God is not to be inveigled by good service, nor touched by anger.*

**228.** The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English in anticipation of the future, chiefly in compound sentences :

*Si vincimus, omnia tūta erunt, S., C., 58, 9 ; if we conquer (= shall conquer) everything will be safe. Antequam ad sententiam redeō dē mē pauca dicam, C., Cat., IV. 10, 20 ; before I return to the subject, I will*

*say a few things of myself. Exspectabo dum venit, Ter., Eun., 206; I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.*

NOTES.—1. This construction is archaic and familiar. It is very common in the Comic Poets, very rare in CICERO and CAESAR, but more common later. Some usages have become phraseological, as *si vivō, si I live, as I live.*

2. On the Pr. Indic. for the Deliberative Subjv., see 254, n. 2.

**229.** The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (Historical Present) :

*Cohortis incendere iubet, S., C., 60, 1; he orders the cohorts to advance.*  
*Mutrat proficiet, CAES., B. G., I. 7, 1; he hastens to depart.*

REMARK.—*Dum, while (yet),* commonly takes a Pr., which is usually referred to this head. *Dum, so long as,* follows the ordinary law, 571, ff.

*Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesar nuntiūtūm est, CAES., B. G., I. 46, 1; while these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar.*

**230.** The Present is used in Latin of actions that are continued into the present, especially with *iam, now; iam diū, now for a long time; iam pridem, now long since.* In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

(Mithridates) annum iam tertium et viicūnum regnat, C., Imp., 3, 7;  
*Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.* Libe-  
 rāre vōs & Philippō iam diū magis vultis quam auditis, L., XXXII. 21, 86;  
*you have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourselves from Philip.*

"How does your honor for this many a day?" SHAK., Ham., III. 1, 91.

NOTES.—1. The Pr. sometimes gives the resulting condition:

*Qui mortem nōn timet, māgnum is sibi praesidium ad bestiam vitam com-  
 parat, C., Tusc., II. 1, 2; he who fears not death gets for himself great warrant for a  
 happy life.* (Discount) *vincere (= victōrem esse) bellō Rōmānum, L., II. 7, 2.*

2. More free is this usage in the poets, sometimes under Greek influence:

*Auctōre Phoebō gignor (*νιγροματί = γένεσις εἰμί*); hand generis pudet.* SKN.,  
*Ag., 295.*

VIRGIL is especially prone to use a Pr. after a Past, denoting by the Past the cause, by the Pr. the effect: *Postquam altum tenuere ratēs nec iam amplius illae  
 adpārent terrae, A., III. 192.*

### Imperfect Tense.

**231.** The Imperfect Tense denotes *continuance in the past: pugnabam, I was fighting.*

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customis, situations;* to describe and to particularize. A good example is TER., *And., 74 ff.*

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process*; the Historical Perfect states the *result*. The Imperfect counts out the *items*; the Historical Perfect gives the *sum*. A good example is NEP., II. 1, 3.

232. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect :

(*Verr̄s*) in forum vénit ; ard̄ebant oculi ; t̄tō ex ore crudelit̄s eminēbat, C., *Verr.*, v. 62, 161 ; *Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

233. The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted*, *intended* and *expected* actions (*Imperfect of Endeavor*). It is the Tense of *Disappointment* and (with the negative) of *Resistance to Pressure*. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

*Curiam relinquēbat*, Tac., *Ann.*, II. 34, 1; *he was for leaving the senate-house.* [Lex] abrogabātur, Cf. L., XXXIV. 1, 7; *the law was to be abrogated.* Simul ostendebātur (*an attempt was made to show*) quāmodo cōstitutiōnem reperiri oportērat, [C.] ad *Her.*, II. 1, 2. *Dic̄bat* (positive) melius quam scripsit (negative) *Hortensius*, C., *Or.*, 38, 182; *Hortensius spoke better than he wrote.* *Aditum nōn dabit*, NEP., IV. 3, 8; *he WOULD not grant access (dedit, DID not).* See also *Mart.*, XI. 105.

NOTES.—1. The Impf. as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Impf. and Hist. Pf. coincide; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Hist. Pf. must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

(*Gorgiās*) centum et novem vixit ann̄s, QUINT., III. 1, 9; *Gorgius lived one hundred and nine years.* Biennium ibi perpetuum misera illum tuli, TER., *Hec.*, 87; *I bore him there—poor me!—for two long years together.*

3. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Impf. is occasionally used, as in Greek, to express a startling appreciation of the real state of things (*Imperfect of Awakening*). Greek influence is not unlikely.

Tū aderis, TER., *Ph.*, 85; (*so it turns out that*) *you were here (all the time).* Perea māle si nōn optimum erat, H., *S.*, II. 1, 6; *perdition catch me if that was not the best course (after all).*

Hence the modal use of dōbēbam and poteram (234, n. 2).

234. The Imperfect is used as the English Pluperfect, which often takes a progressive translation; especially with *iam, iam diū, iam dūdūm.*

Iam dūdum tibi adversabar, Pl., *Men.*, 420; *I had long been opposing you.* (Archias) domicilium Rōmae multo iam annō [habebat], Cf. C., *Arch.*, 4, 7; *Archias had been domiciled at Rome now these many years.*

**REMARK.**—As the Hist. Pr. is used in lively *narrative*, so the Hist. Inf. is used in lively *description*, parallel with the Imperfect (647).

### Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses :

1. Pure Perfect.
2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

#### 1. PURE PERFECT.

**235.** The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

1. The Pure Perfect differs from the Historical Perfect, in that the Pure Perfect gives from the point of view of the Present an instantaneous view of the development of an action from its origin in the Past to its completion in the Present, that is, it looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Perfect obliterates the intervening time and contracts beginning and end into one point in the Past.

2. An intermediate usage is that in which the Perfect denotes an action in the Past (Historical), whose effect is still in force (Pure).

**236.** Accordingly, the Perfect is used :

1. Of an action that is now *over and gone*.

Viximus, C., *Fam.*, xiv. 4, 5; *we have lived (life for us has been).* Filiū unicum habeb̄, Immo habui, Ter., *Heaut.*, 94; *I have an only son—nay, have had an only son.* Tempora quid faciunt: hanc volo, t̄s volui, Mart., vi. 40, 4; *what difference times make!* (Time is) *I want HER, (Time HAS BEEN) I wanted YOU.*

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action (*resulting condition*) :

Equum et mūlum Brundisii tib̄ reliqui, C., *Fam.*, xvi. 9, 8; *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundusium—(they are still there).* Perdidī spem quā m̄s oblectabam, Pl., *Rud.*, 222; *I've lost the hope with which I entertained myself.* Āctumst, peristi, Ter., *Eun.*, 54; *it is all over; you're undone.*

**REMARK.**—The Pure Pf. is often translated by the English Present : *m̄vti, I have become acquainted with,* *I know;* *memini, I have recalled, I remember;* *odī, I have conceived a hatred of,* *I hate;* *con-suevi, I have made it a rule,* *I am accustomed, etc.*

*Odérunt hilarem tristis tristemque iocet, H., Ep., I. 18, 89; the long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.*

But the Aorist force is sometimes found :

*Tacē, inquit, ante hō nōvi quam tū nātus es, PHAED., V. 9, 4; silence, quoth he, I knew this ere that you were born.*

NOTE.—The Pf. is used of that which has been and shall be (Sententious or Gnomic Perfect, 242, n. 1), but usually in poetry, from CATULLUS on, and frequently with an indefinite adjective or adverb of number or a negative. It is seldom an Aorist (Greek).

*Evertēre domōs tōtās optantibus ipsi dī facilēs, JUV., X. 7; whole houses at the masters' own request the (too) compliant gods o'erturn. Nāmo repente fuit turpisimus, JUV., II. 83; none of a sudden (hath ever) reach(ed) the depth of baseness.*

**237.** As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

(*Brutus*) si cōservātus erit, viciūs, C., Fam., XII. 6, 2; *Brutus!*—if HE is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.

**238.** *Habeo* or *teneo*, *I hold*, *I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result.

*Habeo statūtum, Cf. C., Verr., III. 41, 95; I have resolved, and hold to my resolution. Perspectum habeo, Cf. C., Fam., III. 10, 7; I have perceived, and I have full insight. Exclusum habeo mē rogo, cōno domi, MAET., II. 79, 2; I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.*

## 2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

**239.** The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained.

*Milō domum vénit, calceōs et vestimenta mutāvit, paulisper commorātus est, C., Mil., 10, 28; Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while. (Gorgias) centum et novem vixit annūs, QUINT., III. I, 9 (238, n. 2). Vēni, vidi, vici, SUET., Iul., 37; I came, saw, overcame.*

NOTE.—The Pf., as the “short hand” for the Plupf., is mainly post-Ciceronian, but begins with CAESAR. It is never common: superlōribus diēbus nōna Caesaris legiū castra eō locō posuit, CAES., B.C., III. 66, 2.

**240.** The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect. See C., Off., III. 27, 100; Tusc., I. 2, 4.

### Pluperfect Tense.

241. The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used :

1. Of an action *just concluded* in the past.

*Modo Caesarem r̄gnantem viderāmus*, C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 108 ; *we had just seen Caesar on the throne.*

2. Of an action that was *over and gone*.

*Fuerat inimicus*, C.; *Red. in Sen.*, 10, 26 ; *he had been my enemy.*

3. Of a *resulting condition* in the past.

*Massilienses portas Caesarī clauerant*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 34, 4 ; *the Marseillese had shut their gates against Caesar.* (*Their gates were shut.*)

REMARK.—When the Pf. of Resulting Condition is translated by an English Pr. (236, 2, n.), the Plupf. is translated by an English Imperfect : *nōveram*, *I had become acquainted with*, *I knew*; *meminoram*, *I remembered*; *oderam*, *I hated*; *cōsuēveram*, *I was accustomed*, etc.

NOTES.—1. Not unfrequently in early Latin, rarely in classical prose, but more often in the poets, the Plupf. seems to be used as an Aorist; so very often *dixarat*: *Nil equidem tibi abstuli*. EV. At illud quod tibi abstuleris cedo, PL., *Ad.*, 635. *Nōn sum ego qui fueram*, *Pzop.*, I. 18, 11. See Ov., *Tr.*, III. 11, 25.

2. The Periphrastic Plupf. with *habeō* corresponds to the Perfect (236). It is rare, and shows two forms, one with the Imperfect and one with the Plupf., the latter being poet-classical.

*Equitūm, quem ex omni pr̄vinciā cōstum habēbat, praemititit*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 15, 1. *Multōrum aurēs illa lingua attonitā habuerat*, VAL. M., III. 3.

### Future Tense.

242. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future*: *scribam*, *I shall be writing*.

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: *scribam*, *I shall write*.

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

*Dōne eris fēlix, multōs numerōs amicōs*, Ov., *Tr.*, I. 9, 5 ; *so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.*

2. Observe especially the verbs *volō*, *I will*, and *possum*, *I can*.

*Ödero si poterō*; *si nōn, invitū amēbō*, Ov., *Am.*, III. 11, 85 ; *I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will. Qui*

*adipisci vāram glōriam volet, iūstitiae fungētur officiis, C., Off., II. 13, 43 ; whoso shall wish to obtain true glory, let him discharge the calls of justice.*

3. The Fut. is often used in conclusions, especially in CICERO :  
*Sunt illa sapientis ; aberit igitur & sapiente aegritudis, C., Tusc., III. 8, 18.*

NOTES.—1. The Fut. is used sometimes as a gnomic (236, n.) tense :  
*Haut faciat fēmina invenītūr bona, Afr., 7; unnech (= hardly) a woman shall be found that's good. Et tremet sapiēns et dolēbit, et expallēscet, Sen., E.M., 71, 29.*

2. Observe the (principally comic) use of the Future to indicate likelihood :

*Verbum hercule hōc vārum erit, Tna., Eun., 732 ; this will be God's own truth.*

243. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

*Tū nihil dicas, H., A.P., 385 ; you will (are to) say nothing (do you say nothing). Cum volet accēdes, cum tē vitabit abfībis, Ov., A.A., II. 529 ; when she wants you, approach ; and when she avoids you, begone, sir. Nōn mē appellābis, si sapiis, Pl., Most., 515 ; see C., Fam., V. 12, 10. Compare ut̄stur and ut̄stur, CORN., II. 3, 5.*

Similar is the Future in Asseverations (comic).

*Ita mē amābit Iūppiter, Pl., Trin., 447 ; so help me God !*

### Future Perfect Tense.

244. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment* : *fēcerō, TER., Ph., 882 ; I shall have done it, or I shall do it* (once for all) ; *viderō, TER., Ad., 538 ; I will see to it* ; *prōfēcerit, C., Fin., III. 4, 14 ; it will prove profitable.*

REMARKS.—1. Hence, when the Pf. is used as a Pr., the Fut. Pf. is used as a Future : *nōverō, I shall know ; cōsuēverō, I shall be accustomed ; ūdero, si poterō, Ov., Am., III. 11, 85 (242, B. 2).*

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Fut. Perfect; hence, when one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Fut. Perfect.

*Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, sius victōria erit, L., xxiv. 38, 5 ; who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.*

3. The Fut. Pf. is frequently used in *volō, I will ; nōlō, I will not ; possum, I can ; licet, it is left free ; libet, it is agreeable ; placet, it is the pleasure* ; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

*Si potuerō, faciam vōbis satis, C., Br., 5, 21 ; if I can, I shall satisfy you.*

4. The Fut. Pf. in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment ; one action involves the other.

*Qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum om̄ficerit*, C., *Fam.*, x. 19, 2 ; *he who shall have crushed (crushes) Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.* [Ea] *vitia qui fugerit, is omnia ferē vitia vitāverit*, C., *Or.*, 69, 281 ; *he who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.*

Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote *antecedence*, the second *finality*. An Impv. is often used in the first clause.

*Inmitis* (verbōrum collocatiōnē), *perierit tūta rē*, C., *Or.*, 70, 232 ; *change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.*

NOTE.—1. The independent use of the Fut. Pf. is characteristic of Comedy, but occurs occasionally later in familiar style. Sometimes it gives an air of positiveness :

*Bene merenti bene prōfuerit, male merenti p̄r erit*, PL., *Capt.*, 315 ; *good desert shall have good issue : ill desert shall have its due.* *Ego cr̄s his erō : cr̄s habuerit, uxor, ego tamen convivium*, PL., *Cas.*, 786. *Nūsq̄am facilius hanc miserrimam vitam vel sustentabō vel abīcerō*, C., *AU.*, III. 19, 1. See also C., *Ac.*, II. 44, 125 ; L., I. 58, 10.

2. The Periphrastic Fut. Pf. with *habeo* is rare. It corresponds to the Pf. and Pluperfect.

*Quod si feceris, m̄s m̄ximō beneficō d̄svinctum habēbis*, C., *AU.*, XVI. 16 n. 9.

245. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

*Dē tū videris ; ego dē m̄s ipse profitēbor*, C., *Ph.*, II. 46, 118 ; *do you see to yourself ; I myself will define my position.*

NOTE.—This is confined in Cicero almost entirely to *videris*, which is suspiciously like the familiar Greek future δέεται, and is used in the same way.

### Periphrastic Tenses.

246. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of *esse*, *to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives. See 129.

#### I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

247. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of *esse* and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. Compare *amātor* and *amātūrus*. The translation is very various :

1. *Scriptūrus sum, I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*

2. *Scriptūrus erām, I was about to write, etc.*

3. *Scripturus fuī, I have been or was about to write* (often = *I should have written*).

4. *Scripturus fuerām, I had been about to write, etc.*

5. *Scripturus erō, I shall be about to write, etc.*

6. *Scripturus fuerō, I shall have made up my mind to write, etc.* (of course very rare).

1. *Fiat illud quod futūrum est, C., Div., II. 8, 21; what is to be, will be.*

2. [Rāx] nōn interfutūrus nāvāli certāmini erat, L., xxxvi. 43, 9; *the king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.*

3. *Fascis ipsi ad mā dālātūri fuērunt, C., Ph., XIV. 6, 15; they themselves were ready to tender the fasces to me. Dāditūs ultimis cruditib⁹ adfectūrū fuērunt, L., XXI. 44, 4; they would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures.*

4. *Maior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta futūra Carthāginiānsium fueraſt, L., XXII. 22, 19; the Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.*

5. *Ebrūm apud quōs aget aut erit sōtūrus, mentēs sōnsūque dāgustet, C., Or., I. 52, 228; he must taste-and-test the state of mind of those before whom he will plead or will have to plead.*

6. *(Sapiēns) nōn vivet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus, SEN., E.M., 9, 17; The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society. (The only example cited, and that doubtful.)*

REMARKS.—1. The forms with *sum*, *eram*, and the corresponding Subjv. forms with *sim*, *essem*, are much more common than those with *fuī*, *etc.*, probably for euphonic reasons.

2. The Subjv. and Inf. *scripturus sim*, *essem*, *fuerim*, *fuisse*, *scriptūrum esse*, *fuisse*, are of great importance in subordinate clauses. (656.)

NOTES.—1. The use of *forem* for *essem* appears first in SALLUST, but is not uncommon in LIVY, and occurs sporadically later. *Fore* for *esse* is post-classical.

Dicit sā vēniisse quaeſitum pīcēm an bellum agitātūrus foret, S., Jug., 109, 2.

2. The periphrastic use of the Pr. Part. with forms of *esse* is rare, and in most cases doubtful, as the question always arises whether the Part. is not rather a virtual substantival or adjective. So with the not uncommon *nt sī sciēns* of the Comic Poets. The effect of this periphrasis is to emphasize the continuance.

Nēmō umquam tam sui dēpiciēns (*despiser of self, self-deprecator*) fuit quin spārāret melius sā posse diōere, C., Or., II. 89, 364.

## II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

### A.—Of Future Relations.

248. The periphrases *futūrum esse* (more often *fore*) *ut, (that) it is to be that*, and *futūrum fuisse ut, (that) it was to be that*, with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive active; necessarily so

when the verb forms no Future Participle. In the passive they are more common than the Supine with *irū*.

*Sparū fore ut contingat id nobis*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 34, 82; *I hope that we shall have that good fortune.* In *fītis scriptum Veientes [habēbant] fore ut brevi & Gallis Rōma caperetur*, C., *Div.*, I. 44, 100; *the Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.*

**REMARK.**—*Possē*, *to be able*, and *vellē*, *to will*, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of *possē* are often used instead. (656, n. 2.)

**Note.**—1. These periphrases do not occur in early Latin.

2. *Fōrū ut* is used chiefly with Pr. and Impf. Subjv.; Pf. and Plupf. are very rare. (C., *Att.*, XVI. 15 n. 16.)

3. The form *futūrum fuisse ut* is used with passive and Supineless verbs, to express the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

*Nisi eō ipso tempore nūntiū dē Caesariā victoriā essent allēti, existimabū plūriquē futūrum fuisse utī (oppidum) amitteretur*, Cane., *B.C.*, III. 102, 2. (556, a.)

4. The Subjv. forms *futūrum sit*, *esset*, *fuerit ut*, are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic Subjv. of passive and Supineless verbs (see 515, n. 2). Warrant in real usage is scarce.

*An utique futūrum sit ut Carthāginem superent Rōmāni!* QUINT. III. 8, 17 (not merely periphrastic).

**249.** In *eō est*, *it is on the point,* } *ut, that (of), with*  
*erat,* } *was (Impersonal),* } *the subjunctive.*

In *eō [erat] ut* (*Pausanias*) *comprehenderetur*, NEP., IV. 5, 1; *it was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of being) arrested.*

**Note.**—This phrase occurs in *Nero* and *Livy*, seldom in earlier writers.

#### B.—Of Past Relations.

**250.** The Perfect Participle passive is used in combination with *sum*, *I am*, and *fui*, *I have been*, *I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. *Eram*, *I was*, and *fueram*, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect; and *erō*, *I shall be*, and *fuerō*, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect.

**REMARKS.**—1. *Fui* is the *favorite* form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: *convivium exornatum fuit*, *the banquet was furnished forth*; *fui* is the *necessary* form when the Pf. denotes that the action is over and gone: *amatus fui*, *I have been loved* (but I

am loved no longer). The same principle applies to fueram and fueris, though not so regularly.

*Simul scrum & marmore in sepulcrō positum fuit; hēc quidam homē nobilis d̄sportāvit.* C., *Dom.*, 43, 111; *a marble effigy was deposited in the tomb; a certain man of rank has carried it off.* *Arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humili inventa,* C., *Div.*, I. 34, 74; *the arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground.* *Quod tibi fuerit persuasum, hunc erit persuasum,* C., *Rosc. Com.*, I, 8; *what is (shall have proved) acceptable to you will be acceptable to him.*

2. To be distinguished is that use of the Pt. where each element has its full force, the Participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past.

*Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*, CAES., *B.G.*, I, 1.

NOTES.—1. The ful, etc., forms are rarely found in CICERO, never in CAESAR, but are characteristic of LIVY and SALLUST.

2. *Forem* for esseem is common in the Comic Poets, occurs twice in CICERO's letters (*Att.*, VII. xi, 2; x. 14, 8), never in CAESAR, but in LIVY and NEPOS is very common, and practically synonymous with esseem.

#### C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

251. 1. The combination of the Tenses of esse, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in -ndus), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation (129). The idea expressed is usually one of *necessity*.

*Praepōnenda [est] divitiae glōria*, C., *Top.*, 22, 84; *glory is to be preferred to riches.*

2. According to the rule (217) the Gerundive of intransitive verbs can be used only in the Impersonal form :

*Parcendum est victis*, *The vanquished must be spared.*

NOTES.—1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective, which produces the effect of a Progressive Participle. Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. As amans not only = qui amat, but also = qui amet, so amandus = qui amētur. Compare 438, n.

2. *Forem* for esseem is post-classical and comparatively uncommon.

#### TENSES IN LETTERS.

252. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase *Nihil erat (habebam) quod scriberem*, *I have nothing to write.* This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

## Table of Permutations.

scribo,	<i>I am writing,</i>	becomes	scribēbam.
	<i>I write,</i>	"	scripsi.
scripti,	<i>I have written,</i>	"	scripteram.
	<i>I wrote,</i>	"	scripteram.
	or remains unchanged.		
scribam,	<i>I shall write,</i>	"	scripturus eram.

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

heri,	<i>yesterday,</i>	becomes	pridie.
hodie,	<i>to-day,</i>	"	quod die huius litteris dedi, dabam.
cras,	<i>to-morrow,</i>	"	postero die, postridie.
nunc,	<i>now,</i>	"	tum.

Formīs mē continuō recipere cōgitabam, C., Att., VII. 15, 8; *I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiae.* Cum milī dixisset Caecilius puerum sē Rōmam mittere, haec scripti raptim, C., Att., II. 9, 1; *as Caecilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome, I write in a hurry.* (Litteris) eram daturus postridie ei qui mihi primus obviam vénisset, C., Att., II. 12, 4; *I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

NOTE.—CICERO is much more consistent in this tense-shifting than PLINY; and exceptions are not numerous proportionally: Ego etiā nihil habeo quod ad tē scribam, scribō tamen quia tēcum loqui videor, C., Att., XII. 53.

## MOODS.

253. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin :

1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

NOTE.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

## The Indicative Mood.

254. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality.* It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

REMARKS.—I. The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts*; whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realize*. Such ex-

pressions are : *dēbet*, *I ought, it is my duty*; *oportet*, *it behooves*; *necessus est*, *it is absolutely necessary*; *possum*, *I can, I have it in my power*; *convenit*, *it is fitting*; *pār, aequum est*, *it is fair*; *infinitum, endless*; *difficile, hard to do*; *longum, tedious*; and many others; also the Indic. form of the passive Periphrastic Conjugation. Observe the difference between the use of the Inf. in Eng. and in Latin after past tenses of *dēbet*, *possum*, *oportet*, etc.

*Possum perequi permulta oblectamenta rērum rūsticarūm*, C., *Cat. M.*, 16, 55; *I might rehearse very many delights of country life*. *Longum est perequi utilitatis asinorūm*, C., *N.D.*, II. 64, 159; *it would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses* (*I will not do it*). *Ad mortem tū dīsi oportēbat*, C., *Cat.*, I. 1, 2; *it behooved you to be (you ought to have been) led to execution* (*you were not*). *Volumnia dēbuit in tū officiātor esse, et id ipsum, quod fecit, potuit diligentius facere*, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 16; *it was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you; and the little she did do, she had it in her power to do (she might have done) more carefully*. *Quae condicō nōn accipienda fuit potius quam relinqua patria!* C., *Att.*, VIII. 3, 8; *what terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country?* [Eum] *vivum illinc exire non oportuerat*, C., *Mur.*, 25, 51; *he ought never to have gone out thence alive*.

The Pf. and Plupf. always refer to a special case.

2. The Impf. as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things : *dēbēbam*, *I ought (but do not)*; *poterās*, *you could (but do not)*. These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See E. 3.)

*Poteram morbi appellare, sed nōn conveniret ad omnia*, C., *Fin.*, III. 10, 35; *I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases (poteram si conveniret)*. *At poterās, inquis, melius mala ferre silēndū*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 1, 49; *"But," you say, "you could (you do not) bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent"* (poterās si silērās).

3. The Indic. is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption. The Indic. clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Impf. the action is often really begun :

*Lēbēbar longius, nisi mē retinuisse*, C., *Leg.*, I. 19, 52; *I was letting myself go on (should have let myself go on) too far, had I not checked myself*. *Omninō supervacua erat doctrina, si nātūra sufficeret*, QUINT., II. 8, 8; *training were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice*. *Præclarē vicerimus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium*, C., *Fam.*, XI. 10, 3; *we had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony*.

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjv., which is disguised by coinciding with the Indic. in form, except in "were."

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, *quisquis*, *no matter who*, *quotquot*, *no matter how many*, and all forms in *-cumque*, *-ever*, the Indic. is employed in classical Latin where we may use in English a Subjv. or its equivalent : *quisquis est*, *no matter who he is*, *be, may be*; *quicunque est*, *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be*.

*Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs*, V., A., II. 49; *whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents*.

CICERO has occasional exceptions (Ideal Second Person or by attraction) to this rule, and later writers, partly under Greek influence, frequently violate it. Exceptions in early Latin are not common.

NOTES.—1. CICERO introduces (*nōn*) *putram*, "*I should (not) have thought so*," and *mālueram*, "*I could have preferred*." LUCAN and TACITUS alone imitate the latter; the former was never followed.

*Mālueram, quod erat suscep̄tum ab illis, silentiō trānsfri*, C., Att., II. 19, 3.  
*Feriam tua viscera, Māgne*; *mālueram sc̄oeri*, LUCAN, VIII. 52.

2. In early Latin, occasionally in the more familiar writings of CICERO, and here and there later we find the Pr. Indic. (in early Latin occasionally the Fut.) used in place of the Subjv. in the Deliberative Question.

*Compressū palmā an porr̄ctū feriō?* Pl., *Cas.*, 405. *Advolōne an manēō?* C., Att., XIII. 40, 2. *Quid dōnō lepidum novom libellum*, CAT., I, 1.

### Subjunctive Mood.

255. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjv. is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*. When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs, thus : *may*, *can*, *might*, *could* by the forms of *posse*, to be *able*, *libet*, *it is left free*; *will* and *would* by *vella*, *to will*, *to be willing*; *must*, by *dēbet* or *oportet* (of moral obligation), by *necesse est* (of absolute obligation).

*Nostrās iniurias nec potest nec possit aliis ulciſc̄t quam vōs*, L., XXIX. 18, 18; *our wrongs no other than you has the power or can well have the power to avenge.\**

NOTE.—In the Latin Subjv. are combined two moods, the Subjv. proper, and the Optative, sometimes distinguished as the moods of the *will* and the *wish*. This fusion has rendered it difficult to define the fundamental conceptions of certain constructions.

---

\* In this unique passage *nec potest* denies with the head, *nec possit* refuses to believe with the heart.

**256.** 1. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

NOTES.—1. The Subjv., as the name implies (*subiungō, I subjoin*), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:

(a) The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (596, R. 1.)

(b) In transfers to the past, the Impf. represents the Pr., and the Plupf. the Pf. Subjunctive. (510.)

2. The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. In the first case the Subjunctive is said to be Potential, in the second case Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

### Potential Subjunctive.

**257.** 1. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from "may" and "might" to "must." The negative is the negative of the Indicative, *nōn*.

2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future; the action may be present or future: with Perfect sometimes past.

*Velim, I should wish; nōlim, I should be unwilling; mālim, I should prefer; dicās, you would say; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe; dicat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say.*

*Cædi discipulōs minimō velim, QUINT., I. 3, 18; I should by no means like pupils to be flogged. Tu Platōnem nec nimis valdē nec nimis saepe laudāveris, C., Leg., III. I, 1; you can't praise Plato too much nor too often.*

NOTES.—1. The Pf. Subjv. as a Potential seems to have been very rare in early Latin. CICERO extended the usage slightly and employed more persons; thus First Person Pl. and Second Sing. occur first in CICERO. From CICERO's time the usage spreads, perhaps under the influence of the Greek Aorist. It was always rare with Deponents and Passives. Another view regards this *dixerit* as a Fut. Pf. Indicative.

2. The Potential Subjv. is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an Ideal or of an

Unreal Conditional Protaasis. But the free Potential Subjv. differs from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of definite translation. Compare the two sentences above with :

*Num qui palam est adversarius facile caveris (si cavers) vitare possis,* C., *Verr.*, I. 15, 39; *an open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious).* *Nil ego contulerim illicundus sknus (= dum sknus erit) amio;* H., *S.*, I. 5, 44; *there is naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound sense.*

3. The Potential Subjv., as a modified form of the Indic., is often found where the Indic. would be the regular construction. So after *quoniam* (607, n. 1).

### 258. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

*Crēderēs victōs*, L., II. 43, 9; *you would, might, have thought them beaten.* *Haud facile discernerēs utrum Hannibal imperatōri an exercitu cōrīor esset*, L., XXI. 4, 8; *not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal was dearer to general or to army.* *Mirārētur qui tum cerneret*, L., XXXIV. 9, 4; *any one who saw it then must have been astonished.*

*Vellem, I should have wished; nōllem, I should have been unwilling; māllem, I should have preferred* (it is too late).

Norma.—1. With *vellem*, *nōllem*, *māllem*, the inference points to non-fulfilment of the wish in the Present (261, n.); with other words there is no such inference.

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of a real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Impf. is used as the tense of Description.

The Aoristic Pt. Subjv. and the Plupf. Subjv. are rarely used as the Ideal of the Past:

*Hū ambō saltū ad Libūs Gallōs dēdūxerint* (var. *dēdūxissent*), L., XXI. 38, 7. *Et quā minimum crēdīdisset* (*cōnsul*) *resistēbant hostēs*, L., XXXII. 17, 4.

### 259. The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (462). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

*Quis dubitet (= nāmō dubitet) quin in virtute divitiae sint?* C., *Parad.*, VI. 2, 48; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue?* (No one.) *Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēdītōne querentēs?* JUV., II. 24; *who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion?* (No one.) *Apud exerditum fuerit?* C., *Mur.*, 9, 21; *can you have been with the army?* *Hōc tantum bellum quis unquam arbitrārētur ab tñō imperatōre obnīfici posse?* C., *Imp.*, II, 31; *who would, could, should have thought that this great war could be brought to a close by one general?*

### Optative Subjunctive.

### 260. The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood.

The regular negative is *nōn*. *Nōn* is used chiefly to negative a single word ; but very rarely in the classical period. A second wish may be added by *neque* or *ne* (regularly if a positive wish precedes), but this is also rare in the classical period, and is denied for CAESAR.

The Pr. and Pl. Subjv. are used *when the decision is in suspense*, no matter how extravagant the wish ; the Impf. and Plupf. are used *when the decision is adverse*. The Pf. is rare and old.

*Stet haec urba, C., Mil., 34, 98 ; may this city continue to stand ! Quod dī ēmen ēvertant, C., Ph., III. 14, 85 ; which omen may the gods avert. Ita dī faxint (= fācerint), Pl., Poen., 911 ; the gods grant it ! Nō istū Iūppiter optimus māximus strit (= s̄verit) ! L., XXXIV. 24, 2 ; may Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not !*

**261.** The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes *ut* (archaic and rare), *utinam*, *utinam nē*, *utinam nōn*; also *ō si*, *oh if* (poetical and very rare); *qui* (chiefly in early Latin and in curses).

*Valeās beneque ut tibi sit, Pl., Poen., 912 ; farewell ! God bless you ! Utinam modo cōm̄ita efficerem possem, C., Att., IV. 16 ; may I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors. Utinam reviviscat frāter ! GELL., x. 6, 2 ; would that my brother would come to life again ! Utinam inserere iocū mōris easet, QUINT., II. 10, 9 ; would that it were usual to introduce jokes ! Illud utinam nō vērē scriberem, C., Fam., V. 17, 8 ; would that what I am writing were not true ! Utinam suscep̄tus nōn essem, C., Att., III.-II. 8 ; would I had not been born ! (CICERO's only example of nōn.) O mihi praeteritū referat si Iūppiter ann̄s, V., A., VIII. 560 ; O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by !*

**REMARK.**—For the wish with adverse decision, *vellem* and *māllem* (theoretically also *nōllem*) may be used with the Impf. and sometimes (especially *vellem*) with the Plupf. Subjunctive.

*Vellem adesse posset Panaetius ! C., Tusc., I. 33, 81 ; would that Panaetius could be present ! Vellem mē ad cōnam invitāsse, C., Fam., XII. 4, 1 ; would that you had invited ME to your dinner-party.*

So *velim*, *nōlim*, etc., for the simple wish (546, n. 2).

*Tuam mihi dari velim eloquentiam, C., N.D., II. 59, 147 ; I could wish your eloquence given to me.*

**NOTES.**—1. *Utinam* was perhaps originally an interrogative, *How, pray ?* If so, it belongs partly to the potential ; hence the frequent occurrence of *nōn*. *ō si* (occasionally *si*, V., A., VI. 187) introduces an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form ; as in the example : V., A., VIII. 560, 568.

2. The Impf. Subjv. is occasionally used in early Latin to give an unreal wish in the Past. This is almost never found in the later period.

*Utinam tē dī prius perderent, quam perilisti ē patriā tuā, Pl., Capt., 537. Tunc mihi vita foret, Tib., I. 10, 11.*

**262. The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations*:**

*Ita vivam ut maximis sumptus facias, C., Att., v. 15, 2; as I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlay). Moriar, si magis gaudetrem si id mihi accidisset, C., Att., VIII. 6, 8; may I die if I could be more glad if that had happened to me.*

NOTE.—The Fut. Indic. in this sense is rare: *Sic mō di amābunt ut mō tuārum miseritumst fortūnārum, Terc., Heort., 463.*

**263. The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative*:**

1. In the First Person Plural Present, which has no Imperative form:

*Amāmus patriam, C., Sest., 68, 148; let us love our country. Nō difficultia optāmus, C., Verr., IV. 7, 15; let us not desire what is hard to do.*

NOTE.—In the First Person Singular, the command fades into the wish.

2. In the Second Person.

(a) In the Present chiefly in the Singular, and chiefly of an imaginary “you”:

*Istō bonō ūtēre, dum adsit, cum absit, nō requirās, C., Cat. M., 10, 38; you must enjoy that blessing so long as 'tis here, when it is gone you must not pine for it.*

NOTE.—The Comic Poets use the Pr. negatively very often of a definite person, sometimes combining it with an Impv.: *Ignōsse, Irāta nō sis, Pl., Am., 924;* but in the classical period such usage is rare, and usually open to other explanations; a definite person may be used as a type, or the sentence may be elliptical.

(b) In the Perfect negatively:

*Nō trānsieris Hibēram, L., xxi. 44, 6; do not cross the Ebro. Nō vōs mortem timueritis, C., Tusc., I. 41, 98; have no fear of death!*

3. In the Third Person Present (regularly):

*Suum quisque nōscat ingenium, C., Off., I. 31, 114; let each one know his own mind. Dōnis impīi nō placēre audeant deūs, C., Leg., II. 16, 41; let the wicked not dare to try to appease the gods with gifts.*

NOTE.—The Pf. in this usage is very rare. *S., Jug., 85, 47; Tac., Ana., IV. 32, 1.*

**264. The Subjunctive is used as a *Concessive*:**

*Sit fur, C., Verr., v. 1, 4; (granted that) he be a thief. Fuarit (malus civis), C., Verr., I. 14, 87; (suppose) that he was a bad citizen.*

For other examples with *ut* and *nō*, see 608.

NOTE.—The past tenses are very rarely used concessively; see C., *Tweo.*, III. 19, 76 (Impf.); *Sest.*, 19, 48 (Plupf.).

**265.** The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (*cōniūctivus dēliberātivus*).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person :

*Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crudelitatem, C., Verr., I. 47, 122 ; shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty ? Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus se defenserent an obviam irent hostibus, NEP., I. 4, 4 ; there was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nos defendamus an obviam eamus !) [Example of Third Person, 428, n. 1.]*

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.

*Quā mē nunc vertam ! Undique custodior, C., Att., x. 12, 1 ; whither shall I now turn ? Sentinels on every side. Quid agerem ! C., Sest., 19, 42 ; what was I to do ?*

**REMARK.**—The answer to the Deliberative Question is the Impv. or the Imperative Subjv. of the Present (263, 2) or Past (272, 3).

#### Imperative Mood.

**266.** The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a concession, a prayer.

*Abi in malam rem, PL., Capt., 877 ; go (to the mischief), and be hanged. Compice mentem, H., O., I. 16, 22 ; curb your temper. De mihi hoc, mel meum ! PL., Trin., 244 ; give me this, honey dear !*

**267.** The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative (also, but less accurately, as the Present and Future Imperative). The First Imperative has only the Second Person ; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive (263, 1).

**REMARK.**—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification : so *sitō*, *know thou* ; *mementō*, *remember thou* ; and *habetō*, in the sense of *know*, *remember*.

On violation of Concord with the Imperative, see 211, n. 2.

**Note.**—The use of the Pronouns *tū*, *vōs*, etc., with the Impv., is colloquial, hence common in Comedy; or solemn: see V., A., VI. 95, 365, 675, 834, etc.

**268. 1.** The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

*Special:* *Patent portae; proficisci, C., Cat., I. 5, 10, Open stand the gates; depart.*

*General:* *Iustitiam cole et pietatem, C., Rep., VI. 16, 16, Cultivate justice and piety.*

2. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, recipes, and the like; likewise in familiar language.

Rēgiō IMPERIō DUO SUNTō; IIQUE CÖNSULÉS APPELLAMINō (180, 5, c); NEMINI PÄRENTō; OLLIS (104, III. N. 1) SALÜS POPULI SUPRÈMA LËX ESTō, C., Leg., III. 3, 8; *there shall be two (officers) with royal power; they shall be called consuls; they are to obey no one; to them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law.* Rem vōbis pröpñam: vōs eam penditō, C., Verr., IV. 1, 1; *I will propound the matter to you; do you thereupon perpend it.* Percontatōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est, H., Ep., I. 18, 69; *avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.*

**269. STRENGTHENING WORDS.**—The Imperative is often strengthened and emphasized by the addition of Adverbs, fossilized Imperatives, Phrases, etc.: *age, agite, agedum, agitedum, come; enclitic dum, then; modo, only; iamdūdum, at once; proinde, well, then; quin, why not? sānō, certainly; amībō, obsecrō, quæsō, please; siis (= si vis), sultis (= si voltis), sōdēs (= si audēs), if you please.* Most of these belong to familiar language, and are therefore found in great numbers in Comedy and in Cicero's letters. In the classical prose, and even later, they are not common. *Dum* in classical times is confined to *agedum*; *quin* is cited twice in CICERO (*MU.*, 29, 79; *Rosc. Com.*, 9, 25), and rarely later. *Iamdūdum* begins with VERNAL, and belongs to poetry and late prose. *Sānō* is not cited for the classical period. *Sultis* is confined to early Latin; and *sōdēs* occurs but once in CICERO (*Att.*, VII. 3, 11).

*Mittite, agedum, lègatōs, L., XXXVIII. 47, 11. Quin tū I modō, Pl., Cas., 755.*

**Note.**—On the violation of Concord with *age*, see 211, n. 2.

**270. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.**—1. The regular negative of the Imperative is *nō* (*nēve, neu*), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, it is poetical or colloquial.

*Hominem mortuum in urbe nō sepelitō nōve tūritō, C., Leg., II. 23, 58; thou shall not bury nor burn a dead man in the city. Impius nō audētō plâcere dōnis tram destrum, C., Leg., II. 9, 22; the impious man must not*

*dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods. Tu nō cede  
malis, sed contra audentior Itō, V., A., vi. 95; yield not thou to misfor-  
tunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.*

REMARKS.—1. *Nōn* may be used to negative a single word:

*A legibus nōn recēdāmus, C., Cluent., 57, 155; let us not recede from  
(let us stick to) the laws. Opus poliat lima, nōn exterat, Cf. QUINT., x. 4.  
4; let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.*

2. Instead of *nō* with the First Imperative was employed either *nōli* with the Infinitive (271, 2); or *nō* with the Pf. Subjv., but the latter is very rare in elevated prose (268, 2, b). On *nō* with Pr. Subjv. see 268, 2, a.

NOTE.—The use of *nōm* with the actual Impv. is found only in OVIN; but the addition of a second Impv. by *neque, nec*, instead of *nōve, neu*, begins in classical times (C., Att., xii. 22, 3), and becomes common later. The use of *neque (nec), nihil, nōm, nullus* with the Subjv. in an Impv. sense has recently been claimed for the Potential Subjv. (*must*, 257, 1) on account of the negative.

271. PERIPHRASES.—1. *Cūrā (cūrātō) ut, take care that;* *fac (facitō) ut, cause that;* *fac (facitō), do,* with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

*Cūrā ut quam primum (303, r. 1) venīs, C., Fam., iv. 10, 1; manage  
to come as soon as possible. Fac cōgitā, C., Fam., xi. 3, 4, Do reflect!*

NOTES.—1. *Facitō* is almost wholly confined to early Latin, especially PLAUTUS; so also *cūrātō*.

2. Early Latin also shows *vidē* and *vidētō* with Subjv. TERENCE introduces *volō, velim*, with Subjv., which is found also in later times; as, C., Fam., ix. 12, 2.

2. *Cavē* and *cavē* (*cavētō*) *nō, beware lest,* with the Subjunctive, and *nōli, be unwilling,* with the Infinitive, are circumlocutions for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive). *Fac nō* is also familiarly used.

*Cavē festinā, C., Fam., xvi. 12, 6; do not be in a hurry. Tantum  
cum fingēs nō sis manifesta cavētō, Ov., A.A., iii. 801; only when you  
pretend, beware that you be not detected. Nōli, amābō, verberāre lapidem,  
nō perdās manum, Pl., Cūrē., 197; don't beat a stone, I pray you, lest  
you spoil your hand. Fac nō quid aliud cūrē hōc tempore, C., Fam.,  
xvi. 11, 1; see that you pay no attention to anything else, at this time.*

NOTES.—1. Rare and confined to early Latin is the use of *cavē* with any but the second person. Cf. Pl., Aul., 660; Ter., And., 403.

2. Other phrases are those with *vidē nō* and *cūrātō nō*, with Subjv.; *comperēce*, *compēce* with Inf. (all ante-classical); *parce, mitte, omittē* with Inf. (poetical and post-classical); *nōlim* with Subjv. (Cic.); *fuge* with Inf. (Hor.); *abste* with Inf. (VERG.).

272. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.—1. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed :

- (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 2).
- (b) The Second Person of the Future Indicative (248).
- (c) The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 3).

2. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed :

- (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive, with *nō* (263, 2, n.).
- (b) The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with *nō* (263, 2).
- (c) The Second Person of the Future, with *nōn* (248).
- (d) The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with *nō* (263, 3).

REMARK.—The Pr. Subjv. is employed when stress is laid on the *continuance of the action*; the Pf., when stress is laid on the *completion*. Hence the use of the Pf. Subjv. in total prohibitions and passionate protests.

3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties). Compare 265, R.

Dōtem dārētis; quāqueret alium virūm, *Tee.*, *Ph.*, 297; *you should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.* Cr̄as ir̄ēs potīs, hodiē h̄ic cōñārēs. *Vals.*, *PL.*, *Pers.*, 710; *you ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye.* (Anything decided is regarded as past.) *Potius docēret causam* nōn ēsse aequam, *C.*, *Off.*, III. 22, 88; *he should rather have shown that the plea was not fair.* Nō pop̄decimēs (librōs), *C.*, *Att.*, II. 1, 3; *you ought not to have asked for the books.*

Observe the difference between the Unfulfilled Duty and the Unreal of the Past (597).

Mōrēstur; fēcisset certō si sine māximō dēdecorē potuisset, *C.*, *Rab. Post.*, 10, 29; *he ought to have died; he would certainly have done so, could he have (done so) without the greatest disgrace.*

NOTE.—The Plupf. tense in this usage is not ante-classical.

273. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command :

Nōn tacēs? *PL.*, *Am.*, 700; *won't you hold your tongue?* Quin tacēs? *Why don't you hold your tongue?* Quin datis, si quid datis? *PL.*, *Cas.*, 765; *why don't you give, if you are going to do it?* (Compare *Fac*, si quid facis, *MAET.*, I. 46, 1.) Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitae conviva recēdis? *LUCE.*, III. 938; *why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?*

**274.** *Puta, ut puta, for example,* begins with [C.] *ad Her.*, II. 11, 16 (reading doubtful); then H., S., II. 5, 32, *Quinte, puta, aut Pūbli.* Later it becomes more common, especially with the Jurists. See C., *Ph.*, II. 6, 15.

### 275. Summary of Imperative Constructions.

#### Positive.

2d P. *Audi, hear thou;* *auditō* (legal or contingent); *audiēs* (familiar); *audiēs* (ideal Second Person chiefly).

3d P. *Auditō* (legal), *let him hear;* *audiat.*

#### Negative.

2d P. *Nō audi, hear not* (poetic); *nō auditō* (legal); *nōm audiēs* (familiar); *nō audiēs* (chiefly ideal); *nōm audire* (common); *nō audiveris* (rare).

3d P. *Nō auditō* (legal), *let him not hear;* *nō audiat;* *nō audiverit.*

### Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Substantives.

**276.** The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.

**277.** 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

*Credat. He may believe (now or hereafter).*

*Crediderit. Let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter).*

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are Past Tenses, and regularly serve to indicate unreality. (See 597.)

**NOTE.**—A Subjv. of the Past, being a future of the past, gives a prospective (or future) action the time of which is over (or past), so that the analysis of the past tenses of the Subjv. shows the same elements as the Periphrastic Conjugation with *eram* and *fuī*. Hence the frequent parallel use. See 254, R. 2, and 597, R. 3.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification (515, R. 3); otherwise

the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 509.)

**278.** The Imperative is necessarily Future.

**279.** The Infinitive has two uses :

1. Its use as a Substantive.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

**280. THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE.**—As a Substantive the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect. (See 419.)

1. The Present Infinitive is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a Substantive. It has to do with *continued action*.

(a) The Present Infinitive is used as a subject or predicate. (See 423, 424.)

*Quibusdam totum hoc displicet philosophari, C., Fin., i. i, 1; to some this whole business of metaphysics is a nuisance.*

(b) The Present Infinitive is used as the object of Verbs of Creation (*Auxiliary Verbs*, Verbs that *help* the Infinitive into being ; see 423.)

*Cato servire quam pugnare mavult, C., Att., vii. 15, 2; Cato prefers to be a slave rather than to fight (being a slave to fighting).*

2. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a Substantive. It has to do with *completed action*, and is also used to express *attainment*.

(a) As a subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expressions or in marked opposition to the Present.

*Plus prōderit dēmōstrāsse rētam prōtinus viam quam revocare ab errōre iam līpsū, QUINT., II. 6, 2; it will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray. [Non] tam turpe fuit vincere quam contendere dec̄rum est, Ov., M., IX. 5; 'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.*

**REMARKS.**—1. By a kind of attraction *destitut*, *became*, takes occasionally a P<sup>t</sup>. Inf. (*emotional*).

*Tunc fl̄isse deputit, L., xxx. 44, 7; that was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept). Et trubulat̄ deputat̄, Ov., M., IV. 330; the very flush of shame was becoming.*

2. So *oportuit, behooved*, is frequently followed by the Pf. Part. passive, with or without *esse*. This seems to have belonged to familiar style ; it is accordingly very common in early Latin.

[Hoc] iam pridem factum esse oportuit, C., *Cat.*, I. 2, 5 ; *this ought to have been done long ago.*

(b) As an object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active, except after *velle, to wish*, which seems to have been a legal usage.

Nominem notis strnui aut ignavi militis notuisse volui, L., xxiv. 16, 11 ; *I wished to have marked (to mark finally, to brand) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice. Annales, quibus crdidiisse malis, L., XLII. II. 1. NEIQUIS EORUM BACANAL HABUISE VELET, S. C. DE BAC.*

Otherwise it is found mainly in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Inf.), and usually with the Pf. and Plupf. tenses, *volui, etc., potui, dñbueram (dñbus).*

Frtr̄s tendentes opicō Pélion imposuisse Olympō, H., O., III. 4, 52 ; *The brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus.*

NOTES.—1. This usage with *velle* seems to have approached often the Fut. Pf. in force. A Pf. Inf. after the Pr. of *posse* occurs very rarely : Nōn potes probassē nūgīs, Pl., *Aul.*, 828 ; see V., A., vi. 78, and several cases in OVID and MARTIAL.

2. The Pf. Inf. act. (subj. or obj.) is often found in the poets, especially in elegiac poetry, as the first word in the second half of a pentameter, where it can hardly be distinguished from a Present. This usage may be due partly to analogy with verbs of wishing, partly to the exigencies of the metre, partly to the influence of the Greek Aorist. It must be distinguished from the normal use of the Perfect : Quam iuvat immittē ventōs audire cubantem Et dominam tenerō dñtinuisse sīnū ! Tib., I. 1, 45.

3. Noteworthy is the occasional use of *dñbeō* with the Pf. Inf. act. in the sense "must have" : statim viciisse dñbeō, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 23, 78 ; dñbēs adnotissē, Plin., Ep., VII. 20, 6.

(c) In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment. See 537.

[Patriam] extinctam cupit, C., *Fin.*, IV. 24, 66 ; *he desires his country blotted out.*

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

Corinthum patr̄s vestri tōtius Graeciae lūmen extinctum esse voluerunt, C., *Imp.*, 5, 11 (211, R. 6).

NOTE.—This usage is common in Comedy and in CICERO, rare, if at all, in CAESAR and SALLUST ; and later also it is rare, surviving chiefly in phrases. The principal verb is *volū*, less often *cupiō*, very rarely *expetō* and *nōlō*.

**281. THE INFINITIVE AS THE REPRESENTATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.**—As the representative of the Indicative, the

Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

1. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

*Dicō eum venire, I say that he is coming; dicōbam eum venire, I said that he was coming.*

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

*Dicō eum vénisse, I say that he came, has come, used to come.*

*Dixi eum vénisse, I said that he had come, used to come, did come.*

NOTE.—*Memini*, *I remember*, when used of *personal experience*, commonly takes the Present: *Tum mē rēgēm appellārī & vōbis memini, nunc tyrranum vōdīrī videbū*, L., XXXIV. 31, 18; *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.*

So also rarely *memorīk tenebū*, *recorribū*, *I remember, I recall*, and *fugit mē, I do not remember*. When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed: *Mēmineram Marium ad infimōrum hominum misericordiam obtulisse*, C., *Sest.*, 22, 50; *I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures.*

The peculiar construction with the Pr. arises from the liveliness of the recollection. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Pf. may be used even of personal experience: *Mē memini irāsum dominas turbasse capillōs*, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 160; *I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.*

282. The Present Participle active denotes *continuance*; the Perfect passive, *completion or attainment*.

NOTE.—The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses. So the Pf. Part. is frequently employed when we use the Present; especially in classical prose, with verbs that indicate a condition, mental or physical, where the action of the participle is conceived as continuing up to, and sometimes into, that of the leading verb, as *ratus, thinking*; *veritus, fearing*; *gl̄vius, rejoicing*, etc. This usage spreads later: *complexus, embracing*; *hortat̄s, exhorting*.

283. The Future Participle (active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with *sum, I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

NOTES.—1. The so-called Fut. Part. passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed (251).

2. The Supine, being without tense relations, does not belong here.

## SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

**284.** The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification*, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

## A.

## 1. Multiplication of the Subject.

## Concord.

**285. NUMBER.**—The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural number :

*Læcias Tarquinius et Tullia minor iunguntur nuptiis*, L., I. 46, 9 ;  
*Lucius Tarquinius and Tullia the younger are united in marriage.*  
*Pater et m̄ter mortui [sunt]*, TER., Eun., 518 ; *father and mother are dead.*

**EXCEPTIONS.**—1. The common predicate may agree with a Sing. subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important: “My flesh and my heart faileth,” PSA., LXXXIII. 26.

*Aet̄as et forma et super omnia R̄m̄nūm nōmen t̄s ferociōrem facit*, L., XXXI. 18, 3 ; *your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.* *Latagum saxō occupat t̄s faciemque adversam* V., A., X. 698 (828, N. 2).

The agreement depends largely also upon the position of the verb. If it precedes or follows the first subj., the Sing. is more apt to stand.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a Sing. verb : “When distress and anguish cometh upon you,” PROV., I. 27.

*Religiō et fides antepōntur amicitiae*, C., Off., III. 10, 46 ; *let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.*

So any close union : “Your gold and silver is cankered,” JAS., v. 3.

*Senatus populusque R̄m̄nus intellegit*, C., Fam., v. 8, 2; *the senate and people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives).* *Tua fama et gn̄stae vita in dubium veniet*, TER., Ad., 340 ; *your good name will be jeopardized and your daughter's life.*

3. When the same predicate is found with two or more subjects, who are conceived as acting independently, classical usage requires that the predicate be in the Singular. LIVY introduces the Pl., which grows, and becomes the rule in TACITUS : *Palātium R̄mulus, Remus Aventinum ad inaugurandum tempa capiunt*, L., I. 6, 4.

**NOTES.**—1. *Neque—neque, neither—nor*, allows the Pl. chiefly when the Persons are different: *Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus*, TER., Ad., 103 ; *neither you nor I did this.*

The same is true, but not so common, of *et - et* (*as well as*), *aut - aut*, *either - or*.

2. A Sing. subj. combined with another word by *cum*, *with*, is treated properly as a Singular. It is treated as a Pl. once each by CATO, TERENCE (*Heaut.*, 473), CICERO (by anacoluthon), CAESAR (*B.C.*, III. 88), more often by SALLUST and his imitators, LIVY, and later writers. VELLEIUS, VALERIUS M., and TACITUS follow the classical usage.

*Sulla cum Scipione . . . 18gts inter se contulerunt, C., Ph., XII. 11, 27. Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur, L., XXI. 6o, 7; the general himself with some of the leading men are captured.*

3. In the Abl. Abs. the Part. stands usually in the Pl. with persons, usually in the Sing. with things. *C. Graochō et M. Fulviō Flacco interfectis, S., Iug., 16, 2. Crātētē benevolentiisque sublītē, C., Lact., 27, 102.*

**286. GENDER.** — When the Genders of combined subjects are the same, the adjective predicate agrees in gender; when the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.

1. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter.

(a) The strongest :

*Pater et māter mortui [sunt], T.S.R., Eun., 518 (285). Mūrus et porta dē caelō ticta erant, L., XXXII. 29, 1; wall and gate had been struck by lightning. Hōc anima atque animus vincti sunt foedore semper, LUCR., III. 416.*

(b) The nearest :

*Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Cf. TAC., Ann., XII. 65; Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius. Hippolochus Lārisseōrumque dēditum est praesidium, L., XXXVI. 9, 14; Hippolochus and the Larissean garrison (were) surrendered.*

2. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

(a) Both as persons :

*Rēx rēgiaque classis profecti (sunt), L., XXI. 50, 11; the king and the king's fleet set out.*

(b) Both as things :

*Naturā inimica [sunt] libera civitās et rēx, Cf. L., XLIV. 24, 2; a free state and a king are natural enemies.*

3. When the subjects are feminine abstracts the predicate may be a neuter Plural (211, R. 4).

*Stultitiam et intemperantiam dicimus esse fugienda, C., Fin., III. II, 39; folly and want of self-control (we say) are (things) to be avoided.*

NOTE.—This usage does not appear in early Latin, nor in CAESAR or SALLUST.

**287. PERSONS.**—When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third :

*Si tu et Tullia, lux nostra, valētis, ego et suūissimus Cicerō valēmus,*  
C., *Fam.*, xiv. 5, 1; *if Tullia, light of my life, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.*

REMARK.—(a) In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject.

*Et ego et Cicerō meus flagitābit,* C., *Att.*, iv. 18, 5; *my Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.* *Beātē vivere aliī in aliō, vōs in voluptate pūnitis,* C., *Fin.*, II. 27, 86; *some make a blessed life to rest on one thing, some on another, you on pleasure.*

So regularly with disjunctives, see 285, n. 1.

(b) The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness : *Ego et uxor mea, Wife and I.*

## 2. Qualification of the Subject.

**288.** The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are :

I. The adjective and its equivalents : *amicus certus, a sure friend.*

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are : 1. The pronouns *hic, this, ille, that, etc.* 2. Substantives denoting *rank, age, trade* : *servus homō, a slave person ; homō senex, an old fellow ; homō gladiōtor, a gladiator-fellow ; mulier ancilla, a servant-wench.* 3. The Genitive (360, 1). 4. The Ablative (400). 5. Preposition and case : *exōcessus ē vitæ, departure from life.* 6. Adverbs, chiefly with substantival participles : *rēctē facta, good actions.* 7. Relative clauses (505).

II. The substantive in apposition : *Cicerō orātor, Cicero the orator.*

## I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

### Concord.

**289.** The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case :

GENDER.	NUMBER.
<i>Vir sapiēns, a wise man,</i>	<i>viri sapientiēs, wise men.</i>
<i>Mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman,</i>	<i>muliētēs pulchrae, beautiful women.</i>
<i>Rēgium dōnum, royal gift,</i>	<i>rēgīa dōna, royal gifts.</i>

## CASE.

<i>Vir sapientia, of a wise man.</i>	<i>bone fili! good son!</i>
<i>Mulier pulchrae, for a beautiful woman.</i>	<i>rēgīs dōnō, by royal gift.</i>
<i>Virum sapientem, wise man.</i>	<i>mūlīrēs pulchrās, beautiful women.</i>

290. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest ; rarely with the most important.

*Volusēnus, vir et cōsillii magni et virtutis, Cæs., B.G., III. 5, 2 ; Volusēnus, a man of great wisdom and valor. Cincta maria terraeque patēbant, S., C., 10, 1 ; all seas and lands lay open. Multa alia castella viciquē aut dēfēcta hostiliter aut integra in potestātem vñstre, L., IX. 38, 1.*

REMARKS.—1. For emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, the adj. is repeated with every substantive. Sometimes also for rhetorical reasons simply.

(Semprōniae) multas facētiae, multusque lep̄s inerat, S., C., 25, 5 ; Semprōnia had a treasure of witticisms, a treasure of charming talk.

2. When a substantive is construed with several similar adjectives in the Sing., it may be in agreement with one in the Sing. or may stand in the Pl., according to its position :

*Quarta et Mārtia legiōnēs, C., Fam., XI. 19, 1, but Legiō Mārtia quārtaque, C., Ph., V. 17, 46, The fourth and Martian legions.*

NOTES.—1. A common surname is put in the Plural : **M.** (et) **Q. Cicerōnēs, Marcus and Quintus Cicero** ; **C.**, **Cn.**, **M. Carbōnēs, Catus, Graeus (and) Marcus Carbo** ; otherwise, **M. Cicerō** et **Q. Cicerō**, **Marcus and Quintus Cicero**.

2. Poets are free in regard to the position of the adjective: *Semper hōnēs nōmanque tuum laudēsque manēbunt, V., A., I. 609.*

291. Position of the Attribute.—1. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, otherwise in classical Latin ordinarily after it. But see 676.

1. *Fugitivus servus, a runaway slave* (one complex).
2. *Servus fugitivus, a slave (that is) a runaway* (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulae, such as *civis Rōmānus, Roman citizen* ; *populus Rōmānus, people of Rome*.

Compare *body politic, heir apparent* in English.

REMARKS.—1. Variation in the position of the adj. often causes variation in the meaning of the word. Thus *rēs bonae, good things* ; *bonae rēs, articles of value, or good circumstances* ; *rēs urbānae, city matters* ; *urbānae rēs, witticisms* ; *mēnsa secunda, a second table* ; *secunda mēnsa, dessert*.

2. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then *generally* precede their substantive : *summa aqua*, *the surface of the water*; *summus mōns*, *the top of the mountain*; *vērē primō, primō vērē*, *in the beginning of spring*. Similarly in *mediā urbe*, *in the midst of the city*; *reliqua, cōstera Graecia*, *the rest of Greece*, and the like.

2. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first, sometimes before them all.

*Divitiae, nōmen, opēs vacuae cōmaliōs dēdecoris plēnae sunt, C., Rep., I. 34, 51 ; riches, name, resources (when) void of wisdom are full of dishonor.*

For examples of the other positions see 290.

### Numerals.

**292. Duo** means simply *two, ambō, both* (two considered together), *uterque, either* (two considered apart, as, “They crucified two other with him, on either side one,” JOHN, XIX. 18) :

*Supplicatiō ambōrum nōmine et triumphus utriusq[ue] dēcretus est, L., XXVIII. 9 ; a thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed. Qui utrumque probat, ambōbus dēbuit uti, C., Fin., II. 7, 20 ; he who approves of either ought to have availed himself of both.*

REMARK.—*Uterque* is seldom Pl., except of sets; so with *plūrālia tantum*.

*Utrique* (i.e., *plēbis fāntōrēs et senātus*) *victoriām crudeliter exērēbant*, S., C., 38, 4 ; *either party* (democrats and senate) *made a cruel use of victory*. *Duae fūerunt Ariovistī uxōrēs*: *utraeque in eī fugā perīerunt*, CAES., B.G., I. 53, 4 ; *Ariovistus's wives were two in number; both perished in that flight*. *Proximō dī Caesar 5 castris utrisque cōpiās suās dēduxit*, CAES., B.G., I. 50, 1.

On *uterque* with the Pl., see 211, R. 1; with Gen., see 371, R.

**293. Mille, a thousand**, is in the Sing. an indeclinable adj. and is less frequently used with the Genitive: *mille militēs*, rather than *mille militūm*, *a thousand soldiers*; in the Pl. it is a declinable substantive, and must have the Genitive: *duo milia militūm*, *two thousand(s of) soldiers = two regiments of soldiers*. If a smaller number comes between, the substantive usually follows the smaller number :

8500 cavalry,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tria milia quingenti equites}, \\ \text{tria milia equitum et quingenti}, \text{but} \\ \text{equites tria milia quingenti, or} \\ \text{equitum tria milia quingenti}. \end{array} \right.$

But *duo milia quingenti hostium in acie periēre*, L., xxii. 7, 8.

NOTE.—The use of *mille* as a substantive with the Part. Gen. is found mostly in ante-classical and post-classical Latin. CICERO and CAESAR use it but rarely, and in phrases such as *mille nummum*, *mille passuum*. LIVY is fonder of it.

**294. ORDINALS.**—The Ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English; thus always in dates: *annō ducentēsimō quartō, in the year 204*. Sometimes they are used for the cardinals with a carelessness that gives rise to ambiguity:

*Quattuor anni sunt, ex quō tē nō vidi,*  
*It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).*

*Quārtus annus est, ex quō tē nō vidi.*  
*It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).*

NOTE.—To avoid this ambiguity forms of *incipere*, *to begin*, and *exigere*, *to finish*, seem to have been used. Cf., PL., *Capit.*, 980; *Ciel.*, 161.  
On *quisque* with the ordinal, see 318, 2.

**295. DISTRIBUTIVES.**—The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

*Bis bina quot [sunt]?* C., *N.D.*, II. 18, 49; *how many are twice two?*  
*Scriptum ecclaeum cum quinque pedibus, pullis gallinaceis tris cum ternis*  
*pedibus nātō esse*, L., xxxii. i, 11; *a letter was written to say that a colt*  
*had been foaled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three*  
*feet (apiece).*

With *singuli* the distributive is preferred, but the cardinal may be used.

*Āntōnius (pollicitus est) dēnāriōs quīngāndōs singulis militib⁹ datūrum,*  
C., *Fam.*, x. 32, 4; *Antonius promised to give five hundred denarii to*  
*each soldier. Singulis cānōtribus dēnārii trecenti* (so all MSS.) *imperati*  
*sunt*, C., *Verr.*, II. 55, 137; *the censors were required to pay three*  
*hundred denarii apiece.*

NOTE.—Poets and later prose writers often use the distributive when the cardinal would be the rule; thus *bini* is not unfrequently used of a pair even in CICERO: *bini* (*scyphōs*) *habēbam*, *Verr.*, iv. 14, 32. When there is an idea of grouping, the distributive is often broken up into a multiplicative and a distributive; as,

*Carmen ab ter novānis virginib⁹ cani iūssērunt*, L., xxxi. 12, 9; *they ordered*  
*a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins.*

On the other hand, prose sometimes shows a cardinal when exact usage would require a distributive. So regularly *milia*.

**Milia** talentum per duodecim annos (dabitis), L., XXXVII. 45, 15.

On the distributives with *pluráliz tantum*, see 97, n. 3.

### Comparatives and Superlatives.

**296. COMPARATIVE.**—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with *quam*, *than*, or in the Ablative :

*Ignoratiō futūrum malorum utilior est quam scientia*, C., *Div.*, II. 9, 28; *ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them)*. *Nihil est virtute amabilius*, C., *Lael.*, 8, 28; *nothing is more lovable than virtue*.

**REMARKS.**—1. (a) The Abl. is used only when the word with *quam* would stand in the Nom. or Acc. (644).

*Caesar minor est* { *quam Pompeius,* } *Caesar is younger than Pompey.*  
*Pompeius,*

*Caesarem plus amamus* { *quam Pompeium,* } *we love Caesar more than Pompey.*

In the second example the use of the Abl. may give rise to ambiguity, as the sentence may also mean "*we love Caesar more than Pompey loves him*." This ambiguity is always present when adverbs are used, and hence good prose avoids using a comparative adv. with an Ablative. See H., *S.*, I. i, 97.

(b) With cases other than Nom. or Acc., *quam* is regularly used to avoid ambiguity.

*Anulis nostris plus quam animis ereditur*, SEN., *Ben.*, III. 15, 3 (217).

2. The Abl. is very common in negative sentences and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

*Polybiū sequāmur, quō nōmō fuit diligenter*, C., *Rep.*, II. 14, 27; *let us follow Polybius, than whom no one was more careful*.

3. Measure of difference is put in the Ablative (408).

4. *Quam* is often omitted after *plus*, *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, and the like, without affecting the construction :

*Homini miserō plus quingentō colaphōs infregit mīhi*, TER., *Ad.*, 199; *he has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing boxes on the ear*. *Spatium est nōmō amplius pedum sēcentūrum*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 38, 5; *the space is not more than (of) six hundred feet*.

But the normal construction is not excluded :

*Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 19, 1; *a swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā)*. *Nostrī milites amplius hōris quattuor pugnāvērunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, IV. 37, 3.

5. In statements of age we may have a variety of expressions ; thus, *more than thirty years old* may be :

1. *Natus plus (quam) trigintā annōs.*    3. *M̄ior (quam) trigintā annōs natus.*
2. *Natus plus trigintā annis* (rare).    4. *M̄ior trigintā annis (natus).*
5. *M̄ior trigintā annorum.*

6. On the combination of the comparative with *opinōne, opinion, sp̄s, hope*, and the like, see 398, n. 1.

**NOTES.**—1. Verbs and other words involving comparison sometimes have the Abl. where another construction would be more natural. Thus, *m̄ille, to prefer* (poet. and post-classical), *aequus, adaequus, equally* (early and late), *alius, other* (mainly poetic and rare): *Nūllōs h̄is m̄illēm fidē spectāsse*, H., S. ii. 8, 70. *Qui m̄e in terrā aequū fortūnūs erit?* Pl., *Curae.*, 241. *Nō p̄tēs alium sapiente bonōque bedūm*, Ep., i. 16, 20.

2. Instead of the Abl., the Gen. is found occasionally in late Latin.

3. Instead of *quam* or the Abl., prepositional uses with the positive are often found; as *prae, in comparison with, praeter, ante, beyond*; also *supr̄s quam*. Poetical is the circumlocution with *quālis*, as Hor., *Epid.* 5, 59. *Inferior* is sometimes constructed with the Dat., according to the sense; *inferior to* instead of *lower than*.

4. *Atque for quam* is mainly poetical; see 644, n. 2.

**297. Standard of Comparison omitted.**—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied : 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context :

*Solent r̄gēs Persik̄um plūr̄es uxōres habere*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, iii. 33, 76; *the kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].*

2. By the proper standard :

*Senectūs est nātūrā loquātor*, C., *Cat. M.*, 16, 55, *Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative.*

3. By the opposite :

*Quīlēsē erit melius*, L., iii. 48, 8; *it will be better to be perfectly quiet* (than to make a disturbance).

**298. Disproportion.**—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with *quam prō, than for*, and the Ablative, or with *quam ut, that*, or *quam qui, who*, and the Subjunctive :

*Minor caedē quam prō tantā victōriā fuit*, L., x, 14, 21; *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory.* *Quis nō intellegit Canachi signa rigidiōra esse quam ut imitentur veritātem?* C., *Br.*, 18, 70; *who does not perceive that Canachus' figures are too stiff to imitate the truth of nature?* *M̄ior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre*, Ov., *M.*, vi. 195; *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

**REMARK.**—Disproportion may also be expressed by the positive in combination with prepositional phrases, *etc.*: *prō multitudine angusti flāe*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 2, 5; *boundaries too small for their multitude*.

**NOTES.**—1. The constructions *quam prō* and *quam qui* are both post-Ciceronian.  
2. The *ut* is frequently omitted after *quam*, as: *Dolibella olerinus Asiā [ex-ōesit]*, *quam eō praesidium addūci potuisse*, C., *Fam.*, XII. 15, 1. This is especially common after *potius quam*.

**299. Two Qualities compared.**—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either *magis* and *quam* with the positive, or a double comparative :

*Celer tunc disertus magis est quam sapiens*, C., *Att.*, X. 1, 4; *your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.* *Acutitōrem sē quam ornatitōrem [vult]*, C., *Opt. Gen.*, 2, 6; *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate*.

**NOTES.**—1. There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, which is found first, but rarely, in CICERO, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: *fortius quam feliciter*, *with more bravery than good luck*.

2. Post-Augustan Latin shows occasionally the comparative followed by *quam*, and the positive: *Nimia pietatis vestra scribus quam cōsideratē excitavit*, TAC., *H.*, I. 83.

**300. Restriction to the Comparative.**—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

*Natus maior, the eldest (of two), the elder; natus minor, the youngest, the younger. Prior, the first; posterior, the last.*

*Posteriorē cogitationē, ut siunt, sapientiorē solent esse*, C., *Ph.*, XII. 2, 5; *afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest*.

**REMARK.**—The same rule applies to the interrogative *uter, which of two?* (*whether?*): *Ex dubiis uter dignior? ex pluribus, quis dignissimus?* QUINT., VII. 4, 21; *of two, which is the worthier? of more (than two), which is the worthiest?*

**NOTE.**—*Quis* is rarely used instead of *uter*, as C., *Fam.*, VI. 3, 1; V., *A.*, XII. 725.

**301. Comparative Strengthened.** The comparative is often strengthened during the classical period by the insertion of *etiam, even*; later also by *adhuc, still*. *Multō* is properly the Ablative of difference, and is the normal form until the time of VERGIL, when its place is taken largely by *longē*, except in HORACE, who retains *multō*. Ante-classical and post-classical Latin occasionally doubles the comparative : *magis dulcior, Pl.*, *Stich.*, 699. *Nihil inveniēs magis hōc certō certius, Pl.*,

*Capt.*, 643. Even in CICERO a word involving Preference is sometimes strengthened by *potius*:

[Themistocli fuit] optabilius obliuisci posse potius quam meminisse, C., *Or.*, II. 74, 300; *Themistocles thought it (more) preferable to be able to forget (rather) than to be able to remember.*

**302. Superlative.**—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

Quintus Fabius Maximus, *Quintus Fabius the Great*. *Maximus impetrī, maiore fortūnā*, L., XXVIII. 36, 2; *with great vigor, with greater luck*. Tam fālīx esās quam fālīximā vellem, Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27; *would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair*.

**303. Superlative Strengthened.**—The superlative is strengthened by *multā, much* (especially in early Latin); *longē, by far* (the normal usage in the classical period); *vel, even*; *fīnus, finis omnīum, one above all others*; *quam* (with adverbs and adjectives), *quantus* (with *maximus*), *ut* (with adverbs)—*potest, potuit, as—as possible*.

Ex Britannis longē sunt hūmānissimi qui Cantium incolunt, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 14, 1; *of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent*. Prōtagorū sophistē illis temporibꝫ vel maximus, C., *N.D.*, I. 23, 68; *Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times*. Urbem finam mihi amicissimam dēclināvi, C., *Planc.*, 41, 97; *I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me*. (Caesar) quam aquissimō locō potest castra committit, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 49, 7; *Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible*.

**REMARKS.**—1. The omission of *potest* leaves *quam* with the superlative, which becomes a regular combination: *as (great) as possible*.

2. For *tam, tantum*, with positive followed by *quam, quantum qui*, and the superlative, see 642, R. 5.

## PRONOUNS.

### I. Personal Pronouns.

**304. 1.** The personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb; see 207.

2. The Genitive forms, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are used mainly as *Objective Genitives*; see 364, N. 2.

(Marcellinus) s̄c scerrimum tui dēfēnsōrem fore ostendit, C., *Fam.*, I. I., 2; *Marcellinus showed that he would be your keenest defender*.

**Notes.**—1. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* for *nostri, vestri*, are very rare: [Iuppiter, cīstōs] hūius urbis &c *vestrum*, Cf. C., *Cal.*, III. 12, 29.

2. The Possessive pronouns sometimes are found in place of this Genitive: *Neque neglegentia tuā neque odiō id fecit tuū*, TEE., *Ph.*, 1016; *he did this neither from*

*neglect of thee nor from hairef of thee. Vester cōnspectus reficit et recreat mem-  
tem meam,* C., *Flanc.*, 1, 2; *the sight of you refreshes and renewes my spirites.*

"If I be a master, where is my fear?" *MAL.*, 1, 6.

3. The Genitive forms, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are used *partitively*; see 364, R.

*Tū ad mē venire uterque nostrum cupit,* C., *Att.*, XIII. 33, 2; *each of  
us two desires that you should come to me.*

NOTES.—1. So regularly also in certain phraseological uses which may be partitive at basis. *Frequentia vestrum, cōsensus vestrum*, regularly in combination with *omnium* (364, R.), and occasionally when the Possessive is more natural; *is enim splendor est vestrum,* C., *Att.*, VII. 134, 8.

2. For a Part. Gen. of the third person (reflexive) a circumlocution must be used, such as *ex sib* or the Possessive *subrūm*.

## 2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

305. **Hic, this** (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean:

1. The speaker himself: *hic homō = ego*, Pl., *Trin.*, 1115.
2. The persons with whom the speaker identifies himself, e. g., the judges in a suit at law: *si ego hīs nōvi, if I know these men (= the jury).*
3. The most important subject immediately in hand: *hic sapiēns dē quō loquor*, C., *Ac.*, II. 33, 105; *this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking.*
4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: *hīc stadium, this pursuit of mine, of ours.*
5. That which has just been mentioned: *haec hīc tenuis, these things thus far = so much for that.*
6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: *hīc con-  
dicōnibus, on the following terms.*
7. The current period of time: *hīc diēs, to-day; haec nox, the night just past or just coming; hīc mēnsis, the current month.*

306. **Iste, that** (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person):

*Perfer istam militiam,* C., *Fam.*, VII. 11, 2; *endure that military service of yours.* *Adventū tuō ista subellia vacuēfacta sunt,* C., *Cat.*, I. 7, 16; *at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

NOTE.—The supposed contemptuous character of *iste* arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, "the person *at* whom one speaks or points," and precisely the same thing is true of *hic* and *ille*, but less common.

307. **Ille, that** (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to *hic, this*.

*Sed mē ille admonuit, C., Or., III., 55, 209 ; that (yon) you reminded me.*  
*Q. Catulus nōn antiquō illō mōre sed hōc nostrō eruditus, C., Br., 35, 182;*  
*Q. Catulus, a cultivated man, not after the old-fashioned standard of a by-gone time (illō) but by the standard of to-day (hōc).*

Ille may mean :

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often ille quidem) :  
*illud quod initō vobis prōposui, C., Font., 7, 17; that which I propounded to you at first.*

2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive) : *tēstula illa, that (notorious) potsherd = institution of ostracism ; illud Solōnis, that (famous saying) of Solon's.*

3. That which is to be recalled : *illud imprimis mirabile, that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.*

4. That which is expected :

*Illa dies veniet mēs quā lugubria pōnam, Ov., Tr., IV. 2, 78 ; the day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.*

REMARKS.—1. Hic and ille are used together in contrasts : as, *the latter—the former, the former—the latter.*

(a) When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed : *hic, the latter ; ille, the former.*

*Ignavia corpus hebetat, labor firmat ; illa māttiram senectitem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit, CELS., I. i ; laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it ; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.*

(b) When the former is the more important, hic is *the former, ille, the latter :*

*Mellior tūtiorque est certa pīx quam spērīta victōria ; haec in nostrī, illa in dēdrūm manū est, L., XXX. 30, 19 ; better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory ; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.*

2. *Hic et ille ; ille et ille ; ille aut ille, this man and (or) that man = one or two.*

*Nōn dicam hōc signum ablatūm esse et illud ; hōc dieb, nullum tē signum reliquisse, C., Verr., I. 20, 58 ; I will not say that this statue was taken off and that ; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.*

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of hic, iste, ille : *hic, here (where I am) ; hinc, hence (from where I am) ; hūc, hither (where I am) ; istūc, there (where you are) ; illūc, there (where he is), etc.*

4. The Demonstratives hic, iste, ille, and the Determinative is, are often strengthened by quidem, indeed. The second member is then introduced by sed, sed tamen (more rarely tamen, vērum, autem, vērū), vērum-tamen, and sometimes is added asyndetically. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.

*Optare hoc quidem est, non docere, C., Tusc., II. 13, 30; THAT is a (pious) wish, not a (logical) proof. Nihil perfertur ad nos praeter rumores satis istos quidem constantes sed adhuc sine auctore, C., Fam. XII. 9, 1; nothing is brought to us except reports, consistent enough, it is true, but thus far not authoritative.*

Ille is most often used thus ; is, iste, hic, more rarely.

NOTES.—1. Hic and ille are sometimes employed to add a qualification to a substantive by means of a contrast : *Orator non ille vulgaris sed hic excellens, C., Or., 14, 45; an orator, not of the (yon) common type, but of the ideal excellence (we seek).*

2. Not unfrequently in poetry, very rarely in prose, in a long sentence a substantive is repeated by means of ille : V., A., I. 3, ille et terris iactatus ; H., O., IV. 9, 51.

3. Sometimes two forms of hic, ille, or is are found in the same clause referring to different substantives : *Evolve diligenter eius [i. e., Platōnis] eum librum, qui est de animis, C., Tusc., I. 11, 24.*

4. Ille may refer to an oblique form of is : *Nūn est amici tālem esse in eum, qualis ille in sē est, C., Læd., 16, 59.*

5. Ille is found chiefly in poetry with the personal pronouns ego, tu, and occasionally with hic, and when so used takes its fullest force. *Hunc illum fatis externis ab sēde profectum portendi generum, V., A., VII. 255.*

### 3. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

308. Is, that, is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person. It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative :

*Mīhi vénit obviam tuus puer ; is mīhi litteras abs tē reddidit, C., Att., II. I. 1; I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you. Is minimō eget mortalis qui minimum cupit, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.); that mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.*

REMARKS.—1. Is, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nom., more rarely in an oblique case (619).

*Bis dat qui dat celeriter, SYRUS, 235 (Fr.); he gives twice who gives in a trice.*

Often it has the force of tūlis (631, 1) in this connection :

*Ego sum qui nihil umquam mēa potius quam mēorum civium causā fecerim, C., Fam., V. 21, 2; I am a man never to have done anything for my own sake, rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.*

2. Is, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as he or that in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are : et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that too ; neque is, et is nōn, and he not, and that not ; sed is, but he, further strengthened by quidem, indeed. To refer to the whole action id is employed.

*Exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antiqua, C., Verr., III. 90, 210; we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date. Epicurus finit in domō et eā quidem angustā quam magnōs tenuit amicōrum gregēs, C., Fin., I. 20, 65; what shoals of friends Epicurus had in one house, and*

*that a pinched-up one!* Negotium magnum est navigare atque id mense Quinetili, C., Att. v. 12, 1; *it is a big job to take a voyage and that in the month of July.*

3. It does not represent a substantive before a Gen., as in the English *that of*. In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

Nun iudicis discipulorum dicere debet magister sed discipuli magistri, QUINT., II. 2, 18; *the master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils; but the pupils according to that of the master.* Nulla est celeritas quae possit cum animi celeritate contendere, C., Tusc., I. 19, 43; *there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.* M. Coelius tribunal suum iuxta C. Treboni sellam collocavit, CAES., B.C., III. 20, 1; *Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.*

Of course *hic*, *ille*, and *iste* can be used with the Gen. in their proper sense.

**309. REFLEXIVE.** Instead of forms of *is*, the Reflexive Pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, together with the Possessive of the Reflexive *suos (-us)*, *sua*, *suom (-um)* is used. (See 521.)

1. *Regularly* when reference is made to the grammatical subject of the sentence :

Ipsa se quisque diligit quod sibi quinque circus est, C., Lael., 21, 80; *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself.* (Fadius) Et me diligitur propter summam suam humilitatem, C., Fam., xv. 14, 1; *Fadius is a favorite of mine by reason of his exceeding kindness.*

The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

Contentum suis rebus esse maximae sunt divitiae, C., Par., vi. 3, 51; *to be content with one's own things (with what one hath) is the greatest riches.* Perventum ad suos erat, L., xxxiii. 8, 6.

"Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep himself unspotted from the world." JAMES, i. 27.

2. *Frequently* when reference is made to the *actual* subject (521, R. 2) :

Suos rex reginas placet, PL., St., 133; *every queen favors her own king (every Gill loves her own Jack).* Osculatur tigrim suus custos, SEN., E.M., 85, 41; *her own keeper kisses the tigress (the tigress is kissed by her own keeper).* Cui proposita sit conservatio sui necesse est hunc partes quoque sui carnis esse, C., Fin., v. 13, 37; *he who has in view the preservation of himself (self-preservation) must necessarily hold dear the parts of (that) self also.*

This is especially common with *suos*, which when thus employed has usually its emphatic sense: *own, peculiar, proper.*

3. **Sui, sibi, sē** are the regular complements of the infinitive and its equivalents when a reflexive idea is involved ; they are also used with prepositions **ergā, inter, propter, per**, for especial emphasis.

(Rōmāni) **sui colligendi hostibus facultatem** (nōn) **relinquunt**, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 ; *the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*  
**Ipsum Furnium per sē vidi libertissimā**, C., *Fam.*, x. 3, 1.

4. **Suos (-us)** is also used in prepositional phrases that are joined closely with the substantives ; so after **cum, inter**, and more rarely after **in, intrā, and ad**.

**Māgōnem cum clāsse suā in Hispaniā mittunt**, L., xxiii. 32, 11 ; *they sent Mago with his fleet to Spain.* **Helvētiōn in finēs suōs reverti iūsūt**, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 28, 8 ; *he ordered the Helvetians to return to their own country.*

So the phrases **suō tempore, at the right time** ; **suō locō, at the right place.**

**Cūmoediae quem tūsum in pueris putem suō locō dicam**, QUINT., I. 8, 7 ; *what I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.*

NOTES.—1. The writer may retain forms of **is**, if he desires to emphasize his own point of view. So too in prepositional combinations.

(Caesar) **Cicerōnēm prō̄ sīus meritō landat**, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 52, 4 ; *Caesar praises Cicero according to his desert.* [Pompeius] **cum dēcrētūm dē mē Capuae fēcit**, ipse cīntacē Italīaē sīus fidēm implōranti signūm dedit, C., *MU.*, x. 39.

2. In early comedy and then again in late Latin, **suos** is sometimes strengthened by **sibi**: **suō sibī glādiō hunc iugulō**, TEE., *Ad.*, 958 ; very rarely in classical Latin (C., *Ph.*, II. 37, 96). Similarly **mēs mīhi**, PL., *Truc.*, 698.

3. On **sum quisque**, see 318, 3.

4. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment 521.

**310. Idem, the same**, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing ; it is often to be translated by *at the same time* ; *likewise, also* ; *yet, notwithstanding*.

(Cimōn) **incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suns**, NEP., v. 3, 1 ; *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.* **Quidquid honestum [est] idem [est] titile**, C., *Off.*, II. 3, 10 ; *whatever is honorable is also (at the same time) useful.* **Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere posuit idem**, Ov., *Tr.*, II. 266 ; *nothing helps that may not likewise hurt.* (Epicurus), **cum optimam et praestantissimā nātūram dei dicat esse, negat idem esse in deō grātiām**, C., *N.D.*, I. 43, 121 ; *although Epicurus says that the nature of God is*

*transcendently good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favor in God. Difficilis facillis, iucundus acerbus, et idem, MAET., XII. 47, 1; crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—1. When a second attribute is to be added to a substantive it is often connected by *idemque*, *et idem*, *atque idem*: *Vir doctissimus Platō atque idem gravissimus philosophorum omnium*, C., *Leg.*, II. 6, 14; *Plato, a most learned man, and at the same time weightiest of all the philosophers.*

2. *The same as* is expressed by *idem* with *qui*, with *atque* or *sc.*, with *ut*, with *cum*, and poetically with the Dative. See 359, n. 6, 642, 643.

*Tibi meūm in eōdem est pistrinō vivendum*, C., *Or.*, II. 33, 144; *you have to live in the same treadmill with me.*

3. *Idem* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is + dem*).

311. 1. *Ipse, self*, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

*Ipse feci, I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it. Nunc ipsum, at this very instant, at this precise moment.*

*Valvae subitō sō ipse aperūrunt*, C., *Div.*, I. 34, 74; *the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.* (Oatō) *mortuus est annis octogintā sex ipsi ante [Ciceronem] cōsulatū*, C., *Br.*, 15, 61; *Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.* *Huius ref quod satis esse vīsum est militū reliquit (Caesar); ipse cum legiōnibus in finēs Trāvērōrum proficiſcitur*, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 2, 4.

REMARKS.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*, etc.

*Es quā mē ipse misit*, PL., *Cas.*, 790; *I am going where mistress sent me.* *Ipse dixit*, C., *N.D.*, I. 5, 10; *the master said (cūrōs ēpō).*

2. *Et ipse, likewise, as well*, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

[*Locri urbs*] *dīsciverat et ipse ad Poenīs*, L., xxix. 6, 1; *Locri-city had likewise (as well as the other cities) revolted to the Carthaginians.* [*Camillus*] *ex Volsciis in Aequō trānslit et ipso bellum mōlēntēs*, L., vi. 2, 14; *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up war.*

CICERO prefers in this meaning *ipse* alone, but *et ipse* occurs occasionally (not in CAESAR or SALLUST), and becomes the prevailing form in LIVY and later.

2. *Ipse* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in

the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

*Sed ipse laudat, he (and not another) praises himself.* *Sed ipsum laudat, he praises himself (and not another).*

*Piger ipse sibi obstat, Prov. (SEN., E.M., 94, 28); the lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.* *Nōn egoū medicinā; mē ipse cōnsolor, C., Lael., 3, 10; I do not need medicine; I comfort myself (I am my only comforter).* *Eūdem modō sapiēns erit affectus ergā amicum quō in sed ipsum, C., Fin., I. 20, 68; the wise man will feel towards his friend as he feels towards himself.*

Exceptions are common :

*Quique alius cōvit, nōm cavet ipse sibi, Ov., A.A., I. 84; and he who cared for others, cares not for himself.*

NOTE.—LIVY seems to use sometimes *ipse* in connection with a reflexive as if it were indeclinable or absolute : *cum dīs vēnit, causā ipse prō sē dictā, damnātur, L., IV. 44, 10; when the appointed day came he pleaded his own cause and was condemned.*

#### 4. Possessive Pronouns.

**312.** The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

*Mānū lāvi et cēni, C., Or., II. 60, 246; wash (your) hands and dine.* *Praedia mea tū possidē, ego aliām misericordiā vivō, C., Rosc. Am., 50, 145; you are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.*

REMARKS.—1. Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness* : *suum esse, to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.*

*Tempore tuō pīgnāsti, L., XXXVIII. 45, 10; you have fought at your own time (= when you wished).* *Hōc hōmē mē adfēdāstis annō meō, C., Leg. Agr., II. 2, 4; you visited me with this honor in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul).* *Pīgna suum finēm, cum inoē hostiū habēt, Ov., Tr., III. 5, 34; a fight has reached its fit end when the foe is down.*

2. On the use of the Possessive Pronouns for the Gen., see 364.

#### 5. Indefinite Pronouns.

**313.** *Quidam* means *one, a, a certain one*, definite or indefinite to the speaker, but not definitely designated to the hearer. In the Plural, it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, without emphasis.

*Interēs mulier quaedam commigrāvit hēc, Ter., And., 69 ; meanwhile a certain woman took up her quarters here. Intellegendum est quibusdam quæstionibus aliis, quibusdam aliis esse aptiūs loctis, C., Top., 21, 79 : it is to be observed that some grounds are more suitable for some questions, for some, others. Tam nescire quaedam militēs quam scire oportet, Tac., H., I. 83.*

REMARKS.—1. With an adjective *quidam* often serves to heighten the attribute by adding a vagueness to it. (Gr. *τις*).

*Est quōdam incrēdibili rōbore animi, C., Mil., 37, 101 ; really he is endowed with a strange strength of mind (one that is past belief).*

2. *Quidam* is often used with or without *quam*, as if, to modify an expression :

*Nōn sunt isti audiendi qui virtūtem dūram et quasi ferream esse quādam volunt, C., Lael., 13, 48 ; those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that virtue is hard, and, as it were, made of iron. Est quaedam virtūtum vitiōrumque vicinia, QUINT., II. 12, 4 (cf. III. 7, 25) ; there is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.*

3. *Quidam* may be strengthened by the addition of *certus* or *fīsus*:

*Vita agenda est certō genere quōdam, nōn quālibet, C., Fin., III. 7, 24. Est eloquentia fīna quaedam dī summis virtūtibus, C., Or., III. 14, 55.*

314. *Aliquis* (*aliqui*) means, *some one, some one or other*, wholly indefinite to the speaker as well as to the hearer :

[*Declamābam*] cum aliquō cottidiis, C., Br., 90, 310 ; *I used to declaim with somebody or other daily.*

In the predicate it is often emphatic (by Litotes, 700) : *sum aliquis, aliquid, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight*; opposed to : *nullus sum, nihil sum, I am a nobody, nothing.*

This force is often heightened by a following contrast :

*Est hēc aliquid, tametsi nōn est satis, C., Div. in Caec., 15, 47 ; this is something, although it is not enough. Fae, ut mē velis esse aliquem, quoniam, qui fui et qui esse potui, iam esse nō possum, C., Att., III. 15, 8 ; do make out that I am somebody, since I can no longer be the man I was and the man I might have been.*

REMARKS.—1. *Aliquis* and *aliqui* are distinguished as substantive and adjective; accordingly, when *aliquis* is used with a substantive the relation is appositional. This always occurs with Proper names; and even with other substantives the Romans seem to have preferred *aliquis* to *aliqui*. (See 107, N. 1.)

2. With numerals, *aliquis* is used like English *some*. Occasionally also it has the force of *many a*. So in *Caes., B.C.*, I. 2, 2, *dixerat aliquis lēniōrem sententiam*, where *aliquis* refers to three persons, named later.

**315. Quis (qui)**, fainter than *aliquis*, is used chiefly after *si, if*; *nisi, unless*; *ne, lest*; *num, whether*, and in relative sentences. See 107, R.

*Ne quid nimis!* TER., *And.*, 61; *nothing in excess!* Fit plerumque ut *if qui boni quid volunt adferre, adfangant aliquid, quod faciant id, quod nuntiant, laetius*, C., *Ph.*, I. 3, 8; *it often happens that those who wish to bring (some) good tidings, invent something more, to make the news more cheering.*

NOTES.—1. *Aliquis* is used after *si, etc.*, when there is stress: *si quis, if any; si aliquis, if some; si quid, if anything; si quidquam, if anything at all.*

*Si aliquid dandum est voluptati, senectus modicis convivis dilectari potest*, C., *Cato. M.*, 14, 44; *if something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities.*

*Aliquis* is regular if the sentence contains two negatives: [Verrēs] *nihil umquam fecit sine aliquo quaestū*, C., *Verr.*, v. 5, 11. (446.)

2. *Quis* and *qui* are distinguished as *aliquis* and *aliqui*, but the distinction is often neglected, even in classical Latin. See 107, N. 1.

**316. Quispiam** is rarer than *aliquis*, but not to be distinguished from it, except that *quispiam* never intimates importance. *Dixerit quispiam*, C., *Cat. M.*, 3, 8; *some one may say.*

**317. 1. Quisquam** and *tillus* (adjective) mean *any one* (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

[*Iustitia*] *numquam nocet cuiquam*, C., *Fin.*, I. 16, 50; *justice never hurts anybody.* *Quis umquam Graecōrum rhētorum & Thucyđide quidquam dixit?* C., *Or.*, 9, 817; *what Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thucydides?* [None]. *Si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit*, C., *Lael.*, 2, 9; *if any one at all (was) wise, he was.* *Quamdiu quisquam erit qui tē defendere audeat, vivē*, C., *Cat.*, I. 2, 6; *so long as there shall be any one to dare defend you, live on.* *Hostem esse in Syria negant illum*, C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 10; *they say that there is not any enemy in Syria.* *Omnīs nāmō illum rei fuit emptor cui defuerit hic vēnditor*, C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97; *generally there was never a buyer of anything who lacked a seller in him (no one ever wanted to buy anything that he was not ready to sell).*

So after comparatives:

*Solis candor inflūstrior est quam tillus ignis*, C., *N.D.*, II. 15, 40; *the brilliancy of the sun is more radiant than that of any fire.*

NOTES.—1. *Quisquam* is occasionally (principally in LIVR) strengthened by *tinus*, especially after a negative: *Cum multi magis fremerent, quam quisquam tinus recidare audēret*, L., III. 45, 4.

2. After *sine, without, omni* is often used instead of *tillus* (*tillū*) in early Latin: *Sine omni cūrā dormīs*, PL., *Trin.*, 621.

3. On the use of *quisquam* as an adj., see 107, 3, N. 2.

2. The negative of *quisquam* is *nēmō*, *nobody*; *nihil*, *nothing* (108). The negative of *tillus* is *nullus*, *no*, *none*, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of *nēminis* and *nēmine*.

*Nēmō* is also sometimes used apparently as an adjective, though the conception is usually appositional.

*Nēmō vir māgnus*, C., *N.D.*, II. 66, 167; *no great man, no one (who is) a great man*.

NOTES.—1. On *neque quisquam* and *et nēmō*, see 480.

2. *Nullus* is used in familiar language instead of *nōn* (so sometimes in English): *Philippus nullus quisquam*, L., *xxii. 35, 2*; *no Philip anywhere*. *Quis* is also used familiarly: *Prōspectu petit, Anthea si quem videat*, V., *A. 1. 181*; *an Anthea, i.e., Anthea or somebody who would answer for him*.

3. *Nēmō* and *nullus* are occasionally strengthened by *tinus*.

318. 1. *Quisque* means *each one*, as opposed to *omnis*, *every*, and is usually post-positive.

*Mēns cūiusque, is est quiske*, C., *Rep.*, VI. 24, 26; *each man's mind is each man's self*. *Laudati omnes sunt dōmstique p̄r meritō quiske*, L., *xxxviii. 23*; *all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert*. *Quam quiske nōrit artem in hāc s̄ exerceat*, [C.], *Tusc.*, I. 18, 41. (616.)

2. With superlatives and ordinals *quiske* is loosely translated *every*:

*Optimum quidque rārissimum est*, C., *Fin.*, II. 25, 81; *every good thing is rare*; more accurately, *the better a thing, the rarer it is*. (645, R. 2.) *Quintō quāque annō Sicilia tōta cōnsētūr*, C., *Verr.*, II. 56, 139; *every fifth year all Sicily is assessed*.

3. *Quiske* combines readily with the reflexives, *sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *suus*, in their emphatic sense (309, 2). Here, except for special reasons, the reflexive precedes. *Suum cuique* has become a standing phrase.

*Sua quemque frāus et suus terror vexat*, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 24, 67; *it is his own sin and his own alarm that harasses a man*.

NOTES.—1. After CICERO's time, owing to the phraseological character of the combination, *sui etc. quiske*, we find it used without agreement.

*Exercitus fāmisō duce sc̄ passim multis sibi quisque imperium potentibus brevi dīlēbitur*, S., *Jug.*, 18, 3. *Instigandō suis quisque populoē effēcere ut omne Volscum nōmen dēficeret*, L., II. 38, 6.

2. Classical but not common is the attraction of *quiske* into the case of the reflexive. *Haec prōclivitās ad suum quodque genus & similitudine corporis segrētūtiō dīscētūr*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 12, 28.

3. *Quisque* combined with *primus* has two meanings : (a) *as early as possible*, (b) *one after the other in order* (*deinceps*).

*Primum quaque tempore*, C., *Ph.*, III. 15, 39 ; *at the earliest time possible*. *Primum quidque* (*each thing in order*) *considere quale sit*, C., *N.D.*, I. 27, 77.

4. The various uses of *quisque* are well summed up in NÄCKELBACH's formulae :

- a. *Nōn omnia omnibus tribuenda sunt, sed suum cuique*;
- b. *Omnē idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimē*;
- c. *Nōn omnibus annis hōc fit, sed tertio quōque annō*;
- d. *Nōn omnes idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult*.

319. *Alter* and *alius* are both translated *other, another*, but *alter* refers to one of two, *alius* to diversity. They are used in various phraseological ways, which can be best shown by examples :

*Silus aut cum alterō, alone or with (only) one other*; *alter Nero, a second Nero*.

*Alter alterum querit, one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person)*; *alius alium querit, one seeks one, another another*; *alteri—alteri, one party—another party* (already defined); *alii—alii, some—others*. *Alter* often means *neighbor, brother, fellow-man*; *alius, third person*.

#### *Alter :*

(*Āgesilās*) fuit claudus alterō pede, *N.E.P.*, XVII. 8, 1; *Agesilaüs was lame of one foot*. *Alterō manū fert lapidem, pñinem ostentat alterō*, *PL.*, *Aul.*, 195; *in one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread*. *Mors nec ad vivōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs*: *alteri nulli* (317, 2, N. 2) *sunt, alterōs nōn attinget*, *C.*, *Tusc.*, I. 38, 91; *death concerns neither the living nor the dead*: *the latter are not, the former it will not reach*.

#### *Alius :*

*Fallācia alia aliā trudit*, *Ter.*, *And.*, 779; *one lie treads on the heels of another* (indefinite series). *Alii voluptatis causā omnia sapientē facere dixerunt*; *alii cum voluptate dignitatem oblungendam putaverunt*, *C.*, *Cael.*, 15, 41; *some have said that wise men do everything for the sake of pleasure, others have thought that pleasure is to be combined with dignity*. *Divitiās aliī præponunt, aliī honōres*, *C.*, *Lael.*, 6, 20; *some prefer riches, others honors*. *Alii vestrum ēserē sunt, aliī canēs*, *C.*, *Rosc. Am.*, 20, 57; *some of you are geese, others dogs*. *Aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit*, *S.*, *C.*, 2, 9; *nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

#### *Alter and aliū :*

*Ab aliō expectās alteri quod feceris*, *SYRUS*, 2 (Fr.) ; *you may look for from another what you've done unto your brother* (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

**NOTES.—1.** *Alius* is found occasionally, especially in late Latin, for *alter*: *alius* *Nerū*, *Suet.*, *Tū.*, 7; but in *Caes.*, *B.G.*, I. 1, 1, *alius* follows *tinus*. *Alii* for *reliqui* or *esterti* is occasional, in the earlier times, but more common in *Livy* and later.

**2.** The Greek usage of *alius* in the meaning *besides*, is post-Ciceronian and rare.  
*Eō missa plaustra iumentaque alia*, *L.*, IV. 41, 8.

### APPOSITION.

**320.** By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

*Cicerō orātor*, *Cicero the orator*. *Rhēnus flūmen*, *the river Rhine*.

### CONCORD.

**321.** The word in apposition agrees with the principal word (or words) in case, and as far as it can in gender and number:

Nom. *Hērodotus pater historiæ*, *Herodotus the father of history*; Gen. *Hērodoti patris historiæ*; Dat. *Hērodotō patri historiæ*.

*Cnidus et Colophōn, nōbilissimæ urbēs, captæ sunt*, *Cf. C., Imp.*, 12, 33; *Cnidus and Colophon, most noble cities, were taken*. *Omnium doctrinārum inventriōs Athēnae*, *Cf. C., Or.*, I. 4, 18; *Athens, the inventor of all branches of learning*.

**REMARKS.—1.** Exceptions in number are due to special uses, as, for example, when *deliciae* or *amōrēs*, etc., are used of a Singular:

*Pompēius, nostrī amōrēs, ipse s̄t affixit*, *C., Att.*, II. 19, 2; *Pompey, our special passion, has wrecked himself*.

**2.** The Possessive Pronoun takes the Gen. in apposition:

*Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus*, *C., Ph.*, II. 43, 111; *we have seen your bosom bared, you open-hearted creature!* *Urbs meā tinus operi fuit salva*, *Cf. C., Pis.*, 3, 6; *the city was saved by my exertions alone*.

**3.** On the agreement of the predicate with the word in apposition, see 211, n. 6.

**NOTES.—1.** In poetry, instead of the Voc. in apposition, the Nom. is often found. *Semper celebrabere dōnis*, *Corniger Hesperidum, fluvius rēgnātor aquarūm*, *V., A., VIII. 77*. In prose not before *PLINY*.

**2.** Very rarely persons are looked upon as things, and the Appositives used in the neuter: *Dum patrēs et plēbēm, invalida et inermia, lūdificātur*, *Tac., Ann.*, I. 46.

**322. Partitive Apposition.**—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole. It is sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.

*M̄xima pars ferē mōrem hunc hominēs habent*, *Pl., Capt.*, 232; *man-kind—pretty much the greatest part of them—have this way*. *Cōtera multitudō sorte decūmus quisque ad supplicium lōcti (sunt)*, *L.*, II. 59, 11; *(of) the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment*.

**323. Distributive Apposition.**—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with *alter—alter, the one—the other; quisque, uterque, each one; alii—alii, pars—pars, some—others.* (It is often called Partitive Apposition.)

*Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est, CÆSAR., B.G., I. 53. 4; (of) two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.*

**REMARK.**—The Part. Gen. is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

**NOTES.**—1. Partitive Apposition is not found in CICERO or CAESAR, and Distributive Apposition rarely. They are more frequent in SALLUST, and not uncommon in LIVY.

2. The Greek figure of *the whole and the part* (*σχῆμα καθ' ὅλον καὶ μέρος*) is rare and poetical in Latin. *Latagum saxō occupat δε faciemque adversam, V., A., x. 698; omittit Latagus with a boulder, full (in) mouth and face (Cf. Eng. "hand and foot").*

**324. Apposition to a Sentence.**—Sometimes an Accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence; either explaining the contents of the sentence or giving the end or the aim of the action involved in the sentence. The latter usage, however, is not found in CICERO or CAESAR.

*Admoneor ut aliiquid etiam δε sepulture dicendum existimem, rem non difficultem, C., Tusc., I. 43, 102; I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter. Dileserunt tribunal, ut quis praetribunorum militum occurreret manus intentans, causam discordiae et initium armorum, TAC., Ann., I. 27.*

If the main verb is passive the Appositive may be in the Nominative: TAC., Ann., III. 27.

**NOTES.**—1. Neuter adjectives and participles are occasionally used in the same way, and some regard such neutrals as Nominatives.

2. This Acc. is to be regarded as the object effected (330) by the general action of the sentence.

### Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

**325.** Any case may be attended by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE : *Filius aegrotus redit.*

Ordinary Attribution : *The sick son returned.*

Predicative Attribution : *The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.*

*Hercules iuvenis leōnem interfecit.*

Ordinary Apposition : *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*

Predicative Apposition : *Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

GENITIVE : *Potestas eius adhibendas uxoris, the permission to take her to wife.*

DATIVE : *Amico vivō nōn subvenisti, you did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

ACCUSATIVE : *Hercules cervam vivam cepit.*

Ordinary Attribution : *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution : *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

ABLATIVE : *Aere fituntur importatō, they use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The Voc., not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

*Quā, meritū, ruis!* V., A., I. 810 ; “whither dost thou rush to die” (thou doomed to die) ? *Sic venīs,* hodie, TIB., I. 7, 58.

Notice here the old phrase : *Macte virtute estō, H., S., I. 2, 31 ; increase in virtue = heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

*Macte* is regarded by some as an old Voc., from the same stem as *magnus*; by others as an adverb. A third view is that *macte* with *estō* is an adverb, and only when used absolutely a Vocative.

2. *Victorēs rediērunt* may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or, *they returned conquerors*; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in *Idem, the same* : *Idem abeunt qui vēnerant, C., Fin., IV. 3, 7 ; they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract substantive :

*Defendi rem pūblicam adulēcōns, nōn dēseram sener, C., Ph., II. 46, 118 ; I defended the state in my youth, I will not desert her in my old age.*

So with prepositions :

*Ante Cicerōnēm cōsulēlēm, before the consulship of Cicero ; ante urbēm conditām, before the building of the city.*

4. Do not confound the “as” of apposition with the “as” of comparison—*ut, quasi, tamquam, siōt, velut* (602, n. 1, 642) : *Hanc (virtutēm) vōbis tamquam hōrēditatēm mātōres vestri relīquārunt, C., Ph., IV. 5, 18 ; your ancestors left you this *virtus* as (if it were) a legacy.*

5. When especial stress is laid on the adjective or substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, the English language is prone to resolve the sentence into its elements :

*Fragilem truci commisit pelagō ratēm prīmus, H., O., I. 3, 10 ; his frail bark to the wild waves he trusted first = to trust his frail bark to the wild waves he was first. Una salis victis nullam spērare salūtem, V., A., II. 353 ; sole safety for the vanquished ‘tis, to hope for none—the only safety that the vanquished have is to hope for none.*

6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective : so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, of *order* and *position*, of *time* and *season*, and of temporary condition generally : *libens*, *with pleasure*; *volens*, *willing(ly)*; *nolens*, *unwilling(ly)*; *invitus*, *against one's will*; *prudens*, *aware*; *imprudens*, *unawares*; *sciens*, *knowing(ly)*; *primus*, *prior*, *first*; *ultimus*, *last*; *medius*, *in, about the middle*; *hodiernus*, *to-day*; *mattutinus*, *in the morning*; *frequens*, *frequent(ly)*; *sublimis*, *aloft*; *totus*, *wholly*; *solutus*, *free*, *alone*, and many others.

*Ego cum & mē invitissimus dimisi*, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 63, 1; *I dismissed him most unwillingly.* *Pius hodiē boni fēci imprudēns quam sciēns ante hunc diem umquam*, TER., *Hec.*, 880; *I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before.* *Adcurrit, medium mulierem complectitur*, TER., *And.*, 133; *he runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist.* *Qui prior strinxerit ferrum sūs vīctōria erit*, L., XXIV. 38, 5 (244, R. 2). *Vespertinus pete tēctum*, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 20; *seek thy dwelling at eventide.* *Rārus venit in cōscula miles*, JUV., X. 18; *the soldiery rarely comes into the garret.* *Sē tōtē trādidērunt volūptūtibus*, C., *Lael.*, 23, 86; *they have given themselves wholly to pleasure.* *Soli hōc contingit sapienti*, C., *Par.*, V. 1, 34; *this good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.*

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of *primus*, and the adverbs *primum*, *first*, *for the first time*, and *primō*, *at first*. *Primum* means first in a series ; *primō*, first in a contrast. But these distinctions are not always observed.

*Primum docent esse dēs, deinde quālē sint, tum mundum ab iis administrāri, postrēmō cōsulere eōs rēbus humānis*, C., *N.D.*, II. 1, 3; *first, they teach us that there are gods, next of what nature they are, then that the world is ruled by them, finally, that they take thought for human affairs.* *Primō Stoicōrum mōre agāmus, deinde nostrō institutō vagābimur*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 6, 13; *let us treat the subject at first after the manner of the Stoics, afterwards we will ramble after our own fashion.*

## B.

### 1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

**326.** The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

### 2. Qualification of the Predicate.

**327.** The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change :

I. External change : combination with an object.

1. Direct Object, Accusative. 2. Indirect Object, Dative.

II. Internal change : combination with an attribute which may be in the form of

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. The Genitive case. | 3. Preposition with a case. |
| 2. The Ablative.      | 4. An Adverb.               |

**NOTE.**—The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment.

**I. External Change.**

**Accusative.**

The great function of the Accusative is to form temporary compounds with the verb, as the great function of the Genitive is to form temporary compounds with the noun. Beyond this statement everything is more or less extra-grammatical, and sharp subdivisions are often unsatisfactory. Still it may be said that

**328. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.**

The Direct Object is the object which defines directly the action of the verb.

**REMARK.**—The Dative defines indirectly because it involves an Accusative ; and the Genitive with the verb depends upon the nominal idea contained in the verb.

1. (a) The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected) :

*Deus mundum creavit, God made a creation—the universe.*

(b) Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent :

*A recte conscientia trāversum unguem nōm oportet discēdere, C., Att., XIII. 20, 4 ; one ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience. Decem annos (Trōia) oppugnata est, L., v. 4, 11 ; ten years was Troy besieged. Maximam partem lacte vivunt, Caes., B.G., iv. 1, 8 ; for the most part they live on milk.*

2. The object may be distinct from the verb (Outer Object, Object Affected) :

*Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.*

### General View of the Accusative.

#### 329. I. Inner Object : Object Effected :

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.

1. In Space.

2. In Time.

3. In Degree.

Terminal Accusative (Point Reached).

#### II. Outer Object: Object Affected :

1. Whole.

2. Part (so-called Greek Accusative).

#### III. Inner and Outer Objects combined :

1. Asking and Teaching.

2. Making and Taking.

#### IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind) :

1. In Exclamations.

2. Accusative and Infinitive.

### DIRECT OBJECT (Inner and Outer).

**NOTE.**—The Accusative is the object reached by the verb. This object is either in apposition to the result of the action of the verb, and then it is called the Inner Object or Object Effected ; or it is in attribution to the result of the action, and then it is said to be the Outer Object or Object Affected. The Inner Object is sometimes called the Voluntary Accusative, because it is already contained in the verb ; the Outer Object is sometimes called the Necessary Accusative, because it is needed to define the character of the action ; both verb and substantiae contribute to the result ; compare *hominem caedere* (*occidere*), *to slay a man* (Object Affected), with *homicidium facere* (*G.* QUINT., v. 9, 9), *to commit manslaughter* (Object Effected).

#### 330. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case :

*Römulus Urbem Römann condidit*, Cf. C., *Div.*, i. 17, 30 ; *Romulus founded the City of Rome.* (Object Effected.)

[*Mëns*] *regit corpus*, C., *Rep.*, vi. 24, 26 ; *mind governs body.* (Object Affected.)

**REMARK.**—Many verbs of Emotion which are intrans. in English are trans. in Latin, as : *dolere*, *to grieve (for)* ; *desperare*, *to despair (of)* ; *horreare*, *to shudder (at)* ; *mirari*, *to wonder (at)* ; *ridere*, *to laugh (at)*.

*Höndres desperant*, C., *Cat.*, ii. 9, 19 ; *they despair of honors (give them up in despair)*. *Necöta est Vicia quod filii necem flévisset* (541), TAC., *Ann.*, vi. 10, 1 ; *Vicia was executed for having wept (for) her son's execution.* *Conscia mëns recti Fämæ mendacia risit*, Ov., *F.*, iv. 311 ; *conscious of right, her soul (but) laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.*

**NOTES.**—1. From the definition of transitive given above (218, n.) it will be seen that this traditional rule reverses the poles ; it is retained merely for practical purposes.

2. This Acc. with verbs of Emotion is very rare in early Latin, and is not widely extended even in the classical period. With most verbs an Abl. of Cause or a prepositional phrase is much more common, as : *Cūr dē suā virtute dōspērārent?* CAES., B.C., i. 40, 4.

3. The Acc. with verbal substantives is confined to PLAUTUS : *quid tibi nōs tāctiōst, mendice homō?* AUL., 423.

4. The Acc. with verbal adjectives in -undus is rare and mainly post-classical : *Haec prope cōtiōnibundus circumbat hominēs*, L., III. 47, 2.

**331.** Verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trāns, which become transitive, take the Accusative.

All with circum, per, praeter, trāns, and subter.

Many with ad, in, and super.

Some with ante, con, inter, ob, and sub. See 347.

*Pythagorūs Persarū magis adiit*, C., Fin., v. 29, 87 ; *Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi. Stella Veneris antegreditur solēm*, C., N.D., II. 20, 58 ; *the star Venus goes in advance of the sun. Omnis Domitium circumstinet*, CAES., B.C., I. 20, 5 ; *all surround Domitius. Eam, si opus esse vidēbitur, ipse convenientiam*, C., Fam., v. 11, 2 ; *I will go to see her, myself, if it shall seem expedient. Convivia cum patre nōn inibat*, C., Rosc. Am., 18, 52 ; *he would not go to banquets with his father. Fretum, quod Naupactum et Patras interfluit*, L., XXVII. 29, 9 ; *the strait that flows between Naupactus and Patrae. Alexander tertio et tricōsimō annō mortem obiit*, C., Ph., v. 17, 48 ; *Alexander died in his thirty-third year. Caesar omnem agrum Ptoleōnum percurrit*, CAES., B.C., I. 15, 1 ; *Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picanian district. [Populus] solet dignis praeterire*, C., Planc., 3, 8 ; *the people is wont to pass by the worthy. Epaminondās poemam subiit*, Cf. NEP., xv. 8, 2 ; *Epaminondas submitted to the punishment. Criminum vim subterfugere nullus modus poterat*, C., Verr., I. 3, 8 ; *he could in no way evade the force of the charges. Rōmāni quinās mūri supervidēbant*, L., XXXII. 24, 5 ; *the Romans marched over the ruins of the wall. Crassus Euphratēm nullā bellī causā trānsiit*, Cf. C., Fin., III. 22, 75 ; *Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.*

**REMARKS.**—1. If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives : *Equitum magnam partem flumen trāscit*, CAES., B.C., I. 55, 1 ; *he threw a great part of the cavalry across the river.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated ; but never circum : *Cōpīas trāscit Rhodanum, or trāns Rhodanum, he threw his troops across the Rhone.*

3. Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition :

*Adire ad aliquem, to go to a man ; adire aliquem, to apply to (to consult) a man.*

## INNER OBJECT.

**332.** Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

The most common form of this object is a neuter pronoun or adjective.

The most striking form is the so-called Cognate Accusative.

**333. 1.** Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb.

*Xenophōn eadem fērē peccat, C., N.D., I. 12, 31 ; Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes. Vellelē squidē idem possem gloriāri quod Cyrus, C., Cat.M., 10, 32 ; for my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.*

With trans. verbs an Acc. of the person can be employed besides:

*Discipulis id unum monēt ut praeceptorēs suēs nōn minus quam ipsa studia ament, QUINT., II. 9, 1 ; I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers no less than their studies themselves.*

**REMARKS.—1.** The usage is best felt by comparing the familiar English "it" after intrans. verbs, "to walk it, to foot it," etc., where "it" represents the substantive that lies in "walk, foot," etc.

2. In many cases the feeling of the case is lost to the consciousness, so especially with the interrogative quid, which has almost the force of our. *Quid ridēs ? what (laughter) are you laughing = what means your laughter ?*

*Id nō ad tē, si quid vellēs, vénimus, PL., M.G., 1158 ; that's why we have come to you, to see if you wanted anything.*

**NOTES.—1.** With verbs of Emotion this Acc. gives the ground of the emotion :

*Utrumque laetor (I have a double gladness, I am doubly glad), et sine dolore tē fuisse et animō valuisse, C., Fam., VII. 1, 1. Laetare exclāmant : vénit ! id quod (in this that, for this that) mēs repente aspexerant, TER., Hec., 368.*

From this arises the causal force of quod, in that = because.

2. Occasionally, but at all periods, the relative is used thus, to facilitate connection with a demonstrative clause :

*Quas hominēs arant (what men do in the way of plowing, etc.). nāvigator, aedificant, omnia virtuti pārent, S., C., 2, 7. Id ipsum quod maneam in vīta (in the very fact of my remaining in life) peccare mēs (existimō), C., Fam., IV. 13, 2.*

**2. Cognate Accusative.**—When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has an attribute

**Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivas**, Pl., *Pers.*, 494; *I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.* **Mirum atque insolitum somniavi somnum**, Pl., *Rud.*, 597; *a marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.* **Iuravi verissimum ius iurandum**, C., *Fam.*, v. 2, 7; *I swore the truest of oaths.*

**REMARK.**—After the analogy of the Cognate Acc. are many phraseological usages, such as *rem certare*, *to fight a case*; *foedus ferre*, *to make a treaty* (compare, *to strike a bargain*); *ius respondere*, *to render an opinion*; *causam vincere*, *to win a case*, etc. Also the phrases with *ire*: *exequiis ire*, *to attend a funeral*; *infiliis ire*, *to deny*, etc.

**NOTES.**—1. The omission of the attribute is found most often in legal phraseology, proverbs, and the like:

**Maiorum nōmō servitūtem servivit**, C., *Tib.*, 6, 29; *of our ancestors no one ever slaved (what you would call) a slavery.* **Si servos furtum faxit noxiām̄e noxit**, XII. *Tib.*

2. When the Cognate Acc. is replaced by a word of similar meaning, but of a different root, the effect is much the same as when an adjective is employed with the normal Accusative. This usage, however, is rare, and mainly poetical.

**Tertiam iam astētēm hominum (Nestor) vivēbat**, C., *Cat. M.*, 10, 31 (reading doubtful). **Omne militib⁹ bellum**, H., *Epod.*, 1, 23.

3. Interesting extensions are found in the poets, and rarely in prose.

**Qui Curiōe simulant et Bacchānilia vivunt**, Juv., II. 3. **Nunc Satyrum, nunc agrestem Cyclopa movētur**, H., *Ep.*, II. 2, 125.

4. Instead of the Inner Acc. the Abl. is occasionally found: *lapidibus pluere, to rain stones*; *sanguine sudire, to sweat blood*.

**Herculis simulacrum multō sudore mānūvit**, C., *Div.*, I. 34, 74; *the statue of Hercules ran freely with sweat.*

5. Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object, which is an extension of the Cognate variety.

**Piscis sapit ipsum mare**, Cf. *Sex.*, *N. Q.*, III. 18, 2; *the fish tastes of the very sea.* **Nōn omnes possunt olēre unguenta exōtia**, Pl., *Nest.*, 42; *It is not every one can smell of foreign perfumes.*

6. A poetical and post-classical construction is that which makes a substantival neuter adjective the object of a verb. This occurs chiefly with verbs of sound: *nec mortale sonans*, V., *A.*, VI. 50; *magna sonitūrum*, H., *S.*, I. 4, 44. Yet bolder is *nec vox hominem sonat*, V., *A.*, I. 328. A verb of sight is found in *tam cernis acutum*, H., *S.*, I. 3, 28. Cf. *dulce ridentem*, H., *O.*, I. 28, 28.

#### Accusative of Extent.

The Accusative of Extent has to do with Degree, Space, or Time.

**334. The Accusative of Extent in Degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, *multum*, *plūs*, *tantum*, *quantum*, etc.**

**Si mē amis tantum quantum profect⁹ amis**, C., *Att.*, II. 20, 5; *if you love me as much as in fact you do love me.*

**REMARKS.—1.** The number of adjectives and pronouns so used is large, and in many cases the form is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive.

**2.** Here belong the adverbial Accusatives *tuam*, *etc.*, *partem*, *vicem*, which occur occasionally at all periods.

**335.** The Accusative of Extent in Space is used properly only with words that involve a notion of space. When space is not involved in the governing word the idea of extent is given by the use of *per*, *through*.

*Trab s, distant s inter s  bin s ped s, in sol  collocantur, CAES., B.G., VII. 23, 1; beams two feet apart are planted in the ground.* A r ct  c n-scient s tr vervum unguem n n oportet disc dere, C. Att., XIII. 20, 4 (328, b). *Equites per d ram maritimam dispositi sunt, Cf. CAES., B.C., III. 24, 4; cavalry were posted along the sea shore.* *Phoebidas iter per Th bes [fecit], NEP., XVI. 1, 2; Phoebidas marched through Thebes.* *Milit s aggerem l tum ped s trecent s trigint  altum ped s octoginta extruxerunt, CAES., B.G., VII. 24, 1; the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.*

**REMARKS.—1.** The adjectives in most common use with this Accusative are *longus*, *long*, *latus*, *wide*, *altus*, *deep*, *high*. *Thickness*, which was indicated in early times by *crassus*, is expressed by phrases with *crassitud *. Similarly occur phrases with *m gnit d *, *longit d *, *latitud *, *altitud *. *Profundus*, *deep*, never occurs with the Accusative.

**2.** With *abesse* and *dist re*, an Abl. of Measure may also be used : *Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse, CAES., B.G., I. 41, 5; to be twenty-four miles from....*

**NOTE.**—When the point of reference is taken for granted, *ab* ( ) with the Abl. is occasionally used ; but only by *CÆSAR* and *LIVY*. Here it has been suggested that *ab* is used adverbially, and the Abl. is one of Measure.

(*Host s*) *ab miliibus passuum minus du bus castra posu runt, CAES., B.G., II. 7, 3; the enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off.*

**336.** The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without *per*, in answer to the question, *How long ?*

*Duodecim gint  ann s tyrannus Syracus n rum fuit Dionysius, C., Tusc., v. 20, 57; thirty-eight years was Dionysius tyrant of Syracuse.* (*Gorgias*) *centum et novem vixit ann s, QUINT., III. i, 9 (238, n. 2).* *L di per decem di s facti sunt, C., Cat., III. 8, 20; games were performed for ten days.* *Est m scum per diem t tum, PLIN., Ep., I. 16, 7; he is with me the livelong day.* *Sedet aeternumque sed bit infelix Th seus, V., A., VI. 617; there sits and shall forever sit unhappy Theseus.*

**REMARKS.**—1. In giving definite numbers with *iam, iam diū, iam dūdum, etc.*, the Latin often employs the ordinal where the English prefers the cardinal. Compare the Ablative of Measure (408).

Mithridatēs annūm iam tertium et viōsimūm rēgnat, C., *Imp.*, 3, 7 (280).

2. *Per* with the Acc. is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which. *Per illa tempora = illis temporibus, in those times.*

So especially with the negative :

Nulla rēs per triennium nisi ad nūtūm istius iūdicta est, C., *Verr.*, I. 5, 18 ; *no matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck.*

3. With an Aoristic tense the dating point is given by *ab hinc*, which usually precedes the temporal designation.

Ab hinc annūs factūst sēdecim, P.L., *Cas.*, 39 ; *'twas done sixteen years ago.* Demosthenēs ab hinc annūs prope trecentūs fuit, C., *Div.*, II. 57, 118; *Demosthenes lived nearly three hundred years ago.*

The use of an Acc. with an Aoristic tense without a dating word, like *ab hinc*, is very rare and doubtful. *Cæs.*, *B.G.*, II. 35, 4, has been emended.

4. *Nātus, old (born)*, seems to be an exception to R. 3, but it is only an apparent one, as the dating point is involved in the verb with which it is construed. For various constructions with *nātus*, see 296, R. 5.

Puer decēm annōs nātus est, *the boy is ten years old.* Quadrigintā annōs nātus rēgnare [coepit], C., *Div.*, I. 23, 46 ; *(he was) forty years old (when) he began to reign.*

**NOTES.**—1. The use of the indefinite substantival adjective is rare. PLAUTUS uses *semipaternūm*, VERGIL introduces *aeternūm* (see example above), while *perpetuum* does not appear until APULEIUS.

2. Here belong the phraseological uses *id temporis, id aetatis*, which belonged to the popular speech, and never became firmly rooted in literature. Thus CICERO rarely uses them, except in his earliest works and his letters. *Id genus* is used after the same general analogy, but is not temporal. This occurs in CICERO but once, *Att.*, XIII. 12, 8. CAESAR never uses any of these forms.

3. Poetical and rare is the extension which makes the Accusative of Extent the subject of a passive verb.

Nunc tertia vivitur aetate, Ov., *M.*, XII. 188 = nunc tertiam vivitur aetatem.  
Tota mihi dormitur hiems, MART., XIII. 59, 1 = totam dormīs hiemem.

Normally the verb becomes impersonal or is regularly used with a proper subject, and the Accusative of Extent is unchanged : [Bellum] quā duodecimum annum Italia trahētur, L., XXVII. 59, 9.

#### Accusative of the Local Object.

##### Terminal Accusative.

**337.** The activity of a verb may be defined by the Point Reached. Hence the rule : Names of Towns and small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

So also *rūs, into the country, domum, domōs, home.*

*Missi legati Athēnās sunt, L., iii. 31, 8; envoys were sent to Athens. Latona confugit Delum, Cf. C., Verr., i. 18, 48; Latona took refuge in Delos. Ego rūs ibō atque ibi manōbō, Ter., Eun., 216; I shall go to the country and stay there. Innumerabiles (philosophi) numquam domum revertērunt, C., Tusc., v. 37, 107; innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

REMARKS.—1. Countries and large islands being looked upon as areas, and not as points, require prepositions, such as : *in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward; in Graeciam proficisci, to set out for Greece.*

2. When *urbem, city, or oppidum, town,* precedes the name of the city or town, the idea of area is emphasized, and the preposition *in* or *ad* is prefixed ; if *urbem* or *oppidum* follows, *in* or *ad* may be omitted : *In (ad) oppidum Cirtam, to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.*

When *urbem* or *oppidum* is qualified by an adjective, it regularly follows the name of the town, and has the preposition :

*Iugurtha Thalam pervenit in oppidum magnū et opulentum, S., Iug., 75, 1; Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. *Domum, with a possessive pronoun, or Gen.,* may mean *house* as well as *home*, and accordingly may or may not have *in* before it : *domum meam, or, in domum meam, to my house; domum Pompælii, or, in domum Pompælii, to Pompey's house; also domum ad Pompeium. Otherwise : in magnificam domum venire, to come into a grand house.*

4. *Ad means to the neighborhood of, often before, of military operations. Ad Mutinam, to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).*

5. The simple Acc. will suffice even for *extent* :

*Omnis illa munidipa, quae sunt à Vibone Brundisium, C., Planc., 41, 97; all the free towns from Vibo to Brundisium.*

6. Motion to a place embraces all the local designations :

*Phalara in sinum Meliacum pröcesserat, L., xxxv. 43, 8; he had advanced to Phalara on the Maliac Gulf. Tarentum in Italiam inferiorem proficisci, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.*

NOTES.—1. The omission of the preposition before countries and large islands is poetical and post-classical. CAESAR shows such omission with *Aegyptus* only, CICERO not at all.

2. Poets and later prose writers extend the Acc. also to names of peoples and streams. Beginnings of this are seen in CICERO : *cum Bosphorum confugisset, Muc., 16, 34.*

3. The insertion of the preposition with names of towns and small islands is rare in good prose, but is always legitimate when the preposition is to be emphasized.

4. The use of *tisque* with this Acc. to emphasize the continuity of the motion is found first in TERENCE, occasionally in CICERO. From LIVY on it spreads and is used also with other local designations.

5. Verbal substantives are also occasionally followed by this Accusative : *Reditus Römann, C., Ph., II. 42, 108; return to Rome.*

## OUTER OBJECT.

## Accusative of Respect.

**338.** The Accusative of the object affected sometimes specifies that in respect to which the statement of a passive or intransitive verb, or an adjective, applies. There are two varieties :

1. *Definite* : The Accusative of the part affected.

*Percosse novā mentem formidina, V., G., iv. 357 ; her mind stricken with a new dread. Iam vulgatum actis quoque sordidus pectus, QUINT., ix. 3. 17 ; by this time "breast-wounded" is actually become a common newspaper phrase.*

2. *Indefinite* : *cōstera, alia, reliqua, omnia, plēraque, cōficta ; in other respects, in all respects, in most respects.*

*Cōstera adsentior Crassū, C., Or., i. 9, 35 ; in all other points I agree with Crassus. Omnia Mercuriō similiſ, V., A., iv. 558 ; in all respects like unto Mercury.*

NOTES.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, because it is so much more common in Greek, and because its extension in Latin is due to Greek influence. The first variety is very rare in early Latin ; introduced into prose by SALLUST, it is extended in LIVY, but in both is applied usually to wounds. It is much more common in the poets. Of the second variety *cōstera* is found here and there at all periods ; the others are very rare. Good prose uses the Ablative for the first variety, and for the second, *ad cōstera, in cōstera, per cōstera, etc.*

2. Different is the Accusative with *induor, I don* ; *exuor, I doff* ; *cingor, I gird on myself*, and other verbs of *clothing* and *undressing*, as well as *passives*, where the Subject is also the Agent ; in which verbs the reflexive or middle signification is retained. These uses are poetical or post-classical.

*Inutile ferrum cingitur, V., A., ii. 510 ; he girds on (himself) a useless blade. Lōriōam induitur fidēque accingitur ūnse, V., A., vii. 640 ; he dons a corselet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive. (Arminius) impetū equi pervicit oblitus faciem sub crūbre nō nōscerētur, TAC., Ann. ii. 17, 7 ; Hermann pushed his way through, thanks to the onset of his charger, having smeared his face with his own gore, to keep from being recognized.*

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer).

When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the Inner and the other the Outer object. Theoretically any combination of Inner and Outer objects is allowable ; practically the language has restricted its usage to varieties *a* and *b*.

**339. (a)** Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and *cōlāre, to conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

*Pūdōnem quendam Socratēs interrogat quēdam gēometrica, C., Tusc., i. 24, 57 ; Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry. Caesar Aeduō frumentum fligībat, CAES., B.G., i. 16, 1 ; Caesar kept demanding the corn of the Aeduī. Quid nūne tē, asine, litterās doceam ? (265), C., Pis., 30, 73 ; why should I now give you a lesson in literature,*

*you donkey?* Nōn tē cēlāvi sermōnem Ampīl, C., *Fam.*, II. 16, 8, *I did not keep you in the dark about my talk with Ampius.*

REMARKS.—1. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe :

This then is not the only way,	P̄scoō, <i>I claim</i> , and f̄agitō,
For it is also right to say,	And always p̄tō, p̄stulō,
Dōcēre and cōlēre dē,	Take aliquid ab aliquō,
Interrogare dē quā rē.	While quaerō takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

*Adherbal Rōmām lēgātōs miserat, qui sem̄tūm docērāt dē caede fr̄atri*, S., *Iug.*, 13, 8; *Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.* Bassus nōster m̄d dē hōc librō cēlāvit, C., *Fam.*, VII. 20, 8; *our friend Bassus has kept me in the dark about this book.* Aquam p̄pūmice nūnc p̄stulā, Pl., *Pers.*, 41; *you are now asking water of a pumice-stone (blood of a turnip).*

2. With dōcēō the Abl. of the Instrument is also used : dōcēre fidibus, eqnō, *to teach the lyre, to teach riding*; with ērudire, the Abl., in with the Abl. or (rarely) dē. Doctus and ēruditus generally take the Abl.: Doctus Graecis litteris, *a good Grecian*.

3. With cēlāri the Acc. of the Thing becomes the subject, and the Acc. of the Person is retained ; or the Acc. of the Person is made the subject, and instead of the Acc. of the Thing, dē with the Abl. is used.

NOTES.—1. There is a great deal of difference in the relative frequency of these verbs. So dōcēō and its compounds, rogō, p̄sōō, repōsōō, cēlō, are common ; interrogō, īrō, expōsōō, p̄stulō, f̄agitō, cōnsulō, are rare, exigō (in passive), percontor, are ante-classical and post-classical. So, too, the classical Latin in general avoids two Accusatives, unless one is a neuter pronoun.

2. The construction with ab, with verbs of Requiring, is much more common than the double Acc., and in some cases is necessary ; so, too, the construction with dē after verb of Inquiring.

3. Other verbs of teaching than dōcēō and its compounds, and ērudire, always have dē until late Latin, as instruere, etc. So dōcēre, when it means *to inform*.

4. The Passive form, with the Nom. of the Person and the Acc. of the Thing, is sparingly used. Discere is the prose word for dōcērl, except that the past participle doctus is classical but rare.

Mōtūs dōcērl gaudet Iōnicōs mātūra virgō, H., O., III. 6, 21 ; *the rare ripe maid delights to learn Ionic dances.* Vir om̄nēs bellī artēs ēdōctus, L., xxv. 40, 5 ; *one who had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.*

340. (b) Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing :

[Iram] bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 23, 52 ; *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.* Anum Mārcium rēgem populus c̄rāvit, L., I. 32, 1 ; *the people made Ancus Marcius king.* Catō Valerium Flaccum habuit collēgam, Cf. *NEP.*, XXIV. 1, 2 ; *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.* Eum simillimum dēd iūdīoō, C., *Marc.*, 3, 8 ; *I judge him (to be) very like unto a god.* Athēniēnsibus P̄ytha praecepit ut

*Miltiadē sibi imperatōrem sumerent, Nep., I. I, 8 ; the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander. Praestū tē cum qui mihi es cognitus, C., Fam., I. 6, 2 ; show yourself the man that I know you to be. Quem intellegimus divitem ? C., Par., VI. I, 42 ; whom do we understand by the rich man ?*

REMARKS.—I. The Double Acc. is turned into the Double Nom. with the Passive (206). *Reddō, I render*, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, *fit, I become*.

*Habeo*, with two Accusatives, commonly means to *have* ; in the sense of *hold, regard*, other turns are used ; usually *prō*.

*Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā ? Pl., Pers., 341 ; do you look upon me as a maid-servant or as a daughter ?*

Similarly *habēre servōrum locū, (in) numerō dēcūrum, to regard as slaves, as gods.*

2. With verbs of Taking and Choosing the *end* is indicated by the Dat. or ad with Accusative.

*(Rōmulus) trecentōs armatōs ad cūstōdiam corporis habuit, L., I. 15, 8 ; Romulus had three hundred armed men as a body-guard.*

341. (c) Double Accusatives, where one is the cognate, are very uncommon :

*Tē bonis precōs precor, CATO, R.R., I. 3, 4. Tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre vēsānō satī et super Catullōst, CAT., VII. 9.*

NOTES.—1. Curious extensions occasionally occur :

*Idem iūs itārandū adgit Afrīnum, CAES., B.C., I. 76.*

2. In early Latin frequently, and in later times occasionally, the Inner object is given by a neuter pronoun, in the simplest form. *Quid mē vis ? what do you want of me ? what do you want me for ?* So with *prohibēre* ; also with *iubēre* (once in CICERO and CAESAR), *admonēre, etc.*

*Neque mē lūppiter neque di omnēs id prohibēbunt, Pl., Am., 1051. Litterae quae tē aliquid iubērent, C., Fam., XIII. 26, 3.*

342. (d) In early Latin we find cases of two Accusatives with a single verb, where the verb forms a single phrase with one of the Accusatives, and the second Accusative is the object of the phrase : *animū advertere, to perceive ; lūdō facere, to make game of ; manū incere, to lay hands on, etc.* In classical Latin these phrases have been usually, where possible, formed into a single word : *animadvertiscere, lūdificari.*

*Animū advertiscet Gracchus in cōtiōne Pisōnē stantem, C., Tusc., III. 20, 48 ; Gracchus perceived Piso standing in the assembly.*

NOTE.—On the Double Accusative with compound verba, see 331, n. 1.

#### ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

343. The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion ; an ob-

ject created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative :

(a) In Exclamations. (b) With the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion :

**M**ē miseram, C., *Fam.*, xiv. 1, 1; *poor me!* **M**ē caecum qui haec ante nōn viderim, C., *Att.*, x. 10, 1; *blind me! not to have seen all this before.*

So in Exclamatory Questions :

**Qu**ođ mihi fortūnam, si nōn conēditur sūti? H., *Ep.*, i. 5, 12; *what (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?*

Interjections are used :

**H**eu mē miserum! *Alas! poor me!* **Ō** miserās hominū mentēs, **Ō** pectora caeca, LUCE., ii. 14; *oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!*

So, in apposition to a sentence, see 324.

NOTES.—1. **Ō** with the Voc. is an address ; with the Nom. a characteristic ; with the Acc. an object of emotion.

2. **Em**, *Lo!* and **Eooe**, *Lo here!* have the Acc. in the earlier language :

**Em tibi hominem!** PL., *Astn.*, 880; *here's your man!* **Eooe mē!** PL., *Ep.*, 680; *here am I!*

**So ecum, ellum, eciam, ecillam**, in comic poetry.

**Eooe** takes only the Nom. in classical Latin. Distinguish between **em** and **en**, the latter of which, in the sense *lo!* does not appear until Cicero's time, and takes the Nominative.

**Prō** takes the Vocative : **Prō di immortālēs!** *Ye immortal gods!* The Accusative occurs in : **Prō deum atque hominū fidem!** C., *Tusc.*, v. 16, 48; *for heaven's sake!* and similar phrases.

**Ei** (*hei!*) and **Vae!** take the Dative.

**Ei mihi!** *Ah me!* **Vae victis!** *Woe to the conquered!*

2. The Accusative and the Infinitive are combined so as to present the notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (527). Hence the Accusative with the Infinitive is used :

(a) In Exclamations. (See 534.)

(b) As an Object. (See 527.)

(c) As a Subject. (See 535.)

### DATIVE.

**344.** The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always involves a Direct Object, which may be contained in the verb or expressed by the complex of verb and object.

Nēmō errat sibi sibi, SEN., E.M., 94, 54 ; *no one errs (makes mistakes) to (for) himself alone.* Nōn omnibus dormīs, C., Fam., VII. 24, 1 ; *it is not for everybody that I am asleep.* Tibi exercitūm patria prō sē dedit, C., Ph., XIII. 6, 14 ; *your country gave you an army for its own defence.* Mulier sibi felicior quam virtus, C., Ph., v. 4, 11.

**NOTE.**—In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct : “He showed me (Dat.) a pure river ;” “he showed me (Acc.) to the priest.” Originally a case of Personal Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions. If a Locative, the Dative is a sentient Locative.

#### Dative with Transitive Verbs.

**345.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, *to, for, from.* This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive. The Dative depends on the complex.

##### Active Form :

**To :** Facile omnes, quom valēmus, recta consilia aegrōtis damus, TER., And., 309 ; *readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.*

**FOR :** Frangam tōnsōri crūra manūisque simul, MART., XI. 58, 10 ; *I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.*

**FROM :** Somnum mīhi [adsumit], C., Att., II. 16, 1 ; *it took my sleep away from me.*

##### Passive Form :

Mercēs mīhi glōria dēstur, Ov., F., III. 389 ; *let glory be given to me as a reward.* Immeritis franguntur crūra caballis, Juv., X, 60 ; *the innocent hacks get their legs broken FOR them.* Arma [adsumuntur] militib⁹, L., XXII. 44, 6 ; *the soldiers have their arms taken FROM them.* Domus pulchra dominis aedificatur nōn mūrib⁹, Cf. C., N.D., III. 10, 26 ; *a handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*

**REMARKS.**—I. These constructions are found with more or less frequency at all periods. But the Dat. with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like, is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation *from* is merely approximate, instead of *for.* When the idea of Personal Interest is not involved, the Abl. is necessary.

Is frāter, qui scripsit frātrem carceris, nōn potuit scripere fītū, SEN., Dial., XI. 14, 4.

A good example of a play on construction is PL., Aul., 635 :

St. Nihil equidem tibi abstuli. Eu. At illud quod tibi abstuleris cedo.

2. The translation *For* is nearer the Dat. than *To.* It is the regular

form when the Acc. is that of the object *effected*; when it is that of the object *affected* the translation is more often *to*; but *for* (*in defence of*) is *prō*: *prō patriā mori*, *to die for one's country*. *To* (*with a view to*) is *ad* or *in*, and when the idea of motion is involved, the preposition must be used, even with *dare*, which gives its name to the Dative:

*Litterās aliquā dare*, *to give one a letter* (*to carry or to have*).

*Litterās ad aliquem dare*, *to indite a letter to one*.

*Rogās ut mea tibi scripta mittam*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 23; *you ask me to send you my writings* (*you wish to have them*). *Librās iam pridē ad tē misissem si esse stendōs putāsem*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 23; *I should have sent the books to you long since if I had thought they ought to be published*.

#### Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

**346.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

*Fuit mirificus in Crassō pudor, qui tamen nō obeset sīus orationē*, C., *Or.*, I. 26, 122; *Crassus had a marvellous modesty, not, however, such as to be a bar to the effectiveness of his oratory*. *Ipse sibi imbecillitās indulget*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 18, 42; *weakness gives free course to itself*. *Probus invidet nōmīni*, C., *Tim.*, 3, 9; *your upright man cherishes envy to no one*. *Catilina litterās mittit sō fortūnae cēdere*, S., *O.*, 34, 2; *Catiline writes that he gives way to fortune*. *Diēs stultis queque mederi solet*, C., *Fam.*, VII., 28, 3; *time is wont to prove a medicine even to fools*. *Moderāri et animō et orationē, est nō medicorū ingenii*, C., *Q.F.*, I. II. 13, 38; *to put bounds both to temper and to language is the work of no mean ability*. *Sic agam, ut ipse auctorī huius disciplinae placet*, C., *Fin.*, I. 9, 29; *I will act as it seems good to the head of this school (of thought) himself*. *[Mundus] deō p̄t̄ et hūo obedient maria terraeque*, C., *Leg.*, III. I, 8; *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him*. *Virtutē suōrum satis crēdit*, Cf. S., *Iug.*, 106, 8; *he puts full confidence in the valor of his men*. *Illī poena, nōbīs libertās [apropinquat]*, C., *Ph.*, IV. 4, 10; *to him punishment, to us freedom, is drawing nigh*.

**REMARKS.—I.** Of course the passives of these verbs are used impersonally (208):

*Qui invident egent, illis quibus invidētur, i rem habent*, Pl., *Truc.*, 745; *those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff*.

2. The verbs found with this Dat. in classical Latin are: *prōdēsse*, *obēsse*, *noēre*, *condūcēt*, *expedit*; *assentīrī*, *blandīrī*, *cupere*, *favēre*, *grātificārī*, *grātulārī*, *ignōscere*, *indulgēre*, *mārīgerārī*, *studēre*, *suffrāgārī*; *adversārī*, *insidiārī*, *invidēre*, *frāsci*, *maledicere*, *minārī*, *minitārī*, *obtrectārī*,

officere, refrāgari, suscēnsēre; cōdēre, concēdere; resistere; auxiliari, cōsulere, medēri, opitulāri, parere, prōspicere; moderari, temperare (sibi); placere, displicere; auscultare, imperare, obedire, obsequi, obtemperare, pārare, persuadere, servire, suadere; crēdere, fidere, cōfidere, diffidere, despīdere; accidit, contingit, s̄venit; libet, licet; appropinquare, repugnare. Also nūbere, *to marry* (of a woman); supplicare, *to implore*.

NOTES.—1. Some other verbs are used occasionally in the same way, as *incommode*ārē, which Cicero uses once. Also, dolēre, with Dat. of suffering person, is found sometimes in Cicero, though it belongs rather to the Comic Poets.

2. Some of these words have also other constructions. These occur usually in ante-classical and post-classical Latin; if in classical Latin a different meaning is usually found in the new construction. Thus *indulgēre aliquid*, *to grant a thing*, *invidēre alicui aliquid*, *obtrētāre*, with Acc., *sūdēre*, *persuadēre*, with Acc. of the Person, are post-classical and late; *moderari*, with Acc., is found in *Lucantrius* and in Silver Latin; *temperare*, meaning *mix*, takes Acc. at all periods. *Fidere*, *cōfidere*, *diffidere* are found also with Ablative.

Sometimes the personal interest is emphasized when the Dat. is employed, as over against the Accusative. So regularly with verbs of Fearing, as: *metuēre aliquem*, *to dread some one*, but *metuēre alicui*, *to fear for some one*; *cavēre alicui*, *to take precautions for some one*, but *cavēre aliquem* (also dē, ab aliquo), *to take precautions against some one*; *cavēre aliquā rē* (early), *to beware of a thing*. *Cōsulere aliquem*, *to consult a person*; *cōsulere alicui*, *to consult for a person*. On *convenire*, see 347, n. 2.

Noteworthy are the constructions of *invidēre* and *vacāre*:

*Invidēre alicui (in) aliquā rē* (Cic. uses prep.)      } *to begrudge a man a thing.*  
                *alicui aliquid* (Verg., Hor., etc.)      } *to begrudge a man a thing.*

*aliciūs rē* (once in HORACE, S., II. 6, 84), *to begrudge a thing.*

*(alicius) alicui rē* (common), *to envy something belonging to a man.*

*Vacāre rē*, *to be at leisure for*, *to attend to*      } *a matter.*  
                *rē, & rē*, *to be at leisure from*      }

Sometimes there is hardly any difference in meaning:

*Comitor aliquam*, *I accompany a man*; *comitor alicui*, *I act as companion to a man*; *praestōlōr alicui* (better) or *aliquem*, *I wait for*.

3. Some words with similar meanings take the Accusative; the most notable are: *acquāre*, *to be equal*; *dēcēre* (*to distinguish*), *to be becoming*; *dēfīcere*, *to be wanting*; *delectare*, *to please*; *iuvāre*, *to be a help*; *iubēre*, *to order*; *laedēre*, *to injure*; and *vetāre*, *to forbid*.

*Eam picturā imitāti sunt multi*, *equāvit nōmō*, PLIN., N.H., XXXV. 12, 126; *that style of painting many have imitated, none equalled*. *Forma virō neglēcta decet*, OV., A.A., I. 509; *a careless beauty is becoming to men*. *Mē dīs dēficiat*, C., Verr., II. 21, 52; *the day would fail me*. *Fortis fortūna adiuvat*, TEE., Ph., 503; *fortune favors the brave*.

TACITRUS is the first to use *iubēre* with Dative; *Ann.*, IV. 72, etc.

4. The Dat. use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So *nūbere alicui*, *to marry a man* (to veil for him); *medēri alicui*, *to heal* (to take one's measures for) a man; *supplicare*, *to beg* (to bow the knee to); *persuadēre*, *to persuade* (to make it sweet).

5. After the analogy of verbs the phrases *audientem esse*, *to hear*, i.e., *to obey*, *supplicem esse*, *to entreat*, *auctōrem esse*, *to advise*, *fidem habēre*, *to have faith in*, are also found with the Dative:

*Si potest tibī diōtō audiēns esse quisquam*, C., Verr., I. 44, 114.

6. The poets are very free in their use of the Dat. with verbs of the same general

meaning as those given. So *s&s miscere*, *to mingle with* : *cōfere*, *concurrere*, *to meet* ; verbs of *contending*, as *contendere*, *bellare*, *pīgnare*, *certāre* ; verbs of *disagreement*, as *differre*, *discrepare*, *distīre*, *dissentire*. Here belongs *haerēre* with the Dat., as V., A., IV. 73, which may, however, be a Locative construction.

#### Dative and Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.

**347.** Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, (*post*), *prae*, *sub*, and *super*, take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an Accusative case besides.

*Pl&shar;e cīncts comītīs adfīut, C., Planc., 8, 21 ; the entire commonly was present at the election.* *Omnis sēnsus homīnum multō antecellit sēnsibus bēstīarūm, C., N.D., II. 57, 145 ; every sense of man is far superior to the senses of beasts.* (Ennius) *equī fortīs et victōris senectūti comparat suam, C., Cat.M., 5, 14 ; Ennius compares his (old age) to the old age of a gallant and winning steed.* *Imminent duo rēgēs tōti Asiae, C., Imp., 5, 12 ; two kings are menaces to all Asia.* *Interēs cōmīlīs, C., Att., XIV. 22, 2 ; you are in their councils, are privy to their plans.* *Piger ipse sibī obstat, Prov. (311, 2).* *Omnibus Drūdībus praeceſt finis, CAES., B.G., VI. 13, 8 ; at the head of all the Druids is one man.* *Anatum ūva gallīni saepe suppōmīnū, C., N.D., II. 48, 124 ; we often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).* *Neque dēcessē neque superesse ref pūblicē vōlā, C. (POLLIO), Fam., X. 33, 5 ; no life that is not true to the state, no life that outlives the state's—that is my motto.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The Dat. is found, as a rule, only when these verbs are used in a transferred sense. In a local sense the preposition should be employed, although even classical Latin is not wholly consistent in this matter. In poetry and later prose the Dat. is extended even to the local signification. In early Latin the repetition of the preposition is the rule.

So *incumbere in glādiūm*, C., *Inw.*, II. 51, 154, *to fall upon one's sword*.

2. The principal intrans. verbs with the Dat. in classical Latin are:

*Accēdere* (*to join, or, to be added* ; otherwise usually preposition *ad*) ; *accūmbēre* (once in Cic.) ; *adēsse* (also with *ad*, *in*, and, in PLAUT., *apud*) ; *adhaerēscere* (*ad* of local uses) ; *arridēre* (once in Cic.) ; *annuēre* (occasionally with Acc.) ; *assentīrī* ; *assidēre* ; *antecēdere* (also with Acc.) ; *anteēre* (also with Acc.) ; *antecellēre* (with Acc. from LIVY on) ; *congruēre* (also with *cum*) ; *cōsentīre* (also with *cum*) ; *cōstāre* ; *convenīre* (*to suit* ; with *cum*, *to agree with*, especially in the phrase *convenit mihi cum aliquō*, *I agree with*) ; *illūdēre* (also with Acc. and occasionally in and Acc.) ; *impēndēre* (with Acc. is archaic ; occasionally in) ; *incēdere* (SALL., LIVY, etc.) ; *incidēre* (twice in Cic. ; regularly in) ; *incubēre* (but *incumbēre* regularly with *in* or *ad*) ; *inesse* (once in Cic.) ; *inhaerēre* (occa-

sionally ad or in with Abl.) ; *inhibere* (PLAUT. has Acc. only) ; *innesci* (*innatus*) ; *inservire* ; *insinuare* (once in CIC. ; usually in) ; *ministere* (locally, in with Abl. ; occasionally Acc.) ; *instare* ; *invadere* (once in CIC. ; occasionally Acc. ; regularly in) ; *intercedere* ; *intercurrere* ; *intervenire* (also with in and Abl.) ; *intervenire* ; *obesse* ; *obspere* (usually in, ad) ; *obstare* ; *obstare* ; *obstrepere* ; *obtingere* ; *obvenire* ; *obversari* ; *occurrere* ; *occurfere* ; *praestare* ; *praesidere* ; *subesse* ; *subvenire* ; *succedere* ; *succumbere* ; *suorēscere* (once in CIC.) ; *suocurrere* ; *superesse*.

3. The same variety of construction is found with transitive verbs, in composition.

4. After the analogy of *praestare*, *excellere*, *to excel*, is also found with the Dative.

5. Some trans. verbs, compounded with dē and ex (rarely with ab), take the Dat., but it properly comes under 845.

*Caesar Déjotarō tetrarchian eripuit, eidemque dētraxit Armeniam, Cf. C., Div., II. 37, 79; Caesar wrested from Déjotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped from him Armenia.*

#### Dative with Verbs of Giving and Putting.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

*Prædam militibus dōnat, CAES., B.G., VII. II, 9; he presents the booty to the soldiers. But Rubrium corōnā dūmisti, C., Verr. III. 80, 185; thou didst present Rubrius with a crown.*

*Natura corpus animō circumedit, SEN., E.M., 92, 18; Nature has put a body around the mind. But Deus animū circumdedit corpore, Cf. C., Tim., 6, 20; God has surrounded the mind with a body.*

REMARKS.—I. These are: *aspergere*, to besprinkle and to sprinkle on ; *circundare*, *circumfundere*, to surround ; *dōnare*, to present ; *impertire*, to endow and to give ; *induere*, to clothe and to put on ; *excure*, to strip of and to strip off ; *intercludere*, to shut off ; *miscere*, to mix and to mix in.

2. In general, classical Latin here prefers the Dat. of the person, but no fixed rule is followed.

#### Dative of Possessor.

349. *Esse*, *to be*, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have* :

[*Contraversia*] mihi fuit cum avunculo tuō, C., Fin., III. 2, 6; *I had a debate with your uncle.* An nescis longās rāgibus esse manus? Ov., Her.,

XVI. 166 ; or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms ? Compare *nōn habet, ut putāmus, fortīna longās manus*, SEN., *E.M.*, 82, 5.

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of *esse*, with the Dat., is translated in the ordinary manner : *Caesar amīcus est mihi*, *Caesar is a friend to me (amicus meus, my friend, friend of MINE).*

2. The Dat. is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dat. is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Gen. characterizes the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic. The Gen. is the permanent Possessor, or owner; the Dat. is the temporary Possessor. The one may include the other:

*Latinī conēdunt Rōmā caput Latīū esse*, Cf. L., VIII. 4, 5; *the Latins concede that Latium has its capital in ROME*. (*Latīū: that LATIUM's capital is Rome.*)

3. Possession of qualities is expressed by *esse* with *in* and the Abl., by *inesse* with Dat. or with *in*, or by some other turn :

*Fuit inrīcitus in Crassō pudor*, C., *Or.*, I. 26, 122 (346). *Cimōn habēbat satis eloquentiae*, *N.E.P.*, v. 2, 1; *Cimon had eloquence enough.*

SALLUST introduces the Dat. also for these relations.

4. *Abesse* and *dēesse*, *to be wanting, to fail*, take also the Dat. of Possessor.

5. The Dat. of the person is regular with the phrases *nōmen (cōgnōmen) est, inditum est, etc.* Here the name is in the Nom. in apposition to *nōmen*, in the best usage. Rarely in CICERO, once in SALLUST, never in CAESAR, more often in early and post-Ciceronian Latin, the name is found in the Dat.; either by attraction with the Dat. of the person or on the analogy of the Double Dative. The Appositional Genitive (361) is first cited from VELLEIUS. The undeclined Nom. after an active verb appears first in OVID; then in SUTONIUS.

*Fūns aquae dulcis, cui nōmen Arethūsa est*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 53, 118; *a fountain of sweet water named Arethusa*. *Apollodōrus, cui Pyragrō cōgnōmen est*, C., *Verr.*, III. 31, 74; *Apollodorus, surnamed Pyragrus (fire-tongs)*. *Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi*, PL., *Rud.*, 5; *my name is Arcturus*. *Tih nōmen inskū posuēre*, H., *S.*, II. 3, 47; *they called you "cracked."* [SAMNITES] *Maleventū, cui nunc urbi Beneventū nōmen est, perfigerunt*, L., IX. 27, 14; *the Samnites fled to Maleventum (Ilcome), a city which now bears the name Beneventum (Welcome)*. *Aetā, cui fēcimus 'aurea' nōmen*, Ov., *M.*, XV. 96; *the age to which we have given the name 'Golden.'*

#### Dative of Personal Interest.

In its widest sense this category includes the Dative with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, already treated, and the Ethical Dative, Dative of Reference, and Dative of Agent, to follow. In its narrower sense it applies only to persons or their equivalents who are essential to, but not necessarily participant in or affected by, the result, and differs from the Dative with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, in that the connection with the verb is much more remote.

350. 1. The person from whose point of view the action is observed, or towards whom it is directed, may be put in the Dative. A convenient but not exact translation is often the English Possessive (*Dativus Energius*).

*Ei libenter m̄ ad pedēs abiēci, Cf. C., Att., VIII. 9, 1 ; I gladly cast myself at his feet. In cōspectum vñerat hostibus, HIRT., VIII. 27 ; he had come into the sight of the enemy. Tuū virō oculi dolent, Cf. TEE., Ph., 1053 ; your husband's eyes ache ; nearer, your husband has a pain in his eyes (tui viri oculi, your HUSBAND's eyes).*

NOTE.—This Dative is not common in CICERO and is not cited for early Latin. But it becomes common from LIVY on. With Relative and Demonstrative pronouns it is often used by Ciceronian and Augustan poets. In the case of many of the examples we have parallel constructions with the Gen. of Possessor, which is the normal usage.

2. The Dative is used of the person in whose honor, or interest, or advantage, or for whose pleasure, an action takes place, or the reverse (*Dativus Commodi et Incommodi*):

*Consurrēxisse omnes [Lysandrō] dicuntur, C., Cat. M., 18, 68 ; all are said to have risen up together in honor of Lysander. [Deo] nostra altaria fumant, V., Ec., I. 43 ; our altars smoke in honor of the god. Si quid peccat mihi peccat, TEE., Ad., 115 ; if he commits a fault, it is at my cost.*

#### Ethical Dative.

351. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use is confined to the personal pronouns (*Dativus Ethiscus*.)

*Tu mihi Antōni exemplō istius audāciam defendis ! C., Verr., III. 91, 213 ; do you defend me (to my face) by Antony's example that fellow's audacity ? Ecce tibi Sēbosus ! C., Att., II. 15 ; here's your Sebosus !*

"She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer."—SHAKESPEARE.

NOTE.—1. This is essentially a colloquialism, common in comedy, especially with *ecce* and *em*, frequent in CICERO's letters, occasionally found elsewhere. In poetry, notably Augustan, it is almost wholly absent ; but there are several cases in HORACE. CICERO does not use *em*. LIVY does not use *ecce*.

2. Especially to be noted is *sibi velle*, *to want, to mean* : *Quid tibi vis, insigne, C., Or., II. 67, 200* ; *what do you want, madman ? Quid volt sibi haec trātiō ? TEE., Herald., 615* ; *what does all this holding forth mean ?*

#### Dative of Reference.

352. This indicates the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good (*Dativus Iudicantis*).

*Ut mihi deformis, sic tibi magnificus, TAC., H., XII. 37 ; to me a monster, to yourself a prodigy of splendor. Quintia formōsa est multis, CAT., 86, 1 ; Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.*

NOTE.—This Dative is characteristic of the Augustan poets, but it is also common enough in CICERO and the prose authors.

353. Noteworthy is the use of this Dative in combination with participles, which shows two varieties, one giving the *local* point of view, the other the *mental*, both post-Ciceronian and rare. CAESAR gives the first local usage, LIVY the first mental.

[Hoc] est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Epirō, CAES., B.C., III. 80; *this is the first town of Thessaly to those coming (as you come) from Epirus.* Verr̄ aetimanti, L., XXXVII. 58, 8; *to one whose judgment was true.*

NOTES.—1. This construction is probably drawn from the Greek, although VITRUVIUS shows several examples.

2. Certainly Greek is the Dat. of the person with **volentl**, **cupientl**, **invitō (est)**, etc., which is found first in SALLUST, once in LIVY, and sporadically in TACITUS, and later.

#### Dative of the Agent.

354. The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 215.)

Mihī rēs tōta p̄ovisa est, C., Verr., IV. 42, 91; *I have had the whole matter provided for.* Cui nōn sunt auditae Demosthenis vigiliae? C., Tusc., IV. 19, 44; *to whom are not Demosthenes' long watchings a familiar hearsay?*

NOTES.—1. Instances of this Dat. with the Tenses of Continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation:

Barbarus hic ego sum qui nōn intellegor filii, Ov., Tr., v. 10, 37; *I am a barbarian here because I can't make myself intelligible to any one.*

Whenever an adj. or an equivalent is used, the Dat. Pl. may be an Ablative:

Sic dissimilimis bēstīoli communiter cibis quaeritur, C., N.D., II. 48, 123; *so, though these little creatures are very unlike, their food is sought in common.* Carninae quae scribuntur aquae p̄otōribus, H., Ep., I. 10, 8; *poems which are written when people are water-drinkers.* Cēna ministrātur pueris tribus, H., S., I. 6, 116; *Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.*

2. This Dat. is rare in early Latin, rare, if ever, in CAESAR, not uncommon in CICERO. But it is much liked by the poets and by some prose writers, notably by TACITUS.

355. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative, at all periods.

Diligentia praecipuē colenda est nōbis, C., Or., II. 35, 148; *carefulness is to be cultivated by us first and foremost.* Desperanda tibi salvā concordia socti, Juv., VI. 231; *you must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

**REMARK.**—To avoid ambiguity, especially when the verb itself takes the Dat., the Abl. with *ab* (§) is employed for the sake of clearness :

*Civibus & vobis cōsulendum, C., Imp., 2, 6 ; the interest of the citizens must be consulted by you. Suppliciō ab eo dīcernenda nōn fuit, C., Ph., XIV. 4, 11.*

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of *ab*:

*Linguae moderandum est mihi, PL., Curc., 486 ; I must put bounds to my tongue.*

**NOTE.**—Poets are free in their use of this Dative; so with verbals in *billis*; as, *multis illis bonis fibilis occidit, H., O., I. 24. 9 ; nulli exorribilis, Sil. Ital., V. 131.*

#### Dative of the Object For Which.

**356.** Certain verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom.

*Nemini meus adventus labōri aut sumptui fuit, C., Verr., I. 6, 16 ; to no one was my arrival a burden or an expense. Virtus sola neque datur dōnō neque accipitur, S., Iug., 85, 88 ; virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present. Habēre quaestū rem pūblicam turpe est, C., Off., II., 22, 77 ; it is base to have the state for one's exchequer.*

**REMARKS.**—1. Noteworthy is the legal phrase *cui bonū? to whom is it for an advantage?* = *who is advantaged?*

2. In the classical times the principal verbs in this construction are *esse, dare, dōcere, habere, vertere*, and a few others which occur less frequently. Later Latin extends the usage to many other verbs, and especially to Gerundive constructions. *Dare* is used principally in the phrase *dōnō dare*.

3. The Double Dative is found principally with *esse*, but occasionally with other verbs. Here there seems to have been a tendency, mainly post-Ciceronian, to use the predicative Nom. instead of the Dative. Interesting sometimes is the shift in usage; thus, *CICERO* says *est turpitudinē, NEPOS, fuit turpitudini.*

**NOTE.**—1. In the same category, but with the idea of finality more clearly indicated, are the agricultural usages, *alimentū serere, conditū legere*; the medical, *remedīū adhibēre*; the military terms, *praesidiū, auxiliū, mittere, esse, etc.*

2. With *Livy* we notice the great extension of this Dat. with verbs of *seeking, choosing, etc.*, where classical Latin would prefer some other construction. So *locum insidiis* (*insidiārum* is classical) *circumspectare Poenus coepit, L., xxi. 53, 11.* *TACITUS* goes furthest in such usages. *CAESAR*, however, shows a few instances (*B. G.*, I. 30, 3).

3. The Final Dative with intrans. verbs is military and rare. So *receptui canere, to sound a retreat*, is found first in *CAES.*, *B. G.*, VII. 47. *SALLUST* shows a few examples. The Dat., with similar substantives, is an extension, and is very rare. *CICERO*, *Ph.*, XIII. 7, 15, says *receptui signum.*

4. The origin of this usage may have been mercantile (Key). In English we treat Profit and Loss as persons : *Quem fors diūrum cumque dabit lucrō appōne*, H., O., I. 9, 14 ; " *Every day that Fate shall give, set down to Profit.*" On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 499.

#### Dative with Derivative Substantives.

**357.** A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives :

*Iustitia est obtemperātiō legib⁹s*, C., *Leg.*, I. 15, 42 ; *justice is obedience to the laws.*

NOTE.—We find a few examples in PLAUTUS, several in CICERO, and only sporadically elsewhere. Usually the verbal force is very prominent in the substantives ; as, *insidiās cōnsuli mātūrāre*, S., *C.*, 32, 2.

#### Local Dative.

**358.** The Dative is used in poetry to denote the *place whither*.

*Karthāgini iam nōn ego nūntiōs mittam superbōs*, H., O., IV. 4, 69 ; *to Carthage no more shall I send haughty tidings.* *Iam satis terris nivis atque dirae grandinis misit pater*, H., O., I. 2, 1 ; *full, full enough of snow and dire hail the Sire hath sent the Land.*

NOTES.—1. This construction begins with ACCRUS, and is not uncommon in the Augustan poets. No examples are cited from PLAUTUS or TERENCE, hence the inference is fair that it was not a colloquialism. As a poetical construction it seems to have sprung from personification.

2. Occasionally the substantive is also thus construed ; as in the *facili⁹ dēscēnsus Avern⁹* of VERGIL (*A.*, VI. 126).

The extreme is reached when the Dative follows fire and the like :

*It caelō cīlīmōrque virūm clangorque tubārum*, V., *A.*, XI. 192 ; *mounts to High Heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.*

3. Tendere manūs has a few times, even in CICERO and CAESAR, the Dat. of the person, which is sometimes referred to this head. But the usual construction is ad.

*Mātrēs familiæ Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 48.

#### Dative with Adjectives.

**359.** Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative :

*Canis similis lupō est*, C., *N.D.*, I. 35, 97 ; *the dog is like unto the wolf.* *Castris idōneus locus*, CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 10, 2 ; *a place suitable for a camp.* *Utile est ref pūblicas nōbiles hominēs esse dignōs mātērib⁹ suis*, C., *Sest.*, 9, 21 ; *it is to the advantage of the state that men of rank should be worthy of their ancestors.* *Vir mihi amicissimus*, Q. Fabricius, C., *Sest.*, 35, 75 ; *my very great friend, Q. Fabricius.* *Proximus sum egomet mihi*, TER., *And.*, 636 ; *myself am nearest to me.* *Omni⁹ aetāti mors est com-*

*mūnis*, Cf. C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 68; *death is common to every time of life*. (*Testis*) id dicit quod illi cause maximē est alienum, C., *Caec.*, 9, 24; *the witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side)*.

**REMARKS.**—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: *amicus*, friend; *affinis*, connection; *aequalis*, contemporary; *alienus* (rare), foreign, strange; *cognatus*, kinsman; *communis*, common; *contrarius*, opposite; *par*, match; *proprius*, peculiar, own, peculiar; *similis*, like ("we ne'er shall look upon his like again"), especially of gods and men, and regularly with personal pronouns, and in early Latin; *sacer*, set apart, sacred; *superstes* (rare), survivor. Comparatives have regularly the Dative; Superlatives vary.

[*Illi*], cūius pauci pars haec civitās tulit, C., *Pis.*, 4, 8; (*he was*) a man few of whose peers the state hath borne. Utinam tē nōn solum vitae, sed etiam dignitatis meas superstitem reliquissem, C., *Q.F.*, I. 3, 1; *would that I had left thee survivor not only of my life but also of my position*.

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Acc. with *in*, *ergo*, *adversus*:

*Manilius* (fuit) sevērus in filium, C., *Off.*, III. 31, 112; *Manilius was severe toward his son*. M̄s esse soit atq̄ ergo benivolum, Pl., *Capt.*, 350; *he knows that I am kindly disposed toward him*. Vir adversus merita Caesaris ingratisimus, Cf. VELL., II. 69, 1; *a man most ungrateful towards Caesar's services (to him)*.

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Acc. with *ad*, *to*:

*Homo ad nullam rem utilis*, C., *Off.*, III. 6, 29; *a good-for-nothing fellow*.

This is the more common construction with adjectives of Fitness.

**NOTES.**—1. *Propior*, nearer, *proximus*, next, are also construed (like *prope*, near) occasionally with the Acc. (principally by CAESAR, SALLUST, LIVY), the adverbial forms also with the Abl. with *ab*, *off*:

*Crassus proximus mare Oceanum hie m̄rat*, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 7, 2; *Crassus had wintered next the ocean*. Id propius fidem est, L., II. 41, 11; *that is nearer belief*, i.e., more likely.

2. *Alienus*, foreign, strange, is also construed with the Abl., with or without *ab* (E); so commonly *absonus*.

*Homo sum, hūmāni n̄l s̄ m̄ alienum patō*, TEE., *Heaut.*, 77; *I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me*.

3. *Imnotus*, *omnifunctus*, joined, are also construed frequently with *cum* and the Abl.; sometimes with the Abl. only: *improbitas scelerē imnotata*, C., *Or.*, II. 58, 237.

4. *Similis* is said to be used with the Gen. when the likeness is general and comprehensive; with the Dat. when it is conditional or partial; hence, in classical prose, always *v̄r̄ simile*, LIVY being the first to say *v̄r̄ simile*.

5. **Adversus**, *opponent*, seems to be construed with the Gen. once in SALLUST (C., 52, 7) and once in QUINTILIAN (XII. 1. 2). *Invidus*, *envious*, is cited with the Gen. once in CICERO (*Flac.*, I. 2), then not till late Latin; with the Dat. it is poetical; otherwise the possessive pronoun is used, as *tui invidi* (C., *Fam.*, I. 4, 2). *Prōnus*, inclined, with the Dat., occurs in SALLUST (*Jug.*, 114, 2), then not till TACITUS; the usual construction is *ad*. *Intentus*, *intent upon*, has Abl. in SALLUST (C., 2, 9, etc.);

otherwise Dat., or ad (in) with Acc. Notice the use of *sversus* with Dat. in Tac., *An.*, I. 66, 2; some other examples are doubtful.

6. In poetry, *Idem, the same*, is often construed after Greek analogy, with the Dative.

*Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti*, H., *A.P.*, 467; *he who saves a man's life against his will does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he had killed him)*.

7. Adverbs of similar meaning sometimes take the Dative: *Congruenter nātriae convenienterque vivere*, C., *An.*, III. 7, 26.

## II. Internal Change.

### Genitive.

360. 1. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective, with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are:

(a) The Possessive case: *Domus regis, the king's palace.*

(b) The Objective case with *of*: *Domus regis, the palace of the king.*

(c) Substantives used as adjectives or in composition: *Arbor abietis, fir-tree.*

REMARKS.—1. Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (363, R. 1.)

*Patriae quis exsul s8 quoque fugit?* H., *O.*, II. 16, 19; *what exile from his country ever fled himself as well?* *Boīrum triumphi spem colligae reliquit*, L., XXXIII. 37, 10; *he left the hope of a triumph over the Boī to his colleague.*

*Via mortis* may be considered *the way (mode) of death* or *the death-path*, instead of *via ad mortem* (L., XLIV. 4, 14).

2. An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute:

*Verni temporis suavitatis*, C., *Cat.M.*, 19, 70; *the sweet spring-time.* *Fontium gelidas perennitatis*, C., *N.D.*, II. 39, 98; *cool springs that never fail.* Compare S., C., 8, 3.

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with *of*:

*Ante Rōmanū conditam, before the founding of Rome.* (325, R. 3.)

Notice also *hic metus, this fear* = *fear of this*, and kindred expressions: *Quam similitudinem = cūius ref similitudinem*, C., *N.D.*, II. 10, 27.

2. The Genitive is employed:

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

NOTE.—As the Accusative forms a complex with the verb, so the Genitive forms a complex with the Substantive or equivalent. No logical distribution can be wholly satisfactory, and the following arrangement has regard to convenience.

## I. GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

## Adnominal Genitive.

## Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

361. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case; there are two varieties:

1. *Appositional Genitive*.—Genitive after such words as, *vōx, expression*; *nōmen, name, noun*; *verbum, word, verb*; *rēs, thing, etc.*

*Nōmen amicitiae, C., Fin., II. 24, 78; the name friendship.*

2. *Epezegetical Genitive*.—Genitive after such words as *genus, class*; *vitium, vice*; *culpa, fault, etc.*

[*Virtutēs*] *continentiae, gravitatis, iustitiae, fidei, C., Mur., 10, 28; the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor.*

NOTES.—1. The former variety is very rare in CICERO, the latter much more common. A special variety is the use of the Gen. after such words as *urbs, oppidum, flumen, etc.* This is not found in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, occurs perhaps but once in CICERO, and seems to be confined to a few cases in poetry and later prose. Often personification is at work; thus, in *fōns Timavī* (V., A., I. 244), *Timavus* is a river god, and *fōns* is not equal to *Timavus*.

2. Examples like *arbor abietis* (L., xxiv. 3, 4), *fir-tree*; *arbor fici* (C., Flac., 17, 41), *fig-tree, etc.*, occur only here and there.

3. Colloquial, and probably belonging here, are: *scelus viri* (Pl., M.G., 1434), *a scoundrel of a man*; *flagitium hominis* (Pl., Asin., 473), *a scamp of a fellow*, and the like. *Quaedam pēstis hominum*, C., Nam., V. 8, 2; *certain pestilent fellows*.

## Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of Property.

362. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel; it is used only of the Third Person.

*Dominus rēgis = dominus rēgīa, the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession in the First and Second Person (and in the Reflexive) is indicated by the Possessive Pronouns (until after LIVY): *amicus meus, a friend of mine*; *gladius tuus, a sword of thine*. But when *omnium* is added, *vestrum* and *nostrum* are used; *eris et fōcis omnium nostrum inimicus*, C., Ph., xi. 4, 10. Sometimes the adjective form is preferred also in the Third Person: *canis alienus, a strange dog, another man's dog*; *filius erilis, master's son*.

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. *Status Myrōnis, Myron's statue*, may mean: 1. A statue which Myron owns; 2. Which Myron has made; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Sometimes the governing word is omitted, where it can be easily

supplied, so especially *aedes* or *templum*, after *ad*, and less often after other prepositions : *Pectinia utinam ad Opis mansret*, C., *Ph.*, I. 7, 17 ; *would that the money were still at Ops's* (temple).

NOTES.—1. The *Family* Genitive, as *Hasdrubal Giugnūs* (L., xxviii., 12, 13), *Giego's Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal, Giego's son* (as it were, *Hasdrubal O' Giego*), *Hectoris Andromachē* (V., A., III. 319), *Hector's (wife) Andromache*, is found twice only in CICERO, otherwise it is poetical and post-Ciceronian. *Servos*, however, is regularly omitted ; *Flaccus Claudi, Flaccus, Claudio's slave*.

2. The *Chorographic (geographic)* Genitive is rare and post-Ciceronian : *Rōx Chalcidem Euboeas vénit*, L., xxvii. 30, 7; *the king came to Chalcis of (in) Eubœa*.

The *Chorographic* Genitive is not found with persons. Here an adjective or a prepositional phrase is necessary : *Thalōs Miletīns, or ex Miletōs, Thales of Miletus*.

#### Active and Passive Genitive.

**363.** When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action (*nōmen āctionis*), the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive : *amor Dei, the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves); *patriae beneficia, the benefits of (conferred by) one's country* (376, R. 2).

2. Passive or Objective Genitive : *amor Dei, love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively* : *the love of women*. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for, toward, and the like*. So, also, sometimes in Latin, especially in LIVY, and later Historians generally :

*Voluntās Serviliī ergā Caesarem*, Cf. C., Q.F., III. I. 6, 26; *the good-will of Servilius toward Caesar*. *Odiū in bonōs inveteratūm*, C., Vat., 3, 6; *deep-seated hate toward the conservatives*.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same substantive :

*Veterēs Helvētiōrum iniuriaē populi Rōmāni*, Cf. CAES., B.G., I. 30, 2; *the ancient injuries of the Roman people by the Helvetians*.

NOTE.—The use of the Genitive with substantives whose corresponding verbs take other cases than the Accusative, gradually increases in Latin, beginning with the earliest times, but it is not very common in the classical language.

**364.** The Subjective Genitive, like the Possessive, is used only of the Third Person. In the First and Second Persons the possessive pronoun is used, thus showing the close relationship of Agent and Possessor.

*Amor meus, my love (the love which I feel). Désiderium tuum, your longing (the longing which you feel).*

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive (321, n. 2):

*Iuravi hanc urbem meū tūlus operū salvam esse*, C., *Pis.*, 3, 6; *I swear that this city owed its salvation to my exertions alone.*

REMARK.—*Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives:  
*Magna pars nostrum*, *a great part of us*; *uterque vestrum*, *either (both) of you*.

*Nostrī melior pars* means *the better part of our being, our better part*.  
With *omnium*, the forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* must be used (302, R. 1).

NOTES.—1. Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Gen. is used instead of the possessive pronoun; so Cicero says *splendor vestrum* (*Att.*, vii. 13 a, 3), and *cōfensus vestrum* (*Ph.*, v. 1, 2), and one or two others; but other examples are very rare until after Tacitus, when the Singular forms, after the example of Ovid (*M.*, l. 30), become not uncommon. See 304, 3, n. 1. "For the life of me" = "for my life."

2. On the other hand the Genitives of the personal pronouns are used regularly as the Objective Genitive:

*Amar mei, love to me.* *Desiderium tui, longing for thee.* *Memoria nostri, memory of us (our memory).*

Occasionally the possessive pronoun is used even here; see 304, 2, n. 2, and compare "The deep damnation of *his* taking off."

#### Genitive of Quality.

365. The Genitive of Quality must always have an adjective or its equivalent.

*Vir magnae auctoritatis*, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 35, 6; *a man of great influence.* *Homō nihilī* (= *nullius pretii*), PL., *B.*, 1188; *a fellow of no account.* *Tridui via*, CAES., *B.G.*, i. 38, 1; *a three days' journey.* *Nōn multi cibi hospitem accipīt̄, multi ioci*, C., *Fam.*, ix. 26, 4; *you will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.*

REMARKS.—1. The Genitive of Quality, like the adjective, is not used with a proper name. Exceptions are very rare in classical Latin (CAES., *B.G.*, v. 35, 6, *Quintus Lucinius, eiusdem ordinis*). But later they are more common.

2. The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being used chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (400.)

NOTE.—The omission of the adjective is not found before APULEIUS, *in whom, as in English, a man of influence may be for a man of great influence.*

#### Genitive as a Predicate.

366. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

*Hic versus Plauti nō est, hic est*, C., *Fam.*, ix. 16, 4; *this verse is not*

by Plautus, this is. *Omnia quae mulieris fu&frunt, viri flunt d&otis n&omine,* C., *Top.*, iv. 23; everything that was the woman's becomes the husband's under the title of dowry. *Virtus tant&rum virium est ut s& ipsa tue&tur,* C., *Tusc.*, v. i, 2; virtue is of such strength as to be her own protector.

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations :

*Huius er& vivus, mortuus huius er&,* PROP., II. 15, 35: *hers I shall be, living; dead, hers I shall be.* *N&lae senatus R&oman&rum, plebe Hannibalis erat,* L., XXIII. 39, 7; *at Nola the senate was (on the side) of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's.* *Damn&ti& est iudic&um, poena legis,* C., *Sull.*, 22, 63; *condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's.* *Est animi ingenui cui multum d&ebet eidem plurimum velle d&ebere,* C., *Fam.*, II. 6, 2; *it shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him to whom you already owe much.* *Pau&peris est numerare pecus,* Ov., M., XIII. 823; *'tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).*

Observe the special variety, *Genitivus Auct&oris*: *Is [Hercul&es] dic&atur esse Myronis,* C., *Verr.*, IV. 3, 5; *that (statue of) Hercules was said to be Myron's (work), by Myron.*

So also with *facere, to make (causes to be)*, which is common in Livy especially :

*R&oman&ae dict&onis facere,* L., XXI. 60, 3; *to bring under the Roman sway.* *Summum imperium in orbe terrarum Macedonum fecerant,* L., XLV. 7, 3; *the paramount authority of the world they had brought (into the hands) of the Macedonians.*

2. For the personal representative of a quality, the quality itself may be used sometimes with but little difference, as : *stultitiae est, it is the part of folly;* *stulti est, it is the part of a fool.* So, too, *stultum est, it is foolish.* But when the adj. is of the Third Declension, the neuter should not be used, except in combination with an adj. of the Second.

*Tempor& c&ddere semper sapientis est habitum,* C., *Fam.*, IV. 9, 2; *to yield to the pressure of the times has always been held wise.* *Pigrum et iners videtur sudore adquirere quod possis sanguine parire,* TAC., G., 14, 17; *it is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood.*

Some combinations become phraseological, as : *obsu&tidinis, m&oris est* (the latter post-classical), *it is the custom.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is *mine*") : *meum est, it is my property, business, way.*

*N&n est mentiri meum,* TEE., *Heaut.*, 549; *lying is not my way (I do not lie).* *His tantis in r&ebus est tuum videre, quid ag&tur,* C., *Mur.*, 38, 83; *in this important crisis it is your business to see what is to be done.*

**Partitive Genitive.**

**367.** The Partitive Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs. It is therefore but an extension of the Possessive Genitive. It may be used with any word that involves partition, and has the following varieties (368–372) :

**368.** The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight.

**M**aximus vini numerus fuit, permagnum pondus argenti, C., *Ph.*, II. 27, 66 ; there was a large amount of wine, an enormous mass of silver. In iugero Leontini agri medimnum tritici seritur, C., *Verr.*, III. 47, 112 ; on a juger of the Leontine territory a medimnum of wheat is sown. Campanorum clam, quingentis ferè equitis excedere acie iubet, L., x. 29, 2 ; he orders a squadron of Campanians, about 500 horsemen, to leave the line.

REMARK.—This is sometimes called the *Gensitivus Generis*. Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

**M**edimnum tritici, a medimnum of wheat, may be a medimnum of WHEAT (*Gensitivus Generis*) or a MEDIMNUM of wheat (Partitive).

NOTE.—The reversed construction is occasionally found. **S**ex diēs ad eam rem confidēdam spatiū pōstulant, *Cæs.*, *B.C.*, I. 3, 6, instead of **s**patiū sex diērum.

**369.** The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative.

tantum, so much,	quantum, as (how much),	aliquantum, somewhat,
multum, much,	plus, more,	plurimum, most,
paullum, little,	minus, less,	minimum, least,
satis, enough,	parum, too little,	nihil, nothing,
hōc, this,	id, illud, istud, that,	idem, the same,
quod and quid, which and what ?		with their compounds.

Quod in rēbus honestis operae cūrāeque pōmetur, id īāre laudabitur, C., *Off.*, I. 6, 19 ; what (of) effort and pains shall be bestowed on reputable deeds, will receive a just recompense of praise. Is locus ab omni turbā id temporis (330, N. 2) vacuus [erat], C., *Fin.*, v. 1, 1 ; that place was at that (point of) time free from anything like a crowd. Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, S., C., 5, 4 ; enough (of) eloquence, of wisdom too little.

REMARKS.—I. Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Gen.; not so adjectives of the Third, except in combination with adjectives of the Second, but here usually the Second Declension adjective is attracted : aliquid bonum, or boni, something good ; aliquid memorabile, something memorable ; aliquid boni

*et memoribilia, something good and memorable* (better *aliquid bonum et memorabile*).

*Quid habet ista rēs aut laetabilius aut gloriōsum?* C., *Tusc.*, I. 21, 49 (204, n. 8).

2. A familiar phrase is : *Nihil reliqui facere.* 1. *To leave nothing (not a thing).* 2. (Occasionally), *to leave nothing undone.*

NOTES.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. So *Quocumque hōc rēgnūl.* V., A., I. 78 ; *this realm, what (little) there is of it (what little realm I have).* Perhaps, too, such combinations as *fīgitūm hominīs* may be classed under this head. See 361, n. 8.

2. The partitive construction, with a preposition, is not found in CICERO or CAESAR, but begins with SALLUST :

*Ad id locūl.* S., C., 45, 3 ; *ad id locōrum,* S., *Jug.*, 63, 6.

**370.** The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both general and special.

*Special :*

*Centū militū, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.*

(*Centū milites, a, the hundred soldiers.*)

*Quintū rēgnū, the fifth (of the) king(s).*

(*Quintū rēx, the fifth king.*)

*General :*

*Multū militū, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.*

(*Multū milites, many soldiers.*)

REMARKS.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic :

*Multū civiū adsunt, many CITIZENS are present.* *Multū civēs adsunt, MANY are the citizens present.*

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition in Latin :

(*Nōs*) *trecenti confrāvimus,* L., II. 12, 15 ; *three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.* *Volnra quae circum plurima mīrōs accepit patriū,* V., A., II. 277 ; *wounds which he received in great numbers before his country's walls.*

*Qui omnes, all of whom.* *Quot estis? how many are (there of) you?* So always *quot, tot, totidem.*

Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare.

3. On *mille* and *mīlia*, see 298. On prepositions with numerals, see 372, R. 2.

**371.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns.

*II militū, those (of the) soldiers.* *II milites, those soldiers.*

*Illi Graecōrum, those (of the) Greeks.*

*Fidēnātūm qui supersunt, ad urbēm Fidēnās tendant,* L., IV. 33, 10 ; *the surviving Fidenates take their way to the city of Fidenae.*

**REMARKS.**—1. *Uterque, either (both)*, is commonly used as an adjective with substantives : *uterque cōsul, either consul = both consuls*; as a substantive with pronouns, unless a substantive is also used: *uterque hōrum, both of these*; but *uterque ille dux*. So, too, with relatives in the neuter, and with Plural forms of *uterque*, concord is the rule. Compare *uterque nostram*, C., *Sull.*, 4, 18, with *utriusque nōs*, C., *Fam.*, xi. 20.

3. See 292.

2. On the use of prepositions instead of the Genitive, see 873, E. 2.

**NOTE.**—The use of the relative with the Genitive is characteristic of Livy.

**372.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives :

Prior hōrum in proeliō occidit, *N.E.P.*, xxii. 1, 2; *the former of these fell in an engagement*. Indus est omnium flūminum māximus, C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 180 (211, E. 2).

**REMARKS.**—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison (300).

2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Abl. may be employed with *ex, out of*, *dā, from* (especially with proper names and singulars), *in, among* (rare), or the Acc. with *inter, among*, *apud*: *Gallus p̄vocat finum ex Rōmānis, the Gaul challenges one of the Romans*; *tinus dā multis, one of the many (the masses)*; *Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest of kings*. With *tinus*, *ex* or *dā* is the more common construction, except that when *tinus* is *first* in a series, the Gen. is common.

3. On the concord of the Superlative see 211, E. 2.

**NOTE.**—1. The Partitive Genitive with positives is occasional in poetry ; in prose it begins with Livy and becomes more common later.

Sequimur tā, sānctō deōrum, V., *A.*, IV. 576; *we follow thee, holy deity*. Canum dēgenerēs (cāndam) sub alvō flectunt, *PLIN.*, *N.H.*, XI., 50, 235; *curious dogs curl the tail up under the belly*.

2. Substantival neutrals, with no idea of quantity, were rarely followed by the Gen. in early Latin. CICERO shows a few cases of Plurals of superlatives, and one case of a Plural of a comparative in this construction : *in interiōra aedium Sullae* (*Att.* IV., 3, 3). CAESAR shows one case of a positive : *in occultis sc̄ reconditi templi* (*B.C.*, III. 105, 5). SALLUST shows the first case of the Singular : *in praerupti montis extremo* (*Jug.*, 37, 4). Then the usage extends and becomes common, especially in TACITUS. In the poets it begins with LUCRETIUS.

*Ardua dum metuant &mittunt vēra viā* (29, n. 2), *LUCE.*, I. 660; *the while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true*.

*So amāra cūrārum, H., O., IV. 12, 19; bitter elements of cares, bitter cares; strīta viārum, V., A., I. 422 = strītas vias, the paved streets*.

3. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent : *ar-mōrum adfatiū, L., xxvii. 17, 7; abundance of arms: ubi terrārum, gentium? where in the world?* (Very late Latin, *tum temporis, at that time*.) The usage with *hūc, eō, as hūc, eō arrogantiae p̄fōcessit, he got to this, that pitch of presumption*, is a colloquialism, which begins with SALLUST, but is not found in CICERO or CAESAR.

Notice especially the phrase : *quod (or quoad) tuis (facere) possum, as far as I can do so* : C., *Fam.*, III. 2, 3; *Att.*, XI. 12, 4; *Ino.*, II., 6, 20.

4. The Partitive Genitive with proper names is rare, and mostly confined to **Livy** : *Cōsulūm Sulpiciū in dextrō Poetellū in laevō cornū cōnsistunt*, L., IX. 27, 8.

5. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish : *Fīsē nōbilium tū quoque fontium*, H., O., III., 13, 18 ; *thou too shall count among the famous fountains*.

#### Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

**373.** *Causā*, *gratiā*, *ergō*, and *instar* are construed with the Genitive.

[*Sophistae*] *quaestū causā philosophabantur*, C., *Ac.*, II. 23, 72 ; *the professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain*. *Tū mē amōris magis quam homōris servāvisti grātiā*, ENN., *F.*, 287 (M.) ; *thou didst save me more for love's (sake) than (thou didst) for honor's sake*. *Virtutis ergō*, C., *Opt. Gen.*, 7, 19 ; *on account of valor*. *Instar montis equus*, V., A., II. 15 ; *a horse the bigness of a mountain*. *Platō mihi tūnus instar est omnium*, C., *Br.*, 51, 191 ; *Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all*.

**REMARKS.**—1. *Causā* and *gratiā*, *for the sake*, commonly follow the Gen. in classical Latin and also in the Jurists. In **Livy** and later they often precede. *Ergō*, *on account*, belongs especially to early Latin, except in formulæ and laws, and follows its Genitive. It is rare in the poets. *Instar* is probably a fossilized Infinitive (*instare*), meaning "*the equivalent*," whether of size or value.

2. Except for special reasons *causā* takes the possessive pronoun in agreement, rather than the personal pronoun in the Genitive; more rarely *gratiā*:

*Vestrī reīque pūblicāe causā*, C., *Verr.*, v. 68, 173 ; *for your sake and that of the commonwealth*. But in antithesis, *multa quae nostri causā numquā facerēmus, facimus causā amīdūm*! C., *Lael.*, 16, 57 (disputed).

#### II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**374.** Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive.

*Plēnus rīmārum*, TSB., *Eun.*, 105 ; *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel"). *Particēps cōnditii*, C., *Sull.*, 4, 12 ; *a sharer in the plan*. *Mentis compos*, C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97 ; *in possession of (one's) mind*. *Multārum rērum peritus*, C., *Font.*, II., 25 ; *versed in many things*. *Cupidus pecūniæ*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, I. 3, 8 ; *grasping after money*. *Fāstidīosus Latinārum (litterārum)*, C., *Br.*, 70, 247 ; *too dainty for Latin*. *Omnium rērum inscius*, C., *Br.*, 85, 292 ; *a universal ignoramus*. *Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitae conviva recēdis!* LUCE., III. 938 (273). *Sitque memor nostri neque, referte mihi*, Ov., *Tr.*, iv.

3, 10 (204, n. 7). *Cōscia māns rēcti Fāmae mendācia risit*, Ov., *F.*, IV. 311 (830, r.). *Agricola laudat iūris lēgumque peritus*, H., *S.*, I. I, 9; *the husbandman's lot is praised by the counsel learned in the law*. *Omnis im-mōrem bēnefici ūderunt*, C., *Off.*, II. 18, 68; *all hate a man who has no memory for kindness*. (*Bēstiae* sunt ratiōnis et dīcīōnis expertēs, C., *Off.*, I. 16, 50; *beasts are devoid of reason and speech (lack discourse of reason)*). *Omnia plēna cōsiliōrum, iñfīnis verbōrum vīdēmus*, C., *Or.*, I. 9, 37; *we see a world that is full of wise measures, void of eloquence*. *Gallia frūgum fertiliſ fuit*, L., v. 34, 2; *Gaul was productive of grain*.

**Notes.**—1. Of adjectives of *Fulness*, with the Gen., only *plēnus*, *replētus*, *inops*, and *iñfīnis* are classical and common; single instances are found of *līberklīs*, *prōfīsus*, in *SALLUST* (C., 7, 6; 5, 4), and *iñfīnus* occurs once in *CICERO*. *PLAUTUS* also uses *onustus* and *prōdigus*. Poets and later prose writers are free. *Plēnus* occurs very rarely with the Abl. in *CICERO* and *CAESAR*, more often in *LIVY*. *Reperfūtus* is used by *CICERO* usually with the Abl. of the Thing and with the Gen. of the Person.

2. *Participation*: Classical are *particōps*, *expērs*, *cōnsōr*, with some adjectives expressing guilt, as *manūfēctus* (archaic), *affīnis*, *renū*. Of these *particōps* takes also the Dat. in post-classical Latin, and *expērs* has also the Abl. (not classical) from *PLAUTUS* on. (See S., C., 33, 1.) *Affīnis* has the Dat. in *LIVY*, in local sense also in *CICERO*; *renū* takes Abl. or dō.

3. *Power*: *Compos* alone is classical, and is occasionally found with Abl. in *SALLUST*, *VEREIL*, *LIVY*. *Potēns* is found in *PLAUTUS*, the poet, and post-classical prose; *impos* in *PLAUTUS*, and then not until *SENECA*.

4. *Knowledge and Ignorance*: Classical are some eighteen. Of these *peritus* has also Abl., and rarely ad; *insuſtus* takes also Dat. as well as dō; *prōfīdns* has also ad; *rūdis* has Abl. with in more often than the Gen. in *CICERO*, but also ad. Anticlassical Latin shows a few more adjectives.

5. *Desire and Disgust*: Classical are *avidus*, *cupidus*, *fāstidiōsus*, *studiōsus*. Of these *avidus* has also in with Acc. and with Abl.; *studiōsus* has Dat. in *PLAUTUS* (M.G., 80); single examples are cited with ad and in. *Fāstidiōsus* occurs but once in *CICERO* (see above); see H., O., III. 1, 37.

6. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Gen. of the Thing to which the affection refers, where model prose requires the Abl. or a preposition: *cōsūlit̄ ambigūns*, *TAC.*, *H.*, IV. 21; *doubtful of purpose*. *Ingrātus salūtis*, V., A., x. 665.

The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Gen. becomes a complement to the adjective, just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

*Integer vitæ*, H., O., I. 22, 1; *spōleess of life*; like *integritās vitæ*. (Compare *flīma et fortūnis integer*, S., H., II. 42, 5 D; *in fame and fortunes intact*.)

7. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Gen., chiefly with *animi* and *ingenii* (which were probably Locatives originally). *Aeger animi*, L., I. 58, 9; *sick at heart*, *heart-sick*. *Audāx ingenii*, *STAT.*, S., III. 2, 64; *daring of disposition*. The Pl. is *animis*.

8. The Gen. with adjectives involving *Separation* instead of the Abl. (390, 3) begins with the Augustan poets; though *SALLUST* shows *nūdus* and *vacuus* (*Jug.*, 79, 6; 90, 1); *līber labōrum*, H., *A.P.*, 212.

9. Classical Latin uses *cōrtius* with Gen. only in the phrase *cōrtidēm facere, to inform*, which has also dō (always in *CAESAR*).

10. *Dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, with Gen. are poetical and rare.

11. On *aliēnus*, *strange*, see 359, n. 2. On *aequālis*, *commūnis*, *cōncius*, *contrārius*, *pīr*, *proprius*, *similis*, *superstes*, and the like, see 359, n. 1.

## Genitive with Verbs.

**375.** Some Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature ; and so occasionally do verbs in -āx in poetry and later prose.

(*Epaminondās*) erat adēt vēritatis diligēns ut nō iocē quidem mentirētur, NEP., XV. 3, 1; *Epaminondas was so careful (such a lover) of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest.* Omnia cōsensū capiāx imperiī nisi imp̄fasset, TAC., H., I. 49; *by general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.*

NOTES.—1. The participle is transient ; the adjective permanent. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb : amāns (participle), *loving (who is loving)* ; amāns (adjective), *fond*, (substantive), *lover* ; patiēns (participle), *bearing (who is bearing)* ; patiēns (adjective), *enduring*, (substantive), *a sufferer*.

2. Ante-classical Latin shows only amāns, oupiēns, concupiēns, fugitāns, gerēns, persequēns, sciēns, temperāns. CICERO carries the usage very far, and it is characteristic of his style. CAESAR, on the other hand, has very few cases (B. C., I. 69, 3).

CICERO also shows the first case of a Gen. after a compared participle. Sumus nātūrā appetentissimi honestatis, C., Tusc., II. 24, 58. These participles can also revert to the verbal constructions.

3. Of verbs with the Gen., PLAUTUS shows one example : mendax (*Aśin.*, 855); CICERO perhaps one : rapax (*Lael.*, 14, 50). The usage in later Latin and the poets is confined at most to about one dozen verbs.

## III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

## Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

**376.** Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive.

Tē veteris amicitiae commonefecit, [C.] ad Her., IV. 24, 33; *he reminded you of your old friendship.* Est proprium stultitiae aliorum vitia cernere, oblivious suūrum, C., Tusc., III. 30, 73; *the fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.* Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus, MART., II. 59; *a god himself bids you remember death.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Reminding take more often the Abl. with dē (so regularly in CICERO), and the Acc. neut. of a pronoun or Numerical adjective. TACITUS alone uses monēre with the Gen. (*Ann.*, I. 67, 1).

Orō ut Terentiam moneātis dē tēstamento, C., Att., XI. 16, 5; *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.* Discipulōs id finū moneō, QUINT., II. 9, 1 (338, 1).

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Acc., especially of Things :

*Hæc tñm meminisse invitbit, V., A., I. 203 ; to remember these things one day will give us pleasure. Qui sunt boni civēs, nisi qui patriæ beneficia meminérunt ? C., Planc., 33, 80 ; who are good citizens except those who remember the benefits conferred by their country ? Oblivisci nihil solē nisi iniurias, C., Lig., 12, 35 ; you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.*

Recorder (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is construed with the Acc. of the Thing, except in three passages from CICERO ; dē is found with Persons.

*Et vōem Anchisæ magni voltumque recorder, V., A., VIII. 156 ; and I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.*

Memini, *I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember*, takes the Accusative :

[Antipatrum] tñ probē meministi, C., Or., III. 50, 194 ; *you remember Antipater very well.*

3. *Venit mihi in mentem, it comes into (up to) my mind*, may be construed impersonally with the Gen., or personally with a subject ; the latter by CICERO only when the subject is a neuter pronoun.

*Venit mihi Platōnis in mentem, C., Fin., V. 1, 2 ; Plato rises before my mind's eye.*

#### Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

377. Misereor, *I pity*, takes the Genitive, and miseret, *it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it irks, pudet, it makes ashamed, taedet and pertaesum est, it tires*, take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause.

Miseremini sociorum, C., Verr., I. 28, 72 ; *pity your allies ! Suae quemque fortinae paenitet, C., Fam., VI. I, 1 ; each man is discontented with his lot. Mē nōn solum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet, C., Dom., II, 29 ; I am not only fretted at my folly, but actually ashamed of it.*

REMARKS.—1. Pudet is also used with the Gen. of the Person whose Presence excites the shame :

Pudet destrum hominumque, L., III. 19, 7 ; *it is a shame in the sight of gods and men.*

2. These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative pronoun : Nōn tñ hæc pudent ? Ter., Ad., 754 ; *do not these things put you to the blush ?*

3. Other constructions follow from general rules. So the Inf. (422) and quod (542).

Nōn mē virisse paenitet, C., Cat. M., 23, 84 (540). Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit, Cf. C., Att., XI. 13, 2 ; *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*

NOTES.—1. With the same construction are found *miserō* (early Latin), *miserēscō* (poetical), *dispendet* (early Latin), *distaedet* (early Latin), *vereor* (mostly in early Latin), and a few others.

2. *Miserari* and *commiserari*, *to pity, commiserate*, take Acc. until very late Latin.

#### Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

The Genitive with Judicial Verbs belongs to the same category as the Genitive with Verbs of Rating, both being extensions of the Genitive of Quality.

**378. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge.**

(*Miltiades*) *accusatus est prōditionis*, NEP., I. 7, 5; *Miltiades was accused of treason.* [Fannius] *C. Verrem insimulat avāritiae*, C., *Verr.*, I. 49, 128; *Fannius charges Gaius Verres with avarice.* *Vidē nōn tē absolūtūm esse improbitatis sed illis damnatōe esse caedit*, C., *Verr.*, I. 28, 72; *I see not that you are acquitted of dishonor, but that they are convicted of murder.*

REMARKS.—1. Judicial Verbs include a number of expressions and usages. So *capti*, *tentri*, *dēprehendi*, *sē adstringere*, *sē obligare* (ante-classical), and others, mean *to be found guilty*; *inrep̄are*, *inrep̄itare*, *urḡare*, *deferre*, *arguere*, etc., mean *charge*.

So also kindred expressions: *reum facere*, (*to make a party*) *to indict*, *to bring an action against*; *nōmen dēferre dē*, *to bring an action against*; *sacrilegī compertum esse*, *to be found (guilty) of sacrilege*.

2. For the Gen. of the Charge may be substituted *nōmine* or *crimine* with the Gen., or the Abl. with *dē*: *nōmine (crimine) coniūratiōnis* *damnare*, *to find guilty of conspiracy*; *accusare dē vi*, *of violence (Gen. vis rare)*; *dē veneficiō*, *of poisoning*; *dē rēbus repetundis*, *of extortion*. *Pōstulare* always has *dē* in CICERO. We find sometimes in with Abl.; *convictus in criminē*, *on the charge*; or, *inter*: *inter sicāris damnatōs est*, *convicted of homicide* (C., *Client.*, 7, 21; Cf. *Ph.*, II. 4, 8).

3. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Abl. as well as the Gen. of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Abl. of the definite Fine; the indefinite Fine, *quanti*, *dupli*, *quadrupli*, etc., is in the Genitive.

*Accusare capitīs*, or *capite*, *to bring a capital charge*. *Damnare capitīs*, or *capite*, *to condemn to death*. *Damnari decem mīlibus*, *to be fined ten thousand*.

*Multare*, *to mulct*, is always construed with the Ablative: *Multare pecunīas*, *to mulct in (of) money*.

*Manilius virtūtem filii morte multāvit*, QUINT., v. 11, 7; *Manilius punished the valor of his son with death*.

4. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by *ad* or *in*, but all examples are post-classical: *damnari ad bēstias*, *to be condemned (to be*

thrown) *to wild beasts*; *ad (in) metalla, to the mines*; *ad (in) opus publicum, to hard labor*. *Vōti damnāri, to be bound to fulfil a vow*, is Livian (except NEP., xx. 5, 8, where it has a different sense).

5. Verbs of Accusing may have also the Acc. of the Thing and the Gen. of the Person: *inertiam accusas adulūcentium*, C., *Or.*, I. 58, 246.

#### Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

379. Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: *aestimare, existimare* (rare), *to value*; *putare, to reckon*; *dūcere* (rare in CICERO), *to take*; *habere, to hold*; *pendere* (mostly in Comedy), *to weigh*; *facere, to make, put*; *cōse, to be (worth)*; *fieri, to be considered*.

Verbs of Buying are: *emere, to buy*; *vēndere, to sell*; *vēnire, to be for sale*; *stāre and cōstāre, to cost, to come to*; *prōstāre, liōtare, to be exposed, left (for sale)*; *condacere, to hire*; *lōdare, to let*.

380. 1. Verbs of Rating take:

<i>Magni, much,</i>	<i>plūris, more,</i>	<i>plūrimi, māximi, most,</i>
<i>Parvi, little,</i>	<i>minōris, less,</i>	<i>minimi, least,</i>
<i>Tanti, tantidem, so</i>	<i>quanti (and compounds),</i>	<i>nihil, naught.</i>
<i>much,</i>	<i>how much,</i>	

Equivalents of *nihil, nothing*, are *fīcoī, a lock of wool, nauci, a trifle, assis, a copper, pīli* (both in CATULLUS, mainly), and the like, and so also *hūius, that* (a snap of the finger), all usually with the negative.

Dum nō ob malefacta, peream; parvi existimab, Pl., *Capt.*, 682, ; so long as it be not for misdeeds, let me die; little do I care. [Voluptatem] virtūs minimi facit, C., *Fin.*, II. 13, 42; virtue makes very little account of the pleasure of the senses. [Iudicis] rem publicam fīcoī nōm faciunt, Cf. C., *Att.*, IV. 15, 4; the judges do not care a fig for the State. Nōn habeb̄ nauci Marsum angurem, C., *Div.*, I. 58, 182; I do not value a Martian augur a baubee.

REMARK.—*Tanti* is often used in the sense of *operae pretium est = it is worth while*.

Est mihi tanti hūius invidiae tempestatem subire, C., *Cat.*, II. 7. 15; it is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

NOTES.—1. *Aestimab* is found with the Abl. as well as with the Genitive. So *aestimare magnō* and *magni, to value highly*. CICERO prefers the Ablative.

2. Observe the phrases: *boni (aequi bonique) faciō* (a colloquialism), *boni cōsulī* (an old formula), *I put up with, take in good part*. *Nōn pēnāl habere (dūcere)*, to consider not worth the while, is post-Augustan and rare.

2. Verbs of Buying take *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, and *minoris*.  
The rest are put in the Ablative.

*Vendō meum (frumentum) nōn pluris quam ceteri*, fortasse etiam minores, C., *Off.*, III. 12, 51; *I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.* *Magis illa iuvant quae pluris emuntur*, JUV., XI. 16; *things give more pleasure which are bought for more.* *Emit (Canius hortū) tanti quanti Pythius voluit*, C., *Off.*, III. 14, 59; *Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.*

*Quanti cēnsis?* *What do you give for your dinner?*

*Quanti habitūs?* *What is the rent of your lodgings?*

But:

*Parvō famis cōstat, magnō fastidium*, SEN., *E.M.*, 17, 4; *hunger costs little, daintiness much.*

An instructive shift:

*Emit!* *per hercule!* *quanti!*—*Viginti minis*, TER., *Eun.*, 984; *he bought her!* *I'm undone.* *For how much?*—*Twenty minae.*

REMARK.—*Bene emere*, to buy cheap; *bene vēdere*, to sell dear; *male emere*, to buy dear; *male vēdere*, to sell cheap. So, too, other adverbs: *melius*, *optimū*, *pēius*, *peccimā.*

#### Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

381. Interest and Rēfert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

*Interest omnium rēctō facere*, C., *Fin.*, II. 22, 72; *it is to the interest of all to do right.* *Rēfert compositionis quae quibus antepōndas*, QUINT., IX. 4, 44; *it is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.*

Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, the Ablative Singular feminine of the possessives is employed.

*Mēa interest, mēa rēfert*, *I am concerned.*

NOTES.—1. *Rēfert* is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with *mēa*, etc., seldom with the Gen., in the classical language.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative:

*Vehementer intererat vestrā, qui patrēs estis, liberās vestrās hic potissimum discere*, PLIN., *Ep.*, IV. 13, 4; *it were vastly to the interest of you parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.*

3. The Nom. as a subject is rare, except in PLINY's *Natural History*:

*Usque adeō magni rēfert studium atque voluptās*, LUCR., IV. 984.

Occasionally the Nom. of a neuter pronoun is found:

*Quid (Acc.) tū id (Nom.) rēfert?* TER., *Ph.*, 723; *what business is that of yours?*

4. *Rēfert* is the more ancient, and is employed by the poets (*Interest* is excluded from Dactylic poetry by its form) to the end of the classical period. *Interest* is peculiar to prose, employed exclusively by CAESAR, and preferred by CICERO when a complement is added.

5. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. One view is that *meū rēfert* was originally [*ex*] *meū rē fert* (like *ex meū rē est*), *it is to my advantage*, and that the *ex* was lost. Interest having much the same force, but being later in development, took the constructions of *rēfert* by false analogy. The Gen. would be but parallel to the possessive.

**382.** 1. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value.

*Id meū minūmē rēfert*, TER., *Ad.*, 881; *that makes no difference at all to me*. *Theodōri nihil interest*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 43, 102; *It is no concern of Theodorus*. *Magni interest meū finē nōcē case*, C., *Att.*, XIII. 4; *it is of great importance to me that we be together*.

2. The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, ut or nō with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

*Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium?* C., *Mil.*, 13.34; *what interest had Milo in Clodius' being killed?* [Caesar dicere solibet] *nō tam sūt quām reī pūblicae interēsse utī salvus eset*, SUET., *Iul.*, 86; *Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared*. *Vestrī interest nō imperiōrem pessimi faciant*, TAC., *H.*, I. 30; *it is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor*. *Quid rēfert tālē versūs quā vōcē legantur?* JUV., XI. 182; *what matters it what voice such verses are recited with?*

3. The Thing Involved is put in the Accusative with ad:

*Magni ad honōrem nostrū interest quām primum mō ad urbē venire*, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 1, 1; *it makes a great difference touching our honor that I should come to the city as soon as possible*.

Occasional Uses.

**383.** 1. The Genitive is found occasionally with certain Verbs of Fulness: in classical Latin principally *implēre*, *complēre*, *eḡere*, *indigēre*.

*Pisō multōs cōdīcēs implēvit eārum rērum*, C., *Verr.* I. 46, 119; *Piso filled many books full of those things*. *Virtūs plūrimae commentatiōnis et exercitatiōnis indiget*, (cf. C., *Fin.*, III. 15, 50; *virtue stands in need of much (very much) study and practice*.

NOTES.—1. Classical Latin shows in all cases the Abl. much more frequently than the Gen., except in the case of *indigēre*, where CICERO prefers the Genitive. LIVY likewise prefers the Gen. with *implēre*.

2. Ante-classical and poetic are *explēre* (VERG.), *abundāre* (LUC.), *scatēre* (LUCR.), *saturāre* (PLAUT.), *obsaturāre* (TER.), *carēre* (TER.). *Carēre* and *eḡere* have the Acc. occasionally in early Latin.

3. Other Grecisms are *lābōrūm dēcipitūr*, H., *O.*, II. 13, 38 (reading doubtful).

**R**egnavit populorum, H., O., iii. 30, 12. Also **mīrari** with Gen. in **V**ERGIL (A., xi. 126). Noteworthy is the occasional use of **orādere** with Gen. in **P**LAUTUS; so once **fallit**.

2. A Genitive of Separation, after the analogy of the Greek, is found in a few cases in the poets.

Ut mē omnium iam labōrum levias, PL., *Rud.* 247; *how you relieve me at last of all my toils and troubles.* Dēmine mollium tandem querillarum, H., O., ii. 9, 17; *cease at last from womanish complainings.*

3. The Genitive in Exclamations occurs in a very few instances in the poets. CAT., ix. 5; PROP., iv. (v.) 7, 21; compare PL., *Most.*, 912; LUCAN, II. 45.

On the Genitive after comparatives, see 296, n. 2.

### ABLATIVE.

**384.** The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:

1. The Ablative of Origin. 2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:

1. The Ablative of Manner. 2. The Ablative of Quality. 3. The Ablative of Means.

**REMARK.**—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add:

D. The Ablative of Cause. E. The Ablative Absolute.

#### I. The Literal Meanings of the Ablative.

##### A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE. X

###### Ablativus Locallis.

**385.** The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition *in*.

In portū nāvigō, TER., *And.*, 480; *I am sailing IN harbor.* Pōns in Hibērō prope effectus (erat), CAES., *B.C.*, i. 62, 3; *the bridge OVER the*

*Ebrō was nearly finished. Histrīō in scaenā [est], Pl., Poen., 20; the actor is ON the stage. Haeret in equō senex, Cf. C., Dei., 10, 28; the old man sticks TO his horse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Abl. with in, to designate the result of the motion : classical are pōnere, to place, and compounds ; locāre, colloccāre, to put ; statuere, cōstituere, to set ; cōsidere, to settle ; dēfigere, to plant ; dēmergere, to plunge ; imprimere, to press upon ; insculpere, to engrave (figurative) ; inscribere, to write upon ; incidere, to carve upon ; inclūdere, to shut into.

Platō ratiōnem in capite posuit, iram in pectore locūvit, C., Tusc., I. 10, 20; *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.* (Lucretia) cultrum in corde dāgit, L., I. 58, 11; *Lucretia plants a knife in (thrusts a knife down into) her heart.* Philosophi in iis libris ipsiā quā scribunt dā contēmndens glōriā sua nōmina inscrībunt, C., Tusc., I. 15, 34; *philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory.* (Fœdus) in columnā aēneā incīsum, C., Balb., 23, 53; *a treaty cut upon a brazen column.*

The same observation applies to sub :

Pōne sub currī nimium propinquī solis in terrā domibus negāta, H., O., I. 22, 21; *put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.*

2. Verbs of Hanging and Fastening take ex, ab, or dā.

Cui spē omnis pendet ex fortū, hūc nihil potest esse certi, C., Par., II. 17; *to him who has all his hopes suspended on fortune, nothing can be certain.*

3. *Here and there in* is often rendered by per : C., Fam., I. 7, 6, per prōvincias, here and there in the provinces ; V., A., III. 236.

NOTES.—1. In classical prose the use of the Abl. without in is confined to a few words, mostly phraseological. So terrā, on land ; mari, by sea ; usually in the phrase terrā marīque (rarely in the reversed order), on land and sea. In terrā is more common otherwise than marī. Looō and locūs, especially when used with adjectives, usually omit in. The same is true of parte and partibus ; so regularly dext̄a (parte), sinistr̄a, laev̄a, etc., on the right, on the left. Livy uses regiō like locus. The tendency, however, is observable as early as Cicero's time to omit the in when an adjective is employed, even in words other than those given above ; this tendency becomes more marked in Livy and is very strong in later Latin. The poets are free. Regard must always be had to 389.

2. The Acc. with in after verbs of Placing is very rare in classical prose. In early Latin it is more common ; so with pōnere, impōnere, colloccāre. The examples with Acc. in classical Latin are principally with compounds of pōnere, as impōnere (usually), repōnere, expōnere. Collocāre with in and Acc. in Cass., B.G., I. 18, 7, is not in a local sense. Sometimes the Dat. is found with impōnere.

3. With a verb of Rest the motion antecedent to the rest is often emphasized by construing the verb with in and the Acc. instead of with in and the Abl. This occurs most often with esse and habēre, and seems to have been colloquial, as it is very rare in classical prose.

Numerō mīhi in mentem fuit dīs advenientem grātiās agere, Pl., Am., 180.

*Adeſſe in ſenātūm iūſſit, C., Ph., v. 7, 19 (Cf. hūc ades, come hither). Parere  
victis in animūm habēbat, L., xxxiii. 10, 4.*

**386.** Names of Towns in the Singular of the Third Declension, and in the Plural of all Declensions, take the Ablative of Place Where without *in*.

*Ut Rōmae cōſulūſ ſic Carthāgīne quotannis bini rōgēs creſbantur, NEP.,  
xxiii. 7, 4; as at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were  
created yearly. Taliſ (Rōmae Fabricius), quāliſ Aristidēs Athēnās, fuit, C.,  
Off., iii. 22, 87; Fabricius was just such a man at Rome as Aristides  
was at Athens.*

**REMARKS.**—1. Appositions are put in the Abl. commonly with *in*; when the appositive has an attribute, the proper name regularly precedes: *Nēſpoli, in celeberrimō oppidō*, C., *Rab. Post.*, 10, 26; *at Naples, a populous town*.

2. *In the neighborhood of, at, is ad with Acc., especially of military operations: pligna ad Cannās (better Cannēnſis), the battle at Cannae; pōns ad Genēvam, CAES., B.G., i. 7; the bridge at Geneva.*

**NOTE.**—The Abl. in names of Towns of the Second Declension is found once in *CÆſar* (*B.C.*, iii. 35, but the reading is questioned); more often in *VITRUVIUS* and later Latin, but in Greek words only. Apparent exceptions in *CÆſar* and *CICERO* are to be referred to the Abl. of Separation. The poets, however, are free.

**387.** In citations from Books and in Enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without *in*.

*Librō tertīō, third book; versū decimū, tenth verse; aliō locō, elsewhere.*

But *in* is necessary when a passage in a book and not the whole book is meant: *Agricultū laudātur in eō librō qui est dē tuendā rē familiari*, C., *Cat. M.*, 17, 59; *agriculture is praised in the work on domestic economy*.

**388.** In designations of Place, with *tōtus, cūnctus, whole; omnis, all; mediua, middle*, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without *in*.

*Menippus, meō iudicō, tōtā Asiā diſertissimus, C., Br., 91, 315; Menip-  
pus, in my judgment, the most eloquent man in all Asia (Minor). Battia-  
des ſemper tōtō cantabitur orbe, Ov., Am., i. 15, 13; BattiaDES (Cal-  
linachus) will always be sung throughout the world.*

**REMARK.**—*In* is not excluded when the idea is *throughout*, in which case *per* also may be used. *Negū in Siciliā tōtā (throughout the whole of  
Sicily) ullum argenteum vāſ fuisse, etc., C., Verr., iv. 1, 1.*

**389.** In all such designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition.

*Ut terræ Thermopylærum angustiae Graeciam, ita mari fretum Euripi claudit, L., xxxi. 23, 12; as the pass of Thermopylae bars Greece by land, so the strait of Euripus by sea. Arivistus exercitum castris continuit, CAES., B.G., I. 48, 4; Arivistus kept his army within the camp. Egressus est nūn vīla sed trāmitibus, C., Ph., XIII. 9, 19; he went out not by high roads but by cross-cuts. Nēmō frē quemquam pūblicōs prohibet vīla, PL., Cūrc., 35; no man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road. Mētris cinerē Rōmam Tiberi subvecti sunt, Cf. SUET., Cal., 15; his mother's ashes were brought up to Rome by the Tiber.*

So recipere aliquem tēctō, oppidō, portū, to receive a man into one's house, town, harbor; where, however, the Acc. with in is not excluded: gentes universae in civitatem sunt receptae, C., Balb., 13, 81.

#### B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

##### Ablātīvus Sēparātīvus.

390. 1. The Ablative answers the question Whence? and takes as a rule the prepositions *ex*, *out of*, *dē*, *from*, *ab*, *off*.

(Eam) exturbāsti ex aedibus! PL., Trin., 137; did you hustle him out of the house? Arāneā dēsciam dē pariete, PL., St., 355; I will get the cobwebs down from the wall. Alcibiadē Athēniensēs ē civitāte expulserunt, Cf. NEP., VII. 6, 2; the Athenians banished Alcibiades from the state. Dēcedit ex Galliā Rōmam Naevius, C., Quinct., 4. 16; Naevius withdrew from Gaul to Rome. Unde dēdicisti sive ex quō looō, sive ē quō looō (whether OUT OF or FROM which place), eō restituūs, C., Caec., 30, 88.

2. The prepositions are often omitted with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding; so regularly with *domō*, *from home*, *rūre*, *from the country*.

With Persons a preposition (chiefly *ab*) must be used.

(Verres) omnia domō sīus abstulit, C., Verr., II. 34. 83; Verres took everything away from his house. Ego, cum Tullius rūre redierit, mittam eum ad te, C., Fam., V. 20, 9; when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you.

Compare Aliēm manū abstineant, CATO, Agr., 5, 1; let them keep their hand(s) from other people's property, with [Alexander] vix ē sē manus abstinuit, C., Tusc., IV. 37, 79; Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).

Compare Lapidib⁹ optimib⁹ virib⁹ forō pollis, C., Har. Res., 18, 39; you drive men of the best classes from the forum with stones, with Iustum aequalum ab eō pollitō, TER., Eun., 215; drive that rival from her.

Compare Omnim̄ rērum nātūrā obgnitā liberām̄ mortis metū, C., Fin., I. 19, 63; by the knowledge of universal nature we get rid of the

*fear of death*, with *Tē ab eō liberō*, C., *Q.F.*, III. i. 3, 9; *I rid you of him*.

Compare *Amitia nullō locō excluditur*, C., *Lael.*, 6, 22; *friendship is shut out from no place*, with *Ab illā excludor, hōc concūdor*, Cf. *Ter.*, *And.*, 386; *I am shut out from HER (and) shut up here (to live with HER)*.

NOTES.—1. In classical Latin the preposition is usually employed in local relations, and omitted in metaphorical relations; though there are some exceptions.

2. It is to be noted that in the vast majority of cases the separation is indicated by a verb; hence this Abl. is found commonly with verbs compounded with prepositions. Thus, classical Latin shows but few simple verbs with the Abl., as follows: *movēre*, chiefly in general or technical combinations: *movēre locō, senātū, tribū* (*Caesar*, however, has no case); *pellere*, in technical language with *civitāte, domō, foro, patriā, possessiōnibus, suis sēdibus*; *cōdere* is found with *patriā, vīta, memorī, possessiōne, Italiā*; *cadere*, technical with *causā*; *solvēre* with *lōge (lēgibus), religiōne, etc., somnō*; *levāre* and *liberāre* are found chiefly in metaphorical combinations, and especially in *Cicero*; *arcēre* has peculiarly *ab* with metaphorical, Abl. with local forces. In the case of most of these verbs, the preposition with the Abl. is also found.

3. Of compound verbs with the Abl., *Cicero* shows only *sē abdicāre* (principally technical), *abesse* (rarely), *abhorrāre* (once); *abire* (in technical uses = *sē abdicāre*), *abrumperē* (once), *absolvere*, *abstīnēre* (intrans. without, trans. more often with, preposition), *dēcōere* (with *aedilitāte, etc.*), *dēmōvēre* (once), *dēpellere*, *dēsistere*, *dēturbāre*; *dēducere* (rare); *efferre* (rare); *ēgredi*; *ēloere*; *ēlībi* (rare); *ēmittēre* (*Caes.*); *ēripere* (rare; usually Dat.); *ēvertere*; *excōdere*; *excludēre*; *exire* (rare); *expellere*; *exsolvēre*; *existēre* (rare); *exturbāre*; *interclūdere*; *interdicēre* (*alicui aliquā rē*; also *alicui aliquid*); *praedictāre* (*Caes.*); *prohibēre*; *supersedēre*.

Early Latin shows a few more verbs with this construction. The poets are free with the Abl., and also later prose writers, beginning with *Lucretius*.

4. *Humō, from the ground*, begins with *Vergil*. The preposition *ē* is found occasionally with *domō*; necessarily with a word (adjective or adverb) involving measurement, as; *longinquō, longō, procul*.

5. Compounds with *dī (dis)* also take the Dative (in poetry):

*Paulum seputas distat inertiae cōfīcta virtūs*, H., *O.*, IV. 9, 29; *little doth hidden worth differ from buried cloth*.

6. The Place Whence gives the Point of View from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: *& tergō, in the rear*; *ex parte dextrā, on the right side*; *ab oriente, on the east*; *& tantō spatiō, at such a distance*; *ex fugē, on the flight*; *& rē frumentāriis labōrāre, to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions*.

3. The prepositions are also omitted with kindred Adjectives.

*Animus excelsus omni est liber cūrā*, C., *Fin.*, I. 15, 49; *a lofty mind is free from all care*. (*Cato*) *omnibus humānis vītis immīnis, semper fortūnam in suī potestāte habuit*, *Vell.*, II. 35, 2; *Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power*. *Iugurtha* (*Adherbalem*) *extorrem patriā efficit*, S., *Iug.*, 14, 11; *Iugurtha rendered Adherbal an exile from his country*. *Utramque (frāns et vis) homine alienissimum*, C., *Off.*, I. 13, 41.

NOTES.—1. The preposition is more usual in most cases. *Purus* and *immissus*, with simple Abl., are poetical and post-Augustan. *Expers*, with Abl. instead of with Gen., belongs to early Latin and *SALLUST*. *Recens*, *fresh from*, with Abl., belongs to *TACITUS*.

2. *Procul, far from*, regularly takes the preposition *ab*, except in the poets and later prose.

3. The Abl. of the Supine is early and late, as *CATO, Agr.*, 5; *Vilius primus cunctū surget, postremus cubitum eat*. See 426, n. 4.

**391.** Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence.

*Demaratus fugit Tarquinis Corinthus, C., Tusc., v. 37, 109; Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth. Dolabella Delō proficisciatur, C., Verr., I. 18, 46; Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions *ab* (5) and *ex* (5) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness, but rarely in model prose. So regularly *ab* with the Place from which distance is measured :

[*Aesculapii templum*] *quinq̄ milibus passuum ab urbe [Epidaurō] distat*, Cf. I., XLV. 28, 3 (403, n. 1).

When the substantives *urbe*, *city*, and *oppidō*, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule, as also when not the town, but the neighborhood is intended ; also always with *longe*. When the Appositive has an attribute the proper name regularly precedes.

*Aulide, ex oppidō Boeotiae, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia. Ex Apollonie Ponti urbe, from Apollonia, a city of Pontus. Ex oppidō Gergoviae, Cæs., B.G., VII. 4, 2; from the town of Gergovia.*

Early Latin is free in the use of prepositions ; and also from LIVY on the usage seems to increase.

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations :

*Agrigentō ex Aesculapii fanō* whereas we should say, *from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum. Unde domō? V., A., VIII. 114; from what home?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

NOTE.—Names of countries are but rarely used in the Ablative. CICERO, SALLUST, and LIVY show no instance, CAESAR only one (B.C., III. 58, 4). Occasional examples are found in early Latin and in old inscriptions ; then in later historians, beginning with VELLEIUS. The use of prepositions with towns seems in general to have been a colloquialism, Cf. SUET., Aug., 86. The poets are free in their usage.

### C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

#### *Ablativus Sociativus.*

**392.** The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition *cum*, *with*.

*Cum febri domum rediit, C., Or., III. 2, 6; he returned home with a*

*fever. Catilina stetit in comitiō cum tālō, Cf. C., Cat., I. 6, 15; Catiline stood in the place of election with a weapon (on him). Cum baculō pārāque [senex], MART., IV. 53, 3; an old man with stick and wallet. Nec tācum possum vivere nec sine tā, MART., XII. 47, 2; I can't live either with you or without you.*

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without *cum*; generally without *cum* when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with *cum* when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance). With definite numbers, however, *cum* is regularly employed.

*Albāni ingentī exercitū in agrum Rōmānum impetum fōcere, L., I. 23, 3; the Albans attacked the Roman territory with a huge army. Caesar cum equitib⁹ DCCC in castra pervenit, CAES., B.C., I. 41, 1; Caesar arrived in camp with nine hundred cavalry.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative :

*Nāvibus profectus est, C., Fam., xv. 3, 2; he set out by ship.*

So also with verbs which denote other military actions :

*Hasdrubal medium aciem Hispanis firmat, L., xxiii. 29, 4; Hannibal strengthens the centre with Spanish troops. Actum nihil est nisi Poenō militē portas frangimus, JUV., X. 155; naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).*

## II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

### A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

#### Ablative of Time. Ablatīvus Temporis.

##### 393. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

*Quā nocte nātus Alexander est, eādem Diānae Ephesiae templum dēfagrit, Cf. C., N.D., II. 27, 69; on the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burned to the ground. Sāturni stella trīginta ferē annis cursum sūmū cōficit, C., N.D., II. 20, 52; the planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

Many adverbial forms of time are really Locative Ablatives :

*So hodiē, to-day; herī(e), yesterday; māne, in the morning.*

REMARKS.—1. Time Within Which may be expressed by *per* and the Accusative :

*Per eōē ipēō dīs quib⁹ Philippus in Achāia fuit, Philocles saltum Cithaeronis trāscendit, L., XXXI. 26, 1; during those very days, while Philip was in Achaea, Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.*

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities ; so usually with *tōtus, all, whole* :

*Nocte pluit totū, redunt at māne serēna, V.* (POET. LAT. MIN., IV. 155 B) ; *all night (Jupiter) rains; clear skies come back in the morning.* Cf. CAES., B.G., I. 26, 5.

So with definite numbers; but rarely, until the post-Augustan period :

*Scriptum est triginta annis virisse Panaetium, posteāquam illōs librōs didicisset, C., Off., III. 2, 8; it is written that Panaetius lived for thirty years after he had published those books (not to be confounded with the Abl. of Difference, 408).* *Aपnd Pythagoram discipulis quinque annis taoendū erat, SEN., E.M., 52, 10; in the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years.*

3. When the Notion is Negative, the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which.

[*Roscius*] *Rōmam multis annis nōn vēnit, C., Rosc. Am., 27, 74; Roscius has not come to Rome in (for) many years.* Not always, however; compare *Sex mānsis iam hic nēmō habitat, PL., Most., 954; no one has been living here these six months.*

4. Especially to be noted is the Abl. of Time with *hic, this; ille, that:*

*Cui viginti his annis suppliciō dēcrēta est? C., Ph., XIV. 4, 11; to whom during these last twenty years has a supplication been decreed?* [*Karthāginem*] *hōc bienniō svertere, C., Rep., VI. 11, 11; Carthage you will overturn in the next two years.*

Transferred to *Oratiō Obliqua*, *hic* becomes *ille* (660, 3) :

*Diodōrus [respondit] illud argentum s̄t pauci illis diēbus mississe Lilybaeūm, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39; Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).*

5. The Abl. of Time is regularly accompanied by an attribute in classical Latin, except in the case of a number of common designations, as *aestate, diē, hieme, nocte, vespere (vesperī)*. Exceptions are rare, such as *comitiis, lūce, pīce, militiis*, and some names of games.

394. The Ablative with the preposition *in* is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time.

*Bis in diē, twice a day; in pueritī, in boyhood; in adulūcentiī, in youth.*

*Nallō modō mihi placuit bis in diē saturum fieri, C., Tusc., V. 35, 100; it did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day. Fēd ego istaē itidem in adulūcentiī, PL., B., 410; I did those things too in my youth.*

REMARK.—The use or omission of *in* sometimes changes the meaning. So *bellō Persiō*, *at the time of the Persian war*; but *in bellō*, *in war times*; *in pīce*, *in peace times*. Phraseological *is in tempore*, more frequent than *tempore*, *at the right time*. But *in illō tempore* means *in those circumstances, at that crisis*. *At present, for the present*, is always *in præsentī* or *in præsenti* (rare).

NOTES.—1. Classical Latin confines the use of *in* to designations of Time of Life (though here, when an adjective is employed, *in* is usually omitted) and to the periods of time. Later *in* is used much more extensively. With numerals *in* is the rule. CATO and the poets have sometimes *bis diēs*, as *diēs = finus diēs*.

2. *Dē, from*, is also used in designations of time: principally in the phrase *dē diēs, dē nocte*. *Ut ingulent hominem surgunt dē nocte latrōnes*, H., *Ep.*, I. 2, 32; *to kill a man, highwaymen rise by night*, i. e., *while it is yet night*.

*Inter, between*: *Quae prandia inter continuom perdidī triennium*, Pl., *St.*, 2<sup>13</sup>; *what luncheons I have lost during three years together*.

*Intra, within*: *Subegit solus intrā viginti diēs*, Pl., *Circ.*, 448; *he quelled them all alone in less than twenty days*.

On *per, through*, see 336, n. 2.

*Cum, with*, is found occasionally in phrases, as *cum primā luce, with daybreak*.

### B. The Place Whence is transferred :

1. To Origin.
2. To Respect or Specification.

#### I. Ablative of Origin.

395. Participles which signify Birth take the Ablative of Origin; sometimes with the prepositions *ex* and *dē*.

*Amplissimā familiā nāti adulēscētēs*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 37, 1; *young men born of a great house*. *Nunnae Pompiliī rāgis nepōs, filiā ortus, Ancus Mārcius erat*, L., I. 32, 1; *King Numa Pompilius's grandson, a daughter's issue, was Ancus Marcius*. *Maeccēnās atavis ēdite rāgibus*, H., *O.*, I. 1, 1; *Maeccenas, offshoot of great-grandsire kings*. *Dis genite et geniture dēs*, V., *A.*, IX. 639; *begotten of gods, and destined to beget gods!* *Sate sanguine divum!* V., *A.*, VI. 125; *seed of blood divine!* *Ex mā atque ex hōe nātūs es*, TER., *Heaut.*, 1030; *you are his son and mine*. *Odārunt nātōs dē paclice*, JUV., VI. 627; *they hate the offspring of the concubine*.

*Ab*, and occasionally *ex*, are employed of remote progenitors:

*Plāriquē Belgāe sunt orti ab Germānia*, Cf. CAES., *B.G.*, II. 4, 1; *Belgians are mostly of German descent*. *Oriundi ex Etrūsco*, Cf. L., II. 9, 1; *of Etruscan origin*.

NOTES.—1. The principal participles thus used are *nātūs*, *prōgnātūs*, *oriundūs*; *ortūs*, *genitūs*, and *satus* begin in prose with LIVY; *ēditūs* and *crōtūs* are poetic; *prōrēstūs* is late. CICERO uses *oriundūs* but once; it denotes remote origin.

2. With names of Places the preposition is the rule (362, n. 2); but there are a few exceptions in early Latin and in CICERO, and a couple of examples in CAESAR. Later the simple Abl. disappears. The Abl. was the rule with names of Tribes.

*Periphānē Rhodō mercētor*, PL., *Asin.*, 499. *Magius Cremōnā*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 24, 4. *Q. Verres Rōmilia*, C., *Verre.*, I. 8, 23; *Q. Verres of the Romilian tribe*.

3. With finite verbe denoting Origin, the preposition is regular, except occasionally with *nāsōi*.

4. The Ablative of Agent properly belongs here. But for convenience of contrast it is treated under 401.

### 396. The Ablative of Material takes *ex* in classical Latin.

**Ex animo cōstāmus et corpore.** Cf. C., *Fin.*, IV. 8, 19; we consist of mind and body.

**Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta, a statue made of gold, of bronze.** Often an adjective is used: *aureus, golden; ligneus, wooden.*

**NOTES.**—1. After CICERO *cōnſtāre* is used more often with the Abl.; *cōnſistere* (with the Abl.) is poetical. *Contīnērī, to be contained in*, i.e., almost “*to consist of*,” takes the Abl. only, but with a different conception.

**Medicina tōta cōnstat experimentis,** QUINT., II. 17, 9; all medicine is made up of experiments (*is empirical*).

2. With *fieri* the previous state is indicated by *dē* as well as by *ex*.

**Dē templō carcerem fieri!** C., *Ph.*, V. 7, 18; from a temple to become a jail. **Fīs dē rhētore cōnsul,** JUV., VII. 197; from (having been) rhetorician you will become consul. **Ex oratōre arctōr factus,** C., *Ph.*, III. 9, 23 (206, n. s.).

3. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late:

**Mētors caelātus ferrō,** V., A., VIII. 700; *Mare carven of iron.*

**Mētōre lutō finix,** JUV., XIV. 35; *he fashioned it of better clay.*

## 2. Ablative of Respect.

**397.** The Ablative of Respect or Specification gives the Point From Which a thing is measured or treated, and is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?

**Discriptus populus cōnsū, ḫ̄dinib⁹s, aetātib⁹s,** C., *Leg.*, III. 19, 44; a people drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age. **Ennius ingenīs māximus,** arte radis, Ov., *Tr.*, II. 424; *Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.* **Animō ignāvus,** proclīx ūre, TAC., *H.*, II. 23, 18; *coward of soul, saucy of tongue.*

Noteworthy are the phrases: *crīne ruber, red-haired; captus oculis* (literally, caught in the eyes), *blind; captus mente, insane; mētā sententia, according to my opinion; fīre, by right; lēge, by law, etc.*; and the Supines in -a (436).

**NOTES.**—1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception:

(Cæsar's) adventus ex colōre vestitūs cōgnitus, Cf. CAR., B.G., VII. 88, I; the arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing. **Dē gestū intellegō quid respondēs,** C., *Vat.*, 15, 35; I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving. **Ab animo aeger ful,** PL., *Ep.*, 129; at heart I was sick. **Ōtiōsum ab animo,** TER., *Ph.*, 340; *easy in mind.*

Similarly *ex lēge, according to law; ex pactō, according to agreement; ex (dē) mōre, according to custom; ex animi sententia, according to (my) heart's desire; ex fīsi, useful.*

2. A special category is formed by words indicating *eminence* or *superiority*: so *excellere, antecellere, praestāre, superfāre, vincere;* and the adjectives: *insignis, illustris, dignus; excellēns, praezellēns.* *Praecellere* is found in early and late Latin, while *dignari* is poetical and post-Augustan.

**Maximē populus Rōmānus animi māgnitudine excellit,** C., *Off.*, I. 18, 61; the Roman people excel most in loftiness of mind.

On *dignus* with Gen., see 374, n. 10.

A curious usage is that of **decorus** and **deōre**, with Abl., in Pl., *M. G.*, 619; *Asin.*, 577. 3. The origin of these constructions is still undetermined. They may be deduced also from the Instrumental side of the Abl., or from the Locative side.

**398.** The Ablative of Respect is used with the Comparative instead of **quam**, *than*, with the Nominative or Accusative; but in the classical language mainly after a negative, or its equivalent. (*Ablatīvus Comparatiōnis.*)

*Tunica propior palliōt*, Pl., *Trin.*, 1154; *the shirt is nearer than the cloak*. *Nihil est virtute amabilius*, C., *Lael.*, 8, 28; *nothing is more attractive than virtue*. *Quid est in homine ratiōne divinus?* C., *Leg.*, I. 7, 22; *what is there in man more godlike than reason?*

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

*Lacrimā nihil citius arēscit*, C., *Inv.*, I. 56, 109; *nothing dries more quickly than a tear*. *Nāmō est qui tibi sapientius suādēre posuit tē ipsō*, C., *Fam.*, II. 7, 1; *there is no one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself*. *Pularum brāstū turpē mōrē pēius caēndō conflinunt*, Pl., *Most.*, 291; *foul behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud*.

**REMARK.**—When the word giving the point of view is a relative, the Abl. must be used. See 296, n. 2.

*Phidiae simulacra quibus nihil in illō genere perfectius vidēmus, cōgitāre tamen possumus pulchriōra*, C., *Or.*, 2, 8; *the statues of Pheidias, than which we see nothing more perfect in their kind, still leave room for us to imagine those that are more beautiful*.

**NOTES.**—1. The comparative is also employed with the Abl. of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives: so **opiniōne**, **spē**, **expectatiōne**; **aequō**, **iūstō**, **solitō**, and the like, all post-Ciceronian except **aequō**, **opiniōne**.

(*Cōnsul*) **sérinus spē** (= **quam spē fuerat**) *Rōmam vēnit*, L., *xvi. 26. 4*; *the consul came to Rome later than was hoped*. **Solito citatōr amnis**, L., *xxiii. 10. 11*; *the river running faster than usual*.

2. **Aequō** and **adaequō** are found once each in *Plautus* with the Abl.; and then not till the time of the elder *Pliny*.

3. For other details, see 296 and 644.

### C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

#### • *Ablatīvus Sociatīvus*. Ablative of Attendance.

##### 1. Ablative of Manner.

**399.** The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How?* and is used with the Preposition **cum** when it has no Adjective; with or without **cum** when it has an Adjective or its equivalent. (*Ablatīvus Modī.*)

[*Stellae*] **circulōe sūtē orbēsque cōficiunt celeritāte mirabili**, C., *Rep.*, vi. 15, 15; *the stars complete their orbits with wonderful swiftness*. **Vtē**

*trō ut attentē bonique cum venīs verba mea audiātis, C., Rosc. Am., 4, 9 ; I beg you to hear my words attentively and with kind indulgence. Beatis vivere, honestā, id est cum virtute, vivere, C., Fin., III. 8, 29 ; to live happily is to live honestly, that is, virtuously.*

NOTES.—1. The simple Abl. without an attribute is confined to a few substantives, which have acquired adverbial force; early Latin shows *astū, curriculō, dolō, ergō, gratiis et ingratiis, ioculō, meritō, numerō, optatō, ordine, sortitō, voluntate, vulgō*. TERENCE adds: *vi, iūre, iniurīa*. Classical Latin shows some of these, also *ratiōne, ratiōne et viā, mōribus, cōsuētudine, silentiō, oīstā, lōge, fraude, vitiō, sacramētō* (beginning with LIVY), and a few others. Sometimes the idea of Specification is prominent, as in *lōge, iūre* (397); sometimes it is hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument: *vi, violently and by violence; vi et armis, by force of arms; pedibus, q̄ foot; nāvibus, by ship*. Notice, also, the use of *per, through*, with the Accusative: *per vim, by violence; per litterās, by letter*.

2. The post-Ciceronian Latin extends the use of the Abl. without an attribute.

3. The phrases *sub condicōne, sub lōge, etc.*, begin with LIVY.

## 2. Ablative of Quality.

(*Descriptive Ablative.*)

400. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent.

[Hannibal] nōmen erat māgnū apud omnē glōriū, C., Or., II. 18, 75; *the name of Hannibal was glorious in the esteem of all the world.* (Āgesilāus) statūr fuit humili, NEP., XVII. 8, 1; *Agesilaus was (a man) of low stature.* Ista turpiculō puella nāsō, CAT., 41, 8; *that girl of yours with the ugly nose.* Clāvi ferrei digitū pollicis crassitudine, Cf. CAES., B.G., III. 13, 4; *iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions *cum* may be used: *agnus cum suillō capite, L., XXXI. 12, 7; a lamb with a swine's head.*

## 3. Ablative of Means.

401. The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition *ab* (ā). The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with *per*.

Xerxes certior factus est, { 1. nāntiō, by a message..  
Xerxes was informed, { 2. ē nāntiō, by a messenger.  
                                  3. per nāntium, by means of a messenger.

*Qui sunt hominēs, & quibus ille sō lapidibus adpetitum, etiam percussum esse dixit?* C., Dom., 5, 13; *who are the men by whom he said he had been thrown at with stones, and even hit?* *Vulgō occidēbantur!* Per quōs et & quibus? C., Roec. Am., 29, 80; *were they cut down openly?* Through whose instrumentality and by whose agency? *Nec bene prōmeritis capitūr neque tangitur ira,* LUCR., II. 651 (227, n. 4). *Ipsa docet quid agam:* *mis est et ab hoste doerī,* OV., M., IV. 428 (219). *Discite sanari per quem didicistis amare,* OV., Rem. Am., 43; *learn to be healed by means of (him) by whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful; see 354, n. 1, and 214, r. 2.

*So iacent suis tēstibus,* C., Mil., 18, 47; *they are cast by their own witnesses;* or, *they are cast, their own men being witnesses.*

2. A quality, when personified, has the construction of the person.  
*So dēserī & mente, & sp̄s.*

*Vōbis animus ab ignāvīa atque sōcordiā corruptus [est],* S., Jug., 31, 2; *you have had your soul(s) debauched by sloth and indifference.*

NOTES.—1. The number of verbs construed with this Abl. is very large and comprises several categories; so verbs of Clothing and Providing, Adorning and Endowing, Training (*erūdīre* also takes in; others take Acc., see 339), Living and Nourishing, etc.

2. Of special importance are *assuēscō*, *assuēfacō*, *assuētus*; (*Catilina*) *secōrum exercitatiōne assuēfactus*, C., Cat., II. 5, 9. The Dat. is found first in LIVY in prose. *Ad* with the Acc. is also classical.

3. *Afficere*, to treat, with the Ablative, is a favorite turn; see the Lexicons.

4. Verbs of *sacrificing*, such as *sacrificō*, *sacrum facere*, *divinam rem facere*, *fieri* (mostly poetical), *immolāre*, *littāre* (poetical), have the Abl. of Means. But *immolāre* usually has Acc. and Dat., and so the others occasionally, except *facere*.

*Quinquagintā capris sacrificāvērunt,* L., XLV. 16, 6; *they sacrificed fifty sheep.*

5. Here belong also verbs like *pluere*, *stūdīre* (not classic), *stillāre* (not classic), *fluere*, *mānāre*, and the like: *sanguine pluisse*, L., XXIV. 10, 7. The Acc. is also common.

6. *Mitor, I stay myself*, is construed with the Abl.; occasionally with in. *Fidō, cōfidō, I trust, rely on*, have the Abl.; but with persons the Dat., sometimes also with things. On the other hand, *dīfīdō, I distrust*, always has the Dat. in classical Latin, but TACITUS shows Abl., and so do other later writers. *Stāre, to abide by*, usually has the Abl., but occasionally in; *mānē* has usually in; the Abl. is poetical. *Acquīēscere, to acquiesce in*, with Abl. is rare. *Frētus, supported*, takes the Abl. regularly; LIVY alone uses the Dative. *Contentus, satisfied with (by)*, is used only of one's own possessions (*rōbus, fortūna, etc.*), and has the Ablative.

*Salīa omnīm nō vēritātē sōlum sed etiam fīmā nītitur,* (Y. C., Q.F., I. li. 1, 2; *the welfare of all rests not on truth alone, but also on repute.* *Eius iudiciō stāre nō līm,* C., Tuc., II. 26, 63; *I should not like to abide by his judgment.*

7. A remnant of the old usage found with *fīō, facō*, and *esse*:

*Quid fēcisti scipiūne?* Pl., Cas., 975; *what have you done with the wand?* *Quid*

*mē flet?* Pl., *Mos.*, 1:66; *what will become of me?* *Quid tē futūrumat?* Ter., *Ph.*, 137; *what is to become of you?* *Quid hōc homine faciēs?* C., *Verr.*, II. 16, 59; *how will you dispose of this man?* *Quid huic homini faciēs?* C., *Cæcili.*, II, 30; *what will you do to this man?* *Quid dē nōbis futūrum [est]?* C., *Nam.*, IX. 17, 1; *what is to happen in our case?*

The use of the Dative is rare, and still more rare the use of dē.

The construction is colloquial, and never found in CAESAR and TACITUS; it is always in an interrogative sentence, except in CATO and OVID.

#### 4. Ablative of Standard. *Ablātīvus Mēnsūræ.*

**402.** The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

*Benevolentiam nōn ardore amōris sed stabilitate iudicemus,* C., *Off.*, I. 15, 47; *good will we are to judge not by ardor but by steadfastness.* *Magnis hominēs virtute mētimur, nōn fortūnā,* NEP., XVIII. I, 1; *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.* *Sonis hominēs ut aera tinnitū dignoscimus,* QUINT., XI. 3, 31; *we distinguish men by sound, as coppers by ring.*

**REMARKS.—1.** It is often hard to distinguish the Measure from the Respect (see 397).

**2.** Ex with the Abl. is frequently found with these verbs; so regularly with *aestimare*, *existimare*, *spectare*, in the sense of *judge*, *value*.

*Dicendum erit nōn esse ex fortūnā fidem ponderandam,* C., *Part. Or.*, 34, 117; *the plea will have to be made that faith is not to be weighed by fortune.* *Sic est vulgus: ex vēritāte pauca, ex opiniōne multa aestimat,* C., *Rosc. Com.*, 10, 29; *this is the way of the rubble: they value few things by (the standard of) truth, many by (the standard of) opinion.*

**403.** Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

*Sol multis partibus māior (est) quam terra universa,* C., *N.D.*, II. 36, 92; *the sun is many parts larger than the whole earth.* (*Via*) alterō tantō longiōrem habēbat anfractum, NEP., XVIII. 8, 5; *the road had a bend (that made it) longer by as much again, as long again.* *Quinquiēns tantō amplius Verrēs, quam licitum est, civitatibus imperāvit,* Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 97, 225; *Verres levied on the various cities five times more than was allowed by law.* *Turrēs dēnis pedibus quam mārus altiōres sunt,* CURT., V. 1, 26; *the towers are (by) ten feet higher than the wall.* *Tantō est accusare quam defendere, quantō facere quam sanare vulnera, facilius,* QUINT., V. 13, 3; *it is as much easier to accuse than to defend, as it is easier to inflict wounds than to heal them.* *Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulisti,* Ov., *Tr.*, V. 11, 7; *endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.*

**NOTES.—1.** This rule applies to verbs involving difference (such as *abesse*, *distīre*, *malle*, *praestīre*, *excellere*, etc.), as well as to comparatives, with which must be reckoned *infra*, *suprā*, *ultrā*.

[*Aesculapii templum*] *quinque milibus passuum ab urbe [Epidaurō] distat,*  
*Cf. L., XLV. 28, 3; the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.*

2. The Acc. is sometimes employed (see 335); especially with neuter adjectives *multum, tantum, etc.*, but this is not common except with verbs.

3. The Plautine Abl. *nimiō*, with the comparative, is not classical (compare [C.], *Att.*, x. 8 a, 1), but reappears in *Livy*. *Aliter* with this Abl. is very rare and is not classical. So also the Abl. with the positive, of which a few examples are cited from early Latin, as *Terr., Heaut.*, 205.

4. (a) Especially to be noted is the use of the Abl. of Measure with *ante, before,* and *post, after:*

*Paucis ante diēbus, Paucis diēbus ante, a few days before.*

*Paucis post diēbus, Paucis diēbus post, a few days after, afterward.*

*Dūbus annis postquam Rōma condita est, two years after Rome was founded.*

*Paulō post Trōiam captam, a little while after the taking of Troy.*

The Acc. can also be employed: *post paucis annos, after a few years; ante paucis annos, a few years before;* and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers (but only when *quam* follows): *two hundred years after(ward)* may be:

*Ducentis annis post or Ducentēsimō annō post,  
Post ducentē annos or Post ducentēsimū annum.*

(b) *Ante* and *post* do not precede the Abl. in classical Latin except with *aliquantō* (rare) and *paulō*. *Ante* and *post*, with the Acc. followed by *quam*, instead of *ante quam* and *postquam* with the Abl., belong preeminently to post-classical Latin; classical examples are rare. *Cicero* never has *ante*.

(c) *Ante hōs sex mēnsēs, six months ago* (compare 338, n. 4), more frequently *ab hīc sex mēnsēs* (338, n. 3); *ab hīc sex mēnsib⁹s*, means *six months before*.

(d) With a relative sentence the Abl. of the relative may be used alone, instead of *ante (post) quam*:

*Mors Rōscī quadridiō quō is occisus est, Chrysogonō nūntiātur, C., Rosc. Ann., 37, 106; the death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed). See 338.*

(e) Hence is *ad: ad sex mēnsēs, six months hence.*

(f) Do not confuse the Acc. with *ante* and *post* with the Acc. of Duration of Time.

### 5. Ablative of Price.

#### 404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative.

*Eriphylā aurō viri vitam vēndidit, C., Inv., I. 50, 94; Eriphyle sold her husband's life for gold. Viginti talents finam ḥratiōnem Isocratis vēndidit, PLIN., N.H., VII. 31, 110; Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents. Emit morte immortālitētem, QUINT., IX. 3, 71; he purchased deathlessness with death. Argentum accēpi, dōte imperium vēndidi, PL., Asin., 87; the cash I took, (and) for a dowry sold my sway.*

NOTES.—1. *Mūtare, to exchange*, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy. The latter use is confined to poetry and later prose.

*Nōmō nisi victor pīce bellum mūtavit, S., C., 58, 15; no one unless victorious (ever) exchanged war for peace. Misera pāx vel bellō bene mūtatur, Cf. TAC., Ann., III. 44, 10; a wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.*

But *cū valle permūtem Sabina divitiās operūsōrē!* H., O., III. 1, 47; *why should I exchange my Sabine vale for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble?*

2. So *vēnlis, vilis, cheap; cārus, dear. Nōn, edepol, minis trecentis cārast,* PL., Pers., 668; *she is not dear, Yore George, at three hundred minae.*

3. For Genitive of Price, see 379.

## 6. Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want.

**405.** Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative.

[*Democritus*] dicitur oculis s<sup>e</sup>s privasse, C., *Fin.*, v. 29, 87; *Democritus* is said to have deprived himself of his eyes. Deus bonis omnibus expl<sup>it</sup> mundum, Cf. C., *Univ.*, 3, 9; God has filled the universe with all blessings. Capua fortissimorum virorum multitudine redundat, C., *Pis.*, ii. 25; Capua is full to overflowing with a multitude of gallant gentlemen. N<sup>on</sup> caret effectu quod volvare duo, Ov., *Am.*, ii. 3, 16; what two have resolved on never lacks execution. Quo<sup>m</sup> maior est in [animis] praestantia, e<sup>m</sup> maior indigentia, C., *Tusc.*, iv. 27, 58.

NOTES.—1. Verbs of Depriving are commonly referred to the Ablative of Separation, rather than to the Instrumental Ablative, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But it must be remembered that in the classic tongue the construction of opposites is identical.

2. Ego<sup>s</sup> and (more frequently) indigo<sup>s</sup> also take the Genitive:

N<sup>on</sup> tam artis indigent quam laboris, C., *Or.*, i. 34, 158; they are not so much in need of skill as of industry. So implor<sup>s</sup>, V., A., i. 214.

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Gen., but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (374, n. 1). So onustus, orbus, have Abl. more often than Gen.; indigens, egens, and incors have the Gen. more commonly. Plenus has usually the Gen.; the Abl. in increasing proportion from LUCRETIUS on. Frequens and validus do not take the Gen. until the post-Augustan period. See 374.

Asellus onustus aur<sup>s</sup>, C., *All.*, i. 16, 12; a donkey laden with gold. Pollicitis dives quilibet esse potest, Ov., A.A., i. 444; anybody can be rich in promises. Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus, Pl., *Cist.*, 67; love is (very) fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).

**406.** Opus and usus take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject, and opus (not usus) the predicate.

Nov<sup>s</sup> omissili mihi nunc opus est, Pl., *Pis.*, 601; a new device is what I'm needing now. Viginti iam usus fili<sup>s</sup> argenti minis, Pl., *Asin.*, 89; my son has urgent need of twenty silver minae. Nihil opus est similitone et fallaciis, C., *Or.*, ii. 46, 191; there is no need of making believe, and of cheating tricks. N<sup>on</sup> opus est verbis sed fustibus, C., *Pis.*, 30, 73; there is need not of words, but of cudgels. Emas n<sup>on</sup> quod opus est, sed quod necesse est; quod n<sup>on</sup> opus est asse curum est, CATO (SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 27); buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needed; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.

So with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Quod parat<sup>s</sup> opus est par<sup>s</sup>, TER., *And.*, 523; what must be got ready, get ready. Vicinus conventus opus, Pl., *Cas.*, 502; the neighbor must

*be called on.* *Citius quod non factest fūsus fit quam quod factest opus,* Pl., Am., 505.

NOTES.—1. *Opus est* means properly : *there is work to be done with* ; *fūsus est*, *there is making use of* (like *fītor*) ; hence the Ablative. Some think that *opus* takes Abl. by analogy with *fūsus*.

2. *Opus est* is common throughout ; *fūsus est* is very rarely found after the early period. It belongs especially to comedy.

3. The Gen. with *opus* occurs twice in LIVY ; also in PROPERTIUS, QUINTILIAN, and APULEIUS.

4. The neut. Acc. is usually adverbial (333, 2) :

*Quid (Acc.) digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenendō?* Ov., Am., I. II, 23 ; *what is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stylus?*

5. Besides the Pf. Part. pass., we find the Infin. and sometimes ut ; in this case the Person is usually in the Dat. with *opus* (*fūsus*), but may be in the Acc. with the Inf., or may be omitted.

*Opus est tē animō valēre ut corpore possis,* C., Fam., XVI. 14, 2 ; *you must be well in mind in order to be well in body.* *An quoiquamst fūsus homini sō ut cruciāt?* Ter., Heaut., 81 ; *of what good is it to any man to torture himself?*

The Supine is found occasionally ; in CICERO only *saltū* (Inv., I. 20, 28 ; disputed).

6. In PLAUTUS and LUCRETIUS are occasional examples of *fūsus* as a predicate, with the Thing Wanted as the subject.

#### 7. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

407. The Deponent Verbs *ūtor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, take the Ablative.

*Victōriā uti nescis,* L., XXII. 51, 4 ; *how to make use of victory you know not.* *Quād fūque tandem abūtē patientiā nostrā,* C., Cat., I. I, 1 ; *how long, tell me, will you abuse our patience?* *Lux quā fruimur & Deō nōbīs datur,* Cf. C., Rose. Am., 45, 131 ; *the light which we enjoy is given to us by God.* *Funguntur officiō;* *defendunt suā,* C., Cael., 9, 21 ; *they acquit themselves of a duty ; they defend their own people.* *Fungar vīo cōtīs,* H., A.P., 304 ; *I shall acquit myself of, discharge, the office of a whetstone.* *Titius esse arbitrībantur sine illō vulnere victōriā potiri,* Caes., B.G., III. 24, 2 ; *they thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound.* *Numidas lacte vescēbantur,* S., Jug., 89, 7 ; *the Numidians made their food of milk (fed on milk).*

NOTES.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument : but *fruor*, *I get fruit*, and *vescor*, *I feed myself from*, and perhaps *fungor*, may take the Abl. as a Whence-case.

2. These verbs seem to have been originally construed with the Acc. ; but this case is not found in classical Latin except in the Gerundive construction (427, n. 5).

(a) *Ūtor* with Acc. is very common in PLAUTUS, less so in TERENCE, but only with neuter pronouns. CATO uses also the neuter of substantives. *Abūtor* is combined only with Acc. in early Latin.

(b) *Fruor* with Acc. is not in PLAUTUS, but occasionally in TERENCE and CATO. *Frūnisco* (rare) is transitive in PLAUTUS and QUADRIGARIUS (sp. GELL.).

(c) *Fungor* with Acc. is the rule in early Latin (TER., Ad., 603, is disputed), then in NEPOS, TACITUS, SUSTONIUS, and later.

(d) *Potior* has Gen. at all periods (rare in CICERO ; once in CAESAR) ; the Acc.

occasionally in early and late Latin, in the *b. Afr.*, the *b. Hisp.*, and in *SALLUER*. Noteworthy is the use of an act. *potire* with Gen. in Pl., *Ara.*, 178, and a pass. *potitus* with Gen. in several places in *PLAUTUS*.

(e) *Vesoor* takes the Acc. rarely in early Latin, in the poets, and in later Latin. *Vivere, h̄illuārī*, take Abl. like *vesci*.

3. *Utor* is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation:

*Uti aliquō amicō, to avail one's self of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him); uti cōnsiliō, to follow advice; uti bonō patre, to have the advantage of having a good father; uti lēgib⁹s, to obey the laws.* See the Lexicons.

#### D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

408. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion. *Ablātīvus Causae*.

*In culpi sunt qui officia dēserunt molliti⁹ animi*, C., *Fin.*, I. 10, 33; *they are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.* *Ödorant pœcōre boni virtutis amōre*, H., *Ep.*, I. 16, 52; *the good hate to sin from love of virtue.* *Dælictō dolare, corræctiōne gaudire (oportet)*, C., *Lael.*, 24, 90; *one ought to be sorry for sin, to be glad of chastisement.* *Nōn dīci potest quam flagrem dēsideriō urbis*, C., *Att.*, V. II, 1; *I burn (am afire) beyond expression with longing for Rome.*

NOTES.—1. A number of combinations become phraseological, as the verbals: *arbitrītū, hortatū, impulsū, fūssū, missū, rogatū, etc.*; also *cōnsiliō, auctoritātē*, with a Gen. or possessive pronoun: *fūssū civium, at the bidding of the citizens; meō rogatū, at my request.*

2. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Abl., which usually precedes: *adductus, led; ardēns, fired; commotus, stirred up; incitatus, egged on; incōnsus, inflamed; impulsus, driven on; motus, moved, and many others; amōre, by love; ira, by anger; odīs, by hate; metū, by fear; spē, by hope, etc.* *Metū perterritus, sore frightened; verſundīs dēterritus, abashed, etc.*

3. Instead of the simple Abl. the prepositions *dē* and *ex* (sometimes *in*), with the Abl., ob and propter with the Acc., are often used; perhaps occasionally *a b.*

4. The preventing cause is expressed by *prae*, for (417, 9): *Præ gaudiō ubi sim nesciō*, Terc., *Heaut.*, 308; *I know not where I am for joy.*

5. On *causā* and *gratīs* with the Gen., see 273.

6. The use of the Abl. for the external cause, as *rēgale genus nōn tam rēgnū quam rēgī vitīs repudiātū est* (C., *Leg.*, III. 7, 15), *the kingly form of government was rejected not so much by reason of the faults of the kingly form, as by reason of the faults of the king,* is not common in the early and in the classical period, except in certain formulae; but it becomes very common later.

7. The Ablative of Cause may have its origin in the Instrumental Ablative, in the Ablative of Source, or in the Comitative Ablative.

#### E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

409. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

*Note.*—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, springs from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local. Another view regards it as an Ablative of Manner, with a predicate instead of an attribute.

410. The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English so-called Nominative (originally Dative) Absolute, which is a close equivalent; but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyze the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract substantive.

*Xerxe régante* (= cum Xerxes régneret), *Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.*

*Xerxe victo* (= cum Xerxes victus esset), *Xerxes being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.*

*Xerxe régé* (= cum Xerxes régé esset), *Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.*

*Patre vivō, WHILE father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).*

*Urbe expugnata imperator reddit:*

**PASSIVE FORM :** *The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.*

**ACTIVE FORM :** *Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.*

**ABSTRACT FORM :** *After the taking of the city. After taking the city.*

Máximis virtutēs iacere omnēs necesse est voluptate dominante, C., *Fin.*, II. 35, 117; all the great(est) virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, IF (OR WHEN) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress. Rómāni veterēs régnaři omnēs volšant libertatis dulcedine nōndum experti, L., I. 17, 3; the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (BECAUSE they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

**REMARKS.**—1. As the Latin language has no Pf. Part. active, except when the Deponent is thus used, the passive construction is far more common than in English:

*Iuvenēs veste positā corpora oleū perinxerunt, C., Tusc., I. 47, 113; the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil; or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.*

2. The Abl. Abs., though often to be rendered by a coördinate sentence, for convenience' sake, always presents a subordinate conception:

(Lysander) suādet Lacedaemoniis ut régis potestate dissoluta ex omnibus dux diligatur ad bellum gerendum, NEP., VI. 3, 5; *Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, AND a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war.* Here the one is necessary to the other.

3. As a rule, the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical

with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace* is to be rendered : *Mānlius caesum Gallum torque spoliavit.*

This rule is frequently violated at all periods of the language, for the purpose either of emphasis or of stylistic effect. The shifted construction is clearer, more vigorous, more conversational.

*Negue illum mē vivō corrumpi sinam, Pl., B., 419; nor will I suffer him to be debauched while I am alive.*

The violation is most frequent when the dependent case is in the Genitive :

*Iugurtha frātre mē interfictō rēgnūm sīus sceleris sui praedam fēcit, S., Jug., 14, 11; Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.*

Norms.—1. The Pf. Part. of Deponents and Semi-deponents as an active in the Abl. Abs. is not found in early Latin, and is not common in classical Latin, where it is always without an object and is confined to verbs of Growth (principally *ortus, coortus, nātus*), Death, and Motion. It becomes common later, being used with an object from SALLUST on.

2. The Pf. Part. of Deponents as a passive in the Abl. Abs. is confined in classical Latin to *emeritus, pectus, partitus*. SALLUST and LIVY, as well as later writers, extend the usage. TACITUS, however, shows but two cases : *adeptus* (*Ann.*, I. 7, 8) and *ausus* (*Ann.*, III. 67, 4).

3. The Fut. Part. act. in the Abl. Abs. is post-Ciceronian, beginning with POLLIO and LIVY.

4. The impersonal use of the Abl. Abs. is found not unfrequently in early Latin and CICERO, rarely in CAESAR and SALLUST. Most of the forms so used have become adverbial in character, as *optatō, sortitō, int̄setitō, cōsultō, auspicatō, dir̄setō, meritō, etc.* The use of a following clause dependent upon the Abl. is begun in CICERO : *adīfūctō ut* (*Off.*, II. 12, 42). SALLUST uses *auditō* and *comportō* with the Infinitive. But LIVY extends this construction very greatly, and introduces the use of neuter adjectives in the same way : *incertō prae tenebris quid aut petarent aut vitarent*, L., xxviii. 36, 12. It is frequent in TACITUS.

5. The use of adjectives and substantives in the Abl. is not common in early Latin, but is a favorite usage of the classical period and later : *mē auctōre*, C., *Or.*, III. 14, 54.

6. A predicate substantive, with the participle, is rare, but occurs in good prose : *Prætōrē dēsignatō mortuō filiō*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 26, 70.

## LOCATIVE.

411. In the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

*Pompēius hiemāre Dyrhachii, Apollōniae omnibusque oppidiis cōstiterat*, CAES., B.C., III. 5, 1 ; *Pompey had determined to winter at Dyrrachium, Apollonia, and all the towns.* Timotheus Leabi (vixit), NEP., XII. 3, 4 ; *Timotheus lived at Lebos.* Rhodi ego nōn ful, sed ful in Bithynia, C., *Planc.*, 34, 88 ; *I was not at Rhodes, but I was in Bithynia.*

**REMARKS.—1.** A few substantives of the Third Declension also form sporadic Locatives; so *Carthagini*, in *PLAUTUS*, *CICERO*, and later; *Tiburi* in *CICERO*, *LIVY*, and later, and a few others. See 386.

2. Other Locative forms are, *domi*, *at home* (61, n. 2), *humī*, *on the ground* (first in *CICERO*), *belli*, and *militiae*, in the combinations *domi militiaeque*, *belli domique*, *in peace and in war*, *at home and in the field*; *rūri*, *in the country* (but *rūre meō*, *on my farm*).

*Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est cōnālūm domi*, C., *Off.*, I. 22, 76; *of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home*. *Iacēre humī*, C., *Cat.*, I. 10, 26; *to lie on the ground*. *Humi p̄sternere*, L., *XLV.* 20, 9; *to throw flat on the ground*.

*Belli* is found alone occasionally in *TERENCE* and *CICERO*; *ENNUS*, *VERGIL*, and *OVID* have *terrae*; *VERGIL* also *campi*.

3. Appositions are put in the Ablative, commonly with *in*, and regularly follow when qualified by an attribute:

*Militē Albae cōnstitūrūt in urbe opportūnā*, C., *Ph.*, IV. 2, 6; *the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town*. *Archīas Antiochias natus est celebri quondam urbe*, C., *Arch.*, 3, 4; *Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city*.

When *urbe*, *city*, *oppidō*, *town*, or *insula*, *island*, precedes, the preposition is always employed:

*In urbe Rōmā*, *in the city (of) Rome*. *In oppidō Cītiō*, *in the town of Cītium*. *In insula Samō*, *in the island (of) Samos*.

4. *Domi* takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive:

*Domi sua senex est mortuus*, C., *N.D.*, III. 32, 81; *the old man died at his own house*. *Metuis ut meae domi cūrētur diligenter*, *TER.*, *Hec.*, 257; *you fear that she will not be carefully nursed at my house*. Also *aliēnae domūf* (61, n. 2), C., *Tusc.*, I. 22, 51; *in a strange house*; *domi illius*, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 18, 58; *in his house*.

But in *domō Perioli* (65), *NEP.*, VII. 2, 1; *in the house(hold) of Pericles*. *In domō castī*, *in a pure house*. *In domō*, *in the house (not, at home)*.

**NOTES.—1.** Early Latin shows a number of Locative forms that have disappeared for the most part in the classical period. So *temp̄i* (*temporū*) replaced by *tempore* in *CICERO* (*LIVY* and *TACITUS* only in *tempore*); *māni*, replaced by *māne*; *vesperi* and *heri*; and rare forms like *dīs*, *cūstīni*, *proximi*. See 37, 5.

2. On Locative forms of the pronouns, see 91, 3. On *animi*, see 374, n. 7.

## PREPOSITIONS.

**412.** The Prepositions are originally local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas involved in the cases. The analogy of the local adverbs is followed by other adverbs, which are not so much prepositions as prepositional adverbs. Of the Prepositions proper, that is, Prepositions

used in composition (see Note), as well as in the regimen of cases, **cum** (**con**) does not clearly indicate a local relation.

The only cases that involve local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

**REMARKS.**—1. In verbs of Motion, the Result of the Motion is often considered as Rest in a place (where). See 385, n. 2.

2. In verbs of Rest, the Rest is sometimes conceived as the Result of Motion (whither). See 385, n. 8.

**NOTE.**—Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin Prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called Improper Prepositions. The prefixes **amb-** (**am-** **an-**), **dis** (**dī**), **por-** (**porr-**, **pol-**), **red-** (**re-**), **s&d-** (**s&đ**) and **v&** are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

**413. Position of the Preposition.**—The Preposition generally precedes the case.

**REMARKS.**—1. **Cum** always follows a personal pronoun, and may or may not follow a relative pronoun: **mēcum**, *with me*; **quōcum** or **cum quō**, *with whom*. **D&S** is not uncommonly placed after **quō** and **qui**, rarely after **quibus**. Position after the relative is found here and there also in the case of other Prepositions, but principally in early Latin or the poets, as follows: **ab**, **ad** (also in **CICERO**), **ex**, **in**, **per**, **post** (after **hunc**, C., *Tusc.*, II, 6, 15), and **pr̄**.

Dissyllabic Prepositions are postponed more often, but **CICERO** restricts this to pronouns, with the following Prepositions: **ante**, **circa**, **contra**, **inter**, **pene**, **propter**, **sine**, **ultra**. **CAESAR** postpones **intr̄** also.

**Tenuis**, *as far as*, and **versus**, *-ward*, always follow.

2. When the substantive has an attribute the Preposition may come between; **hanc igitur ob causam** (C., *Br.*, 24, 94), *for this reason, therefore*.

3. The Preposition may be separated from its case by an attributive adjective or its equivalent, or other modifier of the case: **post v&r̄ Sullae victoriā**, *but after Sulla's victory*; **ad bēs vivendum**, *for living happily*. But model prose usually avoids separating the Preposition by more than a word or two. The poets have no scruples.

**NOTES.**—1. A peculiarity of poetry, **LIVY**, and later prose is the post-position of both Preposition and attribute: **metū in magnō**, L., ix. 37, 11; *in great fear*.

2. Especially to be noted is the position of **per**, *through* (*by*), in adjurations: **Lydia dic per omnes tē dēs ūr̄**, H., *O.*, I. 8, 1; *Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.* **Per ego tē dēs ūr̄**, *And.*, 834; *I pray thee, by the gods.*

3. Between the Preposition and its case are often inserted the enclitics **que**, **ne**, **ve**; and after **ante**, **post**, and **praeter** the conjunctions **autem**, **enim**, **quidem**, **tamen**, **v&r̄**, occur, but not frequently. The first word in the combinations **et—et**, **aut—aut**,

*simul—simul, vel—vel, sometimes follows the Preposition; cum et diurnō et nocturnō metū, C., Tusc., v. 23, 66.*

**414. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.**—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so regularly after *aut—aut, et—et, nec—nec, vel—vel, nōn modo—sed etiam, sed, nisi, quam*, and in comparative clauses with *ut*. Otherwise it is omitted; so always with *que*.

*Et ex urbe et ex agris, C., Cal., II. 10, 21; both from (the) city and from (the) country. Dē honore aut dē dignitate contendimus, C., Tusc., III. 21, 50; we are striving about office, or about position.*

**REMARKS.—1.** When a relative follows in the same construction as its antecedent, the Preposition is usually omitted.

(*Cimōn*) *incidit in eandem invidiam (in) quam pator suus, Nep., v. 3, 1; Cimon fell into the same disrepute into which his father had fallen.*

2. So in questions: *Ante tempus mori miserum. Quod tandem tempus?* C., Tusc., I. 39, 98; *a hard case 'tis, to die before the time. (Before what time, pray?)*

3. After *quasi, tamquam, sicut*, the Preposition is more often inserted.

*Rēs ex urbe tamquam & vinculis & solvērunt, Cf. C., Or., II. 6, 22; they sped from the city to the country as if from a jail.*

4. Two Prepositions are rarely used with the same word. Either the word is repeated, a form of is used, or one Prep. turned into an adverb:

*Prō Scipiōne et aduersus Scipiōnam, for and against Scipio. Ante pugnam et post eam, before and after the battle. Et in corpore et extrā [sunt] quaedam bona, C., Fin., II. 21, 68. But intrā extrāque mūnitōnes, Caes., B.C., III. 72, 2.*

**415.** As adverbs without a case are used:

*Ad, about, with numerals in CAESAR, LIVY, and later; aduersus, to meet, especially in PLAUTUS and TERENCE; ante and post of Time (403, N. 4); contrā, opposite, on the other hand; circā, round about, and circum (rare); prae, forward, in PLAUTUS and TERENCE; prope, near, and propter (rare); iuxta, near by (rare); intrā, inside (post-classical); extrā, outside; infra, below; suprā, above; subter, beneath, and super, above, both rare; citrā, on this side; ultra, beyond; edram, in the presence of; clam, secretly.*

### I.—Prepositions Construed with the Accusative.

**416.** The Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:  
*Ad, aduersus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā,*

clam, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, inter, intrā, iūxta, ob, penes, per, post (pōne), praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ultrā, usque, versus.

1. **Ad.** Of Motion Whither, *to, up to*. Of Direction, *towards* (ad orientem). Of Respect, *for, with regard to* (ad hās rēs perspicāx); found first in TERENCE. Of Manner, *after, according to* (ad hunc modum); colloquial (in CICERO's speeches only quem ad modum). Of Place, *at* (= apud), colloquial (ad montem, C., Fam., xv. 2, 2) and legal (ad forum, ad tib), rare in CICERO's speeches. Of Time, *at*, refers only to future, and gives either a point (ad vesperum, *at evening*), an interval (ad paucis dīs, *a few days hence*), or an approaching time, *towards*. With Numerals, *about*. Of Purpose, *for* (castra hosti ad praedam relinquunt, L., III. 63, 4). Also in phrases. Post-Ciceronian Latin extended the sphere of *ad*, and colloquially it was often a substitute for the Dative.

2. **Adversus (-um)**, [*i.e., turned to*]. *Towards, over against, against.* Rare in early Latin and in CAESAR and SALLUST. In the sense, *over against*, it is found first in LIVY. In the transferred sense, *towards*, it expresses usually hostile disposition, but begins to indicate friendly disposition in CICERO. **Exadversus (-um)** is found occasionally, beginning with CICERO, and is always local.

3. **Ante** [*i.e., over against, facing*]. Of Place Where, *before*. Of Place Whither, *before*; rarely (not in CICERO). Of Time, *before*; the most frequent use. Of Degree, *before*; not in CICERO or CAESAR.

4. **Apud** is used chiefly of Persons. *At the house of* (characteristic locality). *In the presence of* (iudicem). *In the writings of* (Platōnem). *In the view of*. Of Place, *at, in* (= in); common in comedy (apud villam); rare elsewhere, especially with proper names, where *ad* was preferred, except by SALLUST. In phrases like *apud sē esse, to be in one's senses*.

5. **Circū** (circum). *Around.* Circum is exclusively local (except once in VITRUVIUS, where it is temporal). Circū in the local sense is found first in CICERO. In the meaning *about, of* Time or Number, it is found first in HORACE. So, too, in the transferred sense of the sphere of mental action: *atq̄ virentis est animus campis*, H., O., II. 5, 5.

6. **Circiter.** Of Place, *about*; once in PLAUTUS. Usually of Time, *about*, especially with numerals; but the prepositional usage is on the whole small.

7. **Cis, citrā.** *This side, short of.* Of Place; cis found first in VARRO, citrā in CICERO. Cis is occasionally temporal in PLAUTUS, SALLUST, OVID. Citrā, of Time, *within, this side of;* found first in OVID. *Without (stopping short of);* found first in LIVY, then in OVID, and

the post-Augustan prose writers. In C., *Or.*, 18, 50, *citrī* may be rendered *further back*; i.e., nearer the beginning.

8. **Clam.** *Secretly.* With Acc. in early Latin, in the *b. Hisp.*, and in the Jurists. With Abl. in CAESAR (*B.C.*, II. 32, 8), and in the *b. Afr.*, II, 4 (both passages disputed). *Clanculum* with Acc., only in TERENCE.

9. **Contra.** *Opposite to, over against, opposed to, against.* It appears as a Preposition first in the classical period, and is used both in local and transferred senses. In the latter case the force is predominantly hostile.

10. **Ergi.** *Opposite, towards.* Of Place; very rarely, in early and late Latin. Usually in the transferred sense of friendly relations. The hostile sense is occasional in comedy, NEPOS, and later writers. *Ergi* is used always of Persons or personified Things until the time of TACITUS.

11. **Extra.** *Without, outside of, beside.* It is used of local and transferred relations; rarely in the sense of *sine* (TAC., *H.*, I. 49); occasionally in sense of *praeter, except*.

12. **Infra.** *Beneath, lower down.* Of Space; more frequently in classical Latin, of Rank or Grade; Temporal but once (C., *Br.*, 10, 40). It occurs but rarely in later Latin, and is cited only once from early Latin (TER., *Eun.*, 489).

13. **Inter.** *Between.* Of Place Where, rarely of Place Whither. Colloquial were phrases like *inter viam* (*vīa*), *on the road*, *inter nōs*, *between ourselves*. *Inter pānōs*, *preminently*, is post-classical. Of Time, *during*; at all periods, but in CICERO principally in the *Letters*.

14. **Intra.** *Within.* Of Local and Temporal (not in CICERO) relations. The usage in transferred relations is post-classical, and mainly poetical.

15. **Iuxta** [i.e., *adjoining*]. *Hard by, near, next to.* It appears as a Preposition first in VARRO, then in CAESAR, but not in CICERO. It is used locally until LIVY, who employs it also in transferred senses of Time, Order, etc.

16. **Ob** [i.e., *over against, opposite to*]. *Right before.* Of Place occasionally at all periods (not in CAESAR, LIVY, CURTIUS, TACITUS). Of Cause, *for*; found in early Latin (not with personal pronouns in PLAUTUS), in classical and post-classical Latin in increasing proportion. CAESAR uses it only in formulae with *rem* (*rēs*) and *causam*. CICERO and CAESAR do not use *ob id* or *ob ea*, which, found in early Latin, reappear in SALLUST. *Ob* has almost completely supplanted *propter* in TACITUS. With the substantive and participle (*ob dēfēnsūm Capitōliūm*) *ob* is found first in LIVY.

17. **Penes.** *With = in the hands of; of Persons.* Applied to

Things, it is found in poetry first in HORACE ; in prose first in TACITUS. It is found wholly with *esse* until later Latin.

18. **Per.** Of Space, *through* ; of Time, *during* ; of Cause, *owing to* ; of Instrument, *by* (both persons and things) ; of Manner, *by, in*. It is used phraseologically in oaths, *by* ; also with persons (sometimes things), as *per me licet, as far as I am concerned you may*. **Per** = ab of Agent is found only in late Latin.

19. **Ptma.** *Behind*, only in Local relations; it is most frequent in PLAUTUS, occurs but once in CICERO, never in CAESAR or HORACE, and is rare in general.

20. **Post.** Of Place, *behind* ; rare, but in good usage. Of Time, *after*. Of Rank, *subordinate to* ; in SALLUST, poets, and late prose.

21. **Praeter.** Of Place, *in front of, on before, past*. In a transferred sense, *except* ; *contrary to* (*opiniōmem* and the like). Of Rank, *beyond* (*praeter om̄nēs* is cited only from PLAUTUS and HORACE ; usually *praeter ceterōs*).

22. **Propre.** Of Place, *near* ; found first in the classical period. It sometimes has the constructions of adjectives of Nearness. Of Time, *near* ; very rare and post-classical, as LIVY, SUETONIUS. **Propius** is found first in CAESAR as a preposition.

23. **Propter.** Of Place, *near*. Of Cause, *on account of* ; very common in early and classical Latin, but avoided by many authors, notably TACITUS. With substantive and participle it appears first in VARRO ; then is common in LIVY, and later.

24. **Secundum** [*i.e., following*]. Of Place, *along (lītus), close behind* ; very rare (C., *Fam.*, IV. 12, 1). Of Time, *immediately after* ; in early Latin and CICERO, common in LIVY, but never in CAESAR, SALLUST, TACITUS. Of Series, *next to* ; in PLAUTUS and CICERO. Of Reference, *according to* ; at all periods. **Secus** is ante-classical and rare.

25. **Supt̄.** Of Place, *above, beyond* ; so CICERO almost exclusively. Of Time, *beyond* ; very rare. Of Grade, *above*. Of Authority, *in charge of* ; VITRUVIUS and later.

26. **Trāns.** *On the other side, beyond, across* ; only in Local relations.

27. **Ultr̄.** Of Space and Measure, *on that side, beyond*. Of Time ; only in late Latin. The early form *tl̄s* is very rare and in formulæ, as, *Cis Tiberim et tl̄s Tiberim*. In late Latin *ultr̄* supplants *praeter* almost wholly.

28. **Usque, up to,** is found once in TERENCE, several times in CICERO, and occasionally later, with the Acc. of the name of a town. With other names of localities it appears first in LIVY.

29. **Versus, -ward.** As a preposition it first appears in the classical period and is found usually with names of Towns, and small Islands ; with other words it is regularly combined with the prepositions *ad* (not in CICERO) or *in*.

## II. Prepositions Construed with the Ablative.

417. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are *ā* (ab), *absque*, *cōram*, *cum*, *dē*, *ē* (ex), *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, *tenus*; rarely *fine*, *palam*, *procul*, *simul*.

1. *Ā* (ab, abs). Of Place Whence, *from*, especially of the point of departure; so in phrases, *ā* *tergō*, *ā* *capite*, etc. Of Cause, *from* (*Irō*); beginning with LIVY. Of Agent, *by*. Of Remote Origin, *from*. Of Time, *from*. Of Reference, *according to*, *after*. Of Specification, *in* (*doleō ab oculis*); often with compound verbs.

**NOTE.**—The form before vowels and *h* is always *ab*; before consonants usually *ā*, though *ab* is not uncommon before consonants other than the labials *b*, *f*, *p*, *v*, and is frequent before *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, and *t* (*j*); *abs* is found only before *tō* and in the combination *absque*. CICERO uses *abs tō* in his early writings, but prefers *ā tō* in his later ones.

2. *Absque* [*i.e.*, *off*]. *Without*. Peculiar to early Latin, where it is used in conditional sentences only. Occasionally in later Latin, as, *absque sententia* (QUINT., VII. 2, 44), for *praeter sententiam*.

3. *Cōram*. *Face to face with*, *in the presence of*; it is used with Persons only, and is found first in CICERO, and then in later writers, but in general it is rare until the time of TACITUS, who uses it very often in the *Annals* and always postpones.

4. *Cum*. *With*; of Accompaniment in the widest sense. With Abl. of Manner regularly when there is no attributive; often when there is one. Sometimes it is used of mutual action: *frāre cum*, *plead with* (PLAUTUS), etc.

5. *Dē*. Of Place, *down from*, and then *from*; especially with compounds of *dē* and *ex*. Of Source, *from*; with verbs of Receiving (actual and mental). Of Origin; but mainly in poetry and later prose. Of Object, *concerning*. Of Time; in phrases *dē nocte*, *dē diē* (*diem dē diē*, *day after day*). Of the Whole *from* which a part is taken. Of Reference, *according to* (*dē sententiā*). Of Material; poetical and late.

6. *Ē* (ex). Of Place, *out of*, *from*. Often in phraseological usages, as *ex parte*, *partly*; *ex asse*, and the like. With verbs of Receiving, *from*. Of Time, *from*; *ex tempore* is phraseological. Of Origin, *from*. Of Reference, *according to*. Of Manner; in many phrases, as *ex sequō*, *ex ūrdine*. *Ē* is used before consonants only, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

7. *Fine* (or *fini*). *Up to*; found in PLAUTUS and CATO, then not until very late Latin. With the Gen. it occurs in *b. Afr.* and in SALLUST, *Fr.*; then not until OVID and very late Latin.

8. *Palam*, in the sense of *cōram*, *in the presence of*, is found first in HORACE and LIVY, and is rare.

9. **Prae.** Of Place, *in front of*; with verbs of Motion only, in classical Latin. In early Latin in the phrase *prae manū*, *at hand*. Of the Preventive Cause, *for*; with negatives only, in and after the classical period; in early Latin, also in positive sentences. Of Comparison, *in comparison with*; occasionally at all periods.

10. **Prō.** Of Place, *before*; not in early Latin, but found first in the classical period, where it is confined to certain combinations, as *prō rēstris, castris, aede, vallō, etc.*, and means *before and on*. *In behalf of*; not cited for early Latin. *Instead of*; very common at all periods. *In proportion to*; at all periods. *Quam prō*; found first in LIVY.

11. **Procul,** *far from*, is poetical, and begins in prose with LIVY. In classical Latin prose always with *ab*.

12. **Simul,** in the sense of *cum*, belongs to poetry and TACITUS (*Ann.*, III. 64).

13. **Sine,** *without*, is opposed to *cum*.

14. **Tenus,** *to the extent of*. Of Space (actual and transferred), *as far as*. It is found occasionally with the Gen., but almost wholly with Pl., and perhaps but once in CICERO (*Arat.*, 83); otherwise it belongs to poetry, making its first appearance in prose in CICERO (*Dei.*, 13, 86) and LIVY. It occurs with the Acc. in late Latin. **Tenus** is always postponed.

### III. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

**418.** Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are *in, sub, subter, super*.

1. In (the forms *endo, indu*, are early and rare). (a) With Accusative: Of Place, *into, into the midst of*. Of Disposition and Direction, *towards*. Of Time, *into* (*multam noctem*), *for* (*dīem, multōs annōs, posterrum*). Of Purpose or Destination, *for*; mostly post-classical. Of Manner, *in, after*. Phraseologically with neuter adjectives : *in dēterioria, for the worse*; but mainly post-classical. With Distributives, *to, among*.

(b) With Ablative: Of Place, *in, on*. Of Time, *within*. Of Reference, *in the case of, in regard to, in the matter of*. Of Condition, *in (armis)*. In many phrases, especially with neuter adjectives, *in insertō, dubiō, integrō, ambiguō, etc.*

2. **Sub.** (a) With Accusative : Of Place Whither, *under*. Of Time Approaching, *about* (*noctem, vesperum*); just Past, *immediately after*. Of Condition, *under* (*sub potestātem redigī*).

(b) With Ablative : Of Place Where, *under*; also in phrases, *sub armis, etc.* Of Time When, *about*; rare, and first in CAESAR. Of Position, *under* (*rēge, iūdīcō, etc.*). Of Condition, *under* (*ad condicōne*); first in LIVY.

3. **Subter.** (a) With Accusative ; rare, and locally equal to *sub*.

(b) With the Ablative ; more rare and almost wholly poetical (CATULUS and VERGIL). Cf. C., *Tusc.*, v. 1, 4, which may be Acc. *Subtus* occurs only in *VITR.*, iv. 2, 5, and then with the Accusative.

4. **Super.** (a) With Accusative but once before the classical time : Of Place, *over*, *above*. Of Time, *during* ; found first in PLINY, *Epp.* Metaphorically of Degree, *beyond* (*super modum*) ; post-classical.

(b) With the Ablative : Of Space, *above*. Of Time, *during* (not until the Augustan poets). Metaphorically = *praeter* ; very rare : = *de*, *concerning* ; colloquial ; hence in PLAUTUS, CATO, CICERO's *Letters (ad Att.)*, SALLUST, HORACE, LIVY ; but uncommon.

## INFINITIVE.

## The Infinitive as a Substantive.

**419.** The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

NOTE.—The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb :

*Amare, to love ; valde amare, to love hugely : amari, to be loved : amavisse, to have loved ; amare aliquem, to love a man ; nocere aliqui, to hurt a man.*

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involution of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject ; but the subj. is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

**420.** The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

*Règem esse, to be king. Bonum esse, to be good. Compare quid stultius quam aliquem eò sibi placere quod ipse non fecit, SEN., E.M., 74, 17 ; what is more foolish than for a man to (that a man should) pride himself on what he has not done himself.*

So in the paradigm of the verb :

**Amatùrum esse, to be about to love.**

NOTE.—On the Nom. with the Inf. by Attraction, see 588.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

**421.** The Infinitive, as a substantive, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

NOTES.—1. Traces of the original Dat. (or Loc.) nature of the Infinitive are still apparent in many constructions, which are, however, mostly poetical :

(a) With verbs of Motion in early Latin and the later poets, when *ut*, *ad* with Gerundive or Sup. is to be expected.

*Abiit aedem visere Minervae*, Pl., *B.*, 900; *she went away to visit the temple of Minerva*. *Semper in Oceanum mittit mō quereret gemmās*, PROR., II. (III.) 16 (8), 17; *she is always sending me to the Ocean to look for (in quest of) pearls*.

(b) With verbs of Giving, Rendering, and the like, in early Latin and the poets, where the Acc. of the Gerundive is to be expected. Classical is the use of *bibere* only, in this way. (The old form *biber* points to the effacement of the final sense of this Inf.)

*Iovi bibere ministrare*, Cf. C., *Tusc.*, I. 26. *Quem virum aut hērba lyrā vel sārl tibī sūmē celebrare*, CLIV ? H., O., I. 12, 1. Different, of course, are cases like *dī tibi posse tuā tribuant dēfendere semper*, Ov., *Tr.*, III. 5, 21, where *posse dēfendere* is felt as *potestātem dēfendendi*.

(c) With many adjectives where the Sup. in *ā*, or some construction of Purpose, is to be expected.

In early Latin the adjectives are *paritus*, *ōmnisūtus*, *dēfessus*. But this usage is widely extended by the Augustan poets VERGIL and HORACE, and later.

It is confined principally, however, to adjectives of *capability*, *ability*, *necessity*, etc., and adjectives like *facilis* (with act. as well as pass. Inf., first in PROP.), *difficilis*, and the like: *Rōma capi facilis*, LUCAN, II. 656. Note the strange usage *dissentire manūstus*, Tac., *Ann.*, II. 57, 4, and occasionally elsewhere.

2. The Inf. may take an adj. attribute, but in classical prose this is limited to *ipsum*, *hōc ipsum*, and *tōtum hōc*:

*Vivere ipsum turpe est nōbīs*, *Living itself is a disgrace to us*. *Quibusdam tōtum hōc disploiet philosophari* (280, 1, a).

#### The Infinitive as a Subject.

422. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive.

*Incipere multō est quam inpetrare facilis*, Pl., *Poen.*, 974; *beginning is much easier (work) than winning*. *Miserum est dēturbari fortūnis omnibus*, C., *Quinct.*, 31, 95; *it is wretched to find one's self turned rudely out of all one's fortunes*. *Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī*, as, *there was disgrace in being beaten*; *bonum est legere* was to him another *bona est lēctiō* (see PRISCIAN, 408, 27).

2. The substantives used as predicates are not common in early Latin. *Lubidō est* is confined to PLAUTUS. *Stultitia est*, *ōmnīlūm est*, and *tempus est* are universal. CICERO introduces the not uncommon *mōs est*, and many others with *est*, as: *ōmnisūtūdō (-inis)*, *vītium*, *ītū*, *fīs*, *nefīs*, *facinus*, *fītūm*, *caput*, *rēs* (CAESAR), *opus*, *mūnūs*, *officium*, *onus*, *sapientia*, and a few others. Still more are found later. Many of these also take *ut*; so *officium* always in comedy (except TERR., *And.*, 381).

3. Neuter adjectives are used as predicates in great variety. Ciceronian are *certius* (*quam*), *cōnsentīneum*, *falsum*, *incrēdibile*, *integrum*, *glōriōsum*, *māius* (*quam*), *mirum*, *novum*, *optimum*, *rētum*, *singulāre*, *trītum*, *vērisimile*, *vērum*. Most of them, however, but once. Some of these also take *ut*, but not often in good prose.

4. In early Latin many impersonal verbs are used as predicates. Classical Latin retains most of them, but drops *condecer*, *dispudet*, *subolet*, and adds some, such as *paenitet*, *d̄decer*, *displacet*, *prōdeat*, *obeat*, *attinet*. Others come in later. Some, such as *opertet*, also take *ut* or the simple Subjv. Noteworthy is *est*, *it is possible*, found first in VARRO and LUCR., then not till Varr. and HOR., and never common.

5. Certain abstract phrases, whose meanings are akin to the words already mentioned, take the Inf. as a subject. So especially predicate Genitives, as *cōnsuetudinis* and *mōris*; or combinations like *quid negātīt*, *nihil negātīl est*; predicate Datives such as *cordi est*, *cūras est*, both unclassical; or phrases, as *operas pretium*, *in animō esse, in mentem venire*, of which the last two were introduced by CICERO.

#### The Infinitive as an Object.

**423. 1.** The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs help the Infinitive into existence.

**2.** Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.

*Emori cupīdī, TER., Heaut., 971; I want to die.* [Catō] *esse quam vidērī bonus mālībat*, S. C., 54, 5; *Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good.* *Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser*, Ov., Tr., v. 2, 78; *but I pray that I may be more safely wretched.* *Vincere scīs, Hannibal; victōriū tūti needis*, L., xxii. 51; *how to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.* *Qui morī didicīt, servīre dēdidicīt*, SEN., E.M., 26, 10; *he who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave.* *Maledictis dēterrōrē nō scribat parat*, TER., Ph., 3; *he is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse.* *Qui mentiri solet, pāterārē cōnusēvit*, C., Rosc. Com., 16, 46; *he who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.* *Vulnera quae fēctī dēbuit ipse pati*, Ov., Am., II. 3, 4; *the wounds he gave he should himself have suffered.* *Veneror laudāre praeſentem*, C., N.D., I. 21, 58; *I feel a delicacy about praising a man to his face.* *Rēligiōnum anūmū nōdīs exsolvēre pergō*, LUCK., I. 932; *I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds.* *Tuā quod nīl rēfert, percontārī dāmīs*, TER., Hec., 810; *cease to inquire what is not to your advantage.*

*So habeo, I have (it in my power).*

*Tantum habeo pollicērī mē tibi cūmuliōtē satisfactūrum*, C., Fam., I. 5A, 3; *so much I can promise, that I will give you abundant satisfaction.*

**NOTES.**—1. The original force of the Inf. is, in most of these constructions, hard to determine, and was certainly not felt by the Romans themselves. In many cases the Inf. seems to have been used because the governing word or phrase was felt to be more or less equivalent to a Verb of Creation.

2. The principal verba, construed thus with the Inf., are as follows:

*Will: velle, mālī, nōlī, capere, optāre* (rare, except in passive), *petere, pōstu-  
lēre, avēre, audēre, dēsiderāre* (first in Cic.), *praegestire, gestire, ādēre,*

metuere (ante-class.), verēri, timēre, formidāre (ante-class.), reformidāre, horrēre, horrēscere, horrārī and compounds, monēre and compounds, suūdāre (first in Cic.), persuādēre, iubēre, imperāre, praecipere, cogere, permittere (once in Cic., then later), conosēdere (first in Cic.), cūrāre (not in Cæs., Sall., Livy.), vetāre, recidāre (first in Cic.), mittere, omittēre, intermittere, cunctārī, cōsāre, morārī, dubitāre, gravārī, prohibēre, impide, dēterrāre.

*Power*: posse, quire, nequire, sustinēre (first in Cic.), valēre (first in Cic.), pollēre (first in Cic.), habēre (rare, except in Cic.), sc̄ire, needre.

*Duty*: dēbāre, necesse habēre.

*Habit*: assūtēcere, assūtēfacer (first in Cic.), cōnsuēscere, solēre.

*Inclination*: cōmārī (only with Inf.), studēre, contendēre, intendēre (Cæs.), labōrāre (always with neg. in Cic.), mōlīrī (rare), aggredī, ingredi, adorīrī, nītī (first in Cæs.), ūntī (ante-class. and post-class.), quaerāre (first in Cic.), temptāre (first in HIRTIUS).

*Receive*: cōgītāre, meditārī, memini (mostly poet.), parāre, statuere (first in Cic.), cōstituere (first in Tert.), dēcernēre (not class. in pass.), itēdīrēre (first in Cic.), dēstīnāre (first in Cæs.), certum est, dēliberātūm est, prōpositūm est (first in Cic.).

*Continuance*: stārē (first in Cic.), Instārē, perstārē (once in Cic., then late), persevērāre (first in Cic.), properāre (only word used in early Latin), fēstīnāre (first in Cic.), mātūrāre (first in Cic.).

*Beginning and End*: coepī, incipere (first in Cic.), exordīrī, pergere, dēsinere. Poets are free in using the Inf. after other verbs.

3. Notice that coepī, *I have begun*, and dēsinī, *I cease*, are used in Pf. pass. with passive Infinitives, in early Latin, CICERO, CÆSAR, always; later the construction varies, and TACITUS does not observe the rule.

Bellū Athēniānsēs undique premī sunt coeptī, NER., XIII. 3, 1; *the Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.* Veterēs ūrtītōnsēs legī sunt dēsītāe, C., Br., 32, 123; *the old speeches have ceased to be read.*

When the passives are really reflexives or neuter, the active forms may be used.

4. Verbs of Will and Desire take ut as well as the Infinitive. So regularly optō, *I choose*, in classical prose.

5. Verbs which denote Hope, Promise, and Threat are treated as verbs of Saying and Thinking (§30), but also occasionally as in English:

Sperant sē māximum frīctōm cses captīrē, C., Læd., sr. 79; *they hope that they will derive great advantage.* Subruptūrum palliam prōmisit tibi, PL., Asin., 930; *he promised to deal the mantle from you.*

6. Docēs, *I teach*, iubeō, *I bid*, vetō, *I forbid*, sinō, *I let*, take the Inf. as a Second Accusative (§30):

(Dionȳsius) nō collum tōnsūrī committeret tondēre filiis suis docuit, C., Tusc., v. 50, 58; *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (taught them shaving).* Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus, MART., II. 59 (376). Vitae summa brevis spēm nō vetat inchoāre longam, H., O., I. 4, 16; *life's brief sum forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.* Neq; sinīs Mēdōs equitāre inuitā, H., O., I. 2, 51; *nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.*

### The Infinitive as a Predicate.

424. The Infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula esse, *to be*, and the like.

Doctō homini et eruditō vivere est cōgītāre, C., Tusc., v. 38, 111; *to a learned and cultivated man to live is to think.*

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**425.** The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

N. *Legere difficile est, reading (to read) is hard to do.*

G. *Ars legendi, the art of reading.*

*Puer studiōsus est legendi, the boy is zealous of reading.*

D. *Puer operam dat legendō, the boy devotes himself to reading.*

Ac. *Puer cupid legere, the boy is desirous to read.*

*Puer propensus est ad legendum, the boy has a bent toward reading.*

AB. *Puer discit legendō, the boy learns by reading.*

NOTE.—Of course the Inf. may be quoted as an abstract notion, a form of the verb :  
*Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere,"* SEN., BEN., 5, 10 ; there is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."

**426.** As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

*Hominēs ad dēs nūllā rē propīs accēdunt, quam salūtem hominib⁹ dandō,* C., *Lig.*, 12, 38 ; *men draw nearer to the gods by nothing so much as by bringing deliverance to their fellow-men.*

NOTES.—1. The Gerund is the substantive of the Gerundive (251, n. 1). The most plausible theory connects the forms in -ndu- with those in -nt- (Pr. Part. active) as being verbal nouns originally without any distinction of voice. The signification of necessity comes mainly from the use as a predicate, i.e., through the characteristic idea. Thus, *he who is being loved*, implies *he who is of a character to be loved* (*qui amētur*), and then *he who should be loved*.

The Gerundive is passive : the Gerund, like other verbal nouns (963), is theoretically active or passive, according to the point of view. Practically, however, the passive signification of the Gerund is rare.

*Iugurtha ad imperandum* (= ut ei imperiātur, perhaps an old military formula) *Tisidium vocābatur, (f. S., Iug., 62, 8.*

2. Gerundive and Pr. Part. passive are often translated alike ; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

*Caesare interficiendō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātēm restituere cōnāti sunt; by the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Cassius endeavored to restore their country's freedom to her. Caesare interfectō, Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātēm nōn restituērunt; by murdering Caesar, Brutus and Cassius did not restore their country's freedom to her.*

**427. Gerundive for Gerund.**—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

G. *Placandi Dei, of appeasing God.*

D. *Placandō Deō, for appeasing God.*

AB. *Placandō Deō, by appeasing God.*

In model prose this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

*Ad plācandū Deōs, for appeasing the gods* (C., *Cat.*, III. 8, 20).

*In plācandis Dīs, in appeasing the gods.*

NOTES.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no difference (L., XXI. 5, 5 ; XXV. 40, 6 ; XXVIII. 37, 1 ; XXXI. 26, 6). The preference for the Gerundive is of a piece with the use of the Pt. Part. pass. in preference to an Abstract Substantive (380, n. 3).

2. The impersonal Gerundive is found with an Acc. obj. once in PLAUTUS (*agitandum vigiliās*, *Trin.*, 869), and occasionally elsewhere in early Latin (principally VARRO) ; very rarely in CICERO and for special reasons (*Cat. M.*, 2, 6) ; here and there later (not in CAESAR, HORACE, OVID, and, perhaps, LIVY).

*Aeternā quoniam poenās in morte timendumst, Lucr.*, I. 111 ; *since we must fear eternal punishments in death.*

3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are not attracted : *aliquid faciendi ratiō*, C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 35 ; *method of doing something*. *Cupiditās plura habendī*, *greed for having more*. But when the neuter adjective has become a substantive (204, n. 2), the Gerundive form may be used : *cupiditās vēri videndī*, C., *Fin.*, II. 14, 46 ; *the desire of seeing the truth*.

4. The Gerundive with personal construction can be formed only from Transitive Verba, like other passives (217). Hence the impersonal form must be used for all verbs that do not take the Acc., but with such verb+preposition are rarely found.

*Ad nōn pīrendūm senātūl*, L., XLII. 9 ; *for not obeying the senate*.

5. But the Gerundives from *tūtor*, *fūrōr*, *fūngōr*, *pōtōr*, *vēsoor* (407) have the personal construction, but usually only in the oblique cases (C., *Fin.*, I. 1, 3, is an exception), as a remnant of their original usage. The poets and later prose writers use still more forms in the same way, as *laetandūs*, *dolendūs*, *medendūs*, *paenitendūs*, etc. CICERO also shows single instances of *glōriāndūs*, *dīscendūs*, *respondendūs*.

6. The use of the Nom. of the Gerundive follows the ordinary rules of the Nominative.

#### Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

428. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement :

*Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est*, C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42 ; *philosophy is to be considered the art of living*. *Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causās*, JUV., VIII. 84; *and on account of life, to lose the reasons for living*. *Rau-  
caque garrilitās studiumque immīne loquendi*, OV., *M.*, V. 678; *and hoarse chattering, and a monstrous love of talking*. *Triste est nōmen ipsum ca-  
rendi*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 36, 87; *diemal is the mere word "carēre" (go without)*. *Nōn est plācandi spē mihi nūlla Dei*, OV., *Tr.*, V. 8, 22 ; *I am not without hope of appeasing God*. *Ignōrant cupidī maledicēndī plūs invidiam quam convicium posse*, QUINT., VI. 2, 16 ; *those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate*. (Titus) *equitandi peritissimus fuit*, SUET., *Tit.*, 3 ; *Titus was exceedingly skilful in riding*. *Neuter sui prōtegēndī corporis memor (erat)*, L., II. 6, 9 ; *neither*

*thought of shielding his own body. Qui hic mōs obsidendi vias et virōs alienos appellandi? L., xxxiv. 2, 9; what sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands? Summa ètendit occasiō mihi nunc sens, Ter., Ph., 885; I have a tip-top chance to fool the old chaps now.*

REMARKS.—1. As *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from *meum, my being, tuum, thy being, suum, one's being, etc.*, the Gerundive is put in the same form: *cōservandi sui, of preserving themselves; vestri adhortandi, of exhorting you*; and no regard is had to number or gender.

*Cōpia placandi sit modo parva tui, Ov., Her., 20, 74; let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).*

2. The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with *causā*, less often with *gratia*, and rarely with (antiquated) *ergō, on account of*, to express Design: *Dissimulandi causā in sēnatum vmit, S., C., 31, 52; he came into the senate for the purpose of dissimulation.*

The Gen. alone in this final sense is found once in TERENCE, several times in SALLUST, occasionally later, especially in TACITUS.

*(Lepidus arma) cepit libertatis subvertendae, S., Phil. Fr., 10; Lepidus took up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.*

More commonly *ad*, rarely *ob*. See 432.

*Eesse* with this Gen. may be translated by *serve to*; this is occasional in CICERO; see 366, 429, 1.

*Omnia discrimina taliis concordiae minuendae [sunt], L., xxxiv. 54, 5; all such distinctions are matters of (belong to) the diminishing of concord (serve to diminish concord). Compare CAES., B.G., v. 8, 6: [nāvēs] quās sui quisque commodi fœcerat, ships which each one had (had) made (as a matter) of personal convenience.*

NOTES.—1. In early Latin, in CICERO (early works, *Philippics* and philosophical writings), then in later authors, we find occasionally a Gen. Sing. of the Gerund, followed by a substantive in the Plural. Here it is better to conceive the second Gen. as objectively dependent upon the Gerund form.

*Agitur utrum Antōniō facultās dētūr agrōrum suis latrōnibus condōnandi, C., Ph., v. 3, 6; the question is whether Antony shall receive the power of giving away (of) lands to his pet highwaymen.*

2. *Fās est, nefīs est, iūs est, fātum est, cōpia est, ratiō est, cōnsilium est, cōsilium capere, cōnsilium infre*, and a few others, have often the Inf. where the Gerund might be expected. Sometimes there is a difference in meaning; thus *tempus*, with Gerund, *the proper time (season)*, with Inf., *high time*.

The poets and later prose writers extend this usage of the Infinitive.

3. Another peculiarity of the poets is the construction of the adj. or subst. like the cognate verb with the Inf., instead of with the Gen. of the Gerund. (*At*) *sēcūra quīs et nescia fallere (= quae nesciat fallere) vita, V., G., II. 467; quiet without a care, and a life that knoweth not how to disappoint (ignorant of disappointment).*

Later prose is more careful in this matter.

4. The Gen. of Gerund, depending upon a verb, is rare and Tacitean (*Ann.*, II. 43). TACITUS also uses the appositional Gerund with a substantival neuter (*Ann.*, XIII. 26).

5. Some substantives, like *auctor*, *dux*, may have a Dat. instead of a Gen.; *Liv.*, i. 23: *m̄s Albāni gerendō bellō ducem creāv̄re.*

#### Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**429.** The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words that denote Fitness and Function.

1. The usage is rare in classical Latin, and begins with a few verbs and phrases: *esse* (= *parem esse*), *to be equal to*; *praescere* and *praeficere*, *to be (put) in charge of*; *studēre* and *operam addere*, *labōrem impertire*, *to give one's attention to*; then it is used with a few substantives and adjectives to give the object *for which*, and with names of Boards.

*Solvendō cūlītēs nō erant*, Cf. C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 2; *the communities were not equal to (ready for) payment.* (*were not solvent*). [Sapiēns] *vīrēs suās nōvit*, scit s̄ ēsse oneri ferendō, SEN., *E.M.*, 71, 26; *the wise man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden.*

*So comitia decemviris creandis* (C., *Leg. Agr.*, 2, 8); *triumvir colōnīs dīducendis* (S., *Iug.*, 42); *reliqua tempora dāmetendis frūctibus accomodata sunt*, C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 70.

2. Classical Latin requires *ad* with the Acc., but from *Livy* on the use of this Dat. spreads, and it is found regularly after words which imply Capacity and Adaptation. It is found also technically with verbs of Decreeing and Appointing, to give the Purpose.

*Aqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendō*, Cf. PLIN., *N.H.*, XXXI. 32, 59; *alkaline water is good for drinking (to drink).* *Lignum s̄ridūm mīsteria est idōnea tīciendis ignib⁹s*, Cf. SEN., *N.Q.*, II. 22, 1; *dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks).* *Referundas ego habeo lingua nātam grātiae*, PL., *Pers.*, 428; *I have a tongue that's born for showing thankfulness.*

NOTES.—1. In early Latin the use of this Dat. is very restricted, it being found principally after *studēre*; *operam dare*, or *stūdere* (both revived by *Livy*); *finem (or modum) facere*; and a few adjectival forms. Of the latter, CICERO uses only *ac-commodat⁹s*, CAESAR only *p̄r̄*.

2. Rare and unclassical is the Acc. in dependence upon a Dat. of the Gerund.

*Epidicūm operam quaserendō dabō*, PL., *Ep.*, 603.

#### Accusative of the Gerundive.

**430.** The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object to be Effected, after such verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, Letting, Contracting, and Undertaking. (Factitive Predicate.)

*Dixit homini id aurum servandum dedit*, PL., *B.*, 338; *he gave that*

*gold to a rich man to keep.* Conōn mūrōs reficiendō cūrat, NEP., IX. 4, 5; *Conon has the walls rebuilt.* Patriam diripiēdam reliquimus, C., Fam., XVI. 12, 1; *we have left our country to be plundered.* [Carvilius] aedem faciēdam locāvit, L., X. 46, 14; *Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple.*

Of course, the passive form has the Nominative :

Filius Philipi Dēmōtrius ad patrem rediēndus lēgit̄is datus est, L., XXXVI. 35, 18; *the son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.*

NOTES.—1. Early Latin shows with this construction dare, condūcere, locāre, rogāre, petere, habēre, prop̄p̄fāre. Classical Latin gives up rogāre, petere, prop̄p̄fāre, but adds others, as trādere, obicere, concēdere, committere, cūrāre, relinquerē, pr̄p̄p̄m̄ere. Livy introduces suscipere. The use of ad in place of the simple Acc. is not common.

[Caesar] oppidum ad diripiēdum milītibus concescit, CAES., B.C., III. 80, 6. But ad is necessary in nāmī s̄ ad docēndum dabat, C., Br., 89, 306; *he would yield to no one for teaching, i.e., would accept no one as a pupil.*

2. Habeō dicēndum and the like for habeō dicere, or, habeō quod dicam, belongs to later Latin (TAC., Diđ., 37; ANN. IV. 40, etc.).

#### Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

431. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

Unus homō nōb̄is cunctandō restituit rem, ENNIUS (C., Cat. M., 4, 10); *one man by lingering raised our cause again.* Hominis mēns discēndō alit̄ur et ōgitandō, C., Off., I. 30, 105; *the human mind is nourished by learning and thinking.* Planum mēs nōmīne recitandō dederunt, Cf. C., Att., IV. 1, 6; *they clapped when my name was read.* Exercēndō cōttidiō militē hostēm opperisbātur, L., XXXIII. 3, 5; *drilling the soldiers daily he waited for the enemy.*

NOTES.—1. The Abl. with adjectives is post-Ciceronian : digna stirps suscipiēndō (instead of quae suscipere) patris imperiō, TAC., Ann., XIII. 14. So too with verbs : continuandō abstitit magistrū, L., IX. 34, 2.

2. The Abl. after a comparative is cited only from C., Off., I. 15, 47.

3. In post-Augustan Latin, and occasionally earlier, we find the Abl. of the Gerund paralleled by the Pr. participle : Boēchus, seu reputandō (= reputāns) . . . seu admonitus, etc., S., Jug., 103, 2.

#### Prepositions with the Gerund and Gerundive.

432. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive follows the preposition ad, seldom ante, circā, in, inter, ob, and propter. See 427.

Nūlla rē tantum ad dicēndum p̄ficit quantum scriptiō, C., Br. 24, 92;

*nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing.* Atticus philosophorum praeceptis ad vitam agendam non ad ostentationem fitibatur, *Cf.* NEP., xxv. 17, 8; *Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display.* Inter spoliandum corpus hostis expiravit, *Cf.* L., II. 20, 9; *while in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.*

**REMARK.**—*Ad* is very common; *noteworthy* is its use with verbs of Hindering (*palus Römnō ad insequendum tarditat*, CAES., B.G., VII. 26, 2); with substantives to give the End (*for*); with adjectives of Capacity and Adaptation (*aptus, facilius, etc.*). See 429, 2.

**NOTES.**—1. *Ante* is very rare (L., *Præf.*, 6; V., G., III. 206). *Circa* and *ergo* are post-Augustan and very rare. *In* gives the End For Which, and is classical but not common. *Inter* is temporal, *during, while*, and is found rarely in early, more often in later, but not in classical prose. *Ob* is used first by CICERO (not by CAESAR), and is rare. *Propter* occurs first in VALERIUS MAXIMUS; *super* first in TACITUS.

2. On the Infinitive after a Preposition, see 426.

**433.** The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, often *in*, but seldom *prō*. Post-classic and rare are *cum* and *super*.

*Prohibenda maximē est ira in puniendā, C., Off., I. 25, 89; especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing.* [Brutus] in liberandā patriā (= dum liberat) est interfectus, C., Cat. M., 20, 75; *Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.* *Philosophi in iis libris ipsi quōs scribunt dē contemnendā gloriā sua nōmina inscribunt, C., Tusc., I. 15, 84 (385, n. 1).* *Ex discedendō capiunt voluptātem, Cf. C., Fin., V. 18, 48; they receive pleasure from learning.*

**NOTES.**—1. *In* with Abl. is sometimes almost equivalent to a Pr. participle: *In circumeundō exercitū animadvertisit, b. Afr., 8a.*

2. *Sine* is used once in VARRO, L.L., 6, 75, and in DONATUS (Ter., And., 391).

3. Even when the word and not the action is meant, the Gerund is the rule: *Discrepat & timendō eūfidere, C., Tusc., III. 7, 14;* the Inf. in VARRO, L.L., 6, 50.

## SUPINE.

**434.** The Supine is a verbal substantive, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

### The Accusative Supine.

**435.** The Accusative Supine (Supine in -um) is used chiefly after verbs of Motion, to express Design.

*Galliae legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt, CAES., B.G., I. 30, 1; the commissioners of Gaul came to congratulate Caesar. Spectatum*

veniunt; veniunt spectentur ut ipse, Ov., A.A., i. 99; *they come to see the show; they come to be themselves a show.* (Galli gallinācē) cum sole eunt cubitum, PLIN., N.H., x. 24, 46; *cocks go to roost at sunset.* Stultitia est vēnatum dūcere invitās canēs, PL., Sl., 139; *'tis foolishness to take unwilling dogs a-hunting.*

NOTES.—1. *Ire* and *venire* are the most common verbs with the Supine, and they form many phraseological usages, as : *Ire coctum, cubitum, dormitum, pīstum, supplicatūm, sessum, salitkūm, etc.* Similarly *dare* is found in phrases with *nūptum, vēnum, peissum.*

2. The Supine is very common in early Latin, less so in CICERO, comparatively rare in CAESAR, frequent again in SALLUST and LIVY. Later Latin, and especially the poets, show but few examples, as the final Inf. takes its place.

3. The Acc. Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common : (Hannibal) patrīam dēfensum (more usual, ad dēfendendam patrīam) revo-catus (est), NER., xxiii. 6, 1; *Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.*

4. The Fut. Inf. passive is actually made up of the passive Inf. of *ire*, *to go*, *irī* (*that a movement is made*, from *Itur*; 208, s), and the Supine :

*Rūmor venit datum irī gladiatōrēs*, TERR., Hec., 39; *the rumor comes that gladiators (gladiatorial shows) are going to be given.*

The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nom. (528).

*Reus damnatūm irī vidēbatur*, QUINT., ix. 2, 88; *the accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*

#### The Ablative Supine.

436. The Ablative Supine (Supine in *-ū*) is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which (397). It never takes an object.

*Mirabile dictū, wonderful (in the telling) to tell, visū, to behold.*

*Id dictū quam rē facilius est*, L., XXXI. 38, 4; *that is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).*

NOTES.—1. CICERO and LIVY are the most extensive users of this Supine; CAESAR has but two forms: *factū* and *nātū*; SALLUST but three; CICERO uses twenty-four. In early Latin and in the poets the usage is uncommon; in later Latin it grows. Altogether there are over one hundred Supines, but only about twenty-five Supines occur in Abl. alone; the most common are *dictū*, *to tell*, *factū*, *to do*, *audītū*, *to hear*, *visū*, *to see*, *memoratū*, *relatū*, *trāctatū*; then, less often, *cōgnitū*, *to know*, *inventū*, *intellēctū*, *sordū*, *adspēctū*.

2. The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, Right or Wrong (*fas* and *nefas*). These adjectives are commonly used with Dative, and a plausible theory views the Supine in *ū* as an original Dative (*ui*).

3. *Ad*, with the Gerundive, is often used instead: *Cibus facillimus ad concoquendū*, C., Fin., II. 20, 64; *food (that is) very easy to digest.*

The Infinitive, *facilis concoquī*, is poetical. Common is *facile concoquītur*.

Other equivalents are active Infin., a verbal substantive, a Pf. Part. pass. (with *opus*), or a relative clause (with *dignus*).

4. The use of the Abl. Supine with verbe is very rare.

(Vllicus) prīmus cubitū surgat, postrēmū cubitum eat, CATO, Agr., 5, 5; *the steward must be the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed.* *Obeōnūtū redē*, PL. Men., 277; *I come back from marketing (imitated by STATIUS).*

## PARTICIPLE.

**437.** The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then generally retains something of its predicative nature.

*Nihil est magnum somnianti*, C., *Div.*, II. 68, 141; *nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming)*. *Règia, cræde mihi, res est succurrere lippis*, Ov., *Pont.*, II. 9, 11; *it is a kingly thing, believe me, (to run to catch those who have slipped,) to succor the fallen*.

REMARK.—The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a substantive, is generally in the adverbial form : *ræcte facta, right actions*; *facte dictum, a witty remark*.

NOTES.—1. This use as a substantive is rare in classical prose, but more common in the poets and in post-classical prose. In the Pr. Part., principally *aspiens*, *adulsoens*, *amans*; in the Pf. more often, but usually in the Plural; *docti, the learned*, *victi, the conquered*. The first example of Fut. Part. used as substantives are *nuntiaturi* (*Curt.*, VII. 4, 33), *peccatibus* (*Tac.*, *Agr.*, 19).

2. The use of an attributive or predicative Pf. Part. with a substantive is a growth in Latin. Early Latin shows very few cases, and those mostly with *opus* and *fusus*. *Cato* has *post dimissum bellum*, and this innovation is extended by *Varr.*, with *propter*. *Cicero* is cautious, employing the prepositions *ante*, *dè*, *in*, *post*, *praeter*, but *Sallust* goes much farther, as the strange sentence *inter haec parata atque dñepta* (664, n. s.) indicates. *Livy* and *Tacitus* are, however, characterized by these prepositional uses more than any other authors. The use of a Part. in the Nom. in this way is found first in *Livy*.

**438.** The Participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic, or descriptive.

(*Epaminondas*) *erat temporibus sapienter ita*, *Nep.*, xv. 3, 1; *Epaminondas was a man who made (to make) wise use of opportunities* (= *qui iteratur*). *Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid et molliens*, Cf. C., *Cat.M.*, 8, 26; *old age is busy, and always doing something and working*.

REMARK.—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the participle or adjective with the relative and Subjunctive:

*Res parva dicti, sed quae studis in magnum certamen excaserit*, L. XXXIV. 1; *a small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest*. *Munera non ad deliciis multobris quae sita nec quibus nova nupta comittitur*, *Tac.*, *Germ.*, 18.

NOTE.—The Fut. Part. active is rarely used adjectively in classical Latin except the forms *futurus*, *venturus*. The predicate use after verbs of Motion to express Purpose is found first in *Cicero* (*Ferr.*, I. 21, 56), though very rarely, but becomes increasingly common from *Livy's* time. *Livy* is the first to use the Fut. Part. as an adjective clause, a usage which also becomes common later.

(*Marobodius*) *misit legatos ad Tiberium dicitur auxilia*, *Tac.*, *Ann.*, II. 46; *Marobod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements. Servilius adest*

**d**ē tē sententiam lētūrus (perhaps due to est), C., *Verr.*, i. 21, 56. **R**em ausus plūs famae habitūram (*that was likely to have*) quam fidel, L., ii. 10, 11. (*Dictātor*) ad hostem dūcit, nūllō looð, nisi quantum necessitās obgeret, fortūnae sē com-misirūs (*with the intention of submitting*), L., xxii. 12, 2.

## ADVERB.

439. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.  
 2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations.

**M**ale vivit, *he lives ill*; bene est, *it is well*; fērē om̄nēs, *almost all*; nimis saepe, *too often*; admodum adulēscens, *a mere youth*; lētūs rāx (V., A., i. 21), *wide-ruling*; bis cōnsul, *twice consul*; duo simul bella, *two simultaneous wars*.

NOTES.—1. The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

2. With other adverbs and with adjectives, adverbs of *degree* only are allowable, to which must be reckoned **bene**, **sgregat**, and (later) **insigniter**. Poetical are such expressions as **turpiter āter**, **splendidū mendax** (H., *A.P.*, 3; O., iii. 11, 35). **Male** as a negative is found with **gānus** only in CICERO (*Att.*, ix. 15, 5); other combinations are poetical, or post-classical.

3. The translation for *very* varies at different periods; **multum** is common in PLAUTUS and in HORACE's *Satires* and *Epiſt̄les*, rare elsewhere; **valdō** is introduced by CICERO, but did not survive him, to any extent. **gānus** is also frequent in CICERO, especially in the *Letters ad Atticum*. CORNIFICIUS affected **vehementer**, and so do colloquial authors, as VITRUVIUS; **fortiter** comes in later; **bene** is occasional in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, more common in CICERO; **oppidō** is characteristic of early Latin, and LIVY and the Archaisms; **admodum** is Ciceronian, but **adfatim** comes later and is rare. **Abundō** is rare before the time of SALLUST. **Nimium** (**nimis**) belongs to early Latin, as do **impēnē** and **impeditō**. **Satis** is common in the classical period, and also **nimir**, but mainly with negatives.

4. The Adverb as an attribute of substantives is rare. CICERO shows **tum**, **saepe**, **quasi**, **tamquam**. LIVY uses more.

440. *Position of the Adverb.*—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

**I**nfūstō facit, *he acts unjustly*. **A**dmodum pulcher, *handsome to a degree, very handsome*. **V**aldō diligenter, *very carefully*.

REMARK.—Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the adverb, or in poetry:

[Iram] **bene** Ennius initium dixit insāniae, C., *Tusc.*, iv. 23, 52; **well** did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness. **V**ixit dum vixit **bene** TER., *Hec.*, 461; *he lived while he lived (and lived) well*.

One class of Adverbs demands special notice—the Negatives.

### Negative Adverbs.

**441.** There are two original negatives in Latin, *nē* and *haud* (*haut*, *han*). From *nē* is derived *nōn* [*nē-oīnom* (*fūnum*), *no-whit, not*]. *Nē* is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in *nē—quidem*. *Nōn* is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive; *haud* negatives the single word, and is used mainly with adjectives and adverbs.

**442.** *Nōn* (*the absolute not*) is the regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive.

*Quem amat, amat ; quem nōn amat, nōn amat, PETR., 37 ; whom she likes, she likes ; whom she does not like, she does not like.*

*Nun ausim, I should not venture.*

**REMARKS.—1.** *Nōn*, as the emphatic, specific negative, may negative anything. (See 270, n. 1.)

**2.** *Nōn* is the rule in antitheses : *Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita, MART., VI. 70, 15 ; not living, but being well, is life.*

**NOTES.—1.** *Nōn* in combination with adjectives and adverbs, and rarely with substantives and verba, takes the place of negative *in-* or *ne-*. *Nōn arbitrābatur quod efficeret aliquid posse esse nōn corpus* (*ἀνέμεσεν*), C., Ac., I. xi, 30; *Cat. M.*, 14, 47.

**2.** Other negative expressions are *neutquam*, *by no means*; *nihil, nothing* ("Adam, with such counsel *nothing swayed*"). On *nullus*, see 817, 2, n. 2.

**3.** *Neō = nōn* is found in early Latin, here and there in *Verg.*, *Livy*, and *Tacitus*. In classical Latin it is retained in a few compounds, as : *necopīnāns*, *negōtium*, and in legal phraseology.

**443.** *Haud* is the negative of the single word, and in model prose is not common, being used chiefly with adjectives and adverbs : *haud quisquam, not any*; *haud māgnus, not great*; *haud male, not badly*.

**NOTES.—1.** *Hau* is found only before consonants, and belongs to early Latin and *Vernier*. *Haut* (early) and *haud* are found indiscriminately before vowels.

**2.** *Haud* is very rarely or never found in Conditional, Concessive, Interrogative, Relative, and Infinitive sentences.

**3.** *Cæsar* uses *haud* but once, and then in the phrase *haud scđ an* (457, 2). *Cicero* says also *haud dubitō*, *haud ignōrō*, *haud errāverō*, and a few others; and combines it also with adjectives and adverbs, but not when they are compounded with negative particles, i.e., he does not say *haud difficilis*, and the like.

**4.** *Haud* with verba is very common in early Latin, and then again in *Livy* and *Tacitus*. In antitheses it is not uncommon in comedy, but usually in the second member : *inceptiōt̄ fāmentium haud amantium, Ter., And. 2:8 ; the undertaking is one of lunatics, not lovers.*

**5.** A strengthened expression is *haud quāquam*.

**444.** 1. **Nō** is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

**Tū nō cōde malis,** V., A., vi. 95; *yield not thou to misfortunes.* **Nō** trānsieris Hibērum, L., xxi. 44, 6; *do not cross the Ebro.* **Nō vivam,** si scī, C., Att., iv. 16, 8; *may I cease to live (strike me dead), if I know.*

NOTE.—1. On the negative with the Imperative, see 270, n.

2. **Nō** as a general negative particle, = **nōm**, is found very rarely in early Latin, mostly with forms of *velle* (**nō parciunt**, Pl., *Most.*, 124, is disputed). Classical Latin retains this only in **nō—quidem**, in compound **nōquisquam**, and in a shortened form in **nēfīs**, **negō**, **neque**, etc.

2. **Nō** is continued by **nēve** or **neu**. See 260.

**Nō illam vāndās neu mō perdās hominem amantem,** Pl., *Ps.*, 322; *don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.*

**445. Subdivision of the Negative.**—A general negative may be subdivided by **neque—neque**, as well as by **aut—aut**, or strengthened by **nō—quidem, not even.**

**Nihil umquam neque insolēns neque glōriōsum ex ōre [Timoleontis] prō-cessit,** N.E.P., xx. 4, 2; *nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.* **Cōsciōrum nēmō aut latuit aut fūgit,** L., xxiv. 5, 14; *of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.* **Numquam [Scipiōnē]** **nō minimā quidem rō offendī,** C., *Lael.*, 27, 103; *I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.*

(“I will give no thousand crowns neither.”—SHAKESPEARE.)

NOTE.—In the same way **negō**, *I say no*, is continued by **neque—neque** (**nec—nec**): **Negant nec virtūtēs nec vitia crēscere,** C., *Mit.*, iii. 15, 48; *they deny that either virtues or vices increase (that there are any degrees in).*

**446. Negative Combinations.**—In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one*; *nothing ever*, or, *never anything*; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: **nēmō umquam, no one ever.**

**Verrēs nihil umquam fecit sine aliquō quaestū,** C., *Verr.*, v. 5, 11; *Verrēs never did anything without some profit or other.*

NOTES.—1. *No one yet* is **nōndum quisquam**; *no more, no longer*, is **iam nōn**.

2. The resolution of a negative **nōn nullus** for **nullus**, **nōn umquam** for **numquam**, **nōn scī** for **nescīd**, is poetical, except for purposes of emphasis, or when the first part of the resolved negative is combined with a coördinating conjunction (480): **Nōn illa tibi facta est iniuria,** Cf. C., *Dīv. in Cae.*, 18, 60.

3. **Nēmō** often equals **nō quis**: **Nēmō dē nōbis unus excellat,** C., *Tusc.*, v. 36, 105.

**447. Negō** (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of dico nōn, *I say—not*.

Assem sēs datūrum negat, C., *Quinct.*, 5, 19; *he says that he will not give a copper.* Vel si vel negā, ACCIUS, 125 (R.); *say yes or say no!*

REMARK.—The positive (*sī*, *I say*) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause, as C., *Fin.*; I. 18, 61. The same thing happens with the other negatives, as volō from nōlō, iubēō from vētō, scīō from nescīō, quēō from nequēō, quisquam from nāmō, ut from nā.

#### POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

**448.** The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words.

Potes nōn reverti, SEN., *E.M.*, 49, 10; *possibly you may not return.* (Nōn potes reverti, *you cannot possibly return.*) Saepe viri fallunt; tenerae nām saepe puellae, OV., *A.A.*, III. 31; *often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often.* Nōn omnis aetatis, LYDE, lūdō convenit, PL., *B.*, 129; *not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.* Nōn ego ventōsae plētis suffragia vēnor, H., *Ep.*, I. 19, 87; *I do not hunt the voices of the windy commons, no, not I.*

NOTES.—1. As the Copula esse, *to be*, is, strictly speaking, a predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: *felix nōn erat, he wasn't happy; nōn felix erat, he was NOT happy, he was FAR from happy.*

2. Nō—quidem straddles the emphatic word or emphatic group (445); but very rarely does the group consist of more than two words.

3. A negative with an Inf. is often transferred to the governing verb: nōn putant lūgendum (esse) viri, C., *Tusc.*, III. 28, 70; on negō, see 447.

**449.** Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative, but see 445:

Nōn negō, *I do not deny (I admit).*

REMARKS.—1. Nō possum nōn, *I cannot but (I must):*

Qui mortem in malis pōnit nōn potest eam nō timēre, C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 29; *he who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive; this is a common form of the figure Litotēa, *understatement* (700).

Nōn indectus, *highly educated; nōn sum nescius, I am well aware.*

Nōn indectus pulvere sordidi, H., *O.*, II. 1, 22; *swart (soiled) with (no dis)honorable dust.* Nōn ignāra mali miseris succurrere disō, V., *A.*, I. 630; *not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.*

3. It follows from R. 2 that *nec nōn* is not simply equivalent to *et, and*; *nec* belongs to the sentence, *nōn* to the particular word:

*Nec hōc [Zēnō] nōn vīdit, C., Fin., iv. 22, 60; nor did Zeno fail to see this.* At *neque nōn (dī) diligunt nōn, C., Div., II. 49, 102; but neither (is it true that) the gods do not love us, etc.*

In the classical Latin this form of connection is used to connect clauses but not single words, and the words are regularly separated. *VĀRBO*, the poets, and later prose use *nēcnōn* like *et*, and connect with it also single ideas.

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations;

*Indefinite Affirmative.*

<i>nōnnihil,</i>	<i>somewhat;</i>	<i>nihil nōn,</i>	<i>everything;</i>
<i>nōnnēmō,</i>	<i>some one, some;</i>	<i>nēmō nōn,</i>	<i>everybody;</i>
<i>nōnnūlli,</i>	<i>some people;</i>	<i>nūlli nōn,</i>	<i>all;</i>
<i>nōnnumquam,</i>	<i>sometimes;</i>	<i>numquam nōn,</i>	<i>always;</i>
<i>nōnnūsqām,</i>	<i>somewhere;</i>	<i>nūsqām nōn,</i>	<i>everywhere.</i>

*General Affirmative.*

*In ipāc cūriā nōnnēmō hostis est, C., Mur., 39, 84; in the senate-house itself there are enemies (nēmō nōn hostis est, everybody is an enemy).* *Nōn est plōcoandi spēs mihi nūlla Del, Ov., Tr., v. 8, 22 (428); I have some hope of appearing God (nūlla spēs nōn est, I have every hope).* *Nēmō nōn didicisse māvult quam discere, QUINT., III. 1, 6; everybody prefers having learned to learning.*

### INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

#### Interrogative Sentences.

450. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

451. A question may relate :

(a) To the existence or the non-existence of the Predicate : Predicate Question.

*Vivitne pater? Is my father alive?*

(b) To some undetermined essential part of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier : Nominal Question.

*Quis est? Who is it? Quid aīs? What do you say? Qui hic mōs? What sort of way is this? Cūr nōn discēdis? Why do you not depart? For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.*

REMARKS.—1. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (462).

2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opin-

ion on the part of the speaker: *Quid interest inter peritum et mendacem?* C., *Rosc. Com.*, 16, 46; *what is the difference between a perjured man and a liar?* All questions of this kind are called *Rhetorical*.

**452.** 1. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple); *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

**NOTE.**—Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

2. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I?* (direct); *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

#### DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

**453.** Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

*In felix est Fabrius quod rūs suum fodit?* SEN., *Dial.*, 1, 3, 6; *Fabrius is unhappy because he digs his own field?* (Impossible!) *Haus, inquit, lingua vis meas praedividere?* PHAEDR., 1, 23, 5; *Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do?* (You shall not.) *Tuom parasitū nōn nōvisti?* PL., *Men.*, 505; *you don't know your own parasite?* (Strange!) *Hunc tū vitæ splendōrem maculis adspergis istis?* C., *Planc.*, 12, 30; *you bespatter this splendid life with such blots as those?*

**NOTES.**—1. Questions of this kind are characteristic of the Comic Poets. In Cicero they are found especially in expressions of doubt, with *posse*, and with an emphatic personal pronoun.

2. Such a question may have the force of a command. So in the phrase *etiam tū tacis?* *won't you keep quiet?* common in comedy (PL., *Trin.*, 524).

3. Noteworthy is the occasional usage of the question in place of a condition. *Amat?* *sapit*, PL., *Am.*, 995; *is he in love? is he sensible.* *Tristis es?* *indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris*, Ov., *Tr.*, IV, 3, 33 (542). See 528, 4.

4. When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or *-ne*. Repeated questioning is passionate.

5. On *ut* in the exclamatory question, see 558.

**454. Interrogative Particles.**—*-Ne* (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker.

*Omnisne pecūnia dissoluta est?* C., *Verr.*, III, 77, 180; *is ALL the money paid out?* (*Estne omnis pecūnia dissoluta?* *is all the money paid out?*)

**REMARKS.**—I. As the emphatic word usually begins the sentence,

so -ne is usually appended to the first word in the sentence. But exceptions are not uncommon.

2. -Ne is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and -ne is not always strictly impartial.

NOTE.—1. -Ne sometimes cuts off a preceding -s (in which case it may shorten a preceding long vowel), and often drops its own e. *Vides? Seest? Tunc? You?* *Satis? For certain?* Also *safin, ain, vfin, itan, etc.* This occurs especially in early Latin.

2. This -ne is not to be confounded with the asseverative -ne, which is found occasionally in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, CATULLUS, HORACE (*5 seru studiorum, quine putatis, etc.*, H., S., I. 10, 21, a much discussed passage), and later appended to personal, demonstrative, and relative pronouns.

3. In poetry -ne is sometimes appended to interrogative words, to heighten the effect: *utrumne* (H., S., II. 3, 251), *quõne* (H., S., II. 3, 296).

4. -Ne is often added to personal pronouns in indignant questions: *tunc infâne quoquam putet esse?* C., A.C., II. 40, 125.

5. In early Latin -ne seems to be used sometimes with a force similar to that later exercised by *nõnne*; but in most of the examples the expectation of an affirmative answer seems to be due rather to the context than to ne; see, however, n. 2.

#### 455. Nõnne expects the answer Yes.

*Nõnne meministi?* C., *Fin.*, II. 3, 10; *do you not remember?* *Nõnne is generosissimus qui optimus?* QUINT., V. 11, 4; *is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?*

So the other negatives with -ne: *nämone, nihilne*, and the like.

NOTE.—*Nõnne* is denied for PLAUTUS, but wrongly, though it occurs but rarely, and regularly before a vowel. It is also rare in TERENCE. In classical Latin it is frequent, but is never found in CATULLUS, TIBULLUS, and SENeca RHETOR.

#### 456. Num expects the answer No.

*Num quis est hic alias praeter me atque tu?* *Nam est,* PL., Tr., 69; *is anybody here besides you and me?* *No.* *Num tibi cum fauore urit sitis, aurea quaeris pôcula?* H., S., I. 2, 114; *when thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups?* [No.]

NOTE.—*Numne* is found very rarely, perhaps only in C., *N.D.*, I. 31, 88, and *Lad.*, II. 36. *Numnam* belongs to early Latin. In many cases in early Latin, num seems to introduce a simple question for information, without expecting a negative answer.

#### 457. i. An (or) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or, rather, involved. The second alternative with an serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (or, then) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

*Nõn manum abstinës?* *An tibi iam mavis cerebrum dispergam hic?* TEE., *Ad.*, 781; *are you not going to keep your hands off?* *Or would*

*you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now ? (Vir custodit absens, my husband keeps guard, though absent. Is it not so ?) An nescis longis regibus esse manus ? Ov., Her., 16, 166 ; or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).*

NOTES.—1. This usage is found in early Latin, but is a characteristic of CICERO especially.

2. *An* is strengthened by *ne*. This is found frequently in early Latin, more rarely later. CICERO uses *anne* only in disjunctive questions, and HORACE, TIBULLUS, PROPERTIUS not at all.

3. In early Latin very frequently, less often in the poets; occasionally in prose, beginning with LIVY, *an* is used as a simple interrogative; so *nescio an* = *nescio num*. There seems to be good reason for believing that *an* was originally a simple interrogative particle, but became identified later with disjunctive questions.

2. Especially to be noted, in connection with *an*, are the phrases, *nescio an* (first in CICERO, and not common), *hanc sciō an* (this is the usual phrase : *hanc sciām an* is rare), *I do not know but*; *dubitō an*, *I doubt*, *I doubt but* = *I am inclined to think*; *incertum an* (once in CICERO), and rarely *dubitārim* and *dubium an*, which give a modest affirmation; very rarely a negation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation.

*Hanc sciō an ita sit*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 17, 41; *I do not know but it is so*. *Hanc sciō an nulla (semelita) beffitor esse posuit*, C., *Cat. M.*, 16, 56; *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier*. *Dubitō an [Thrasyllo] primum omnium p̄nam*, NEP., VIII. 1, 1; *I doubt but I should* (= *I am inclined to think I should*) *put Thrasyllo first of all*.

NOTE.—In early Latin these phrases are still dubitative. The affirmative force comes in first in CICERO, and seems to have been equivalent to *forsitan*, *perhaps*, with the Potential Subjunctive: *Forsitan et Priami fuerint quae sita requiriās*, V., A., II. 506; *perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too*.

#### DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

**458.** Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms :

<i>First Clause.</i>	<i>Second and Subsequent Clauses.</i>
<i>utrum, whether,</i>	<i>an (anne), or</i>
<i>-ne,</i>	<i>an,</i>
—	<i>an (anne).</i>

*Utrum nescis quam altē ascenderis, an prō nihilō id putas ?* C., *Fam.*, X. 26, 3; *are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing ?* *Vōne Lūcium Domitiūm an vōe Domitiūs deseruit ?* CAES., *B.C.*, II. 32, 8; *have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Domitius deserted you ?* *Eloquar an silēam ?* V., A., III. 39; *shall I speak, or hold my peace ?* *Utrum hōc tū parum commemorasti, an ego nōn satis intellexi, an mītāsti sententiam ?* C., *Att.*, IX. 2; *do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view ?*

NOTES.—1. **Utrumne—an** is found once in CICERO (*Inv.*, I. 31, 51), not in CAESAR or LIVY, occasionally elsewhere (H., *Epod.*, I. 7); **utrum—ne—an** is more common.

**Ne—an**, which is common in prose, is not found in CAT., TIB., PROP., HOR., LUCAN.

2. **Ne** in the second member, with omitted particle in first member, occurs only in H., *Epd.*, I. 11, 8 (disputed), in the direct question, except in the combination **necone** (459).

3. **Ne—ne** is very rare; V., A., II. 738; XI. 126.

4. **Aut** (*or*), in questions, is not to be confounded with **an**. **Aut** gives another part of a simple question, or another form of it (*or, in other words*). **An** excludes, **aut** extends.

(*Voluptatis* melioremne efficit aut laudabiliorum virum? C., *Parad.*, I. 3, 15: *does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man?* (Answer: *neither*.) *Tu* virum meum aut hominem deputabis adeo esse? TER., *Hec.* 524; *do you hold me to be your husband or even a man?*

459. In direct questions, *or not* is **annōn**, rarely **necone**; in indirect, **necne**, rarely **annōn**.

*Inne est quem quaerō, annōn?* TER., *Ph.*, 852; *is that the man I am looking for, or not?* *Sitque memor nostri necone, referte mihi*, Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 10 (204, n. 7).

NOTES.—1. **Necone** is found in direct questions in CICERO, *Tusc.*, III. 18, 41 (sunt haec tua verba necone!), *Flacc.*, 25, 59; and also LUCR., III. 713. **Annōn** in indirect questions occurs in CICERO, *Inv.*, I. 50, 95; II. 20, 60; *Cael.*, 21, 52; *Balb.*, 8, 22, etc.

2. **Utrum** is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for *whether or no?* but not in early Latin. So C., *Flacc.*, 19, 45, etc.

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

460. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications.

#### 1. Simple Questions.

(a) **Num** loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*. It decays in later Latin.

*Speculari (fuerunt) num sollicitati animi sociorum essent*, L., XLII. 19, 8; *they ordered them to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with*.

(b) **Si, if**, is used for *whether*, chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial. Compare **O si** (261).

*Temptata rē est si primō impēti capi Ardea posset*, L., I. 57, 2; *an attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see) if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main)*. *Ibō, visam si domi est* (467, n.), TER., *Heaut.*, 170; *I will go (to) see if he is at home*.

NOTES.—1. **An** is sometimes used for **num** and **ne**, but never in model prose. *Consuluit deinde (Alexander) an totius orbis imperium fuisse sibi destinatur*, CURT., IV. 7, 26; *Alexander then asked the oracle whether the empire of the whole world was destined for him by the fates*.

2. **Nōnne** is cited only from CICERO and only after *quaerere* (*Ph.*, XII. 7, 15).

## 2. Disjunctive Questions.

In addition to the forms for Direct Questions (458), a form with *-ne* in the second clause only is found in the Indirect Question, but is never common; see 458, n. 2.

*Tarquinius Priscus Tarquinii regis filius neptenus fuerit parum liquet, I., l. 46, 4; whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder does not appear.*

NOTES.—1. The form *-ne* is not found in CAESAR or SALLUST.

2. The form *ne—ne* is poetical, except once in CAESAR (*B. G.*, VII. 141, 8).

3. *Utrum—ne—an* is rare but classical. *Utrumne—an* begins with HORACE, is not found in LIVY, VELL., VAL. M., and both PLINYS. In TACITUS only in the *Dialogus*.

## SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

### 461. Direct.

*Is the last syllable short or long? Cf. C., Or., 64, 217.*

*Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est an longa?*  
*brevissime est an longa?*

### Indirect.

*In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long:*

<i>In versu nihil refert</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa.} \\ \text{postrēma syllaba brevissime sit an longa.} \\ \text{postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit (CICERO).} \\ \text{postrēma syllaba brevis sit longane.} \end{array} \right.$
------------------------------	---

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

### 1. In Direct Questions.

**462.** The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer.

**463.** Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is *genuine*.

A. *Quis homō est?* B. *Ego sum, Ter., And., 965; who is that? It is I.*

A. *Vivitne (pater)?* B. *Vivom liquimus, Pl., Capt., 282; is his father living? We left him alive.*

**464.** Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer in the negative when the question is *rhetorical*.

*Quis nō paupertatem extimācit? C., Tusc., v. 31, 80; who does not dread poverty?*

**REMARK.**—*Nōnne* and *nūm* in the direct question are often rhetorical (see *PL.*, *Am.*, 539; *C.*, *Div.*, I. 14, 24). With *nōnne* a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 451, n. 2.

**465.** Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is *deliberative*.

A. *Abeam!* B. *Abi, PL., Merc.*, 749; *shall I go away?* Go.

A. *Quid nūno faciam?* B. *Tē suspenditō, PL., Ps.*, 1229; *what shall I do now?* Hang yourself.

**REMARK.**—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse (265).

**466.** Subjunctive questions anticipate a potential answer in the negative, when the question is *rhetorical*.

*Quis hōc crēdat?* who would believe this? [No one would believe this.] *Quid faceret aliud?* what else was he to do? [Nothing.]

*Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēdītōne querentēs?* Juv., II. 24 (250).

**REMARK.**—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 558.

## 2. In Indirect Questions.

**467.** The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative.

[*Considerābimus*] *quid fecerit* (Indic. *fecit*), *quid faciat* (Indic. *facit*), *quid facturus sit* (Indic. *faciet* or *facturus est*), Cf. *C.*, *Inv.*, I. 25, 36; *we will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do)*. (*Epaminōndās* *quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus*, *C.*, *Fin.*, II. 30, 97; *Epaminondas* asked whether his shield was safe. (*Salvusne est?*))

The Subjunctive may be original. See 265.

*Ipse docet quid agam;* *fīs est et ab hoste docērī*, *Ov.*, *M.*, IV. 428 (219); (*Quid agam, what I am to do; not what I am doing*). *Quaerō & tē cūr C. Cornelium nōn defendērem*, *C.*, *Vat.*, 2, 5; *I inquire of you why I was not to defend C. Cornelius*. (*Cūr nōn defendērem?* why was I not to defend?)

**REMARKS.**—I. *Nesciō quis, nesciō quid, nesciō qui, nesciō quod, I know not who, what, which, may be used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and then have no effect on the construction. This usage is found at all periods.*

*Nesciō quid māius nascitur Iliade*, *PROP.*, II. (III.) 32 (34), 66; (*something, I know not what, is coming to the birth, greater than the Iliad*).

2. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative *quis* ; except in the Nom. Sing. ; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent. (611, R. 2.)

*Interrogative : dico quid rogem, tell me what it is I am asking.*

*Relative : dico quod rogū, TEE., And., 764 ; tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).*

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasized :

*Dicam quod sentis, C., Or., I. 44, 195 ; I will tell you my real opinion.*

Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interrogatives :

*Patefacit vobis quis isti penitus abstrusas insidiās (= insidiās quās) se possūsse arbitrantur, C., Agr., II. 18, 49; I am exposing to your view the schemes which those people fancy they have laid in profound secrecy.*

NOTE.—In the early Latin of Comedy the leading verb is very frequently disconnected from the interrogative, which consequently appears as an independent sentence with the Indicative. This is most common after *dic*, *respondē*, *loquere*, and kindred Imperatives ; *vidē* (PLAUTUS also *circumspice*, *respicere*) ; *tē rogū*, *interrogū*, *quaerē*, and similar phrases ; *audire*, *vidēre*, etc., scīn ; relative words *ut*, *quāmodō*, etc., where the modal and not interrogative force is prominent. Classical prose has given up all these usages. A few cases in CICERO are contested or differently explained. In poetry and later prose the examples are found only here and there.

*Dico, quid est ? Pl., Men., 397; tell me, what is it ? (Dico quid sit, tell me what it is.) Quin tū finō verbō dico: quid est quod mō velis ? TEE., And., 45; won't you tell me in one word : What is it you want of me ? Dic mihi quid feci nisi nō sapienter amavi, Ov., Her., II. 27; tell me what have I done, save that I have loved unwisely.*

So also, *nesciō quāmodō*, *I know not how = strangely* ; and *mīrum quantum*, *it (is) marvellous how much = wonderfully*, are used as adverbs :

*Mīrum quantum prīmit ad concordiam, L., II. 1, 11; it served wonderfully to promote harmony. Nesciō quā pectō vel magis homīnes iuvat glōria līta quam māgna, PLIN., Ep., IV. 12, 7; somehow or other, people are even more charmed to have a widespread reputation than a grand one.*

Early Latin shows also *perquam*, *admodum quam*, *nimirū quam*, *incrēdibile quantum*; CICERO *mīrum* (*mīrū*) *quam*, *nimirū quantum*, *sānū quam*, *valdē quam*; CAESAR none of these ; SALLUST *immāne quantum*; LIVY adds *oppidō quantum*; PLINY MAI. *immēnsum*, *infinitū quantum*; FLORUS *plūrimum quantum*. The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

#### PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

468. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by Anticipation (*Prolēpsis*).

*Nōsti Mārcellūm quam tardus sit, CÆLIUS (C., Fam., VIII. 10, 8); you know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.*

NOTE.—This usage is very common in Comedy, and belongs to conversational style in general.

**469.** Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a Causal sentence becomes Final or Consecutive.

*Quam utilitatem petentes scire cupimus illa quae occulta nobis sunt?* C., *Fin.*, III. II, 37; *what advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us?* [Solon Pisistratō tyrannō] querentē qui tandem rē frētus sibi tam audacter resistaret, respondisse dicitur seneccūte, C., *Cat. M.*, 20, 72; *Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what thing relying (= on what he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."*

NOTE.—The Abl. Abs. with the interrogative is rare. C., *Verr.*, III. 8c, 185.

**470.** Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English.

*Sessum it praetor. Quid ut iudicetur?* C., *N.D.*, III. 30, 74; *the judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged?* (*To adjudge what?*)

REMARK.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause; thus two interrogatives are not uncommon:

*Consider quid quem fraudasse dicatur*, C., *Rosc. Com.*, 7, 21.

#### Yes and No.

**471. (a) Yes is represented :**

1. By *sāns*, (literally) *soundly*, *sāns quidem*, *yes indeed*, *etiam*, *even (so)*, *vērō* (rarely *vērum*), *of a truth*, *ita*, *so*, *omnīnō*, *by all means*, *certō*, *surely*, *certō*, *for certain*, *admodum*, *to a degree*, etc.

*Aut etiam aut nōn respondere* [potest], C., *Ac.*, II. 32, 104; *he can answer either yes or no.*

2. By *cēnsō*, *I think so*; *scilicet*, *to be sure*.

*Quid si etiam occentem hymenaeum?* *Cēnsō*, Pl., *Cas.*, 806; *what if I should also sing a marriage-song?* *I think you had better.*

3. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without the confirmatory particles, *vērō* (principally with pronouns), *sāns*, *prōrsus*, etc.

*Estisne?* *Sumus*, *are you?* *We are.* *Dāsne?* *Dō sāns*, C., *Leg.*, I. 7, 21; *do you grant?* *I do indeed.*

**(b) No is represented :**

1. By *nōn*, *nōn vērō*, *nōn ita*, *minimō*, *by no means*, *nihil*, *nothing*, *minimō vērō*, *nihil sāns*, *nihil minus*.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative :

*Nōn irāta es!* *Nōn sum irāta*, Pl., *Cas.*, 1007; *you are not angry!*  
*I am not.*

(c) YEA or NAY.—*Immō* conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement: *yes indeed, nay rather.*

*Equid placeant (sedēs) mē rogās!* *Immō perplaceant*, Pl., *Moēt.*, 907; *do I like the house, you ask me?* *Yes indeed, very much. Causa igitur nōn bona est?* *Immō optima*, C., *Att.*, IX. 7, 4; *the cause, then, is a bad one?* *Nay, it is an excellent one.*

REMARK.—*Yes, for, and no, for,* are often expressed simply by *nam* and *enim*: *Tum Antōnius: Heri enim, inquit, hōc mihi prōposueram*, C., *Or.*, II. 10, 40; *then* quoth *Antony*: *Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.*

### SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

472. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once; one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination (**Parataxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination (**Hypotaxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

*He became poor and we became rich;* the second clause is a coördinate sentence.

*He became poor that we might be rich;* the second clause is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. “*He became poor*” is the Principal Clause, “*that we might be rich*” is the Subordinate Clause.

REMARK.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, *vivam si vivet, let me live if she lives*, my living depends on her living; yet “*vivam*” is the principal, “*si vivet*” the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

### COÖRDINATION.

473. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

**REMARK.**—Coördinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Aeyndeton*). Then the connection must determine the character.

### Copulative Sentences.

**474.** The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions : **et**, **-que**, **atque** (**āc**), **etiam**, **quoque**.

**NOTE.**—The Copulative Conjunctions are often omitted, in climax, in enumerations, in contrasts, in standing formulae, particularly in dating by the consuls of a year, if the *praenōmina* are added ; and finally, in summing up previous enumerations by such words as *alii*, *ceteri*, *cūnati*, *multi*, *omnes*, *reliqui*.

**475.** **Et** is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes.

*Panem et aquam nātūra dēsiderat*, SEN., *E.M.*, 25, 4 ; *bread and water* (is what) *nature calls for*. *Prohibitā landātur et algēt*, JUV., I. 74 ; *honesty is reprobated and—freezes*.

**NOTES.**—1. We find sometimes two clauses connected by **et** where we should expect **et** **tamen**. This usage is characteristic of TACITRUS, but is found all through the language. *Fieri potest, ut rētē quis sentiat et id, quod sentit, politē eloqui nōn possit*, C., *Tac.*, I. 3, 6.

2. **Et** sometimes introduces a conclusion to a condition expressed in the Imperative, but only once in early Latin, never in classical prose. *Die quibus in terris; et eris mihi māgnus Apollō*, V., *Ec.*, III. 104.

3. **Et**, instead of a temporal conjunction, begins with CAESAR (*Qf. B.G.*, I. 37, 1) and SALLUST (*Jug.*, 97, 4) ; it is never common.

4. On **neque** **illus** for **et nullus** and the like, see 480. On **et** after words indicating Likeness, see 642. On **et** for **etiam**, see 473, n. 2.

**476.** **-Que** (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first.

*Senātus populusque Rōmānus*, C., *Plane.*, 37, 90 ; *the Senate and people of Rome*. *Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander*, L., XXXVI. 20, 5 ; *there Alexander died and was buried*. [SOL] *orīens et occidens diem noctemque conficit*, C., *N.D.*, II. 40, 102 ; *the sun by its rising and setting makes day and night*.

**NOTES.**—1. **Que** was very common in early Latin, especially in legal phraseology, where it was always retained.

2. **Que—que—que** is ante-classical and poetic.

3. **Que** is always added to the first word in the clause it introduces, in PLAUTUS, as well as in classical prose ; but the Augustan poets are free in their position, for metrical reasons. As regards prepositions, **que** is never appended to **ob** and **sub**, rarely to **g** and **ad**, but frequently to other monosyllabic prepositions ; it is always appended to disyllabic prepositions in **-g**, and often to other disyllabic prepositions.

4. On **que** for **quoque** see 479, n. 2.

5. Combinations :

(a) **et—et** ;

(b) **que—et** ; rare in early Latin, never in CICERO, CAESAR ; begins with SALLUST.

SALLUST and TACITUS always add the *que* to the pronoun, LIVY and later prose writers to the substantive.

(c) *et—que*; rare, and beginning with ENNIUS.

(d) *que—que* begins with PLAUTUS, ENNIUS. CICERO has it but once (*noctesque disceque*, Fin., I. 16, 51); it enters prose with SALLUST, and poets are fond of it.

*Et dominū satis et nimium fūrīque lupōque*, Tib., IV. I, 187; *enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf.*

477. **Atque** (compounded of *ad* and *-que*) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (*-que*).

**Ac** (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel or *h*) is fainter than *atque*, and almost equivalent to *et*.

*Intra moenia atque in sinu urbis sunt hostes*, S., C., 52, 85; *within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.* A. Servos! Ego! B. *Atque meus*, Pl., Cas., 735; *a slave? I? And mine to boot.*

NOTES.—1. The confirmative force of *atque*, as in the second example, is found especially in PLAUTUS, occasionally later.

2. *Atque* adds a climax, and then is often strengthened by *secessor*, *profectus*, *venerus*, etc., Pl., B., 86; C., Tusc., I. 20, 46.

3. In comedy, *atque* has sometimes demonstrative force: *atque ecum*, Pl., Sl., 577.

4. Occasionally in CICERO, then in the Augustan poets, LIVY and later prose writers, notably TACITUS, *atque* or *scilicet* is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which *et* or *que* (sometimes both) has been already employed:

*Et potentes sequitur invidia et humiles abiectaque contemptus et turpes scilicet odium*, QUINT., IV. I, 14; *the powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred.*

5. *Atque—atque* is found occasionally in CATO, CATULLUS, CICERO, and VERGIL. *Que—atque* begins in poetry with VERGIL, in prose with LIVY, and is very rare.

6. *Atque*, introducing a principal clause after a temporal conjunction, belongs exclusively to PLAUTUS: *Dum circumspectus es, atque ego lembum conspicor*, B., 279. Also Ep., 217.

7. *Atque* is used before consonants, as well as *scilicet*, to connect single notions: when sentences or clauses are to be connected, *scilicet* only is allowable; either *atque* or *scilicet* with expressions of Likeness.—STAMM.

8. On *atque*, after words indicating Likeness, see 643. *Atque* follows a comparative only after a negative in early and classical Latin. HORACE is first to use it after a positive.

9. Phraseological is *alius atque aliis*, *one or another*, found first in LIVY, and rare.

478. **Etiam**, *even (now), yet, still*, exaggerates (heightens), and generally precedes the word to which it belongs.

*Nobis rē familiāris etiam ad necessaria deest*, Cf. S., C., 20, 11; *we lack means even for the necessities of life.* *Ad Appi Claudi senectūtem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset*, C., Cat. M., 6, 16 (553, 4).

NOTES.—1. *Etiam* as a temporal adverb refers to the Past or Present, and means *still*; it is sometimes strengthened by *tunc* (tunc) or *nunc* (nunc). But beginning with

LIVY, *ad huc*, which properly refers only to the Present, is extended to the Past and used like *etiam* (*tum*).

*Nōn satis mē pernōsti etiam quālis sim*, TER., *And.*, 503; *you still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am.* *Cum iste* (i.e., Polemarchus) *etiam subāret, in cubiculum introductus est*, C., *Verr.*, III. 23, 56; *while the defendant (Polemarchus) was still in bed, he was introduced into the bedroom.*

2. Instead of *etiam*, *et* is occasional in PLAUTUS, in a change of person. CICERO uses it also after an adversative conjunction, as *vērum et*; also after *nam* and *simul*; more often when a pronoun follows, as *et ille, et ipse*. CAESAR never uses it so, SALLUST rarely, but it becomes common from LIVY on.

3. Phraseological is *etiam atque etiam*, *time and again*. On *etiam* for *yes*, see 471, 1.

**479. Quoque**, *so also*, complements (compare *que*) and always follows the words to which it belongs.

*Cum patri (Timothel) populus statuam posuisset, filiō quoque dedit*, Cf. NEP., XIII. 2, 3; *the people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).*

REMARK.—The difference between *etiam* and *quoque* is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

*Grande et cōspicuum nostrō quoque tempore mōnstrum*, JUV., IV. 115; *a huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

NOTES.—1. In ante-classical and post-classical Latin the double forms *etiam*—*quoque*, *etiam quoque*, are sometimes found, and in classical Latin also *quoque* *etiam* occasionally: *nunc vērō mēs quoque etiam causā rogū*, C., *Or.*, I. 35, 104.

2. *Que* in the sense of *quoque* is rare (compare *mēque*, CAT., *cii. 3*; *me too*), and is found chiefly in the post-Augustan *hodiēque*, *to-day also*.

**480. Copulation by means of the Negative.**—Instead of *et* and the negative, *neque* (*nec*) and the positive is the rule in Latin.

*Opinōibus vulgi rapimur in errōrem nec vēra cernimus*, C., *Leg.*, II. 17, 43; *by the prejudices of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.* (Caesar) *properius noctem diū cōmūxerat neque iter intermisserat*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 13, 2; *Caesar in his haste had joined night with day and had not broken his march.*

REMARKS.—1. *Et—nōn, and—not*, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic; but *neque* is found occasionally here, even in CICERO (*Off.*, III. 10, 41).

*Et mīlitāvi nōn sine glōriā*, H., *O.*, III. 26, 2; *and I have been a soldier not without glory.*

On *nec nōn*, the opposite of *et nōn*, see 449, R. 3.

2. In combination with the negative we have the following

Paradigms: *And no one, neque quisquam, nor any one.*

*And no, neque illus, nor any.*

*And nothing, neque quidquam, nor anything.*

*And never, neque umquam, nor ever.*

*Neque amet quemquam nec ametur ab illis*, Juv., XII. 130; *may he love no one, and be loved by none.*

3. Nec is often nearly equivalent to *nec tamen*, *and yet not*:

*Extrē invidiam nec extrē gloriā erat*, Tac., Agr., 8, 8; *he was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory. Cf. Ter., Eun., 249; C., Tusc., II., 25, 60.*

NOTES.—1. *Neque* = *nē quidem*, is ante-classical and post-classical: *nec nunc*, *cum mē vocat ultrō, accēdām*? H., S., II. 3, 262 (the only case in HORACE).

2. CAESAR, LUCRETIUS, VERGIL, and PROPERTIUS use *neque* regularly before vowels.

3. Combinations:

(a) *neque—neque*; *nec—nec*; *neque—nec*; *nec—neque*. Sometimes the first *neque* has the force of *and neither*; but this is limited in prose to CAESAR, SALUST, and LIVY; in poetry to CATULLUS and PROPERTIUS.

(b) *neque—et*; *neque—que*; *neque—&c.* Of these *neque—et* is rare in early Latin, but more common in CICERO and later; *neque—que* is rare, and found first in CICERO; *neque—atque* (*&c.*) is very rare, and begins in TACITUS.

(c) *et—neque* is found first in CICERO, who is fond of it, but it fades out after him.

4. *Neque* is usually used for *nōn*, when followed by the strengthening words *enim*, *tamen*, *vērō*, etc.

481. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When *multus*, *much*, *many*, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: *many renowned deeds*, *multa et praeclara facinora*; *many good qualities*, *multae bonaet artēa*.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take *et* throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration.

*Phrygēs et Pisidae et Ciliōes*, C., Div., I. 41, 92; or, *Phrygēs, Pisidae, Ciliōes, Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.*

NOTE.—*Et* before the third member of a series is rare, but occurs here and there at all periods; in CICERO it usually draws especial attention to the last member. *Atque* (*&c.*) is used thus a little more frequently (*mōrē institūta atque vita*, C., Fam., xv. 4, 14), and *que* is not uncommon: *aserritudinēs, fræ libidinēsque*, C., Tusc., I. 33, 80.

3. *Et* is further omitted in *climates*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulae*.

*Viri nōn [est] dōbilitari dolōre, frangi, succumbere*, C., Fin., II. 29, 95; *it is unmanly to allow one's self to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb. Difficilis facilis, iucundus acerbus, os Mem., Mart., XII. 47, 1 (310).*

*Patrēs Cōscripti, Fathers (and) Conscription (Senators).*

*Iuppiter Optimus Māximus, Father Jove, supremely good (and) great.*

## Other Particles Employed.

**482.** Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal : *tum—tum, then—then; alias—alias, at one time—at another; iam—iam, nunc—nunc, modo—modo, now—now; simul—simul, at the same time.*

*Tum Graecos—tum Latinos, partly in Greek, partly in Latin. Horatius Coctes nunc singulis provocabat, nunc increpabat omnes, Cf. L., II. 10, 8 ; Horatius Coctes now challenged them singly, now taunted them all. Modo huc, modo illuc, C., Att., XIII. 25, 8 ; now hither, now thither (hither and thither). Simul spernabant, simul metuabant, they despised and feared at the same time (they at once despised and feared).*

**Notes.**—1. Of these *tum—tum* is not ante-classical, *nunc—nunc* is found first in *LUCR.*, and is introduced into prose by *LIVY*: *simul—simul* is found first in *CAESAR*, but not in *CICERO*; *iam—iam* begins with *VERGIL* and *LIVY*. *Aliquando—aliquando, quandoque—quandoque*, are post-Augustan; *interdum—interdum* is rare, but occurs in *CICERO*.

2. The combinations vary in many ways. Ciceronian are *tum—alias; alias—plurumque; interdum—alias; modo—tum; modo—vidissim*; most of them found but once. Some fifteen other combinations are post-Ciceronian.

3. On *cum—tum*, see 588.

2. Local : In *CICERO* only *alio—alio; hinc—hinc*. Others are : *hic—hinc* (first in *VERGIL*); *hinc—hinc* (*VERGIL*, *LIVY*); *hinc—inde* (*TACITUS*); *hinc—hinc* (*LIVY*); *inde—hinc* (*TACITUS*); *alibi—alibi* (*LIVY*); *aliunde—aliunde* (*PLINY*).

3. Modal : *aliter—aliter; quia—quia*, rare, and lacking in many authors (e.g., *CAESAR*, *SALLUST*). In *CICERO* only four times, and confined to the *Letters*; *pariter—pariter* is poetical and post-classical; *aequus—aequus* is found once in *HORACE* and once in *TACITUS*.

4. Comparative : *ut—ita, as—so*:

*Dolbellam ut Tarsenses ita Laodiceni ultrò aceserunt, C., Fam., XII. 13, 4 ; as the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella of their own accord.*

Often, however, the actions compared are adversative; and *ut* may be loosely translated *although, while*.

*Haec omnia ut invitatis ita non adversantibus patriciis transacta, L., III. 55, 15 ; all this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).*

**Note.**—There are also many other similar combinations, as : *quemadmodum—sic; ut—slo; tamquam—sic, etc.* The adversative use of *ut—ita* is rare in the classical period, but extends later.

5. Adversative : *nōn modo, nōn solum, nōn tantum, not only; sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, vērum etiam, but even, but also:*

*Urbēs maritimae nōn solum multis periculis oppositae [sunt] sed etiam caecis, C., Rep., II. 3, 5 : cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones). [Nōn] docērI tantum sed etiam dīlectārI volunt, QUINT., IV. I, 57 ; they wish not merely to be taught, but to be tickled to boot.*

In the negative form, *nōn modo nōn, not only not : sed nō—quidem, but not even; sed vix, but hardly.*

*Ego nōn modo tibi nōn frāscor, sed nō reprehendō quidem factū tuūm, C., Sull., 18, 50 ; I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.*

REMARKS.—1. Instead of *nōn modo (sōlūm) nōn—sed nō—quidem*, the latter *nōn* is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second; otherwise both negatives are expressed.

*Pisōne cōnsule sensūtū nōn solum iuvāre rem pūblicam sed nō ligāre quidem licēbat, Cf. C., Pis. 10, 23 ; when Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her).*

2. *Nōdūm, not (to speak of) yet, much less*, is also used, either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive; it is found first and only once in TERENCE, never in CAESAR and SALLUST, in CICERO only after negative sentences; from LIVY on it is used after affirmative clauses as well.

*Satrapa numquam sufferre sius sumptūs queat, nōdūm tū possis, TER., Heaut., 454 ; a nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you.*

NOTES.—1. *Nōn tantum* is never found in early Latin, CAESAR and SALLUST, rarely in CICERO. *Sed—quoque* is found first in CICERO; so, too, *sed* simply, but rarely. LIVY is especially free in his use of *sed*. *Vērum*, in the second member, is not ante-classical nor Tacitean. *Nōn* alone in the first member is rare, but Ciceronian, it is usually followed by *sed* only; occasionally by *sed etiam*. *Sed* is sometimes omitted from LIVY on. Cf. L., xxviii. 39, 11 ; TAC., Ann., III. 19, 2, etc.

2. *Sed et*, for *sed etiam*, belongs to post-Augustan Latin.

### Adversative Sentences.

483. The Adversative particles are: *autem, sed, vērum, vērō, at, atqui, tamen, cēterum*. Of these only *sed* and *tamen* are really adversative.

NOTE.—The Adversative particles are often omitted: as when an affirmative is followed by a negative, or the reverse, or in other contrasta.

484. *Autem* (post-positive) is the weakest form of *but*, and

indicates a *difference* from the foregoing, a *contrast* rather than a *contradiction*. It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= moreover, furthermore, now), and of *resumption* (= to come back), and is often used in syllogisms.

*Modo accedit, tum autem recedit, C., N.D., II. 40, 102; now approaching, then again receding. Rūmīribus mēcum pūgnās, ego autem & tē ratiōnēs requirū, C., N.D., III. 5, 18; you fight me with rumores, whereas I ask of you reasons. Quod est bonum, omne laudabile est; quod autem laudabile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est, C., Fin., III. 8, 27; everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.*

**REMARK.**—*Autem* commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic *est* or *sunt* occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So *igitur* and *enim*.

**NOTES.**—1. Noteworthy is the use of *autem* in lively questions. CICERO employs it in this way, also to correct his own previous questions (*Epanorthōsēs*).

*Ego dēbāchātus sum autem an tū in mē? Ter., Ad., 185. Num quis tēstis Postūmū appollāvit? Tēstis autem? nōn accidētor?* C., Rab. Poet., 5, 10.

2. *Autem* is a favorite word with CICERO, especially in his philosophical and moral works, but not with the Historians, least of all with TACITRUS, who uses it only nine times in all.

**485. Sed (set)** is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, to introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one.

*Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita, MART., VI. 70, 15 (442, R. 2). Domitius nullē quidem arte sed Latinē tamen dīcēbat, C., Br., 77, 267; Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.*

**NOTES.**—1. The use of *sed* to carry on a narrative is characteristic of the historians, though found also in CICERO. *Sed in eā confirātiōne fuit Q. Cūrius, S., C., 23, 1.*

2. *Sed* is repeated by anaphora (682), occasionally in CICERO (*Verr.*, III. 72, 169), more often later.

3. *Sed* may be strengthened by *tamen*; by *vērū*, *enimvērū*, *enim*; by *autem*, but only in connection with *quid*, and then only in comedy and in VERGIL. Sometimes it is equal to *sed tamen*, as in V., A., IV. 660.

**486. Vērum, it is true, true,** always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to *sed* in its stronger sense.

*Si certum est facere, faciam; vērum nō post cōfērās culpam in mē, Ter., Eun., 388; if you are determined to do it, I will arrange it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.*

NOTES.—*Vērum* gradually gives place to *sed* in CICERO. It is used occasionally to return to the subject (*vērum haec quidem hactenus*, C., *Tus.*, III. 34, 84), and in yielding a point (*vērum estō*, C., *Fin.*, II. 23, 75), where *sed* is the usual word.

**487.** *Vērō*, *of a truth*, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

[Platinem] *Dion adeō admiratus est ut sō totum ei trāderet. Neque vērō minus Platō dēlectatus est Dionē*, NEP., X. 2, 8; *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

NOTES.—1. *Vērō* is properly an affirmative adverb, and such is its only use in PLAUTUS. In TERENCE it has also acquired adversative force, which it preserves throughout the language in greater or less degree; so in the historians it is hardly more than *autem*.

2. The combination *vērum vērō* is ante-classical; on combinations with *enim*, see 498, n. 6.

3. *Vērō* is also, but not so commonly, used in transitions; especially in the formulae *age vērō, iam vērō*.

**488.** *At* (another form of *ad* = *in addition to*) introduces *startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes*, often by way of quotation.

"*Philocēta, St! brevis dolor.*" *At iam decimum annum in spēlunca iacet*, C., *Fin.*, II. 29, 94; "*Philoctetes, still! the pain is short.*" *But he has been lying in his cave going on ten years.* "*At multis malis affectus?*" *Quis negat?* C., *Fin.*, V. 30, 92; "*but he has suffered much?*" *Who denies it?* *At vidēte hominis intolerabiliē audaciam!* C., *Dom.*, 44, 115; *well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!* *At vōbis male sit!* CAT., III. 13; *and ill luck to you!*

NOTES.—1. *Ast* is the archaic form of *at*, and is found occasionally in CICERO, *de Leg.* and *ad Att.*, but more often in the poets and the later archaists.

2. *At* is used in anaphora, and also, especially in the poets, in continuing the narrative. Noteworthy is its use after conditional sentences (in CICERO only after negatives, never in SALLUST), where it is frequently strengthened by *certē*, *tamen*, *saltem*; *af-* *minus suppliciō adfici*, *at cūstōdīri oportēbat*, C., *Verr.*, V. 27, 99.

**489.** *Atqui* (*but at any rate, but for all that*) is still stronger than *at*, and is used chiefly in argument.

*Vix crēdibile. Atqui sic habet*, H., *S.*, I. 9, 52; *scarce credible. But for all that, 'tis so.*

NOTES.—1. *Atquin* is occasional in early Latin, and even in CICERO.

2. *At* seems sometimes to be used for *atqui*. C., *Tus.*, III. 9, 19.

**490.** *Tamen* (*literally, even thus*), *nevertheless*, is often combined with *at*, *vērum*, *sed*.

It is commonly prepositive, unless a particular word is to be made emphatic.

*Natiram expellē furoē, tamen usque recurret, H., Ep., I. 10, 24; you may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning. Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latinā tamen dicebat, C., Br., II. 77, 267 (485).*

REMARK.—*Nihilominus (nothing the less), nevertheless, is used like tamen, by which it is occasionally strengthened.*

**491. Ceterum, for the rest, is used by the Historians as an adversative particle.**

*Duo imperatores, ipsi parē ceterum opibus disparibus, S., Iug., 52, 1; two commanders, equal in personal qualities, but of unequal resources.*

NOTE.—*Ceterum* is found once in TERENCE (*Eun.*, 452), once in CICERO (*Q.F.*, II. 12, 1), otherwise not before SALLUST.

#### Disjunctive Sentences:

**492. The Disjunctive particles are aut, vel, -ve, sive (seu).**

NOTE.—The Disjunctive particles are but rarely omitted, and then mainly in contrasted opposites like *panper dives, plūs minus*, and the like.

**493. 1. Aut, or, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution.**

*Vincoris aut vincis, PROP., II. 8, 8; you are conquered or conquering.*

**2. Aut is often corrective = or at least, at most, rather (aut saltem, aut potius).**

*Cuncti aut magna pars fidem mutavissent, S., Iug., 56, 5; all, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance. Duo aut summum trē invente, L., XXXIII. 5, 8; two, or at most three, youths.*

**3. Aut—aut, either—or.**

*Quaedam terrae partes aut frigore rigent aut fruntur calore, Cf. C., Tusc., I. 28, 68; some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat. Aut dic aut accipe calcem, Juv., III. 295; either speak or take a kick.*

NOTES.—1. The use of *aut* to carry on a preceding negative is found first in CICERO, but becomes more common later: *nēmō tribūns aut pl̄ibet timēbat, L., III. 16, 4.*

2. *Aut* is sometimes equivalent to *partly—partly* in TACITUS:

*Hausta aut obruta Campāniae ūra, H., I. 2.*

3. On *aut* in interrogative sentences, see 458, n. 4.

**494. 1. Vel (literally, you may choose) gives a choice, often with *etiam, even, potius, rather.***

*Ego vel Cluvianus, Juv., I. 80 ; I, or, if you choose, Cluvianus.* Per mē vel stertās licet, nōn modo quīscōsā, C., *Ac.*, II. 29, 98 ; for all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely take your rest (sleep). *Satis vel etiam nūmīum multa, C., Fam., IV. 14, 3 ; enough, or even too much.* Epicūrus homē nūmīmē malus vel potius vir optimus, C., *Tusc.*, II. 19, 44 ; Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.

2. **Vel—vel, either—or (whether—or).**

[Miltiadēs dixit] ponte rescissō rēgēm vel hostiū ferrō vel inopīa paucis dībus interitūrum, NEP., I. 3, 4 ; Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.

NOTES.—1. *Vel*, for example, is rare in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, but common in CICERO, especially in the *Letters*.

2. *Vel* in the sense of *aut* is rare in the classical period (C., *Rep.*, II. 28, 50), but is more common later, beginning with OVID. See TAC., *Ann.*, I. 59.

3. *Vel—vel* is found in PLAUTUS occasionally in the sense *as well as*, but in classical Latin is rigidly distinguished from *et—et*.

4. *Aut* is not uncommonly subdivided by *vel—vel*: *aut canere vel vōe vel fidibus*, C., *Dīv.*, II. 59, 122.

**495. -Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of *vel*, and in CICERO is used principally with numerals, in the sense *at most*, or with words from the same stem or of similar formation.

*Bis terve, C., Fam., II. I, 1 ; twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).*

*Cū timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere ! Juv., I. 103 ; why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position ? Aliquid faciēndī nōn faciēndīve ratiō, C., Inv., II. 9, 81 ; the method of doing something or not doing it.*

NOTES.—1. In early Latin *ve* is more often copulative than adversative.

2. *Ve—ve* is poetical only.

**496. 1. Sive (seu), if you choose, gives a choice between two designations of the same object.**

*Urbem mātri seu nevercae relinquit, L., I. 3, 8 ; he leaves the city to his mother or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

2. **Sive—sive (seu—seu), whether—or (indifference).**

*Sive medicum adhibueris sive nōn adhibueris nōn convalēscēs, C., Fat., 12, 29 ; whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well. Seu visa est catus cerva fidēlibus seu rāpit teretēs Marsus aper plagā, H., O., I. 1, 27 ; whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Marsian boar hath burst the lightly-twisted toils.*

NOTES.—1. Single *sive* (= *or*) is not found in PLAUTUS or TERENCE ((*f. And.*, 190)), but it occurs in LUCRETIUS, LUCILIUS, and is common in CICERO. CAESAR and SAL-

LUST, however, do not use it, and it is rare in the Poets. In the sense of *sive—sive* it is found occasionally in poetry; but in prose only three times in TACITUS.

2. *Sive—sive* is not found in TERENCE, but from CICERO on becomes common.
3. No distinction seems possible between *sive* and *seu*.

**497.** *An* is used in the sense of *or* not uncommonly in CICERO, especially in the *Letters*; occasionally in LIVY, and frequently in TACITUS. Elsewhere it is rare. See 457.

*Tiberius cœst an manibus [Haterii] impeditus præcederat, Tac., Ann., I. 13, 7; Tiberius had fallen forward, either by chance or tripped by Haterius' hands.*

### Causal and Illative Sentences.

**498. A.** The Causal particles are *nam*, *enim*, *namque*, and *etenim*, *for*.

*Nam* is put at the beginning of a sentence; *enim* is post-positive (484, n.); *namque* and *etenim* are commonly put in the first place.

*Sensū mirificō conlocati sunt; nam oculi tamquam speculatorē altissimum locum obtinent, C., N.D., II. 56, 140; the senses are admirably situated; for the eyes, like watchmen, occupy the highest post. Pisces ḫva relinquunt, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur, C., N.D., II. 51, 129; fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water. [Themistocles] mūrē Athēniēnum restituit sub periculō; namque Lacedaemonii prohibere cōstī sunt, NEP., II. 6, 2; Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself; for the Lacedaemonians endeavored to prevent it.*

**NOTES.** —1. The Augustan poets postpone both *nam* and *namque* according to the requirements of the metre, and in prose, beginning with LIVY, *namque* is found sometimes in the second place, but more often in LIVY than later.

In early Latin *enim* is often first in the sentence; *etenim* is postponed in prose only in the elder PLINY and APULEIUS; in the poets, not uncommonly, so in APPIANUS, TRIBULLUS, PRÖPERTIUS, and HORACE.

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (*as for instance*). *Quid enim agis?* *what, for instance, can you do?* This is especially true of *enim*, but is also common enough with *nam* (n. 3), and a broad difference between *nam* and *enim* (which is of common origin with *nam*) cannot be proved. *Etenim* is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground.

3. The asseverative force of *nam* is retained in conversational style occasionally, even in CICERO (*Ter.*, I. 52, 133). *Enim* is almost wholly asseverative in PLAUTUS and TERENCE. *Namque* is very rare in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, and is found before vowels only. In classical Latin it is also rare, and found usually before vowels. With LIVY it comes into general use before vowels and consonants equally. *Etenim* is found but once in PLAUTUS (*Am.*, 26, an interpolation) and four times in TERENCE; in post-classical Latin also it is not common, but it is very frequent in classical Latin, especially in CICERO.

4. Noteworthy is the use of *nam*, in passing over a matter: *nam quid ego dñe actionē ipsā plūra dicam?* (C., O., I. 5, 18), which is especially common in CICERO.

5. *Nam* shows an affinity for interrogative particles. Here it sometimes precedes in

the early language (TBR., *Ph.*, 932), but becomes firmly attached in the classical period in the forms *quisnam*, *ubinam*, &c., which, however, sometimes suffer tmesis and transposition in poetry (V., *G.*, 4, 446).

6. In *etenim* (first in CICERO), *nempe enim* (ante-classical and post-classical), *sed enim* (rare), *v&rum enim*, *enim v&rō*, *v&rum enim v&rō*, as in *etenim*, the *enim* gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and *enim* is best left untranslated :

A. *Audi quid dicam.* B. *At enim taedet iam audire eadem mili&nus*, TBR., *Ph.*, 487; A. *Hear what I say.* B. *But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing the same things a thousand times already.*

7. *Enim* is used pleonastically after *quia* in early Latin, and then again in PETRONIUS and GELLIUS ; also after *ut* and *nē* in early Latin.

8. *Quippe* is originally interrogative. From this the causal force develops, which is not uncommon in CICERO. In SALLUST, and especially in LIVY and later writers, *quippe* is equal to *enim*.

**499. B.** Illative particles are *itaque*, *igitur*, *ergō*; *eō*, *hinc*, *inde*, *ideō*, *idcirō*, *quācircā*, *proptereā*, *quāpropter*, *proin*, *proinde*.

**500. Itaque** (literally, *and so*), *therefore*, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of facts that follow from the preceding statement.

*N&m& ausus est Ph&ocionem liber sepelire ; itaque & servis sepultus est,*  
*Cf. NEP., xix. 4, 4; no free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

**REMARK.**—*Itaque* in early and classical Latin has first place in a sentence. It is first postponed by LUCRETIUS, then by CORNIFICIUS and HORACE, and more often later.

**501. Igitur**, *therefore*, is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement ; in CICERO it is usually post-positive, in SALLUST never.

*M&ihi n&on satisfacit. Sed quot homin&e tot sententiae ; falli igitur possumus*, C., *Fin.*, I. 5, 15 ; *ME it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

**NOTE.**—In historical writers *igitur* is sometimes used like *itaque*. Occasionally also (not in classical Latin), it seems to have the force of *enim* (PL., *Most.*, 1102, 222.).

**502. Ergō** denotes *necessary consequence*, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than *igitur*.

*Negat haec filiam m&e suam esse ; n&on ergō haec m&iter mea est*, PL., *Ep.*, 590 ; *she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

**NOTES.**—1. In the Poets *ergō* sometimes introduces a strong conclusion in advance of the premise (H., *O.*, I. 24, 5). In the classical period, however, its predominant use is to introduce the logical conclusion.

2. *Ergo* usually comes first, but its position is apt to vary in accordance with the stress laid upon it.

3. *Itaque ergo* is found in TERENCE and LIVY; *ergo igitur* in PLAUTUS.

**503.** Other Coördinating Conjunctions: *hinc*, *hence*, is found not unfrequently: *hinc illae lacrumea*, TER., *And.*, 126. *Inde*, *thence*, *therefore*, is rare, and first in CICERO, but more common in later Latin. *Et*, *therefore*, is found in early Latin, rarely in CICERO (*Fam.*, vi. 20, 1), not in CAESAR or SALLUST; again in LIVY and later; so *ideo*, *on that account*, but *atque idem* is found once in CAESAR. *Idcirco*, *on that account*, is rare, but from the earliest times. *Quodammodo*, *on which account*, is found first in the classical period; *quapropter* is found here and there in early Latin, but more commonly in the classical time, rarely later; *propter*, *on that account*, is rare, and belongs to early Latin. *Proin*, *proinde*, *accordingly*, are employed in *exhortations*, *appeals*, and the like.

*Quod praeceptum (nōcēs tū ipsum), quia māius erat quam ut ab homine videretur, idcirco assignatum est dēs*, C., *Fin.*, v. 16, 44; *this precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god.* *Proinde aut exant aut quietant*, C., *Cat.*, ii. 5, 11; *let them then either depart or be quiet.*

#### SUBORDINATION.

**504.** Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

This arrangement is a matter of convenience merely, and no attempt is made to represent the development of the subordinate sentence from the coördinate.

**505.** Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form.

*Uxor quae bona est*, PL., *Merc.*, 812 (624) = *uxor bona*.

**506.** Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the distribution of the subordinate sentence appears as follows :

**507. A.** Substantive sentences.

I. Object sentences.

## II. Adverbial sentences :

1. Of Cause. (Causal.)
2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and Consecutive.)
3. Of Time. (Temporal.)
4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and Concessive.)

## B. Adjective sentences. (Relative.)

## Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

**508.** i. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by *Oratio Obliqua*.

2. *Oratio Obliqua*, or *Indirect Discourse*, is opposed to *Oratio Recta*, or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. *Oratio Obliqua*, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Declarative Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

Socrates dicere solēbat :

ō. R. Omnes in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentes.

*Socrates used to say : "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

ō. O. Omnes in eō quod sciēnt satis esse eloquentes, C., Or., i. 14, 63.

*Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity*.

ō. R. Nova nupta dicit: Fleo quod ire necesse est.

*The bride says : I weep because I must needs go.*

ō. O. Nova nupta dicit sē fierē quod ire necesse sit.

*The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.*

ō. R. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse est, (cf. CAT., LXI. 81.

*The bride weeps because she must go.*

ō. O. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse sit.

*The bride is weeping because "she must go" (quoth she).*

4. Akin to **O. O.** is the so-called Attraction of Mood, by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (663.)

*Nun dubitō quin nova nupta fleat quod tē necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.*

REMARK.—The full discussion of **O. O.** must, of course, be reserved for a later period. See 648.

#### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**509.** 1. In those dependent sentences which require the Subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined largely by the time of the leading or principal clause, so that Principal Tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal Tenses; Historical, by Historical.

NOTE.—As the subordinate sentence arose out of the coördinate, hypotaxis out of parataxis, the tenses of the Subjv. had originally an independent value, and the association was simply the natural association of time. But in some classes of sentences a certain mechanical levelling has taken place, as in the Final sentence; and in others, as in the Interrogative sentence, the range of the Subjv. is restricted by the necessity of clearness, just as the range of the Inf. is restricted by the necessity of clearness (580); so that a conventional Sequence of Tenses has to be recognized. To substitute for every dependent tense a corresponding independent tense, and so do away with the whole doctrine of Sequence, is impossible. At the same time it must be observed that the mechanical rule is often violated by a return to the primitive condition of parataxis, and that

2. This rule is subject to the following modifications:

1. Tense means time, not merely tense-form, so that

(a) The Historical Present may be conceived according to its sense (Past) or according to its tense (Present). (229.)

(b) In the Pure Perfect may be felt the past inception or origin (Past), or the present completion (Present). (285, 1.)

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future of the writer (513).

3. The leading clause may itself consist of a principal and dependent clause, and so give rise to a conflict of tenses with varying Sequence (511, n. 2).

4. An original Subjunctive (467) of the past (265) resists levelling, especially in the Indirect Question.

## 510.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (so especially Principal Tenses)	are followed by	the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past (so especially Historical Tenses)	are followed by	the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action). <span style="float: right;">Perfect</span>

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and accordingly the Imperfect Indicative (*I was doing*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

## 511.

Pr. (PURE or Hist.),	<i>I am finding out,</i>	<i>I am finding out,</i>	quid facias, <i>what you are doing;</i>
FUT.,	<i>edgnōscam,</i>	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	quid feceris, <i>what you have done,</i>
PURE PP.,	<i>edgnōvī,</i>	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>	<i>what you have been doing (what you did),</i>
FUT. PR.,	<i>edgnōverō,</i>	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>	<i>what you were doing (before).</i>
HIST. PR.,	<i>edgnōsed,</i>	<i>I am (was) finding out,</i>	quid facerēs, <i>what you were doing :</i>
IMPF.,	<i>edgnōscbam,</i>	<i>I was finding out,</i>	quid fecisset, <i>what you had done, what you had been doing,</i>
HIST. PP.,	<i>edgnōvī,</i>	<i>I found out,</i>	<i>what you were doing (before).</i>
PLUPP.,	<i>edgnōveram,</i>	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	

When the Subjunctive is original, we have :

<i>edgnōsed, etc.,</i>	<i>I am finding out,</i>	<i>{ quid facias,</i>	<i>what you are to do.</i>
<i>edgnōvī, etc.,</i>	<i>I knew,</i>	<i>{ quid facerēs,</i>	<i>what you were to do.</i>

## Principal Tenses.

Nihil refert postremā syllaba brevis an longa sit, Cf. C., Or., 64, 217 (461). Ubil (Caesarem) erant (historical) ut sibi parcat, Cæs., B.G., vi. 9.

7 (546, 1). Nämō adeō ferus est ut nōn mitēscere possit, H., *Ep.*, i. 1, 39 (552). Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condat erit, Ov., *Her.*, 10, 120 (631, 2). Rūsticus exspectat dum dēficiat amnis, II., *Ep.*, i. 2, 42 (572). Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali, PL., *Capt.*, 741 (631, 2). Ardeat ipsa loet, tormentis gaudet amantis, Juv., vi. 209 (607).

Utrum nescio quam altē ascenderis an prō nihil id putās? C., *Fam.*, x. 26, 3 (458). Laudat Africānum Panactius quod fuerit abstinēns, C., *Off.*, ii. 22, 76 (542). Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam & turpitudine revocārit, C., *Cat.*, i. 9, 23 (552). Quem mea Calliopē laeserit fīnus egō (sum), Ov., *Tr.*, ii. 568 (631, 1). Sim licet extrāmū, sicut sum, missus in orbem, Ov., *Tr.*, iv. 9, 9 (607). Multi fuērunt qui tranquillitātem expetentēs & negotiis pūblicis sō remōverint, C., *Off.*, i. 20, 60 (631, 2).

#### Historical Tenses.

Epaminōndās quacūsivit salvusne esset clipeus, C., *Fīn.*, ii. 30, 97 (467). Noctū ambulabat in pūblio Themistocle quod somnum capere nōn posset, C., *Tusc.*, iv. 19, 44 (541). [Athēniēnsēs] creant decem praetōres qui exercitū praeceſſent, NEP., i. 4, 4 (545). Accidit ut fīna nocte omnēs Hermæ deſcoerentur, NEP., vii. 3, 2 (513, R. 2). Ad Appi Claudi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 (553, 4). Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pūgnā (erat) expertus, L., xxx. 35, 4 (577). (Agēsilkus) cum ex Aegyptō reverteretur dēcessit, NEP., xvii. 8, 6 (585).

Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam nōn terrās sūlum sed etiam fāma nōminis sui implēsse, L., i. 2, 5 (521, R. 1). Cum primi ūrdines hostium concidissent, tamen sc̄errimē reliqui resistēbant, CAES., *B.G.*, vii. 62, 4 (587). Dēlēta (est) Ausonius gēns perinde & si interneccivō bellō certāsset, L., ix. 25, 9 (602).

#### Original Subjunctive Retained.

Ipse docet quid agam (original, agam); fīs est et ab hoste docēri, Ov., *M.*, iv. 428 (219). Quārō & tē cūr ego C. Cornēlium nōn defendērem (original, dēfendērem), C., *Vat.*, 2, 5 (467). Misérunt Delphōs cōsultum quid facerent (original, faciāmus), NEP., ii. 2, 6 (518).

**REMARKS.—1.** The treatment of the Hist. Pr. according to its sense (past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent clause precedes. But there are many exceptions.

Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus cōsanguineis contulerint queruntur, CAES., *B. C.*, i. 74, 2: *they return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.*

**2.** Noteworthy is the shift from the primary to the secondary sequence; this is mostly confined to clauses of double dependence, *i.e.*, where one subordinate clause is itself principal to a second subordinate clause.

Here the first has usually the primary, the second the secondary sequence.

*Rogat ut cūret quod dixisset*, C., *Quinct.*, 5, 18; *he asks him to attend to what he had said* (he would).

So of authors:

[Chrysippus] disputat aethera esse eum quem homines Iovem appellarent, C., *N.D.*, I. 15, 40; *Chrysippus maintains that to be aether which men call Jove*.

3. The Pure Pf. is usually treated as a Hist. Pf. in the matter of sequence:

*Quae subidia habēre et habēre possēs, exposui*, Q. CICERO, 4, 18; *what supports you have or can have I have set forth*.

4. The reverse usage, when an Hist. Pf. is followed by a primary Subjv., is not common. Many of those cited from CICERO are from the *Letters*, where the shift of tense might be influenced by the letter-tense principle (252).

*Sed quā omnīliō redierim, initī audīstis, post estis experti*, C., *Ph.*, x. 4, 8. *Quis miles fuit, qui Brundisiū illam nōn viderit*, C., *Ph.*, II. 25, 61. (The context shows that fuit cannot be Pure Pf.)

512. *Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design*.—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

Pr.,	edunt,	they are eating,	ut vivant, that they may live (to live).
PURE PF.,	edērunt,	they have eaten,	
FUT.,	edent,	they will eat,	
FUT. PF.,	edērint,	they will have eaten,	
IMPF.,	edēbant,	they were eating,	ut viverent, that they might live (to live).
PLUFP.,	edērānt,	they had eaten,	
HIST. PF.,	edērunt,	they ate,	

*Spectātū veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae*, Ov., *A.A.*, I. 99 (435). *Sed preor ut possim tūtius esse miser*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 2, 78 (424). *Gallinas pen-nis sovent pullōs nō frigore laedantur*, Cf. C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 129 (545). *Lāgem brevem esse oportet quā facilius ab imperitis tenētur*, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38 (545). *Mō praemisit domum haec ut nūntiem uxōri suae*, Pl., *Am.*, 195; *he has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife*. *Oculōs ecōdiam tibi nō mō observare posas*, Pl., *Aul.*, 53; *I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me*.

[Laelius] *veniōbat ad cēnam ut satiēret dēsideria nātūrae*, C., *Fin.*, II. 8, 25; *Laelius used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature*. (*Phaestōn*) *optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur*, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 94 (546, 1).

**REMARK.**—Parenthetical final sentences like *ut ita dicam, nō erratis,* are really dependent on the thought or utterance of the speaker, and have the present sequence everywhere.

*Nō longior sim, vale,* C., *Fam.*, xv. 19; *not to be tedious, farewell!*  
*Nō tamen ignoras, virtute Nerōnis Armenius occidit,* H., *Ep.*, i. 12, 25; *but that you may not fail to know it, it was by the valor of Nero that the Armenian fell.*

**NOTES.**—1. The Pf. and Plupf. Subjv. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin (no example is cited from CAESAR or SALLUST), when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in : *Ut sic dixerim* (first found in QUINT.), *if I may be allowed to use the expression.*

*Affirmare audeō mē omni ope adinstūrum esse nō frūstrā vōs hanc spem dō mē concēperitis,* L., xliv. 22; *I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain.* (After a past tense, *nō concepis-setsis.*) *Nunc agendum est nō frūstrā opprēsum esse Antōnium ḡvīlī simus,* C., *ad Br.*, i. 4, 3. *Hic obistam, nō imprudenti hūc ea sē subrēpīt* (131, 4, b. 2) *mīhi,* PL., *M. G.*, 333. *Effecit nō ctius alterius sacrilegium rōs pūblica quam Nerōnis sēmissēt,* Tac., *Agr.*, 6.

When the tenser is compound, the participle is usually to be considered as a mere adjective.

*Patrōnus extitī uti nō [Sex. Rōscius] omnīnō dēsertus eset,* C., *Rosc. Am.*, 2, 5; where *dēsertus* = *sōlus.*

2. Occasional apparent exceptions are to be explained in various ways. Thus, in C., *Sest.*, 14, 32: *etiamne ēdīcere audeās nō maerērent,* we have a repetition as an indignant question of the preceding statement: *ēdicunt* (Hist. Pr.) *duo cōnsulēs ut ad suum vestitūm senātōres redirent.*

**513. Exceptional Sequence of Tenses:—Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences).** In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or Aorist, the latter especially with the negative: the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense :

[*Siciliam Verrēs*] *per triennium ita verēavit ut ea restitūl in antiquum statū nullō modō possit,* C., *Verr.*, I. 4, 12; *Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.* In [*Lucullūs*] *tanta prūdentia fuit ut hodiē stet Asia,* C., *Ac.*, II. 1, 3; *Lucullus's forethought was so great that Asia stands firm to-day.*

Perfect Tense (Pure) :

(*Mūrēna*) *Asiam sic obiit ut in eō neque avāritiae neque luxuriae vēstigium reliquerit,* C., *Mur.*, 9, 20; *Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery (there is no trace there).*

## Perfect Tense (Aorist) :

*Equites hostium scriter cum equitatu nostrorum confixarunt, tamen ut nostri eos in silvis collaque compulerint, CAES., B.G., v. 15, 1; the cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills. Neque vero tam remissa sed languida animo quisquam omnium fuit qui eis nocte conquieverit, CAES., B.C., i. 21, 5; and indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night.*

REMARKS.—1. After a Pure Pf., if the dependent clause is affirmative, CICERO prefers the Impf. (he has but five cases of Pf.); if negative the Pf. (in the proportion 2 to 1).

2. After *accidit*, *contigit*, and other verbs of Happening, the Impf. is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indic. form.

*Accidit ut una nocte omnes Hermae deicarentur, NEP., VII., 3, 2; it happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

NOTES.—1. The use of the Aoristic Pf. Subjv. after an Aoristic Pf. Indic. seems to have been an attempt of the Romans to replace the consecutive Aor. Inf. in Greek with *σειρα*. Examples are not found in early Latin, are rare in CICERO, very rare in CAESAR, perhaps not at all in SALLUST; more frequent in LIVY, common in TACITUS, very common in NEPOS and SUETONIUS, etc.

2. In two coördinated clauses depending on the same verb we find the tenses occasionally varying. The Pf. in the first subordinate, with Impf. in the second, is doubtful in any case, rare in CICERO, and is cited but once each from CAESAR (B.G., vii. 17) and VELLEIUS (i. 9, 1). The reverse construction, Impf. followed by Pf., is more common, but found first (though rarely) in LIVY, and belongs mainly to late Latin.

*Zenō nillō modō is erat qui nerva virtutis inciderit, sed contrā qui omnia in virtute pōneret, C., AC., i. 10, 35.* Here the shift is due to the negative. *Tantus pavor omnes occupavit ut nō modo alius quisquam arma caperet—sed etiam ipse rēx perfugaret, L., xxiv. 40, 12.* Here the tenses depend on the ideas of continuance and completion, of the many and the single (*nōn capiēbant—rēx perfigit*).

3. In relative sentences of coincident action with causal coloring, either the coincidence is retained, or a principal clause in the Past is followed by the Impf. Subjunctive.

*Tū hūmānissimō fecisti qui mē certidōrem feceris, C., Att., xiii. 43, 1. Cum hōc Pompētus vehementer egit cum diceret, etc., C., Att., ii. 22, 2. Videor mihi grātum fecisse sicutilis, quod cōrūm iniuriā sim persecutus, C., Verr., ii. 6, 15 (518, n.).*

#### Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

RULE I.—(a) After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation (contemporary with the leading Future) is

represented by the Present Subjunctive; the Future Perfect (prior to the leading Future) by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

<i>Cognoscam,</i>	<i>quid facias, what you are doing (will be doing).</i>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	
<i>Cognoverō,</i>	

*I shall have found out (shall know),* } *quid feceris, what you have done  
(will have done).*

(b) But whenever the dependent Future is subsequent to the leading Future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

<i>Cognoscam,</i>	<i>quid factūrus sis, what you are going to do (what you will do).</i>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	
<i>Cognoverō,</i>	

*I shall have found out (shall know),* }

[*Considerabimus*], [*we shall consider*].

A. *Quid fecerit aut quid ipsi acciderit aut quid dixerit, what he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

B. *Aut quid faciat, quid ipsi accidat, quid dicat, or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. *Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsi cūstūrum sit, quā sit ūsūrus trātiōne, C., Inv., I. 25, 36; or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).*

*Tū quid sis ūtūrus pergrātūm erit si ad mē scripseris, C., Fam., IX. 2, 5; it will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do.*

REMARK.—In some of these forms ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real Perfect, B a real Present.

515. RULE II.—After the other tenses, the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

<i>Cognōscō,</i>	<i>quid factūrus sis (what you are going to do), what you will do.</i>
<i>I am finding out,</i>	
<i>Cognōvi,</i>	

*I have found out (know),* }

<i>Cognōscēbam,</i>	<i>quid factūrus essēs (what you were going to do), what you would do.</i>
<i>I was trying to find out,</i>	
<i>Cognōveram,</i>	

*I had found out,* }

Tam ea r̄s est facilis ut innumerabilis n̄tūra mundōs effectūra sit, efficiat, efficerit, (*Cf. C., N.D., I. 21, 58; the thing is so easy that nature will make, is making, has made, innumerable worlds.*)

Incertum est quam longa cūiusque nostrum vita futura sit, *C., Verr., I. 58, 153; it is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).*

*Ante dubitabam venturae essent legiōnēs; nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin venturae nōn sint, C., Fam., II. 17, 5; before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no); now I have no doubt that they will not come.*

REMARKS.—I. The Pf. and Plupf. Subjv. of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

*Cōgnōscō, Cōgnōvi, quid factūrus fueris, (what you have been I am finding out, I have found out what you would have done, going to do). (know),*

*Cōgnōscōbam, Cōgnōveram, [quid factūrus fuissēs, (what you had been I was trying to find out, I had found out, what you would have going to do). done, rare.]*

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Fut. Pf. active, no Periphrastic for passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammars make up a Periphrastic for all these from futūrum sit, esset ut, as :

<i>Nōn dubitō quin futūrum sit,</i> <i>I do not doubt</i>	{ <i>ut redierit, that he will have returned.</i> <i>ut maereat, that he will grieve.</i> <i>ut necētur, that he will be killed.</i>
--	--

But there is no warrant in actual usage.

For the dependent Fut. Pf. act. TERENCE says (*Hec.*, 6:8) : *Tuā rēfert nīl utrum illae fōcerint quandō haec aberit.*

For the dependent Fut. Pf. pass. CICERO says (*Fam.*, VI. 12, 3) : *Neo dubitō quin cōfecta r̄s futura sit, nor do I doubt but the matter will have been settled.*

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of posse. (248, n.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple Subjv. is sufficient.

Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitōnēs, dē omni salūte dēsp̄rant; Rōmāni, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant, *Cārs., B.G., VII. 85, 3; the Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).* Vēnērunt querēntēs nec spēm ullam esse resistēndi, nisi praeſidium Rōmānū mis̄set, *L., XXXIV. 11, 2; they came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them. Intenti quandō hostiā inpr̄dēntiā rueret, TAC., H., II. 34.*

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future : Examples, 263.

*Et certāmen habent lēti, quae viva sequātur cōningūm, PROP., IV. 12, 19 (M.).*

516. *Sequence of Tenses in Āratiō Obliqua : In Āratiō Obliqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses ap-*

plies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [clāvā] erat scriptum nisi domū revertētur sō capitis eum damnēturō, NEP., iv. 3, 4; it was written on the staff that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. (Örātiō Rōcta: nisi domum revertarī, tō capitis damnificimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death). Pythia praecepit ut Milliadem sibi imperatōrem sumerent; id si fecerint (Ö. R., feceritis) incepta prōspera futura (Ö. R., erunt), NEP., I. 1, 3; the Pythia instructed them to take Milliades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful. Lacedaemonii, Philippo minitante per litterās sō omnia quae cōfrentur (Ö. R., cōfribimini) prohibitūrum, quae sivērunt num sō eset etiam mori prohibitūrus (Ö. R., prohibebis), C., Tusc., v. 14, 42; the Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter that he would prevent everything they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.

517. Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nō] compōne comā quia sis ventūrus ad illam, Ov., Rem. Am., 679; do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her. Excellentibus ingeniis citius defuerit ars quā civem regant quam quā hostem superent, L., II. 43, 10; great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy. Quid mē prohiberet Epicūrēm esse, si probārem quae ille diceret? C., Fin., I. 8, 27; what would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)? Tum ego tō p̄fīmūs hortārē dī p̄nātārē quem potissimum eligerē, PLIN., Ep., IV. 15, 8; in that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom you should choose above all others. Quae vita fuissest Priamo si ab adolescentiā scisset quōd ēventūs senectūtis eset habitūrus? C., Div., II. 9, 22; what sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age?

REMARKS.—1. Of course, when the Pf. Subjv. represents an Historical Tense, it takes the historical Sequence:

Magna culpa Pelopis qui nōn docuerit filium quātenus eset quidque orrandū, C., Tusc., I. 44, 107; greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for. Qui scis an eā causā mē odisse adsimilāverit, ut cum mātre plus tñk eset? TER., Hec., 235; how do you know but she has pretended to hate me in order to be more with her (own) mother?

So also in the Conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception, see C., *Off.*, III. 24, 92.

2. The Impf. Subjv., being used in opposition to the Present, might be treated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual :

*Verber nō immodicam orationem putarēs nisi esset generis sius ut saepe incipere saepe desinere videātur, PLIN., Ep., IX. 4, 1; I should be afraid of your thinking the speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often beginning, often ending. O ego nō possum talēs sentire dolrēs quam mīllem in gelidis montibus esse lapis!* TIB., II. 4, 7.

**518. Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.**—When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the tense of the Finite verb, if the Finite verb is Past ; if the Finite verb is Present, it follows the tense that the dependent verb would have had, if it had been independent.

Dicit sō interrogare (original interrogō),  
*He says that he is asking,* { quid agis, what you are doing.  
quid ageris, what you have done.  
quid acturus sis, what you are going to do (will do).

Dicit sō interrogāsse (original interrogāxi),  
*He says that he asked,* { quid ageris, what you were doing.  
Dixit sō interrogare (original interrogō),  
*He said that he was asking,* { quid ageris, what you had done.  
quid acturus esset, what you were going to do (would do).

Mihī interroganti,  
*when I ask him,* { quid agat, what he is doing,  
(literally : to me asking). { quid agerit, what he has done,  
{ quid acturus what he is going to sit, to do (will do), { nō re-spondet, he gives no an-swer.

Mihī interroganti,  
*when I asked him,* { quid ageret, what he was doing,  
(literally : to me asking), { quid agisset, what he had done,  
{ quid acturus esset, what he was going to do, { nō re-spondit, he gave no an-swer.

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristoteles ait bēstiolā quādam nāscī quae unam diem vivant, C., Tusc., I. 39, 94 (650). Satis mihi multa verba fecisse videor quārē esset hōc bellum necessarium, C., Imp., I. 27; I think I have said enough (to show) why this war is necessary. Apallē pictōrē eō.

*peccare dicebat qui non sentirent quid esset satis, C., Or., 22, 73; Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was (is) enough. Athenian Cyrus quendam suadentem ut in urbe manarent lapidibus obruerunt, C., Off., III. II, 48 (546). Cupido incitat animos iuvenum sollicitandi ad quem eorum regnum Romanum esset ventrum, L., I. 56, 10; the minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come. Miserrunt Delphos consultum quid facerent, Nep., II. 2, 6; they sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do. See 265.*

REMARK.—Nevertheless examples are not unfrequent where the sequence of the governing verb is retained : *Videor mihi gratum fuisse Siculis quod eorum iniurias meas periculose sim persecutus, C., Verr., II. 6, 15; I seem to have pleased the Sicilians, in that I have followed up their injuries at my own risk (on account of the coincidence, 518, n. 3).*

**519. Original Subjunctives in Dependence.**—1. The Potential of Present or Future after a Past tense goes into the Past ; the same is true of Deliberative Questions (465). On the other hand, the Potential of the Past must be retained even after a Present tense (467).

*Vide causas esse permultas quae [Titum Roescium] impellerent, C., Rosc. Am., 33, 92; I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roescius. Quærunt et tamen Gallum Cornelianum non defendorum, C., Vat., 2, 5 (467).*

2. On the behavior of Conditional Subjunctives in dependence see 597, R. 4.

REMARK.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction of parenthetic clauses or, especially in long sentences, by the shifting of the conception. Examples are C., Balb., I. 2; Ph., III. 15, 39; Ac., II. 18, 56, and many others.

#### USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

**520.** In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause ; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

**521.** The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject ; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sen-

tences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation.

Sentit animus *sic* vi sui, non aliena moveri, C., *Tusc.*, I. 23, 55; *the mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.* Quaeviserunt num *sic* caset etiam mori prohibiturus, C., *Tusc.*, V. 14, 42 (516). Pompælius & me petivit ut sicutum et apud *sic* easem cottidiis, Cf. C., *Att.*, V. 6, 1; *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.* Paetus omnes libri quæ frater suus reliquerat mihi dñavit, C., *Att.*, II. I, 12; *Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said; that his brother had left (quæ frater eius reliquerat, would be the statement of the narrator).*

**REMARKS.—I.** Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of *is*, when the subj. is not the same as that of the leading verb; otherwise the Reflexive:

Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut *is* eius vulgo habetur filius, C., *Rep.* II. 21, 38; *Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.* But Tanta opibus Etruria erat ut iam non terris solum sed mare etiam fama nomen sui implisset, L., I. 2, 5; *so great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land, but even the sea, with the reputation of her name.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subj. of the principal clause. (309, 2.)

Ab Caesare invitor sibi ut sim legatus, C., *Att.*, II. 18, 3; *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Especially to be noted is the freer use of *suus* (309, 4). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulæ (309, 3), as *sic recipere, to withdraw, etc.*

(Rimæ) sui colligendi hostibus facultatem (non) relinquunt, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 (309, 3).

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one's self, etc.* (309, 1): Deforme est *de sic ipsum prædicere*, C., *Off.*, I. 38, 187; *it is unseemly to be bragging about one's self.*

With the Inf. this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indic. relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions (505), *is* is the rule:

Socratis dishonestam sibi credidit tristionem quam ei Lysias rebus compulerat, QUINT., II. 15, 30; *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule:

Metellus in illis urbibus quae ad *sic* defecorant praesidia impunit, S., *Iug.*, 61, 1; *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.*

Ille habet quod sibi debetur, PETR., 43, 1; *he has his due; regularly, et.*

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view:

*Solōn, quōd tūtior vita eius esset, furere sē simulāvit, C., Off., I. 30, 108; Solon feigned madness that his life might be the safer. (The notion of Result intrudes.) Pompælius ignē fieri prohibuit, quōd occultior esset eius adventus, CAES., B.C., III. 30, 5; Pompey forbade fires to be kindled in order that his approach might be the better concealed.*

NOTES.—1. Occasionally, principally in early Latin, the Reflexive seems to be used with the force merely of a third personal pronoun :

*Vitis si macro erit, sarmenta sua conciditō minutā, CATO, Agr., 37, 8.*

But sentences like *cum sēcisse siunt quod sibi faciundum fuit* (PL., Poen., 956), where the relative clause is but a circumlocution for *officium suum*, belong properly under R. 4. Similarly, C., Inv., I. 33, 55. In the sentence, *Cicerō tibi mandat, ut Aristotēmō idem dē sē respondeas quod dē frātre suō respondisti* (C., Att., II. 7, 5), dē frātre *eius* would jar on account of the *sē* to which it refers.

2. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways :

[Rōmāni] lēgātōs miséraret qui sē [Prūsiā] pterent nō inimicissimum suum (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē (= Prūsiām) habēret, NEP., XXIII. 12, 2; *the Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prussia not to keep their bitterest enemy at its court. Agrippa Atticūm flēbat atque obsecrābat ut sē sibi suisque reservāret, Q. NEP., XXV. 22, 2; Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].*

Hopeless ambiguity :

*Hērēs meus dare illi damnās estō omnia sua, QUINT., VII. 9, 12; my heir is to give him all that is his.*

3. For the sake of clearness, the subj. of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive :

(Helvētiī) Allobrogibūs sēsē vel persuāstūrē existimābant vel vi coēctūrē ut per sūs flēs eds ire pateretur, CAES., B.G., I. 6, 3; *the Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvetians] go through their territory.*

4. *Ipsē* is always used in its proper distinctive sense ; so, when it represents the speaker in O. O. (660.)

### Eius and Sui.

522. Alexander moriēns ānulum suum dederat Perdiccas, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1; *Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

*Perdiccas accēperat eius ānulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.*

*Quārē Alexander dēclārāverat sē rēgnūm ei commendāsse, thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Ex quō Perdiccas coniēcerat eum rēgnūm sibi commendāsse, from this Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Ex quō omnes coniēcerant eum rēgnūm ei commendāsse, from this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Perdiccas p̄stulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent cum Alexander ānulum sibi dedisset, Perdiccas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

*Amici p̄stulārunt ut omnes eum rēgem habērent cum Alexander ānu-*

lum ei dedisset, (his) friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Laitmann and Müller.)

Ita sū gesserat Perdiccas ut ei rēgnū ab Alexandrō commendārētur, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

### OBJECT SENTENCES.

**523.** Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

NOTES.—1. These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The Accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a passive or intransitive verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

2. To object sentences belong also Dependent Interrogative clauses, which have been treated elsewhere for convenience of reference. See 453, 1, n., 400, 467.

#### I. Object Sentences introduced by QUOD.

**524.** Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) or expansions of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by **quod**, *that*.

NOTES.—1. This usage seems to be in origin explanatory; that is, a demonstrative in the leading clause is explained by the **quod** clause. But as the relative can always include the antecedent demonstrative, the prevailing usage is without an antecedent. In any case, however, the connection is essentially relative.

2. The original relation of **quod** and its antecedent is adverbial. They are Accusatives of Extent, *that = in that*, and are to be classed under the Inner Object (382). But after transitive verbs **quod** and its antecedent are felt as Outer Objects, though whenever the notion of Cause intrudes (*in that = because*), the original relation comes back, as in causal sentences proper.

3. The antecedent demonstrative (whether omitted or inserted) would therefore be either the direct object of the verb or it would be in adverbial or prepositional relation. We have then two uses of the explanatory clause; (a) with verbs, with or without an antecedent demonstrative; (b) as explanatory of an antecedent (expressed or implied) in adverbial relation to the verb or dependent upon a preposition.

**525. 1. Quod (the fact that, the circumstance that, in that)** is used to introduce explanatory clauses, after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

*Add hūc quod perferri litterae nullī condicōne potuērunt, POLLIO (C., Fam., x. 31, 4); add to this the fact that letters could under no circumstances be got through. Add quod ingenuū didicisse fidēliter artēs smollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferēs, Ov., Pont., II. 9, 47; add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage. Praeterēd quod*

*eam sibi domum dedit, C., Cluent., 66, 188 ; I pass over the fact that he chose that house for himself. Bene facis quod me adiuvas, C., Fin., III. 4, 16; you do well (in) that you help me. Accidit perincommodus quod eum nisquam vidisti, C., Att., I. 17, 2; it happened very unfortunately that you saw him nowhere. Bene mihi evenit quod mittere ad mortem, C., Tusc., I. 41, 97; it is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).*

NOTES.—1. Of verbs of Adding *adicio*re is introduced by LIVY, *addere* is cited once each from ACCIUS (209, R.) and TERENCE (*Ph.*, 168), then more often from LUCRETIUS, HORACE, and OVID, but not from CICERO and VERGIL. *Accidere* is the passive of *addere* and occurs at all periods. Of verbs of Dropping, only *praeterere*, *mittere*, and *omittere* (C., *Att.*, VIII. 3, 8) are cited (all classical).

2. *Esse* is found mostly in the combinations *quid (hōe) est quod, why is it that, this is why*, which are confined to early Latin : *Sicn quid est quod ego ad tē veniō? Pl., Men., 677 ; hōe est quod ad vobis veniō, Pl., St., 127.* *Est quod, nihil est quod, etc.,* occur here and there later, but the effect of the negative on the mood is noteworthy. Compare positive *sed est quod suscēnsat tibi* (TER., *Ind.*, 448) ; *there is something that makes him angry with you*, with negative *nihil est iam quod mihi suscēnsas* (PL., *Merc.*, 317) ; *there is nothing to make you angry with me.*

3. To this group belongs the exclamatory interrogation *Quid! quod, or quid quod — ? what of this, that?*

*Quid quod simulacrum mihi collibitum est praestō est imago? C., N.D., I. 38, 108; what is to be said of the fact that the image presents itself as soon as I see it? (Nay, does not the image present itself?)*

4. The use of *quod* after verbs of Doing and Happening is found first in CICERO ; PLAUTUS uses *quia* in this construction.

5. With several of the above-mentioned verbs *ut* can be employed, as well as *quod* (*ut*, of the tendency—*quod*, of the fact) :

*Ad Appi Claudii senectūtem accidēbat ut etiam caecus esset, C., Cat. M., 6, 16 (33, 4), or, quod caecus erat. Accidit quod patrem plus etiam quam ipse scit amō, C., Att., XII. 21, 7; besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.*

But when the action is prospective or conditional, *ut* must be used :

*Additur ad hanc definitiōnēm & Zenōne rēctē ut illa opinio praesentis malit recēns, C., Tusc., III. 31, 75.*

6. *Quod* with verbs of Motion as an adverbial Acc. is confined to early Latin and to *veniō* (PL., *Men.*, 677) and *mittō* (PL., *Ph.*, 639).

7. The extension of *quod* to *verba sentiendi et dicendi* is very unusual. One example in early Latin (PL., *Ann.*, 52) is much disputed ; suspicious examples are C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 6 ; CAES., *B.C.*, I. 23, 8, but a certain example is in *b.Hetr.* (10, 2), *re-nuntiārunt quod habērent*. The only case in Augustan poets is V., *A.*, IX. 289 ; it is doubtful in LIVY ; perhaps twice in TACITUS (*Ann.*, III. 54 ; XIV. 6). In later Latin, from PETRONIUS on, it becomes frequent.

2. *Quod (in that, as to the fact that)* is used to introduce explanatory clauses after demonstratives (expressed or implied), independent of the leading verb. See 627, R. 2.

*Mihi quidem videntur homines hāc rē maximē bestiis praestare, quod loqui possunt, C., Inv., I. 4; to me men seem to excel beasts most in this, that they have the power of speech. Praeterquam quod fieri nō potuit, nō fingi quidem potest, C., Div., II. 12, 28; besides the fact that this could not be done, it could not even be made up. Nil habet infelix paupertas*

dūrūs in sē quam quod (= id quod) ridiculūs hominēs facit, JUV., III. 152; unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous. Magnum beneficium [est] nātūrae quod necesse est mori, SEN., E.M., 101, 14 (204). Quod spirō et placed, si placed, tuum est, H., O., IV. 3, 24; that I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine.

NOTES.—1. In early usage the antecedent is not common, but it is employed very often by CICERO, for the purposes of argument.

2. Prepositional usages with the Abl. are ex eō, dē eō, in eō, prō eō, cum eō quod. Of these cum eō quod, with the proviso that, is very rare, occurring but once in CICERO (Att., vi. 1, 7). The prepositional usages with the Acc. are ad id quod (only in LIVY); super id quod (only in TACITUS); praeter quod (FLORUS and late writers); prae quod (PLAUTUS only). Similar is exceptō quod (HOR., QUINT.). As praeter and super are comparative in force, we find praeter quam quod (early Latin, Cic., and later), super quam quod (only in LIVY). Similar to praeter quod is nisi quod (PLAUT., CICERO [not *Oratione*], SALL., LIVY, and later). Tantum quod = nisi quod, once in CICERO (Verr., I. 45, 116) and is rare; tantum quod, temporal, "just," is colloquial, and found first in CICERO's *Letters*, then not till the post-Augustan period.

3. Quod, "as to the fact that," is combined also with the Subjv. In early Latin: quod ille gallinam sē sectārī dicat, etc. (PL., M.G., 162). This is explained as being the Potential Subjv., inasmuch as all the examples cited involve supposed statements or actions of a second or third (often indefinite) person, which the speaker merely wishes to anticipate. The usage is occasional, also, later: C., Pls., 27, 66; Verr., v. 68, 175, and sporadically in FENNO and GAIUS. Sometimes the idea of Partial Obliquity enters, as in C., Br., 18, 73, quod aequilis fuerit LIVIUS, minor fuit aliquantō; Inv., II. 29, 89, (reading doubtful).

In general the usage of quod, "as to the fact that," is familiar. CICERO uses it often in his *Letters*. But CAESAR is fond of it too. TACITUS has it but once (*Dial.*, 25).

### 3. The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in *Oratiō Obliqua*.

Cum Castam accidērem nihil magis pressū quam quod accusatōr sīus praevaricationis criminē corrīsset, PLIN., Ep., III. 9, 34; when I accused Casta there was no point that I laid more stress on than (what I stated) "that her accuser had gone to pieces under a charge of collusion."

REMARK.—Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, etc., take quod with the Indic. or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 539.

## II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.

### 526. Preliminary Observation.—On the simple Infinitive as an object, see 423.

The Inf., as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (420.)

527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving (*verba sentiendi et dēclarandi*), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive:

Thalēs MILēsius aquam dixit esse initium rērum, C., N.D., I. 10, 25;

*Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.* [Solōn] furere s̄e simulāvit, C., Off., i. 30, 108; *Solon pretended to be mad.* Medic⁹ canas morbi inventa cūrātōnēm esse inventam putant, C., Tusc., iii. 10, 28; *physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.* Volucrē vidimus fingere et cōstruere nīdōs, C., Or., ii. 6, 23; *we see that birds fashion and build nests.* Audiet cīvēs acuisse ferrum, H., O., i. 2, 21; *[the youth] shall hear that citizens gave edge to steel.* Timāgenēs auctor est omnium in litteris studiorūm antiquissimam mūsicā extitisse, QUINT., i. 10, 10; *Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.*

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (O. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—1. Verba sentiendi comprise two classes, those of (a) Actual and those of (b) Intellectual Perception. Some verba, such as *sentire*, *videre*, *cernere*, *audire*, belong to both classes. Otherwise the most common are:

(a) *Cōspicāri*, *cōspicere*, *aspicere*, *sūspicere*, *p̄spicere*, also rarely *tūrī* and *sonniāre* (early).

(b) *Intelligere*, *cōgnoscere*, *comperīre*, *scīre*, *nescīre*, and less commonly, but Ciceronian, *discoere*, *ignōrāre*, *accipere*, *animadvertere*, *perspicere*, etc.

2. Verba dēclārandi can likewise be divided into two classes : (a) those of Actual and (b) those of Intellectual Representation; but the classes often fade into each other, or, rather, a verb of Intellectual Representation can be readily used as one of Actual Representation. In general, verbs of Intellectual Representation are those of Thinking, Remembering, Belief and Opinion, Expectation, Trust and Hope. Verbs of Actual Representation are those of Saying, Showing, Approving, Boasting, Pretending, Promising, Swearing, Threatening, Accusing (the last have more often *quod*). Verbs of Concluding belong always to both classes. The principal of these verbs are : *patrē*, *dīcere*, *arbitrāri*, *cēnāre*, *stūpīcāri*, *crēdere*, *existīmāre*, *mēminisse*, *cōfidere*, *spērāre*, *dēspērāre*. Then *dīcere*, *ēdīcere*, *affīrmāre*, *cōfirmāre*, *āīō* (rare), *loqui* (rare), *negāre*, *fātāri*, *nārrāre*, *trādēre*, *scribere*, *nūntiāre*, *ostendēre*, *probāre*, *glōriāri*, *dēmōnstrāre*, *persuādēre*, *significāre*, *pollicēri*, *prōmittēre*, *mināri*, *simulāre*, *diessimulāre*, etc.; *conclūdere*, *collīgere*, *effīcere*. Also *pōnēre*, *to suppose* (rare), *façēre*, *to represent*. Similar expressions are *spēs est*, *opīnīō est*, *fāma est*, *auctor sum*, *tātis sum*, *cōtīōrem aliquem façēre*, etc.

3. When the subj. of the Inf. is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subj. may be omitted—chiefly with Fut. Inf.—and then *esse* also is dropped. This occurs rarely in CICERO, more frequently in early Latin, CÆSAR, and later.

*Refractūrōs carcerem minabantur, L., vi. 17, 6; they threatened to break open the jail.*

4. The simple Inf. is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Infinitive. This is especially true of verbs of Hoping and Promising. *Sperō mē hōc adeptūrum esse, I hope to (that I shall) obtain this. Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, he promised to (that he would) come.*

5. When the Acc. with the Inf. is followed by a dependent Acc., ambiguity may arise :

*Ālō tē, Aeacidi, Rōmānōs vincere posse (C., Div., ii. 56, 116), in which tē may be subject or object.*

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn :

*Ālō & tē, Aeacidi, Rōmānōs vinci posse, I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.*

*Ālō tē, Aeacidi, & Rōmānōs vinci posse, I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.*

When the context shows which is the real subj., formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see QUINT., VII. 9, 10.

NOTES.—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Part. to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (588). As there is no Pr. Part. pass., the Inf. must be used, and thus the difference between Intellectual and Actual Perception is effaced, sometimes even in the active, and, in fact, the use of the Part. is confined to authors who are consciously influenced by a rivalry with the Greek.

*Audiō cīvēs acūtē ferrum, (Y.H., O., i. 2, 21; I hear citizens sharpen(ing) the steel. Audiō & cīvibus acūl ferrum, I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens. Octāvium (dolōrē) obnīfīl vidi, C., Fin., ii. 28, 98; I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish. Vidi histrōnē flēntēs ēgredi, QUINT., vi. 2, 35; I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.*

(Plato) & Deō aedificārī mundum facit, C., N.D., i. 8, 19; *Plato makes out that the universe is built by God. Polyphēmū Homērus cum ariete cōloquentem facit, C., Tusc., v. 39, 115 (586). Fac, quaeſō, qui ego sum esse tē, C., Fam., VII. 23, 1; suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.*

2. The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nom. after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical; the first example is PL., *Astin.*, 634.

*Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium cōterrīmus, Cat., iv. 1; that pinnace yonder, which you see, my stranger guests, declares she used to be (claims to have been) the fastest craft afloat.*

There is one example in Cicero (*Aggr.*, ii. 21, 57).

3. The use of the Acc. and Inf. with *verba dēclarandi* is an outgrowth of the use after verbs of Creation (428), just as in English "I declare him to be," is an extension of "I make him to be," in which Acc. and Inf. have each its proper force. This is the origin of the so-called *Ōratiō Obliqua*, or Indirect Discourse, which represents not the exact language used, but the general drift, and in which the tenses of the Inf. seem to represent approximately the tenses of the Indicative. It was to complete the scheme of the Tenses that the Fut. Inf. was developed, and this is the sole use of that tense. The use of the Acc. and Inf. after *verba sentiendi*, like the use in English "I see him go," is more primitive, but the original case of the Inf. is no longer felt.

## Nominative with Infinitive.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving :

1. In the Simple tenses prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.
2. In the Compound tenses prefer the impersonal construction, which is the rule with Gerund and Gerundive.

Thus, instead of

*Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, they say that Homer was blind,*  
we should have,

*Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, Homer is said to have been blind,*  
or,  
[*Trāditum*] est Homērum caecum fuisse, C., *Tusc.*, v. 39, 114; *there is a tradition that Homer was blind.*

[*Aristaeus*] inventor olei esse dicitur, C., *Verr.*, iv. 57, 128; *Aristaeus is said to be the inventor of oil.* Terenti fabellae propter elegantiam sermōnis putābantur & Laeliō scribi, C., *Att.*, vii. 3, 10; *Terence's plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius.* [Si Vējō migrābimus] emisisse patriam vidēbimur, L., v. 53, 5; *if we remove to Veji, we shall seem to have lost our country.* Reus damnātūm iri vidēbātur, *QUINT.*, ix. 2, 88 (435, n. 4). Crēditur Pythagorae auditōrem fuisse Numam, L., xl. 29, 8; *it is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.*

But : •

[*Venerem*] Adōnidī nūpāisse prōditum est, C., *N.D.*, iii. 23, 59; *it is recorded that Venus married Adonis.* (*Philōnem*) existimandum est disertum fuisse, C., *Or.*, i. 14, 62; *we must suppose that Philo was eloquent.*

REMARKS.—1. The impersonal construction is the rule if a Dat. is combined with the verb : *mīhi nūntiābātur Parthōs trānsāsse Euphrātem*, C., *Fam.*, xv. 1, 2; *it was announced to me that the Parthians had crossed the Euphrates.*

2. Various peculiarities are noteworthy in the matter of these verbs. Thus, *dicitur* usually means *it is maintained, dictum est, it is said.* *Crēditur, etc.* (impersonal), is the regular form in classical prose ; the personal construction is poetical and late. *Vidērī* is used, as a rule, personally ; the impersonal construction *vidētūr* is rare. The active forms *trādunt, crēdunt, etc.*, are everywhere common.

**Notes.**—1. In early Latin the personal construction is found with *argui*, *cluēre* (a virtual passive), *dicī*, *existimārī*, *invenīrī*, *iubērī*, *nuntiārī*, *perhibērī*, *reperīrī*. All these, except *cluēre*, are retained in the classical period. *CICERO* and *CAESAR* add twenty-five new verbs, and from this time on the construction increases.

2. Virtual passives, on the analogy of *cluēre*, are rare; *appellārī*, *cōstatārī*, *venīrī* in *suspicioñem*, are Ciceronian; so also *opus est* in [C.], *Fam.*, xi. 11, 2, and perhaps *TER.*, *And.*, 337.

3. A second clause following a Nom. with the Inf. takes its subj. in the Accusative C., *Or.*, II. 74, 299.

4. In verbs of Saying, except *dicō* (compare *TAC.*, *Ann.*, iv. 34, 8), the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this head.

#### Tenses of the Infinitive with Verba Sentiendi et Dēclārandi.

**529.** The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (281).

**530.** After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

**REMARK.**—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I have been studying*, *I had been studying*. Hence, the Impf. Indic. (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Pf. Inf., because it is prior to the leading verb.

**[5]** In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

#### 531.

#### Contemporaneous Action.

##### ACTIVE.

P. T. *Dicit*: tō errāre,  
*He says, that you are going wrong,*

##### PASSIVE.

tō dēcipiāt,  
*that you are (being) deceived (217, n.).*

H. T. *Dicobat*: tō errāre,  
*He was saying, that you were going wrong,*

tō dēcipiāt,  
*that you were (being) deceived.*

#### Prior Action.

P. T. *Dicit*: tō errāsse,  
*He says, that you have gone wrong,*  
*that you went wrong,*  
*that you have been going wrong,*

tō dēceptum esse,  
*that you have been (are) deceived,*  
*that you were deceived (AOR.),*  
*(that people have been deceiving you).*

H. T. Dicēbat: tō errāsse,	tō dōceptum esse,
He was saying, that you had gone wrong,	that you had been deceived, wrong,
that you went wrong,	that you were deceived (AOR.),
that you had been going wrong,	(that people had been deceiving you).

*Subsequent Action.*

P. T. Dicit: tō errātūrum esse,	tō dōceptum fīl,
He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong,	that you (are going to) will be de- ceived.
H. T. Dicēbat: tō errātūrum esse,	tō dōceptum fīl,
He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,	that you were going to (would) be deceived.

*Periphrastic Future.*

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the verb has no Sup. or Fut. participle. It is often formed from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the passive than the Fut. Inf. pass. of the paradigms.

P. T. Dicit: fore (futūrum esse) ut errā- rēs (metuēs),	fore ut dōcipiāris (metuāris),
fore (futūrum esse) ut errā- verēs (rare),	fore ut dōceptus sis (rare), usually dōceptum fore (not futūrum esse).
H. T. Dicēbat: fore (futūrum esse) ut errā- rēs (metuēs),	fore ut dōciperāris (metuerāris), dōceptum fore (rarely: fore ut dō- ceptus esse).

NOTES.—1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 248.

*Carthaginīsēs dōbellātūm mōx fore rēbantur*, L., xxiii. 13, 6; *the Cartha-  
gīnians thought that the war would soon be (have been) brought to an end.* From  
*dōbellātūm erit*, *it will be (have been) brought to an end.* So in the deponent *adep-  
tum fore*.

2. Ponderous periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So *fētīlēs dōrēvērunt  
utrum eōrum fēcisset rēctē factūrum* (L., xxxi. 8); not *fore ut fēcisset*, although  
the O. R. requires *utrum fēceris*, *rēctē fēceris*. (244, n. 4.) See Weissenborn's  
note.

3. *Posse*, *velle*, etc., do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (248, n.)

4. *Sperāre*, *to hope*, *promittere* (*polloērī*), *to promise*, which regularly take the  
Fut. Inf., have occasionally the Pr. when an immediate realization of the hope is antici-  
pated. With *sperā est* the Pr. Inf. is more common.

*Lēgāti veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare*, *Cæs.*, *B.G.*, iv. 21, 5; *ambassa-  
dors come to promise the giving of (to give) hostages*.

So, too, when the Fut. Inf. is not available, sometimes also when it is, *posse* and  
the Pr. is a fair substitute. *Totius Galliae sēsēs potiri posse* (= *potiūrēs esse*)  
*sperānt*, *Cæs.*, *B.G.*, i. 3, 8; *they hope they can (will) get possession of the whole of  
Gaul*. See 423, n. 5.

Of course *sperāre* may be used simply as a verb of thinking.

**Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.**

**532.** Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected.

*Si vis mē flēre, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, H., A.P., 102; if you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself. Utrum [Milēnis] corporis an Pythagorae tibi mālis vīrōe ingenii dari? C., Cat. M., 10, 33; which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind? Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus, MAET., II. 59 (376). Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat inchoare longam, H., O., I. 4, 15 (428, N. 6). Nēmō ire quemquam pūblicō prohibet vīa, PL, Cūrc., 35 (389). Germāni vinum ad sē omnīnō importari nōn sinunt, CAES., B.G., IV. 2, 6; the Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.*

**REMARKS.—I.** A list of these verbs is given in 428, N. 2.

2. When the subj. of the Inf. is the same as the subj. of the leading verb, the subj. of the Inf. is usually not expressed:

*Nī pārērē vellī, periculum erit ante lucernā, JUV., X. 339; unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light. Et iam mālēt equēs numquām tetigisse paternū, Ov., M., II. 182; and now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses.*

But the subj. may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Inf. is not within the power of the subject; so especially with an Inf. passive:

*(Timoleōn) māluit sē dīlīgīt quām metūl, NEP., XX. 3, 4; Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared. Ego rūs abītūram mē cōrtō dōcrōvī, TER., Hec., 586. Prīncipēm sē ēsē mālvūt quām vīdīrī, C., Off., I. 19, 65.*

**Notes.—1.** On the construction of this class of verbs with *ut* (nō, quōminus), see 546. *Imperō*, *I command*, in model prose takes only the Inf. passive or deponent; in SALLUST, HIRTIUS, CURTIUS, TACITUS, and the Poets sometimes the active.

*(Hannibal) imperāvit quām plūrimās venōnātīs serpentēs vivīs collīgt, NEP., 23, 10; Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.*

*Permittō* seldom takes the Inf. (e.g., C., Verr., v. 9, 22); the Acc. with Inf. begins in TACITUS; *concedō* takes Inf. pass. only, in classical prose. *Iubēd*, *I bid*; *sinō*, *I let*; *vētō*, *I forbid*; *prohibēd*, *I prohibit*, always have the Inf. of passive verba. With *sinō* and *vētō* the model construction is Inf. only. *Sinō* takes *ut* occasionally in early and late Latin, *vētō* does not have *nō* till in the post-Ciceronian period. *Iubērē* takes *ut* when it is applied to decrees of the Senate, and from LIVY on when used of the orders of generals; *prohibērē* takes *nō* and *quōminus*. These verbs may themselves be turned into the passive: *iubērō*, *sinōrō*, *vētōrō*, *prohibērō*.

2. After *iubēd*, *I bid*, and *vētō*, *I forbid*, the Inf. act. can be used without a subj. (even an imaginary or indefinite one):

*Iubēt reddere, he bids return (orders the returning).*

*Vetat adhibēre medicinam*, C., *Att.*, xvi. 15, 5; *he forbids the administration of medicine*. *Infandum, régina, iubes renovare dolorem*, V., *A.*, ii. 3; *unspeakable, O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revive*.

3. After *vōlō, nōlō, mālō* in early Latin, *ut* and the Subjv. is proportionally more common than in the classical time. But with the Potential forms, *velim, mālim, vellem, māllem*, CICERO uses only the Subjv. (without *ut*). When *vōlō* means *maintain*, it takes the Inf. only; see 540, n. 1.

4. It is noteworthy that in classical Prose *cupere* never takes *ut*, while *optare* never takes the Infinitive.

5. On the use of the Pf. Inf. instead of the Pr. after these verbs, see 537, n. 1.

6. The Poets go much further in using verbe and phrases as expressions of Will and Desire. See 423, n. 4.

#### Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

533. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking. (542.)

*Salvom tē advénisse gaudeō*, TER., *Ph.*, 286; *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe)*. *Quod salvos advénisti, that you have arrived safe*. *Quod salvos advénieris, that (as you say) you have arrived safe*.

*Inferiores nōn dolēre [dēbent] sūt & suis dignitati superārī*, C., *Lael.*, 20, 71; *inferiors ought not to consider it a grievance that they are surpassed in rank by their own (friends)*.

REMARKS.—1. This construction, outside of a few verbs, is not common, though found in a wide range of authors. *Gaudēre, laetārī, dolēre, querī* (beginning in CIC.), *mīrārī*, are common; in addition CICERO uses, rarely, however, more than once each. *maerēre, litigēre, cōfici, discruciārī, angī, sollicitārī, indignārī, fremēre, dēmīrārī, admirārī, subesse timōrem*. Early Latin shows *ridēre* (*NAEV.*), *gestire, mihi dolet* (TER.), *maestus sum* (*PLAUT.*), *cruciārī* (*PLAUT.*), *kāmentārī* (*PLAUT., HOR.*), *suspīrārī* (*LUCR.*), *incendō irā* (TER.), *ferōx est* (*PLAUT.*), *invidēre* (*PLAUT., HOR.*), *formidārī, verērī*, in addition to the common *gaudēre, etc.*, already cited.

2. On the Participle after a verb of Emotion, 536, n. 2.

#### Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling.

*Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī*, C., *Fam.*, xiv. 2, 2; *h'm, light of my life, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear*. *Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecō loqui?* PLIN., *Ep.*, iv. 3, 5; *a Roman speak such good Greek?* (*To think that a Roman should speak such*

*good Greek.) Māne inceptō dāsistere—* V., A., I. 37; *I—desist from my undertaking?* Hinc abire mātrem? Ter., Hec., 612; *mother go away from here?*

REMARKS.—1. Different is *quod*, which gives the ground.

*Ei mihi quod nūllis amor est sānctibilis herbis,* Ov., M., I. 523; *woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.*

2. On *ut*, with the Subjv. in a similar sense, see 558. Both forms offer an objection.

#### Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be treated as the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

In the English "for—to," the "for" belongs not to the case but to the Infinitive, but the object relation has been effaced here as it has been in Latin. See 422, n. 1.

*Est infīsūtūm rēgēm reūm capitiſ ēſſe,* C., Dei., I. 1; *it is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.* Facinus est vincere cīvēm Rōmānum, C., Verr., v. 66, 170; *it is an outrage to put a Roman citizen in chains.* Necesse est facere sūmptūm qui quaerit (= eum qui quaerit) lucrem, Pl., As., 218; *need is that he make outlay who an income seeks.* Lēgem brevem ēſſe oportet, quād facilius ab imperitis teneatur, SEN., E.M., 94, 38; *it is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.* Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdiūm, C., Mil., 13, 34 (382, 2). Opus est tē animō valēre, C., Fam., XVI. 14, 2 (406, n. 5).

REMARKS.—1. A list of expressions taking the Inf. as a subj. is given in 422, nn.

2. *Oportet, it is proper*, and *necesse est, must needs*, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with *ut*. (See 557.)

*Necesse* also takes the Dat. of the Person :

*Ut culpent alii, tibi mā laudāre necesse est,* Ov., Her., 12, 181; *let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

3. When the indirect obj. of the leading verb is the same as the subj. of the Inf. the predicate of the subj. is put in the same case as the indirect object : in standard prose chiefly with *licet, it is left (free)*; in poetry and later prose with *necessere*, with *satis est, it is better, contingit, it happens, vacat, there is room.*

*Licuit ēſſe ūtiſēs Themistocli,* C., Tusc., I. 15, 38; *Themistocles was free to live a life of leisure.*

The Acc. is occasionally found ; always if the Dat. is not expressed.

*Mediūs ēſſe iam nō licēbit (nō),* C., Att., x. 8, 4; *it will no longer be allowable to be neutral.*

## Object Sentences Represented by the Participle.

**536.** The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation.

Catōnem vidi in bibliothēca sedentem multis circumfusum Stōicōrum librī, C., *Fin.*, III. 2, 7; *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him.* Prōdiga nōn sentit pereunte mēmī cōsum, JUV., VI. 362; *the lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.* Saepe illam andīvi furtivā vōcē loquentem, CAT., LXVII. 41; *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy (in an under-) tone.* Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 19 (542). Polyphēnum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit, C., *Tusc.*, V. 39, 115; *Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.*

NOTES.—1. This construction is found but once in early Latin (*Piso*), then in CICERO, SALLUST, NEPOS, VITRUVIUS, LIVY, HORACE. The naturalization of it is due to CICERO, and other students of Greek models. The poverty of Latin in participles was a serious drawback to the convenient distinction from the Infinitive; and it may be said that the participle was never perfectly at home.

2. On the Inf., see 527, N. 1. The Greek construction of Part. agreeing with the leading Nom. after verbs of Perception and Emotion, is rare and poetical:

Gaudēnt sorbentēs, H., *Ep.*, II. 2, 107; *they have joy while writing.* Sēnsit mediō delīspens in hostēs, V., A., II. 377; *he perceived (it) having fallen (that he had fallen) 'midst the enemy.* Gaudēnt perfūl sanguine frātrūm, V., G., II. 510; *they rejoice, bedrenched with brothers' blood.*

**537.** The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment:

Si quī voluntatib⁹ dūcuntur missōe facient honōrē, C., *Sest.*, 66, 138; *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them dismiss honors (at once and forever).* Hunc mandē si quid rēctōe cōrātūm velis, TER., *Ad.*, 372; *you must intrust to him whatever you want properly attended to.*

NOTES.—1. After verbs of Will and Desire, the Inf. *esse* is occasionally found with this Part., and hence it may be considered a Pf. Infinitive (280, 2, c). Compare, however, Pf. Part. pass. with *opus est*, *fīsus est* (406).

2. The verbs of Causation thus employed are *cūrāre*, *dare*, *facere*, *reddere*. The usage is most common in early Latin. In the classical period only *missum facere*.

## CAUSAL SENTENCES.

**538.** Causal sentences are introduced :

1. By *quia*, *because*, *quod*, *(in that) Because*.
2. By *quoniam* (*quom iam*), *now that*, *quandō*, *quandō* } (Cause)  
                         *quidem*, *since*. } Proper.)

3. By *cum* (*quem*), *as.* (Inference.)
4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, etc. (See 626, 634.)

**Notes.**—1. *Quod* is the Acc. Sing. neuter, and *quia* is probably the Acc. Pl. neuter from the relative stem. They have accordingly often a correlative demonstrative; so with *quod*: *et*, *et* *rū*, *ideō*, *idcirō*, *et* *gratiā* (in *SALLUST* only), *hōc*, *hōc mente* (*H.*, *S.*, II. 2, 90), *propterē*, and a few combinations with *ob* and *propter*; with *quia* are found *et*, *et* *rū*, *ideō*, *idcirō*, *propterē*, and *ergō* (in *PLAUTUS* only).

2. *Quod* and *quia* differ in classical prose, chiefly in that *quod* is used, and not *quia*, when the causal sentence is at the same time an object sentence.

3. *Quoniam* is originally temporal, and as such is still found in *PLAUTUS*. The causal use of it becomes much more extensive in classical prose, and, like *quandō* (*quandoquidem*), it is used of *evident* reasons.

4. *Quandō* is used principally as a temporal particle. In a causal sense it is very rare in *CICERO* in the *Orations* never, unless compounded with *quidem*), and is not found in *CAESAR*. The compound with *quidem* is more common.

5. *Quātūnus*, *in so far as*, is poetical and in late prose. *HORACE* shows first example, *O.*, III. 24, 30. *VALERIUS M.*, *QUINTILLIAN*, *TACITUS*, *PLINY MINOR*, and *SUTONIUS* show occasional examples.

#### Causal Sentences with QUOD, QUILA, QUONIAM, and QUANDO.

**539.** Causal sentences with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō* are put in the Indicative, except in oblique relation (Partial or Total).

**REMARK.**—The other person of the oblique clause may be imaginary, and the writer or speaker may quote from himself indirectly :

*Lactūtus sum, quod mihi licet rēta defendere*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 18; *I was glad (to say to myself) that I was free to champion the right.*

**540.** Causal sentences with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō* take the Indicative in Direct Discourse.

*Torquatus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat necāti fūsset*, S., C., 52, 30; *Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s)* [quod pugnāset = because, as Torquatus said or thought]. *Amantes dō fōrmā iūdiciō nō possunt, quia sōnsu oculōrum praecepit animus*, QUINT., VI. 2, 6; *lovers cannot judge of beauty, because the heart forestalls the eye*. *Quia nātūra mūtāri nō potest idcirō vēras amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32; *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting*. *Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frāstrā mē nātūm existumem*, C., *Cat.M.*, 23, 84; *and I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain*. *Solus erō quoniam nō licet esse tuum*, PROP., II. 9, 46; *I shall be alone since I may not be thine*. *Voluptā sēmovenda est quandō ad mālora quaedam nātī sumus*, Cf. C., *Fin.*, V. 8, 21; *pleasure is to be put aside*

*because we are born for greater things.* Erant quibus appetentior famae [Helvidius] videtur quandō etiam sapientibus cupidō glōriæ novissima exsūtur, Tac., H., iv. 6, 1; *there were some to whom Helvidius seemed too eager for fame, since, even from the wise, ambition is the last (infirmity) that is put off.* Sequitur ut liberatōres (sint), quandōquidem tertium nihil potest esse, C., Ph., ii. 13, 31.

541. Causal sentences with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō* take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctū ambulabat in pùblico Themistocles quod somnum capere nō posset, C., Tusc., iv. 19, 44; *Themistocles used to walk about in public at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.* Aristides nōnne ob eam causam expulsus est patriæ quod praeter modum iustus esset? C., Tusc., v. 36, 105; (*there is*) *Aristides; was he not banished his country for the (alleged) reason "that he was unreasonably just"?* [N.B.] compōne comás quia sīs venturus ad illam, Ov., Rem. Am., 679 (517). Quoniam (so most MSS.) ipse prō sē dicoere nōn posset, verba fecit frāter sīus Stesagoras, NEP., i. 7, 5; *"as [Miltiades] could not speak for himself," his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech.* (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

A good example is PL., M.G., 1412-15.

NOTES.—1. *Quia* is the usual particle in the causal sense in PLAUTUS, *quod* being very rare; but *quod* is more common in TERENCE, and is the regular particle in classical prose (CAESAR has but one case of *quia*), though the use of *quia* revives in post-classical Latin. CICERO makes a point on the difference in meaning in Roc. Am., 50, 145: *concedō et quod (by reason of the fact that) animus aequus est, et quia (because) necesse est.*

2. A rejected reason is introduced by *nōn quod* with the Subjv. (as being the suggestion of another person). The Indic., which is properly used of excluded facts, is also used of flat denials, like the negative and Indic. in the independent sentence, but the Subjv. is the rule. *Nōn quia* is the rule in early Latin, but classical prose shows very few examples. From LIVY on it becomes common. Other equivalents are *nōn quād*, *nōn eō quod*, *nōn eō quād*; further, *nōn quin* for *nōn quād nōn*. All of these are found with Subjv. only. The corresponding affirmative is given by *sed quod* or *sed quia* indiscriminately, regularly with the Indicative.

Subjunctive:

Fugiliæ in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundendū vōce omne corpus intendit, venitque plaga vehementior, C., Tusc., ii. 23, 56; *boxers in plying the caestus have groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch and the blow comes with a greater rush.* Mātērēs nostrī in dominum dē servū quaseri nōlērunt; nōn quin posset vērum inventiri, sed quia vidēbatur indignum esse, C., Mil., 22, 59; *our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though they thought) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.* A [Lacedaemoniōrum exilibus] praetor vim arcuerat, nōn quia salvōs vellet sed quia perire causā indictā nōlēbat, L., xxxviii. 33, 11; *the praetor had warded off violence from the*

*Lacedaemonian exiles, not (as you might have supposed) because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).*

The same principle applies to *magis quod (quod)*, *quia—quam quod* (first in CICERO), *quod* (first in SALLUST), *quia* (first in LIVY), with the moods in inverse order.

*Libertatis originem inde, magis quia annum imperium consulare factum est quam quod dominatum quidquam sit ex regis potestate, numeris, L., II. 1, 7; you may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consular government was limited to a year, than because ought was taken away from the royal power.*

Indicative :

*Sum non dicam miser, sed certe exercitus, non quia multis debet sed quia saepe concurrent aliquorum bene de me meritorum inter ipsos contentiones, C., Planc., 3a, 78; I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many, but because the rival claims of some who have deserved well of me often conflict. Compare also H., S., II. 2, 80.*

3. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are occasionally put in the Subjv. with *quod* by a kind of attraction. Compare 586, n. 3.

*Impetrare non potui, quod religione se impediri dicebant, C., Fam., IV. 12, 3; I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple (= quod impeditur, because (as they said) they were prevented).*

This attraction is said to occur not unfrequently in CICERO, several times in CAESAR and SALLUST, but is not cited from any other author. Compare, however, *arcederent*, L., XXI. 1, 3.

4. On the use of *tamquam*, etc., to indicate an assumed reason, see 602, n. 4.

5. *Quandique* is archaic and rare. It is found first in the Twelve Tables, a few times in CICERO and LIVY, three times in HORACE, and occasionally later.

6. Causal sentences may be represented by a participle (669), or by the relative (636).

#### QUOD with Verbs of Emotion.

542. **Quod** is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as verbs of Joy, Sorrow, Surprise, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already: 539.

Indicative :

*Gaudet quod spectant oculi te mille loquentem, H., Ep., I. 6, 10; rejoices that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking. Debet mihi quod tu nunc stomacharis, C., ad Br., I. 17, 6; it pains me that you are angry now. Quintum paenitit quod animum tuum offendit, Cf. C., Att., XI. 13, 2 (377, n. 3). Invat me quod vigent studia, PLIN., Ep., I. 13, 1; I am charmed that studies are flourishing. Tristis es tibi indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris, Ov., Tr., IV. 3, 38; are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you. Tibi gratias ago, quod me omni molestia liberasti, C., Fam., XIIII. 62; I thank you, that you freed me from all annoyance.*

Subjunctive :

*Gaudet miles quod vicevit hostem, Ov., Tr., II. 49; the soldier rejoices*

*at having conquered the enemy. Neque mihi umquam venist in mentem poenitēre quod si mē ipse nōn dēsiderim, C., Att., II. 4, 2 ; it will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself. Laudat Africānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinentia, C., Off., II. 22, 76 ; Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent. Nāmō est grātērem quod Latinō loquerētur admirātus, C., Or., III. 14, 52 ; no one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin. Socratēs accūsātus est quod corrumpēret inventūtem, QUINT., IV. 4, 5 ; Socrates was accused of corrupting youth. Memini glōriāri solitum esse Quintum Hortēnsum quod numquām bellō civili interfuisset, C., Fam., II. 16, 3 ; I remember that Quintus Hortēnius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war. Agunt grātias quod sibl̄ pepercissent, CAES., B.C., I. 74, 2 (511, R. 1).*

REMARK.—This class of verbs may be construed with the Acc. and Inf.: *salvō tē advēnisse gaudēō* (533) ; also with *quia*, principally in early Latin, and in CICERO's Letters, then occasionally in LIVY, TACITUS, SUETONIUS, and later. But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, *quod* is more common. On *cum*, see 504, n. 2.

*Amō tē et nō neglēxisse habeo grātiām, TER., Ph., 54 ; I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it). Grātulor ingenium nō latuisse tuum, Ov., Tr., I. 9, 54 ; I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain hidden. [Isocratēs] queritur plūs hōnōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari, QUINT., III. 8, 9 ; Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.*

NOTES.—1. Perplexing Emotion (Wonder) may be followed by a Conditional, or by a Dependent Interrogative, as in English, but this construction is not found in VERGIL, CAESAR, SALLUST, and is never common.

*Miror si [Tarquinius] quemquam amicūm habēre potuit, C., Lad., 15, 54 ; I wonder if Tarquin could ever have had a friend.*

Besides *miror* (and *mīrum*), there is one case of *gaudēō si* in CICERO (*Verr.*, IV. 17, 57), and a few cases after expressions of Fear in TACITUS. There are also sporadic cases of *indignārī* (*indignitās*) *si*.

2. Noteworthy is the phrase *mīrum (-a) nī (nis)*, 'it's a wonder that—not', which belongs to the colloquialisms of early Latin (PL., *Capt.*, 820), but reappears once in LIVY.

## SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim ; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle *ut* (*how, that*), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence, as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative.

<i>Final</i> : nō (ut nō),	<i>Consecutive</i> : ut nōm, <i>that not.</i>
nō quis,	ut nōm, <i>that no one.</i>
nō nullus,	ut nullus, <i>that no.</i>
nō umquam, (nō quandō)	ut numquam, <i>that never,</i>
nō usquam, (nōcubi,)	ut nisquam, <i>that nowhere.</i>
nō aut—aut, (ut nōve—nōve,)	ut neque—neque, <i>that neither—nor.</i>

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Effecting have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of Hindering have the sequence of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of Fearing belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative Subjunctive ; the subordinate clause is only semi-dependent upon the principal, and we have a partial survival of original parataxis.

NOTES.—1. Inasmuch as the Subjv. cannot express a fact, the Latin Consecutive clause does not properly express actual result, but only a tendency, which may, we infer, lead to a result. To obviate this difficulty, the Latin has recourse to the circumlocutions with *accidit*, *venit*, etc.

2. It is to be remarked that the difference between Final and Consecutive often consists only in the point of view. What is final from the point of view of the doer is consecutive from the point of view of the spectator ; hence the variation in sequence after verbs of Effecting. A frustrated purpose gives a negative result ; hence the variation in negative after verbs of Hindering.

3. Here and there in Cicero, more often in Livy and later writers, instead of nōve (new), a second clause is added by neque, the force of the final particle being felt throughout the sentence.

*Monitor tuus susidabit tibi ut hinc discēdis neque mihi verbum illum responderemus*, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 16, 52 ; *your adviser will counsel you to depart hence and answer me never a word.*

#### FINAL SENTENCES.

544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle ; Pure Final Sentences (Sentences of Design).

*Oportet esse, ut vivas, nōn vivere ut edas*, [C.], *ad Her.*, iv. 28, 39 : *you must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.*

This form may be translated by, (*in order*) *to*; sometimes by *that may*, *that might*, *that*, with the Subjunctive and the like.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (*verba studii et voluntatis*, verbs of Will and Desire); Complementary Final Sentences.

*Volo ut mihi respondeas*, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17; *I wish you to answer me.*

This form is often rendered by *to*, never by *in order to*, sometimes by *that* and the Subjunctive, or some equivalent.

Of the same nature, but partly Final and partly Consecutive in their sequence, are :

#### Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are :

#### III. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARKS.—1. The use of the Subjv. with Temporal Particles often adds a final sense, inasmuch as the Subjv. regularly looks forward to the future. So *dum*, *dñec*, *quoad* (572), *antequam*, *priusquam* (577).

2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may also be expressed:

- (1) By the Relative *qui* with the Subjunctive. (630.)
- (2) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) *causa* or *gratia*. (428, n. 2.)
- (3) By *ad* with Gerund and Gerundive. (482.)
- (4) By the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive. (429, 2.)
- (5) By the Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive after verbs of Giving, etc. (480.)
- (6) By the Accusative Supine after verbs of Motion. (435.)
- (7) By the Future Participle Active (post-Ciceronian). (488, n.)
- (8) By the Infinitive (poetic and rare). (421, n. 1, a.)

#### I. Pure Final Sentences.

545. Pure Final Sentences are introduced by :

1. **Ut** (*uti*) (*how*) *that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs. (630.)

*Ut* and *nō* are often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as: *idcirco*, *therefore*; *eo*, *to that end*; *propter*, *on that account*; *eo* *cōsilio*, *with that design*; *ea causa*, *re*, *for that reason*.

2. **Quod = ut eo**, *that thereby*; with comparatives, *that the . . . —*:

3. *Nē, that not, lest*, continued by *nēve, neu.* (444.)

Oportet ēsse, ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās, [C.], *ad Her.*, IV. 28, 89 (544, I.). Inventa sunt specula, ut homō ipse s̄e nōset, SEN., *N.Q.*, I. 17, 4; *mirrors were invented, to make man acquainted with himself.* Ut am̄bris, am̄bilis estō, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 107; *that you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.* Lēgem brevem ēsse oportet, quōd facilius ab imperitis teneātur, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38 (535). [Senex] scriit arborēs, quae alteri saecūlō p̄sint, CAECILIUS (C., *Tusc.*, I. 14, 31); *the old man sets out trees, to do good to the next generation.* Semper habēt Pyladēn aliquem qui cōrēt Orestam, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 589; *always have some Pylades, to tend Orestes.* [Athēniēnsēs] c̄reat decem praeſtōrēs qui exer- cītūl praeſent, NEP., I. 4, 4; *the Athenians make ten generals to command their army.* [Magnēsiām Themistocli Artaxerxēs] urbēm dūmrat, quae ei pānēm praeberēt, NEP., II. 10, 8; *Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia, to furnish him with bread.* Gallinae pennis fovent pullōs, nō frigore laedantur, Cf. C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 120; *hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold.* Dionyſius, nō collum tōnsōri commi- teret, tondēre illis suā docuit, C., *Tusc.*, v. 20, 58 (428, N. 6).

**REMARKS.—I.** Ut nē is found for nē with apparently no difference in signification, occasionally at all periods, but not in CAESAR, SALLUST, LIVY. Quōd without comparative is rare and cited only from PLAUTUS, TERENCE, SALLUST, OVID, and late Latin; quōnē (= ut nē) is not found till the time of DICTYS; apparent examples in classical Latin are to be otherwise explained. Quōmīnus and quin occur in special uses.

2. Ut nōn is used when a particular word is negated:

Cōfer tē ad Mällūm, ut nōn s̄ectus ad alīēnsēs sed invitātus ad tuās issē videāris, C., *Cat.*, I. 9, 23; *belike yourself to Mallius, that you may seem to have gone not as an outcast to strangers but as an invited guest to your own (friends).*

3. Ut and nē are used parenthetically at all periods, depending on a suppressed word of Saying or the like.

Utque magis stupeās lādōs Paridēmque reliquit, JUV., VI. 87; *and to stun you more (I tell you that) she left Paris and the games.*

The verb of Saying may be inserted: atque ut omnēs intellegant diōd, C., *Imp.*, 8, 20; *and that all may understand, I say.*

## II. Complementary Final Sentences.

## A. Verbs of Will and Desire.

**546.** Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urg-

ing and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring (*verba studii et voluntatis*).

i. Positive : *ut*.

*Vol& ut mihi respondeas*, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17 (544, II.). (*Phaethon*) *opt&vit ut in currum patria toller&tur*, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 94; *Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot*. *Admone& ut cottidi& medit&re resistendum esse Ir&oundiae*, C., *Q.F.*, I. I. 13, 38; *I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness*. *Ubi (Caesarem) &rant, ut sibi parcat*, CAES., *B.G.*, vi. 9, 7; *the Ubi beg Caesar to spare them*. *Sed precor ut possim tuius esse miser*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 2, 78 (423, 2). *Exigis ut Priamus n&storum funere l&dat*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 7; *you exact that Priam sport at (his) sons' funeral*. *Ath&nien&s cum statuerent ut n&v&e c&nscenderent, Cyrus ilium quendam suidentem ut in urbe man&rent lapidibus obru&unt*, C., *Off.*, III. II, 48; *the Athenians, resolving to go on board their ships, overwhelmed with stones (= stoned) one Cyrus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city*.

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding.

*Pythia respondit ut moenibus lignis s& m&nirent*, NEP., II. 2, 6; *the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood*.

2. Negative : *n&e, ut n&e*; continued by *n&eve (neu), and not*.

*Caesar suis imper&vit n&e quod omnino t&lum in hostiis r&eicerent*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 46, 2; *Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy*. *Themistocles [collagis suis] praedixit ut n&e prius Lacedaemoniorum legatis dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus*, NEP., II. 7, 3; *Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he were sent back*. *Pompeius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent n&eve s& loco mov&rent*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 92, 1; *Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position*.

REMARKS.—1. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Inf. must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indic. : *vol&*, *I will have it* (maintain), *mone&*, *I remark*, *persuade&*, *I convince*, *d&cern&*, *I decide*, *c&g&*, *I conclude*.

[*Mone&*] *artem sine adiudicante dicendi n&on multum inv&re*, Cf. [C.], *ad Her.*, I. I. 1; *I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail*. *Vix culquam persuad&batur Graecis omni c&essur&s (R&m&n&s)*, I., XXXIII. 32, 3; *scarce any one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece*. *N&on sunt isti audiendi qui virtutem duram et quasi ferream esse quandam volunt*, C., *Lael.*, 13, 48 (313, R. 2). *Est*

*mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem pluribus rēbus excellere*, C., *Brut.*, 21, 84; *it is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels in more things (than one).*

2. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjv., without *ut*, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Pr. and Impf. is removed :

*Velim existimēs nōminem cuiquam cōriōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihi*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 24; *I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to any one than you to me.* *Malū tē sapiēns hostis metuat quam stulti cīvēs laudent*, L., XXII. 39, 20; *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.* *Exclusātūm habēs mē rogo*, cōmō domi, *Mart.*, II. 79, 2 (288). *Hic ades, insāni feriant sine litora fluctūs*, V., *Ec.*, 9, 48; *come hither (and) let the mad waves lash the shores.* *Tam fālx esse quam fōrmidissima velle*, Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 (302). *Velle mē ad cēnam invitās*, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1 (261, R.). *Occidit occidērīque sinīs cum nōmīne Trīa*, V., *A.*, XII. 828; *'tis fallen, and let Troy be fallen, name and all.*

So iubeō in poetry and later prose. Compare also potius quam, 577, N. 6.

3. Ut nō is not used after verbs of negative signification, as impediō, *I hinder, recīsō, I refuse* (548). Otherwise there seems to be no difference in meaning between it and nō, except that sometimes the nō seems to apply more to a single word in the sentence.

4. On nōdūm, see 482, 5, R. 2.

Nōrēs.—1. Such verbs and phrases are : *Willing and Wishing*: volō, nōlō, mālō, optō, studeō. *Warning and Beseaching*: horter, adhortor, monēd, admonēd, auctor sum, cōnsilium dō, trō, rogō, petō, precor, pōscō, pōstulō, fāgitō, obsecrō. *Urging and Demanding*: suādēd, persuādēd, cōnād, imperō, mandō, praecipiō, bēdō, diō, scribō. *Revolting and Endeavoring*: statō, cōstituō, dēcerō, nitor, contendō, labōrō, pīgnō, id agō, operam dō, cīrō, videō, pōvideō, pōspiciō, legēm ferō, lēx est, etc.

2. Substantives of kindred meaning, in combination with the copula or other verbs, take similar constructions. Such are voluntās, cupiditās, spēs, fīrōr, auctōritās, cōnsilium (especially in the combination eō, hōc cōnsiliō), signum, praeceptum, exemplum, prōpositum, officium, negōtium, mītūs, verba, and litteras (with dare, mittere, etc.), sententia, animus (especially eō animō), condicō (especially eō condicōne), foedus, iūs, lēx (eō lēge), cīra, opera, causa, ratiō.

3. Instead of *ut* with the Subjv., the Inf. is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with iubeō, *I ordēr*, 582. With verbs of Asking, however, the Inf. is not common until VRECHL. *Orāre* has Inf. once in PLAUTUS, then in VRECHL and later poets; in prose first in TACITUS. *Rogāre* has ut regularly, Inf. only once (CAT., XXXV. 10). *Quaestō, implorō, obsecrō, obtōrō, never have Inf., fāgitāre* only once (B., S., II. 4, 61) until SERTONIUS; *pōstulāre* very often, especially in early Latin in the sense *expect*; *pōscere* not till the Augustan poets. Authors vary. The use of the Inf. is wider in poetry and silver prose.

#### B. Verbs of Hindering.

547. The dependencies of verbs of Hindering may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. Nō and quōminus are originally final,

but the final sense is often effaced, especially in *quōminus*. *Quin* is a consecutive particle. The sequence of verbs of Hindering is that of the Final Sentence.

The negative often disappears in the English translation.

**548.** Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, may take *nē* with the Subjunctive, if they are not negated.

*Impedior nē plūra dicam, C., Sull., 33, 92; I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more). “Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?” GAL., v. 7.*

*Servitūs mea mihi interdixit nē quid mīrere meum malum, PL., Pers., 621; my slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at ill of mine. Histiaeus nē rē cōficerētur obstitit, NEP., I. 3, 5; Histiaeus opposed the thing's being done. (Rēgulus) sententiam nē diceret recusāvit, C., Off., III. 27, 100; Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion. Maledictis dēterrāre nē scrībat parat, TEE., Ph., 3 (428, 2). Tantum cum fīngēs nē sis manifēta cavētō, Ov., A.A., III. 801 (271, 2). Tantum nē nocēs dum vīs pōdēsse vidētō, Ov., Tr., I. 1, 101; only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.*

NOTES.—1. The most important of these words are: *Preventing*: impedire, impedimentō esse, prohibēre, tenēre, retinēre, dēterrēre, interclūdere, interpellāre, dēpredāri, obstāre, obstāre, intercōdēre, interpōnere. *Forbidding*: interdicere. *Refusing*: recusāre, repugnāre, resistere, sē tenēre, sē reprimēre, sibi temperāre, morāri. *Beware*: cavēre, vidēre, and a few others, especially the phrase *per aliquem stāre* (more often with *quōminus*).

2. Many verbs of Preventing and Refusing also take *quōminus* (549), and some also the Infinitive (423, 2, n. 2).

3. *Cavēre*, *to beware*, and *praejavēre* belong to verbs of Hindering only so far as action is contemplated. *Cavēre*, followed by *ut*, means *to be sure to*; by *nē* or *ut nē*, *to see to it that not*; by *nē*, *to take precautions against*. When *nē* is omitted, *cavē*, *cavētō*, with the Subjv., form circumlocutions for the negative Imperative (271, 2). So with *vidē ut*, *nē*. *Cavēre* also has the Inf. occasionally as a verb of negative Will (423, 2, n. 2), beginning with PLAUTUS. In prose it is cited only from CATO (once), CICERO (*All.*, III. 17, 3), SALLUST (*Jug.*, 64, 2), and PLINY MAI.

4. *Vidē nē (nē nōn)*, *see to it lest*, is often used as a polite formula for *dubitō an* (457, 2), *I am inclined to think*. *Crēdere omnia vidē nē nōn sit necesse*, C., *Dtv.*, II. 13, 31.

**549.** Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), *that thereby the less*, with the Subjunctive.

*Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agri colendi studia teneāmus, C., Cat. M., 17, 60; age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture. Nōn deterret sapientem mors quōminus rei pōblīcae cōsulat, C., Tusc., I. 38, 91; death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State. Quid obstat quōminus (Deus) sit bēatus? C., N.D., I. 34, 95; what*

*is in the way of God's being happy?* Caesar cognovit per Afraniū stāre quōminus proeliū dīmīctūtur, CAES., B.C., I. 41, 3; *Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand-still).*

Notes.—1. With **impedire** and **prohibere** CAESAR never uses **quōminus**; CICERO rarely. But with other words implying Hindrance CICERO uses **quōminus** not unfrequently. With **prohibere** the regular construction is the Inf., but this is rare with **impedire**, **quōminus** being the rule. With **recusare**, the Inf. is rare (CAES., B.G., III. 22, 3) but classical, becoming more frequent from LIVY on. The passive of **deterre** is also construed with the Inf. occasionally.

2. PLAUTUS does not use **quōminus**. TERENCE first, but seldom. It is especially common from the time of CICERO. In TERENCE the elements are sometimes separated (**quō—minus**), thus emphasizing the relative character. But it is not so used in the classical Latin, and in the Silver Age the force of its origin ceases to be felt, so that it is construed like **quin**. The fact that it is not found in PLAUTUS nor in VITRUVIUS has led to the suggestion that it is a book-word.

3. The difference in usage between **quōminus** and **quin** seems to be that while **quin** is always used with negatives, **quōminus** occurs sometimes with positives, so that according to the connection it is either Final or Consecutive.

4. **Quō sētius** for **quōminus** is archaic, but occurs twice in CORNIFICIUS and twice in CICERO (Adv., II. 45, 132; 57, 170).

### III. Verbs of Fearing.

550. 1. Verbs of Fearing, and expressions that involve Fear, take the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative. The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

These constructions are survivals of the original parataxis, when **nō** and **ut** were particles of wish. Thus, **timēbō : nō veniat**, *I am afraid; may he not come* (i.e., *I am afraid that he will*), becomes, when the two clauses are combined, **timēbō nō veniat**, *I am afraid lest (that) he may (will) come*. Similarly with **ut**, which in this usage was originally **how**. Hence,

2. With verbs of Fearing, **nō**, **lest**, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; **ut** (**nō nōn**) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: **nō nōn** is used regularly after the negative, or an interrogative with negative force.

*Vereor nō hostis veniat, I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming,  
that he will come. (I wish he may not come.)*

*Vereor nō hostis vénērit, I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will  
turn out that) he has come.*

*Vereor ut amicus veniat, I fear (how my friend can come) lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come. (I wish he may come.)*

*Vereor ut amicus vénérat, I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*

*Nón vereor nē amicus nōn veniat, I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*

*Nón vereor nē amicus nōn vénérat, I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

*Id pavēs, nē dūcas tū illam, tū autem ut dūcas, Ter., And., 349; that's what you dread, YOU lest you marry her (nē dūcam!); YOU, on the other hand, lest you don't (utinam dūcam!).*

*Vereor nē dum minuere velim laborem augeam, C., Leg., I. 4, 12; I fear lest, while I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it). Verēmur nē parum hic liber mellis et absinthii multum habere videātur, QUINT., III. I. 5; I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood. Timeō nē tibi nihil praeter lacrimas queam reddere, C., Planc., 42, 101; I am afraid that I can give you nothing in return save tears. Aurum inspicere volt nē subruptum siet, PL., Aul., 39; he wishes to inspect the gold (for fear) lest it be filched.*

*Timeō ut sustineās (labōrēs), C., Fam., XIV. 2, 8; I fear that you will not hold out under your toils. Vereor nē dum dēfendam meōs, nōn parcam tuā, C., Att., I. 17, 8; I fear lest in defending my own I may not spare thine. Nōn vereor nē tua virtus opīcōni hominum nōn respondeat, Cf. C., Fam., II. 5, 2; I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation. Metuō nē id cōsiliī cōpérimus quod nōn facile explicare possimus, C., Fam., XIV. 12; I fear that we have formed a plan that we cannot readily explain. Unum illud extimeōbam nē quid turpis facerem, vel dūcam, iam efficisem, C., Att., IX. 7, 1; the only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully, or, I should (rather) say, (lest) I had already acted disgracefully.*

NOTES.—1. Ut seems to be used only after metuō, paveō, timeō, and vereor. Most common is vereor; metuō is common in early Latin, but is cited but rarely later (HORACE, CICERO); paveō has to be supplied once with ut in Ter., And., 349. Timeō ut is found first in CICERO, and is very rare.

2. Nē nōn is very rare in early Latin, but becomes more frequent from CICERO on. Ut nōn is never found for nē.

3. Two strange cases are cited where, instead of nē, ut seems to be used, viz., Hor., S. I. 3, 120, nam ut ferula cædās meritum māiora subire verbera, nōn vereor, and L., XXVIII. 22, 12, nihil minus, quam ut ēgredi obessi moenibus audārent, timēri poterat. In the first case the ut clause precedes and the nōn vereor is used by anacoluthon; in the second the ut clause is a circumlocution for an omitted illud, parallel to nihil. This is also helped by the antecedence of the ut clause.

4. When a verb of Fear is a verb of Uncertainty an indirect question may follow: vereor quōd modū acceptū sitis, [C.], ad Her., IV. 37, 49.

5. (a) With the Inf. verbs of Fear are verbs of (negative) Will : *vereor = prae timere nōlō.*

*Vt̄ Allobrogum t̄st̄im̄n̄is nōn cr̄d̄ere tim̄t̄is?* C., *Font.*, 12, 26 ; *are ye afraid to disbelieve the testimony of the Allobroges?* *Vereor laud̄re praeſentem,* C., *N.D.*, I. 21, 58 (423, 2). *Nil metuantur iſſr̄re,* Cat., LXIV. 146 ; *they have no fear to take an oath.*

These constructions are found at all periods and with a wide range of words. Cicero, however, is restrained in his usage, and the most examples are found in the poets and later prose writers.

(b) With the Acc. and Inf. verbs of Fear are verbs of Thinking or of Perception : *vereor = cum tim̄re put̄o* or *videō.*

*Verebar nōn om̄n̄is causam vincere posse suam* [Ov., *Her.*, 16, 75]. *Tslum-que instāre trem̄sedit,* V., A., XII. 916.

This construction is rare, but occurs at all periods ; more often, however, it involves the substantives *timor* and *metus*, especially in Livy, who shows seven cases altogether.

### CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

#### *Sentences of Tendency and Result.*

551. 1. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses *so as* throughout, and not *so that*, although *so that* is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

2. Consecutive Sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency is expressed by the Particle : Pure Consecutive Sentences.

II. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency lies in the leading Verb : (a) after verbs of Effecting ; (b) after negated verbs of Preventing, Doubt, and Uncertainty ; (c) after words and phrases requiring expansion.

#### I. Pure Consecutive Sentences.

552. Pure Consecutive Sentences are introduced by

1. *Ut* (*uti*), *that, so that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs (631).

2. *Ut—nōn, that, so that, as—not*, continued by *neque, nec* (543, 4).

3. *Quin = ut nōn*, after a negative sentence (554).

Correlative demonstratives occur very often : *ita (sic), tam,*

*tantopere, tantō, tantum, adeō, eō, huc; talis, tantus, tot, in eius modi, and others of similar meaning.*

In virtute multi sunt adsoēnsis, ut is maximus gloriā excusat, qui virtute plurimum praestet, C., *Planc.*, 25, 60; *in virtue there are many degrees, so that he excels most in glory who is most advanced in virtue.* Neque mē vixisse paenitent quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frūstrē mē nātum existarem, C., *Cat. M.*, 23, 84 (540). Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligamus, C., *Lael.*, 9, 29; *so great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.* Nēm is es ut tē pudor unquam & turpitudine revocarīt, C., *Cat.*, I, 9, 22; *you are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.* Nēmō adeō ferus est ut nām mitēscere possit, H., *Ep.*, I, 1, 39; *no one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.* Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendō invēstigari possit, TER., *Heaut.*, 675; *naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.* Numquam tam male est Siculis quin aliiquid facētē et commodē dicant, C., *Verr.*, IV, 43, 95; *the Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other clever and pat (to) say.*

REMARKS.—1. Notice especially the impersonal *tantum abest, aſuit* (rarely *aberat*)—*ut—ut.* The phrase originates with an abstract Abl. dependent on a personal *absum*, which abstract Abl. is afterward expanded into a consecutive clause with *ut*.

[*Ἀγεσιλαος*] *tantum fuit ab insolentiā gloriā ut commiserit̄ns sit fortunam Graeciae, NEP., XVII. 5, 2; Agesilaus was so far from the insolence of glory that he pitied the (mis)fortune of Greece.* *Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mori sit ut verear nō homini sit nihil bonum aliud, C., Tusc., I. 31, 76; so far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.* *Tantum fuit, ut illōrum praediō nostram firmārēmus clāsem, ut etiam & Rhodis urbe prohibērentur nostri milītēs, LENTULUS [C., Fam., XII. 15, 2]; so far were we from strengthening our fleet by reinforcements from them that our soldiers were actually kept away from the city by the Rhodians.* *Tantum abest ut nostra mirēmur ut usque eō difficultē simus ut nobis nōn satifaciat ipse Dēmosthenēs, C., Or., 29, 104; so far are we from admiring our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenes himself fails to satisfy us.*

The personal construction is extremely rare.

The second *ut* may be omitted, and a declarative sentence follow asyndetically: *Tantum aberat ut binōs (librōs) scriberent: vix singulōs cōfērunt, C., Att., XIII. 21, 5; so far were they from writing two copies of each book, they with difficulty finished up one.*

2. *Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idōneus, fit,* take a consecutive sentence with *qui.* Occasionally in early, more often in later

Latin, *dignus* and *indignus* take *ut*. In poetry all these words are found sometimes with the Infinitive.

*Qui modestè paret, videtur qui aliquandō imperet dignus esse, C., Leg., III. 2, 5 ; he who obeys duly seems to be worthy to command some day.*

3. While *ita* (*sic*) is usually antecedent to a consecutive *ut*, it may also be antecedent to a final *ut* or *nō* when the *design* or *wish* intrudes. *Ita m̄ gessi nō tibi pudori casem, L., XL. 15, 6 ; I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you.*

So not unfrequently when a restriction or condition is intended :

*Ita probanda est m̄nusūtūdō ut adhibeatur rai pùblicae causæ sérvitās, C., Off., I. 25, 88 ; mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth. Ita frui volunt voluptatibus ut n̄nulli propter eis cónsequantur dolēs, C., Fin., I. 14, 48 ; they wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensue on account of them. [Pythagorès et Platò] mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetant, C., Scœur., 4, 5; Pythagoras and Plato so praise death, that they (while they praise death) forbid fleeing from life. Ita tū istaec tua misoētō nō m̄ admisoēd, Ter., Heart., 783 ; mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal. Tantum s̄ vallō [Pompel] prima actis aberat, uti nō tēlō adiec posset, CAES., B.C., III. 55.*

Ut alone may also be used thus : *Rex esse nōlīm ut esse crūdilīs velim, SYR., 577 ; king I would not be, if I must school myself to cruelty.*

4. Ut *nōn* is often = *without*, and the English verbal in -*ing*:

*(Octāvianus) numquam filiis suis populi commendavit ut nōn adieceret : si m̄erbuntur, SUET., Aug., 56; Octavianus (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding) : if they are worthy. Qui nō malum habeat abstinet s̄ ab iniuria certè m̄illet existimari bonus vir ut nō sit quam esse ut nōn patēstur, C., Fin., II. 22, 71 ; he who, to avoid misfortune, abstains from injury, will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).*

## II. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

### A. Verbs of Effecting.

553. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is *nōn* or *nō*; the sequence, final.

Such verbs are :

1. Verbs of Causation : *facere, efficere, perficere, I make, effect, achieve ; assequi, cónsequi, I attain, accomplish, and many others.*

The following are cited as more or less common in CICERO : *prōducere,*

impertrare, valere, committere, tenere, adipisci, praestare, ferre (in phrases cōsuētūdō, nātūra, fortūna fert), adferre, adiuvare, expugnare, extorquere, exprimere, and a few others.

*Efficiam ut intellegatis*, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7; *I will cause you to understand*. Sed perfice, ut Crassus haec quae coartavit nobis explicet, C., *Or.*, I. 35, 163; *but bring it about that Crassus (make Crassus) unfold to us what he has condensed*. Nun committam ut causam aliquam tibi recusandi dem, C., *Or.*, II. 57, 283; *I shall not make the blunder of giving you an excuse for refusing*.

### Negatives :

Bārum obscūritās nān verbōrum facit ut nān intellegātur ūrātiō, C., *Fin.*, II. 5, 15; *it is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood*. Potestis efficiere ut male moriar, ut nān moriar nān potestis, *Plin.*, *Ep.*, III. 16, 11; *you may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot*. Efficiam posthāc nā quemquam vōce lacestās, V., *Ec.*, 3, 51; *I will bring it about that you challenge no one hereafter in song*.

Facere ut is often little more than a periphrasis; especially in the forms fac ut and faxō, faxit (both peculiar to Comedy).

Fortūna vestra facit ut iras meas temperem, L., *xxxvi*. 35, 8; *your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger)*. Invitus (325, R. 6) facit ut recorder ruinās rei pùblicae, C., *Vat.*, 9, 21; *(it is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth*.

### 2. Verbs of Compelling and Permitting :

Cōgere, adigere, impellere, dūcere, with its compounds, movare, comovare, to which must be added exōrare, *to force by pleading*. Permittere, sinere, concēdere, dare, (nān) pati, and less often largiri, tribuere, ferre.

Tenēmus memorī Catulum esse cōfūctum ut vīta sō ipse privāret, C., *Or.*, III. 3, 9; *we remember that Catulus was forced to take his own life*. Illud nātūra nān patitur, ut aliōrum spoliis nostrās cōpīas augēimus, C., *Off.*, III. 5, 22; *nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others*. Collēgam perpulerat nā contrā rem pùblicam sentiret, S., C., 26, 4; *he had prevailed upon his colleague, not to take sides against the commonwealth*.

NOTE.—Cōgere has usually the Inf. (423, 2, N. 2), so occasionally sinere, pati. On permittere, see 532, N. 1. Cōgere in the sense *conclude* is a verb of Saying (546, R. 1). Facere and efficere, in the sense *cause*, are very rarely used with the Infinitive. Compare C., *Br.*, 38, 142. (Sōtiō) tālēs ūrātōrēs vidēri facit, quālēs ipai sō vidēri volunt. This becomes more common in very late Latin.

### 3. Passive verbs of Causation, and their equivalents,

namely, many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent.

Such verbs are *cōfici*, *effici*, *fit*, *accidit*, *contingit*, *obtingit*, *evenit*, *it happens*, *tud venit*, *it occurs*, *sequitur*, *it follows*, and many others. So also *est*, *it is the case*.

*Ex quā efficiatur, nōn ut voluptās nō (the design of the arguer) sit voluptā, sed ut voluptā nōn (the result of the argument) sit summum bonum*, C., *Fin.*, II. 8, 24; *from which it results, not that pleasure is not pleasure, but that pleasure is not the supreme good*. *Potest fieri ut fallar*, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 73, 2; (*it*) *may be (that) I am mistaken*. *Potest fieri ut is unde tē audire dicas irātus dixerit*, C., *Or.*, II. 70, 285; (*it*) *may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger*. *Persaepe evenit ut utilitas cum honestatē certet*, C., *Part. Or.*, 25, 89; *it very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor*.

NOTE.—Noteworthy is the early Latin use of (*fieri*) *potis ut nō*, as in *fieri potis est ut nō quā exeat*, *Terr.*, *Ad.*, 666.

4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with *est*, after the analogy of the impersonals just mentioned.

Such are: *additur*, *accedit*, *it is added*; *restat*, *reliquum est*, *it remains*; *apparet*, *it is plain*. Enumerations, as, *proximum*, *tertium*, *extrēmū est*; *infinitū*, *rārum est*, *it rarely happens that*; *novum*, *ningulare*, *mirum*, *inauditum*, *vērum*, *falsum*, (*nōn*) *vērisimile*, *cōsequens*, etc. Also rarely, *interest*, *necessere est*, *necessarium est*, and the like.

*Ad Appi Claudi senectūtem accedit etiam ut caecus esset*, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16; *to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind*. *Ei nō integrum quidem erat ut ad iustitiam remigraret*, C., *Tusc.*, v. 21, 62; *for him it was not even an open question to go back to justice*. *Rārum (= rārū accedit) ut sit idōneus suae ref quisque dēfensor*, *Quint.*, IV. 1, 46; *it is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case*.

REMARKS.—1. *Necessere est*, *it is necessary*, generally, and *oportet*, *it behoves*, always omit *ut*:

[*Leuctrica pūgna*] *immortalis sit necessere est*, *NEP.*, xv. 10, 2; *the battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal*. *Sed nō effugias*; *mēcum moriāris oportet*, *PROP.*, II. 8, 25; *but you shall not escape; you must die with me*.

2. The neuter adjectives with *ut* are very rare until the post-classical period and are far more commonly construed with the Infinitive.

3. Very common is the periphrasis *fore* (*futūrum*) *ut*, which gives the common form of the Fut. Infinitive. See 248.

B. *Verbs of Hindering.*

**554.** *Quin* is used like *quōminus*, with Verbs of Preventing, Refusing, etc., but only when they are negated or questioned.

NOTES.—1. *Quin* is compounded of *qui*—an interrogative-relative Ablative or Locative—and *nō* (*nōn*). Its first use is interrogative: “why not” in an indignant question; almost equivalent to an Indignant Imperative, with which, through the fading out of its composition, it is occasionally connected, especially in early and later Latin, rarely in CICERO (269).

2. An indignant question (*How not? Why not?*) objects to opposition, and is therefore naturally construed with the negative of a verb of Hindering. Hence *quin*, as an interrogative (*How not?*), takes the sequence of the Interrogative Sentence. But this shows itself only after words of doubt; after verbs of Preventing the sequence coincides with that of the Final Sentence, and after other negative sentences the sequence coincides with that of the Consecutive Sentence.

3. By its combination with verbs of Preventing, *quin* came to be felt as a consecutive particle = *ut nōn*, and was then used in other consecutive connections for *ut nōn*.

**555.** *Quin* is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt, and Uncertainty, are negated or questioned.

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (sequence of the Final Sentence).

*Vix nunc obstitutur illis quin lanient mundum, Ov., M., i. 58; they are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe. Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quin contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet, C., Ac., ii. 4, 12; Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher. Vix reprimor quin tē manēre iubeam, Pl., M.G., 1368; I am scarcely kept back (keep myself back) from bidding you remain. Neque mē Iuppiter [prohibebit] quin sic faciam uti cōstitū, Pl., Am., 1051; nor will Jupiter prevent me from doing just as I determined to do.*

REMARK.—The list of verbs is given in 548, n. 1.

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (sequence of the Interrogative Sentence).

*Nōn dubium est quin uxōrem nōlit filius, Ter., And., 172; there is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife. Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitet) quin in virtute divitiae sint? C., Parad., vi. 2, 48 (259). Nōn dubitāri dēbet quin fuerint ante Homērum poētae, C., Br., 18, 71; it is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer. Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin ventūrae nōn sint (legiōnes), C., Fum., ii. 17, 5 (515).*

Occasionally verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

*Negari nō potest quin rētius sit etiam ad pacātō barbarō exerditum mitti, Cf. L., xl. 36, 2; it cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet.. Nōn abest suspicīō (Litotē [700] for dubitārī nōn potest) quin (Orgetorix) ipse sibi mortem cōsideravit, CAES., B.G., i. 4, 4; there is no lack of ground to suspect (= there is no doubt that) Orgetorix killed himself.*

REMARKS.—1. The principal gain of the interrogative sequence is that the Periphrastic Fut. may be employed (of which, however, the first example is cited from CICERO), but according to 515, r. 3, nōn dubitō quin may have the simple Subjv. instead of the Periphrastic :

*Nōn dubitārī quin dē omnibus obsidib⁹ supplicium sūmat (Ariovistus), CAES., B.G., i. 31, 15; "he did not doubt that Ariovistus would put all the hostages to death." Compare CAT., cixii. 3.*

So when there is an original Subjv. notion :

*Nōn dubitō quin ad tē statim veniam, C., Att., viii. 11 b, 8; I do not doubt that I ought to come to you forthwith. (Veniam! Shall I come?)*

2. Of course dubitō and nōn dubitō may have the ordinary interrogative constructions (467). On dubitō an, see 457, 2.

3. Nōn dubitō, with the Inf., usually means *I do not hesitate to:*

*Nōn dubitem dicere om̄nēs sapientēs semper esse bētōs, C., Fin., v. 32, 95; I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy. Et dubitamus adhuc virtūtem extendere factis? V., A., vi. 806; and do we still hesitate to spread our (fame for) valor by our deeds? Compare vereor, timet, I fear, hesitate to (550, 2, n. 5).*

So occasionally nōn dubitō quin. See r. 1.

(Rōmāni) arbitrabantur nōn dubitātūrum fortē virūm quin cēderet se-  
quō animō lēgitib⁹, C., Mil., 23, 68; the Romans thought that a brave  
man would not hesitate to yield with equanimity to the laws.

NOTE.—Nōn dubitō with the Inf. for nōn dubitō quin occurs chiefly in NEPOS, LIVI, and later writers.

*Sunt multi qui quae turpia esse dubitāre nōn possunt utilitatis speciis  
ducti probent, QUINT., iii. 8, 3; there are many who, led on by the appearance of  
profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.*

556. **Quin**, equivalent to *ut nōn*, may be used after any negative sentence (sequence of the Consecutive Sentence). Here it may often be translated “without.”

*Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendō investigārī possit, TER., Heaut., 675 (552). Nullum adhuc intermisī diem quin aliquid ad tē litterārum darem, C., Att., vii. 15, 1; I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).*

Note the combination (*facere*) *nōn possum quin*, *I cannot but*, and similar combinations; *nōn possum nōn* with Inf. is also classical.

*Facere nōn possum quin cottidiā ad tē mittam (litterās), C., Att., XII. 27, 2; I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily. Nōn possum quin exclāmem, PL., Trin., 705; I cannot but (I must) cry out. (Nullō modō facere possum ut nōn sim populāris, C., Agr., II. 3, 7 (reading doubtful); I cannot help being a man of the people.)*

*Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus, C., Att., XI. 15, 3; there is nothing wanting that I should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable. Fieri nullō modō poterat quin Cleomeni parceret, C., Verr., v. 40, 104; it could in nowise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared). Paulum sicut quin (Fabius) Varum interficeret, CAES., B.C., II. 35, 2; there was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).*

#### Explanatory Ut.

557. A Consecutive Sentence with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun.

*Est mōs hominū ut nōlīt eundem plūribus rēbus excellere, C., Br., 21, 84 (546, n. 1). An quoiquamst fīsus homini sūt ut cruciet? TER., Heaut., 81 (406, n. 5). Est miserōrum ut malevolentēs sint atque invidēant bonis, PL., Capt., 583; the wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do. Neo meum ad tē ut mittam grātīs, PL., Asin., 190; nor is it my style to let her go to you as a gracious gift. Id est proprīum cīvitātīs ut sit libera, C., Off., II. 22, 78; it is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free. Illud ipam habet cōsul ut et reliqui magistratū pāreant, C., Leg., III. 7, 16; the consul has this very prerogative, that the other magistrates be obedient unto him. Tōtum in eō est, ut tibi imp̄ta, C., Tusc., II. 22, 53; all depends upon this (one thing), your self-command.*

REMARK.—These are principally *mōs*, *cōsuētūdō*, *habit*, *wont*; *opus*, *usus*, *need*; many substantives of *opinion* and *perception*, as *opīniō*, *sēntentia*, *oīgitatīs*, *mēns*, *sapientia*, *scientia*, *oīgnitīs*; *nātūra*, *genus*, *status*, and others, usually with a demonstrative attached; adjectives indicating possession: *meum*, *tuum*, *suūm* (all mainly ante-class.), *proprīum*, *commūne*, *pācīpūm* (Livy), and predicate Genitives with *esse*: *id*, *hōc*, *illud*, *etc.* These should be distinguished from final usages.

NOTES.—1. Tendency and Character lend themselves readily to circumlocution, and *ut* with Subjv. becomes a manner of equivalent to the Inf., which, however, is by far the more common construction.

2. To the same principle is to be referred the use of *ut* after *māior* (*magis*) *quam*, *nōn aliter quam* (*without*), first in Livy; after *nisi* (591, b, n. 3). See 398.

*Praeceptum māius erat quam ut ab homine vidērētur, C., Fin., v. 16, 44 (503).*

## Exclamatory Questions.

**558.** Ut with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions, usually with the insertion of -ne.

Egoen ut tē interpellē ! C., *Tusc.*, II. 18, 42 ; *I interrupt you ! Tu ut umquam tē corrīgas ! C., Cat.*, I. 9, 22; *you—ever reform yourself ! Di māgni, ut qui cīvem Rōmānum occidisset, impūnitātem acciperet, SEN., Ben.*, v. 16, 3 ; *Great Gods ! that one who had slain a Roman citizen, should escape unpunished !*

**NOTE.**—The expression is closely parallel with the Acc. and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea ; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis. Compare *Tus.*, *Hoc.*, 589, with 613.

## TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

**559.** The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations :

I. It may be *antecedent*.

CONJUNCTIONS : Postquam (*Postēd quam*, not ante-class.), *after that, after* ; *ut, as* ; *ubi, when* (*literally, where*) ; *similis, as soon as* ; *ut pri-mum, cum primum, the first moment that*.

II. It may be *contemporaneous*.

CONJUNCTIONS : *Dum, dñmec, while, until* ; *quoad, up to (the time) that* ; *quamdiu, as long as* ; *cum, when*.

III. It may be *subsequent*.

CONJUNCTIONS : *Antequam, priusquam, before that, before*.

A special chapter is required by

IV. *Cum (quom), when*.

## MOODS IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

**560.** 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

## 2. The Subjunctive is used only :

(1) In *Orātiō Obliqua* (508), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.

(2) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

## I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

**561.** In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ubi*, *ut*, *simulac*, *ut primum*, and *cum primum* commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative.

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

*Postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides poposcit*, CAES., B.G., I. 27, 8 ; *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages*. *Quae ubi nuntiantur Rōmam, senatus exempli dictatorem dicū iussit*, L., IV. 56, 8 ; *when these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed*. *Pompēius ut equitatum suum pulsum vidi, acē exorsuit*, CAES., B.C., III. 94, 5 ; *as Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle*. *(Pelopidas) nōn dubitāvit, simul ac cōspexit hostem, cōfīgere* (555, 2, B. 3), NEP., XVI. 5, 3 ; *as soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him)*.

## Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

*Ariovistum, ut semel Gallorum opīas vicerit* (O. R. *vicit*), *superbē imperare*, CAES., B.G., I. 31, 12 ; *"that Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly."*

**562.** The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

The translation often indicates the spectator (238, N. 1).

*Tū postquam qui tibi erant amici nō poterant vincere, ut amici tibi essent qui vinebant effecisti*, C., Quinct., 22, 70 ; *after (you saw) that those who were friendly to you could not be victorious you managed that those should be friendly to you who were going to be victorious*. *Ubi nēmō obvius fbat, ad castra hostium tendunt*, L., IX. 45, 14 ; *when (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy*.

## Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

*Scriptasti (eum) postquam nōn audēret* (O. R. *nōn audēbat*) *reprehendere, laudare coepisse*, C., Att., I. 13, 4 ; *you wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise*.

**563. 1.** The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause ; often of the Resulting Condition.

*Albinus postquam dēcīs̄verat nōn ēgredi prōvinciā, militēs stativis castris habēbat*, S., Jug., 44, 4 ; *after Albinus had fully determined not to depart*

*from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments. Postquam multitidinem colligerat emblematum, instituit officinam, C., Verr., IV. 24, 54; after he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.*

2. The Pluperfect is used with *postquam* when a definite interval is mentioned. Rarely also the Historical Perfect (Aorist).

*Post and quam are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, post may be omitted (408, n. 4, d).*

(*Aristides*) *dicēbat ferē post annum quārum quam Themistocles Athēnīs erat expulsus, NEP., III. 3, 8; Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens. Post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dixerat, C., Mil., 16, 44; the matter was accomplished three days after he had said it would be. [Hamilcar] nōn annō postquam in Hispaniam venerat occidus est, NEP., XXI. 4, 2; Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain. (*Aristides*) sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus in patriam restitūtus est, NEP., III. 1, 5; Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled. Triduō ferē postquam Hannibal & ripā Rhodani mōvit, ad castra hostium venerat, L., XXI. 32, 1; (within) about three days after Hannibal moved from the banks of the Rhone he had come to the camp of the enemy.*

### Subjunctive in Ōratiō Obliqua.

*Scriptum & Posidoniū est trigintā annis vixisse Panaetium postquam librōs [dē officiis] scidisset, C., Off., III. 2, 8; it is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.*

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

NOTES.—1. The most common of these conjunctions is *postquam*, but the others also occur at all periods. *Simul* (*atque*) is rare in early Latin. In the following notes the usage in Iterative action is excluded.

2. The Impf. with *postquam* is cited but once from early Latin (PL, *Most.*, 640), it becomes more common in *CICERO*, but is distinctive of *LIVY*, who shows nearly one hundred examples. The Impf. with *ubi* is cited once in early Latin (TER., *Etu.*, 405), where, however, it is Iterative, not at all from *CICERO*, once from *CAESAR*, after which it is found more frequently, but never becomes common. The Impf. with *ut* is found first in *CICERO*, never in *CAESAR*, *SALLUST*, *VERGIL*, but not uncommonly in *LIVY*; only once in *TACITUS* (H., III. 31), where it is Iterative. The Impf. with *simul* (*atque*) is not cited from *CICERO* and *CAESAR*, but appears once in *SALLUST*, where it is Iterative; it is very rare.

3. The Plpf. with *postquam* is not cited from *PLAUTUS* or *HORACE*, and but once from *TERENCE* (*And.* 177); *CICERO* uses it but rarely, *CAESAR* but once (*B.C.*, III. 58, 5); *LIVY* uses it often, and *TACITUS* is fond of it. The Plpf. with *ubi* is found once in *PLAUTUS*, twice each in *CICERO* and *CAESAR*, and then more frequently. The Plpf. with *ut* (*primum*) is found first in *CICERO*, perhaps but once in *CAESAR* (*B.C.*, III. 63, 6), more often later. The Plpf. with *simul* (*atque*) is cited once from *CICERO*, not at all from *CAESAR*, and rarely later.

4. Some dozen cases are cited, principally from *CICERO*, of the Subjv. with *post-*

**quam** not in **Ō.O.** Most of these are disputed. If the Subjv. is to remain in these passages it is to be explained as due either to Partial Obliquity or to the intrusion of the **cum** Subjv. into other temporal constructions. The Subjv. appears in late Latin.

5. The Subjv. with **ubi** occurs occasionally in early Latin, but only once in **CICERO**, not unfrequently in **LIVY** and **TACITUS**. This is usually explained as either the Iterative or Potential Subjunctive. The Subjv. with **ut** is post-classical, and the Subjv. with **simul** does not occur.

**564.** Postquam and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare **quoniam, now that = since**).

[**Ciria**] minor mihi videtur postquam est maior, C., *Fin.*, v. 1, 2 ; *the senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.* Tremor horreoque postquam aspexi hanc, *Ter.*, *Eun.*, 84 ; *I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.*

NOTES.—1. The use of temporal conjunctions, especially **postquam** in the Present Sphere, is much more common in early Latin than later. **Ubi** and **ut** occur at all periods, but rarely ; **ubi** has almost the same force as **si**; **ut** means **ex quo, since**. **Simul** is rare, and found first in **LUCRETIUS**.

2. **Cum**, also, has sometimes the causal signification.

Gratulor tibi cum tantum valēs, C., *Fam.*, ix. 14, 3 ; *I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.*

**565.** Ubi and **simul** are occasionally found with the Future and Future Perfect ; not so **postquam** and **ut**.

Ubi mē aspiciet ad carnificem rapiet continuū, *Pl.*, *B.*, 689 ; *as soon as he shall catch (catches) sight of me he will hurry me at once to the hangman.* Id tibi quidem hercule fiet, Dēmaenetum simulac cōspexerū, *Pl.*, *Astin.*, 477 ; *that indeed shall certainly be your fate, as soon as I shall have espied Demaenetus.*

NOTE.—When thus used **ubi** and **simul** approach almost the meaning of **cum** (580). So also **quando** ; see 580, n. 3. These uses should be distinguished from those of Iterative Action.

#### Iterative Action.

**566. RULE I.**—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance.

Humilēs labōrant ubi potentēs dissident, *PHAED.*, i. 30, 1 ; *the lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.* Populus mē sibilat ; at mihi plaudō ipse domi simul ēc nummōs contemplor in arcā, *H.*, *S.*, i. 1, 66 ; *the people hiss me ; but I clap myself at home as soon as I gloat o'er my cash in the strong box.* Ubi frumentō opus erat, cohortēs praecidium agitabant, *S.*, *Iug.*, 55, 4 ; *when there was need of corn, the cohorts would serve as an escort.*

## The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

*Bonus s̄ignior fit ubi neglegit, S., Iug., 31, 28; a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.*

567. RULE II.—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples.

Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Compare 244, n. 2.

*Quotiens occidit, surgit, As often as he falls, he rises.*

*Quotiens occiderat, surḡbat, As often as he fell, he rose.*

*Quotiens occiderit, surget, As often as he falls, he will rise.*

*Simul infl̄uit tibioē & peritō carmen signēcitur, C., Ac., II. 27, 86; as soon as the flute blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.* [Alcibiadē] *simul sc̄ s̄ remiserat, luxurians reperiēbatur, NEP., VII. 1, 4; as soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee.* *Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdīrūrunt, QUINT., I. 12, 9; minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.* [Ager] *cum multō annō quilevit, tibiorēs efferre fr̄uges solet, C., Br., 4, 18; when a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop.* *Cum palam sius & nulli ad palmam converterat (Gyges) & nullō vidēbatur, C., Off., III. 9, 38; when(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.* *Si p̄is condoluit, si dēns, ferre nō possumus, C., Tusc., II, 22, 52; if a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.* *Stomachēbatur senex, si quid asperius dixeram, C., N.D., I. 33, 93; the old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.* *Quis labrantē cōspexerat, his subdīa submittēbat, CAES., B.G., IV. 26, 4; to those whom he saw (had espied) hard pressed he would send reinforcements.* *Haerēbant in memorī quaecumque audierat et viderat (Themistocles), C., Ac., II. 1, 2; whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory.* *Qui timere dēserint, d̄isse incipient, TAC., Agr., 32; those who cease to fear will begin to hate.*

## The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

*Ubi cōsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est, S., C., I, 6; when you have deliberated, you want speedy action.*

## The Subjunctive in Ōratiō Obliqua.

[Catō] *mirari s̄e siēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex haruspiciem cum vidis-*

*set, C., Div., II. 24, 51; Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Non ridet cum vidit.)*

### 'The Subjunctive by Attraction.

[Araneolae] r̄ste texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant, C., N.D., II. 48, 123; *spiders weave webs to despatch anything that gets caught (if quid inhaesit, cōficiant).* Quārē fīshat, ut omnium oculūs, quotiēcunque in pūblicum p̄dīsset, ad sē converteret, NEP., VII. 3, 5; *whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all every time he went out in public (quotiēcunque p̄dīserat, convertēbat).*

NOTE.—The Subjunctive in Iterative Tenses may be accounted for on the principle that a repeated action which is retrospective from the point of view of the narrator, and so naturally takes the Indicative, becomes prospective from the point of view of the agent, and so takes the Subjunctive. But, however the construction is justified, the fact remains that the Subjunctive in Iterative Sentences is a growth in Latin. With the principal tenses it is confined mostly to the Ideal Second Person. Indefinite quis is very near to this. So CICERO, *Rab. Post.*, I, 36: ubi semel quis p̄ierāverit—oportet. With Impf. and Plupf. the first examples (excluding *cum*) are in CATULLUS (LXXXIV. 1), and CAESAR (e.g. *B.C.*, II. 15, 3). Then it spreads, probably under Greek influence, and is very common in the historians, especially LIVY and TACITUS. Ubi and ut are the particles employed; also very often si and relatives, in general *quicunque, quotiēns, etc.* With *cum*, Iterative Subjunctives are found to a limited extent also in CICERO and CAESAR; but all cases of principal tenses in third person have been emended, and those with historical tenses are not common, and sometimes doubtful.

Cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvallere neque pīgnāre poterant (= vīdēbant sē nō posse), CAES., *B.G.*, I. 25, 3; *when the iron had bent, they found that they could neither pluck it out nor fight.* Incurrere ea ḡēns in Macedoniam solita erat (as if cōstituerat) ubi rēgēm occupātū extērnō bellō sēnāisset, L., xxvi. 25, 7; *that tribe was wont to make a raid on Macedonia whenever they perceived the king engrossed in foreign war.* Qui unū sīns ūrdinis offendisset omnīs ad-versari habēbat (as if certō scībat sē habīturū), L., xxxiii. 46, 1; *whose had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him.* Modum adhibendō ubi rēs p̄scoeret, priōrēs erant, L., III. 19, 8; *by the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.*

## II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

568. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are :

Dum, dōnec, while, so long as, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiū, as long as; cum, when.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—so long as, while.

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—until.

REMARK.—*Dum*, (while) yet, denotes duration, which may be coextensive, so long as, or not. It is often causal. *Dōnec* (old form *dōni-cum*, used only in the sense until), is parallel with *dum* in the sense so long as, until. CICERO uses it only as until.

## 1. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(So long as, while.)

**569. Complete Coextension.**—*Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while,* take the Indicative of all the tenses.

Vita dum superest, bene est, MAECENAS (*SEN.*, *E.M.*, 101, 11) ; while (so long as) life remains, 'tis well. Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquont, "Vixit, dum vixit, bene," TEB., *Hec.*, 461 ; they leave indeed this praise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived" (all the time). Tiberius Gracchus tam dia laudabitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānūrum manebit, C., *Off.*, II. 12, 48 ; Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain). Fuit haec gēns fortis dum Lycurgi lēgēs vigēbant, C., *Tusc.*, I. 42, 101 ; this nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force. Dimec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vigui rēsē bētior, H., *O.*, III. 9, 1 ; while I was pleasing in your sight, I threw more blessed than Persia's king. Quoad potuit, restitit, CAES., *B.G.*, IV. 12, 5 ; as long as he could, he withheld.

## Subjunctive in Ōratiō Obliqua.

(Rēgulus dixit) quam diū iūre iūrandō hostium tenēstur nōn esse sō semitōrem, C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100 ; [Regulus said] that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator. (Quamdiū teneat nōn sum senātor.)

## Subjunctive by Attraction.

Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās, PL., *Pers.*, 494 (333, 2).

NOTES.—1. **Dum.**—In the Past Sphere we have the Pf. (Aor.), Hist. Pr., and Imperfect. Of these the Hist. Pr. is found first in SALLUST (*C.*, 36, 1), and the Impf., while occurring at all periods, is rare. The Pf. is not in CAESAR. **Dum** in the Present Sphere is rare; the Pure Pr. has been observed in PL., *B.*, 737 : mane dum sorbit, which looks much like parataxis, and occasionally in CICERO and later; the Pure Pf. is cited only from TERENCE (*And.*, 556, 597), and is only apparent. Several examples of the Future Sphere are cited, PL., *B.*, 225, nōn metuō mihi dum hōc valēbit pectus ; TEB., *Heaut.*, 107 ; C., *Roc. Am.*, 32, 991 ; V., *A.*, I. 607, etc.

Dōmē is not found in the sense "so long as," until LUCR., v. 178 ; then H., *O.*, I. 9, 16 ; III. 9, 1. Also Ov., *Tv.*, I. 9, 5. LIVY uses it occasionally, but TACITUS affects it, and employs Hist. Pf., Impf., and Fut. tenses.

**Quoad** (correlative with adeō) belongs especially to the classical poets, but is also found in prose. Compare C., *Ph.*, III. 11, 28, etc. It is usually found in the Past Sphere ; in the Present the adverbial force, "so far as," seems to preponderate ; PL., *Asin.*, 296 : quoad vīrēs valent. The Future tenses are more common.

**Quamdiū** (correlative with tamdiū) is found with this usage first in CICERO.

2. When the actions are coextensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always.

**570. Partial Coextension.**—*Dum, while, while yet, dur-*

*ing*, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses: so especially in narrative.

Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium aliiquid superest, L., xxii. 49, 7; *take this horse, while you have yet some strength left.* Dum haec Rōmae aguntur, oīnsulēs ambō in Liguribus gerōbant bellum, L., xxxix. 1, 1; *while these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.* Praetermissa diūs rel occisiō est, dum in castellis recidētis tempus teritur, L., xxxiii. 18, 20; *the opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts.*

**Dum** in this sense often resists the change into Subjv. in **Q. O.**, especially in post-classical Latin. (665, n. 3.)

**Notæ.**—1. *Quamdiū* and *quoad* are, by their composition, incapable of being used in this sense, and as *dōnec* was avoided, **dum** is the only temporal conjunction of limit that is loose enough in its formation to serve for partial coextension. The Pr. after it, formally an Hist. Pr., always connotes continuance, and the construction becomes practically a periphrasis for a missing Pr. participle.

2. The Pure Pr. of the Present Sphere is found occasionally, principally in early Latin. In this sense the relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with the Pr. participle, the lack of which in the passive it supplies.

*Ardus dum metuant (= metuentes) amittunt vīra vīm*, LUCA., i. 660 (372, n. 8).  
The causal relation is also often present with the other tenses.

3. Other tenses are extremely rare, as the Future; PL., *Men.*, 214, *dum coquētur, interim pōtābimus*; the Impf., NEP., xxiii. 2, 4, *quae divina rēs dum oīniciēbitur, quæsivit & mō.*

4. LIVY, xxxii. 24, 5, shows one case of the Plupf. as a shorthand to express the maintenance of the result, *dum s̄vererat = dum s̄verōdē tēnēbat.*

## 2. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(*Until.*)

571. **Dum**, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *up to* (the time) *that, until*, have the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative.

Tityre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pāsce capellīs, V., Ec., 9, 23; *Titus, while I am returning (= till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids.* Epaminondās ferrum in corpore dique ed retinuit, quoad renfūtiūtūm est vicisse Boētīs, Cf. NEP., xv. 9, 8; *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered.* Dōnec rediit Mārcellus, silentium fuit, L., xxiii. 31, 9; *until Marcellus returned, there was silence.* Haud dēinam dōnec perfēcerō hōc, TER., Ph., 420; *I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished it.* Exspectōbō dum venit, TER., Eun., 206; *I will wait until he comes.*

“Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

Scipiōni sīlānōque dōnec revocāti ab senātū forent prōrogātūm imperium

*est, L., xxvii. 7, 17; Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."*

NOTES.—1. With the Past Sphere the idea of limit precludes the employment of a tense of continuance, which would naturally involve the notion of Overlapping Action. The Impf. is, therefore, not found until the time of TACITRUS (once with *dōnec*, *H.*, 1. 9). With the Present Sphere the tense must be iterative or historical. Otherwise the Pr. is used by anticipation for the Future.

2. The Fut. Indic. is found occasionally in early Latin, usually, however, the Present. In the classical times, and afterwards, the Subjv. takes its place. Thus CICERO uses the Subjv. regularly, after *verba expectandi*, except in possibly four passages of the earlier *Orationes* and *Letters*.

3. *Dōnec* is not uncommon in early Latin, but is very rare in CICERO, and never occurs in CAESAR. On the other hand, TACITRUS shows one hundred and thirty-eight cases of it.

4. *Dōnicum* belongs to early Latin, but is not found in TERENCE; one case with the Subjv. is found in NEROS. *Dōnique* is found in LUcretius four times with the Indic., always before vowels; in VITRUVIUS once with Indic., three times with Subjv.; otherwise it is not cited.

5. *Quoad, until*, occurs once in PLAUTUS, and with the Subjunctive. Otherwise it is found with both moods occasionally throughout the language.

6. LIVY introduces *dōnec inversum* like *cum inversum* (88). See *xxi. 46, 6; xxxv. 50, 4, etc.*

**572. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved.**

Vergilius dum collāgam cōsuleret morātus (*est*), *L.*, iv. 21, 10; *Vergilius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague. At tanti tibi sit nōn indulgēre theātris, dum bene dō vacuū pectore cōdat amor*, *Ov., Rem. Am.*, 751; *but let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenantied bosom.*

Often with *verba expectandi*, especially *expectō, I wait.*

Basticus expectat dum dēfluat amnis, *H.*, *Ep.*, i. 2, 42; *the clown waits for the river to run off (dry).*

REMARKS.—1. The Subjv. is sometimes used in narrative with *dum, while*, and *dōnec, while, until*, to express subordination. The principle is that of Partial Obliquity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense (like *cum*, 584, r.).

Dum intentus in eum sō rāx tōtus ēverteret, alter sītām seūrim in caput dēsēit, *L.*, i. 40, 7; *while the king, intent upon him, was turning quite away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull. (Ēverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt ēvertentem.)*

2. Verba *expectandi* have also other constructions, as *ut, si, quin*, but not the Infinitive.

**573. Dum, modō, and dummodō, if only, provided only,**

*only*, are used with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes.

The negative is *nō* (*dum nō = nō interim*).

*Öderint dum metuant*, ACCIUS (*C.*, *Off.*, I. 28, 97); *let them hate so long as they fear* (provided that, if they will only fear). *Quod lubeat nubant*, *dum dō nō fiat comes*, PL., *Aul.*, 491; *let them marry where (= whom) they please, if but the dowry do not go with them*. *Dummodo mōrīta rēctē veniat, dōtāta est satis*, PL., *Aul.*, 239; *provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough*. In *eō multa admiranda sunt: eligere modo cūrae sit*, QUINT., I. I, 181; *many things in him are to be admired; only you must be careful to choose*. *Cūpia placandi sit modo parva tui*, OV., *Her.*, 20, 74 (428, R. 1).

NOTES.—1. It has been noticed that TACITUS uses *dummodo* only in the *Germania* and *Dialogue*, otherwise *dum*.

2. *Dummodo nō* and *modiō nō* are found first in CICERO. In post-Augustan Latin *nōn* is sometimes used for *nō*; JUV., VII. 222, *dummodo nōn pereat*.

### III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

#### Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

574. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact. The Present is used in anticipation of the Future.

REMARKS.—1. The elements *ante*, *antes*, *prius*, and *quam* are often separated.

2. As *prius* (*ante*) *quam* is negative in its signification (= *neodum*), the Indic. is sometimes found where we should expect the Subjunctive.

NOTE.—*Antequam* is much rarer than *priusquam*, especially in early Latin, where it is cited only from CATO, CAELIUS, TERENCE (*Hec.*, 146, with Subjv. in *O. O.*), and VARRO. CICERO prefers it before a Pr. Indic., *priusquam* elsewhere.

575. The Present Indicative is used after positive sentences.

*Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dō mē pauca dicam*, C., *Cat.*, IV. 10, 20; *before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself*. *Omnia experiri certum est prius quam pereō*, TER., *And.*, 311; *I am determined to try everything before I perish*. (*Prius quam peream = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing*.)

NOTES.—1. The Pure Pf. Indic. is used of Iterative Action, and is rare. (567.) *Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūrustrunt*, QUINT., I. 12, 9 (567).

Instead of this, the Pr. Subjv. is more common in general statements. (567, n.)

2. TACITUS shows no example of the Pr. Indicative.

**576.** The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used both after positive and after negative clauses, chiefly the latter.

Heraclius, aliquantō ante quam est mortuus, omnia trādiderat, C., *Verr.*, II. 18, 46; *some time before he died he had handed over everything to Heraclius.* Legati nōn ante profecti quam impositōe in nāvēs militēs vidērunt, L., *xxxiv.* 12, 8; *the envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.* Neque dēfatigābor ante quam illōrum viis ratiōnēsque et p̄ omnibus et contrā omnia disputandi p̄oēsperō, C., *Or.*, III. 36, 145; *I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.*

### Subjunctive in Œrātiō Obliqua.

Themistocles [collēgī suis] praedixit, ut nō prius Lacedaemoniōrum legati dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus, *NEP.*, II. 7, 8 (546, 2). (*Nō prius dimittētis quam ego erō remissus.*)

**REMARK.**—After negative clauses containing a historical tense the Pf. is the rule and the connection is always close: *nōn priusquam = dum.* Violations of this rule are very rare; see 577, 2.

**NOTES.**—1. The Fut. is found occasionally in PLAUTUS, but has disappeared by the time of TERENCE. The Fut. Pf. is never common, but is found at all periods. TACITUS avoids it, and so do other authors.

2. The Impf. is confined to LIVY, who shows four examples, and to one case in late Latin. The Plupf. is found once in CICERO (*Dom.*, 30, 78), where it may be Iterative, and once in early Latin.

### Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

**577.** Antequam and priusquam are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

1. An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary consequence. After positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare *cum*, 585.) After Historical Tenses the Subjunctive is almost invariable when the action does not, or is not to, take place. The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in -ing (Greek *πρίν* with the Infinitive).

Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audīmus, *SEN.*, *N.Q.*, II. 12, 6; *we see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound (we may never hear it).* But compare *LUCE.*, VI. 170. In omnibus negōtīis prius quam aggrediō adhibenda est prasparitiō diligēns, *C., Off.*, I. 21, 73; *in all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation (Ideal Second Person).* [Collel] oceliter priusquam ab

*adversariis sentiatur communis, CAES., B.C., i. 54, 4; he speedily fortified the hill before he was (too soon to be) perceived by the enemy (prius quam = prius quam ut). Hannibal omnia priusquam excederet pugna (erat) expertus, L., xxx. 35, 4; Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight). Sepe magna indole virtutis priusquam res publicae prouidisse potuisse extinuta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47; often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State. Ducentis annis ante quam urbem Röman caperent in Italiam Galli transcederunt, L., v. 33, 5; (it was) two hundred years before their taking Rome (that) the Gauls crossed into Italy (here the Subjv. gives the natural point of reference).*

2. After an historical tense in the negative, the Subjunctive is exceptional. (576, n.)

*Inde non prius egressus est quam (= ibi mansuet dum) rex cum in fidem reciparet, NEP., II. 8, 4; he did not come out until the king should take him under his protection (he stayed to make the king take him under his protection). See CAES., B.G., vi. 37, 2; L., XLV. II, 3.*

NOTES.—1. The Pr. Subjv. is common, but is usually generic; the few cases of Final Subjv. are confined to early Latin. Very rarely the Hist. Pr. is found after a Hist. Present. See CAES., B.C., i. 22.

2. The Pf. occurs occasionally; it is usually in a final sense.

*Non prius dimittunt quam ab his sit concessum, CAES., B.G., III. 18.*

3. In LIVY we find the Impf. Subjv. used not unfrequently, where the idea of suspense or design is very slight, much after the manner of *cum nondum* (as C., Ph., v. 1, 4).

4. The Plupf. Subjv. is cited five times from CICERO and four times from LIVY. In these passages the completion rather than the continuance is in suspense.

5. *Postridie quam* is found in PLAUTUS, CICERO (*Letters*), and SUETONIUS with the Indicative. In CICERO, II. 3, 9, with the Subjunctive. *Pridie quam* is found in PLAUTUS and CICERO with the Indicative; in LIVY, VAL. MAX., and SUETONIUS with the Subjunctive. Both are very rare.

6. When the will is involved, *potius quam* is used in the same way as *prius quam*.  
*Défugia potius quam servis, C., AU. VII. 7, 7; fight it out rather than be a slave.*

#### IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUOM).

##### 578. Cum is a (locative) relative conjunction.

NOTE.—Originally locative (*where*), *quom* became temporal (*when*) like *ubi*. When time is not defined by a fixed date, it readily becomes *circumstance*, and this circumstance is interpreted as cause, condition, and the like. Compare the circumstantial relative itself. The first construction was with the Indicative as with any other merely relative clause, and this is the sole construction in earliest Latin. But, beginning with TERENCE, we can observe the drift ever increasing in Latin towards the expression of character by tendency (Subjv.) rather than by fact (Indic.), so that the relative of character takes more and more the Subjunctive, and *cum* follows the lead of *ut* and of the inflected relative pronoun.

##### 579. There are two great uses of *cum*:

###### I. Temporal *cum* (*when, then*), with the Indicative.

II. Circumstantial *cum* (*as, whereas*), with the Subjunctive.

In the second usage the relation is still purely a matter of inference; but according to this inferential connection we distinguish:

(a) Historical *cum, as*, giving the attendant circumstances, mainly temporal, under which an action took place.

(b) Causal *cum, as, whereas, since*, indicating that the main action proceeded from the subordinate one.

(c) Concessive *cum, whereas, although*, indicating that the main action was accomplished in spite of that of the subordinate clause.

I. *Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernis móvent, when spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. (a) *Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis móvit, as spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

(b) *Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernis móvendum est, as (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

(c) *Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn móvērunt, whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

1. Temporal *Cum*.

**580.** *Cum, when*, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as *tum, tunc, then; nunc, now; diēs, day; tempus, time; iam, already; vix, scarcely*, and the like.

*Animus, nec cum adeat nec cum discēdit, apparet, C., Cat. M., 22, 80; the soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs. Stomachorū cum aliōrum nōn mō digna in mō cōfēruntur, C., Planc., 14, 35; I get fretted when other people's jokes that are not worthy of me are foisted on me. [Sex librō dē rē pùblica] tum scripsimus cum gubernācula rē pùblica tenēbamus, C., Div., II. 1, 3; I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State. Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacōbat in lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45; remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief. Longum illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mō móvet quam hōc exiguum, C., Att., XII. 18, 1; that long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time). Iam difficēscbat cum signum cōsul*

*dedit, L., xxxvi. 24, 6; by this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal. (See 581.)*

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive :

*Pater, hominum inmortalis est infamia. Etiam tum vivit quom esse crēdās mortuam, Pl., Pers., 355; Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. It lives on even when you think that it is dead.*

But the presence of a temporal adverb does not mean necessarily that the cum clause is merely temporal.

REMARKS.—1. Fuit cum commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (681), and takes the Subjunctive :

*Fuit tempus cum (= fuit cum) rūra coerent homines, Varro, R.R., III. 1, 1; there was a time when all mankind tilled fields = were countrymen.*

The Indic. is rare.

2. Memini cum, *I remember the time when*, takes the Indic., but audire cum takes the Subjv. parallel with the participle :

*Memini cum mihi dēspere vidēbare, C., Fam., VII. 28, 1; I remember the time when you seemed to me to show the worst possible taste. Audivi Mētrodōrum cum dē iis ipsiis rēbus disputāret, C., Or., II. 90, 865; I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.*

3. Peculiar is the use of cum with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative :

*Multi anni sunt cum (= multōs annōs) in aere mēd est, C., Fam., xv, 14, 1; (it is) many years (that) he has been (230) in my debt. Per multū anni iam erant cum inter patriciōs magistratūs tribunūsque nūlla certamina fuerant, L., IX. 33, 8; very many years had elapsed since there had been any struggles between the patrician magistrates and the tribunes. Nūndum centū et decū anni sunt cum (= ex quā = abhinc annōs) dē petūniā repetundis līta lxx est, C., Off., II. 21, 75; it is not yet one hundred and ten years since the law concerning extortion was propoeeed.*

NOTES.—1. In PLAUTUS cum with the Indic. may be explicative, causal, concessive, adversative. *Explicative*: salvos quom (that) advenis, gaudeō, Most., 1128. *Causal*: salvos quom (since) peregrī advenis, cēna dētūr, II., 536. *Concessive*: [servi] quom (although) culpē parent, tamen malum metuont, Most., 899. *Adversative*: insinūre mē siunt, ultrō quom (whereas) ipse insinūnt, Men., 831.

The same holds true for TERENCE, except that the Subjv. is now making its appearance in cases where it can be neither potential, ideal, nor attracted, as *Hec.*, 341 : nōn visam uxōrem Pamphili, quom in proximō hic sit segra ?

Of course, this prevalence of the Indic. does not exclude the attraction into the Subjv., nor does it exclude the regular potential use.

2. The explicative use dies out, except where it is akin to the conditional ; but it always retains the Indicative. With Causal and Concessive-Adversative uses, the Subjv. is used more and more in place of the Indicative.

3. In early Latin we find *quoniam* and *quandō*, used sometimes with the force of *quom*. In the case of *quoniam* several examples are cited from PLAUTUS, in most of which, however, the causal conception lies very close at hand ; the temporal force seems to have disappeared by the time of TERENCE, and only reappears in GELLIUS. The

temporal usage of *quandō* is still the prevailing one in PLAUTUS, over seventy instances having been collected. Of these the majority are in the Present and Future Spheres, in which the shift to the causal conception is very easy; many of them are also iterative. In TERENCE the temporal usage of *quandō* has disappeared unless possibly in one passage (*Ad.*, 206), but sporadic cases are found later, even in CICERO.

Quoniam hinc est prfecturus peregrē thēnsaurum dēmōnstrāvit mihi,  
PL., *Trin.*, 149. *Tum, quandō lāgitōs Tyrum misimus,* C., *Leg. Agr.*, II. 16, 41.

**581. Cum Inversum.** When the two actions are independent, *cum* is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

Iam nōn longius bīdū viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnoscunt,  
CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 7, 2; *they were now distant not more than two days' march, when they learned that two legions were come.*

Similar is the addition of an illustrative fact, often causal or adversative, by *cum interēt* (interim), *quidem*, *tamen*, etc., with the Indicative.

**582. Explicative cum.**—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, *cum* is almost equivalent to its kindred relative *quod, in that*.

Aīscem, hunc quom vidēs, ipsum vidēs, PL., *Capt.*, 615; *when you see him, you see Ajax himself.* Cum tacent, clāmant, C., *Cat.*, I. 8, 21; *when (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud.* Dīxi omnia cum hominem nōmināvi, PLIN., *Ep.*, IV. 22, 4; *I have said everything, in naming the man.*

**583. Conditional cum.**—*Cum* with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to *si, if*, with which it is sometimes interchanged.

Cum pōsco, pōsco Latinū, JUV., XI. 148; *when (if) you (shall) ask (for anything), ask in Latin.* Cum veniet contrā, digitō compōsco labellum, JUV., I. 160; *when (if) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.*

**584. Iterative cum.**—*Cum* in the sense of *quotiēna, as often as*, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action.

Solet cum sō pfūgat in mē cōfēre omnēm culpam, C., *Att.*, IX. 2 A, 1; *he is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.* [Ager] cum multō annōs requisiūvit überiōrēs efferre frīgēs solet, C., *Br.*, 4, 16 (567). Cum pālam sīus ānuli ad palmā converterat (Gygēs) & nullō vīdūtur, C., *Off.*, III. 9, 38 (567).

**REMARK.**—The Subjv. is also found (567, N.) :

Cum in iūs dūci dēbitōrem vīdīssent, undīque convolabānt, L., II. 27, 8; *whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.*

## 2. Circumstantial Cum.

**585. Historical cum.**—*Cum, when (as),* is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action, to characterize the temporal circumstances under which an action took place.

[*Agēsilāus*] *cum ex Aegyptō reverteretur dōcēsait*, N.E.P., xvii. 8, 6; *Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt.* *Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter*, C., N.D., i. 21, 59; *when I was (being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.* *Athēniānsēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs cōncenderent, Cyriālūm quendam suđidentem ut in urbe manērent, lapidibus obruērunt*, C., Off., iii. 11, 48 (546).

*Cum Caesar Anōnam occupāvisset, urbēm reliquimus*, C., Fam., xvi. 12, 2; *when (as) Caesar had occupied Ancona* (Caesar having occupied Ancona), *I left the city.* *Attalus moritur alterō et septuāgēsimō annō, cum quattuor et quadrāgitā annōs rāgnāisset*, L., xxxiii. 21, 1; *Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.*

**REMARK.**—The subordinate clause generally precedes. The circumstantiality often appears as causality, but sometimes the exact shade cannot be distinguished. Owing to this implicit character, *cum* with the Subjv. is a close equivalent to the participle, and often serves to supply its absence. Compare 611 with 631, 2.

**NOTES.**—1. How closely allied the ideas of time and circumstance are, in these constructions, is seen from such examples as this :

*Cum varicēs secābantur C. Mariō, dolēbat*, C., Tusc., ii. 15, 35 (time). *Marius cum secārētur, ut suprē dixi, vetuit, etc.*, C., Tusc., ii. 22, 53 (circumstances). *Cum ad tribūm Polliām ventum est*, (date) *et praeō cunctarēstur* (circumstances) *cittāe ipsum cōsōrem*; *Cittā, inquit Nerō, M. Livium*, L., xxix. 37, 8.

2. The use of temporal particles with the Pr. is necessarily limited to iterative or causal (adversative) relations. Hence there is no room for the circumstantial *cum* with the Subjv. except so far as it is causal-adversative. Fut. and Fut. Pf. are found chiefly in general or iterative relations.

3. By attraction similar to that with *quod* (541, n. 3) and other relatives, *cum diceret*, with an Inf., is found where *diceret* would be more naturally omitted or inserted as (*ut dicēbat*); so *cum adsentire s̄s diceret* for *cum adsentiret*, L., i. 54, 1. Similarly with *cum causal*: “*saying, as he did*,” C., M.L., 5, 12.

**586. Causal cum.**—*Cum, whereas, since, seeing that,* with any tense of the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action (580, N. 1).

*Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nō sit*, C., Fin., iii. 8, 29; *since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.* *Cum [Athēnās] tamquam ad*

*merellitram bonrum artium sis profectus, inānem redire turpissimum est,* C., *Off.*, III. 2, 6; *as (since) you set out for Athens as if to market for accomplishments, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed).* *Dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis,* NEP., XXIII. 10, 4; *he had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.*

REMARKS.—1. The characteristic nature of the Subjv. with *cum* comes out more clearly in the causal connection, owing to the parallel with *utpote*, *quippe*, and the relative (626, n.).

2. The primary tenses are more common, in this connection, but the historical tenses are abundant enough. With the latter the causal relation need never be emphasized.

**587. Concessive and Adversative *cum*.**—Causal *cum*, *whereas*, becomes Concessive *cum*, *whereas*, *although*, with the Subjunctive, when the cause is not sufficient; the relation is often adversative, and there is no limitation as to tense.

The temporal notion is still at work; whether the times are for or against an action is a matter outside of language (580, n. 1).

*Nihil mē adiūvit cum posset,* C., *Att.*, IX. 13, 3; *he gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.* *Cum primi ordinē hostium concidissent, tamen sc̄erimē reliqui resistabant,* CÆS., *B.G.*, VII. 62, 4; *although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.* *Perire artem putamus nisi apparet, cum dñinat ars esse, si apparet,* QUINT., IV. 2, 127; *we think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.*

REMARKS.—1. To emphasize the adversative idea, *tamen* is often added to the principal clause.

2. Adversative *cum nōn*, *whereas not*, is often conveniently translated *without*; *cum nōn inferior fuisse*, C., *Off.*, I. 32, 116; *without being inferior.*

**588. Cum—tum.** 1. When *cum*, *when*, *tum*, *then*, have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative. *Cum—tum* then has the force of *both—and especially*, and a strengthening adverb, such as *máxime*, *praecipue*, is often added to the latter.

(*Pausanias*) *cōndilia cum patris tum sibi inimica capiēbat,* NEP., IV. 3, 3; *Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.*

2. When they have different verbs, the verb with *cum* is usually in the Indicative, but *may* be in the Subjunctive, especially when the actions of the two verbs are not contemporary ; this Subjunctive often has a concessive force.

[*Sisennae historia*] *cum facile omnēs vincat superiores, tum indicat tamen quantum abeit & summō, C., Br., 64. 228; although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).*

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**589.** In Conditional Sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the **Protasis**, that which contains the consequence is called the **Apodosis**.

Logically, **Protasis** is *Premiss* ; and **Apodosis**, *Conclusion*.

Grammatically, the **Apodosis** is the *Principal*, the **Protasis** the *Dependent*, clause.

**590.** *Sign of the Conditional.*—The common conditional particle is *si*, *if*.

NOTES.—1. *Si* is a locative case, literally, *so, in those circumstances* (comp. *si-e, so*, and the English : “I would by combat make her good, *so* were I a man.”—SHAKESPEARE). Hence, conditional clauses with *si* may be regarded as adverbs in the Abl. case, and are often actually represented by the Abl. Absolute.

*Sic* is found as the correlative of *si* in the colloquial language, as : *sic sorbis aliquid, si vacabis* (C., *Au.*, XII. 38, 2) ; *sic ignōvisse putatō mē tibi, si cēns hodiē mēcum* (H., *Ep.*, I. 7, 69). Instead of *si*, its equivalent *tum* occurs at all periods, being in the Augustan time restricted to formal uses. *Igitur* is also found as late as Cicero, who likewise uses *ita*. Other particles are post-classical.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by *al quidem*, which in later Latin is almost = *quoniam* ; see 585, n. 5.

3. The temporal particles *cum* and *quandō, when*, and the locative *ubi*, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

**591.** *Negative of si.*—The negative of *si* is *si nōn* or *nisi*.

(a) With *si nōn*, *if not*, the *nōn* negatives the single word ; hence an opposing positive is expected, either in a preceding condition, or in the conclusion. Therefore, *si nōn* is the rule :

i. When the positive of the same verb precedes.

*Si fēceris, māgnam habēbō grātiām ; si nōn fēceris, ignōscam, C., Fam., v. 19 ; if you do it, I will be very grateful to you ; if you do not, I will forgive (you).*

2. When the Condition is concessive ; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

*Si mihi bonū rē pūblicū frui nōn licuerit, at eārē mālū, C., Mil., 34, 98 ; if I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

(b) With *nisi*, *unless*, the negative *ni-* refers to the principal clause, which is thus denied, if the conditional clause is accepted ; hence :

1. *Nisi* adds an exception or restriction to the leading statement. Compare the general use of *nisi*, *except* (R. 2).

*Nisi molestumāt, paucis percontātīr (180, 6) volō ego ex tā, Pl., Rud., 120 ; if it is not disagreeable, I wish to ask you a few questions.*

So the formulae *nisi fallor* (*ni fallor* is found first in OVID), *nisi mā omnia fallant* (C., Att., VIII. 7, 1), and the like.

2. *Nisi* is in favorite use after negatives.

*Parvī (= nihil) sunt foris arma nisi est cōsūlīum domī, C., Off., I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2). [Nōn] possem vivere nisi in litteris viverem, C., Fam., IX. 26, 1 ; I could not live unless I lived in study. Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceāt, C., Cat. M., 7, 21 ; memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (Si nōn exerceāt, in case you fail to exercise it.)*

So more often than *si nōm*, in asseverations. *Peream nisi sollicitus sum, C., Fam., xv. 19, 4 ; may I die if I am not troubled.*

REMARKS.—1. Sometimes the difference is unessential :

*Nisi Cūriō fūisset, hodie tā mūscas comēdīsset, Cf. QUINT., XI. 3, 129 ; if it had not been for Curio, the flies would have eaten you up this day. Si nōn fūisset would be equally correct.*

2. *Nisi* is often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of *but*, *except*, *besides*, *only* :

*Inspice quid portem ; nihil hic nisi triste vidēbis, Ov., Tr., III. 1, 9 ; examine what I am bringing ; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad. Falsus honor iuvat et mendax infimia terret, quem nisi mendacum et medicandum ! H., Ep., I. 16, 39 ; "false honor charms and lying slander scares," whom but the faulty and the fit for physic ?*

So *nisi si*, *except in case*, with a following verb ; occasional in early Latin, more common later, but not in CAES. (B.G., I. 31, 14, is disputed), SALL., VERG., HOR. *Nisi ut*, *except on condition that*, is post-classical.

*Necesse est Casilināsē sē dēdere Hannibali ; nisi si mālunt famē perire, C., Inv., II. 57, 171 ; the people of Casilinum must needs surrender to Hannibal ; unless (except in case) they prefer to perish by hunger.*

3. *Nisi quod* introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that (625, 2, N. 2) ; so *praeterquam quod* ; *nisi ut* (e. g. C., Imp., 23, 67).

Nihil acciderat [Polykrati] quod nōllet nisi quod anulum quō dēlectabatur in mari abiōerat, C., *Fin.*, v. 30, 92; *nothing had happened to Polykrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight (= a favorite ring).* Nihil peccat nisi quod nihil peccat, PLIN., *Ep.*, IX. 26, 1; *he makes no blunder except—that he makes no blunder ("faultily faultless").*

4. *Nisi forte* (found very often in CICERO, very rarely earlier), *unless, perhaps, nisi vērō* (peculiar to CICERO), *unless, indeed, with the Indic., either limit a previous statement, or make an ironical concession:*

Nēmō ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte īsanit, C., *Mur.*, 6, 18; *there is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked.* Plēnum forum est eōrum hominum, . . . nisi vērō paucō fuisse arbitrāmī, C., *Sull.*, 9, 28; *the forum is full of those men; unless, indeed, you think they were (but) few.*

NOTES.—1. *Nisi* is sometimes strengthened by *tamen, but, yet.*

*Nisi etiam hic opperiar tamen paulisper*, PL., *Aul.*, 805; Cf. C., *Att.*, v. 14, 3. Even without *tamen* it is adversative in colloquial Latin, especially after *nesciō*.

2. *NI* is found mostly in early Latin and the poets, and in legal formulae and colloquial phrases. It is rare in CICERO, and never used in CAESAR.

Peream nī pīscem putāvi ēsse, VARRO, *R.R.*, III. 3, 9; *may I die if I did not think it was a fish.*

3. *Nisi forte* is found occasionally with the Subjv. from APULEIUS on.

592. *Two Conditions excluding each the other.*—When two conditions exclude each the other, *si* is used for the first; *sīn, if not (but if)*, for the second.

*Sīn* is further strengthened by *autem, vērō* (rare), *but; minus, less (not); secus* (rare), *otherwise; aliter, else.*

Mercātūra, *si tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sīn māgna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda*, C., *Off.*, I. 42, 151; *mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.*

REMARK.—If the verb or predicate is to be supplied from the context, *si minus, if less (not), si minus, si aliter, if otherwise*, are commonly used, rarely *si nōn*:

Edūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; *si minus, quam plūrimōs*, C., *Cat.*, I. 5, 10; *take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.* Ēdōro *si poterō; si nōn, invitus amābō*, Ov., *Am.*, III. II, 85 (242, R. 2).

NOTE.—Much less common are simple *si*, or *si* strengthened by *nōn, nihil, nūllus, minus*, or by *autem, vērō*; or *sed si, at si* (COL.), *si contrā* (HOR., PLIN.). *Sīn* may also be followed by *nōn*, but commonly only when one or more words intervene.

Pōma crīda *si sunt, vix ēvelluntur; si mātūra, dēcidunt*, C., *Cat.M.*, 19, 71; *If fruit is green it can hardly be plucked, if ripe it falls (of itself).*

**593. Other Forms of the Protasis.**—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative.

*Qui vidēret, urbem captam diceret, C., Verr., iv. 23, 52; whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken. Mirārētur qui tum cerneret, L., xxxiv. 9; 4 (258).*

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle.

*Si latet ars, prōdest; affert dēprēssā pudōrem, Ov., A.A., ii. 313; art, if concealed, does good; detected, it brings shame. Māximās virtūtēs iacōre omnēs necessā est voluntātē dominante, C., Fin., ii. 35, 117; all the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress. Nihil [potest] ēvenire nisi causā antecēdente, C., Fat., 15, 34; nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier.

*Fōerunt id servi Milōnis quod suā quinque servōe in tāli rē facere voluisset, C., Mil., 10, 29; the servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tāli accidisset). At bene nōn poterat sine pīrō pectorē vivi, Lucre., v. 18; but there could be no good living without a clean heart (nisi pīrum pectus esset). Negue enim māteriam ipsam (cōnsēbant) cohaerēre potuisse si nullā vi continārētur, neque vim sine aliquā māteriā, C., Ac., i. 6, 24.*

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative or equivalent.

*Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris, Ov., Tr., iv. 3, 88 (542). Cōdit amor rēbus: rēs age, titus eris, Ov., Rem. Am., 144; love yields to business; be busy (if you plunge into business), you will be safe. Im-mūtā (verbōrum collocatiōnem), perierit tēstārē, C., Or., 70, 282 (244, n. 4).*

#### Classification of Conditional Sentences.

**594. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis :**

I. Logical Conditional Sentences : *si*, with the Indicative.

II. Ideal Conditional Sentences : *si*, chiefly with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.

III. Unreal Conditional Sentences : *si*, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

**NOTES.**—1. In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into *particular* and *general*. Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosia. Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given (566, 567).

2. Conditional Sentences with the Subjunctive (Ideal and Unreal) are best understood by comparing the forms of the Ideal and Unreal wish which have the same mood and the same tenses. The Unreal wish of the Past is the Plupf., that of the Present is the Impf. Subjunctive. The Ideal wish is the Pr. and Pf. Subjunctive. The same temporal relations appear in the conditional.

### I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**595.** The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula : if this is so, then that is so ; if this is not so, then that is not so.

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative : the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative ; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

#### PROTASIS.

Si id crēdis,	
<i>If you believe that,</i>	
Si id crēdibās,	
<i>If you believed that,</i>	
Si id crēdisti,	
<i>If you (have) believed that,</i>	
Si id crēdeš,	
<i>If you (shall) believe that,</i>	
Si id crēdideris,	
<i>If you (shall have) believe(d) that,</i>	
Si quid crēdisti,	
<i>If you have believed anything</i>	
$(= \text{when you believe anything})$	
Si quid crēdiderās,	
<i>If you had believed anything</i>	
$(= \text{when you believed anything})$	

#### APODOSIS.

erris,	
<i>you are going wrong.</i>	
errābās,	
<i>you were going wrong.</i>	
errāstī,	
<i>you went (have gone) wrong.</i>	
errābis,	
<i>you will (be) go(ing) wrong (234, R.).</i>	
errāveris,	
<i>you will have gone (will go) wrong.</i>	
erris,	
<i>you go wrong. Comp. 509.</i>	
errābās,	
<i>you went wrong.</i>	

Si spiritum dūcit, vivit, C., *Inv.*, I. 46, 86; *if he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.* Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est cōnsilium domi, C., *Off.*, I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2). Si occidi, rēctē feci; sed nōn occidi, QUINT., IV. 5, 18; *if I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.* [Natura] si sequētur duocem, numquam aberrābimus, C., *Off.*, I. 28, 100; *if we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.* [Improbō] si meus cōsulatūs sustulerit, multa saecula prōpagārit rei pūblicae, C., *Cat.*, II. 5, 11; *if my consulship shall have done away with the destructives, it will have added many ages to the life of the State.* Si pēs condoluit, si dēns, ferre nōn possumus, C., *Tusc.*, II. 22, 52 (567). Stomacha-bātūr senex, si quid asperius dixeram, C., *N.D.*, I. 33, 93 (567). Vivam, si vivet; si cadet illa, cadam, PROP., II. (III.) 28 (25), 42 (8); *let me live, if she lives; if she falls, let me fall.* Nunc si forte potes, sed nōn potes, optimā cōñflux, finitis gaudē tot mihi morte malis, Ov., *Tr.*, III. 3, 55;

*now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death. Electere si nequod superde, Acharonta movebo, V., A., VII. 312; if I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse (all) hell below. Si tot exempla virtutis non movent, nihil umquam movebit; si tanta cladem vitem vitam non fecit, nulla faciet, L., XXII. 60, 14; if so many examples of valor stir you not, nothing will ever do it; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none (ever) will. Desinere timere, si sperare desieris, SEN., E.M., I. 5, 7; you will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope. Perire male, si non optimum erat, H., S., II. 1, 6; may I die the death if it was not best. Si volvabis participari, auferre (= auferre debet) dimidium domum, PL., Truc., 748; if you wished to share in it, you should have taken the half home. Respirarō si tē viserō, C., Att., II. 24, 5; I shall breathe again, if I shall have seen you.*

REMARKS.—1. After a verb of Saying or Thinking (*Oratio Obliqua*), the Protasis must be put in the Subjv., according to the rule.

(Si id crēdis, errās.)	Dicō, tē, si id crēdas, errāre.
	Dixi, tē, si id crēderēs, errāre.
(Si id crēdis, errābis.)	Dicō, tē, si id crēdas, errātūrum esse.
	Dixi, tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.
(Si id crēdidisti, errāsti.)	Dicō, tē, si id crēdideris, errāsse.
	Dixi, tē, si id crēdidiessēs, errāsse.

For examples, see *Oratio Obliqua*, 657.

2. The Subjv. is used by Attraction :

[*Arneolae*] rēte texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant, C., N.D., II. 48, 128 (567). (Si quid inhaesit cōficiunt.)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjv. in connection with the Universal Present :

(*Senectus*) plēna est voluptatis si illē sciēs tūti, SEN., E.M., 12, 4; old age is full of pleasure if you know (if one knows) how to enjoy it. Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceas, C., Cat.M., 7, 21 (591, b. 2).

4. Sive—sive (sēu—sēu) almost invariably takes the Logical form. (496, 2.) The Subjv. is occasionally used by Attraction or with the Ideal Second Person.

Sen visit, ferōditer instat victis; sen vicius est, instaurat cum vicitribus certamen, L., xxvi. 14, 1; if he vanquishes (567), he presses the vanquished furiously; if he is vanquished, he renewes the struggle with the vanquishers.

5. Aliquidem, as giving the basis for a conclusion, often approaches the causal sense (590, n. 2). In this case the Apodosis precedes.

Molesta vēritās, aliquidem ex eī nascitur odium, C., Lael., 24, 89; truth is burdensome, if indeed (since) hatred arises from it.

6. Si modō, if only, serves to limit the preceding statement.

**A** de<sup>s</sup>t tantum rat<sup>i</sup>nem hab<sup>e</sup>mus, si modo hab<sup>e</sup>mus, C., *N.D.*, III. 28, 71; *all that we have from God is (bare) reason, if only we have it.*

**Si** verb when thus used is ironical (C., *Ph.*, VIII. 8, 24). **Si tamen** seems to be post-classical.

NOTES.—1. Phraseological are *si quaeris* (*quaerimus*) in a sense approaching that of *profecto* (C., *Off.*, III. 20, 80; *Tusc.*, III. 29, 73): *Si dis placet, if the gods will*, often ironical (*Cf. Ter.*, *Eur.*, 929; C., *Fln.*, II. 10, 31). *Si forte, peradventure* (C., *Or.*, III. 12, 47; *Mu.*, 38, 104).

2. It will be observed that the tense involved depends in each member upon the sense. But for this very reason certain combinations would be uncommon. Thus Pr.—Impf. and Fut.—Pr. are rare; Pr.—Fut. is more common in ante-classical and post-classical Latin than Fut.—Fut., the Pres. being used by anticipation. CICERO prefers Fut.—Fut. CICERO also uses frequently Fut. Pf.—Fut. Pf., which is also found elsewhere, but rarely. Pf.—Fut. is found first in CICERO, and is never common; also Impf.—Impf. Plupf.—Impf. is mostly found in ante-classical and post-classical Latin. The Pf., by anticipation for Fut. Pf., is not unfrequent in early Latin. So C., *Fam.*, XII. 6, 2: (*Britus*) *si cōservātus erit, vicinus* (237); *Cf. Sen., Ben.*, III. 62, 145. Pl., *Poen.*, 67, shows us our only example of Pr.—Fut. Pf.: *Rex sum, si ego illum ad mē adlexer̄*.

## II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**598.** The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against. The point of view is usually the Present.

1. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person (595, R. 3; 663, 2).

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see 257.

### PROTASIS.

**Si id crēd̄is,**  
*If you should (were to) believe that,*

**Si id crēd̄as,**  
*If you should (were to) believe that,*

**Si id crēd̄ideris,**  
*If you should (have) believed that (Perfect; Action Past or Future),*

*that (Action Future),*

**Si id crēd̄ideris,**  
*If you (should have) believe(d) that,*

### APODOSIS.

**err̄as,**  
*you would be going wrong.*

**err̄averis,**  
*you would go wrong.*

**err̄es,**

*you would be going wrong.*

**err̄averis** (rare),

*you would (have) go(ne) wrong.*

*Si vicinus tuus equum meliorem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum malis an illius?* C., *Inv.*, I. 31, 52; *if your neighbor (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?* *Si gladium quis apud te sanguine mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens, reddere peccatum sit, officium non reddere,* C., *Off.*, III. 25, 95; *if a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you, (and) reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.* *Hanc viam si asperam esse negem, mentiar,* C., *Sest.*, 46, 100; *if I should say that this way is not rough, I should lie.* *Si nunc me suspendam meam operam luserim, et meis inimicis voluptatem creaverim,* PL., *Cas.*, 424; *should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and give(n) to my enemies a charming treat.* *Ciceroni namque ducentos nunc dederit nummos nisi fulserit annulus ingens,* JUV., VII. 139; *no one would give Cicero nowadays two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand).* *Si quis furiosus praecepit det, erit ipso quem monabit, insanior,* SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 17; *if one should give advice to a madman, he will be more out of his mind than the very man whom he advises.* *Si valeant homines, ars tua, Phoebe, iacet,* OV., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 78; *should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.* *Otia si tollitis, periare Cupidinis arcus,* OV., *Rem. Am.*, 139 (204, n. 6). (*Senectus*) *est plena voluptatis, si illi sciis uti,* SEN., *E.M.*, 12, 4 (595, n. 3). *Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceas,* C., *Cal. M.*, 7, 21 (591, b. 2). *Nilla est exceptio peccati, si amici causa peccaveris,* C., *Lael.*, II, 87; *it is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.*

2. The Point of View may be the Past. In that case the Protasis is found in the Imperfect, very rarely the Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Apodosis has corresponding forms. This usage, however, is rare, inasmuch as it coincides in form with the Unreal Condition, from which it is distinguishable only by a careful study of the context. When found with indefinite persons, the construction is the Potential of the Past.

The idea of Partial Obliquity frequently enters, in which case *si* may often be translated, *in case that.*

*Quod usum non veniebat de eo si quis legem constitueret non tam prohibere videtur quam admonere,* C., *Tull.*, 4, 9; *if one should make a law about that which was not customary, he would seem not so much to prevent as to warn.* (Present: *si quis constitutus, videatur.*) *Si Alfenus tum iudicium accipere vellet, denique omnia quae postularet facere voluisse, quid ageret?* C., *Quinct.*, 26, 83; *in case Alfenus was willing then to undertake the trial, and should have been willing afterwards to do all that you required, what were you to do?* (See the whole passage—Present:

*si nunc velit, . . . voluerit, agis.) Si tribuni mē triumphare prohibērent, Furiūm et Aemiliūm tēstās citātūs fui, L., xxxviii. 47; should the tribunes prevent me from triumphing, I was going to summon Furius and Aemilius as witnesses. Quid faceret? si vivere vellet, Sejanus rogandus erat, SEN., Cons. Marc., 22, 6; what was he to do? if he wished to live Sejanus was (the man) to be asked. See TAC., Ann., III. 13. Erat Quintus, si cederet, placabilis, L., xxxvi. 32, 5; Quintilius was, if you yielded to him, (sure to be) placable. (Est si cedas.) Si luxuriae temperaret, avāritiam nōn timēs, TAC., H., II. 62; if he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (Si temperet, nōn timēs.) Cū igitur et Camillus doleret, si haec . . . ēventura putaret? et ego doleam si . . . putem? C., Tusc., I. 37, 90. (Present: doleat si putet.)*

REMARKS.—1. The Ideal is not controlled by impossibility or improbability, and the lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 256, n. 2.) This is more common in early Latin.

*Tū si hic sis, aliter sentias, TER., And., 310; if you were I (put yourself in my place), you would think differently. Haec si tecum patria loquatur, nōne impetrare dēbet? C., Cat., I. 8, 19; if your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)? So C., Fin., IV. 22, 61.*

2. Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence: *Si reviviscant et tecum loquantur—quid talibus viris respondārē? C., Fin., IV. 22, 61: if they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?*

3. When *nōn possum* is followed by *nisi* (*si nōn*), the Protasis has the Ideal of the Past, after the past tense, and *may* have the ideal of the Present after a primary tense.

*Neque mūnitūnē Caesaris prohibēre poterat, nisi proeliō dēcēptū vellet, CAES., B.C., III. 44. See MADVIG on C., Fin., III. 21, 70.*

4. In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, exclude future verbs such as *posse*, *velle*, etc. The future sense of such Unreal Conditionals comes from the auxiliary.

5. In *Frātis Obliqua* the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (666.)

### III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of that which is Unfulfilled or Impossible, and is expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Conjug. Perfect and Imperfect. Any action that is decided is considered Past (compare C., *Off.*, II. 21, 75). (See 277, 3, N.)

## PROTASIS.

SI id crēderās,

*If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]*

SI id crēdiſſēs,

*If you had believed that, [you did not,]*

## APODOSIS.

errārēs,

*you would be going wrong.*

errāviſſēs,

*you would have gone wrong.*

Sapientia nōn expeterētur, si nihil efficeret, C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42; *wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.* Caedarem t̄s, nisi trāſcoerer, SEN., *Ira*, I. 15, 8; *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.* Si ibi t̄s esse scissem, ad t̄s ipse vāniſſem, C., *Fin.*, I. 8; *if I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.* Hectora quis nōſſet, talix si Trōla fuſſet? Ov., *Tv.*, IV. 3, 75; *who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy?* Nisi ante Rōmā profectus esſēs, nūna eam certē relinquerēs, C., *Fam.*, VII. 11, 1; *if you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.* Ego nisi peperisseſſem, Rōma nōn oppīgnārētur; nisi filium habērem, libera in libert̄ patris mortua esſēs, L., II. 40, 8; *had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The Impf. Subjv. is sometimes used in opposition to continuance from a point in the Past into the Present. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Impf., and the Apodosis in the Plupf., except when the Impf. denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present :

Nū tam facile op̄is Carthāginis tantae condidissent, nisi Sicilia clāſſibus nostris patāret, Cf. C., *Verr.*, II. 1, 8; *the great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been (as it still continues to be) open to our fleets.* Si pudrēm habērēs, ultimā mihi pēniſōnē remissāt, SEN., *E.M.*, 29, 10; *if you had (= you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment.* Memoriam ipsam cum vōce perdiſſim⁹, si tam in nostrā potestātē esſet oblīſſi quā tacēre, TAC., *Agr.*, 2, 4; *we should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.*

The Impf. in both members, referring to the Past, always admits of another explanation than that of the Unreal ; thus we have a case of Representation (654, N.) in

Protogenēs si Ialysum illum suum caenō oblitum vidēret, māgnum, crēdō, acciperet dolōrem, C., *Att.*, II. 21, 4; *if Protogenes could see that famous Ialysus of his besmeared with mud, he would feel a mighty pang.. See PL., *Aul.*, 742.*

2. In Unreal Conditions, after a negative Protasis, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Impf. Indic., when the action is represented as interrupted (288); by the Plupf. and Hist. Pf., when the conclusion is confidently anticipated (254, n. 3).

*Lēbēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissēm*, C., *Leg.*, I. 19, 52 (254, n. 3).

This usage after a positive is cited first in the post-Augustan writers. Cases like C., *Verr.*, v. 42, 129; L., xxii. 28, 13, do not belong here.

*Omnīō supervacua erat doctrina, si nātūra sufficeret*, QUINT., II. 8, 8 (254, n. 3). *Perfēctum erat bellum, si Pompēium Brundisiī opprimere potuisset*, FLO., II. 13, 19; *the war was (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundusium.*

The Impf. Indic. is sometimes found in the Protasis:

*Ipsam tibī epistolam misissem, nisi (v.l., sed) tam subitō frātris puer proficisciēbātur*, C., *Att.*, VIII. 1, 2; *I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother's servant was not starting so suddenly.*

3. (a) The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the active and passive Periphrastic—*vix*, *paene*, *scarcely*, *hardly*, and the like. In many cases it is difficult to distinguish this usage from that of the Ideal (596, 2).

*Cōnsul esse qui potui, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem*? C., *Rep.*, I. 6, 10; *how could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?* *Antōni gladiūs potuit contemnere, si sic omnia dixisset*, JUV., X. 123; *he might have despised Antony's swords, if he had thus said all (that he did say).* *Emendātūrus, si licuisset, eram*, Ov., *Tr.*, I. 7, 40; *I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it).* *Pōns iter paene hostibus dedit* (*paene dedit = dabat = daturus erat*), *ni finus vir fuisse*, L., II. 10, 2; *the bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man.*

(b) With the Indic. the Possibility and the rest are stated absolutely; when the Subjv. is used the Possibility and the rest are conditioned as in any other Unreal sentence.

Compare *quid facere potuisse*, *nisi tum cōnsul fuisse*, with *cōnsul esse qui potui*, *nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem*, C., *Rep.*, I. 6, 10. *Qui si fuisse meliore fortūna, fortasse austārior et gravior esse potuisse*, C., *Pis.*, 29, 71.

4. In *ōrātiō Obliqua* the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Pr. and Pf. Inf. (149), for the Active, *futūrum (fore) ut*, *futūrum fuisse ut* for passive and Supineless verbs.

A. *Dicō (dixi), tē, si id crāderēs, errātūrum esse.*

B. *Dicō (dixi), tē, si id crādiassē, errātūrum fuisse.*

A. *Dicō (dixi), si id crāderēs, fore ut dēciperēris.*

B. *Dicō (dixi), si id crādiassē, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperēris.*

A is very rare; A, theoretical. For the long form, B, the simple

Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 659, n. In B, *fuisse* is omitted occasionally in later Latin; TAC., *Ann.*, I. 33, etc.

5. (a) When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjv., the Plupf. is turned into the Periphrastic Pf. Subjv.; the Impf. form is unchanged.

<i>Nōn dubitō,</i> <i>I do not doubt,</i>	<i>quīn, si id crēderes, errārēs,</i> <i>that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.</i>
<i>Nōn dubit&amp;bam,</i> <i>I did not doubt,</i>	

*quīn, si id crēdidim̄s, errātūrus fueris,*  
*that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.*

*Honestum tūlē est ut, vel si Ignōrārent id hominēs, caset laudābile, Cf. C., Fin., II. 15, 49; virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it. Ea rē tantum tumultū sc̄ fugam praebuat ut nisi castra Pūnicā extrā urbē fūsissent, effusura s̄c omnis pavida multitudō fuerit, L., xxvi. 10, 7; that matter caused so much tumult and flight (= so wild a panic), that had not the Punic camp been outside the city the whole frightened multitude would have poured forth. Neō dubium erat quīn, si tam pauci simul obire omnia possent, terga daturū hostēs fuerint, L., iv. 38, 5; there was no doubt that, if it had been possible for so small a number to manage everything at the same time, the enemy would have turned their backs. Dic quidnam factūrus fueris, si eō tempore cōsor fuisse? L., ix. 33, 7; tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time? See C., Pis., 7, 14.*

(b) The Periphrastic Plupf. Subjv. occurs rarely, and then only in the Dependent Interrogative. The only examples cited are from LIVY.

*Subibat cōsideratiō animū, quānam modō tolerābilis futūra Etrūria fuissest si quid in Samnīō adversi &vēniasset, L., x. 45, 8.*

(c) Potui (254, n. 1) commonly becomes potuerim, and fuī with the Periphrastic passive in -dus becomes fuerim, after all tenses.

*Haud dubium fuit quīn, nisi ea mora intervénisset, castra eō dī Pūnicā capi potuerint, L., xxiv. 42, 3; there was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day. Quae (rēs) suī sponte nefaria est ut etiamsi līx nōn eset, mīgnopere vitanda fuerit, C., Verr., I. 42, 108.*

(d) The passive Conditional is unchanged :

*Id ille si repudiāset, dubitātis quīn ei vis eset allīta? C., Sest., 29, 62; if he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?*

The active form is rarely unchanged (L., II. 33, 9). In the absence of the Periphrastic tense the Inf. with potuerim is often a sufficient substitute; see L., xxxii. 28, 6.

NOTE.—In PLAUTUS and TERENCE, absque with the Abl. and eset (foret) is found a few times instead of nisi (si nōn) with Nom., and eset (fuissest) in the sense if it were not (had not been) for.

*Mam absque tē eset, hodiē numquam ad sōlem ocoñsum vivere, Pl., Men., 1022. Cf. Liv., II. 10, 2 (n. 3, above).*

## INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**598. Omission of the Conditional Sign.**—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

An ille mihi! (351) liber, cui mulier imperat? p̄sicit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est; dicit, abeundum; ministrat, extimēscendum, C., *Parad.*, 5, 2; or is he free (tell) me, to whom a woman gives orders? she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come; she turns out (of door), he must go; she threatens, he must be frightened. Unum cōgnit̄is, omnis nōris, TEK., *Ph.*, 265; you know one, you know all. Dedit̄s hunc animō p̄r corpus, fecisset quod opt̄bat, PLIN., *Ep.*, I. 12, 8; had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.

**599. Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.**—When the verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis.

Si quisquam (= si quisquam fuit), Catō sapiēns fuit, Cf. C., *Lael.*, 2, 9; if any one was wise, Cato was. Edūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; si minus, quam plūrimōs, C., *Cat.*, I. 5, 10 (592, R.).

**600. Total Omission of the Protasis.**—1. The Protasis is often contained in a participle or involved in the context; for examples see 593, 2 and 3.

2. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis (257, N. 2).

Nimiō plus quam velim [Volscōrum] ingenia sunt mōbilis, L., II. 37, 4; the dispositions of the Volscians are (too) much more unstable than I should like. Tuam mihi dari vellem eloquentiam, C., *N.D.*, II. 59, 147; I could wish to have your eloquence given me. Tam felix essēs quam formidissima vellem, OV., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 (302). (Utinam essēs!)

**601. Omission and Involution of the Apodosis.**—The Apodosis is omitted in *Wishes* (261), and implied after verbs and phrases denoting *Trial* (460, 2). It is often involved in *Ōratiō Obliqua*, and sometimes consists in the general notion of *Result*, *Ascertainment*, or the like.

Si vērum excutiās, faciēs nōn uxor amītur, JUV., VI. 143; if you were to get out the truth (you would find that) it is the face, not the wife, that

*is loved.* (*Iugurtha*) *timēbat fram* (= nō irasperātur) *senātūs, nī pāruisset legātīs,* S., *Iug.*, 25, 7; *Iugurtha was afraid of the anger of the senate (that the senate would get angry) in case he did not (should not have) obey(ed) the legates.*

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

602. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with *ut si*, *velut si, sc̄ si, quam si* (rare), *tamquam si, quasi*, or simply *velut* and *tamquam, as if.*

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences. The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

*Nōli timēre quasi [= quam timeās si] assem elephāntō dēs,* QUINT., VI. 3, 59; *don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.* *Parvī primō ortū sic iacent tamquam [= iaceant si] omnīnō sine animō sint,* C., *Fin.*, v. 15, 42; *babies, when first born, lie (there), as if they had no mind at all.* *Hic est obstandum, mīlitēs, velut si ante Rōmīna mōenia pīgnātūs,* L., *xxi.* 41, 15; *here (is where) we must oppose them, soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstāmus, si pīgnāmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight).* *Mē invat, velut ipse in parte labīris &c periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Pūnicī pērvānisse,* L., *xxxl.* 1; *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).* *Tantus patrē metus cōpīt velut si iam ad portās hostis eset,* L., *xxi.* 16, 2; *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.* *Dīlīta (est) Ausonīus gēns perinde &c si interneclī bellō certīsset,* L., *ix.* 25, 9; *the Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).*

REMARKS.—I. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional:

*Māssiliānsēs in eō honōre audimus apud [Rōmānōe] esse &c si medium umbilicūm Graecīas incolerent,* L., *xxxvii.* 54, 21; *we hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-navel (= the heart) of Greece.* *Eius nēgōtīum sic velim suscipīs,* ut si esset rē mea, C., *Fam.*, II. 14, 1; *I wish you would undertake his business just as if it were my affair.*

2. The principal clause often contains correlatives, as : *ita, sic, perinde, prōinde, similiter, nōn (hanc) secūs, etc.*

NOTES.—1. *Tamquam* and *quasi* are also used in direct comparison with the Indic-

ative. Here the verbs with both clauses are apt to be the same, in which case the verb with *quasi* or *tamquam* is usually omitted in model prose.

*Quasi pōma ex arboribus, cūtida si sunt, vix ēvelluntur, sic vitam adulēscētibus vīa auferit*, C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 71.

2. *Quasi* is used to soften or apologize for a single word (= *ut ita dicam*).

*Mors est quaedam quasi migratiō communātiōque vitae*, *G.C., Tusc.*, I. 12, 27; *death is as it were a shifting of life's quarters*.

3. As in the ordinary Conditional sentence, so in the Comparative sentence, the Protagonist may be expressed by a participle:

*Galli laeti ut explōrātā victoriā ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt*, *G. CAES., B.G.*, III. 18, 8; *the Gauls in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans*. *Antiochus sēcūrus dē bellō Rōmānō erat tamquam nōn trānsitūris in Asiam Rōmānōs*, L., *xxxvi. 41*; *Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor*.

4. In CELSUS, QUINTILIAN, JUVENAL, PLINY MIN., and especially in TACITUS and SURTONTIUS, we find *tamquam* used almost like *quod* (841), to indicate an assumed reason, in imitation of the similar Greek use of *as* with the participle, and occasionally where we might have expected the Acc. and Infinitive.

*Pridem invīsus tamquam plūs quam cīviliā agītāret*, *TAC., Ann.*, I. 12, 6; *long mīlitādē as (in Tiberius' judgment) plotting high treason*. *Suspectus tamquam ipse sufficiēderit aedēs*, *JUV.*, III. 222; *suspected of having (as if he had) set his own house on fire*. *Vulgī opinīō est tamquam (comētēs) mīlitātiōnēm rēgnī portendat*, *TAC. Ann.*, XIV. 22, 1; *it is the popular belief that a comet portends a change in the kingdom*.

Other particles, *quasi*, *scitum*, and *ut*, occur much more rarely and are cited mainly from TACITUS (*quasi* only in the *Annals*). Compare SURT., *TVL.*, 5.

5. *Ut si* is rare in early Latin, not being found at all in PLAUTUS. It is found but once in LIVY, but frequently in CICERO and later Latin. *Velut si* is found first in CAESAR. *Velut* for *velut si* is found first in LIVY. *Ac si* is equivalent to *quasi* only in late Latin.

## CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

**603.** Concessive Sentences are introduced by :

1. The Conditional particles, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi* (*tamen-etsi*).
2. The generic relative, *quamquam*.
3. The compounds, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*.
4. The verb *licet*.
5. The Final particles, *ut* (*nē*).
6. *Cum* (*quom*).

These all answer generally to the notion *although*.

NOTE.—*Etsi* (*et + si*), *even if*; *etiamsi*, *even now if*; *tametsi*, *yet even if*; *quamquam* (*quam + quam*), *to what extent soever*; *quamvis*, *to what extent you choose*; *quantumvis*, *to what amount you choose*; *licet*, *it is left free* (perhaps intrans. of *linquō*, *I leave*).

**604.** *Etsi*, *etiamsi*, and *tametsi*, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate

the use of *si*, *if*. The Indicative is more common, especially with *etiam*.

*Dè futuris rebus etiā semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possis accēdere*, C., *Fam.*, vi. 4, 1; *although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing*. [Hamilcar] *etiam flagrābat bellandi cupiditātē, tamen p̄cō servīundū putāvit*, *Nep.*, xxii. 1, 8; *although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace*. *Inops ille etiamē referre grātiā nōn potest, habēre certā potest*, C., *Off.*, ii. 20, 69; *the needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it*. *M̄ v̄ra p̄d grātiā loqui, etiā meū inge-nūm nōn monēret, necessitātē odgit*, L., iii. 68, 9; *even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak what is true instead of what is palatable*.

REMARKS.—1. *Si* itself is often concessive (591, 2), and the addition of *et*, *etiam*, and *tamen* serves merely to fix the idea.

2. *Etiā* is used oftener with the Subjv. than with the Indic., and seems to be found only in conditional sentences. On the other hand, *etiā* is also used like *quamquam* (605, n. 2), in the sense “*and yet*;” *virtūtem si finam amiseris—etiā amitti nōn potest virtūs*, C., *Tusc.*, ii. 14, 32; so too, but rarely, *tamenetiā*. *Etiā* is a favorite word with CICERO, but does not occur in QUINTILIAN nor in SALLUST, the latter of whom prefers *tamenetiā*. *Tamenetiā* is not found in the Augustan poets nor in TACITUS, and belongs especially to familiar speech.

3. *Tamen* is often correlative even with *tamenetiā*.

605. *Quamquam*, *to what extent soever*, falls under the head of generic relatives (254, n. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative.

*Medici quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegris dīount, illōs morbō eōs esse moritūrō*, C., *Div.*, ii. 25, 54; *although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that (particular) disease*.

REMARKS.—1. The Potential Subjv. (257, n. 8) is sometimes found with *quamquam*: *Quamquam exercitūm qui in Volscis erat m̄flet, nihil recūavit*, L., vi. 9, 6; *although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection*.

So especially with the Ideal Second Person.

2. *Quamquam* is often used like *etiā*, but more frequently, at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, *and yet*, *although*, *however*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence.

3. The Indic., with *etiā* and *quamquam*, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjv. in *Ör̄stid Obliqua* (508).

NOTE.—The Subjv. with *quamquam* (not due to attraction) is first cited from CICERO (*Tusc.*, v. 30, 86), NEPOS (*XXV.* 13, 6), after which, following the development in all generic sentences in Latin, it becomes more and more common ; thus, in post-Augustan Latin, JUVENAL uses it exclusively, and PLINY MIN. and TACITUS regularly.

**606. Quamvis** follows the analogy of *volō*, *I will*, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive (usually the principal tenses).

**Quantumvis** and **quamlibet** (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

*Quamvis sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere temptant*, Ov., *M.*, vi. 376; although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esēs*, V., *Ec.*, ii. 16; although he was black, although you were fair. [Vitia mentis], *quamvis exigua sint, in māius exēdunt*, SEN., *E.M.*, 85, 12; mental ailments (= passions), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing. *Quamvis sis molestus numquam tē esse cōfitēbor malum*, C., *Tusc.*, ii. 25, 61; although you be troublesome, I shall never confess that you are evil.

NOTES.—1. The Indic. with *quamvis* is cited in prose first from C., *Rab. Post.*, 2, 4; NEP., i. 2, 3 (except in fragments of VARRO and VATINIUS); in poetry it appears first in LUcretius. Then it grows, so that in the post-Augustan period it is used just like *quamquam* with the Indic., though the Subjv. is also common :

*Quamvis ingeniō nōn valet, arte valet*, Ov., *A.m.*, i. 15, 14; although he does not tell by genius, he does tell by art.

2. The verb of *quamvis* is sometimes inflected : *Quam volet Epicurus iocētur, tamen numquam mē movēbit*, C., *N.D.*, ii. 17, 46.

**607. Licet** retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive :

*Licet irrideat si qui vult*, C., *Parad.*, i. 1, 8; let any one laugh who will. *Ārdeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis*, JUV., vi. 209; though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover. *Sim licet extrēmum, sicut sum, missus in orbem*, Ov., *Tr.*, iv. 9, 9; although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.

NOTES.—1. Exceptions are extremely rare : JUV., XIII. 56.

2. *Quamvis* is sometimes combined with *licet*, as : *quamvis licet insectēmur istōs — metuō nō sōli philosophi sint*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 24, 53.

3. Occasionally *licet* is inflected ; e.g., H., *Epod.*, 15, 19; S., II. 1, 59. From the time of APULIUS *licet* is construed with the Indicative.

**608. Ut** and **nē** are also used concessively for the sake of argument ; this is common in CICERO, who often attaches to it *sānē* ; the basis of this is the Imperative Subjunctive.

Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, Ov., *Pont.*, III. 4, 79;

granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will. *Nō sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 5, 14; granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.

**REMARKS.—I.** Ut nōn can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative: *Hic dies ultimus est; ut nōn sit, prope ab ultimō est*, *Sen.*, *E.M.*, 15, 12; *this is your last day; granted that it be not, it is near the last*.

2. Examples with past tenses are rare: C., *Mil.*, 17, 46; L., *XXXVIII.* 46, 8, etc.

3. On ita—ut, see 262; on ut—ita, see 482, 4.

**609. Concessive Sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.**—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

[Eisus] interdum ita repente strumpit, ut cum cupientes tenere nequeamus, Cf. C., *Or.*, II. 58, 235; laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so. Multorum tū oculi et aurē nō sentientem custodiant, C., *Cat.*, I. 2, 6; (of) many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (WITHOUT your perceiving it). Quis Aristidem nōn mortuum dilligit? C., *Fin.*, V. 22, 62; who does not love Aristides, (though) dead?

**NOTES.**—1. Quamquam, quamvis, and etiam are often combined with the participle. This, however, is rare in classical Latin, but becomes more common later.

(Caesar), quamquam obediētō Massilias retardante, brevi tamen omnia subegit, *Suit.*, *Iul.*, 34.

2. With adjectives and adverbs this is much more common, so especially with quamvis, which is used with a positive as a circumlocution for the superlative. With the superlative quamvis is rare.

Etiam nōn iniquum, certe triste sensitū cōsultum, L., *XXV.* 6, 2. Cum omnia per populum geruntur, quamvis iūstum atque moderatum tamen ipsa aequabilitas est iniqua, C., *Rep.*, I. 27, 42.

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**610. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.**

**REMARKS.—I.** The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun:

Quae cum ita sint, now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula).

Futura modo expectant; quae quia certa esse nōm possunt, cōfiduntur et angore et metu, C., *Fin.*, I. 18, 60; they only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out

*with distress and fear. [Epicurus] nōn satis politus iis artibus quās qui  
tenent, eruditū appellantur, C., Fin., I. 7, 26; Epicurus is not sufficiently  
polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people  
are called cultivated.*

2. Notice especially *quod* in combination with *si* and its compounds *ubi*, *qua*, *quoniam*, *ut* (poetic and post-class.), *utinam*, *nē*, *utinam nē*, *qui* (rare), in which *quod* means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and*, *but*, *therefore*, *whereas*, sometimes not at all.

*Quod nī fuissem incōgitāns ita eum exspectārem ut pār fuit, Ter., Ph.,  
155; whereas, had I not been heedless, I should be awaiting him in  
proper mood.*

NOTES.—1. The use of the Relative to connect two independent clauses instead of a demonstrative, is very rare in PLAUTUS, more common in TERENCE, but fully developed only in the classical period.

2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence (*quom*, *qua*, *quoniam*, compounds of *quam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc.), and is therefore treated last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

611. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative pronouns in all their forms: adjective, substantive, and adverbial. (See Tables 109 foll.)

REMARKS.—1. The Relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a Relative. *Unde*, whence, is frequently used of persons, but the others rarely; occasional examples are cited for *ubi* and *quōd*, the others less frequently: *ibi* = in *eō*, etc.; *ubi* = in *quōd*, etc.; *inde* = ex *eō*, etc.; *unde* = ex *quōd*, etc.; *eō* = in *eum*, etc.; *quōd* = in *quem*, etc.

*Potest fieri ut is, unde tē audisse dicas, irātus dixerit, C., Or., II. 70, 285;  
it may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger.  
Quōd (= quibus) lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nē fiat comes, Pl., Aul., 491 (573).*

2. The Relative is not to be confounded with the Dependent Interrogative sentence (469, R. 2).

*Quae probat populus ego nescit, SEN., E.M., 29, 10; the things that the  
people approves, I do not know (quid probet, what it is the people ap-  
proves). Et quid ego tē velim, et tū quod quaeris, scđs, Ter., And., 536;  
you shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing  
which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).*

612. Position of Relatives.—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its Relative (413).

613. Antecedent.—The word to which the Relative refers

is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

**REMARK.**—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common (414, n. 1).

#### CONCORD.

**614.** The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

*Is minimus eget mortalis, qui minimum cupit, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.) (308). Uxor contenta est quae bona est tuus viri, PL., Merc., 812; a wife who is good is contented with one husband. Malum est omnium quod mutari non potest, SYRUS, 362 (Fr.); bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed. Hoc illis narrum qui me non intellegunt, PHAEDR., 3, 128; I tell this tale for those who understand me not. Ego qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, C., Fam., XIV. 4, 5; I who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes; exceptions are very rare:

*Tu es is, qui (me) summis lantibus ad caelum extulisti, C., Fam., XV. 4, 11; you are he that has(t) praised me to the skies.*

The Latin rule is the English exception: Acts, xxi. 38; Luke, xvi. 15.

2. When the Relative refers to a sentence, *id quod, that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically). So also *quae res*, or simple *quod*, and, if reference is made to a single substantive, *qui* or some similar form.

*Si et vobis id quod non sperabat, tamen animus non deficiam, C., Roec. Am., 4, 10; if I should be deserted by you (which I do not expect), nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted. Nec audiendus [Theophrasti] auditor, Strat., in qui phrygus appellatur, C., N.D., I. 13, 85.*

3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

(a) By the sense, and not by the form; that is, a collective noun may be followed by a Plural Relative, a neuter numeral by a masculine Relative, a possessive pronoun by a Relative in the person indicated by the possessive, etc.

*Caesa sunt ad sex milia qui Pydnam perfigerant, L., XLIV. 42, 7; there were slain up to six thousand who had fled to Pydna. Equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant, CAES., B.G., I. 15; he sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).*

(b) By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent; so especially when the Relative is combined with the copula or with a copulative verb.

*Thesee, quod Boeotiae caput est, L., XLII. 44, 8; Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia. Flumen Scaldis, quod infuit in Mosam, CAES., B.G.,*

VI. 33, 8; *the river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas. Iusta gloria, qui est fructus virtutis*, C., *Pis.*, 24, 57; *real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.*

Exceptions are not unfrequent, especially when the predicative substantive in the Relative clause is a foreign word or a proper name.

*Stellae quæ Graeci comètæ vocant*, C., *N.D.*, II. 5, 14; *the stars which the Greeks call comets.* *Est genus quoddam hominum quod Helotæ vocatur*, *NEP.*, IV. 3, 6; *there is a certain class of men called Helots.*

4. The pronominal apposition may be taken up into the Relative and disappear:

*Testorum suffragis quod illi ostracismum vocant*, *NEP.*, V. 3, 1; *by potsherd votes—(a thing) which they call “ostracism.”*

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 282:

*Grandes nati mātrē et parvi liberti, quorum utrumque aetās misericordiam vestram requirit*, C., *Verr.*, V. 49, 129; *aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands your compassion.* *Otium atque divitiae, quæ prima mortales putant*, S., C., 36, 4; *leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.*

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred:

*Eae fruges atque fructus quæ terra gignit*, C., *N.D.*, II. 14, 87; *those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.*

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 287.

NOTE.—A noteworthy peculiarity is found in early Latin, where a generic Relative sentence with *qui* is made the subject of an abstract substantive with *est*, and represented by a demonstrative in agreement with that substantive.

*Istaceo virtus est, quandō fūsust, qui malum fert fortiter*, Pl., *Aesin.*, 323; *that's manhood who (if one) bears evil bravely, when there's need.*

The parallel Greek construction suggests Greek influence.

615. *Repetition of the Antecedent.*—The Antecedent of the Relative is not seldom repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive.

(Caesar) intellēxit diem instare, quō dīs frumentum militibus mētiri oportēret, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 16, 5; *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which day it behoved to measure corn (corn was to be measured out) to the soldiers.*

NOTE.—This usage belongs to the formal style of government and law. CAESAR is very fond of it, especially with the word *dīs*. It is occasional in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, and not uncommon in CICERO; but after CICERO it fades out, being found but rarely in LIVY, and only here and there later.

616. *Incorporation of the Antecedent.*—1. The Antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative

clause; sometimes there is a demonstrative antecedent, sometimes not.

*In quem primum egressi sunt locum Trōia vocatur, L., l. i, 8; the first place they landed at was called Troy. Quam quicque nfrit artem, in hīc sē exerceat, [C.], Tusc., l. 18, 41; what trade each man is master of, (in) that let him practise (himself), that let him ply.*

NOTES.—1. Incorporation, while much less frequent than Repetition, is still not unfrequently met with in *LIVY*; after *LIVY* it decays. No examples are cited from *SALLUST* with a demonstrative antecedent, and but one from *CAESAR*. No example is cited from *CAESAR* without a demonstrative antecedent.

2. Instead of a principal clause, followed by a consecutive clause, the structure is sometimes reversed. What would have been the dependent clause becomes the principal clause, and an incorporated explanatory Relative takes the place of the demonstrative. This is confined to certain substantives, and is found a number of times in *CICERO*, but rarely elsewhere (*SALL.*, *HOR.*, *LIVY*, *OVID*, *SEN.*, *TAC.*, *PLINY MIN.*).

*Qui enim prudētis es, nihil tē fugiet (= es prudētis es, ut nihil tē fugiat), C., Fam., xi. 13, 1. Vels tantummodo; quae tua virtus (est), expugnabis, H., 8., l. 9, 54.*

2. An appositional substantive, from which a Relative clause depends, is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

[*Amanus*] *Syriam & Ciliacē dividit, qui mōns erat hostium plēnus, C., Att., v. 20, 8; Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.*

NOTE.—This usage is found first in *CICERO*. The normal English position is found first in *LIVY*, but it becomes more common in later Latin.

*Priscus, vir cūius prōvidentiam in rē pūblicā ante experta civitās erat, L., IV. 46, 10.*

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

[*Themistocles*] *dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgēm misit, NEP., II. 4, 8; Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to the king. Nōmini crēdō, qui largē blandust dives pauperi, PL., Aul., 196; I trust no rich man who is lavishly kind to a poor man.*

817. *Attraction of the Relative.*—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the antecedent, rarely into any other case.

*Hōc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō quō diximus, C., Att., x. 8, 7; we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

NOTES.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the Relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence; that is, with auxiliary verbs like *velle*, *solēre*, *iubēre*; and after verbs of Saying and the like.

It is rare in early Latin, but common from CICERO on.

*Quibus poterat saudis dñctis s̄cūm ad urbem pergit, L., iv. 39, 9; having taken with him all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.*

2. *Inverted Attraction*.—So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then usually in the Acc., which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling.

This Acc. stands usually for a Nom., sometimes, but only in Comedy, for the Gen. Dat. or Abl. A strange usage is the Nom. where the Acc. would be expected. This may be *nōminatīvus pendēns*, a form of *anacoluthon* (697), and is found only in early Latin.

*Urbem quam statuō, vestra est, V., A., i. 573; (as for) the city which I am rear-ing, (it) is yours. Istum quem quæreris, ego sum, Pl., Circ., 419; (as for) that man whom you are looking for, I am he. Ille qui mandāvit eum exturbāsti ex aedibus! Pl., Trin., 137. ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")*

618. *Correlative Use of the Relative*.—The usual Correlative of *qui* is *is*, more rarely *hic*, *ille*.

*Is minimō eget mortālis, qui minimum cupit, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.) (808). Hic sapiēns, de quō loquor, C., Ac., ii. 33, 105 (305, 3). Illa dīcē veniet, mea quā lugubria pōnam, Ov., Tr., iv. 2, 73 (307, 4).*

619. *Absorption of the Correlative*.—The Correlative, *is*, is often absorbed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative. This is a kind of Incorporation.

*Postume, nōn bene olet, qui bene semper olet, MAET., ii. 12, 4; Postu-mus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet. Quem arma nōn frēgerant vitia vīērunt, CUET., vi. 2, 1; (him) whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome. Quem di diligunt adulēsēs moritur, PL., B., 816; (he) whom the gods love dies young. Xerxes praeium prōpositū qui [= ei qui] invēnisset novam voluptātem, C., Tusc., v. 7, 20; Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure. Miseranda vita qui [= eōrum qui] s̄t metuī quam amāri mālunt, NEP., x. 9, 5; pitiable is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved. Discite sākri per quem [= per eum, per quem] didicistis amāre, Ov., Rem. Am., 43 (401).*

Difficult and rare are cases like :

*Nunc redē ad quae (for ad ea quae) mihi mandās, C., Att., v. 11, 6.*

620. *Position of the Correlative clause*.—The Relative clause naturally follows its Correlative, but it often precedes; incorporation also is common.

*Male s̄t rēs habet cum quod virtute effici dōbet id temptātur pecūniā, C., Off., ii. 6, 22; it is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accom-plished by worth, is attempted by money. Quod vidēs accidere pueris hōc nōbis quoque māiusculis pueris ēvenit, SEN., E.M., 24, 13; what you see befall children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth. Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hōc s̄t exerceat, [C.], Tusc., i. 18, 41 (616, 1).*

The Correlative absorbed :

*Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn t̄ripit, SEN., E.M., 59, 18; what fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away. Per quās nōs petitis saepe fugātis opēs, Ov., A.A., III. 132; the means you take to win us often scare us off.*

**621. Indefinite Antecedent.**—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted.

*Élige cui dicas: tū mihi sōla place, Ov., A.A., I. 42; choose some one to whom you may say : You alone please me.*

**REMARK.**—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from the Interrogative: [Conon] nōn quæsavit ubi ipse tūtō viveret, NEP., IX. 2, 1; *Conon did not seek a place to live in safety himself, might be either Relative or Deliberative (265).*

#### TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**622. Future and Future Perfect.**—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (242, 244).

*Sit liber, dominus qui volet esse meus, MART., II. 32, 8; he must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master. Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, sius victoria erit, LIV. (244, R. 2).*

**623. Iterative Action.**—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (566, 567).

##### I. Contemporaneous action :

*Ore trahit quocumque potest, atque addit acervō, H., S., I. I, 84; drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap). Quicunque incēdēbat agmen, lāgati occurrēbant, L., XXXIV. 16, 6; in whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.*

##### II. Prior action :

[Terra] numquam sine tūstā reddit, quod accēpit, C., Cat. M., 15, 51; *the earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives). Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn t̄ripit, SEN., E.M., 59, 18 (620). Nōn cēnat quotiēns nōmo vocāvit sum, MART., V. 47, 2; he does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him. Haerēbant in memorī quacumque audierat et viderat [Themistocles], C., Ac., II. 1, 2 (567). Sequentur tēs quocumque pervaenēt vitia, SEN., E.M., 28, 1; vices will follow you whithersoever you go. Qui timērē dēsirint, t̄disse incipient, Tac., Agr., 32 (567).*

**REMARK.**—On the Subjv. in Iterative Sentences, see 567, n.

## MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**624.** The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.

*Uxor quae bona est, Pl., Merc., 812; a wife who is good (a good wife).*

REMARK.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a substantive, with this difference: that the substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation: if *qui docent = those who teach = the teachers* (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions). On the Relative with Subjv. after an adj. clause, see 438, n.

**625. Indefinite and Generic Relatives.**—**1.** *Quicumque, quisquis*, and the like, being essentially Iterative Relatives, take the Indicative according to the principles of Iterative action (254, n. 4). So also simple Relatives when similarly used.

*Quācumque incedebat agmen, legati occurserant, Liv., xxxiv. 16, 6 (623).*

REMARK.—According to 567, n., the Subjv. is used:

(1) In *Örtiis Obliqua* (Total or Partial):

*Marti Galli quae bellū cōperint (Pf. Subjv.) dēvovent (= sē datūrū vovent), Cf. CAES., B.G., vi. 17, 8; the Gauls devote (promise to give) to Mars whatever they (shall) take in war (O. R., Quae cōperimus, dabimus).*

(2) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):

*Quis eum diligat quem metuat?* C., Lael., 15, 58 (620).

(3) In the Ideal Second Person:

*Bonus sēgnior fit ubi neglegit,* S., Jug., 31, 28 (566).

(4) By the spread of the Subjv. in post-classical Latin:

*Qui tūnum sīus ordinis offendisset omnīs adversōs habēbat,* L., xxxiii. 46, 1 (567).

**2.** *Qui = si quis, if any*, has the Indicative when the Condition is Logical.

[*Terra] numquam sine ūfirū reddit, quod accēpit,* C., Cat.M., 15, 51 (623). (*Si quid accēpit.*) *Qui mori didicit, servire dēdidicit,* SEN., E.M., 26, 10 (423).

REMARK.—When the Condition is Ideal, the Subjv. is necessary (596). In post-classical Latin the Subjv. is the rule with all conditionals.

**626. Explanatory Relative.**—*Qui*, with the Indicative (= *is enim, for he*), often approaches *quod, in that*.

*Habeo senectūti māgnam grātiām, quae mihi sermōnis aviditātem*

*auxit, C., Cat. M., 14, 46; I am very thankful to old age, which (for it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.*

REMARK.—*Qui* with the Subjv. gives a ground, = *cum* is (586); *qui* with the Indic., a fact; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable:

*Instinit hic quidem, qui ipse male didicit sibi, Pl., Men., 309; cracked is this man, who calls (= for calling) down curses on himself. Erraverim fortasse qui m̄s aliquid putavi, Plin., Ep., 1. 23, 2; I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.*

NOTES.—1. This causal sense is heightened by *ut*, *utpote*, *as*; *quippe, namely*. *Ut* *qui* is rare in early Latin, CAESAR, and CICERO, and is not found at all in TERENCE and SALLUST. LIVY, however, is fond of it. The mood is everywhere the Subjunctive. *Utpote* is found only here and there in Latin, and not at all in TERENCE, CAESAR, LIVY; but once in PLAUTUS. The mood is the Subjv. until late Latin. *Quippe qui* is the most common of the three, but does not occur in CAESAR. In early Latin the mood is the Indic. (except Pl., Pers., 696); also in SALLUST. CICERO uses the Subjv.; LIVY uses both moods; later the Subjv. is the rule until the time of APULEIUS.

2. Simple Explanatory *qui* has the Indic. most commonly in early Latin, and in general develops on the same line that *cum* follows.

627. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

POTENTIAL: *Habeō quae velim, C., Fin., 1. 8, 28; I have what I should like.*

OPTATIVE: *Quod faustum sit, régem credite, L., 1. 17, 10; blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.*

REMARKS.—1. Especially to be noted is the Subjv. in restrictive phrases. Here the Relative often takes *quidem*, sometimes *mōdo*.

The early Latin shows only *quod sciam* (as if *dum aliquid sciam*), *so far as I may be permitted to know anything about it* (= *quantum scilicet, as far as I know, for all I know*), which is used throughout the language, and *quod quidem veniat in mentem* (Pl., Ep., 698). CICERO, however, shows a great variety. *Quantum sciam* is found first in QUINTILIAN.

*Omnium ornatum quod quidem eognoverim acritisimum iudiciorum certiorium, C., Br., 48, 180; of all oratores, so far as I know them, I consider Seriorius the most acute. Nullum ornatum qui modo nōm obsecrast subtrahendum putā, Quint., v. 14, 88; I think no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.*

2. Restrictions involving *esse*, *posse*, *attinet*, are regularly in the Indicative. CICERO and CAESAR, however, show a very few cases of the Subjv., especially with *possit*.

*Prōdidisti et tē et illam, quod quidem in tē fuit, Ter., Ad., 692; you have betrayed both her and yourself, so far as in you lay. Ego quod ad m̄s attinet, iudicō, vici, C., Verr., II. 1. 8, 21; I, judges, so far as pertains to me, have conquered.*

**628.** The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted (539, r.). So especially in *Oratio Obliqua* and Final Sentences.

*Rētō Graeci praecipiunt, nōn temptanda quae offici nōn possint, QUINT., IV. 5, 17; right are the Greeks in teaching that those things are not to be attempted which cannot be accomplished. Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait, bēstiolās quādam nōscit quae unum diem vivant, C., Tusc., I. 39, 94 (650). Virtūs facit ut eōs diligāmus in quibus ipsa inesse videātur, C., Off., I. 17, 56; virtue makes us love those in whom she seems to reside. P̄estulātur ab hominib⁹ ut ab illis s̄e abstineant māxim⁹ vitis, in quibus alterum reprehenderint, C., Verr., III. 2, 4; it is demanded of men that they refrain from those faults most of all as to which they have blamed another. Senatus cōsultus uti quicunque Galliam p̄ovinciam obtinēret, Haedu⁹ dēfendēret, CAES., B.G., I. 35; the senate decreed that whoever obtained Gaul as his province should defend the Haedui. Paetus omnes librōs quōd frāter suus reliquisset mīhi dōnāvit, C., Att., II. I, 12; (this is Paetus' statement; otherwise: quōd frāter s̄ius (521) reliquit; compare C., Att., I. 20, 7). Xerxes p̄aemīnum p̄oposuit qui [= ei qui] invānisset novam voluptātem, C., Tusc., V. 7, 20 (619).*

REMARK.—Even in *Oratio Obliqua* the Indic. is retained :

(a) In explanations of the narrator :

*Nūntiātur Afrāniō māgnōs commētūs qui iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad flūmen obnūtissē, CAES., B.C., I. 51, 1; it is (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of provisions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river.*

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the Relative clause is an integral part of the sentence, especially in the Impf. and Pluperfect; partly for clearness, partly for liveliness. For shifting Indic. and Subjv., see L., xxvi. 1.

(b) In mere circumlocutions :

*Quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestate administrari? Cf. C., Cat., III. 9, 21; who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods? Prōvidendum est nō quae dicuntur ab eō qui dicit dissentiant, QUINT., III. 8, 48; we must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.*

**629.** Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Attraction of Mood).

*Pigri est ingenii contentum esse illis quae sint ab aliis inventa, QUINT., x.*

2, 4; it is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by others. Quis aut eum diligat quem metuat aut eum & quod se metuit putet? C., *Lael.*, 15, 53; who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared? Nam quod emis possis iure vocare tuum, *Mart.*, II. 20, 2; for what you buy you may rightly call your own. Ab aliis expectas alteri quod feceris, *SYRUS*, 2 (Fr.) (319). In virtute sunt multi ascurci, ut is glorios maxima excellat, qui virtute plurimum praestet, C., *Planc.*, 25, 60 (552). Si solle odes dicores miserere quibus moriendum esset, neminem eorum qui viverent exceptes; moriendum est enim omnibus, C., *Tusc.*, I. 5, 9; if you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who lived (live); for all have to die.

**REMARK.**—The Indic. is used:

(a) In mere circumlocutions; so, often in Consecutive Sentences: Necesse est facere sumptum qui querit litorum, *Pl.*, *As.*, 218 (585). Efficitur ab oratore, ut si qui audiunt ita adficiantur ut orator velit; Cf. C., *Br.*, 49, 185; it is brought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he wishes (them to be).

(b) Of individual facts:

Et quod videt perisse perditum ducis, *CAT.*, VIII. 2; and what you see (definite thing, definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod videt, anybody, anything.)

**630. Relative Sentences of Design.**—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design, when *qui* = *ut* is.

Sunt multi qui trahunt alii quod alii largiantur, C., *Off.*, I. 14, 43; many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others. [Senex] serit arbore, quae alteri saeclū præsent, *CAECILIUS* (C., *Tusc.*, I. 14, 31) (545). Semper habet Pyladēn aliquem qui cūret Orestem, *Ov.*, *Rem. Am.*, 589 (545). [Magnāiam Themistocli Artaxerxes] urbem dōmīrat, quae et pānem præberet, *NEP.*, II. 10, 8 (545).

**NOTES.**—1. The basis of this construction is the characteristic Subjv., and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative; but in many cases the characteristic force is no longer felt.

2. After mittere there are a few cases where the Impf. Indic. is used with much the same force as the Impf. Subjv., but the purpose is merely inferential from the continuance in the tense.

Inmittēbantur illi canes, qui invēstigabant omnia, C., *Verr.*, IV. 21, 47.

3. By attraction similar to that with *quod* (641, n. 3) and *quoniam* (555, n. 3), the Relative is sometimes found with an Inf. and *diceret*, where the Subjv. of the verb in the Inf., or the Indic. with a parenthetical *ut dixit*, is to be expected.

Litteris quis mē sibi misisse diceret (= misisset, or miserat, ut dixit) recitatavit, C., *Pl.*, II. 4, 7.

**631. Relative Sentences of Tendency.**—Potential Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency, when *qui* = *ut* is.

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation, and we distinguish three varieties :

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is emphasized ; regularly after *idōneus*, *suitable* ; *aptus*, *fit* ; *dignus*, *worthy* ; *indignus*, *unworthy* ; after *is*, *talis*, *eiusmodi*, *tam*, *tantus*, and the like ; after *tinus* and *sōlus*.

*Est innocentia affectiō talis animi, quae noceat nēmini*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 8, 16 ; *harmlessness (innocence) is that state of mind that does harm to no one (is innocuous to any one)*. *Ille ego sim cuius lanet furiōsa capillōe*, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 451 ; *may I be the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy*. *Sūlus es*, C. *Caesar*, *cuius in victoriā occiderit nēmō*, C., *Dei.*, 12, 84 ; *thou art the only one, Caesar, in whose victory no one has fallen*. *Quem mea Callipē laeserit tinus egū*, Ov., *Tr.*, II. 568 ; *I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt*. (*Acadēmicī*) *mentem sūlam cōfessabant idūnam cui crēderetur*, C., *Ac.*, I. 8, 80 ; *the Academics held that the mind alone was fit to be believed (trustworthy)*.

REMARKS.—1. Ut is not unfrequently found instead of qui after the correlatives.

2. *Idōneus*, *dignus*, etc., take also ut, and the Infinitive (552, R. 2).

2. With an indefinite antecedent ; so especially after negatives of all kinds, and their equivalents, and in combinations of *multi*, *quidam*, *alii*, *nōnnulli*, etc., with *est*, *sunt*, *existit*, etc.

*Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who* ; *nēmō est qui, there is none to* ; *nihil est quod, there is nothing* ; *habeo quod, I have to* ; *reperiuntur qui, persons are found who (to) . . .* ; *quis est qui? who is there who (to) . . . ? est cur, there is reason for, etc*. So, also, *fuit cum, there was a time when* (580, R. 1).

*Sunt qui discessum animi & corpore putent esse mortem*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 9, 18 ; *there are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body*. *Fuit qui suādēret appellatiōmem mēnsis Augusti in Septembrem trānsferandam*, SUET., *Aug.*, 100 ; *there was a man who urged (= to urge) that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September*. *Multi fuérant qui tranquillitatēm expetentes & negōtīis pūblicis & remōverint*, C., *Off.*, I. 20, 69 ; *there have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements*. *Omnīs nēmō nullus rei fuit sp̄tor cui dēfuerit hic vēnditor*, C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97 (317, 1). *Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuā malli*, PL., *Capt.*, 741 ; *after death there is no ill in death for me to dread*. *Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condat erit*, Ov., *Her.*, 10, 120 ; *and there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers*. *Miserrimus est*

*qui quom ēsse cupit quod edit* (172, n.) *nōn habet*, PL., *Capt.*, 463; *he is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not anything to eat* (*nōn habet quid edat* would mean *does not know what to eat*). *Quotus est quisque qui somnis p̄areat*, C., *Div.*, II. 60, 125; (*how many men in the world*), *the fewest men in the world obey dreams*.

REMARKS.—1. The Indic. may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics :

Multi sunt qui ēripiant,  
There are many to snatch away.      Multi sunt qui ēripiunt,  
Many are they who snatch away.

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indic. more freely than prose writers :

Sunt-qui (= quidam) quod sentiunt nōn audent (so MSS.) dicere, C., *Off.*, I. 24, 84; *some dare not say what they think*. Sunt-quibus ingratis timida indulgentia servit, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 435; *to some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly*. Sunt qui (indefinite) nōn habeant, est-qui (definite) nōn cūrat habēre, H., *Ep.*, II. 2, 183.

2. When a definite predicate is negated, the Indic. may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjv. on account of the negative :

- A. Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum qui id possidet meliōrem facit; or,
- B. Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum qui id possideat meliōrem faciat.
- A. *Nothing that does not make its owner better is good*.
- B. *There is nothing good that does not make its owner better*.

3. After comparatives with *quam* as an object clause.

Maliōra in dēfēctiōne dēlīquerant, quam quibus ignōsci posset, L., xxvi. 12, 6; (*in that revolt*) *they had been guilty of greater crimes than could be forgiven (had sinned past forgiveness)*. Nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlūm adīci posset, CAES., *B.G.*, II. 21, 8; *the enemy were not more than a javelin's throw distant*.

REMARKS.—1. Classical Latin prefers *ut* after comparatives.

2. Instead of *quam ut*, *quam* is not unfrequently found alone, especially after *potius*, but also after *amplius*, *celerius*, etc.; in which case the construction resembles that of *antequam*.

4. Parallel with a descriptive adjective with which it is connected by *et* or *sed*.

Exierant (duo) adulēscētēs et Drūsi familiārēs, et in quibus māgnam spēm māliōrēs collocarent, C., *Or.*, I. 7, 25; *two young men had come out (who were) intimates of Druus and in whom their elders were putting great hopes*.

632. *Quin in Sentences of Character*.—After negative clauses, usually with a demonstrative *tam*, *ita*, etc., *quin* is

often used (556) where we might expect *qui nōn*, and sometimes where we should expect *quae nōn*, or *quod nōn*.

*Sunt certa vicia quae nām est quin effugere cupiat, C., Or., III. 11, 41; there are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape. Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendō invēstigāri possiet (= possit), Ter., Heaut., 675 (552).*

REMARK.—That *quin* was felt not as *qui nōn*, but rather as *ut nōn*, is shown by the fact that the demonstrative may be expressed :

*Nōn cum quāquam arma contuli quin is mihi succubuerit, NEP., XVIII. 11, 5; I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me.*

**633. Relative in a Causal Sense.**—When *qui* = *cum is, as he*, the Subjunctive is employed. (See 586, R. 1.)

The particles *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *as*, are often used in conjunction with the Relative ; for their range, see 626, N. 1.

(*Caninius*) fuit mirificus vigilantis qui suō tōtō cōnsulātū somnum nōn viderit, C., *Fam.*, VII. 30, 1; *Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship.* O fortūnāte adulēcāns, qui tuae virtutis Homērūm praeōnem inveneris ! C., *Arch.*, IO, 24; *lucky youth ! to have found a crier (= trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer ! Major glōria in Scipione, Quinctil recentior ut qui eō annō triumphāset, L., XXXV. IO, 5; *Scipio's glory was greater, Quinctius' was fresher, as (was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year.**

REMARK.—On the use of the Indic. after *quippe*, etc., see 626, N. 1. On the sequence of tenses, see 513, N. 3.

**634. Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.**—*Qui* is sometimes used as equivalent to *cum is* in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.

*Ego qui leviter Græcas litterās attigissem, tamen cum vēniisse āthēnās complūrē ibi dīs sum commorātus, C., Or., I. 18, 82; although I had dabbed but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.*

NOTE.—The Indic. is the rule for this construction in early Latin (590, N. 1).

**635. Relative and Infinitive.**—The Accusative and Infinitive may be used in *Orātiō Obliqua* after a Relative, when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative.

(*Philosophi cōsent*) unum quemque nostrum mundi esse partem, ex quō illud nātūra cōsequi ut cōmūnēm utilitātēm nostrāe antepōnāmus, C.,

*Fin., III. 19, 64; philosophers hold that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.*

NOTES.—1. This usage is not cited earlier than CICERO, and seems to be found principally there, with sporadic examples from other authors.

2. Occasional examples are also found of the Inf. after *etsi* (LIVY), *quamquam* (TAC.), in the sense *and yet*: *cum interim* (LIVY), *quia* (SEN.), *nisi* (TAC.), *si non* (LIVY); and after *quam admodum*, *ut* (CIC., LIVY, TAC.), in comparative sentences.

**636. Combination of Relative Sentences.**—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions *only when they are actually coördinate*.

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted (*a*).

When it would stand in a different case (*b*), the Demonstrative is often substituted (*c*); or, if the case be the Nominative (*d*) or Accusative (*e*), the Relative may be omitted altogether.

(*a*) *Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat et pl̄b̄i acceptus erat* (CAES., B.G., I. 3, 5),

*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;*

(*b*) *Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat cuique pl̄b̄s favēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;*

(*c*) *Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat eique pl̄b̄s favēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;*

(*d*) *Dumnorix quem pl̄b̄s diligēbat et principatum obtinebat,*  
*Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy;*

(*e*) *Dumnorix qui principatum obtinebat et pl̄b̄s diligēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved.*

Examples: (*a*) CAES., B.G., IV. 34, 4; (*b*) C., *Lad.*, 23, 87; *Tusc.*, I. 30, 73; (*c*) C., *Br.*, 74, 238; *Tusc.*, V. 13, 38; (*d*) C., *Qff.*, II. 6, 21; L., X. 29, 3; (*e*) S., *Iug.*, 101, 5; TRE., *Ad.*, 85.

NOTES.—1. The insertion of a demonstrative is almost confined to early Latin, LUcretius, and CICERO. CAESAR and SALLUST have no examples, and LIVY very few. On the other hand, the use of a relative by *zeugma* (600) in connection with two or more verbs governing different cases is found at all periods.

2. (*a*) The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (*but who, who therefore*) except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents a *following* demonstrative or anticipates it (620).

*Qui fortis est, idem fidēns est; qui autem fidēns est, is nō extimēcit;*  
C., *Tusc.*, III. 7, 14; *he who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid.*

(*b*) *Sed qui, qui tamen,* can be used in antithesis to adjectives.

*Sophrōn mīmōrum quidēm scriptor sed quem Platō probāvit,* QUINT., I. 10, 17; *Sophron, a writer of mimes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved.*

(*c*) *Qui tamen* may be added to explain a foregoing statement.

*Causam tibi exposuimus Ephesi, quam tū tamen cōram facilius cōgnōscas,*  
C., *Fam.*, XIII. 55, 1.

3. Two or more Relative clauses may be connected with the same antecedent when the one serves to complete the idea of the principal clause, the other to modify it:

**Illa vis quae invēstigat occulta, quae inventiō dicitur,** C., *Tusc.*, I. 25, 61; *the faculty that tracks out hidden things, which is called (the faculty of) research.*

4. The Relative is often repeated by *anaphora* (682) for stylistic reasons. Compare C., *Tusc.*, I. 25, 62; *Planc.*, 33, 81; L., *xxiii.* 14, 3.

**637. Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.**—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative.

*Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantes perfidi (sunt); C., *Off.*, III. 14, 60; all who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous. [Pisistratus] Homeri librōs cōfusūs antea sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habemus, C., *Or.*, III. 34, 187; Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now.*

### COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

**638.** A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by *as* or *than*, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:

(a) By correlatives; (b) by *atque* or *&c*; (c) by *quam*.

**639. Moods in Comparative Sentences.**—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (602).

**REMARK.**—On *potius quam* with the Subjv., see below, 644, n. 3.

**640.** The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause. Compare 602.

*Ignoratiō futūrōrum malōrum utilior est quam scientia, C., *Div.*, II. 9, 28 (296). Servi mōribus isdem erant quibus dominus, Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 25, 62; the servants had the same character as the master.*

**641.** When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise.

*Ita sentiō Latinam linguam locuplētiōrem esse quam Graecam, C., *Fin.*, I. 3, 10; it is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the*

*Greek. Εγο Γάιον Καίσαρεν νῦν εαδεν δέ τη πολιτική σεντίρε φασί μή σκιό,*  
*C., Pis., 32, 79; I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same political views that I (have).*

### I. Correlative Comparative Sentences.

**642.** Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives:

#### 1. Adjective correlatives:

tot, totidem	quot,	(so) as many	as.
tantus	quantus,	(so) as great	
talis	qualis,	such	
idem	qui,	the same	

#### 2. Adverbial correlatives:

tam	quam,	(so) as much	as.
tantopere	quantopere,	(so) as much	
totiens (se)	quotiens (se),	as often	
tamdiū	quamdiū,	as long	
ita, sic	ut, uti, sicut, tamquam (rare), quasi (rare),	so (as) = as.	
item, itidem	quemadmodum, quāmodo,		

*Quot hominēs, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds, TER., Ph., 454. Frumentum tanti fuit quanti iste aestimavit, C., Verr., III. 84, 194; corn was worth as much as he valued it. Plurique habēre amicūm tñlē volunt, quīlē ipse nūn possunt, C., Lael., 22, 83; most people wish to have a friend of a character such as they themselves cannot possess. Cimōm incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus, NEP., v. 3, 1 (310). Nihil est tam populare quam bonitā, C., Lig., 12, 87; nothing is so winning as kindness. Sic dē ambitionē quāmodo dē amicō queruntur, SEN., E.M., 22, 10; they complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart. Tamdiū requīscō quāmdiu ad tē scribō, C., Att., IX. 4, 1; I rest as long as I am writing to you. Optō ut ita culque ēveniat, ut dē rē publicā quisque merētur, C., Ph., II. 46, 119; I wish each one's fortune to be such as he deserves of the state.*

#### 3. The Correlative is sometimes omitted.

*Homē, nūn quam isti sunt, glōriēsus, L., XXXV. 49, 7; a man, not (so) vainglorious as they are. Dicōt quāmdiu volēs, C., Off., I. 1, 2; you shall learn (as long) as you wish.*

**REMARKS.—I.** Instead of *idem qui, idem ut* is sometimes found.

*Disputatiōnēm expōnimus eidēm ferē verbis ut actum disputatūmque*

est, C., *Tusc.* II. 3, 9; *we are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.*

On *idem* with *atque*, *sc.*, *et*, see 643; on *idem* with *Dat.*, see 359, n. 6; on *idem* with *cum*, see 310, n. 2.

2. (a) *The more—the more*, may be translated by *quod (quisque)—eō*, and the like, with the comparatives; but usually by *ut (quisque), quam—ita, tam, etc.*, with the superlative, especially when the subj. is indefinite.

*Tantō brevius omne quantō feličius tempus*, PLINY, *Ep.*, VIII. 14, 10; *time is the shorter, the happier it is. Quam citissimē cōficiē, tam māximē expediet*, CATO, *Agr.*, 64, 2; *the quicker the better. Ut quisque sibi plūrimum cōfidit, ita māximē excellit*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 80; *the more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.*

(b) When the predicate is the same, one member often coalesces with the other: *Optimum quidque rārisimum est*, C., *Fin.*, II. 25, 81 (318, 2), = *ut quidque optimum est, ita rārisimum.*

3. *Ut—ita* is often used adversatively (482, 4). On *ita—ut*, in asseverations, see 282.

4. *Ut* and *pro eō ut* are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, *so far as, inasmuch as*; *prō eō ut temporum difficultē tulit* (C., *Verr.*, III. 54, 126), *so far as the hard times permitted*; *ut tum rēs erant, as things were then*; *ut temporibus illis* (C., *Verr.*, III. 54, 125), *for those times*; *ut erat furīosus* (C., *Rosc.Am.*, 12, 83), *stark mad as he was*; *ut Siculi* (C., *Tusc.*, I. 8, 15), *as (is, was, to be expected of) Sicilians.*

*Vir ut inter Aetōlē fācundus*, L., XXXII. 33, 9; *a man of eloquence for an Aetolian. Ut sunt hūmāna, nihil est perpetuum dātum*, PL., *Cist.*, 194; *as the world wags, nothing is given for good and all.*

5. On *quam*, *quantus*, and the Superlative, see 303.

Notice in this connection *quam qui*, *ut qui*, and the like, with the Superlative (usually *māxime*):

*Tam sum amicuſ ref pūblicae quam qui māximē (= est)*, C., *Fam.*, v. 2, 6; *I am as devoted a friend to the state as he who is most (= as any man).* *Proelium, ut quod māximē umquam, commissum est*, L., VII. 33, 5. *Domus celebrātur ita, ut cum māximē*, C., *Q.F.*, II. 4, 6.

6. The Correlative forms do not always correspond exactly.

*Subeunda dimicatiō totiēns, quot coniurati superessent*, L., II. 13, 2.

## II. Comparative Sentences with ATQUE (ĀC).

643. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take *atque* or *āc*.

*Virtūs eadem in homine sc deō est*, C., *Leg.*, I. 8, 25; *virtue is the same in man as in god. Date operam nē simili utāmur fortūnā atque usi sumus*, TER., *Ph.*, 30; *do your endeavor that we have not (ill)-luck like that we had before. Dissimilitō est cum alia dicuntur sc sentiās*, C.,

*Or., II. 67, 269; dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean* (something is said other than what you mean). *Similiter* (602, R. 2) facis sc̄ si m̄ roḡas cūr t̄ duōbus contuear oculis, et nōn alterō cōmiveam, C., *N.D.*, III. 3, 8; *you are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not blinking with one. Non dixi secus sc̄ sentiēbam*, C., *Or.*, II. 6, 24; *I did not speak otherwise than I thought.*

NOTES.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis: *Aliter dixi atque [aliter] sentiēbam, I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.*

So we find: *Tineō nō aliud cr̄ēdam atque aliud nūntiās*, *Ter.*, *Hec.*, 844; *I fear that I believe one thing, and you are telling another.*

2. Instead of *atque*, *et* is sometimes used; this is not common, but the greater proportion of cases occurs in the classical period: *Solet enim aliud sentire et loqui*, C., *Fam.*, VIII. 1, 3; *for he has a way of thinking one thing and saying another.*

3. These words are principally: *aequos*, *p̄s*, *pariter*, *idem*, *iusit̄s* (from the classical period on), *perinde*, *prō eō*; *alius*, *aliter*, *secus* (usually with a negative), *contrā*, *contrarius*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *stimul*; and rarely *item*, *tālis*, *totidem*, *proximā*, and a few others. *PLAUTUS* uses thus some words which involve a similar meaning, as *(dē)mītāre* (*M.G.*, 1130). Compare also *M.G.*, 763; *B.*, 725.

4. *Alius* and *secus* have *quam* occasionally at all periods. On the other hand, *nōn aliis* and other negative combinations seldom have *atque*, commonly *quam* or *nisi*. After negative forms of *alius* *CICERO* has regularly *nisi*, occasionally *praeter*.

*Philosophia quid est aliud (= nihil est aliud) nisi dōnum dēorum?* C., *Tuec.*, I. 66, 64; *philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?*

### III. Comparative Sentences with QUAM.

**644.** Comparative Sentences with *quam* follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 640.

In Comparative Sentences *quam* takes the same case after it as before it.

*Melior tūtorque est certa p̄ix quam sp̄r̄sta vīctorīa*, L., xxx. 30, 19 (307, R. 1). *Potius amicūm quam dictūm perdiđi*, *Quint.*, vi. 3, 20; *I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke. Volum existimās nēminem cuiquam cārīōrem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 24 (546, R. 1).

REMARKS.—I. When the second member is a subj., and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nom., with the proper form of the verb *esse*, unless the oblique case be an Accusative:

*Vicinus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est*, Cf. C., *Inv.*, I. 31, 52 (598). *Ego hominem callidiōrem vidi nēminem quam Phormiōnem*, *Ter.*, *Ph.*, 591; *I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormiō est). Tibi, multō māiori quam Africānus fuit, mē nōn multō minōrem quam Laelium adiunctum esse patere*, Cf. C., *Fam.*, v. 7, 3.

2. On *quam pr&gt;*, and *quam qui*, see 298. On the double comparative, see 299.

3. (a) When two clauses are compared by *potius, rather, prius, before, citius, quicker, sooner*, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjv. (512), with or (in CICERO) without *ut*.

*D&epign&nt; potius quam servi&nt;, C., Att., vii. 7, 7 (577, n. 6). (Dixerunt s; milie&nt; moritur&nt; potius quam ut tantum d&eacute;decoris admitti patientur, L., iv. 2, 8; they said that they would rather die a thousand times than (to) suffer such a disgrace to slip in. Moritur&nt; s; affirmabant citius quam in alienis m&oacute;rtes verterentur, L., xxiv. 3, 12; they declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.*

(b) If the leading clause is in the Inf., the dependent clause may be in the Inf. likewise, and this is the regular construction in classical Latin when the Inf. follows a verb of Will and Desire ; CICERO uses the Inf. regularly, CAESAR generally, though examples of the simple Subjv. are not uncommon in both ; LIVY is very fond of the Subjv., especially with *ut*, which is cited first from him.

*S&eacute; ab omnibus d&eacute;sert&nt; potius quam abs t&eacute; defens&nt; esse militant, C., Div. in Cae., 6, 21; they prefer to be deserted by all rather than defended by you.*

NOTES.—1. Instead of *tam—quam, so—as*, the Roman prefers the combinations *n&on minus quam—n&on magis quam* (by Litot&eacute;).

(a) *N&on minus quam* means *no less than = quite as much :*

*Patria hominibus n&on minus quam liberi c&ara esse d&ebet, (Cf. C.) Fam., iv. 5, 2; country ought to be no less dear to men than children (= quite as dear as).*

The meaning *as little as* is cited only from TER., Hec., 647 : *n&on tibi illud factum minus placet quam mihi, where not less than = quite as much as = as little as.*

(b) *N&on magis quam* means *quite as little, or quite as much :*

*Animus n&on magis est s&anctus quam corpus, Cf. C., Tusc., iii. 5, 10; the mind is no more sound than the body = as little sound as the body. (Or it might mean: The mind is no more sound than the body = the body is quite as sound as the mind.)*

So with other comparatives.

*Fabius n&on in armis praestantior fuit quam in tog&lt;, Cf. C., Cat.M., 4, 11; Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).*

2. After a negative comparative, *atque* is occasionally found for *quam* in PLAUTUS, TERENCE, CATULLUS, VERGIL ; much more often in HORACE (nine times in the *Satires*, twice in the *Epoede*), who uses it also after a positive.

*N&on Apollinis magis v&erum atque h&oc resp&onsumst, Ter., And., 698. Illi n&on minus &eacute;t tibi pectori frirunt intim&nt; flamma, Cat., lxi. 176. Cf. H., S., ii. 7, 9c.*

### THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

645. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

## THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

**846.** The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered :

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation : 423.

Gerund and Gerundive : 425–433.

Supine : 434–436.

Infinitive in Object Sentences : 526–531.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences : 532.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences : 635.

NOTE.—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence will be treated the Historical Infinitive and **Orātiō Obliqua**: the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compendious Imperfect : **Orātiō Obliqua**, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of **Orātiō Recta**.

## HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

**847.** The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the Nominative; generally, several Infinitives in succession.

(*Verrēs*) minit̄ari Diodōrū, v̄ciferari palam, lacrimās interq̄um vix tenēre,  
C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 89 ; *Verres threatened (was for threatening) Diodorus,*  
*bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

NOTE.—1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of *coepit*, *began* (QUINT., IX. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction, which has not yet received a convincing explanation. A curious parallel is *de* with Infinitive in French. The Final Infinitive (*to be*) *for*, may help the conception, as it sometimes does the translation. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details; it has regularly the sequence of a Past tense.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after *cum*, *ubi*, *etc.* See S., *Jug.*, 98, 2; L., III. 37, 6; TAC., *Ann.*, II. 4, 4; *H.*, III. 31; *Ann.*, III. 26, 2. No examples are cited from CICERO and CAESAR; this usage is characteristic of TACITUS.

## ORĀTIŌ OBLIQUA.

**848.** The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called **Orātiō Recta**, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or **Orātiō Obliqua**, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS.—1. Under the general head of **Orātiō Obliqua** are em-

braced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 508.

2. *Inquam, quoth I,* is used in citing the **Ōratiō Rēcta**; *sic, I say,* generally in **Ōratiō Obliqua**. *Inquam* never precedes the **Ōratiō Obliqua**, but is always parenthetic; *sic* may or may not be parenthetic. **Ōratiō Rēcta** may also be cited by a parenthetic "ut ait," "ut sc̄unt," rarely *ait, (as) he says, (as) they say*. The subject of *inquit* often precedes the quotation, but when it is mentioned in the parenthesis it is almost always put after the verb.

*Tum Cotta : r̄umōribus m̄scum, inquit, pūgnās, C., N.D., III. 5, 18 (484). Aliquot somnia v̄era, inquit Ennius, C., Div., II. 62, 127; "some dreams are true," quoth Ennius.*

3. The lacking forms of *inquam* are supplied by forms of *dicere*.

**649. Ōratiō Obliqua** differs from **Ōratiō Rēcta**, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the pronouns.

NOTES.—1. It must be remembered that as a rule the Roman thought immediately in **Ō. O.**, and did not think first in **Ō. R.**, and then transfer to **Ō. O.**; also that **Ō. O.** is necessarily less accurate in its conception than **Ō. R.**, and hence it is not always possible to construct the **Ō. R.** from the **Ō. O.** with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker may become unreal to the narrator, from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to **Ō. Rēcta**.

2. **Ō. Obliqua** often comes in without any formal notice, and the governing verb has often to be supplied from the context, sometimes from a preceding negative.

(*R̄egulus*) sententiam n̄e diceret recid̄s̄vit; (*saying that*) quam dīū īt̄re iūrandō hostium tenērūt, n̄n esse s̄s senātōrem, C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100.

(*Idem R̄egulus*) reddi captivōs negāvit esse ūtile; (*saying that*) illōs enim adulēscētēs esse, s̄s iam cōfūctum senectūte, *ib.*

3. Sometimes, after a long stretch of **Ō. Obliqua**, the writer suddenly shifts to the **Ō. Rēcta**. Examples: C., *Tusc.*, II. 25, 61; L., II. 7, 9, etc.

#### Moods in **Ōratiō Obliqua**.

**650. In Ōratiō Obliqua** the *principal clauses* (except Interrogatives and Imperatives) are put in the *Infinitive*, the *subordinate clauses* in the *Subjunctive*.

**Ōratiō Rēcta** : Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,  
**Ōratiō Obliqua** : Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait

**Ō. R. :** bēstiolae quaedam nāscuntur,

**Ō. O. :** bēstiolās quāsdam nāscī,

**Ō. R. :** quae ūnum diem vivunt,

**Ō. O. :** quae ūnum diem vivant, C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 94.

**Ō. R.**—*On the river Bog, says Aristotle, little creatures are born, that live (but)*  
**Ō. O.**—*Aristotle says that on the river Bog, one day.*

Socratēs dicere solēbat:

**Ō. R.** Om̄nēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs,

**Ō. O.** Om̄nēs in eō quod sc̄irent satis esse eloquentēs, C., *Or.*, I. 14, 63.

**Ø. R.** *Socrates used to say: "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

**Ø. O.** *Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

**REMARK.**—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indic., the Inf. is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjv., as in the Ideal and Unreal Conditions, special rules are necessary (656).

Otherwise, Subjv. in Ø. R. continues to be Subjv. in Ø. O.

**NOTE.**—In CAESAR, *B.C.*, III. 73, 6, where a principal clause is apparently put in the Subjv., instead of *d&strimentum in bonum verteret*, read (*fere ut*) . . . *verteret*, with Vossius, Dübner, Perrin, Hoffmann. *N.R.*, II. 7, 6, is disputed.

**651.** Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, according to 467; inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

*Ariovistus respondit s&s prius in Galliam v&enisce quam populum R&om&nium: quid sibi vellet c&r in suis possessio&n&e veniret,* CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44, 7; *Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people; what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions?* (Quid tibi vis?)

**REMARKS.—I.** Indicative Rhetorical Questions (464), being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of Ø. R. to the Acc. and Inf. of Ø. O. when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

**Ø. R.** *Num possum?*    *Can I?*                [No.] **Ø. O.** *Num posse?*  
*CAES., B.G., I. 14; Could he?*  
*Quid est turpius?* *What is baser?* [Nothing.] *Quid esse turpius?*  
*CAES., B.G., V. 28, 6; What was baser?*

*Qu& s&s repuls&s ab R&om&nis itur&s?* L., XXXIV. 11, 6; *whether should they go, if repelled by the Romans?* (Qu& ibimus?) *Cui n&n apparet ab eo qui prior arms intulisset iniuriam ortam (esse)?* L., XXXII. 10, 6; *to whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war?* (Cui n&n apparet?)

Examples are not found in early Latin, are rare in classical period, but are especially common in LIVY.

*Si bonum dico&rent, quid pr&s noxi&s damn&issent?* L., XXVII. 34, 18; *if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty?* (Si bonum dico&ritis, quid pr&s noxi&s damn&is?)

The Question in the Second Person often veils an Imperative. Here from LIVY on the Subjv. is the rule.

*Nec c&scibant Sabini inst&re rogitan&s quid tererent tempus,* L., III. 61, 18. (Ø. R., *Quid teritis?*)

Exceptions are rare ; Subjv. with Third Person, CAES., *B.C.*, i. 32. 3; Inf. with Second Person, L., vi. 39, 10.

2. In Subjv. Rhetorical Questions the Subjv. is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive. *The Deliberative Subjv. is always retained.*

*Quis sibi persuaderet sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse ?* CAES., *B.G.*, v. 29, 5 ; *who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it) ?* (*Quis sibi persuadet ?*)

The Inf. form would be the Future: *quem sibi persuaserum ?* (659), and is not to be distinguished from the Fut. Indicative.

**652.** Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, sometimes with, usually without, *ut*; the Negative is, of course, *nē* (never *ut nē*).

*Redditur responsū : nōndum tempus pugnae esse ; castris sū tenērent,* L., II. 45, 8; *there was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp.* (Ø. R., *castris vobis tenete.*) (*Vercingetorix*) *cohortatus est : nō perturbarentur incommodū,* CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 29, 1; *Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster.* (Ø. R., *nolite perturbari.*)

**REMARKS.—1.** *Ut* can be used according to 546, after verbs of Will and Desire and their equivalents.

*Pythia respondit ut moenibus lignis sū munirent,* NEP., II. 2, 6 ; *the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

2. Verbs of Will and Desire, being also *verba dicendi*, frequently have an *ut* clause followed by an Acc. with the Inf., the second clause adding a statement to the request.

*Ubi trābant ut sibi auxilium ferret ; ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futūrum,* CAES., *B.G.*, iv. 16, 5.

#### Tenses in Öratiō Obliqua.

**653.** The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530) :

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

**REMARK.**—The Impf. Indic., as expressing prior continuance, becomes the Pf. Inf. in Ø. O., and hence loses its note of continuance.

**654.** The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of

sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

**NOTE.**—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called **Repraesentatiō**. In Conditional Sentences **Repraesentatiō** often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence; this has the effect of giving additional emphasis to the primary verb, and is therefore common in commands and in favorable alternatives.

#### Point of View of the Reporter :

*Légatiū Ariovistus respondit : sibi mirum vidēri quid in suā Gallia quam bellū vicisset, Caesar negotiū esset, CAES., B.G., I. 34, 4 ; to the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

#### Point of View of the Speaker :

[*Légati Helveticorum*] Caesar respondit : cōnsuēsse dēs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex committitōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum uoleāci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere, CAES., B.G., I. 14, 5 ; *to the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.* (A long passage is L., xxviii. 32.)

#### Point of View shifted :

*Ad haec Mārcius respondit : si quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armis discedant, S., C., 34, 1 ; thereto Mārcius replied : If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.*

Prīnde aut cōderent (undesired alternative) animō atque virtūte genti per eōs dīcē totiēs ab sē victae, aut itineria finē spērent (desired alternative) campū interiacētēm Tiberi &c. moenib⁹ Rōmānis, L., xxi. 30, 11 ; *therefore they should either yield in spirit and courage to a nation which during those days they had so often conquered, or they must hope as the end of their march the plain that lies between the Tiber and the walls of Rome.*

**655.** Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate Clauses in **Oratio Obliqua**.

For examples of Object Clauses, see 525 ; for Causal, see 541 ; for Temporal, see 561-564, 569-577 ; for Relative, see 628.

**REMARKS.**—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Acc. and Infinitive (635).

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: (a) In mere circumlocutions. (b) In explanations of the narrator (628, n.).

3. *Dum*, with the Indic., is often retained as a mere circumlocution:

*Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hic vidiisse iacentis, dum sāctis patriae lēgitibus obsequimur, C., Tusc., I. 42, 101; tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.*

So also sometimes *cum*; see C., *Lael.*, 3, 12.

### 656. Conditional Sentences in *Orātiō Obliqua*, Total and Partial.

1. The Protasis follows the rule.

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with *futūrum fuisse ut . . .* 248, n. 3.

REMARK.—*Posse* needs no Fut. (248, n.), and *potuisse* no Periphrastic Pf. Inf., so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. *Identical Forms*.—In the transfer of Conditions to **O. O.**, the difference between many forms disappears. For instance,

I. 1. *Si id crēdis, errābis.*  
 2. *Si id crēdēs, errābis.*  
 3. *Si id crēdās, errās.* } *Dicō tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.*

II. 1. *Si id crēdis, errābis.*  
 2. *Si id crēdēs, errābis.*  
 3. *Si id crēdās, errās.*  
 4. *Si id crēderās, errārās.* } *Dixi tē, si id crēderās, errātūrum esse.*

III. 1. *Si id crēdideris, errābis.*  
 2. *Si id crēdideris, errās.*  
 3. *Si id crēdideris, errāveris.*  
 4. *Si id crēdidiſſēs, errārēs.* } *Dixi tē, si id crēdidiſſēs, errātūrum esse.*

NOTES.—1. In No. I. the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.

2. (a) In No. II. the ambiguity lies practically between 2 and 3; inasmuch as *Repraesentatiō* is usually employed for the Logical Condition, and the Periphrastic Pf. Inf. is employed in the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the narrator, to whom both are Past.

*Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi s̄ Caesare opus esset, s̄cē ad illum ventūrum fuisse: si quid ille s̄ velit, illum ad s̄ venire oportēre, CAES., B.G., I.*

34. 2; *Ariovistus answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).* *Ö. R. : si quid mihi & Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vénissem ; si quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet.*

*Fatentur sē virtūtis causā, nisi ea voluntātem faceret, nō manum quidem versūrū fuisse, C., Fin., v. 31, 93; they confess that for virtue's own sake, if it did not cause pleasure, they would not even turn a hand.* *Ö. R. : nisi ea voluntātem faceret nō manum quidem verterēmus.*

(b) Occasionally in the Logical Condition the Fut. Indic. is changed to the Fut. Periphrastic Subjv., thus : *si adīēnsūrū esset, etiam opinātūrum* is an *Ö. O.* quotation for *si... adīentīstur, opinābitur* in C., Ac., II. 21, 67.

3. No. III., like No. II., is used chiefly of the future. But in 3 the periphrases with *fore* (*futūrum esse*) are commonly employed for the active and the Pf. participle, with *fore* for the passive. In 4 the same fading out of the difference between Unfulfilled Present and Past occurs as in II.

### 657. Logical Conditions in Öratiō Obliqua.

1. *Ad haec Ariovistus respondit : si ipse populū Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quemadmodum suū iūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē & populū Rōmānū in suū iūre impediti,* CAES., B.G., I. 36, 2; *to this Ariovistus made answer : If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right.* (*Ö. R. : si ego nōn praescribō, nōn oportet mē impediti.*)

2. *Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent ? Si noxiū comperrissent, quid alterum (cōnsulātūm) erēderent ? L., XXVII. 34, 18; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty ; if, on the other hand, they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second consulship ?* (*Ö. R. : si—dūcītis, quid damnāstis ? si—comperīstis, quid erēditis ?*)

3. *Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam ; si nihil esset (Ö. R. : si nihil erit) dūrius, nūlū pericolū ad proximā legiōnēm pervertīrōs (Ö. R. : pervenīstis) ; si Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentīret (Ö. R. : si cōsentīt) finam esse (Ö. R. : est) in celeritāte positam salūtem,* CAES., B.G., v. 29, 6; *Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was safe in either case : if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they would get to the next legion without danger ; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.*

4. *Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimābant si hostem Hiberō interclūdere potuissent,* CAES., B.C., I. 68, 3; *they thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.* (*Ö. R. : is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) si hostem interclūdere potuerimus.*)

5. [H] *Iugurtha nōn mediocrem animūm pollicitandō accendēbant si Mīcipsa rēx occidisset, fore uti sōlus imperi Numidiae potīrētur, S., Iug., 8, 1; these persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha's heart) by promising over and over that if King Mīcipsa fell, he alone should possess the rōle over Numidia.* (*Ö. R. : si Mīcipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperi potīrēs.*)

6. [Fides data est] si Ingurtham vivom aut necatum sibi trādidisset fore ut illi senātus impunitētēt et sua omnia concēderet, S., *Iug.*, 61, 5; his word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate would grant him impunity, and all that was his. (Ø. R.: si mihi trādideris, tibi senātus tua omnia concēdet.)

7. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudita vox est . . . futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur, C., *Div.*, I. 45, 101; not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken. (Ø. R.: nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

8. Ariovistus respondit si quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venire oportēre, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 34, 2 (656, 3, N. 2).

9. Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēs illum prō hoste habitūrum; quod si eum interficerit, multis sēs nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44, 12; Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people. (Ø. R.: nisi dēcēdes tē prō hoste habēbō . . . si tē interficerō grātum fecerō; 244, n. 4.)

REMARK.—Posse is used as has been stated (656, 2, R.).

Negārunt dirimi bellum posse nisi Messēniis Achaei Pylum redderent, I., xxvii. 30, 13; they said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians. (Ø. R.: bellum dirimi nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Docent, si turris concidisset, nōn posse militēs continēri quin spē praedae in urbem irrumperent, CAES., *B.C.*, II. 12, 4; they show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty. (Ø. R.: si considerit, nōn possunt (poterant) continēri.)

### 658. Ideal Conditions in Ōratiō Obliqua.

1. Ait sē si firātur "Quam hōc suāve" dictūrum, C., *Fin.*, II. 27, 88; he declares that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is." (Ø. R.: si firar, dicam, same form as Logical.)

2. Voluptātem si ipa prō sē loquātur concēssistrām arbitror Dignitāti, C., *Fin.*, III. I, 1; I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue. The context shows that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. Si loquātur, concēdat. Compare 596, R. I.

### 659. Unreal Conditions in Ōratiō Obliqua.

1. Titurius clamitābat Eburōnēs, si [Caesar] adesset, ad castra ventūrōs [nōn] esse, CAES., *B.G.*, V. 29, 2; Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp. (Ø. R.: si Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venirent.) On the rareness of

this form, see 599, n. 4; and even this passage has been emended into *venturūs s̄eōs* (for *esse*).

2. [Apparēbat] si diutius vixisset, Hamilcare duce Poenis arma Italiae iniātrūs fuisse, L., XXI. 2, 2; *it was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punic would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.*

3. Nisi eō ipso tempore nūntiis dī Caesaris victoriā essent allāti existimabant pl̄ique futūrum fuisse ut (oppidum) āmitteretur, CAES., B.C., III. 101, 3; *had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost.* (O. R.: nisi nūntiis allāti essent, oppidum āmissum esset.)

**Notz.**—As the Plupf. Indic. is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjv. (254, n. 3), so the ordinary Pf. Inf. is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic:

Nemō mihi persuādabit multūs praestantēs virēs tanta esse cōnātēs (= cōnātūrūs fuisse) nisi animō cernerent (597, n. 1) posteritatem ad s̄e pertinēre, C., Cat.M., 53, 89; *no one will persuade me that (so) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them.* Agricola sol̄bat nārrare s̄e prima in iuventū studium philosophiae Serius haussisse (O. R.: hauserat), ni prudētia mātris coerūisset, C. Tac., Agr., 4, 5; *Agricola used to relate that in his earliest youth he would have drunk in more eagerly the study of philosophy, had not his mother's prudence restrained him.*

So with *potuisse*:

(Pompēium) pl̄ique existimant si Serius insequi voluisset bellum eō dī potuisse finire, CAES., B.C., III. 51, 3; *most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day.* (O. R.: si voluisset, potuit, 597, n. 3.) Namque illā multitudine si sāna mēns esset (597, n. 1) Graeciae, supplicium Persis dare potuisse, NEP., XVII. 5, 2; *for with that number, if Greece had had (had been in her) sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due).* (O. R.: si sāna mēns esset Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare potuārunt.)

### Pronouns in Örātiō Obliqua.

660. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down in 520 ff.

2. The person addressed is usually *ille*; less often *is*.

Ariovistus respondit nisi dīcōdat [Caesar] s̄eōs illum pr̄ō hōste habita-rum: quod si eum interficerit, multis s̄eōs nobilibus principib⁹ populū Romani grātum esse factūrum, CAES., B.G., I. 44, 12 (597, 9).

Of course, this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. *Hic* and *iste* are commonly changed into *ille* or *is*, *nunc* is changed into *tum* and *tunc*, except when already contrasted with *tunc*, when it is retained (S., *Iug.*, 109, 3; III, 1).

Diodōrus [respondit] illud argētūm s̄e paucis illis dīcōbus misisse Lily-bacum, C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 39 (398, n. 4).

4. *Nōs* is used when the narrator's party is referred to ; compare CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44, below.

5. *Ipse* seems to be used sometimes in **O. O.** with reference to the principal subject, as contrasted with the person addressed. Usually, however, *ipse* would have occurred in the **O. R.** as well.

*Ariovistus respondit : Si ipse populus Rōmānū nōn praescriberet, quemadmodum suū iūre fiteretur, nōn oportere sēsē & populū Rōmānū in suū iūre impediti*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 36, 2 (657).

### 661. *Specimens of the conversion of Œratiō Obliqua into Œratiō Recta.*

#### Œratiō Obliqua.

##### 1. *Ariovistus respondit :*

Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suū sponte sed rogātū et arcessitū a Gallis ; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemīs domum propinquāsque reliquissē ; sēdēs habēre in Gallia ab ipsūlū concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stipendium capiō iūre belli, quod victōrēs victis imponēre cōnsuērunt. Nōn sēsē Gallis sibi bellū intulisse ; omnes Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse et contrā sē castra habuisse ; eae omnes cōpiās & sē fūnd proeliō pulsās & superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum paratūm esse dēcertāre ; si pāce uti velint, iniquūm esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ornāmentō et prae-sidiō, non dētrimentō esse oportere idque sē est spē petiā. Si per populum Rōmanū stipendium remittātur et dēditicīl subtrahātur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsāturūm popullū Rōmānū anicitiām quam appetierit. Quod multitudinē Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandāe causā facere ; eius rei testimoniō esse quod nisi rogātūs nōn vēnerit et quod bellū nōn intulerit sed dēfendērit.

CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44.

#### Œratiō Recta.

Trānsī Rhēnum nōn mē sponte sed rogātū et arcessitū a Gallis ; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemīs domum propinquāsque reliquātū ; sēdēs habēre in Gallia ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stipendium capiō iūre belli, quod victōrēs victis imponēre cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis mihi bellū intulārunt ; omnes Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppūgnandum vēnērunt et contrā mē castra habuērunt ; eae omnes cōpiās & mē fūnd proeliō pulsās & superātās sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, iterum paratūs sum dēcertāre, si pāce uti volunt, iniquūm est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hōc tempus pependērunt. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni mihi ornāmentō et prae-sidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet idque eā spē petiā. Si per populum Rōmanū stipendium remittātur et dēditicīl subtrahātur, nōn minus libenter recūsābū populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam appetiā. Quod multitudinē Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcam,\* id mei mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandāe causā faciō ; eius rei testimoniō est quod nisi rogātūs nōn vēni et quod bellū nōn intulīt sed dēfendi.

\* Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise trādūcō.

## Oratio Obliqua.

## Oratio Recta.

## 3. His Caesar ita respondit:

*Eo sibi* minus dubitatiōnis *dari* quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētiū commemordassent memoria tenēret atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritū populi Rōmāni accidissent; qui si alicuius iniuriās sibī cōscius fuisse nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum a se intellegere quārē timēret neque sine causa timendum putāret. Quod si veteris contumēliae obliuisci velle, num etiam recentium iniuriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogos vexāssent memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam Insolenter gloriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne tulisse iniuriās admirārentur eōdem pertinēt. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci relint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diuturniōrem impūnitatēm concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae pollicēantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Aeduīs de iniuriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogib⁹ satisfacent, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrūm.

CAES., B.G., I. 14.

*Hoc mihi* minus dubitatiōnis datur quod eās rēs quās vōs, lēgāti Helvētiū, commemorāstis, memoria teneō atque hōe gravius ferō quō minus meritū populi Rōmāni accidērunt; qui si alicuius iniuriās sibī cōscius fuisse nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum a se intellegēbat quārē timēret neque sine causa timendum putābat. Quod si veteris contumēliae obliuisci volō, num etiam recentium iniuriārum, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptās̄tis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogos vexāstis, memoriam dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam Insolenter gloriāmī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne tulisse iniuriās admirāmī eōlem pertinet. Cōsuērunt enim di immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diuturniōrem impūnitatēm concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a rōbis mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae pollicēmī, factūrōs intellegam et si Aeduīs de iniuriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulistiſtis, item si Allobrogib⁹ satisfaciētis, ego vōdiscum pācem faciam.

## 3. Sulla rēgē palefécit:

Quod pollicēdūtur, senātū et populū Rōmānum, quoniam amplius armis valuerunt, nō in grātiā habitūrōs; faciundū aliquid, quod illorū magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētūr; id idē in prōmptū esse, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiā habēret, quem si Rōmānis trādīdīset, fore ut illi plūrimum dēbērētūr; amicitiam, foedus, Numidiāe partē, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultrō advenīrām.

S., Iug., III.

Quod pollicēris, senātū et populū Rōmānū quoniam amplius armis valuerunt, nō in grātiā habitēbūt: faciundū aliquid, quod illorū magis quam tuū rētulisse videatur; id idē in prōmptū est, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiā habēs, quem si Rōmānis trādīderet tibi plūrimum dēbēbitur; amicitia, foedus, Numidiāe pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultrō advenīt.

## Örātiō Obliqua.

## Örātiō Recta.

*4. Athēniensēs dēplorāvērunt  
vēstatiōnēm populatiōnēmque mi-  
serabiliē agrōrum.* Neque sē id  
querī quod hostilia ab hoste passi  
*fōrent;* esse enim quaedam belli  
iūra quae ut facere ita pati sit fās.  
Sata exūri, dirul tēcta, praedas  
hominum pecorumque agl misera  
magis quam indigna patienti esse;  
vērum enim vērō id sē querī, quod  
is, qui Rōmāns alienigenās et bar-  
barōs vocet, adeo omnia simul di-  
vina hūmānaque iūra polluerit ut  
priōre populatiōne cum Infernis  
diis, secundā cum superis bellum  
nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepul-  
cra monumentaque diruta esse in  
flīnibus suis, omnium nūdītōs  
mānēs, nullius ossa terrā tegi.  
Quālem terram Atticam fēcerit,  
exōrnātam quondam opulentam-  
que, tālem eum si liceat Aetōliam  
Graeciamque omnem factūrum.  
Urbis quoque suae similiē dēfor-  
mitātem futūram fuisse, nisi Rō-  
māni subvēnissent.

L., XXXI. 30.

Nōn id querimur quod hostilia  
ab hoste passi sumus. *Sunt* enim  
quaedam belli iūra quae ut facere  
ita pati est fās. Sata exūri, dirul  
tēcta, praedas hominum pecorum-  
que agl misera magis quam indigna  
patienti sunt; vērum enim vērō id  
querimur quod is, qui Rōmāns  
alienigenās et barbarōs vocat, adeo  
omnia simul divina hūmānaque  
iūra polluit ut priōre populatiōne  
cum Infernis diis, secundā cum su-  
peris bellum nefārium gesserit.  
Omnia sepulcra monumentaque di-  
ruta sunt in finibus nostris, omni-  
um nūdītō mānēs, nullius ossa terra  
teguntur. Quālem terram Atticam  
fēcit, exōrnātam quondam opulen-  
tamque, tālem is, si licēbit (or :  
liceat) Aetōliam Graeciamque om-  
nen faciet (or : faciat). Urbis  
quoque nostraē similiē dēfor-  
mitātem futūram fuisse, nisi Rō-  
māni subvēnissent,

## INVOLVED ÖRĀTIŌ OBLIQUA. ATTRACTION OF MOOD.

**662.** Örātiō Obliqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense the term Ö. Obliqua is used of all complementary clauses that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one, as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favorite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal Second person :

*Dificile est amicitiam manēre si & virtute defeceris, C., Lael., 11, 37; it is hard for friendship to abide if you (one) have fallen away from virtue. Proprium hūmāni ingenii est odire quem laeseris, Tac., Agr., 42, 4; it is (peculiar to) human nature to hate whom you have injured. (But odisti quem laesisti.)*

The so-called attraction of mood, by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

**663. 1.** All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Subjunctive by Attraction).

*Recordatione nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beatus vixisse videar quia cum Scipiōne vixerim, C., *Lael.*, 4, 15: I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio. Vereor nō dum minuere velim laborem augeam, C., *Leg.*, I, 4, 12; I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it (dum minuere vold̄, augē). Istō bonō fūtare dum adsit, cum abit, nō requirās, C., *Cat. M.*, 10, 88 (268, 2, a). Quārō fīsbat ut omnium oculōs quotiēscumque in pūblicum prōdīset ad sē converteret, *NEP.*, VII, 3, 5 (567; quotiēcumque prōdīerat convertēbat). Nescire quid antequam nātus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum, C., *Or.*, 34, 120; not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy. Fraus fidem in parvis sibi praestriuit ut cum opere pretium sit, cum mercede magnā fallat, L., xxviii, 42, 7; fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating. [Arneolae] rētē texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant, C., *N.D.*, II, 48, 123 (567; si quid inhaesit cōficiunt). Abeunti si quid popōserit cōcōdēre mōris, *TAC.*, *G.*, 21, 4; to the departing (guest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks (si quid popōscit cōcōdūnt).*

NOTES.—1. *Dum* not unfrequently resists the Attraction both in prose and poetry: Tantum nō nocēs dum vīs prōdēsse vidētō, *Ov.*, *Tr.*, I, 1, 101 (548).

2. On the retention of the Indic. in Relative clauses, see 628, n.

**2. PARTIAL OBLIQUITY.**—(a) From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavor, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form. For examples, see 567, n.

(b) So also is explained the use of the Subjunctive in Causal Sentences, and especially in Conditional Sentences, where the Apodosis is embodied in the leading verb.

(*Iugurtha*) timēbat fram senātūs (= nō trāscoerētur senātūs) nī pāruisset lēgātis, S., *Iug.*, 25, 7 (801). [*Ubiis*] auxiliū suūm (= sē auxiliātūrum) pollicitus est, si ab suābīs premerentur, *CAES.*, *B.G.*, IV, 19, 1. Praetor aedēm (= sē aedificātūrum) Dīovi vōvit si eō dīs hostis fūdīset, L., xxxi, 21, 12.

The idea of δ. ο. is shown in the tense:

Si per Metellum licitum esset mātrēs venīsbānt (= ventūrae erant), C., *Verr.*, V, 49, 129. [Dictātor] ad hostem dūcit nāllō locō nisi necessitās cōgeret fortūnas sē commissūrus, L., xxii, 12, 2 (438, N.).

## PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

**664.** Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a coördinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (410, n. 2.)

*Manlius Gallum caesum torque spoliavit, L., vi. 42, 5; Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain* (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.). (*Miltiades*) *capitis absoltus, pecunia multatus est, NEP., i. 7, 6; Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted)*.

2. A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substantive; see 325, n. 3; 487, n. 2.

*Nec terra mutata mutavit mōrē, L., XXXVII. 54, 18; nor hath the change of land changed the character.* *Teucer Ulixēn reum facit Āiasis oocī, QUINT., IV. 2, 18; Teucer indicted Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.* *Inter haec parēta atque dēcrēta, S., C., 43, 8.*

3. On the Participle after verbs of Perception and Representation, see 536.

**665. Participles may represent Time When.**

*Alexander moriens annulū suū dederat Perdiccas, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1; Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.* *Dionȳnus tyrannus Syracusis expulsum Corinthi puerū docēbat, C., Tusc., III. 12, 27; Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

## Ablative Absolute.

*(Solōn et Pisistratus) Serviō Tulliō rēgnante viguerunt, C., Br., 10, 39; Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius).* *Sōle ortō Volsci sō circumvallatōs vidērunt, Cf. L., iv. 9, 13; when the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

NOTES.—1. On the Abl. Abs. of the simple Participle, see 410, n. 4.

2. SUETONIUS uses the Abl. Abs. as well as the simple Participle with *ante (prius)* *quam: (Tiberius) excēsum Augusti nōn prius palam fecit quam Agrippa iuvene interemptō, Tib., 22; see also Iul., 58.*

### 666. Participles may represent Cause Why.

*Arēopagitas damnōvērunt puerum coturnicūm oculōs ēruentes, Cf. QUINT., v. 9, 18; the court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy for plucking out (because he plucked out) the eyes of quails. Athēniānsēs Alcibia-dem corruptum & rēge Persikrūm capere nōluisse Cymēn arguēbant, Cf. NEP., VII. 7, 2; the Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyrene (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.*

#### Ablative Absolute.

*(Rōmāni veterēs) rēgnāri omnēs volēbant libertatis dulcedine nōndum experts, L., I. 17, 8; the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

NOTE.—An apparent cause is given by *ut, as, velut, as, for instance, tamquam,* (so) *as, quasi, as if;* see 602, n. 8.

In this usage CICERO and CAESAR are very careful, employing only *quasi, ut.* LIVY introduces *tamquam, utpote, velut,* and the tendency grows until it reaches its culmination in TACITUS.

### 667. Participles may represent Condition and Concession.

*Si latet ars prōdest, affert dēprīma pudōrem, Ov., A.A., II. 313 (593, 2). [Risus] interdum ita repente strumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeā-mus, Cf. C., Or., II. 58, 235 (609). (Miltiadēs) capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est, NEP., I. 7, 6 (664, n. 1).*

#### Ablative Absolute.

*Māximās virtūtēs iacere omnēs necesse est voluptate dominante, C., Fin., II. 35, 117 (598, 2).*

NOTE.—On the combination of *quamquam, quamvis, and etiā* with the Participle, see 609, n. 1; *nisi* also is not uncommon; *tamen* is sometimes added in the principal clause.

### 668. Participles may represent Relative Clauses (637).

*Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidi (sunt), C., Off., III. 14, 60 (637). [Plistratus] Homēri librōe cōnfusā antē sic dispuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus, C., Or., III. 34, 137 (637).*

REMARK.—*So-called, qui dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-men-tioned, quem antē, supra diximus.*

**669. Future Participle (Active).**—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting Capability and Tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with *sūm, I am,* as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially

noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

**670.** In later Latin, the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations (438, n.) :

1. Time When.

(Tiberius) trāiectūrus (= eum trāiectūrus esset) Rhēnum commēstūm nōn trānsmisit, SUET., Tib., 18; *when Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.*

2. Cause Why.

Dēridiculū fuit senex foedissimae adulatōnis tantum infamis usūrus, TAC., Ann., III. 57, 8; *a butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.* Antiochus sēcūrus dē bellō Rōmānō erat tamquam nōn trānsitīris in Asiam Rōmānīs, L., xxxvi. 41, 1 (602, n. 8).

3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion).

(Marobodunus) misit lēgātō ad Tiberium dēfērūs auxilia, TAC., Ann. II. 46 (438, n.). Cōnsul Lārisam est profectus, ibi dē summa belli cōsultātūrus, L., xxxvi. 14, 5.

NOTE.—The Pr. Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference :

Lēgāti vēnērant nūntiantēs Asiae quoque civitātēs sollicitāri, L., xxxi. 2, 1; *envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia also were tampered with.*

4. Condition and Concession.

(1) Protasis.

Dēditīris sē Hannibali fuisse accersendū Rōmānōrum praesidium? L., xxiii. 44, 2; *if they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison?* (= si dēditūri fuissent, Ó. R.: si dēditūri fuērunt.)

(2) Apodosis.

Quātiunt arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dūcantur, TAC., H., III. 19, 3; *they clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.* Librum misi exigitī tibi, missīrus etiā nōn exigitās, PLIN., Ep., III. 13, 1; *I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.*

**671.** The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

Two elements enter into the composition of a Latin Sentence, governing to some extent its arrangement: Grammar and Rhetoric.

**672.** 1. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness. It shows the ideas in the order of development in the mind of the speaker. By Grammatical arrangement the sentence grows under the view.

2. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm. It presents a sentence already developed in such a way that the attention is directed to certain parts of it especially.

(a) *Emphasis* is produced :

1. By reversing the ordinary position.
2. By approximation of similars or opposites.
3. By separation.

In all sentences Beginning and End are emphatic points. In long sentences the Means as well as the Extremes are the points of emphasis.

(b) *Rhythm*.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the Dactyl and Spondee, or close of an Hexameter at the end of a period.

**673.** Two further principles seem to underlie the arrangement of Latin sentences : (a) that of the ascending construction; (b) that of the descending construction. In the ascending construction, which is more common, the principal word is placed last, and the subordinate ones, in the order of their importance, precede. In the descending construction the reverse is the process. The descending construction is regular in definitions.

**674. RULE I.**—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows :

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.
2. The Predicate and its Modifiers.

1. *Diony whole tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus, 2. Corinthi pueris docebat,*  
C., *Tusc.*, III. 12, 27 (665).

Rhetorical positions :

*Potentes sequitur invidia, QUINT., iv. 1, 14 (477, n. 4). Nōbis nō satis-*

facit ipse Demosthenes, *Cf. C., Or.*, 29, 104 (552, R. 1). *Descriptus (erat) populus omnis, ordinibus, aetatisbus, C., Leg.*, III. 19, 44 (397). *Intra moenia sunt hostes, S., C.*, 52, 35 (477).

**REMARK.**—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The following arrangement is common :

1. Place, Time, Cause, or Means.
2. Indirect Object.
3. Direct Object.
4. Adverb.
5. Verb.

**NOTE.**—The postponement of the subject is rare and always for definite reasons in the classical period ; later it becomes a mannerism, especially in the elder PLINY ; to a less degree in NEPOS and LIVY.

**675. RULE II.**—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative.

*Quis eum diligat quem metuat ? C., Lael.*, 15, 58 (629). *Postquam Caesar pervenit obadi populus, CAES., B.G.*, I. 27, 8 (561). *Si spiritum ducit vivit, C., Inv.*, I. 46, 86 (595). *Qui timore desierint omnes incipient, TAC., Agr.*, 32 (567).

Rhetorical position :

[Naturam] si sequimur ducem, numquam aberrabimus, C., *Off.*, I. 28, 100 (595). *Dic futuris rebus etiam semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum connectitur possit accidere, C., Fam.*, VI. 4, 1 (604). [Catilina] mirari sed eiobat quod non ridaret haruspex, haruspiciem cum vidisset, C., *Div.*, II. 24, 51 (567).

**676. RULE III.**—An Adjective usually precedes, but often follows, the word to which it belongs ; a dependent Genitive usually follows the governing word ; so too does a word in Apposition.

*Saepe magna indole virtutis priusquam rei publicae praedesse potuisse extincta est, C., Ph.*, V. 17, 47 (677). *Sensum oculorum praedicit animus, QUINT., VI. 2, 6 (540).*

Rhetorical position :

[Isocrate] queritur plus honoris corporum quam animorum virtutibus dari, QUINT., III. 8, 9 (542, R.). [Ager], cum multo annis quiœvit, überiora efferre fruges solet, C., Br., 4, 16 (567). *Veremur ne parum hic liber mellis et absinthii multum habere videatur, QUINT.*, III. 1, 5 (550).

**REMARKS.**—1. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede; the possessives regularly follow.

*Veremur ne hic liber absinthii multum habere videatur, QUINT.*, III. 1, 5 (550). *Torquatus filium suum necari iussit, S., C.*, 52, 30 (540).

## Rhetorical position:

*Recordare tempus illud, cum pater Curiō mār̄ns iacēbat in lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45 (580). Osculātur tigrim suns cūstōs, SEN., E.M., 85, 41 (308, 2).*

2. Ordinals regularly follow, Cardinals regularly precede the substantive.

3. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: so titles, proper names, and the like; see 288.

*Faciūs est vincere cīvēm Rōmānūm, C., Verr., v. 66, 170 (585).*

4. The titles *rēx*, *imperātor*, *etc.*, frequently precede the proper name with which they are in apposition.

5. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added:

*Catōnēm vidi in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfūsum Stōidūrum librīs, C., Fin., III. 2, 7 (586). Saepe māgna indolē virtutis priusquam rei pūblicae prōdēsse potuisse extincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577). At vidētē hominis intolēbilem audāciam, C., Dom., 44, 115 (488). (Aristidēs) interfuit pugnæ nāvālī apud Salamina, NEP., III. 2, 1.*

NOTES.—1. The tendency in Latin was to reverse the Indo-Germanic rule by which an attributive adjective and a dependent Genitive preceded the governing word. But in early Latin the adjective still holds its place more often before its substantive, while the Genitive has already succumbed for the most part to the tendency. In the classical period the adjective is more often used after its substantive. But neither position can be strictly called rhetorical. The same is true of the possessive pronoun.

2. The original force of a following adjective or Genitive was restrictive or appositional, while, when it preceded, it formed a close compound with its substantive; thus, *bonus homō, a good man* (one idea); *homō bonus, a man (one idea) who is good* (another idea). In classical Latin this distinction is no longer inevitable, though it is often essential.

677. RULE IV.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

*Zēnōnēm eum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter . . . , C., N.D., I. 21, 59 (585). Caedi discipulōs minimē velim, QUINT., I. 3, 18 (257). Vix culquām persuādēbātur Graeciā omni cōsūrōs (Rōmānōs), L., XXXIII. 32, 8 (546, n. 1). [Rīsus] interdum ita repente erumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus, C., Or., II. 58, 235 (609).*

## Rhetorical positions:

[Iram] bene Ennius initium dixit insīniae, C., Tusc., IV. 23, 52 (440). Saepe māgna indolē virtutis priusquam rei pūblicae prōdēsse potuisse extincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577).

REMARKS.—1. Ferē, paene, prope, usually follow:

Nāmō ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insīnit, C., Mur., 6, 13 (591, n. 4).

2. Negatives always precede, see 448.

NOTE.—The separation of adverbs from their adjectives is rare, except in the case of *tam* and *quam*, which PLAUTUS, TERENCE, CICERO, and later authors often separate, e.g., by a preposition: *tam ab tenui exitio*. Hyperbaton with other adverbs is rare.

**678. RULE V.**—Prepositions regularly precede their case (413).

Ā rēctā cōscientiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere, C., *Att.*, XIII. 20, 4 (328, 1).

REMARKS.—1. On *versus*, *tenus*, and the postposition of *cum* in combination with the personal pronouns and the relative, see 418, R. 1.

2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the adjective and substantive: *magnā cum curā*. See 418, R. 2.

Less frequently they are placed between the Gen. and substantive; except when the relative is employed.

3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (Anastrophē), especially after a relative or demonstrative: most frequently *contra*, *inter*, *propter*. So also adverbs. See 418, R. 1.

4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Gen. or an adverb (413, R. 3): *ad Appi Claudi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset*, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 (553, 4).

5. Monosyllabic prepositions, such as *cum*, *ex*, *dē*, *post*, sometimes append the enclitics *-que*, *-ve*, *-ne*, as, *exque iis*, and *from them*. Usually, however, the enclitics join the dependent substantive: *in patriamque rediit*, and *returned to his country*. See 418, N. 3.

On the position of *per*, see 418, N. 2.

**679. RULE VI.**—Particles vary.

*Enim* commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; *nam* and *namque* are regularly prepositive. See 498, N. 1.

*Ergō* in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; *igitur* is commonly second or third; *itaque* regularly first. See 502, N. 2; 500, R.

*Tamen* is first, but may follow an emphatic word. See 490.

*Etiam* usually precedes, *quoque* always follows. See 478, 479.

*Quidem* and *dānum* (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

**680. RULE VII.**—A word that belongs to more than one word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (291).

Ariovistus respondit multis sēcē nobilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44, 12 (657, 9). [Inscratē] queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtutib⁹ dari, QUINT., III. 8, 9 (542, R.). Longum est mūlōrum persecui utilitātēs et asinōrum, C., *N.D.*, II. 64, 159 (254, R. 1).

**681. RULE VIII.**—Words of kindred or opposite meaning are often put side by side for the sake of complement or contrast.

*Manus manum lavat, one hand washes the other.* [Catō] mirari sē  
sīebat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vidiisset, C., *Div.*, II.  
24, 51 (567). *Emīt morte immortālitātem*, QUINT., IX. 3, 71 (404).

**682. RULE IX.—Contrasted Pairs.**—When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. The employment of the same order is called *Anaphora* (repetition). The inverse order is called *Chiasmus*, or crosswise position, and gives alternate stress. The principle is of wide application, not merely in the simple sentence but also in the period.

Same order (*Anaphora*).

*Fortūna (1) vestra (2) facit ut frāe (1) meae (2) temperem*, L., XXXVI.  
35, 8 (558, 1). *Mālū tē sapiens (1) hostis (2) metuat quam stulti (1) cīvēs*  
(2) laudent, L., XXII. 39, 20 (546, R. 2).

Inverse order (*Chiasmus*).

*Ante vidēmus (1) fulgōrem (2) quam sonum (2) audiāmus (1)*, SEN., *N.Q.*,  
II. 12, 6 (577). *Parvi sunt foris (1) arma (2) nisi est cōnsilium (2) domi*  
(1), C., *Off.*, I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2).

**REMARK.**—Chiasmus is from the Greek letter X (chi):

1. <i>Foris</i>	2. <i>arma</i>
2. <i>cōnsilium</i>	1. <i>domi</i>

**683. Poetical Peculiarities.**—In the poets we find many varieties of arrangement of substantive and adjective, designed to draw especial attention to the idea or to color the verse. These occur chiefly in the Hexameter and Pentameter, but to a lesser degree also in other measures. Thus the substantive and adjective are put either at the end of each hemistich, or at the beginning of each hemistich, or one is at the end of the first and the other at the beginning of the second.

*Cerberus et mīllās hodiē pstat improbus umbrās | et iaceat lacitū lapsa*  
*catēna serū*, PROP., IV. (V.) 11, 25. *Pūnicēō stābis strīks ēvincēta cothurnō*,  
V., *Ec.*, 7, 82. *Mē similem vestris mōribus esse putās?* PROP., II. (III.)  
29 (27), 32.

#### ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

**684.** A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.

**685.** Latin periods may be divided into two classes :

1. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosia.

2. Intercalary or Enthentic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

Ut sene homines aegri morbo gravi, cum aestu febrique iactantur, si aquam gelidam bibent, primò relevari videntur, deinde multò gravius vehementiusque afflictantur : sic hic morbus, qui est in re publica, relevatus istius poena, vehementius, reliquis vivis, ingravescet, C., *Cat.*, I. 13, 81 (Apodotic).

Catucoleus, rex dimidia partis Eburonum, qui fina cum Ambiorige cōsilium inierat, aetate iam cōfectus, cum laborem aut bellum aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus dētestatus Ambiorigem, qui eius cōsiliū auctor fuisse, taxo, cibis magna in Gallia Germaniaque cōpia est, se exanimavit, *Caes.*, *B.G.*, vi. 31, 5 (Enthentic).

**686.** NÄGELSBACH's careful study of the subject has led to the following results. The simplest period is composed of one subordinate (*a*) and one principal (*A*) clause ; the principal varieties are : (1) *a* : *A*, where the principal clause follows the subordinate ; (2) *A* (*a*) *A*, where the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause ; (3) *A* | *a*, where the principal clause precedes the subordinate clause ; (4) *a* (*A*) *a*, where the principal clause is inserted within the subordinate clause. When two subordinate clauses (*a*, *b*), independent of each other, are used, the forms are : (5) *a* : *A* | *b* ; (6) *a* : *A* (*b*) *a* ; (7) *A* (*a*) *A* | *b* ; (8) *A* (*a*) *A* (*b*) *A* ; (9) *a* : (*b* : *A*). If the dependent clauses are of different degree (*a*, *a*, *A*), that is, one depending upon the other, some fifteen additional forms are allowable.

Some examples are :

*a* (*A*) *a* : illorum videt quam niteat tristis, C., *Fin.*, IV. 3, 5. *a* : (*b* : *A*) : eū nōlint, etiam si taceant, satis dicunt, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 6, 21. *a* : *a* : *A* : quid agatur, cum aperuerit, facile erit statuere, C., *Ph.*, v. 2, 6. *a* : *A* | *a* : illud quid sit, scire cupio, quod iacis obscurus, C., *Att.*, II. 7, 4. *a* | *a* (*A*) *a* : nō uti expectarēmus sē, reliquit qui rogaret, VARRO, *R.R.*, I. 2, 32. *A* | *a* (*a*) *a* : mandō tibi plāne, totum ut videas cūius modi sit, C., *Att.*, I. 12, 2.

**687.** Periods are also divided into Historical and Oratorical. The former are, as a rule, simple. The most common form is *a* : *A*, i.e., where a subordinate clause is followed by a leading clause : Id ubi dixisset hastam in hostium fines emittēbat, L., I. 42, 18. Another common period, developed and much liked by LIVY, and later by TACITUS, was *a* : *a* : *A*, consisting of (1) a participial clause ; (2) a clause introduced by a conjunction ; (3) the principal clause. Cf. *Tac.*, *Ann.*,

n. 69, 8, *dētentus ubi . . . accēpit pl̄bem pr̄turbat*. Historians, having much occasion for description, are also prone to use the descending period, i.e., the form in which the principal clause precedes. So especially NEPOS. LIVY likes also to use two independent subordinate clauses asyndetically.

The Oratorical periods are much more diverse and complicated, owing to the greater variety of effects at which they aim. We find, however, the ascending structure, where the emphasis is continually ascending until it culminates at the end, more common.

See an excellent example in C., *Imp.*, 5, 11 :

Vōs eum r̄gēm inultūm esse patiēmini qui lēgētūm populi Rōmīni cōsulārem VINCULIS ĀC VERBERIBUS ATQUE OMNī SUPPLICIō EXCRUCIĀTUM NECĀVIT ?

#### FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

**688.** Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (204, N. 1), the copula of the predicate (209), the verb of the adverb.

*Unde domō?* V., *A.*, VIII. 114 (391, R. 2).

REMARK.—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is still much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

**689.** Brachylogy (*breviloquentia*) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

*Tam felix casūs quam fōrmōdissima (=ee) vellem*, Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 (802).

**690.** Zeugma or Syllēpsis is a junction of two words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

*Mānūs sc̄ supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendēns*, Tac., *Ann.*, II. 29, 2; stretching out hands and (uttering) suppliant cries to Tiberius.

**691.** Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian *Quōs ego.....*

**692.** Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

**693.** Enallage is a shift from one form to another : *vōs s̄ Calliopē precor*, V., *A.*, IX. 525.

Hypallage is an interchange in the relations of words :  
**dare clāssib[us] austrōs**, V., A., III. 61.

**694.** Oxymōron is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other : **cum tacent clāmant**, C., *Cat.*, I. 8, 21 (582).

**695.** Synecdochē is the use of the part for the whole, or the reverse : **tēctum** for **domum**, **puppis** for **nāvia**, **mucrō** for **gladius**, etc.

**696.** Hypérbaton, Trajection, is a violent displacement of words. **Lydia dic per omnēs tē deōs örō**, H., O., I. 8, 1 (413, N. 2).

**697.** Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

**698.** Hendiadys (*ἐν διὰ δυοῖν*) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive.

*Vulgus et multitudī, the common herd.* *Via et ratiō* (C., *Verr.*, I. 16, 47), *scientific method.* *VI et armis, by force of arms.*

So two verbs may be translated by an adverb and a verb : *fundi fugārique, to be utterly routed.*

**699.** Cōstrūctiō Praegnāns. So-called cōstrūctiō praegnāns is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

*Exitium irritat, Cf. Tac., Ann., XIII. I, 1; he provokes destruction (ad exitium irritat).*

**700.** Lītotēs, or Understatement, is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the Negative.

*Nōn indeo örō pulvēre sordidi, H., O., II. I, 22 (448, R. 2).*

## PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The Verb agrees with its subject in number and person (211).
2. The Adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case (211).
3. The common Predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural (285); when the genders are different, it takes the strongest gender or the nearest (286); when the persons are different, it takes the first in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third (287).
4. The common Attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important (290).
5. The Predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case (211).
6. The Appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person (821).
7. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person (814).
8. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with *quam pr&gt;*, *quam ut*, *quam qui* (298).
9. In comparing two qualities, use either *magis quam* with the positive, or a double comparative (299).
10. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantive (291, n. 2).
11. The Genitive forms *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostr&gt;i*, *vestri*, are used mainly as objective genitives; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as partitive (304, 2).
12. The Reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject; frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (309).
13. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject, when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive clauses, or Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in *Oratio Obliqua* (521).
14. The Possessive Pronoun is used instead of the Possessive or Subjective Genitive in the First and Second Persons (362, 364).
15. The Appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the Genitive (321, n. 2).
16. With words of Inclination and Disinclination, Knowledge and Ignorance, Order and Position, Time and Season, the adjective is usually employed for the adverb (325, n. 6).
17. The Indicative, not the Subjunctive, is used in expressions of Possibility, Power, Obligation, and Necessity (254, n. 1).

18. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (257); the Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive (258).
19. The Optative Subjunctive may be used to express a Wish (260), an Asseveration (262), a Command (263), or a Concession (264).
20. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate, the Second to contingent, fulfilment (268).
21. The Negative of the Imperative is regularly *nōlī* with the Infinitive; sometimes *nō* with the Perfect Subjunctive (270, n. 2), or *cavē* with the Subjunctive (271) is also used.
22. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be treated as a neuter subject (422), object (423), or predicate (424).
23. The Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, etc. (423).
24. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will and Desire (532).
25. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Emotion (533).
26. The Accusative and Infinitive is used in Exclamation (534).
27. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Present Infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the Perfect, action prior to it, the Future, action future to it (530).
28. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement (428).
29. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of Fitness and Function; also after words of Capacity and Adaptation, and to express Design (429).
30. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, etc., to indicate Design (430).
31. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used to denote Means and Cause, rarely Manner (431).
32. The Supine in *-um* is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design (435).
33. The Supine in *-a* is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate Respect (436).
34. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the Perfect, completion, at the time of the leading verb (282).
35. The Future Participle is used in post-Ciceronian Latin to express Design (438, n.).

36. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation to express the actual condition of the object (536).
37. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment (587).
38. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (208).
39. Verbs of Seeming, Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Making, Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate (206).
40. With passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Accusative subject of the Infinitive becomes the Nominative subject of the leading verb (528).
41. The Appositional Genitive is used after *vōx*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, *rēs*, etc. (361, 1).
42. The Exegetical Genitive (or Genitive of Explanation) is used after *genus*, *vitium*, *culpa*, etc. (361, 2).
43. The Possessive Genitive is used of the Third Person to denote possession (362).
44. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive (363, 1); the Objective Genitive of the object of that action (363, 2).
45. Essential or permanent qualities are put in the Genitive, always with an adjective (365); external and transient qualities in the Ablative, always with an adjective (400). See No. 82.
46. The Genitives of Quality and Possession may be used as predicates (366).
47. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs (367).
48. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, of Participation and Power, may take the Genitive (374). Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in *-ix* (375).
49. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting take usually the Genitive (376); but sometimes the Accusative, especially of things (376, n.).
50. Impersonal verbs of Emotion take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause (371).
51. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge (378).
52. Verbs of Rating and Buying take the Genitive of the General, the Ablative of the Particular Value (379, 404). See No. 87.

53. **Interest** and **Rerent** take the Genitive of the Person, rarely of the Thing concerned (381).
54. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (345).
55. Verbs of Advantage and Disadvantage, Bidding and Forbidding, Pleasure and Displeasure, Yielding and Resisting, take the Dative (346).
56. Many intransitive verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **sub**, and **super** may take a Dative; transitive verbs also an Accusative besides (347).
57. Verbs of Giving and Putting take a Dative and Accusative, or an Accusative and Ablative (348).
58. The Dative is used with **esse** to denote possession (349).
59. The Dative is used of the Person Interested in the action (350).
60. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only (351).
61. The Dative of Reference is used of the Person to whom a statement is referred (352).
62. The Dative of Agent is used with the Perfect passive, the Gerund, and the Gerundive (354).
63. The Dative may denote the Object For Which in combination with the Person To Whom (355).
64. Adjectives of Friendliness, Fulness, Likeness, Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative (359).
65. Active transitive verbs take the Accusative case (330).
66. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of Motion, compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **prae**, **sub**, **subter**, **super**, and **trans**, take the Accusative; transitive verbs thus compounded may have two Accusatives (331).
67. Intransitive verbs may take an Accusative of similar form or meaning (333, 2).
68. The Accusative may express Extent in Degree, Space, or Time (384-6).
69. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative of Place Whither; so also **domus** and **rūs** (337). See No. 74 and 92.
70. Verbs meaning to Inquire, Require, Teach, and Conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing (339).
71. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, and Showing, take two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing (340).
72. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative (420).
73. The Accusative may be used in Exclamations (348).
74. Place Where is denoted by the Ablative, usually with **in** (385);

Place Whence by the Ablative, usually with *ex*, *de*, or *ab* (390). Names of Towns and Small Islands omit the prepositions (388, 391). See No. 69 and 92.

75. Attendance is denoted by the Ablative with *cum* (392).
76. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the Ablative (393).
77. Origin or Descent is denoted by the Ablative with or without *ex* and *de* (395).
78. Material is denoted by the Ablative with *ex* (396).
79. The Point of View or Respect is denoted by the Ablative (397).
80. Comparatives without *quam* are followed by the Ablative (398).
81. Manner is denoted by the Ablative regularly with an adjective or *cum* (399).
82. External and transient qualities are denoted by the Ablative, always with an adjective (400); essential and permanent qualities by the Genitive, always with an adjective (365). See No. 45.
83. Cause, Means, and Instrument, are denoted by the Ablative (401, 408).
84. The Agent is denoted by the Ablative with *ab* (401).
85. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the Ablative (402).
86. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative (403).
87. Definite Price is put in the Ablative (404); General Price in the Genitive (879). See No. 52.
88. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative (405).
89. The Ablative is used with *opus* and *tisus* (406).
90. *Utor*, *fruor*, *fugor*, *potior*, and *vescor* take the Ablative (407).
91. The Ablative, combined with a participle, serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence: Ablative Absolute (409).
92. Names of Towns and Small Islands of the First and Second Declensions are put in the Locative of the Place Where (411). See No. 69 and 74.
93. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (439).
94. A question for information merely is introduced by *-ne* (454).
95. A question that expects the answer *yes* is introduced by *nōnne* (455).
96. A question that expects the answer *no* is introduced by *num* (456).
97. The Deliberative Question is in the Subjunctive (265).
98. The Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive (467).

99. *Sequence of Tenses.* Principal tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal tenses, Historical by Historical (509).

100. After a Future or Future Perfect, the Future relation is expressed by the Present, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive (514). After other tenses the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Present and Imperfect Subjunctive (515).

101. In *Oratio Obliqua* all subordinate tenses follow the general law of sequence (516).

102. *Quod, the fact that, in that,* is used with the Indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after Verbs of Adding and Dropping, Doing and Happening, and demonstratives (525).

103. *Quod, quia, quoniam,* and *quandō* take the Indicative in Direct Discourse, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to express Cause (540, 541).

104. *Quod* is used after verbs of Emotion with the Indicative in Direct, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to give the Ground (542).

105. Final Sentences have the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive with *ut* or *nō* (545).

106. Complementary Final Clauses are used after verbs of Will and Desire (546).

107. Positive verbs of Preventing, Refusing, Forbidding, and Bewaring, may take *nō* with the Subjunctive (548).

108. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take *quōminus* with the Subjunctive (549). See No. 112.

109. Verbs of Fear are followed by *nō* or *ut* (*nō nōn*) and all tenses of the Subjunctive (550).

110. Consecutive Sentences have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *ut nōn* (552).

111. Verbs of Effecting have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *nō*, or *ut nōn* (553).

112. Negated or Questioned verbs of Preventing, Hindering, etc., of Doubt and Uncertainty, may be followed by the Subjunctive with *quin* (555). See No. 108.

113. A Consecutive Clause with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun (557).

114. *Ut, ut primum, cum, cum primum, ubi, ubi primum, simulac,* *simul atque,* and *postquam* take the Perfect Indicative, in the sense of *as soon as*; but the Imperfect of Overlapping Action, and the Pluperfect when a definite interval is given (561, 562, 563).

115. When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in the Indicative in tenses of continuance (566).

116. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation (567).

117. *Dum, dñeo, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while*, take the Indicative of all tenses (569).

118. *Dum, while, while yet*, takes the Present Indicative after all tenses (570).

119. *Dum, dñeo, quoad, until*, take the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative (571).

120. *Dum, dñeo, quoad, until*, take the Subjunctive when Suspense or Design is involved (572).

121. *Dum, modō, and dummodō, if only, provided only*, take the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes (573).

122. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Indicative Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect when the limit is stated as a fact; the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate (574, 577).

123. Temporal *cum, when*, is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations (580).

124. Historical *cum, when*, is used with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the temporal circumstances under which an action took place (585).

125. Causal and Concessive *cum, when, whereas, although*, are used with all tenses of the Subjunctive (586, 587).

126. The Logical Condition has usually some form of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis (595).

127. The Ideal Condition has usually the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, less often the Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both clauses (596).

128. The Unreal Condition has the Imperfect Subjunctive of opposition to present, the Pluperfect of opposition to past fact (597).

129. *Ut si, sc si, quasi, quam si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut*, and *velut si*, introduce a comparison in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence (602).

130. Concessive clauses may be introduced by *etsi, etiam si, tamet si*, with the Indicative or Subjunctive (604); by *quamquam*, with the Indicative (605); by *quamvis*, with the Subjunctive (606).

131. Indefinite and generic relatives usually have the Indicative (625); so explanatory *qui*, when equivalent to *quod* (626).

132. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses that form a part

of the utterance of another; so in *Oratio Obliqua* and Final Clauses (628).

133. Relative sentences that depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive by Attraction (629).

134. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when *qui* = *ut* (final) *is* (630).

135. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency when *qui* = *ut* (consecutive) *is*; so after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, etc., after an indefinite antecedent; after comparatives with *quam* (631).

136. Comparative sentences after words of Likeness and Unlikeness may be introduced by *atque* or *se* (648).

137. Comparative sentences after comparatives are introduced by *quam* (644).

138. In *Oratio Obliqua*, Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, except Interrogatives and Imperatives, which are put in the Subjunctive; Subordinate clauses are put in the Subjunctive (650, 651, 652).

# PROSODY.

---

## 701. PROSODY treats of Quantity and Versification.

REMARKS.—I. Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classical Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

2. In the earliest Latin the Accent was not regulated by Quantity, but was on the initial syllable (15, n.). This often resulted in

(a) The disappearance of the vowel (8, 2) in the *antepenult* or *pro-antepenult*; this occurs especially in Greek words, but also in some common Latin words: *Poludeuōs*, *Poldeuōs*, *Pollīs*, *Pollūx*; *balineōn*, *balineum*, *balneum*, *bath*; *máximus*, *greatest*, for *magisimos*; *optumus*, *best*, for *opitumus*, *etc.*

(b) The shortening of a *long penult* (8). This was still going on in the time of *PLAUTUS*, and occurs here and there in the poets: *anchora*, *anchor*, from *ankhra*; *so pñierō*, *I swear falsely*, for *parifurō*; *chorea*, *dance*, from *choreia*, *etc.*

(c) The weakening (8) of the *antepenult*, sometimes also of the *penult*, both in Greek words and Latin: *Massilia* from *Massalίa*; *beni-* and *malī-* for *bene* and *male* in composition; *-hibē* for *habē* in composition; and a few others, as *-cidē* for *caedē* in composition, *etc.*

## QUANTITY.

### 702. RULE I.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: *ō*, *vae*, *lēgēs*, *sacvae*.

REMARKS.—I. (a) A vowel before *-gm*, *-gn*, *-nf*, *-ns* is long *by nature*;  
(b) a vowel before *-nt*, *-nd* is short *by nature*.

#### EXCEPTIONS :

(a) *Egnatius*, *Theognis*, and some Greek words in *-egma*, as *phlegma*, *phlegm*; but *pégma*.

(b) *Cōntiō* (for *coventiō*), *assembly*; *iēntāculum*, *iēntātiō*, *breakfast*; *nūntius*, *messenger*; *quintus*, *fifth*; and Greek substantives in *-ds*, *-ntis*, *-ōn*, *-ntis*; *Chārōndīs*, *Epamīnōndās*; also *nūndīnas* (*noven-d-*), *market day*; *nōndūm*, *not yet*; *prāndō*, *I seize*; *quīndecim*, *fifteen*; *vēndō*, *I sell*; *tīndecim*, *eleven*; *vīndēmia*, *vintage*.

2. Inchoative verbs have vowel before *-e* long *by nature*; *dīscō*, *I learn*.

3. Noteworthy are the following: *quārtus*, *fourth*; *quinque*, *five*, and its derivatives; *vīgīntī*, *twenty*; *mīlle*, *thousand*, and its derivatives.

4. In verbs the quantity of the Present Stem is generally retained throughout before two consonants (except -ns).

*Except dico, I say; Supine, dictum; ducō, I lead; Supine, ductum; and their derivatives, like dictiō, etc.*

5. Noteworthy are the following : ago, *I drive*, ḡgl, ḡctum; emo, *I buy*, ḡml, ḡmptum; frangō, *I break*, frḡgl, frḡctum; fungor, *I perform*, flnctus; iubet, *I order*, iūsī, iūsum; iungō, *I join*, iūnxi, iūfactum; lego, *I read*, lēgl, lēctum; pangō, *I fix*, pātum; rego, *I govern*, rēgl, rēctum; sancti, *I sanction*, sānxi, sānetum, sāncitum; strao, *I pile up*, strūxi, strūctum; tangō, *I touch*, tāctum; tegō, *I cover*, tāxl, tāctum; traho, *I draw*, trāxi, trāctum; ungō, *I anoint*, unxi, unctum; vincō, *I conquer*, vixi, victum.

6. In verbs, a vowel resulting from syncope is long before ss, st (181). Also, perhaps, i before s and t in syncopated Pf. forms of ire and petere.

NOTE.—On the method of distinguishing long vowels on inscriptions, see 12, 1, N.

**703. RULE II** —A syllable is said to be long *by position* (12, 2) when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *ara, collum, castra*.

REMARKS.—1. The consonants may be divided between two words : *per mare, in terris*; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short, except in the Thesis (729) of a verse, when it is lengthened : *praemiā scribae*.

2. Every vowel sound followed by i *consonant* (j) is long (except in the compounds of *iugum, yoke*). This is due sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation : *Gāius* from *Gāvius*, *pierō* for *periūrō*; but *biliugus, two-horse*.

NOTE.—In compounds of *iacere, to throw*, the i is often omitted, and the preceding vowel lengthened by compensation ; so *cōnicere* ; a short vowel with the i omitted is not found until OVID's time.

3. Final s, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant in the older poetry ; often too in LUCRETIUS.

*In somnis vidist priu(s) quām sam (= eam) dīscere cōepit.*—ENNIIUS.

NOTE.—In comic poetry, a short final syllable in s blends with est, and sometimes with es : *opus est* (= *opus est*) ; *simili's* (= *similis es*).

**704. RULE III.**—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is common (13) : *tenē-brae, darkness*. In early Latin it is regularly short, so, too, when the mute and liquid begin a word.

REMARKS.—1. The syllable must end in a short vowel : *nāvi-fragus, ship-wrecking* ; *mell-fluus, flowing with honey* ; but in *ab-rumpō* the a is long by position.

2. In Greek words **m** and **n** are included under this rule : **Tō-omēsā**, **Cy-cnus**.

**EXCEPTION.**—Derivative substantives in **shrum**, **scrum**, **strum** from verbs ; as **fibra**, **blasts**. **Zmarāgdos**, **MART.**, v. 11, 1, cannot be paralleled.

**705. RULE IV.**—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long (14) : **aevos**, *cruel* ; **conclūdō**, *I shut up* (from **claudō**) ; **iniquos**, *unfair* (from **aequos**) ; **cōgō**, *I drive together* (from **coigo** = **con** + **ago**).

**EXCEPTION.**—**Prae** in composition is shortened before a vowel until the time of **STATIUS** ; **prae-ūstus**, *burnt at the point* (V., A., VII. 524).

**706. RULE V.**—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or **h**, makes a short syllable : **dēus**, *God* ; **pīter**, *boy* ; **nīhil**, *nothing*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. **ē** in the old Gen. of the First Declension : **aurēl**.
2. **ē** in **-ēs** of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes : **dīs**, but **fīdes** (68, n. 1).
3. **a** and **e** before **i** in proper names in **-ius** : **Gīl**, **Pompēl**.
4. **i** in the Gen. form **-īus** (76, n. 2). **Alterius** is often shortened, perhaps even in prose : **ālius**, **ūllius**, **nāllius**, **tōllius**, are found in poetry. In **alīus** the **i** is never shortened (**alius** for **alīus**).
5. **i** in **īs** is long, except before **er** : **īs**, but **fīret** and **fīerī**.
6. **ētū**, **Dīkā**, **ōhā**, **dfīs** (= **divīs**).
7. Many Greek words : **ētī**, **Menēlīs**, **mīsūm**, **Mēdēa**.
8. In early Latin many words retain the original length of the vowel : **ās**, **ētī** ; all forms of **īs** ; **ētī** ; **ītī** and its forms ; **plītī**, **lātī**, **adnītī**, etc. Most of the shortened forms also occur, and are more common.

### Quantity of Final Syllables.

#### A. POLYSYLLABLES.

**707. RULE VI.**—In words of more than one syllable, final **a**, **e**, and **y** are *short* ; **i**, **o**, and **u** are *long*.

1. **a** is short : **terrā**, *earth* ; **dōnā**, *gifts* ; **capitā**, *heads*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Abl. of the First Declension : **terrē**.
2. Voc. of words in **ās** (**Aenē**), and Greek Nom. in **ā** (**Electrē**).
3. Impv. of First Conjugation : **amā**.

4. Most uninflected words : *trigintā, iūxtā, but itā, quia, siā.* With *putā*, *for instance*, compare *cavē* below.

2. e is short.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Abl. of the Fifth Declension : *dis.*
2. Impv. of Second Conjugation : *mons* (but see Note).
3. Most adverbs of Second Declension : *rēctē*; but *bene, malē, infernē* (LUCR.), *máximē* (PLAUT.), *probē* (PLAUT.), *supernē* (LUCR., HOR.), *temerē* (PLAUT., TER.).
4. Greek words in ε (η) : *Tempē, melē.*
5. Que is thought to be not unfrequently long in the Thesis of early Saturnians ; so in the hexameter of the classical period if a second que follows in the Arsis.

NOTE.—Observe that in PLAUTUS and TERENCE any dissyllabic Iambic impv. may have the last ε shortened ; principally *cavē, habē, iubē, manē, monē, movē, tacē, tenē, valē, vidē.* See 716. Later poets also shorten sometimes when the penult is long ; *salve* (MART.).

3. y is always short, except in contracted forms : *misy* (Dative *misy* = *misyi*).

4. i is long : *domini, viginti, audi.*

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Greek Dat. sī : *Trōasī.*
  2. Greek Nom., as *sīnspī*; Voc., as *Pari*; Dat. Sing. (rarely), as *Mīnōidī.*
  3. *quasi, nisi, etī* (when a dissyllable).
  4. i is common in *mīhi, tībi, sībi, ihī, ubī.*
- Observe the compounds : *iblēm, iblēque, ublēque, ublēnam, ublēvis, ublēcunque, nēcublē, utinam, utique, sicuti* ; (but *nti*).

5. o is long : *bonō, tūtō.*

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Common in *homō*; in the Augustan times in *leō* and many proper names ; as *Scipiō*; in the post-Augustan times in many common substantives : *virgō. Nēmō* is found first in OVID, *mentīō* in HORACE.
2. Frequently short in Iambic words in early Latin, especially in verbs, many of which remained common in the Augustan times, as *voīō, vetō, sciō, petō, putō, etc.*; so less often *nēsciō, dēainō, obsecrō, dixerō, ūderō.* From SENECA ON, the Gerund may be shortened : *amandō.*
3. o is usually short in *modō, citō, octō, egō, illoō, immō, duō, ambō* (post-classical); and in many other words in later poetry.

6. u is always long : *cornū, frūctū, auditū.*

**708. RULE VII.**—All final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than *s* are short.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. *alle*, *lén*, and many Greek substantives.
2. The adverbs and oblique cases of *illīs*, *illīs*, *istīs*, *istīs*, can hardly be considered exceptions, as -e is for -ee, and is merely enclitic.
3. Compounds of *pér*: *dispér*, *impér*.
4. *lit*, *petit*, and their compounds.
5. Final -at, -et, -it, were originally long, and as such often occur in early Latin, and occasionally before a pause in the classical poets.

**709. RULE VIII.**—Of final syllables in *s*: *as*, *es*, *os*, are long; *is*, *us*, *ys*, short.

1. *as* is long : *Aenēās*, *servās*, *amās*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Greek substantives in *as*, *atis* : *Arcās*, *Arcidās*.
2. Greek Acc. Pl., Third Declension : *hērōas*, *Arcadās*.
3. *anās*, *anītis*.

2. *es* is long : *rēgēs*, *diēs*, *monēs*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Nom. and Voc. Sing., Third Declension, when the Gen. has *ētis*, *Itis*, *Idis* : *segēs*, *mīlēs*, *obēs*; but *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *parēs*.
2. Compounds of *es*, *be* (long syllable in PLAUTUS) : *adēs*, *potēs*.
3. *penē* (Preposition).
4. Greek words in *es* (*es*) : Nom. Pl., as *Arcadēs*; Voc., as *Dēmos-thēnēs*; Neuter, as *cacoēthēs*.
5. Iambic verbal forms in Second Person Sing. in early Latin.

3. *os* is long : *deōs*, *nepōs*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. *Compōs*, *impōs*, *exōs*; and as the Nom. ending in the Second Declension.
2. Greek words in *os* (*os*) : *melōs*.

4. *is* is short : *canīs*, *legīs*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Dat. and Abl. Plural : *terrīs*, *bonīs*.
2. Acc. Pl. of the Third Declension : *omnīs* = *omnīs*.
3. In the Nom. of sundry Proper Names, increasing long in the Genitive : *Quirīs*, *Quirītīs*.
4. Second Person Sing. Pr. Indic. active, Fourth Conjugation : *audīs*.

5. In the verbal forms from *vis*, *sis*, *fis*, and *velis*: *nō-lis*, *mā-lis*, *ad-sis*, *cale-fis*.

6. In the Second Person Sing. Fut. Pf. Indic. and Pf. Subjv., *is* is common : *videris*.

7. *Pulvis*, *cñis*, *sanguis*, occasionally in early Latin.

5. *us* is short : *servūs*, *currūs*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. Gen. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Pl., Fourth Declension : *currūs*.

2. Nom. Third Declension, when the Gen. has a long *u* : *virtūs*, *virtutis*; *incōdīs*, *incōdīs*; *tellūs*, *tellūris*.

3. In Greek words with *ū* (*ous*) : *tripūs*, *Sapphūs*; but *Oedipūs* and *polyptūs*.

4. Occasionally the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Third Declension, the First Person Pl. active of verbs, seem to be long in early Latin.

6. *ys* is short : *chlamȳs*.

**B. MONOSYLLABLES.**

**710. RULE IX.**—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long : *ā*, *dā*, *mē*, *dē*, *hī*, *sl̄*, *ō*, *dō*, *tū*.

Except the enclitics : -*quē*, -*vē*, -*nē*, -*oē*, -*tē*, -*peē*, *ptā*.

**711. RULE X.**—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given : *dās*, *fīs*, *scīs*, *dāt*, *fīt*, *īs*, *īd*, *quīs*, *hīs*, *quīa*.

*hic*, *this one*, is sometimes short ; *dīs* and *dās* have the quantity of their verbs ; *ēs*, *ētē*, is short in classical Latin, long in early Latin.

**712. RULE XI.**—Monosyllabic Nominatives of substantives and adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short : *ōs*, *mōs*, *vēr*, *sōl*, *fūr*, *pīlūs*; *lār* (*lāris*), *pēs* (*pēdis*), *bōs* (*bōvis*), *pār* (*pāris*).

**EXCEPTIONS :**

*vir* and *lac*, *os* (*ossis*), *mel*;

Also *cor*, *vas* (*vadis*), *fel*. Also *quot*, *tot*.

**713. RULE XII.**—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short : *ān*, *cīs*, *īn*, *nōc*, *pēr*, *tēr*.

Excepting *ēn* and *nōn* and *quīn* ;

And also *cīs* and *cūr* and *śin* ;

Also the Adverbs in *c*: *hic*, *hūc*, *hāc*, *śic*; and *āc* (*atque*).

### Quantity of Stem-Syllables.

**714. RULE XIII.**—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short *by authority*).

REMARKS.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tense-stems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb (158, 2).

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables which spring from the same radical can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here. Some examples are :

páclisoor,	páx, pácia.	séded,	séðæs.
mácoer,	mácoerð.	fídæs,	fídð (feido).
lægo,	læx, lægis.	dux, dúcis,	dúoð (donoð).
rægo,	ræx, rægis.	vðoð,	vðx.
tægo,	tægula.	lúoerna,	lúceð (loneeð).
löer,	löerbus.	susploor,	susplicið.
möltæ,	mölestus.	möveð,	möbillis (= mobilis).

### Quantity in Compounds.

**715. RULE XIV.**—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts : (cédō) ante-cédō, dē-cédō, prō-cédō ; (caedō), occidō ; (cädō), occidō.

REMARKS.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, dí, së, and vë are long, rë short : díduoð, sédæs, vðors, ræduoð ; dí, in disertus, is shortened for dis, and in dirimo, dir stands for dis.

2. Në is short, except in nëdum, nëmð (ne-hemð), nëquam, nëquiquam, nëquäquam, nëquitia, nëve.

3. Rë comes from red, which in the forms redd, reoc, repp, rall, rett, occurs principally in poetry before many consonantal verb forms ; but this doubling varies at different periods, and is found throughout only in reddð. Rë by compensation for the loss of the d is found, occasionally, principally in Perfect stems and in dactylic poetry, especially in ræicore, ræligið (also relligið and religið), ræduoð (once in PLAUT.).

4. Prø is shortened before vowels, and in many words before consonants, especially before f: prøavos, prøhlþet, prønde, prøfugl, prøfugus, prøfundus, prøteor, prøfari, prøfauus, prøfisoor, prøcella, prøcul, prønepðs. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words pro ( $\pi\rho\omega$ ) is generally short : prøpheta ; but prølogus.

5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened : dæterð,

*Uxor, hens uxor, quamquam tū frāta's mihi.*—PLAUT.

*Dummodō mōrāta rōctē veniat dōtātast satis.*—PLAUT.

*Perrūpit Acheronta Herculeus labor.*—HOR.

Sometimes, however, Diastolē arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

*Nec quis Prāmidē in aquātis vallibus Idæ.*—OV.

*Désine plūra puér—et quod nūne instat agāmus.*—VERG.

*Pectoribūs inhāns spirantia cōsultit exta.*—VERG.

NOTE.—The extent to which diastolē is allowable is a matter of dispute, especially in early Latin.

On quā, see 707, 2, Ex. 5.

722. *Systolē*.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolē).

*Obstupui stetāruntque comae vōx fauclibus haesit.*—VERG.

*E terrā māgn(um) alterius spectare labōrem.*—LUCR.

*Unitus ad certam fūrmam pīncīrdia rārum.*—LUCR.

*Nūllus addictus itārare in verba magistri.*—HOR.

NOTE.—The short penult of the Pt. in *stetārunt, dedērunt*, was probably original (DEDRO in inscriptions). See 181, 4, 2, 5 and 6.

723. *Hardening*.—The vowels i and u assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): *abiētē* (*abiētā*), *genvā* (*gēntā*), *tenviā* (*tēndā*).

*Flūviōrum rāx ēridanus campōque per omnēs.*—VERG.

*Nam quae tēnia sunt hiscendist nūlla potestās.*—LUCR.

724. *Dialysis*.—The consonants i and v assert their half-vowel nature: *dissolūō* (dissolvō), *Gātūs* (*Gāins*, from *Gāvius*).

*Adulterātū et columba milūtō.*—HOR.

*Stamina nōn tilli dissoluenda deō.*—TIB.

725. *Syncopē*.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose: *calfaciō* for *calefaciō*.

*Templōrum positor templōrum sāncte repostor.*—OV.

*Quiddam māgnūm addēns finū mē surpīte (= surripīte) morti.*—HOR.

726. *Tmēsis*.—Compound words are separated into their parts.

*Quā mē cunqūe (= quācumque mē) rapit tempestās dāferor hospes.*—HOR.

NOTE.—The earlier poets carry Tmesis much further, in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is: *saxō cere comminuit brūm.*—ENNİUS.

**727. *Synizēsis*.**—Vowels are connected by a slur, as often in the living language : dēinde, dēinceps.

Quid faciam roger anne rogem ? quid dēinde rogēbō ?—Ov.  
So even when h intervenes, as dehinc :

Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dēhinc tālia fītur.—VERG.

**REMARK.**—*Synizēsis* (*settling together*) is also called *Synaerēsis* (*taking together*), as opposed to *Diaeresis* (5) ; but *Synaeresis* properly means *contraction*, as in oēgō (for coagō), and nēmō (for nehemō). *Synaloepha* is a general term embracing all methods of avoiding *Hiatus*.

**NOTE.**—1. *Synizesis* is very common in early Latin, especially in pronominal forms: mi (michi), mēus, and its forms, dissyllabic forms like sō, sūm, etc.

**728. *Synapheia*.**—A line ends in a short vowel, which is elided before the initial vowel of a following line, or a word is divided between two lines, i. e., the two lines are joined together.

Sors exit̄ra et nōs in aetern(um)

Exilium imposit̄ra cumbes.—HOR., O., II. 3, 27.

Gallicum Rhēn(um), horribile aequor, ulti.

mōsque Britannōe.—CAT., II. II.

## VERSIFICATION.

**729. *Rhythm*.**—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*). The accented part is called the *Thesis*; \* the unaccented, the *Arsis*. The *Rhythmicall Accent* is called the *Ictus* (*blow, beat*).

**REMARK.**—Besides the dominant Ictus, there is a subordinate or secondary Ictus, just as there is a dominant and a secondary Accent in words.

**730. *Metre*.**—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (*Measure*). A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

\* *Thesis* and *Arsis* are Greek terms, meaning the *putting down* and the *raising* of the foot in marching. The Roman Grammarians, misunderstanding the Greek, applied the terms to the *lowering* and *raising* of the voice, and thus reversed the significations. Modern scholars up to recent times followed the Roman habit, but at present the tendency is to use the terms in their original signification, as above.

**731. Unit of Measure.**—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable, (˘), and is called **Mora, Tempus (Time).**

The value in music is  =  $\frac{1}{4}$ .

The long (—) is the double of the short.

The value in music is  =  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**REMARK.**—An irrational syllable is one which is not an exact multiple of the standard unit. Feet containing such quantities are called irrational.

**732. Resolution and Contraction.**—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution        Contraction,  

**733. Feet.**—As elements of musical strains, Metres are called Bars. As elements of verses, they are called Feet.

As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus | .

**REMARK.**—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted ; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

**734. Names of the Feet.**—The feet in use are the following :

**Feet of Three Times.**

Trochee,	— ˘	légít.	
Iambus,	˘ —	légunt.	
Tribrach,	˘ ˘ ˘	légítis.	

**Feet of Four Times.**

Dactyl,	— ˘ ˘	légimús.	
Anapaest,	˘ ˘ —	légérent.	
Spondee,	— —	légí.	
Proceleusmaticus,	˘ ˘ ˘ ˘	relegitur.	

## Feet of Five Times.

Grotis,	- u -	légérint.	
First Paēn,	- u u -	légéritis.	
Fourth Paēn,	u u u -	légimini.	
Bacchius,	u -- -	légébant.	
Antibacchius,	-- u -	légistis.	

## Feet of Six Times.

Iōmicus & maiōre,	- - u u	collégimis.	
Iōmicus & minōre,	u u - -	rēlégébant.	
Choriambus,	- u u -	colligérant.	
Ditrochee,	- u - u	colliguntis.	
Diiambus,	u - u -	légimini.	

REMARKS.—1. Other feet are put down in Latin Grammars, but they do not occur in Latin verse, if in any, such as :

Pyrrhic,	u u	légit.	Antispast,	u - - u	légébantis.
First Epitrite,	u - - -	rēlégébant.	Dispondee,	- - - -	silégébant.
Second Epitrite,	- u - -	légébant.	Second Paēn,	u - - u	légentibis.
Third Epitrite,	- - u -	silégébant.	Third Paēn,	u - - u	légitōis.
Fourth Epitrite,	- - - u	collégistis.	Molossus,	- - -	légébant.

2. For *Irrational Feet* see 743 and 744.

735. *Ascending and Descending Rhythms*.—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Thesis follows, the Rhythm is called *ascending*; if it precedes, *descending*. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.

736. *Names of Rhythms*.—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.

737. *Classes of Rhythms*.—In Latin, the musical element

of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Thesis to Arsis.

I. *Equal Class*, in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis (*γέρος ἴσον*). This may be called the Dactylico-Anapaestic class.

II. *Unequal Class*, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis (*γέρος διπλάσιον*). This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.

III. *Quinquepartite or Paeonian Class (Five-eighths class)*, of which the Cretic and Bacchius are the chief representatives (*γέρος ημιόλιον*).

**738. Rhythrical Series.**—A Rhythical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Dipody	= two feet.	Pentapody	= five feet.
Triphony	= three feet.	Hexapody	= six feet.
Tetrapody	= four feet.		

**REMARKS.**—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. The single foot is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Dactylic verse. Thus, a verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, a Hexameter.

3. There are limits to the extension of series. Four feet (in Greek, five) is the limit of the Dactylic and Anapaestic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.

**739. The Anacrustic Scheme.**—Ancient Metric discussed the colon, whether in Ascending or Descending Rhythm, according to the feet of which it was composed. Most modern critics, since the time of BENTLEY, regard the first Arsis in an ascending rhythm as taking the place of an upward beat in music (called by HERMANN Anacrasis; i. e., *upward stroke, signal-beat*), whereby all rhythms become descending.

In this way the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Dactyl, the Ionicus a mīōre as an Anacrustic Iōnicus & māōre. The sign of the Anacrasis is :

**740. Equality of the Feet.**—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods :

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Syllaba Anceps. | 3. Protraction. |
| 2. Catalēxis,      | 4. Correption,  |

**741. Syllaba Anceps.**—The final syllable of an independent series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long ; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

**742. Catalexis and Pause.**—A complete series is called A catalectic ; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic *in syllabam*, *in dissylabum*, *in trisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

$\text{— } \text{— } \text{—} | \text{— } \text{— } \text{—} | \text{— }$  Trimeter dactylicus catalecticus *in syllabam*.  
 $\text{— } \text{— } \text{—} | \text{— } \text{— } \text{—} | \text{— } \text{—}$  Trimeter dactylicus catalecticus *in dissyllabum*.

The time is made up by Pause.

The omission of one mora is marked  $\wedge$  ; of two  $\overline{\wedge}$

**743. Protraction and Syncopé.**—Protraction (*τονί*) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more Arses, which omission is called Syncopé.

$\text{—} = 8 = \text{—}$  (triseme long);  $\text{—} = 4 = \text{—}$  (tetraseme long).

**744. Correption.**—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.

1. So a long syllable sometimes takes the place of a short, and is marked  $>$  ; similarly, two short syllables often seem to take the place of one, and may be marked  $\sim$ .

2. When a Dactyl is used as a substitute for a Trochee, the approximate value is often  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1 = 8 = \text{— } \text{— } \text{—}$  ; which may be indicated by  $\text{— } \sim \text{—}$  (cyclic Dactyl).

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned :

$\text{— } \overset{a}{>} | \text{— } \sim \text{—} \overset{b}{|} \text{— } \overset{c}{|} \text{— } \sim \text{—} \overset{b}{|} \text{— } \overset{c}{|} \text{— } \sim \text{—} \overset{b}{|} \text{— } \overset{d}{\sim} \overset{e}{|} \text{— } \wedge$   
 Nullam | Väre se- | erit | vite pri- | us | sëveris | arbo | rem.—Hor.

(a) Irrational trochee (irrational long). (b) Cyclic dactyl. (c) Syncopé and Protraction (triseme long). (d) Syllaba anceps. (e) Catalexis.

**REMARK.**—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Anacrusis.

**745. Verse.**—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series; a Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.

A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked

1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them, except very rarely by Synapheia (728).
2. By the *Syllaba Anceps*, which can stand unconditionally.
3. By the Hiatus, *i. e.*, the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one. Occasionally such verses are joined by Synapheia (V., A., I. 332-3, 448-9; II. 745-6).

**746. Methods of Combining Verses.**—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups (Stichic Composition); such as the Septenarius and Octonarius, the Trochaic Septenarius, the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Senarius (Trimeter). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrastichs). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.

Larger groups of series are called Systems.

Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

**747. Canticum and Diverbia.**—In the Drama there is a broad division between that part of the play which was simply spoken, and is called *Diverbum*, comprising the scenes in the Iambic Senarius, and that part which was either sung or recited to a musical accompaniment called *Canticum*. The Canticum is subdivided into: (1) Those scenes which were merely *recited* to the accompaniment of the flute, and were written in Trochaic and Iambic Septenarii and Iambic Octonarii; and (2) those parts which were written in varying measures (*mutatis modis cantica*) and sung. The latter division is also called “*Cantica* in the narrow sense,” and may be divided into monologues, dialogues, etc. The greatest variety of measures is found in the monologues.

**748. Union of Language with Rhythm.**—When embodied

in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

**749. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.**—In ordinary Latin verse, at least according to modern pronunciation, the Ictus overrides the Accent; this conflict seems, however, to have been avoided in the second half of the Dactylic Hexameter, and the Ictus made to coincide with the Accent.

NOTE.—The extent to which this conflict was felt by the Romans themselves is a matter of uncertainty, but it seems likely that the dominant accent of a word was not so sharp as in modern pronunciation, and consequently the conflict would not be serious.

**750. Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.**—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

REMARKS.—1. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great Caesura falls before the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first *Arisis* of the second half.

“— | — | — | — | — | — | —  
Una salūs victis † nullam spērare salūtem.—VERG.

It does not occur at the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.

**751. Varieties of Caesura.**—Caesuræ have different names to show their position in the foot, as follows:

*Semiterndria*, after the third half foot, i.e., in the second foot.

*Semiquintndria*, after the fifth half foot, i.e., in the third foot.

*Semiseptendria*, after the seventh half foot, i.e., in the fourth foot.

*Seminovendria*, after the ninth half foot, i.e., in the fifth foot.

REMARK.—These Caesuræ are frequently called after their Greek names, thus: *trihemimeral*, *penhemimeral*, *heptahemimeral*, etc.

**752. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.**—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on a Thesis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on an Arsis, a Feminine Caesura.

Una sa | lūs <sup>a</sup> + vi | ctis <sup>b</sup> nūl | lam <sup>c</sup> spē | rāre <sup>d</sup> sa | lūtem.  
*a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae; d, a Feminine Caesura.*

Especially noteworthy is the Feminine Caesura of the third foot in the Hexameter, called the Third Trochée (788, R. 2).

**753. Diaeresis.**—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked ||

Itē domū saturae + venit | Hesperus | itē capellae.—VERG.

**REMARKS.**—1. Diaeresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diaeresis as soon as the rhythm is treated ana-crustically.

Suis | et i | psa + Rō | ma vi | ribus | ruit. Iambic Trimeter.

Su : is et | ipsa | Rōma | viri | bus + ru | it. Troch. Trimeter Catal., with Anacrusis.

2. Diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot of a Hexameter is called Bucolic Caesura, and has a special effect (788, R. 3).

**754. Recitation.**—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of Caesuræ lends vigor to the verse.

**REMARK.**—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,

Unasa, lusvie, tisnul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

#### Numerus Italicus.

**755.** The oldest remains of Italian poetry are found in some fragments of ritualistic and sacred songs, and seem to have had no regard to quantity. No definite theory can be formed of this so-called *Numerus Italicus* in which they were composed, but they seem to have been in series of four Theses, usually united in pairs or triplets, but sometimes separate. An example is the prayer to Mars, from CATO, *Agr.*, 141.

Mári páter té précor | quáséque úti sím | vóléns própitiús  
 Mihí dómó | fámiliaéque nóstráé, etc.

## Saturnian Verse.

**756.** The Saturnian verse is an old Italian rhythm which occurs in the earlier monuments of Latin literature. It divides itself into two parts, with three Theses in each ; but the exact metrical composition has been a matter of much dispute, the remains not being sufficient to admit of any dogmatism. The two principal theories are :

1. *The Quantitative Theory*.—The Saturnian is a six-foot verse with Anacrusis, and a Caesura after the third Arsis, or more rarely after the third Thesis.

Dabunt málum Metélli | Naéviō poétæ.  
Cornélīus Lūcūs | Scipīo Barbætūs.  
Quoīus fírma virtutē | parísumā fuit.  
Etrūm sectám sequóntur | málti mórtalēs.

*Norma*.—1. The Thesis is formed by a long or two shorts ; the Arsis by a short, a long, or two shorts (not immediately before the Caesura). The Arsis may be wholly suppressed, most often the second Arsis of the second hemistich. Short syllables under the Ictus may be scanned long. Hiatus occurs everywhere, but usually in Caesura.

2. This theory is held by many scholars, but with various modifications. Thus, some do not accept the lengthening of the short syllables, others would scan by protraction four feet in each half verse, etc.

Dabunt málum Metélli | Naéviō poétæ, etc.

2. *The Accentual Theory*.—The Saturnian verse falls into two halves, the first of which has three Theses, the second usually three, sometimes two, in which case there is usually Anacrusis in the second hemistich. Quantity is not considered.

Dabunt málum Metélli | Naéviō poétæ.  
Quoīus fírma virtutē | parísumā fuit.

*Norma*.—1. Two accented syllables are regularly divided by a single unaccented syllable, except that between the second and third there are always two. Hiatus allowed only at Caesura.

2. A modification of this theory would scan

Dabunt málum Metélli | Naéviō poétæ.

3. Very recently a modification of the Accentual Theory has been proposed, which has much in its favor :

(a) The accent must fall on the beginning of each line, though it may be a secondary accent ; the first hemistich has three, the second has but two Theses.

(b) The first hemistich has normally seven syllables, the second six ; but an extra short syllable may be admitted where it would be wholly or partially suppressed in current pronunciation.

(c) After the first two feet there is an alternation between words accented on the first and those accented on the second syllable.

(d) A final short vowel is elided, otherwise semi-hiatus is the rule ; but there may be full Hiatus at the Caesura.

Dabunt málum Metélli | Naéviō poétæ.  
Prīm(a) inoedit Céreris | Proserpīna pár.

**Iambic Rhythms.**

**757.** The Iambic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented

- By the Iambus :  $\cup \downarrow$ ;
- By the Tribrach :  $\cup \downarrow \downarrow$ ;
- By the Spondee :  $\downarrow \downarrow$ ;
- By the Dactyl :  $\downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$ ;
- By the Anapaest :  $\uparrow \uparrow \downarrow$ ; and
- By the Proceleusmaticus :  $\uparrow \uparrow \downarrow \downarrow$ .

REMARK.—The Spondee, Dactyl, Anapaest, and Proceleusmaticus are all irrational, and are consequently marked on the schemes thus:  $>-$ ,  $>\uparrow\downarrow$ ,  $\wedge\wedge$ ,  $\wedge\wedge\wedge$ ; see 744.

**758. Iambic Octonarius (Tetrameter Acatalectic).**

Iuss(i) ádparáří prándium | amf-  
c(a) exspectat mé, scit, PL.,  
Men., 599.                             $> \downarrow \uparrow - > \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow | \uparrow \downarrow > - > \downarrow \uparrow -$   
Hic finis est íambe salvé + víndi-  
cis doctór mali, SERVIUS.             $> \downarrow \uparrow - \downarrow \downarrow \uparrow - > \downarrow \uparrow - > \downarrow \uparrow -$

*Anacrustic Scheme :*

$\gtrdot : \downarrow (\downarrow) | - \gtrdot | \downarrow (\downarrow) | - \gtrdot | \downarrow (\downarrow) | - \gtrdot | \downarrow \downarrow | - \wedge$

NOTE.—This verse is predominantly a comic verse, occurring most frequently in TERENCE, who shows five hundred lines, while PLAUTUS shows but three hundred. The substitutions are the same as in the Senarius (761, n. 1). There are two varieties : (a) That which is divided into two equal halves by Diacritics at the end of the fourth foot. In this case the fourth foot as well as the eighth has all the privileges of the final foot of the Senarius (Hiatus, Syllabe Anceps), and conforms also to its rules, so that the line is practically a distich of two Quaternarii ; but Hiatus after the fourth foot is denied for TERENCE.

(b) That which is divided into two unequal halves by a Cæsura after the fifth Arsis. Here the rules of the final foot apply only to the eighth, and the fourth may be a Spondee. The principle which governs the choice of words after the *semiquinarius* in the Senarius applies here after the dividing Cæsura. The Hiatus comes under the general rules. From the earliest period there is a tendency to keep the even feet pure. This variety is preferred by TERENCE to the former. Examples of the two forms are :

Ó Tróia, Ó patria, Ó Pergamum, | Ó Priame, periliſti ſenex, PLAUT.  
Is porrō m(ē) autem verberāt | incurſat pūgnis calcib⁹, PLAUT.  
Facil(e) omnēs quom valēmus rēcta | cōnſilia aegrōtis dāmus, TEE.

**759. Iambic Septenarius (Tetrameter Catalectic).**

Remítte palliám mihi | meúm quod  
involvisti, CAT.

$\downarrow \downarrow \uparrow - \downarrow \downarrow \uparrow - | \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow - \downarrow \downarrow - \wedge$

### *Analytic Scheme:*

> : <(>) | -> | <(>) | -+> | <(>) | -(>) | ← | -Λ

NOTES.—1. This verse is confined principally to PLAUTUS and TERENCE; it is to be regarded as a compound of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic: hence regular Diareesis after the fourth foot, which is treated as a final foot. The same rules, in regard to the various word-feet allowable, apply here as in the case of the Senarius (761, n. 6). Substitutions are allowable in every foot except in the fourth, when followed by a Diaresis.

### **With Syllabus Annexes :**

**SU** abduxeris **et** **abitur** | itidem ut celsa adhuc est. PLAUT.

## **With History:**

Sed si tibi viginti minae I argenti prouferuntur. PLAUT.

2. Exceptionally in PLAUTUS, more often in TIBULLUS, the line is cut by Caesura after the fifth Aesis. In this case the fourth foot has no exceptional laws except that if the seventh foot is not pure the fourth should be, though this is not absolutely necessary.

**760.** *The Iambic Sénarius (a Stichic measure).* This is an imitation of the Iambic Trimeter of the Greeks, but differs from it in that it is a line of six separate feet and not of three dipodies. In the early Latin there is no distinction between the odd and even feet, such as prevails in the Greek Trimeter, but the same substitutions were allowable in the one as in the other. This distinction is regained in HORACE and SENECA, who follow the Greek treatment closely, and with whom the line may be with some degree of justice called the Iambic Trimeter, but it is very doubtful whether the Roman felt the Iambic Trimeter as did the Greek. In both Senarius and Trimeter the *last foot is always pure*.

### 761. The Early Use (*Sēnārius*).

**Any substitution is allowed in any foot except the last.**

### **Quamvis sermōnes possunt longi**

tézier, Pl., *Trin.*, 797. > ↗ | > - | > ↗ | > - | > ↗ | ↘ -

**Qui scire possit, t'asit ingenium.**

former. TEE. And., 53.

S/1 u x̄ris + m̄ontar am̄oram̄tōd-

lit disease TEB And 155 >6 |>=1W6|>=1>6|W

Dí fentlenskunntkvæstur sönslíða

See Vol. 18, PL., 19th., 570.

**El F(1) opera un darse de fructos en la**

quant(0) *aequus*, PL., *Tin.*,

119. >ss|>uu|>oo| uuu|>z|v-

**Notes.**—1. In the Iambic measure two shorts at the end of a polysyllabic word cannot stand in either Thesis or Arsis; hence such feet as *genera*, *ma | teria*, would not be allowable. But a Dactyl is sometimes found in the first foot (*Ter., Eun.*, 348). The two shorts of a Thesaurus cannot be divided between two words, when the second word is a polysyllable with the accent on the second syllable; hence *fingit ambra* is

faulty. The two shorts of an *Arsis* should not be divided between two words if the first short ends a word; but there are sundry exceptions; especially the case where two words are closely connected, as, for instance, a preposition and its case; proper names.

2. The most frequent Cesura is the *sēmiquintāria*. Next comes the *sēmisep̄tināria*, which is usually accompanied by the *sēnterñaria* or by Diæresis after second foot. Examples above.

3. Elision is more frequent in the Iambic Sennarius than in the Dactylic Hexameter, and occurs especially before the first and fifth Theses; also not unfrequently in the fourth foot. The proportion of elision varies between TERENCE (four elisions in every three verses) and HORACE (one in five stichic verses, and one in seven in distichs).

4. Semi-hiatus (720), also called *Graecidicus* or *Légitimus*, is very common both in Thesis and Arsis; Hiatus is also admitted at a change of speaker; whether it is admissible before proper names, foreign words, and in the principal Cæsura, is still a matter of dispute.

5. If the line is divided by the *diminutio* Cæsura, and the fifth foot is formed by a single word, the second half of the third foot, together with the fourth, may be formed by a single word only when that is a Cretic or a Fourth Pason; as, *filius boniñ fidis* (*Pl.*, *Moel.*, 670). Thus *dépinxti verbis probè* would not be allowable for *verbis dépinxti probè* (*Pl.*, *Poen.*, 1114).

6. To close the line with two Iambic feet was not allowable, except as follows : (1) When the line ends with a word of four syllables or more. (2) When the line ends with a Cretic. (3) When the line ends with an Iambic word preceded by an anapaest or Fourth Paeon. (4) When a change of person precedes the sixth foot. (5) When elision occurs in the fifth or sixth foot.

**762. The Later Use (*Trimeter*).**

Suis et ipsa † Rôma virib�s ruit	> - u -   u - u -   u - u -
Hou m� per urbem † n�m pudet tant� mal�	> - u -   > - u -   > - u -
D�rpere l�nam † v�cibus possim meis	> u - u -   > - u -   > - u -
Inf�mis Heleneae † C�stor off�nsus vicioem	> - u - u   > - u -   > - u -
Opt�t qui�tem † P�lopis Inf�di pater	> - u -   > u - u -   > - u -
Alit�bus atque † c�nibus homicid- d(am) H�ctorem	> u - u -   u - u - u   > - u -
Vect�b�r humeris † t�n�c eg(o) ini- mici eques	> - u - u   > - u - u   > - u -
Pavid�mque lepor(em) et † adve- nam laqueo gruem, Hor.	w - u - u   u - u -   w - u -

Anacrystic Scheme:       $\textcircled{u} : -\textcircled{u} | -\textcircled{>} | -\textcircled{u} | -\textcircled{>} | -\textcircled{u} | -\textcircled{u}$

NOTES.—1. The Iambic Trimeter, when kept pure, has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last, though in HORACE it is excluded from the fifth foot; the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. The Procelesusmaticus occurs only in SENeca and TERENTIUS. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character. The

fifth foot is pure in CATULLUS, but is almost always a Spondee in SEMINA and PETRONIUS.

2. Discreta at the middle of the verse is avoided. Short particles, which adhere closely to the following word, do not constitute exceptions.

*Labōrēas nec cohors Ulixel, Hor.*

*Adulterētur et columba miluō, Hor.*

In like manner explain—

*Refertque tanta grex amicus fibra, Hor.*

3. The Cesura is usually the *sēmiquāndria*, but the *sēmisēptāndria* is found also, but either with the *sēmiquāndria* or with Discreta after the second foot.

4. The *Sēndrius pūrus*, composed wholly of Iambi, is found first in CATULLUS (iv. and xxix.); also in HORACE (*Epop.*, xvi.), VERGIL (*Cat.*, 3, 4, 8), and the *Prīpīla*.

5. Of course, in the Anacrustic Scheme, the Cesura of the ordinary scheme becomes Discreta.

*Le : vis cre | pante | lympha | dēsi | lit pe | de.*

### 763. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.

*Mef renidet in domō lacinari*       $\text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} \text{ } - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} \text{ } - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U}$

*Rēgūnque pueris nō satelles ūci, Hor.*       $> \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} \text{ } \text{U} > \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} \text{ } - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z}$

*Anacrustic Scheme :*  $\text{>} : \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} | -\text{>} | \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} | -\text{U} | \text{Z} | -\text{A}$  (with Syncopē).

NOTES.—This occurs in HORACE (O., i. 4; II. 18). No resolutions are found except in the second line quoted, where *pueris* may be disyllabic (37), and the Spondee alone is used for the Iambus, mainly in the third foot. The Cesura is always *sēmiquāndria*.

### 764. Trimeter Iambicus Claudius (Chōliambus); Scazon (= Hobbler) Hippōnactēus.

*Micr Catulle déminis inéptifre, Cat.*       $\text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U}$

*Fulſere quondam cāndidi tib̄ sīlē, Cat.*       $> \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - > \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} -$

*Dominis parantur ista; serviūnt vobis, MART.*  $\text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} -$

*Anacrustic Scheme :*  $\text{>} : \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} | -\text{>} | \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} | -\text{U} | \text{Z} | \text{>}$ . Trochaic Trimeter with Anacrusis, Syncopē, and Protraction.

NOTES.—1. In the Chōliambus the rhythm is reversed at the close, by putting a Trochee or Spondee in the sixth foot. The lighter the first part of the verse, the greater the surprise. It is intended to express comic anger, resentment, disappointment.

2. This metre, introduced into Rome by MATTIUS, was used frequently by CATULLUS and MARTIAL. PERSIUS also has it in his Prologue.

3. The Dactyl is occasional in the first and third feet, the Tribrach occurs very rarely in the first, more often in the third and fourth, frequently in the second. The Spondees are found in the first and third feet; the Anapæst only in the first.

4. The Cesura is usually *sēmiquāndria*, sometimes *sēmisēptāndria*, which is regularly supported by Discreta after the second foot.

### 765. Iambic Quaternārius (Dimeter).

*Imārit aetuōsīus*       $\text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} -$

*Imbrēs nīvēque cōparat*       $> \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} - \text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} -$

*Vidāre properantēs domum*       $\text{U} \text{ } \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} \text{ } \text{U} > \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} -$

*Ast égo viciāsim rīserō, Hor.*       $> \text{U} \text{ } \text{U} - > \text{Z} \text{ } \text{U} -$

*Anacrustic Scheme:*

$$> : - > | - > | - u | - \wedge$$

**NOTE.**—This verse is constructed according to the principles which govern the Sensarius and Octonarius. It is rare in systems until the time of SENECÀ, and is usually employed as a Clansula in connection with Octonarii and Septenarii (PLAUTUS, TERENIUS), Semarii (HORACE), or Dactylic Hexameter (HORACE).

**766. Iambic Ternarius (Dimeter Catalectic).**

**Id répperi l(am) exemplum**     $> \underline{\text{u}} - > \underline{\text{u}} -$  or  $> : \underline{\text{u}} \underline{\text{u}} > \underline{\text{u}} - \wedge$

**NOTE.**—This verse is found mainly in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, and used as a Clansula to Bacchic Tetrameters (PLAUTUS), Iambic Septenarii (PLAUTUS); but twice in TERENCE (*And.*, 485; *Hec.*, 731). It is found in systems first in PETRONIUS.

**767. The Iambic Tripody Catalectic and the Dipody Catalectic** are found here and there.

Inóps amátor, *Trin.*, 256.      Bonu(s) sit bonis, *B.*, 660.

**Trochaic Rhythms.**

**768. The Trochaic Rhythm** is a descending rhythm, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented,

By the Trochee :  $\underline{\text{u}} \text{ } \text{ } ;$

By the Tribrach :  $\text{u} \text{u} \text{u} ;$

By the Spondee :  $\underline{\text{u}} \text{ } \text{ } ;$

By the Anapaest :  $\text{u} \text{u} \text{ } - ;$

By the Dactyl :  $\underline{\text{u}} \text{u} \text{ } .$

By the Procelesmaticus :  $\text{u} \text{u} \text{u} \text{u} .$

**REMARK.**—The Spondee, Anapaest, Dactyl, and Procelesmaticus are all irrational and are accordingly measured  $->$ ,  $\text{u} \text{u} >$ ,  $\text{u} \text{u}$  or  $- \text{u} \text{u}$ ,  $\text{u} \text{u} \text{u} \text{u}$ ; see 744.

**769. Trochaic Octonarius (Tetrameter Acatalectic).**

**Scheme:**  $\underline{\text{u}} > - > \underline{\text{u}} > - > | \underline{\text{u}} > - \underline{\text{u}} > - \underline{\text{u}} >$

Pároe iam camoéna vāti | pároe iam sacró furūl.—SERVIUS.

Dáte viam quā fugere licet, | fácite, tōtæ pláteas pateant, *Pl.*, *Aul.*, 407.

**NOTE.**—This verse belongs to the cantica of early Comedy. It is properly a compound of two Quaternarii. Hence Hiatus and Syllabe Anceps are admitted in the Diressis. A fourth or sixth Thesis, formed by the last syllable of a word forming or ending in a Spondee or Anapaest, was avoided, as was also a monosyllabic close. The Substitutions were allowed in all feet except the eighth, where the Tribrach is rare.

**770. Trochaic Septenarius (Tetrameter Catalectic).**

**Scheme:**  $\underline{\text{u}} > - > \underline{\text{u}} > - > \underline{\text{u}} > - \underline{\text{u}} > \underline{\text{u}} \text{u} - \wedge$

*Cr̄is amet qui nūmqu(am) am̄avit | quiqu(e) am̄avit cr̄is amet.*—**PERVIG.**  
**VEN.**

*T̄ m(e) am̄oris māgl' qu(am) honōris | sér̄v̄istī grātī.*—**ENNIV.**  
*Vāpulkr(e) ego tē vahementer | iſibeo: nō m̄ terrīte.*—**PLAUT.**

NOTES.—1. This is usually divided by a Dieresis after the fourth Arsis into two halves, with the license of a closing verse before the Dieresis; this is often supported by Dieresis after the second foot. Not unfrequently the line is divided by Cesura after the fourth Thesis, which may in this case be Anceps or have Hiatua, though not in *TERENCE*; but other critics refuse to admit such a division, and prefer Dieresis after the fifth foot. The substitutions are allowable in any foot except the seventh, which is regularly kept pure, though occasionally in early Latin a Tribrach or a Dactyl occurs even here. But the Dactyl is rare in the fourth foot.

2. The rule for the words allowable after the *sēnīquāndīa* Cesura in the *Senarius* (761, n. 5) apply here after the Dieresis, with the necessary modifications; that is, the second hemistich cannot be formed by a word occupying the fifth and the Thesis of the sixth foot, followed by a word occupying the two succeeding half feet, unless the first word is a Cretic or a Fourth Paeon.

3. In regard to the close the same rules apply as in the case of the Iambic *Senarius* (761, n. 6); in regard to the fourth and sixth Theses the rules are the same as for the *Octonarius* (760, n.).

4. The strict *Septenarius* of the later poets keeps the odd feet pure, and rigidly observes the Dieresis.

### 771. Trochaic Tetrameter *Claudus*.

*Hūne Cerēs, cibī ministra, frūgibus suis  
p̄frost,* **VARRO.**

$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

NOTE.—This verse is found only in the *Menippian Satires* of **VARRO**, and is formed, like the Iambic *Senarius Claudus*, by reversing the last two quantities.

### 772. Trochaic Quaternarius with Anacrūsis.

*Si fr̄ctus illiḡbatur orbis,* **HOR.**  $\text{—} : \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$

NOTE.—This occurs only in the *Alcaic Strophe* of **HORACE**.

### 773. Trochaic Ternarius (*Dimeter Catalectic*).

*Rēspice vērū Thēsprīō,* **PL., Ep., 3.**  $\text{—} \text{—} \rightarrow \text{—} \text{—} \wedge$   
*Nōn ebur nequ(e) afreum,* **HOR.**  $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \wedge$

NOTE.—An uncommon measure, confined mainly to early poetry and to **HORACE**; it is used as a Clausula between Tetrameters (**PLAUTUS**) and Iambic *Senarii Catalectic* (**HORACE**), or in series. The third foot was kept pure; also the others in the strict measure.

### 774. The Trochaic Tripody *A catalectic* (*Ithyphallic*).

*Qu(om) īsus est ut p̄deat,* **PLAUT.**,  $\text{—} \text{—} \rightarrow \text{—} \text{—}$

NOTE.—This is rare, and appears only in early Latin and as a Clausula, usually with Cretica. Substitutions were allowable in every foot.

775. *Trochaic Tripody Catalectic.*

*Enēu, qu(am) égo malis | pérdiū modis,*

PL., Ps., 259.

- > u u u - | - u u u -

NOTE.—This is found occasionally in early Latin ; usually two at a time, otherwise as a Clausula. When the first word is a Cretic the line may end in two Lambi.

776. *Trochaic Dipody (Monometer).*

*Nímis inépta's, PL., Rud., 681.* u u u - >

NOTE.—This is found occasionally as a Clausula with Cretic Tetrameters.

## Anapaestic Rhythms.

777. The Anapaestic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the Thesis is to the Arsis as 2 to 2. It is represented,

By the Anapaest : u - - ;

By the Spondee : - - - ;

By the Dactyl : - u - ;

By the Proceleusmaticus : u u u - .

NOTES.—1. The Anapaestic measure is not uncommon in the *Cantica* of PLAUTUS ; but it is the metre most subject to license of all the early metres. Notice especially the operation of the Iambic Law (716, 717) ; the common occurrence of Synizesis, of Diastole, and less often of Syncopé, etc.

2. Strict Anapaestic lines after the model of the Greek are found only in VARRO, SENECA, and later authors.

778. *Anapaestic Octōnārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic), and Anapaestic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).*

<i>Hostib[us] victis, civib[us] salvis   r[es] plā-</i>	- u - - - u - -
<i>cida, p[er]dib[us] p[er]fectis, Pers., 753.</i>	- u - - - u - -
<i>Septūmās eas(e) aedīs à portā   ub(i)</i>	- u - - - - - -
<i>ill(e) hábitat lēnō quo iūssit, Ps., 597.</i>	u u u - - - - - -
<i>Ait illam miseram, crūcif[er] (i) et lacru-</i>	u - - - - - - - -
<i>māntem s(e) adflictare, PL., M.G., 1032.</i>	u u - - - - - - - -
<i>Erit ét tib(i) ókoptät(um) ótinget   bo-</i>	u u - - - - - - - -
<i>n(um) hab(e) ánimū nō formidā, PL.,</i>	u u u - - - - - - - -
<i>M.G., 1011.</i>	Λ

NOTES.—1. These have regularly the Diæresis after the fourth foot, dividing the line into Quaternarii. Before the Diæresis, the licenses of a closing foot (Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps) are occasionally found.

2. In the Septenarius the seventh Thesis may be resolved, but the resolution of the eighth in the Octonarius is avoided.

779. *Anapaestic Trimeter Catalectic.*

*Perspiciō nihil mēam vōs grātiam fācere,*

PL., *Circ.*, 155.

- u - - u - - - - - - u - - Λ

NOTE.—This verse is very rare, and is denied by some critics ; it has the same treatment as the Septenarius.

780. *Anapaestic Quaternarius (Dimeter Acatalectic).*

Venient annis   saecula seris	U U Z — — —
Quibus Oceanus   vincula rerum	U U Z U U —
Laxet et ingens   pateat tellus	— U U — — U Z
Tethysque novae   detegat orbem	— Z U U —
Nec sit terris   ultima Thule.—SEN. TRAG.	— Z — — —

NOTE.—This verse avoids resolution of the fourth Thesis: Syllaba Anceps and Hiatus are rare.

781. *Anapaestic Dimeter Catalectic (Paroemiac).*

Voluere pede corpore pulcher	U U Z U U — U U Z U
Linguis catus ore canorus	— Z U U — U U Z U
Vix membra magis quam	— Z U U — U U Z U
Functum laudare decessit.—AUSON.	— Z — — U U Z U

NOTES.—1. This verse is not common except at the close of a system of Anapaestic Acatalectic Dimeters. It allows in early Latin resolution of the third Thesis.

2. Latin Anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek Anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek Anapæst was an anacrusic dactylic measure or march (in  $\frac{2}{3}$  time). Hence the use of Pauses to bring out the four bars.

Paroemiacus: *Anacrusic Scheme.*

Veluere pede corpore pulcher	U U : — U U   — U U   —   —
Dimeter Acatalectic: <i>Anacrusic Scheme.</i>	^

Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum	U U : — U U   —   U U —   —
The Arses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.	

782. *Anapaestic Dipody (Monometer Acatalectic).*

Omnis pars sum, PL., Min., 365	— U U —
--------------------------------	---------

NOTE.—This verse is found in anapaestic systems between Anapaestic Dimeters.

## Dactylic Rhythms.

783. The Dactylic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis ( $2 = 2$ ).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl:  $\text{—} \text{U} \text{U}$ . Often, also, by the Spondee:  $\text{—} \text{—}$ .

784. *Dactylic (Heroic) Hexameter.*—The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two Dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a Spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the Dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest Hexameter contains five Dactyls and one Spondee (or Trochœe)—in all, seventeen syllables; the shortest in use, five Spondees and one Dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables.

bles. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of caesural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

<i>Scheme:</i> <u>—</u>   <u>—</u>   <u>—</u>   <u>—</u>   <u>—</u>   <u>—</u>   <u>—</u>	(—)
1. Ut fugiunt aquilæ + timidiſſima   turba columbae. Ov.	
2. At tuba terribili + sonitu + procul   aere canorū. VERE.	
3. Quadrupedante putrem + sonitu + quatit + ungula campum. VERE.	Five Dactyla.
4. Cum mediū celerēs + revolant   ex sequire mergi. VERE.	
5. Västius insurgens + decimae   ruit   impetus undae. Ov.	
6. Et reboat rancum + regis + cita   barbara   bombum. LUCR.	Four Dactyla.
7. Muta metu terram + genibus + summissa petebat. LUCR.	
8. Inter cunctantes + occidit + moribunda ministra. VERE.	
9. Më turbata volent + rapidis + lüdibria ventis. VERE.	Three Dactyls.
10. Versa qu(e) in obnixõe + urgenter   cornua vistõ. VERE.	
11. Procescit longe + fiammantia   moenia mundi. LUCR.	Two Dactyla.
12. Portam vi multis + converso   cardine torquet. VERE.	
13. Tect(um) august(um) ingens + centum sublime columnis. VERE.	One Dactyl.
14. Olli respondit + Rex Albas Longa. ENNIUS.	No Dactyl.
15. Aut levæ ocreæ + lento + dicunt argentõ. VERE.	
16. Sunt apud infernos + tot milia formosorum. PROP.	
17. Atriaeque Alpæ + et nubifer   Appenninus. Ov.	Spondeic Verses.
18. Preceubuit viridi-   qu(e) in litore   conspicitur-sis. VERE.	
19. Parturiunt montes + nascetur   ridiculous-mus. HOR.	Monosyllabic ending.
10                          + 6 = 16                          8	
20. Nascere, praeque diem+veniens age,   Lucifer, alnum. VERE.	Semiquin. and Bucolic.
21. Instigem pietate + virum + tot adire labores. VERE.	Third Trochee and Semisept.
22. Et nigrae violae + sunt   et vacinia   nigra. VERE.	Split in half.
23. Sparas   hastis   longis   campus   splendor et horret. EN.	Shivered.
24. Quamvis sint sub aqua sub aqua maledicere tentant. Ov.	a - sound.
25. Më m(ë) adsum qui fec(I) in më converte ferrum. VERE.	e - sound.
26. Discissõe nudiõe laniabant dentibus artus. VERE.	s - sound.

NOTES.—1. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the Thesis.

2. The principal Cæsura is the *semiquindria* or *penthemimeral*, i. e., after the Thesis of the third foot, or Masculine Cæsura of the third foot; the next is the *semiespländria* or *hepthemimeral*, after the Thesis of the fourth foot; but usually supplemented by the *semitemeraria* in the Thesis of the second or by one after the second Trochee; then the Feminine Cæsura of the third foot, the so-called *Third Trochee*, which is less used among the Romans than among the Greeks. As Latin poetry is largely rhetorical, and the Cæsura is of more importance for recitation than for singing, the Roman poets are very exact in the observance of these pauses.

In verses with several Cesurae, the *sēmisep̄andria* outranks the *sāmigandria*, if it precedes a period, and the latter does not, or if it is perfect and the latter is imperfect (i.e., formed by tmesis or by elision); it also as a masculine Cesura outranks the Third Trochee as a feminine. In other cases there may be doubt as to the principal Cesura.

3. The Dieresis which is most carefully avoided is the one after the third foot, especially if that foot ends in a Spondee, and the verse is thereby split in half.

Examples are found occasionally, and if the regular Cesura precedes, the verse is not positively faulty.

*Hic lacrimis vitam + damus | — et miserēscimus ultr̄s.*—*VANE.*

It is abominable when no other Cesura proper is combined with it.

*Poeni | p̄vertortēs | omnia | circumourent.*—*ENNIIUS.*

On the other hand the Dieresis at the end of the fourth foot divides the verse into proportionate parts (sixteen and eight *morae*, or two to one), and gives a graceful trochaic movement to the hexameter. This is called the Bucolic Cesura, and while common in Greek, is not so in Latin even in bucolic poetry. *JUVENAL*, however, is fond of it, showing one in every fifteen verses.

*Itē domum saturae | venit Hesperus | Itē capellae.*—*VRE.*

4. Verses without Cesura are very rare; a few are found in *ENNIIUS* (see No. 23) and *LUCILIUS*. *HORACE* uses one designedly in *A.P.*, 263.

5. Elision is found most often in *VERGIL* (one case in every two verses) and least often in *LUCAN* (leaving out *ENNIIUS* and *CLAUDIAN*). *CATULLUS*, *JUVENAL*, *HORACE*, *OVID* stand about midway between these two extremes. It is very rare in the Thesis of the first foot, and is found oftener in the following order: the Thesis of the second foot, the Arsis of the fourth, the Arsis of the first, the Thesis of the third.

6. Simple Hiatus is very rare in lines composed wholly of Latin words, except at the principal Cesura; it is found after a final short syllable (excluding -m) but twice (*V.*, *Ec.*, II. 53; *A.*, I. 405); after a long monosyllable (omitting Interjections *o* and *ū*) but once (*V.*, *A.*, IV. 235). But before the principal Cesura, or if the line contains a Greek word, examples are not very uncommon. *VERGIL* has altogether about forty cases; *HORACE* shows two cases (*S.*, I. 1, 108; *Epod.*, 13, 3); *CATULLUS* two in the Hexameter of the Elegiac Distich (66, 11; 107, 1); *PROPERTIUS* one (III. 7, 49).

7. Of Semi-hiatus *VERGIL* shows some ten examples at the close of the Dactyl, but all of Greek words except *A.*, III. 211; *Ec.*, 3, 79; there are occasional examples elsewhere, as in *PROPERTIUS*, *HORACE*, etc. There are also several examples of Semi-hiatus after a monosyllable in the first short of the Dactyl, as: *CAT.*, XVII. 1; *V.*, *A.*, VI. 507; *HOR.*, I. 9, 38. Hiatus after *nunc* occurs in *HOR.*, *S.*, II. 2, 28.

8. *VERGIL* is fond of Diastole, showing fifty-seven cases, all except three (*A.*, III. 464, 703; XII. 648) of syllables ending in a consonant; *HORACE*, in *Satires* and *Epistles*, has eleven, once only of a vowel (*S.*, II. 3, 23); *CATULLUS*, three; *PROPERTIUS*, three; *TIBULLUS*, four; *MARTIAL* (in the Distich), two; *VANE* also lengthens *que* sixteen times, but only when *que* is repeated in the verse, and before two consonants or a double consonant (except *A.*, III. 91); *OVID* exercises no such care.

9. A short syllable formed by a final short vowel remains short before two consonants, of which the second is not a liquid (mainly sc, sp, st), especially in the fifth foot, less often in the first. *LUCILIUS*, *LUCRETIUS*, and *ENNIIUS* have numerous examples of this; *VERGIL* but one case (*A.*, XI. 309), except before s; *HORACE* has eight cases in the *Satires*; *PROPERTIUS* six; *TIBULLUS* two cases, one before *amaragdos*.

10. A Hexameter should close (a) with a disyllable preceded by a polysyllable of at least three syllables, or (b) with a trisyllable preceded by a word of at least two syllables. The preposition is proclitic to its case. Exceptions to this rule are common in early Latin, but decrease later. Thus *ENNIIUS* shows fourteen per cent. of exceptional lines. In later times artistic reasons sometimes caused the employment even of a monosyllable at the end (see exs. 18, 19).

11. Spondalic lines are exceptional in *ENNIIUS* and *LUCRETIUS*, more common in

CATULLUS, rare in VERGIL, OVID, HORACE, never in TIBULLUS. The stricter poets required that in this case the fourth foot should be a Dactyl, and then the two last feet were usually a single word. Entirely Spondaic lines are found in ENNIUS (three cases, as *Aene.* i. 66, x.) and CAT. (116, 8).

12. ENNIUS shows three peculiar cases of the resolution of the Theasis in the Dactyl, *Ann.*, 267; *Sat.*, 53 and 59.

18. Hypermetrical verses running into the next by Synapheia are rare; e.g., LUOR., v. 846; CAT., 64, 298; 115, 5. VREEL has twenty cases, usually involving que or ve, but twice -m (A., VII. 160; G., I., 295); three other cases are doubtful. HORACE has two cases (in the *Satires*), OVID three, VALERIUS FLACCUS one. HORACE has also four cases of two verses united by tmesis of a compound word.

14. Pure dactylic lines are rare ; the most usual forms of the first four feet of the stictic measure are these : **ssss**, 15 per cent. ; **ddss**, 11.8 per cent. ; **ddss**, 11 per cent. ; **ssts**, 10 per cent. The most uncommon are **ssdd**, 1.9 per cent. ; **dddd**, 2 per cent. The proportion of Spondee to Dactyl in the first four feet varies from 65.8 per cent. of Spondee in **CATULLUS** to 45.2 per cent. in **OVID**. The following statements are from Drobisch : (a) Excepting **ENNIVS**, **CICERO**, and **SILIUS ITALICUS**, Latin poets have more Dactyls than Spondees in the first foot. (b) Excepting **LUCRETIUS**, more Spondees in the second. (c) Excepting **VALERIUS FLACCUS**, more Spondees in the third. (d) Without exception, more Spondees in the fourth.

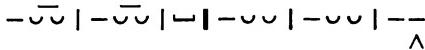
15. Much of the beauty of the Hexameter depends on the selection and arrangement of the words, considered as metrical elements. The examples given above have been chosen with especial reference to the picturesque effect of the verse. Monosyllables at the end of the Hexameter denote surprise; anapaestic words, rapid movement, and the like.

Again, the Hexameter may be lowered to a conversational tone by large masses of Spondees, and free handling of the *Cäsura*. Compare the Hexameters of Horace in the *Odes* with those in the *Sutres*.

**785. Elegiac Pentameter (*Catalectic Trimeter repeated*).**

The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Pen-themmers, *the first of which admits Spondees, the second does not*. There is a fixed Diæresis in the middle of the verse, as marked above, which is commonly supplemented by the *sõmiternâria Cæsura*. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement: —  $\cup\cup$ , —  $\cup\cup$ , —  $\cup$ ,  $\cup\cup-$ ,  $\cup\cup-$ ; and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of  $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2}$  Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, amatory, epigrammatic poetry.

The musical measurement of the Pentameter is as follows :



This shows why neither Syllabæ Anceps nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diæresis, and explains the preference for length by nature at that point.

Át dolor fin lacrimás | vérterat ómne

merum, Tib.

Mé legat ét lœctó | cármine dóctus  
amét. Ov.

At nunc bárbariés | grándis habére  
nihil. Qv.

Cóncessum nullum | lige redit iter,  
PROB

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a Clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich. Consequently the sense should not run into the following Hexameter (exceptions rare) :

Saep(e) ego tentavi cūris dōpellere vīnō  
At dolor in lacrimās | verterat omne merum, TIB.  
Ingeniū quondam fuerat pretiūs aurō  
At nunc barbarīe | grandis habēre nihil, Ov.  
Pēr erat inferior versus : risisse Cupidō  
Dicitur atque finū | surripuisse pedem, Ov.  
Saep(e) ego cum dominas dulcē & limine dūrō  
Agnōdoō vōdōs | haec negat esse domi, TIB.

NOTES.—1. In the first two feet of the Pentameter, which alone can suffer variation, the forms are as follows : ss, 46 per cent.; dd, 24.5 per cent.; ss, 16 per cent.; sd, 13.5 per cent. CATULLUS, however, has ss, 34.5 per cent.

2. Ellision is rare, especially in the second hemistich. When it occurs it is generally in the first Aesis or second Thesis, and usually affects a short vowel or -m. CATULLUS shows the greatest proportion of examples, OVID the smallest. Except in CATULLUS and LYGDAMUS there are fewer cases of Ellision in the Pentameter than in the Hexameter.

3. Ellision and Diastolé in the Dieresis are rare. CATULLUS especially, and PROPERTIUS occasionally, have Ellision. PROPERTIUS and MARTIAL show each two cases of Diastolé (PROP., II. 8, 8 ; II. 24, 4 ; MART., IX. 101, 4 ; XIV. 77, 3).

4. A final short vowel before two consonants, one of which is a liquid or s, is lengthened twice in TIBULLUS, and remains short once in PROPERTIUS (TIB., I. 5, 28 ; I. 6, 34 ; PROP., IV. 4, 48).

5. Dialysis occurs in compounds of solvō and volvō; ss, CAT., 66, 74 ; TIB., I. 7, 2, etc.

6. In the strict handling of the Pentameter by OVID, the rule was that it should close with a disyllable. So in his *Amores*, OVID shows no example of any other ending ; and in his *Tristia* the proportion is one in one hundred and forty lines. In earlier times, however, there was no especial avoidance of polysyllabic endings, though more are found in CATULLUS than in any other author. Peculiar is PROPERTIUS, who, while almost equalling CATULLUS in his disregard of the law of the disyllabic ending in the first book, equals the *Tristia* of OVID in the observance of it in his fourth. With disyllabic ending the prevailing forms of the second Hemistich are — u u, — u, u —, u — —, u — —, u —, but TIBULLUS and OVID, and in less degree CATULLUS, employ quite often — u u — —, u — and —, u u, — u, — —.

### 786. Dactylic Tetrameter Acat. (*metrum Alcmāniūm*).

Nōno decet sāt viridā nitidām caput	— u u — u u — u u — u u
Pallida mōrs aquō pulsāt pede	— u u — — — — — —
Vītae sūmma brevīs spēm nōs vetat	— — — — — — — — — —

This verse occurs mainly in combination with an *Ithyphallic* to form the *Greater Archilochian* verse ; occasionally in stichic composition in SENECA ; also in TER., *And.*, 625.

### 787. Dactylic Tetrameter Cat. in Dissyllabum (*Archilochium*).

Aūt Ephesōn himarīsve Corīnthī	— u u — u u — u u — u —
ō fortē pēlōraque pāsī	— — — — — — — — — —
Mānstrēm cohībēnt Archīyta, Hor	— — — — — — — — — —

NOTE.—This line, which only occurs in the *Alemanian System*, may also be looked upon as an A catalectic Tetrameter with a spondaic close.

**788. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Syllabam (Lesser Archilochian).**

Púlvis et timbra sumfis, HOR.

— u u — u u —

NOTE.—This line occurs mainly in the first three *Archilochian Strophes*.

**789. Dactylic Dimeter Catalectic in Dissyllabum (Adōnic).**

Térruit úrbem, HOR.

— u u — u —

NOTE.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logædic, and will recur under that head (790). It occurs mainly in the *Sapphic stanza*, and at the close of series of Sapphic Hendecasyllabica in *SENeca*.

**Logædic Rhythms.**

**790. The Logædic Rhythm** is a peculiar form of the Trochaic rhythm, in which the Arsis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary Trochee.

Instead of the Trochee, the cyclic Dactyl or the irrational Trochee may be employed. This cyclic Dactyl is represented in morae by  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , 1; in music, by  $\text{D}\text{D} = \frac{1}{2}\text{G}, \frac{1}{2}\text{G}, \frac{1}{2}$ .

When Dactyls are employed, the Trochee preceding is called a Basis, or *Tread*, commonly marked  $\times$ . If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. Instead of the Trochee, an Iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncopé are also found.

REMARKS.—1. Logædic comes from *λόγος*, *prose*, and *ἀοιδή*, *song*, perhaps because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.

2. Dactyls are usually, but not necessarily, employed.

**No Dactyl.**

**791. Aleaic Enneasyllabic.**

Sí fræctus illibetetur orbis, HOR.

∨ : — u — > — u — u

NOTE.—The Anacrusis should be long. *Horace* shows no exceptions in the fourth book and very few in the first three. The regular Cæsura is the *semiquintaria*.

**One Dactyl.**

**792. Adōnic.**

Térruit úrbem, HOR.

— u | — > |

NOTE.—Elision is not allowed in this verse. As far as its formation is concerned, it should consist either of a disyllable + a trisyllable, or the reverse. Proclitics and enclitics go with their principals.

793. Aristophanic (*Choriambic*).

Lýdia díc per ómnēs, HOR.

~ ~ | ~ ~ | ~ | -

Note.—This verse occurs mainly in the lesser *Sapphic* Strophe of HORACE.

^

## One Dactyl, with Basis.

## 794. Pherecratic.

Nigris aequora vénitis, HOR.

x &gt; | ~ ~ | ~ | -

Note.—This verse occurs in the fourth *Aesciapiadian* Strophe of HORACE ; also in CATULLUS (XVII.) and the *Prípēta*. No Elision is allowed by HORACE, and there is no regular Cæsura.

## 795. Glyconic.

Emfrábitur insoláns, HOR.

x &gt; | ~ ~ | ~ | -

Note.—This occurs in the second, third, and fourth *Aesciapiadian* strophes of HORACE ; also in CATULLUS (XVII.) and the *Prípēta*. There is generally the *similiandria* Cæsura ; occasionally instead of it a Second Trochea. Elision of long syllables is very rare in HORACE ; Elision of a short before the long of the Dactyl more often. HORACE also shows occasional liberties, such as Diastolé (O., III. 24, 5), Dialysis (O., I. 23, 4), and lines ending with monosyllables (O., I. 3, 19 ; I. 19, 18 ; IV. I, 38).796. Phalaecean (*Hendecasyllabic*).

Pásser mórtuus ést mæsé púllæe.      x  
 Áridí modo pímio(e) éxpoltíum      - > }  
 Tuaé Léshia sint satís supérque. CAT. . : - } ~ ~ | ~ ~ | ~ ~ | - >

Notes.—1. This verse, introduced into Latin by LAEVITIUS, was used very often by CATULLUS, MARTIAL, PLINY MINOR, PETRONIUS, and STATIUS, as well as in the *Prípēta* and elsewhere.2. In Greek the Basis was not unfrequently an Iambus. So, too, in CATULLUS, but the tendency in Latin was to make it a Spondee ; thus, in the *Prípēta*, PETRONIUS, and MARTIAL it is always so, while STATIUS has but one case of a Trochee, and AUSONIUS but one of an Iambus.3. The principal Cæsura is the *similiandria* ; but CATULLUS uses also almost as frequently Discrepancy after the second foot. Occasionally there is a Discrepancy after the third foot, supplemented by a Second Trochee Cæsura.4. Elision is very common in CATULLUS ; in the *Prípēta*, MARTIAL, and later it is very rare, if we exclude Aphæresis from consideration. Hardening (723) is occasional, and CATULLUS shows a few cases of Semi-hiatus. A monosyllabic ending is very rare, with the exception of *es* and *est*.

5. CATULLUS, in 55, apparently shows a mixture of regular Phalaeceans and spurious Phalaeceans in which the Dactyl is supplanted by a Spondee. The poem is still under discussion.

## One Dactyl, with Double Basis.

797. Sapphic (*Hendecasyllabic*).

Ađidét civés † acuissé fírrum, HOR. - ~ | - &gt; | - † ~ ~ | - ~ | - ~

Notes.—1. In the Greek measure, often retained in CATULLUS, the Dactyl is measured ~ ~ ; in HORACE, owing to a strong Cæsura after the long it is regularly — ~ ~.

Further, CATULLUS, like the Greeks, employed occasionally a Trochee in the second foot ; HORACE made it a rule to employ only a Spondee there.

2. The regular Cæsura in Latin is the *sēmiterndria* ; but the *Third Trochee* (784, N. 2) is found not unfrequently in CATULLUS and HORACE, but not later. The usage of HORACE is peculiar in this respect : In the first and second books there are seven cases in two hundred and eighty-five verses ; in the third none at all ; in the fourth twenty-two in one hundred and five verses ; in the *Carmen Seculare* nineteen in fifty-seven verses.

3. Ellision is very common in CATULLUS, but occurs in HORACE only in about one verse in ten. Later usage tends to restrict Ellision. Licenses are extremely rare in the classical period. So HORACE shows one example of Diastolé (*O.*, II. 6, 14). Monosyllabic endings are not common, but the word is usually attached closely with what precedes. The last syllable is regularly long.

4. SENECA shows some peculiarities : occasionally a Dactyl in the second foot, or a Spondee in the third ; occasionally also Dialysis.

#### One Dactyl with Double Basis and Anacrusis.

##### 798. *Alcaic (Greater) Hendecasyllabic.*

Vidēs ut ált̄ | st̄t n̄ive cāndidūm > : x u | x > | x u | x u | x A  
S̄rfactō n̄eo iam | s̄ustineānt̄ onf̄s, HOR.

NOTES.—1. The second Basis is always a Spondee ; the few exceptions having been emended. The Anacrusis is regularly long ; HORACE shows no exception in the fourth book and very few in the first three. The last syllable may be long or short.

2. The regular Cæsura is a Dieresis after the second foot ; HORACE shows but two exceptions in six hundred and thirty-four verses (*O.*, I. 37, 14 ; IV. 14, 17). A few others show imperfect Cæsura, as *O.*, I. 16, 21 ; I. 37, 5 ; II. 17, 21.

3. In regard to Ellision, the facts are the same as in the case of the Sapphic.

4. Licenses are not common : Diastolé occurs in H., *O.*, III. 5, 17 ; Hardening (728) occurs in H., *O.*, III. 4, 41 ; III. 6, 6. Tmesis is not unfrequent in forms of quicunque (H., *O.*, I. 9, 14 ; I. 16, 2 ; I. 27, 14).

#### Two Dactyls.

##### 799. *Alcaic (Lesser) or Decasyllabic.*

Vértere fūneribūs triúmphōs, HOR.      x u | x u | x u | x >

NOTE.—The Cæsura is regularly the *sēmiterndria*, occasionally the Second Trochee. Ellision occurs a little less often in this measure than in the Hendecasyllabic. The last syllable is usually long. Diastolé occurs in H., *O.*, II. 13, 16.

In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logœdic character of the Greater Archilochian :

##### 800. *Archilochian (Greater) = Dactylic Tetrameter and Trochaic Tripody.*

x u u | x u u | x u u | x u u | x u | x u | x u  
S̄olvitur sc̄ris h̄iems gr̄at̄a vice | v̄bris ét Favōni, HOR.

If measured logically, the two shorts of the Dactyl must be reduced in value to one ( $\omega = \cup$ ), and the logacedic scheme is

-> | -> | -> | -> | -> | -> | -> | -> | ->

## Logœdic tetrapody + Logœdic tetrapody with Syncopé.

**NOTE.**—Dieresis is always found after the fourth foot, which is always Dactylic. The principal Cesura is in the *anapæstria*. In the third foot a Spondee is preferred, whereas the Greek model has more often the Dactyl.

**801. Choriambic Rhythms.**—When a logacedic series is syncopated, apparent choriambi arise. What is | ~ . | — | seems to be — . — . Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin, except, perhaps, in the single line *Pl.*, *Men.*, 110.

802. *Asclepiadēan* (Lesser).

This verse is formed by a Catalectic Pherecratean followed by a Catalectic Aristophanic.

## Mácoenás atávus | ódite régibús, HOR. x -> | ~u | L | ~u | ~u | ~u | ~u

NOTES.—1. There should be Diæresis, complete or incomplete (*i.e.*, weakened by Ellipsis), between the two halves. Only two exceptions are cited (*H., O., II. 12, 25; IV. 8, 17*). The *Cesura* is regularly the *semiterndria* in HORACE, less often the Second Trochee.

2. Elision occurs about as often as in the Elegiac Pentameter. It occurs most often in the first Dactyl and in the stichic measure. The final syllable may be short or long; but a monosyllable is rare. Licenses are likewise rare, as Diastolé (*H.*, *O.*, I., 26).

803. *Asclepiadēan* (Greater).

Núllam Váre sacrí | vīte prius | sōveris árborem, Hor.

$\frac{x}{z} > |uv|w|uv|w|uv|wv|zv|z$

NOTE.—This verse differs from the preceding by having a Catalectic Adonic (738) inserted between the two halves. Diacresis always separates the parts in HORACE. The rules of Ellision are the same as in the preceding verse.

**804. Sapphic (Greater).**

Té deða örð Sybarín | cár properð amándð, Hor.

$\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} > \frac{1}{2}$

NOTE.—This verse differs from the lesser Sapphic by the insertion of a catalectic Adonic. It is found only in HORACE (*O.*, i. 8). Diereesis always occurs after the fourth foot, and there is also a *similis undula* Casmura.

**805. Priāpēan (*Glyconic* + *Pherecratēan*).**

Hunc luctum tibi dedito | consecroque Priape, CAT.  
x > | x u | x u | x | x > | x u | x u | x | x

NOTE.—Discrep always follows the Glyconic, but neither Hiatus nor Syllaba Anceps is allowable. The verse occurs in *Cat.* 17 and *Priap.* 85.

## **Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms.**

**806.** These passionate rhythms are found not unfrequently in PLAUTUS and occasionally elsewhere. They both belong to the Quinquepartite or Five-Eighths class.

The distribution of the Crēticus is 3 + 2 morae.

The metrical value of the Crēticus is —— (Amphimacer).

For it may be substituted the First Pæon, —○○, or the Fourth Pæon, ○○—.

**NOTE.**—Double resolution in the same foot is not allowable, and there is rarely more than one resolution in a verse. Instead of the middle short an irrational long is sometimes found.

807. Tetrameter Acatalectic.

<sup>(1)</sup> Ex bonis péssum(1) ét frauduléntissimi, Pl., *Capt.*, 235.

NOTE.—Resolution is not allowed at the end nor in the second foot immediately before a *Crescere*. The *Arsis* immediately preceding (*i.e.*, of the second and fourth foot) is regularly pure.

### 808. Tetrameter Catalectic.

Dá mi(hi) hōc mēl meūm sī m(8) amās s(I)aúdēs, PL., *Trin.*, 244.

NOTE.—The existence of such lines is disputed, but the balance of authority seems to be in favor of recognizing them.

809. *Dimeter Acatalectic.*

Nóscet sált(em) húnc quis ést, Pl., Ps., 262.

NOTE.—This verse is found usually at the close of a Cretic system, or with Trochaic Septenarii. It follows the same rules as the Tetrameter, that is, the last long is not resolved and the second Arsis is kept pure.

**810.** *Acatalectic Cretic Trimeters* are rare and not always certain.

Compare PL., *Trin.*, 267, 269, 271; *Ps.*, 1119; *Most.*, 338; *Catalectic Trimeters* and *Dimeters* are even more uncertain. Compare PL., *Trin.*, 275; *Truc.*, 121.

**811.** The Bacchius has the following measure :  $\text{u-} \text{z-} \text{z-}$ ,  $= 1 + 2 + 2$  morae () , or if the descending form  $\text{z-} \text{z-} \text{u}$  be regarded as the normal one  $2 + 2 + 1$  morae ().

For the long two shorts are sometimes substituted. On the other hand, an irrational long may be used for the short, and occasionally two shorts are also thus used.

### 812. Bacchic Tetrameter.

*Quibás née locást illu' née spés parfáta*  $\text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{S}$   
*Misérleordíor nilla més feminárüm*  $\text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{S}$

NOTE.—In this verse there is usually a Cæsura after either the second or third Iambus; rarely Diæresis after the second Bacchius. The Arsis is kept pure in the second and fourth feet if the following long closes a word. Not more than one dissyllabic Arsis is allowable. Usually there is only one resolved Theia, very rarely two, never more than three.

### 813. Dimeter Catalectic.

*Ad áetát(em) agéndám*, PL., *Trin.*, 232.  $\text{U} \text{U} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} \text{U}$

NOTE.—This is rare except at the close of a Bacchic series, to form the transition to another rhythm.

**814. Bacchic Hexameter** occurs in nine lines in a monologue in PL., *Am.*, 633–642. Hypermetric combination into systems is found in PL., *Men.*, 571 ff, and VARRO, *Sat.*, p. 195 (R.).

## Ionic Rhythm.

**815.** The Ionic Rhythm is represented by Iōnicus à māiore —— $\text{U} \text{U}$   For the Iōnicus à māiore may be substituted the Ditractaeus —— $\text{U}$ . This is called Anáclasis (*breaking-up*).

The verse is commonly anacrustic, so that it begins with the thesis  $\text{U} \text{U}$  : ——. Such verses are called Iōnici à minōre.

The second long has a strong secondary ictus.

In the early Latin, beginning with ENNIUS, the verse was used with much license. Resolution of the long syllables was common as well as the use of irrational long, and the contraction of two short syllables into a long. HORACE alone shows the pure Ionic.

The Iōnicus is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

### 816. Tetrameter Catalectic Ionic à māiore (Sótadean).

This measure, introduced by ENNIUS, was used with great freedom by the earlier poets; but a stricter handling is found in later Latin poets, as PETRONIUS, MARTIAL, etc.

Nám quam varia sín genera  
 poématōrum, BaébI,       $\underline{\text{z}}-\text{u}\text{uu}$  |  $\text{z}\text{uu}\text{uu}$  |  $\text{z}\text{u}->$  |  $\text{z}\overline{\text{A}}$   
 Quámque longē díscinct(a) ali(a)  
 fū alīs, sic nōsce.—ACCUS.  $\text{z}\text{u}->$  |  $\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}$  |  $\text{u}\text{u}\text{u}->$  |  $\text{z}\overline{\text{A}}$

Later Latin :

The most common scheme is the pure Ionic with Anacasis, especially in the third foot. Irrational longs are not used, and there is rarely more than one resolution; as :  $\text{u}\text{u}-\text{u}\text{u}$  or  $-\text{u}\text{u}\text{u}\text{u}$ .

Móllēs veteris Dæliadī manū recitā       $\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}\text{z}$   
 térrorripūs terribilēm manū bipénnum.  $\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}\text{z}$   
 —PROP.

**817.** A combination of the *Ionic à maiōre* into systems is found in LAEVIUS, who has a system of ten followed by a system of nine. Some traces of similar arrangement have been observed in the *Satires* of VARRO.

**818. Tetrameter Catalectic Ionic à minōre (Galliambic).**

This verse was introduced by VARRO in his *Menippian Satires*, and appears also in CATULLUS, 63, and in some fragments of MAECENAS.

In CATULLUS the two short syllables may be contracted (ten times in the first foot, six times in the third), and the long may be resolved, but not twice in the same Dimeter (except 63), and very rarely in the first foot of the second Dimeter (once in 91), but almost regularly in the penultimate long. Diæresis between the two Dimeters is regular. Anacasis is found in the majority of the lines ; regularly in the first Dimeter (except 18, 54, 75).

The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

*Ordinary Scheme :*

Without Anacasis :  $\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}$

With Anacasis :  $\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}-\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}-\text{u}\text{z}$ .

*Anacrustic Scheme :*

Without Anacasis :  $\text{u}\text{:z}-\text{u}\text{u}$  |  $\text{z}-\text{t}\text{u}\text{u}$  |  $\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}$  |  $\text{z}\text{-}$  |

With Anacasis :  $\text{u}\text{:z}\text{u}-\text{u}$  |  $\text{z}-\text{t}\text{u}\text{u}$  |  $\text{z}\text{u}-\text{u}$  |  $\text{z}\text{-}$  |  
 ^

Et eár(um) omni(a) adirem furi-  
 búnda latibulá       $\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}$

Quō nōs decet citatís celerfí tri-  
 pudiis       $-\text{z}\text{u}-\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}$

Itaqu(e) út domum Cybēbēs teti-  
 gfrē lassulaé       $\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}-\text{u}\text{z}-\text{u}\text{u}\text{z}\text{u}-\text{u}\text{z}$

**Super** áltá vectus Áttis olerf rate  
maríá U U Z U - U Z - U U Z U U U Z  
**Iam** iám dolest quod égl iam iám-  
que paenitét.—CAT. - Z U - U Z - - Z U - U Z

**819. Dimeter Catalectic Ionic à minore (Anacreontic).**

This verse is found first in LAEVIUS, then in SENeca, PETRONIUS, and later. Anacasis is regular in the first foot. The long syllable may be resolved, or the two shorts at the beginning may be contracted. The verse may end in a Syllaba Anceps.

Vener(em) ígitur Álm(un)m adfráns	U U S U U Z U -
Seu fémín(a)s ísve máe est	- Z U Z U Z -
It(a) ut álba Nöctilécast.	U U Z U Z U Z -

NOTE.—Owing to the similarity of the verse to the Iambic Quaternaria Catalectic it is also called the *Hemianadic*.

## **Compound Verses.**

**820. *Iambelegus* (Iambic Dimeter and Dactylic Trimeter Cat.).**

This verse occurs only in the second Archilochian Strophe of HORACE, and is often scanned as two verses:

Té vína Tórquátó móvéd | cónsule preesa med.—HOB.  
 > : z u | z > | z u | z A |  
 z u u | z u u | z A |

**821. Elegiambus (Dactylic Trimeter Cat. and Iambic Dimeter).**

This verse occurs only in the third *Archilochian Strophe* of HORACE, and is often scanned as two verses :

Désiné **imparibús** | certáre submótus pudor. — Hor.  
 ↗ ↘ ↗ ↘ ↗ ↘ |

**822. Versus Reizidius (Iambic Dimeter and Anapaestic Tripody Catalectic).**

**Redi, quō fugis nunc? téne tenē. | Quid stolidē clamās?**

**Qui(a) ad tris virōs i(am) ego d̄feram | Nōmén t̄d̄m. Qu(am) óbrem t̄**

PL. AW., 415.

$w_{20} \rightarrow v_{10} - | - v_{10} - z -$   
 $w_{10} = v_{10}, v = | - c = e =$

NOTE.—From the time of REIZ, after whom this verse has been named, it has been the subject of a great deal of discussion. In regard to the first part of the verse there

is considerable unanimity, in regard to the second opinions differ. Some regard it as an Iambic Dimeter Catalectic Syncopated ( $\cup \underline{\lambda} \cup \underline{\lambda} \underline{\lambda} \cup$ ); others as an Iambic Tripody Catalectic ( $\cup \underline{\lambda} \cup \underline{\lambda} - \wedge$ ). SPENDEL regards it as a Hypercatalectic Anapaestic Monometer, and he has been followed with a variation in the nomenclature in the above scheme. LEO regards it as Logadic. The most recent view (KLOTZ) regards it as sometimes Logadic, and sometimes Anapaestic.

**823.** 1. PLAUTUS shows several verses compounded of a Cretic Dimeter and a Catalectic Trochaic Tripody. These verses are usually, but not always, separated by Diæresis. Examples: *Ps.*, 1285, 1287.

2. Some authorities consider verses like *PL.*, *Most.*, 693, *Rud.*, 209, compounded of a Cretic Dimeter and a Clausula. Others regard them as Catalectic Cretic Tetrameters.

#### The Cantica of Early Latin.

**824.** The construction of the Cantica (in the narrow sense) of PLAUTUS and TERENCE is still a matter of dispute. Three opinions have been advanced. One looks at them as antistrophic, following the scheme A.B.B.; others hold that the scheme is A.B.A. The third view is that with some exceptions the Cantica are irregular compositions, without a fixed principle of responsion.

In TERENCE, Trochaic Octonarii are always followed by Trochaic Septenarii, and very frequently the Trochaic Septenarii are followed by Iambic Octonarii. In PLAUTUS there are long series of Cretic and Bacchic verses, and sometimes these alternate, without, however, any regular scheme, with other verses.

A Bacchic Trochaic Canticum is found in *PL.*, *Merc.*, 335-363, as follows: I. 2 Bacc. Tetram.; II. 4 Anap. Dim.; III. 1 Troch. Octon.; IV. 13 Bacc. Tetram.; V. 1 Troch. Octon.; VI. 2 Bacc. Tetram.; VII. 1 Troch. Octon.; VIII. 2 Bacc. Tetram.; IX. 2 Troch. Octon.

A Trochaic Iambic Canticum is *TER.*, *Ph.*, 153-163. A. 153-157: 2 Troch. Octon.; 1 Troch. Sept.; 1 Iamb. Octon. B. 158-163; 1 Troch. Octon.; 2 Troch. Sept.; 3 Iamb. Octon.; 1 Iamb. Quater. (Clausula).

#### The Cantica of Later Latin.

**825.** 1. The Cantica of SENECA are composed mostly in Anapaestic Dimeters, closed frequently, though not necessarily, by a Monometer. A Dactyl is common in the first and third feet. The Spondee is likewise very common, a favorite close being  $-\cup\cup-\lambda$ . The Diæresis between the Dimeters is regular. Examples: *Herc. Fur.*, 125-203. In *Ag.*, 310-407, Dimeters and Monometers alternate.

2. Iambic Dimeters, occasionally alternating with Trimeters, but usually stichic, are found occasionally; as *Med.*, 771-786.

3. Peculiar to SENECA is the use of a large variety of Logaeidic measures in his *Cantica*. So we find not unfrequently the following, in stichic repetition: Lesser Asclepiadeans, Glyconics, Sapphic Hendecasyllabics, Adonics, and other imitations of Horatian measures; but there are few traces of antistrophic arrangement.

#### Lyric Metres of Horace.

**826.** In the schemes that follow, the Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.

I. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 1. Lesser Asclepiadean Verse (802) repeated in tetrastichs.

x ->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3

O., I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

II. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 2. Glyconics (795) and Lesser Asclepiadean (802) alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

x ->   ~u   -u   -_A	4
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -u   -_A	4
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3

O., I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 3.

III. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 3. Three Lesser Asclepiadean Verses (802) followed by a Glyconic (795).

x ->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -   ~u   -u   -_A	3
->   ~u   -u   -_A	4

O., I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

IV. *Asclepiadian* Strophe No. 4. Two Lesser Asclepiadian Verses (802), a Pherecratean (794), and a Glyconic (795).

$\text{I. } \xrightarrow{x}   \sim\vee   \neg   \sim\vee   \neg\vee   -\wedge   -\wedge   \text{ I.}$ $\quad \rightarrow   \sim\vee   \neg   \sim\vee   \neg\vee   -\wedge   -\wedge  $	$\text{II. } \xrightarrow{3}   \sim\vee   \neg   \sim\vee   \neg\vee   -\wedge   -\wedge  $ $\quad \rightarrow   \sim\vee   \neg\vee   -\wedge  $
$\text{II. } \xrightarrow{4}   \sim\vee   \neg   \sim\vee   \neg\vee   -\wedge  $ $\quad \rightarrow   \sim\vee   \neg\vee   -\wedge  $	

**O.**, I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

V. *Asclepiadian* Strophe No. 5. Greater Asclepiádean (808), repeated in fours.

$\rightarrow | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \neg\vee | -\wedge |$

$\rightarrow | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \neg\vee | -\wedge |$

$\rightarrow | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \neg\vee | -\wedge |$

$\rightarrow | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \sqcup | \sim\vee | \neg\vee | -\wedge |$

O., I. II, 18; IV. 10.

VI. *Sapphic Strophe*. Three Lesser Sapphics (797), and an Adonic (792), which is merely a Clausula. In the Sapphic *HORACE* regularly breaks the Dactyl.

x	x						
-v	>	-tw	-v	-v	-v		5
x	x						
-v	>	-tw	-v	-v	-v		5
x	x						
-v	>	-tw	-v	-v	-v		5
v	v						

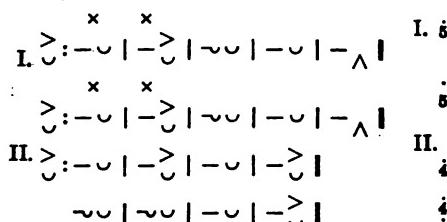
*O., I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11; Carmen Saeculare.*

NOTE.—In Greek the third and fourth verses run together to form a single verse. In Latin this is rare; one case is found in *CATULLUS*, ii. 11, and three in *HORACE*, O., i. 2, 19; 25, 11; ii. 16, 7; but the occurrence of Hiatus between the two lines in *HORACE* (O., i. 2, 47; ii. 7; ii. 31; 22, 15, etc.) may be considered as indicating that the verses were conceived as separate. Elision and Hiatus are also occasionally found in the lines. Elision, second and third: *CAT.*, ii. 22; H., O., II. a, 18; 16, 34; IV. 2, 22; third and fourth: *CAT.*, ii. 19; H., O., IV. 2, 28; C.S., 47. Hiatus, first and second: H., O., I. 2, 41; ii. 25; III. 16, 5; III. ii. 29; 27, 33; second and third: H., O., I. 2, 6; ii. 6; 25, 18; iii. 6; II. a, 6; 4, 6; III. II. 50; 27, 10.

VII. *Lesser Sapphic Strophe*. Aristophanic (793), and Greater Sapphic (804). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.



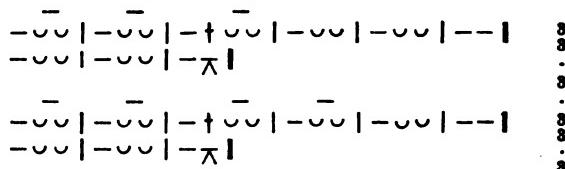
VIII. *Alcaic Strophe*. Two Alcaic verses of eleven syllables (798), a Trochaic Quaternarius with Anacrusis (772), and one Alcaic verse of ten (799).



O., I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. I, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. I, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 15, 17.

*Note*.—Elision between the verses is much more rare than in the Sapphic strophe; it occurs but twice: O., II. 3, 27; III. 29, 35. Hiatus, on the other hand, is very common.

IX. *Archilochian Strophe No. 1*. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and a Lesser Archilochian (788), two pairs to a tetrastich.



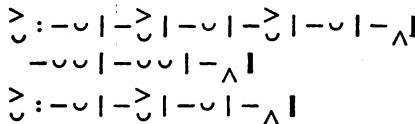
O., IV. 7.

X. *Archilochian Strophe No. 2*. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and an iambelegus (820).



*Epod.*, 13.

XI. *Archilochian* Strophe No. 8. An Iambic Trimeter (762), followed by an Elegiambus (821).



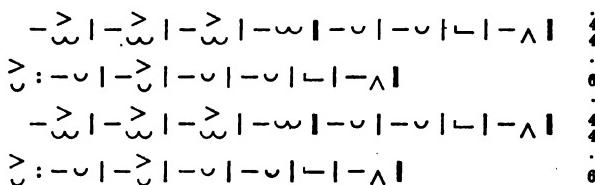
*Epod.*, II.

XII. *Archilochian* Strophe No. 4. A Greater Archilochian (800), and a Trimeter Iambic Catalectic (763). Two pairs combined to form a tetrastich.



O., I. 4.

This verse may be considered as Logacædic, thus (800) :



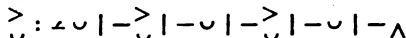
XIII. *Alomanian* Strophe. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), followed by a Catalectic Dactylic Tetrameter (787).



O., I. 7, 28; *Epod.*, 12.

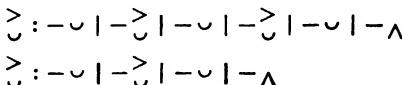
NOTE.—The Tetrameter may be considered acatalectic with a Spondee in the fourth place (787, n.).

XIV. *Iambic Trimeter* repeated (762).



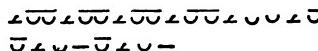
*Epod.*, 17.

XV. *Iambic Strophe*. Iambic Trimeter (762), and Dimeter (765).



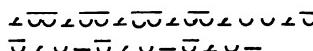
*Epod.*, 1-10.

XVI. *Pythiambic* Strophe No. 1. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), or Versus Pythius, and an Iambic Dimeter (765).



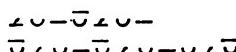
*Epod.*, 14, 15.

XVII. *Pythiambic* Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and an Iambic Trimeter (760).



*Epod.*, 16.

XVIII. *Trochaic* Strophe. A Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (772), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (768). Two pairs make a tetristich.



O., II. 18.

XIX. The *Ionic* System is found once in HORACE; it consists of ten Ionic & minōre feet, variously arranged by metrists. Some regard the system as composed of ten Tetrameters followed by a Dimeter. Others, with more probability, divide into two Dimeters followed by two Trimeters. The scheme may be made a māiore by Anacrusis.

*Ionicus à minōre scheme :*

Miserūr(um) est neque amūrī dare fidūm neque dulcī mala vinō laver(e) aut exanimārī metuentēs patruas verbera linguae	◡ ◡ - ◡ ◡ -   ◡ ◡ - ◡ ◡ -   ◡ ◡ - ◡ ◡ - ◡ ◡ -   ◡ ◡ - ◡ ◡ - ◡ ◡ -
--	--

*Ionicus à māiore scheme :*

◡ ◡ : --- ◡ ◡   ---   ^	L.   :
◡ ◡ : --- ◡ ◡   ---   ^	.         :
◡ ◡ : --- ◡ ◡   --- ◡ ◡   ---   ^	II.   :
◡ ◡ : --- ◡ ◡   --- ◡ ◡   ---   ^	.         :

O., III. 12.

## 827. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.
I. 1.....	i.	II. 1.....	viii.	III. 18.....	vi.
2.....	vi.	2.....	vi.	19.....	ii.
3.....	ii.	3.....	viii.	20.....	vi.
4.....	x.	4.....	vi.	21.....	viii.
5.....	iv.	5.....	viii.	22.....	vi.
6.....	iii.	6.....	vi.	23.....	viii.
7.....	xiii.	7.....	viii.	24.....	ii.
8.....	vii.	8.....	vi.	25.....	ii.
9.....	viii.	9.....	viii.	26.....	viii.
10.....	vi.	10.....	vi.	27.....	vi.
11.....	v.	11.....	viii.	28.....	ii.
12.....	vi.	12.....	iii.	29.....	viii.
13.....	ii.	13.....	viii.	30.....	i.
14.....	iv.	14.....	viii.	IV. 1.....	ii.
15.....	iii.	15.....	viii.	2.....	vi.
16.....	viii.	16.....	vi.	3.....	ii.
17.....	viii.	17.....	viii.	4.....	viii.
18.....	v.	18.....	xviii.	5.....	iii.
19.....	ii.	19.....	viii.	6.....	vi.
20.....	vi.	20.....	viii.	7.....	ix.
21.....	iv.	III. 1.....	viii.	8.....	i.
22.....	vi.	2.....	viii.	9.....	viii.
23.....	iv.	3.....	viii.	10.....	v.
24.....	iii.	4.....	viii.	11.....	vi.
25.....	vi.	5.....	viii.	12.....	iii.
26.....	viii.	6.....	viii.	13.....	iv.
27.....	viii.	7.....	iv.	14.....	viii.
28.....	xiii.	8.....	vi.	15.....	viii.
29.....	viii.	9.....	ii.	Carmen Saeculare	vi.
30.....	vi.	10.....	iii.	Epod. 1-10	xv.
31.....	viii.	11.....	vi.	11.....	xi.
32.....	vi.	12.....	xix.	12.....	xiii.
33.....	iii.	13.....	iv.	13.....	x.
34.....	viii.	14.....	vi.	14.....	xvi.
35.....	viii.	15.....	ii.	15.....	xvi.
36.....	ii.	16.....	iii.	16.....	xvii.
37.....	viii.	17.....	viii.	17.....	xiv.
38.....	vi.				

## APPENDIX.

### ROMAN CALENDAR.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive *mēnsis*, *month*, may or may not be expressed: (*mēnsis*) *Ianuarius*, *Februarius*, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not *Iulius* and *Augustus*, but *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnæ*), and Ides (*Idūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: *Kalendae Ianuariae*, *Nōnæ Februariae*, *Idūs Martiae*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,  
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,  
The Nones the seventh; but all besides  
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next Calends, next Nones, next Ides") the Romans used for "the day before" *pridīs* with the Acc.: *pridīs Kalendās Ianuariās*, Dec. 31; *pridīs Nōnās Ian.* = Jan. 4; *pridīs Idūs Ian.* = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium*, *quārtum*, etc., before the Accusative, so that *ante diem tertium Kal. Ian.* means "two days before the Calends of January;" *ante diem quārtum*, or *a. d. iv.*, or *iv. Kal. Ian.*, "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions *ex* and *in*: *ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Iunīas usque ad pridīs Kal. Septembrae*, from June 3 to August 31; *differre aliquid in ante diem xv. Kal. Nov.*, *to postpone a matter to the 18th of October*.

**LEAP YEAR.**—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between *a. d. vi. Kal. Mārt.* and *a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt.* It was called *a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mārt.*, so that *a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt.* corresponded to our February 28, just as in the ordinary year.

#### To turn Roman Dates into English.

**For Nones and Ides.**—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

*For Calenda.*—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. viii. *Id. Ian.* ( $13 + 1 - 8$ ) = Jan. 6; a. d. iv. *Nom. Apr.* ( $5 + 1 - 4$ ) = Apr. 2; a. d. xiv. *Kal. Oct.* ( $30 + 2 - 14$ ) = Sept. 18.

*Year.*—To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, *annus urbis conditae*). To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753.

Thus: *Cicero was born* 648, a. u. c. = 106 B.C.

*Augustus died* 767, a. u. c. = 14 A.D.

NOTE.—Before the reform of the Calendar by Julius Caesar in B.C. 46, the year consisted of 355 days, divided into twelve months, of which March, May, Quintilis (July), and October had 31 days, February 28, the remainder 29. To rectify the Calendar, every second year, at the discretion of the Pontifices, a month of varying length, called *mensis intercalaris*, was inserted after the 23d of February.

#### ROMAN SYSTEMS OF MEASUREMENT.

##### LONG MEASURE.

4 digitū	= 1 palmus.
4 palmi	= 1 pēs (11.65 in.).
6 palmi,	= 1 cubitus.
1½ pedēs {	= 1 gradus.
2½ pedēs {	= 1 passus.
5 pedēs {	= 1 stadium.
125 passus	= 1 mille passum (mile).
8 stadia	

##### SQUARE MEASURE.

100 pedēs,	{ = 1 scripulum.
quadratū	
36 scripula	= 1 clima.
4 climata	= 1 actus.
2 actus	= 1 iugerum (acre).
The iugerum	contains 28,800
sq. ft. Rom.;	
Eng. acre	= 43,560 sq. ft.

##### DRY MEASURE.

1½ cyathi	= 1 acētābulum.
2 acētābula	= 1 quārtārius.
2 quārtārii	= 1 hēmina.
2 hēminas	= 1 sextārius.
8 sextārii	= 1 sēmodius.
2 sēmodii	= 1 modius (peck).

##### Liquid Measure.

1½ cyathi	= 1 acētābulum.
2 acētābula	= 1 quārtārius.
2 quārtārii	= 1 hēmina.
2 hēminas	= 1 sextārius (pint).
6 sextārii	= 1 congius.
4 congiī	= 1 firna.
2 firnae	= 1 amphora.
20 amphorae	= 1 culleus.

#### ROMAN WEIGHTS.

3 siliquae	= 1 obolus.
2 oboli	= 1 scripulum.
2 scripula	= 1 drachma.
2 drachmae	= 1 sicilicus.

NOTES.—1. The multiples of the *uncia* were *sæcundina* (1½), *sextans* (2), *quadrans* (3), *triens* (4), *quincunx* (5), *sêmis* (6), *septunx* (7), *bê* (8), *dodrâns* (9), *dextans* (10), *defunx* (11).

2. The *libra* was also called *âs* (see below), which latter is taken as the unit in all measures, and the foregoing divisions applied to it. Hence, by substituting *âs* for *âgerum*, we have *defunx* as  $\frac{1}{11}$  of a *âgerum*, *dextans* as  $\frac{1}{10}$ , *etc.*

### ROMAN MONEY.

The unit was originally the *âs* (which was about a pound of copper), with its fractional divisions. This gradually depreciated, until, after the second Punic war, the unit had become a *sæstertius*, which was nominally  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*.

$$2\frac{1}{2} \text{ asses} = 1 \text{ sæstertius} \text{ (about } 25 \text{ denarii) } = 1 \text{ aureus (nummus).}$$

4 cts.).      1000 sæstertii = 1 sæstertium

$$2 \text{ sæstertii} = 1 \text{ quinarius.} \quad (\$42.94 \text{ to Augustus's time}).$$

$$2 \text{ quinarii} = 1 \text{ denarius.}$$

NOTE.—*Sæstertium* (which may be a fossilized Gen. Pl. = *sæstertiôrum*) was modified by distributions (rarely by cardinals), thus: *bina sæstertia*, 2000 sestertii. But in multiples of a million (decimôns centôna milia sæstertium, i.e., *sæstertiôrum*), *centôna milia* was regularly omitted, and *sæstertium* declined as a neuter singular. HS stands as well for *sæstertius* as *sæstertium*; and the meaning is regulated by the form of the numeral; thus HS *viginti* (XX) = 20 *sæstertii*; HS *viçima* (XX) = 20 *sæstertia*, i.e., 20,000 *sæstertii*.

### ROMAN NAMES.

The Roman usually had three names; a *nômen*, indicating the *gêns*, a *cognômen*, indicating the *familia* in the *gêns*, and the *praenômen*, indicating the individual in the *familia*.

The *nômina* all end in *ius*. The *cognômina* have various forms, in accordance with their derivation. For example: Q. Mâcius Scaevola (from *scaevos*, *left hand*).

The *praenômina* are as follows, with their abbreviations:

Aulus,	A.	Lâcius,	L.	Quintus,	Q.
Appius,	App.	Mârus,	M.	Servius,	Ser.
Gâius,	C.	Mânius,	M'.	Sextus,	Sex.
Gnaeus,	Cn.	Mâmercus,	Mam.	Spurius,	Sp.
Decimus,	D.	Numerius,	Num.	Titus,	T.
Kaeso,	K.	Pâblius.	P.	Tiberius,	Ti., Tib.

NOTES.—1. Adoption from one *gêns* into another was indicated by the termination *-ianus*. From the fourth century A.D. a second *cognômen* was also called an *agnomen*.

2. Daughters had no peculiar *praenômina*, but were called by the name of the *gêns* in which they were born. If there were two, they were distinguished as *major* and *minor*; if more than two, by the numerals *tertia*, *quarta*, etc.

## INDEX OF VERBS.

### INDEX OF VERBS.

[The References are to the Sections.]

- Ab-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
ab-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgi, -āctum, 160, 1.  
ab-iciō (IACIÖ), ere, -īci, -iectum, 180, 3.  
ab-luō, ere, -lui, -lūtum, 162.  
ab-nuō, ere, -nul (-nuitūrus), 162.  
ab-oleō, ēre, ēvī, itum, 137, b.  
ab-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -olitum, 140.  
ab-ripiō (RAPIÖ), -ere, -ripul, -rep-tum, 146.  
abs-condō (DÖ), ere, -di (-didi), ditum, 151, 1.  
ab-sistō, -ere, -stīl, 154, 1.  
ab-sum, -esse, ab-ful, ă-ful, 117.  
ac-cendō, -ere, -cndl, -censum, 180, 2.  
ac-cidō (CADÖ), ere, -cidī, 165, a.  
ac-cipiō (CAPIÖ), ere, -cēpl, -cep-tum, 160, 3.  
ac-colō (COLÖ), ere, -coluī, -cultum, 152, 3.  
ac-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 144.  
ac-currō, ere, ac-currī, -cursum, 155, 184, III.  
acēdō, ēre, acul, *to be sour.*  
acēscō, ere, acul, *to get sour.*  
ac-quirō (QUAERÖ), ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, 187, c.  
acuō, ere, acul, acūtum, 162.  
ad-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
ad-imō (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, 160, 1.  
ad-ipiscor, I, ad-epetus sum, 165.  
ad-iuvō, ēre, -iūvi, -iūtum, 158.  
ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 140.  
ad-orior, -orirī, -ortus sum, 166.  
ad-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, 140.  
ad-sistō, ere, -stīl, 154, 1.  
ad-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, 1.  
ad-stō, -stāre, -stīl, 151, 2.  
ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-ful (af-ful), 117.  
ad-vesperāscō, ere, ăvī, 140.  
aegrēscō, ere, *to fall sick.*  
af-ferō, -ferre, at-tulli, al-lātuin, 171:  
af-fligō, ere, -flīxi, -flictum, 147, 2.  
ag-gredior, -gredi, -gressus, 165.  
a-gnōscō, ere, a-gnōvī, a-gnitum (agnōtūrus), 140.  
ago, ere, ēgī, āctum, 160, 1.  
ăō, 175, 1.  
albeō, ere, *to be white.*  
algeō, ēre, alsī, 147, 1.  
al-liciō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 150, 1.  
al-luō, ere, -lui, -lūtum, 162.  
alō, ere, alul, al(i)tum, 142, 3.  
amb-igō (AGO), ere, 172, 1.  
amb-iō (EÖ), ire, 1vī (il), Itum, 160,  
2, R. 1.  
amiciō, ire, (amicuī, amixī) amictum,  
142, 4, 161.  
amplector, I, amplexus, 165.  
angō, ere, anxi, 149, b.  
an-nuō, ere, annuī (annūtum), 162.  
ante-cellō, ere, 154.  
ante-stō, -stāre, -stīl, 151, 2.  
a-periō, -ire, aperul, apertum,  
142, 4.  
apiscor, I, aptus sum, 165.  
ap-petō, ere, 1vī, Itum, 147, c.  
ap-plicō, ēre, -plicul, -plicitum,  
152, 2.  
ap-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum,  
139, A.  
arceō, ēre, arcuī { arctus,  
arcessō (accersō), ere, arcessivī,  
-itum, 187, e.  
ärdeō, ēre, ärsl, ärsum, 147, 1.  
ärēscō, ere, ärul, *to become dry.*  
arguō, ere, argul, (argūtum,)  
(arguitūrus,) 162.  
ar-ripiō (RAPIÖ), ere, ul, -reptum,  
146.  
a scendō (SCANDÖ), ere, I, scēnsum,  
160, 2.  
ă-spiciō, ere, ă-spexī, ă-spectum,  
150, 1.  
as-sentior, irī, assēnsus sum, 166.  
as-sideō (SEDEÖ), ēre, -sēdl, -ses-sum, 159.  
as-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 140.  
at-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, 155.

- at-texō, ere, -texūl, -textum, 152, 3.  
 at-tineō (*TENEō*), ēre, ul, -tentum, 195, I. a.  
 at-tingō (*TANGō*), ere, attigi, attac-  
 tum, 155.  
 at-tollō, ere, *to raise up.*  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum, 167.  
 audiō, ire, Ivi, Itum. *See* 127.  
 au-ferō, -ferre, abstull, ablatum, 171.  
 augēō, ēre, aaxi, auctum, 147, I.  
 avē, 175, 4.
- Balbūtiō, ire, *to stutter.*
- batuō, ere, ul, 162.  
 bibō, ere, bibi, (bibitum), 154, 2.
- Cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum, 158.  
 caecūtiō, ire, *to be blind.*  
 caedō, ere, cecidi, caesum, 158.  
 calefaciō, ere, -fēci, -factum, 160,  
 3; 178, n. 2.  
 calēscō, ere, calui, *to get warm.*  
 calleō, ēre, ul, *to be skilled.*  
 calveō, ēre, *to be bald.*  
 candēō, ēre, ul, *to shine.*  
 cāneō, ēre, *to be gray.*  
 canō, ere, cecini, cantum, 158.  
 capessō, ere, Ivi, Itum, 137, c.  
 capiō, ere, cepli, captum, 126;  
 160, 3.  
 carpō, ere, carpsi, carptum, 147, 2.  
 caveō, ēre, cāvi, cautum, 159.  
 cedō, 175, 6.  
 cēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum, 147, 2.  
 cēnatus, 167, n. 1.  
 cēnseō, ēre, ul, (cēnsitus), 185, I. a.  
 cernō, ere, crēvi, (crētum), 189.  
 cieō { cire, civi, cītum, 187, b.  
 ciō { cire, civi, cītum, 187, b.  
 cingō, ere, cinxi, cinctum, 149, b.  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum,  
 151, I.  
 circum-sistō, ere, steti, 154, I.  
 circum-stō, stāre, steti, 151, 2.  
 claudō, ere, clausi, clausum, 147, 2.  
 clepō, ere, clepsi, cleptum, 147, 2.  
 co-alēscō, ere, -alui, (-alitum), 140,  
 145.  
 co-arguō, ere, ul, 163.  
 co-emō, ere, -emī, -ēm(p)tum,  
 160, I.  
 coepli, coepisse, 175, 5, a.
- cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum,  
 140.  
 cō-gō (Ago), ere, co-ēgl, co-ēctum,  
 160, I.  
 col-lidō (LAEDō), ere, -listi, līsum,  
 147, 2.  
 col-ligō (LEGō), ere, -ligi, -lectum,  
 160, I.  
 col-luceō, ēre, -luxi, 157, I.  
 colō, ere, colui, cultum, 142, 3.  
 com-bürō, ere, -būsi, -būstum, 147, 2.  
 com-edō, ere, -edi, -ēsum (ēstum),  
 172.  
 comitātus, 167, n. 1.  
 comminiscor, i, commentus sum,  
 165.  
 com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,  
 159.  
 cō-mō (EMO), ere, cōmpel, cōmp-  
 tum, 147, 2.  
 com-parcō, ere, -parsi, -parsum, 158.  
 com-pellō, ere, com-pulli, -pulsum,  
 155.  
 com-periō (PARIō), ire, com-perf,  
 com-per-tum, 161, 166.  
 compēscō, ere, ul, 145.  
 com-pingō, ere, -pegi, -pēctum,  
 160, 2.  
 com-plexor, I, com-plexus, 165.  
 com-pleō, ēre, ȳvi, ētum, 147.  
 com-primō (PREMō), ere, -pressi,  
 -pressum, 147, 2.  
 com-pungō, ere, -punxi, -punctum,  
 155.  
 con-cidō (CADō), ere, -cidi, 153, a.  
 con-cidō (CAEDō), ere, -cidi, -cīsum,  
 153, a.  
 con-cinō (CANō), ere, -cīni, 142, 3.  
 concitus (CIEō), 187, b.  
 con-clūdō (CLAUDō), ere, -clūsi,  
 -clūsum, 147, 2.  
 con-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum,  
 144.  
 con-cupisō, ere, -cupiūl, cupitum,  
 140.  
 con-cutīō (QUATIō), ere, -cussi, -cus-  
 sum, 147, 2.  
 con-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, I.  
 con-dormīscō, -ere, -Ivi, Itum, 140.  
 con-ferciō (FACIō), ire (fersi), fer-  
 tum, 150, 2.  
 cōn-ferbō, -ferre, -tuli, collatūm,  
 171.  
 cōn-ficiō (FACIō), ere, -fēci, -fectum,  
 160, 3.

- cōn-fiteor (**FATEOR**), ēri, -fessus, 164.  
 cōn-fligō, ere, -flixi, -flictum, 147, 2.  
 cōn-fringō (**FRANGO**), ere, -frēgi, -fractum, 160, 2.  
 cōn-gruō, ere, congrui, 162.  
 cōn-icō (**IACIO**), ere, -fēci, -iectum, 160, 3.  
 cōnūrātus, 167, n. 1.  
 cōn-niveō, ēre, connixi, (connivī), 147, 1.  
 cōn-quirō (**QUAERÔ**), ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, 137, c.  
 cōn-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, 152, 3.  
 cōn-serō, ere, -sēvi, -situm, 138.  
 cōn-siderātus, 167, n. 1.  
 cōn-sidō, ere, consēdi, -sessum, 160, 1.  
 cōn-sistō, ere, -stidi, -stitum, 154, 1.  
 cōn-spergō, ere, -spersi, -persum, 147, 2.  
 cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 150, 1.  
 cōn-stituō (**STATUÔ**), ere, ui, -stitutum, 162.  
 cōn-stitō, -stāre, -stidi, (constātūrus), 151, 2.  
 cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvi, suetum, 140; 175, 5.  
 cōnsulō, ere, cōnsului, -sultum, 142, 3.  
 con-temnō, ere, -tem(p)si, -tem(p)-tum, 149, c.  
 con-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, 155.  
 con-texō, ere, -texui, -textum, 152, 3.  
 con-tineō (**TENEÔ**), ere, ui, -tentum, 135, I. a.  
 con-tingō (**TANGO**), ere, contigi, -contectum, 155.  
 convalēscō, ere, -valui, -valitum, 145.  
 coquō, ere, coxi, coctum, 147, 2, 108, I.  
 cor-ripiō (**RAPIO**), ere, -ripui, -rep-tum, 146.  
 cor-ruō, ere, corrui, 162.  
 crēbrēscō, ere, crēbrui, *to get frequent.*  
 crē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 crepō, ēre, crepuī, crepitum, 142, 2.  
 crēscō, ere, crēvi, crētum, 140.  
 cubō, ēre, cubui, cubitum, 142, 2.  
 cūdō, ere, cūdi, cūsum, 160, 1.  
 cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupitum, 141.  
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursum, 155.  
 Dē-cernō, ere, -crēvi, -crētum, 139.  
 dē-cerpō (**CARPO**), ere, si, tum, 147, 2.  
 dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 151, 1.  
 dē-fendō, ere, -fendi, -fēnum, 160, 2.  
 dēfetiscor, I, *to be worn out.*  
 dē-gō (**AGO**), ere, 160, 1.  
 dēleō. *See Paradigm*, 123, 124.  
 dē-libuō, uēre, ui, ūtum, 162.  
 dē-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, 160, 1.  
 dē-mō (**EMO**), ere, dēmpsi, dēmp-tum, 147, 2.  
 dēpellō, ere, dēpuli, dēpulsum, 155.  
 dē-primō (**PREMÔ**), ere, -pressi, -pressum, 147, 2.  
 depōs, ere, depuls, depstum, 142, 3.  
 dē-scendō (**SCANDÔ**), ere, -scendi, -scēnum, 160, 2.  
 dē-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, 142, 3.  
 dē-siliō (**SALIÔ**), ire, (it), (dēsultum), ui, 142, 4.  
 dē-sinō, ere, dēsil, dēsitus, 139.  
 dē-sipiō (**SAPIÔ**), -ere, 141.  
 dē-sistō, ere, -stidi, -stitum, 154, 1.  
 dē-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 150, 1.  
 dē-suēscō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, 140.  
 dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.  
 dē-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, 155.  
 dē-tineō (**TENEÔ**), ere, -ui, -tentum, 135, I. a.  
 dē-vertor, -I, 167.  
 dīō, ere, dīxi, dictum, 147, 2.  
 dī-ferō, -ferre, distulī, dilatūm, 171.  
 dī-gnōscō (**NOSCÔ**), ere, -gnōvi, 140.  
 dī-ligō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, 147, 2.  
 dī-micō, ēre, ēvi, ūtum, 142, 2.  
 dī-rigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, 147, 2.  
 dir-imō (**EMO**), ere, -ēmi, -ēmptum, 160, 1.  
 disco, ere, didici, 156.  
 dis-crepō, ēre, -crepuī (**AVI**), 142, 2.  
 dis-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, 144.  
 dis-pēscō, ere, -pēscui, *to divide,* 145.  
 dis-sideō (**SEDEÔ**), ēre, -sedi, 159.

- dī-stinguō, ere, -stinxl, -stinctum, 149, b.  
 dī-stō, -stāre, 151, 2.  
 dītēscō, ere, *to grow rich.*  
 dividō, ere, divisi, divisum, 147, 2.  
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, 151, 1.  
 doceō, ēre, docui, doctum, 135, 1, a.  
 domō, īre, ui, itum, 142, 2.  
 dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductum, 147, 2.  
 dulcēscō, ere, *to grow sweet.*  
 dūrēscō, ere, dūrul, *to grow hard.*
- Edō, ere, ēdi, ēsum, 160, 1, 172.  
 ē-dō (dō), edere, ēdidi, ēditum, 151, 1.  
 ē-dormiscō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, 140.  
 ē-ferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlatum, 171.  
 ēgeō, ēre, egui, *to want.*  
 ē-liciō, ere, -licui, -licitum, 150, 1.  
 ē-ligō (LEGO), ere, -legi, -lectum, 160, 1.  
 ē-micō, īre, ui (ātūrus), 142, 2.  
 ēmineō, ēre, ui, *to stand out.*  
 ēmo, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, 160, 1.  
 ēmungō, ēre, ēmunxi, ēmunctum, 149, b.  
 ē-necō, īre, ēneciū, ēnectum, 142, 2.  
 ēb, īre, Ivi, itum, 169, 2. —  
 ē-vādō, ere, evāsl, ēvāsum, 147, 2.  
 ē-vānēscō, ere, ēvānūl, 145.  
 ex-ārdēscō, ere, exārsi, exārsum, 147, 1.  
 ex-cellō, ere, ui (excelsus), 144.  
 ex-ctūs, 137.  
 ex-clūdō (CLAUDŌ), ere, -si, -sum, 147, 2.  
 ex-currō, ere, ex(cu)curri, -cursum, 155.  
 ex-imō, ere, ēmī, -ēmptum, 160, 1.  
 ex-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -olētum, 140.  
 ex-pellō, ere, -pulli, -pulsum, 155.  
 expērgiscor, I, experrēctus sum, 165.  
 ex-perior, Irī, -pertus sum, 166.  
 ex-pleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 124, 137, b.  
 ex-pliō, īre, ui (āvi), itum (ātum), 142.  
 ex-plōdō (PLAUDŌ), ere, -si, -sum, 147, 2.  
 exsecrātus, 167, N. 2.  
 ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxl, -stinctum, 149, b.
- ex-sistō, ere, -stīti, -stītum, 154, 1.  
 ex-stō, īre (exstātūrus), 151, 2.  
 ex-tendō, ere, dī, -sum (-tum), 155.  
 ex-tollō, ere, 155.  
 ex-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, 162.
- Faceſſō, ere, Ivi (-i), Itum, 137, c.  
 faciō, ere, fēci, factum, 160, 3.  
 fallō, ere, fefelli, falsum, 155.  
 farciō, īre, farsi, fartum, 150, 2.  
 fari, 175, 3.  
 fateor, īri, fassus sum, 164.  
 fatiscō, ere, *to fall apart.*  
 fatiscor, I (fessus, adj.).  
 faveō, ēre, fāvi, faintum, 159.  
 feriō, īre, to strike.  
 ferō, ferre, tulli, lātum, 171.  
 ferveō, ēre, fervi (ferbul), 159.  
 fidō, ere, fisus sum, 167.  
 figō, ere, fixi, fixum, 147, 2.  
 findō, ere, fidī, fissum, 160, 3.  
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictum, 149, a.  
 fieri, fieri, factus sum, 173.  
 flectō, ere, flexi, flexum, 148.  
 flēo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 187, b.  
 fligō, ere, fixi, fictum, 147, 2.  
 flōreō, ēre, ui, *to bloom.*  
 fluō, ere, fluxi (fluxus, adj.), 147, 2.  
 fodō, ere, fōdi, fossum, 160, 3.  
 forem, 116.  
 foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 159.  
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctum, 160, 2.  
 frenō, ere, ui, 142, 3.  
 frendō (eo), ere (ui), frēsum, frēsum, 144.  
 fricō, īre, ui, frictum (ātum), 142, 2.  
 frigeō, ēre (frīxi), 147, 1.  
 frigō, ere, frixi, frictum, 147, 2.  
 frondeō, ēre, ui, *to be leafy.*  
 fruor, I, frūctus (frūctus) sum, 165.  
 fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitum, 160, 3.  
 fulciō, īre, fulsi, fultum, 150, 2.  
 fulgeō, ēre, fulsi, 147, 1.  
 fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum, 160, 2.  
 fungor, I, fūctus sum, 165.  
 (furō, def.), furere, *to rave.*
- Ganniō, īre, *to yelp.*  
 gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum, 167.  
 gemō, ere, ui, 142, 3.  
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, 147, 2.  
 gignō, ere, genūl, genitum, 148.  
 gliscō, ere, *to swell.*  
 gradior, I, gressus sum, 165.

- Haereō, ēre, haesi, (haesum), 147, 1.  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustum (hausūrus, haustūrus), 150, 2.  
 havē, 175, 4.  
 hiscō, ere, *to yawn.*  
 horreō, ēre, ui, *to stand on end*  
 hortor, ārl, atus sum, 128.  
  
 Iaceō, ēre, iacui, *to lie.*  
 iaciō, ere, ieci, iactum, 160, 3.  
 Icō, ere, icī, iectum, 160, 1.  
 I-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gnōtum, 140.  
 il-hicō, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 150, 1.  
 il-lidō (LAEDŌ), ere, -lisī, -līsum, 147, 2.  
 imbuō, ere, ui, ūsum, 162.  
 initātus, 167, n. 2.  
 immineō, ēre, *to overhang.*  
 im-pingō (PANGŌ), ere, pēgi, pēctum, 160, 2.  
 in-calēscō, ere, -calui, 145.  
 in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēnum, 160, 2.  
 incessō, ere, ivi (I), 187, c.  
 in-cidō (CADŌ), ere, -cidī, -cīsum, 152.  
 in-cidō (CAEDŌ), ere, -cidī, cīsum, 153.  
 in-cipiō (CAPIO), ere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, 160, 3.  
 in-crepō, ēre, ui, itum, 142, 2.  
 in-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, 144.  
 in-cutīō (QUATUO), ere, -cussi, -cus-sum, 147, 2.  
 ind-igeō (EGEŌ), ēre, ui, *to want.*  
 ind-ip̄scor, I, indeptus sum, 165.  
 in-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 indulgeō, ēre, indulsi (indultum), 147, 1.  
 in-duō, ere, -dui, -dūtum, 162.  
 ineptiō, ire, *to be silly.*  
 in-fligō, ere, -flixi, -fletum, 147, 2.  
 ingemiscō, ere, ingemui, 145.  
 ingruō, ere, ui. *See congruo*, 162.  
 in-nōtēsco, ere, nōtuī, 145.  
 in-olēscō, ere, -olevi, 140.  
 inquam, 175, 2.  
 in-sideō (SEDEŌ), ere, -sēdi, -ses-sum, 159.  
 in-sistō, ere, -stiti, 154, 1.  
 In-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 150, 1.
- inter-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, 160, 3; 173, n. 2.  
 in-stō, ēre, -stiti (instātūrus), 151, 2.  
 in-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.  
 intel-legō, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 147, 2.  
 inter-imō (EMŌ), ere, -ēmi, -ēmp-tum, 160, 1.  
 inter-pungō, ere, -punxi, -punc-tum, 155.  
 inter-stō, ēre, -steti, 151, 2.  
 inter-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.  
 inveterāscō, ere, -āvi, 140.  
 in-vādō, ere, invāsi, -vāsum, 147, 2.  
 Irāscor, I, Irātus sum, *to get angry.*  
 iubeō, ēre, iūssī, iūssum, 147, 1.  
 iungō, ere, iūnxi, iūnctum, 149, b.  
 irātus, 167, n. 1.  
 iuvō, ēre, iūvi, iūtum (iūvātūrus), 158.  
  
 Lābor, I, lāpsus sum, 165.  
 lācessō, ere, lācessivi, -itum, 137, c.  
 laicō, 150.  
 laedō, ere, laesi, laesum, 147, 2.  
 lambō, ere, I, 160, 2.  
 langueō, ēre, I, *to be languid.*  
 largior, Irl, itus sum, 166.  
 lateō, ēre, ui, *to lie hid.*  
 lavō, ēre (ere), lāvi, lautum, lā-tum, lavātum, 158.  
 lego, ere, lēgi, lēctum, 160, 1.  
 libet, libere, libuit (libitum est), *it pleases.*  
 liceor, eri, itus sum, 164.  
 licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted.*  
 lingō, ere, linxi, linctum, 149, b.  
 linō, ere, lēvi (livī), litum, 139.  
 linquō, ere, liqui, 160, 2.  
 liqueō, ēre, lieul, *to be clear.*  
 līveō, ēre, *to be livid.*  
 loquor, I, locūtus sum, 128, 2; 165.  
 lūcēō, ēre, lūxi, 147, 1.  
 lūdō, ere, lūsi, lūsum, 147, 2.  
 līgeō, ēre, lūxi, 147, 1.  
 luō, ere, luf, *{ lūtum, to wash,*  
*lūteūn, to alone for,*  
*162.*
- Maereō, ēre, *to grieve.*  
 mālō, mālle, māluī, 142, 3; 174.  
 mandō, ere, mandi, mānsum, 160, 2.  
 maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsum, 147, 1.  
 mānsuēscō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, 140.

- medeō, ērī, *to heal.*  
 memini, 176, 5, b.  
 mentior, īrī, Itus, 128, 2; 166.  
 mereor, ērī, meritus sum, 164.  
 mergō, ere, mersī, mersum, 147, 2.  
 mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum, 166.  
 metō, ere, messui (rare), messum, 142, 3.  
 metuo, ere, ul, 162.  
 micō, ēre, ul, 142, 2.  
 mingō, ere, minxi, mictum, 149, a.  
 minuō, ere, minui, minutum, 162.  
 misceō, ēre, ul, mixtum (mictum).  
 miseror, ērī, miseritus (misertus) sum, 164.  
 mittō, ere, misi, missum, 147, 2.  
 moldō, ere, molui, molitum, 142, 3.  
 monēo, ēre, ul, itum, 181.  
 mordēo, ēre, momordī, morsum, 152.  
 morior, mori, mortuus sum (morturus), 165.  
 moveō, ēre, móvi, mótum, 159.  
 mulceō, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 147, 1.  
 mulgeō, ēre, mulsi, mulsum (ctum), 157, 1.  
 munō, ere, munxi, munetum, 160.
- Nanc̄scor, ī, nactus (nanc̄tus), 165.  
 nāscor, ī, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), 165.
- neō, ēre, āvī, ātum, 142, 2.  
 necō, ere, nexi (nexul), nexum, 148.  
 neg-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, 147, 2.  
 necopinātus, 167, n. 2.  
 neō, nēre, nēvi, nētum, 137, b.  
 nequeō, ire, 170.  
 ningō, ere, ninxi, 149, b.  
 nitedō, ēre, ul, *to shine.*  
 nitor, ī, nīxus (nisus) sum, 165.  
 nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, 142, 3; 174.  
 noceō, ēre, ul (nocitūrus), *to be hurtful.*  
 nōscō, ere, nōvi, nōtum, 140; 175, 5, d.  
 nōtēscō, ere, nōtui, 145.  
 nūbō, ere, nūpsi, nūptum, 147, 2.
- Ob-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 ob-dormiscō, ere, -dormivī, -dormitum, 140.
- Obliviscor, ī, oblitus sum, 165,
- ob-sideō (SEDEō), ēre, -sēdi, -sesum, 159.  
 ob-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, 1.  
 obs-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -olētum, 140.  
 ob-stō, stāre, stītī (obstātūrus), 151, 2.  
 obtīneō (TENEō), ēre, -tinui, -tentum, 135, 1, a.  
 oc-cidō (CAEDō), ere, -cidī, -cīsum, 158.  
 oc-cidō (CAEDō), ere, -cidī, -cīsum, 158.  
 oc-cinō (CANō), ere, -cinui, 142, 3; 153.  
 oc-cipīō (CAPIō), ere, -cīpi, -ceptum, 160, 3.  
 occulō, ere, occulū, occultum, 142, 3.  
 ḥdi, def., 176, 5, a.  
 of-fendō, ere, -fendi, -fēnum, 160, 2.  
 of-ferō, -ferre, obtulli, oblātum, 171.  
 oleō, ēre, ul, *to smell.*  
 operiō, ire, operui, opertum, 142, 4.  
 opinātus, 167, n. 2.  
 opperior, īrī, oppertus (*or* Itus), 166.  
 ḥdīor, īrī, ḥrsus sum, 166.  
 orior, īrī, ortus sum (oritūrus), 166.  
 os-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tēnum (tentus), 155.
- Pac̄scor, ī, pactus sum, 165, 167, n. 2.  
 palleō, -ēre, -ul, *to be pale.*  
 pandō, ere, pandī, passum (pānsum), 160, 2.  
 pangō, ere { pepigī, 155, } pāc-  
     { panxi, 149, b, } tum.  
 parcō, ere, pepercī (parci), parsūrus, 158.  
 pariō, ere, peperi, partum (paritūrus), 157.  
 partior, īrī, Itus, 166.  
 pāscō, ere, pāvi, pāstum, 140.  
 pate-facio, ere, -fēci, -factum, 178, n. 2.  
 pateō, ēre, ul, *to be open.*  
 patior, ī, passus sum, 165.  
 paveō, ēre, pāvi, 159.  
 pectō, ere, pexī, pexum, 148.  
 pel-līcō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum,  
     150, 1.

- pellō, ere, pepulli, pulsum, 155.  
 pendeō, ēre, pependi, 152.  
 pendō, ere, pependi, pēnsum, 155.  
 per-cellō, ere, perculli, perculsum, 144.  
 percēseō (CENSEō), ere, -cēnsui, -cēnsum, 135, 1, a.  
 pericitus (CREō), 137.  
 per-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 169, 2, B, 1; 151, 1.  
 per-eō, ire, peril, itum, 169, 2, R, 1.  
 per-ficiō, ere, -fecī, -fectum, 160, 3.  
 per-fringō, ere, -frēgl, -fractum, 160, 2.  
 per-gō (EGO), ere, perrēxi, perrēctum, 147, 2.  
 per-petior (PATIOR), I, perpessus sum, 165.  
 per-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 150, 1.  
 per-stō, -stāre, -stiti, 151, 2.  
 per-tineō (TENEō), ere, uī, 135, 1, a.  
 pessum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 151, 1.  
 petō, ere, iī (ii), Itum, 137, c.  
 piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum est, *it irks.*  
 pingō, ere, pinxi, pictum, 149, a.  
 pīnsō, ere, uī (I), pīnsitum (pīstum, pīnsum), 142, 3.  
 plangō, ere, planxi, planetum, 149, b.  
 plaudō, ere, plausi, plausum, 147, 2.  
 plectō, ere, (plexi), plexum, 148.  
 pector, I, *to be punished.*  
 -pleō, 137, b.  
 pliō, āre, uī (āvi), itum (ātum), 142, 2.  
 pluō, ere, pluit, 162.  
 plūvit.  
 polleō, ēre, *to be potent.*  
 policeor, ērī, itus sum, 164.  
 pōnd, ere, posui, positum, 139.  
 pōscō, ere, popōscī, 156.  
 pos-sideō (SEDEō), ere, -sēdi, -sesum, 159.  
 pos-sum, posse, potui, 119.  
 potior, īrī, itus sum, 166.  
 pōtō, āre, āvi, pōtum, pōtatum, 136, 4, c.  
 pōtus, 167, n. 1.  
 prae-cellō, ere, -celluī, 144.  
 prae-cinō, ere, -cinul, 142, 3.  
 prae-currō, ere, -cucurri, -cursum, 155.  
 prae-sideō (SEDEō), ēre, -sēdi, 159.  
 prae-sum, -esse, -ful, 117.  
 prae-stō, -stāre, -stiti (-stātūrus), 151, 2.  
 prandeō, ēre, prandi, prānsum, 159.  
 prehendō, ere, prehendi, prehēnsum, 160, 2.  
 premō, ere, pressi, pressum, 147, 2.  
 prōl-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgl, 160, 1.  
 prō-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 prōfiscor, I, profectus sum, 165.  
 pro-fiteor (FATEOR), ērī, -fessus sum, 104.  
 prōmō (EMO), ere, prōmpsi, prōmp-tum, 147, 2.  
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, 118.  
 prō-tendō (TENDō), ēre, -tendi, -tentum, tēnsum, 155.  
 psallō, ere, ī, 160, 2.  
 pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est, *it shames.*  
 pueraō, ere, *to become a boy.*  
 pungō, ere, pupugi, punctum, 155.  
 pūnior, īrī, Itus sum, 166.  
 Quaerō, ere, quaeſivi, quaeſitum, 137, c.  
 quaeſis, 175, 6.  
 quatio, ere, (quassi), quassum, 147, 2.  
 queō, quire, 170.  
 queror, querī, questus sum, 167.  
 quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, 140.  
 Rado, ere, rāſi, rāſum, 147, 2.  
 rapiō, ere, rapui, raptum, 146.  
 rauicō, īre, rausi, rausum, 150, 2.  
 re-cēseō (CENSEō), ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsum (recēnſitum), 135, 1, a.  
 re-cidō, ere, recidi, recāſum, 153.  
 recrūdēscō, ere, -crūdul, *to get raw again.*  
 re-cumbō, ere, -cubui, 144.  
 red-argūb, ere, -argui, 162.  
 red-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 red-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgl, -actum, 160, 1.  
 red-imō, -ēre, 160, 1.  
 re-fellō (FALLō), ere, refelli, 155.  
 re-ferō, -ferre, -full, -lātum, 171.  
 rego, ere, rēxi, rēctum, 147, 2.  
 re-linqūb, ere, -liqul, -lictum, 160, 2.  
 reminiscor, I, *to recollect.*

- renideō, ēre, *to glitter.*  
 reor, rērī, ratus sum, 164.  
 re-pellō, ēre, repulli, pulsum, 155.  
 re-perīō, īre, repperi, repertum, 157, 161.  
 rēpō, ēre, rēpsī, rēptum, 147, 2.  
 re-sip̄lscō, ēre, -sip̄lvi (sipui), 140.  
 re-sistō, ēre, -stītū, -stītum, 154, 1.  
 re-spondeō, ēre, -spōndī, -spōnsum, 153.  
 re-stō, stāre, -stītī, 151, 2.  
 re-stingūō, ēre, -stinxī, -stinctum, 149, b.  
 re-tineō (TENEō), ēre, ui, -tentum, 185, 1, a.  
 re-vertō, īre, reverti, reversum, 160, 1; 167.  
 re-vīlscō, ēre, vīxi, victum, *to revive.*  
 rideō, ēre, rīsī, risum, 147, 1.  
 rigeō, ēre, ui, *to be stiff.*  
 rōdō, ēre, rōsī, rōsum, 147, 2.  
 rubēō, ēre, ui, *to be red.*  
 rūdō, ēre, rūdī, Itum, 187, c.  
 rumpō, ēre, rūpli, ruptum, 160, 2.  
 ruō, ēre, rūlī, rutum (ruitūrus), 162.  
  
 Saepiō, īre, saepel, saeptum, 150, 2.  
 saliō, īre, (salīlī), salutum, 142, 4.  
 sallō, ēre, (sallī), salsum, 160, 2.  
 salvē, def., 175, 4.  
 sanciō, īre, sānxī, (sāncitum), 150, 2.  
 sapiō, ēre, (sapīvī), sapul, 141.  
 sarcīō, īre, sarsī, sartum, 150, 2.  
 satiō-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 151, 1.  
 scabō, ēre, scabī, *to scratch.* 160, 1.  
 scalpō, ēre, scalpsi, sculptum, 147, 2.  
 scandō, ēre, scandī, scānsum, 160, 2.  
 scateō, ēre, *to gush forth.*  
 scindō, ēre, scidī, scissum, 160, 3.  
 scisō, ēre, scivī, sectum, 140.  
 scribō, ēre, scripti, scriptum, 147, 2.  
 sculpō, ēre, sculpsi, sculptum, 147, 2.  
 secō, īre, secul, sectum, 142, 2.  
 sedēō, īre, sedī, sessum, 159.  
 sēligō (LÉGO), ēre, -legī, -lectum, 160, 1.  
 sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 150, 2.  
  
 sepeliō, īre, Ivi, sepultum, 187, a.  
 sequor, ī, secūtus sum, 165.  
 serō, ēre, 142, 3.  
 serō, ēre, sēvī, satum, 188.  
 serpō, ēre, serpsi, serpentum, 147, 2.  
 sidō, ēre, sidi, 160, 1.  
 sileō, īre, ui, *to be silent.*  
 sinō, ēre, sivi, situm, 139.  
 sistō, īre, (stītī), statum, 154, 1.  
 sitiō, īre, ivi, *to thirst.*  
 soleō, īre, solitus sum, 167.  
 solvō, ēre, solvi, solūtum, 160, 1.  
 sonō, īre, sonui, sonūtūrus, 142, 2.  
 sorbeō, īre (sorp̄-si), sorbul, 142, 1.  
 sordeō, īre, ui, *to be dirty.*  
 sortior, īri, sortitus sum, 166.  
 spargō, ēre, sparsi, sparsum, 147, 2.  
 spernō, ēre, sprēvī, sprētum, 139.  
 -spicō, 150, 1.  
 splendeō, īre, ui, *to shine.*  
 spondeō, īre, spōndī, spōnsum, 152.  
 spuō, ēre, spul, spūtum, 162.  
 squaleō, īre, *to be rough, foul.*  
 statō, ēre, statul, statūtum, 162.  
 sternō, ēre, strāvī, strātum, 139.  
 sternō, ēre, sternul, 162.  
 stertō, ēre, stertul, 142, 3.  
 -stingūō, ēre, 149, b.  
 stō, stāre, steti, stātum, 151, 2.  
 strepō, ēre, strepul, strepitum, 142, 3.  
 stridēō, īre (ere), stridī, 159.  
 stringō, ēre, strinxī, strictum, 149, a.  
 strūdō, ēre, strūxī, strūctum, 147, 2.  
 studeō, īre, ui, *to be zealous.*  
 stupeō, īre, ui, *to be astounded.*  
 suādō, īre, suāsī, suāsum, 147, 1.  
 sub-dō, ēre, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 sub-igō (AGO), ēre, -ēglī, -āctum, 160, 1.  
 suc-cēdō (cēdō), ērē, -cēssī, -cēs-  
sum, 147.  
 suc-cendō, ēre, -cendī, -cēnsum,  
160, 2.  
 suc-cēnseō, īre, ui, -cēnsum, 135,  
1, a.  
 suc-currō, ēre, -currī, -cursum, 155.  
 suēscō, ēre, suēvī, suētum, 140.  
 sut-ferō, -ferre, sus-tinul, 171, N. 2.  
 suf-ficiō (FACIō), ēre, -fēclī, -fectum,  
160, 3.

- suf-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -foesum, 160, 3.  
 sug-gerō, ere, -gessī, -gestum, 147, 2.  
 sūgō, ere, sūxī, sūctum, 147, 2.  
 sum, esse, ful, 116.  
 sūmō (smō), ere, sūmpsi, sūmp-tum, 147, 2.  
 suō, ere, sul, sūtum, 162.  
 superbiō, ire, *to be haughty.*  
 super-stō, -stāre, -stetī, 151, 2.  
 super-sum, -esse, -ful, 117.  
 sup-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum, 139, A.  
 surgō (REGO), ere, surrēxī, surrēc-tum, 147, 2.  
 surripiō, ere, ul (surpul), -reptum, 146.
- Taendet, pertaesum est, *it tires.*  
 tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum, 155.  
 tegō, ere, tāxī, tāctum, 147, 2.  
 temnō, ere, 149, c.  
 tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsum (-tum), 155.  
 teneō, ēre, tenui, (tentum), 135, I, a.  
 tergeō, ēre, tersī, tersum, 147, 1.  
 terō, ere, trīvī, trītum, 137, c.  
 texō, ere, texūl, textum, 142, 3.  
 timeō, ēre, ul, *to fear.*  
 ting(u)ō, ere, tinxī, tintum, 149, b.  
 tollō, ere, (sustull, sublātum), 155.  
 tondeō, ēre, totondī, tonsum, 152.  
 tonō, ēre, ul, 142, 2.  
 torpeō, ēre, ul, *to be torpid.*  
 torqueō, ēre, torsī, tortum, 147, 1.  
 torreō, ēre, torruī, tōstum, 135, I, a.  
 trā-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, 147, 2.  
 tremō, ere, ul, *to tremble.*  
 tribuō, ere, ul, tribūtum, 162.  
 trūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsum, 147, 2.
- tueor, ēri (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 164.  
 tumeō, ēre, ul, *to swell.*  
 tundō, ere, tutudi, tūnsum, tū-sum, 155.  
 turgeō, ēre, tursī, 147, 1.
- Ulciscor, I, ultus sum, 165.  
 ungō, ere, flnxī, ūncutum 149, b.  
 urgeō, ēre, ursī, 147, 1.  
 ūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum, 147, 2.  
 ūtor, I, ūsus sum, 165.
- Vādō, ere, 147, 2.  
 valō, 175, 4.  
 vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, 147, 2; 165.  
 vellō, ere, velli (vulst), vulsum, 160, 2.  
 vēn-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 151, 1;  
 169, 2, B. 1.  
 vēn-eō, ire, ivī (il), 169, 2, B. 1.  
 veniō, ire, vēnl, ventum, 161.  
 vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 151, 1.  
 vereor, ērl, veritus sum, 164.  
 verrō, ere, verrī, versum, 160, 1.  
 vertō, ere, vertī, versum, 160, 1.  
 vescor, I, 165.  
 vesperīscō, ere, āvī, 140.  
 vetō, ēre, vetul, vetitum, 142, 2.  
 videō, ēre, vidi, visum, 159.  
 vieō, ēre, ētum, *to plait.* See  
 137, b.  
 vigeō, ēre, ul, *to flourish.*  
 vincō, ire, vinxī, vinctum, 150, 2.  
 vincō, ere, vici, victum, 160, 2.  
 visō, ere, visī, 160, 1.  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victum, 147, 2.  
 volō, velle, volui, 142, 3; 174.  
 volvō, ere, volvi, volūtum, 160, 1.  
 vomō, ere, vomui, vomitum, 142, 3.  
 voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, 159.

## GENERAL INDEX.

**ABBREVIATIONS.**—Abl., ablative; Abs., absolute; Acc., accusative; act., active; adj., adjective; adv., adverb; attrib., attributive, attribution; app., appositive, apposition; Comp., comparison, comparative; constr., construction; cop., copula, copulative; cpd., compound, compounded; Dat., dative; decl., declension; def., definite; dem., demonstrative; fem., feminine; Fut., future; Fut. Pf., future perfect; Gen., genitive; Ger., gerund, gerundive; Impf., imperfect; Impv., imperative; indef., indefinite; Indic., indicative; Inf., infinitive; interrog., interrogative; Loc., locative; masc., masculine; neg., negative; neut., neuter; Nom., nominative; obj., object; Part., partitive; part., participle; pass., passive; Pl., plural; poss., possessive, possession; pred., predicate; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun; rel., relative; sg., singular; subj., subject; Subjv., subjunctive; subst., substantive; Sup., supine; vb., verb; Voc., vocative.

A—Sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; length of final, 707,1. See ab.

ab (g)—In composition, 9,4; varies with g as prep., 9,4; syntax of as prep., 417,1; position of, 413, n.1; Dat. after vbs cpd. with, 347, n.5; gives Point of Reference, 335, n.2; with Abl. takes place of second Acc., 339, n.2; with Abl. of Separation, 300; with Abl. of Point of View, ib, 2, n.6; with Towns, 391, n.1; with Abl. of Origin, 396; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.1; with Abl. of Agent, 401; to express Cause, 408, n.3; with Abl. Ger., 433.

abdicare—with g and Abl., 390, n.3.

abesse—with Acc. of Extent, or g and Abl., 335, n.2; with Dat., 349, n.4; with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1; of Place, 300, n.3; tantum abest ut,—ut, 552, n.1.

abhinc—with Acc., 336, n.3.

abhorre—with Abl. of Place, 300, n.3.

ability—adj., of, with Inf., 423, n.1.c.

abire—with Abl. of Place, 300, n.3.

ABLATIVE—defined, 23,6; 1st decl. Sg. in 5d, Pl. in 61s, 29, n.4; Pl. in 5bus, 29, n.4; 2d decl. Sg. in 5d, 23, n.3; Pl. in 61s, 23, n.5; 3d decl. Sg. in 61, 1, e, 37,4; mnt stems with 1, 54; sporadic cases in 1, 54, n.2; vowel stems in 1, 57, n.2; adj. used as substantia. in 1, 57, n.2.n.; 4th decl. in ubus, 61, n.1; adj. in d, 75, n.8; Pl. in 1s (for 11s) and 5bus, 75, n.6; adj. of three endings in e, 78, n.1; adj. and parts. in 1 and e, 82; adj. in e and 1,

83; Comp. of part., 80, n.1; forms advs., 91,2.

With act. vb. cannot be subj. of pass., 217, n.1; with vbs. involving comparison, 296, n.1; propositional uses instead, ib, n.3; with pro of Disproportion, 298; for inner obj., 333, 2, n.4. with abesse and distare, 335, n.2; of Point of Reference, ib, n.; with Acc. after vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps. instead of Part. Gen., 372, n.2. Scheme of Syntax, 384; of Place whence, 385. of Towns, 396; of Place whence, 390; with vbs. of Abstaining, 390, 2. with Adj., 390, 3, of Towns, 391; preps. with Towns, ib, n.1; of Attendance, 392, of Time, 393; preps., 394; of Origin, 396, preps., ib, n.2; of Material, 396; of Respect, 397; with words of Eminence, ib, n.2, with Comp., 398, 296, and nn 1,2; of Manner, 396; of Quality, 400, and n.1; with sum of unnatural productions, ib, n.2; of Instrument, 401, of Agent, 314, and n.2, 401 and nn 1,2, with special vbs., 401, nn 1,7; of Standard, 402, of Difference, 403, of Price, 404; with vbs. of Plenty and Want, 405, with opus and fons, 406; with filius, fruor, etc., 407, of Cause, 406 and nn 2,6; of Ger., 431; of Ger. with preps., 433; of Sup., 438.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—concord with two subjs., 285, n.3; syntax of, 400, 10; with Interrog., 459, n.; of part., 663, n.2.

- abrumperē**—with Abl. of Place, 390, n.3.  
**abeiste**—with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2, n.2.  
**absolvere**—with Abl. of Place, 390, n.3.  
**absonus**—with Abl., 355, n.2.  
 Absorption of Correlative—619.  
**abseque**—417, 2; with Subjv., 597, n.  
**abstaining**—vbs. of, with Abl., 390, 2.  
**abstinēre**—with Abl. of Place, 390, n.3.  
**abstract**—relations expressed by Indic., 254, n.1; substs. become concrete in Pl., 204, n.6; formation of, 181, 2, b.  
**abundantia**—84.  
**abundare**—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2.  
**abunde**—*very*, 450, n.3.  
**abūti**—with Abl., 407 and n.2, a.  
**āc—see atque**; **āc si**—with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; **āc si = quasi**, *ib.* n.5.  
**accedere**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2; with *quod*, 525; with *ut*, 553, 4.  
**accent**—in early Latin, 701, n.2; in music, 729; conflict with *Ictus*, 749.  
**accentuation**—15; effect of enclitics, *ib.* n.1; in cpds., *ib.* n.2; in Voc., *ib.* n.3; early, *ib.* n.  
**accidit**—with Dat., 246, n.2; sequence after, 513, n.2; with *ut*, 553, 3.  
**accipere**—with Inf., 527, n.1.  
**accommodatū**—with Dat. Ger., 420, n.1.  
**accumbere**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.  
**ACCUSATIVE**—definition, 23, 4; decl. 36; in **im.**, 37, 3; **54**, n.1; in **dis**, 38, 3; of vowel stems, 57, n.1 and 5; Pl. in **is** and **es**, 57, n.5; in Greek substs., 66, nn. 3 and 4; of adj. of three endings in **is**, **dis**, 79, n.2; in **is**, 83, n.1; of Comp. in **is**, **dis**, 89, n.2; forms advs., 91, 1.  
 Becomes subj. of pass., 216; syntax of, 228–243; general view, 328, 329; direct obj., 330; with vbs. of Emotion, *ib.* n. and n.2; 333, 1, n.1; with verbal substs., 330, n.3; with adj. in *undus*, *ib.* n.4; with cpd. vbs., 331. Inner obj., 332, 333; neut. pron and adj., 333, 1; Cognate, *ib.* 2; Abl. instead, *ib.* 2, n.4; with vbs. of Taste and Smell, *ib.* 2, n.5; extension of Cognate idea, *ib.* 2, nn. 2 and 6. Double Acc., 333, 1; of Extent, 334–336; in Degree, 334, in Space, 335, in Time, 336; with *abesse* and *distare*, 335, n.2; with *abhinc*, 336, n.3; with *nigritus*, *ib.* n.4; with adj., *ib.* n.1; of Extent as subj. of pass., *ib.* n.3; of Local Object, 337; prep. with Large Towns, *ib.* n.1 and 2; **domum** and in **domum**, *ib.* n.3; force of ad., *ib.* n.4; with *fusque*, *ib.* n.4; with verbal substs., *ib.* n.5; of *Respect*, 338; with vbs. of Clothing, etc., and passives, *ib.* n.2; Greek Acc. or Abl. instead, *ib.* n.1. Double Acc., 339–342; with vbs. of Inquiring, etc., 339; special vbs., *ib.* n.n.; pass. form, *ib.* n.4; with vbs. of Naming, Making, etc., 340; pass. form, *ib.* n.1; End by ad or Dat., *ib.* n.2; one Acc. is cognate, 341 and n.2; one Acc. forms a phrase, 342; as a general objective case, 343, with Interjections, *ib.* 1; Acc. and Inf., *ib.* 2; and Dat. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 343; with preps. for Part. Gen., 372, n.2; for Abl. of Standard, 403, n.2; subj. of Inf., 203, n.1; 420; after impersonal Ger., 427, n.2; of Ger., 430; of Ger. with preps., 432; of Sup., 435; with Inf. as object clause, 526–535; with Inf. as subj., 535; with Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542, n.; with Inf. in rel. clause, 635; with Inf. in dependent comparative clause, 641.  
**accusing**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., *ib.* n.2 and 5.  
**acquisēscere**—with Abl., 401, n.6.  
**acquitting**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., *ib.* n.2 and 3.  
**action, activity**—suffixes for, 181, 2; 182, 1.  
**active voice**—112, 2; 213; Inf. as pass., 532, n.2; of something caused to be done, 219; periphrastic, 247.  
**ad**—in composition, 9, 4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; with Towns and Countries, 337, n.1 and 4; with Acc. of End after vbs. of Taking, etc., 340, n.2; with Acc. for Dat., 345, n.2; vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; in the neighborhood of, 386, n.2; hence, 403, n.4; c. position of, 413, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 1; with Acc. Ger., 429, 2; 428, n.2; 432 and n.; after vbs. of Hindering, 432, n.; with Ger. for Abl. Sup., 436, n.3; ad id *quod*, 525, 2, n.2.  
**adaequā**—with Abl., 296, n.1; 396, n.2.  
**adaptation**—words of, with Dat. Ger., 429, 2.  
**addere**—with operam and Dat. Ger., 429, 1; with *quod*, 525, 1, n.1; with *ut*, 553, 4.  
**adding**—vbs. of, with *quod*, 525, 1; list of, *ib.* n.1; with *ut*, *ib.* n.5; 553, 4.  
**adductus**—with Abl. of Cause, 408, n.2.  
**adeō**—with *ut*, 552.  
**adesse**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.

- adfatim*—*very*, 430, n.3.  
*adferre*—with *ut*, 553, 1.  
*adhaerēscere*—with *Dat.*, etc., 247, n.2.  
*adhorīrī*—with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
*adītū*—strengthens Comp., 301; as yet, *still*, 478, n.1.  
*adīcere*—with *quod*, 425, 1, n.1.  
*adīgere*—with *ut*, 553, 1.  
*adīplacē*—with *ut*, 553, 1.  
*adīre*—with *Acc.* or *ad*, 331, n.3.  
*adīvīkī*—with *ut*, 553, 1.  
**ADJECTIVE**—16, 2; and *subst.*, *ib.* n.1, n.1; decl. of, 17, defined, 72; 1st and 2d decl., 73; Gen. and Voc., 73; stems in *ro*, 74; with *Nom.* wanting, 74, n.2; Pronominal, 76; 3d decl., 77; two endings, 78; stems in *ri*, 78, 2; in *lli* and *ari*, 78, n.2; one ending, 80; case peculiarities, 83; abundantia, 84; varying decl., 84, 2; defective and indeclinable, 85; comparison of, 86; correlative, 109; formation of, 182.  
As *subst.*, 204, nn.1–4; agreement of pred., 211; exceptions, *ib.* nn.; attrib. agrees in Gender, 286; neut. with fem., *ib.* 3; concord of, 289; with two subjs., 290; position, 290, n.2, 291; meaning varics with position, *ib.* n.1; 876; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 291, 1, n.2; numerals, 292–295; comparatives, 296–301; superlatives, 302, 303; of Inclination, Knowledge, etc., in pred., 325, n.6, verbal with *Acc.*, 330, n.3; neut. in Cognate Acc., 333, 1; of Extent in Degree, 334 and n.1; or Time, 336, n.1; with Gen. of Quality, 365, n.2; of 3d decl. as pred., 386, n.2; with *Abl.* of Separation, 390, 3; with *Abl.* of Attendance, 392, n.1; with *Abl.* of Quality, 400; in *Abl.* Abs., 410, nn.4, 5; with Inf., 421, n.1, c; with Inf. for Gen. of Ger., 428, n.3; with *Abl.* Ger., 431, n.1; with *Abl.* Sup., 436, n.2; neut. with *ut*, 553, 4, and n.2.  
*adīligīre*—with *sg* and *Gen.*, 378, n.1.  
*adīmīrīrī*—with Inf., 533, n.1.  
*adīmodum*—*very*, 430, n.3; with *quam* and *Indic.*, 487, n.; *yes*, 471, 1.  
*adīmonīre*—with two *Accs.*, 341, n.2; with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
*Adōnic*—measure, 790, 792.  
*adīorīrī*—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
*adīorning*—vbs. of, with *Abl.*, 401, n.1.  
*adīstringēre*—with *sg* and *Gen.*, 378, n.1.  
*adūlēcēns*—437 n.1.  
*advantage*—vbs. of, with *Dat.*, 346.
- ADVERB**—defined, 16, 5, and n.3; discussion of, 91, 92; from *Acc.*, 91, 1; from *Abl.*, *ib.* 2; from *Loc.*, *ib.* 3; uncertain, *ib.* 4; by terminations, 92, 1–5; syntactical and miscellaneous, 92, 6; comparison of, 93; numerals, 98; pron., 110; with *Dat.*, 250, n.7, with Part. Gen., 372, n.3; general use of, 439; position of, 440; for rel. with prep., 611, n.1; position of, 677.  
*adīversīrī*—with *Dat.*, 346, n.2.  
*adīverstītive*—sentences, 483–491; particles, 493; *cūm*, 580, nn.1 and 2, 587; *qui*, 634.  
*adīversus*—gives obj. toward which, 350, n.2; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 2.  
*adīverte*—*animūm*, with *Acc.*, 342.  
*ae*—pronunciation of, 4 and n.; weakening of, 8, 1.  
*aeōdē*—omitted, with Gen., 362, n.3.  
*aequālis*—with *Gen.* or *Dat.*, 350, n.1.  
*aequāre*—with *Dat.*, 346, n.3.  
*aequām*—with *est* instead of *sit*, 254, n.1; *aequā* with *Abl.*, 296, n.1; *aequā* after Comp., 398, n.1; with *atque*, 642, n.3; *aequē*—*aequā*, 482, 3.  
*aeōs*—decl. of, 47, 6.  
*aestimāre*—with Gen., 379; with *Abl.*, 390, n.1; with *Abl.* and *ex*, 403, n.2.  
*actīs*—in *Abl.* of Time, 393, n.5; *id actītis*, 336, n.2.  
*actēnum*—as adv., 236, n.1.  
*affīcere*—with *Abl.* of Means, 401, n.3.  
*affīnis*—with *Dat.* or *Acc.*, 350, n.1; with Gen., 374, n.2.  
*affīrmāre*—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
*age*—with *Pi*, 211, n.2; with *Impv.*, 269; *age vīrō*, 487, n.3; *id ago*, with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
*agēcy*—suffixes for, 181, 1.  
*agent*—in *Abl.* with *ab*, 214, 401; in *Abl.*, 214, n.2; in *Dat.*, 215, 354, 355; and *Instrument*, 401, n.1.  
*aggrēdi*—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
*āīō*—175, 1; supplied from *negō*, 447, n.; introduces *ō.R.*, 648, n.2; with Inf., 527, n.2.  
*āīkīs*—and *āīkīus*, 84, 2.  
*āīkācī*—measure, 791, 799.  
*āīkānācī*—measure, 796.  
*āīlī*—forms indef. prons., 111, 1.  
*āīlēnās*—pos. of *āīlus*, 106; with Gen. or *Dat.*, 350, n.1 and n.2.  
*āīlēquāndō*—*āīlēquāndō*, 482, n.1.  
*āīlēquantūm*—with *ante*, 403, n.4.

- aliquis and aliqui—107; with Pl. vrb., 211, n.2; syntax of, 314; with numerals, 314, n.2; for quis and qui, 107, n.1, and 315, n.1; with two negs., 315, n.1; per aliquem st̄ke, with nō, quōminus, 548, n.1.
- alius—decl. of, 76, 108; reciprocal alius alium, 221, n.1; with Abl., 319; for alter, c̄st̄ri, *ib.* n.1; besides, *ib.* n.2; alia as Acc. of Respect, 338, 2; aliter with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.3; alius atque alius, 477, n.9; alijs—alijs, 482, 1: *tum*—alijs, alijs—plurumque, interdum—alijs, *ib.* n.2; alijs—alijs, alibi—alibi, *ib.* 2; aliter—aliter, *ib.* 3; aliter strengthens sin, 592; followed by quam, nisi, praefer, 643, n.4; with atone, 643, n.3.
- allēc—decl. of, 68, 12.
- alphabet—1. Sounds of letters, *ib.* n.1. 1-3; names of letters, *ib.* n.
- alter—decl. of, 76, 108; for secundus, 96, 5; alter alterum, reciprocal, 221, n.1; and alijs, 319.
- alteruter—decl. of, 76, 108.
- alitudō—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- altus—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- amāre—122; amābō, with Impv., 269; amāns, 437, n.1; with Gen., 375, n.2.
- amb—in composition, 9, 4.
- ambire—conj. of, 169, 2, n.1.
- ambō—decl. of, 73, n.9, 108; and uterque, 292.
- amicus—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.
- amplius—with quam omitted, 296, n.4.
- an—in disjunctive questions, 457, 1; in phrases, *ib.* 2; strengthened by ne, *ib.* 1, n.2; as a simple interrog. particle, *ib.* 1, n.3; in second part of a disjunctive question, 458; anne, *ib.*; and aut, *ib.* n.4; annōn and necne, 459; for num or ne in indirect question, 460, 1, n.1; or 497.
- anacolouthon—697.
- Anacreontic—measure, 819.
- anacrusis—and anacrusitic scheme, 739
- anapaestic—foot, 734; rhythm, 736; varieties of, 777-782; substitutes for, 777.
- anaphora—485, n.2; 636, n.4; 682.
- angī—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.
- angiportio—decl. of, 68, 5.
- animadvertere—with Inf., 527, n.1.
- animadvertere—as instruments or agents, 214, n.2.
- animus—with ut, 546, n.2; animum advertere, with Acc., 342; animi as Loc., 374, n.7; in animō esse, with Inf., 423, n.5.
- Aniō—decl. of, 41, 4.
- annuere—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- ante—in composition, 9, 4; vbe. cpd. will take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Standard or Acc. of Extent, 403, n.4; position of, 413, n.1 and n.3; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 3; with Acc. Ger., 432 and n.1; with part., 437, n.2.
- antēsquām—see antequām.
- antecedent—action, 561-567; definite, 613; repetition of, 615; incorporation of, 616; indefinite, 621; def. or indef. with Indic. or Subjv., 631, 1, and 2.
- antecēdere—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- antecellere—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2.
- antefire—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- antepenult—11.
- antequām—with Indic., 574-576; with Pr., 575; with Pf. and Fut. Pf., 576; with Subjv., 577.
- anterior—87, 8.
- orist—forms on sō, sim, 131, 4, b.; definition, 224; Pure Pf. as Aor., 236, n.; Hist. Pf., 239; Plupf., 241, n.1; Pf. as Potentia of Past, 258, n.2.
- apodosis—589; omission of, 601; in comparative sentences, 602; in Indic. in Unreal Conditions, 597, n.3; after vrb. requiring Subjv., *ib.* n.5.
- apostrophe—691.
- appārare—as cop. vb., 206, n.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.2; with ut, 553, 4.
- appellāre—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.
- appointing—vbe. of, with Dat. of Ger., 429, 2.
- apposition—320; concord in, 321; exceptions, *ib.* KR., NN.; Partitive, 322, 323; Restrictive, 322; Distributive, 323; whole and part, *ib.* n.2; to sentence, 324; predicate, 325; Gen. of, 361; to names of Towns, 386, n.1; to Loc., 411, n.3; pron. incorporated, 614, n.4; subst. incorporated, 616, 2.
- appropinquāre—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- appurtenance—suffix of, 182, 6.
- aptus—constr., 552, n.2; with qui and Subjv., 631, 1.
- apud—416, 4.

- arbitrari—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
 arbitrariū—as Abl. of Cause, 408, n.1.  
 arbor—decl. of, 45, n.  
 arōre—with Abl. of Separation, 390, 2, n.2.  
 Archilochian—measure, 758, 800.  
 arcus—decl. of, 68, 5.  
 ārdāre—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; ārdēns, to express cause, 408, n.2.  
 ārdor—with ut, 546, n.2.  
 arguere—with Gen., 378, n.1; with Inf., 528, n.1.  
 Aristophanic—measure, 793.  
 arrangement—of words, 671-683; of clauses, 684-687; grammatical or rhetorical, 672; ascending and descending, 673; of simple sentences, 674; of interrog. sentences, 675; of adj. and Gen., 676; of advs., 677; of preps., 678; of particles, 679; of attributes, 680; of opposites, 681; of pairs, 682; anaphoric and chiasmic, 683; poetical, 683; periods, 685; historical and oratorical, 687.  
 ārtidāre—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.  
 artisan—suffixes for, 181, 3.  
 ās—decl. of, 48, n.  
 Asclepiadean—measure, 802, 803.  
 asking—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and n.1, n.1; with Inf. or ut, 546 and n.3.  
 aspergere—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc and Abl., 348, n.1.  
 aspicere—with Inf., 527, n.1; aspectū, 438, n.1.  
 aspirates—6, 2, B.  
 assentiri—with Dat., 346, n.2; 347, n.2.  
 assequi—with ut, 553, 1.  
 -assere—as Inf. ending, 131, 4, b, 4.  
 asseverations—in Subjv., 282; in Fut. Indic., ib. n.; with nisi, 591, b, 2.  
 amidāre—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.  
 assimilations—of vowels, 8, 4; of consonants, 9, 1, 2, 3; of preps., 9, 4; of Voc., 211, n.3.  
 assūfacerē—with Abl. or Dat., 401, n.2; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
 assūscere—with Abl. or Dat., 401, n.2; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
 astū—in Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
 ayndeton—after demonstrative, 207, n.4; in coöordination, 473, n., 474, n., 482, n., 492, n.  
 at—use of, 488 and nn.; ast, 488, n.1.  
 atque—for quam, 296, n.4; syntax of, 477 and notes; adds a third member, 491, n.; with adjs. of Likeness, etc., 643; for quam after neg. Comp., 644, n.2.  
 atqul—489; atquin, ib. n.1.  
 attendance—Abl. of, 392; with cum, ib. n.1; instrumental, ib. n.2.  
 attinet—with Inf., 422, n.4; restrictions with, 627, n.2.  
 attraction—in Gender, 211, n.5; in mood, 508, 4, 629; of vb. of Saying into Subjv., 511, n.3, 585, n.3, 630, n.3; of Rel., 617; inverse, 617, n.2; of mood in general, 682, 683.  
 attributive—288; concord of adj., 289; with two or more subcts., 290; position of, 291; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 291, 1, n.2; pred., 325; various peculiarities of, ib. nn.; omitted with cognate Acc., 333, 2, n.1; with Abl. of Time, 383, n.5; omitted with Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1; with Inf., 421, n.2; with part., 437, n.  
 au—pronunciation of, 4; weakening of, 8, 1.  
 auctorem—esse, with Dat., 346, n.5; with Inf., 527, n.2; with ut, 546, n.1.  
 auctōritās—with ut, 546, n.1; auctōritātē as Abl. of Cause, 408, n.1.  
 audēre—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
 audire—like Gr. ἀκούειν, 206, n.3; audiēn, with Dat., 346, n.5; with cum and Subjv., 580, n.2; with Inf. and part., 527, n.1, and n.1; with rel. and Indic., 457, n.; auditū, 426, n.1.  
 auscultāre—with Dat., 346, n.2.  
 aut—distinguished from an, 438, n.4; use of, 493 and notes; aut—aut with Pl., 285, n.1; subdivides a neg., 445.  
 autem—position of, 413, n.3, 484, n.; syntax of, 484; in lively questions, ib. n.1; strengthens sed, 485, n.3, 598.  
 auxiliārē—with Dat., 346, n.2.  
 auxiliāris—and auxiliārius, 94, 2.  
 auxiliary—vbs. with Inf., 280, 1, b.  
 avēre—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
 āversus—with Dat., 356, n.5.  
 Bacchār—68, 12.  
 Bacchic—foot, 734; measures, 811-814.  
 balneum—68, 3.  
 becoming—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.  
 beginning—vbs. of, with Inf., 428, and n.2.  
 believērē—vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526 and 527; with Nom., 528.  
 bellārē—with Dat., 346, n.6.

- bellum—in Abl. of Time, 394.n.2; bellī  
as Loc., 411.n.2
- belonging—suffixes for, 182.5.
- benevolus—compared, 87.4.
- beseeching—vbs. of, with ut, 546.
- bewaring—vbs. of, with nō, 546.
- bibere—with dare, 421.n.1.b.
- binding—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.
- biungus—and biungis, 84.1.
- bimātris—85.1.
- biini—for duo, 346.n.2.
- blandiri—with Dat., 346.n.2.
- boards—with Dat. Ger., 429.1.
- bonus—comparison, 90: cui bonū, 356,  
n.1; bene, as adv. of Degree, 430.n.2,  
and 3.
- books—omit in with Abl., 387.
- bō—decl. of, 52.7.
- brachylogy—889.
- breathings—6.2.A.
- buying—vbs. of, with Gen. or Abl., 279,  
380.
- C—sound of, 1.n.1; name of, 1.n.
- cadere—with Abl. of Separation, 390.2.n.  
2.
- caesura—defined, 750; varieties, 751;  
masc. and fem., 752; bucolic, 753.a.2;  
in Iamb. Sen., 759.n.2; in Iam. Trim.  
Cat., 761.n.; in Iam. Trim. Claud., 762,  
n.4; in Iam. Oct., 763.n.6.; in Iam.  
Sept., 764.n.2; in Troch. Sept., 770.n.2;  
in Dac. Hex., 784.n.2; in alaic, 791,  
798, 799.n.1; in Glyconic, 795; in Phalae-  
cean, 796.n.3; in Sapphic, 797.n.2, 804;  
in Archilochian, 800.n.; in Asclepia-  
dean, 802.n.1.
- calling—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; with  
two Noms., 208.
- calx—decl. of, 70.D.
- campi—as Loc., 411.n.2.
- cautia—defined, 747; in early Latin,  
824; in later Latin, 825.
- capability—adj. s. of, with Inf., 421.n.1.c.
- capacity—adj. s. of, with Dat. Ger., 429.2;  
suffixes for, 182.2.
- capitl.—with Gen. of Charge, 378.n.1.
- capital—decl. of, 78.n.
- caput—decl. of, 53.8; est with Inf., 422,  
n.2.
- cardinal numbers—94; Gen. Pl. of, 95,  
n.2; collective Sg. of, ib.; duo and  
ambō, 292; with singuli, 295; for Dis-  
tributive, 295.n.; position of, 676.n.2.
- carōre—with Abl., 405; with Gen., 283.1,  
n.2.
- carō—decl. of, 41.4; gender of, 43.1.
- Carthagini—as Loc., 411.n.1.
- cārūs—with Abl. of Price, 404.n.2.
- cases—defined, 23; strong and weak,  
rēcti and obliqui, 24; case-forms, 25;  
endings, 25.2.
- cassis—decl. of, 68.12.
- cāsūl—as Abl. of Manner, 399.n.1.
- catalexis—742.
- causā—with Gen., 373; with poss. pron.,  
ib. n.2; with Gen. Ger., 428.n.2; causa,  
in phrases with ut, 546.n.2; causam  
vincere, 333.2.R.
- CAUSAL SENTENCES—coördinate, 498; par-  
ticles, 498; syntax of subordinate, 538–  
542; general division, 538, 539; with  
quod, etc., and Indic., 540; with quod,  
etc., and Subjv., 541; with quia, ib.  
n.1; rejected reason, ib. n.2; with  
quādūque, ib. n.6; with vbs. of Emo-  
tion, 542; si for quod, ib. n.1; with  
cum, 580.n.1 and 2, 588; with tam-  
quam, etc., 541.n.4, 602.n.4; relative,  
634; clauses in O.O., 655.
- causation—vbs. of, with part., 537; with  
ut, 533.1; pass. with ut, ib. 3.
- causative verbs—formation of, 191.4.
- cause—Abl. of, 408; various expressions  
for, ib. nn.; preventing, ib. n.4; exter-  
nal, ib. n.6; represented by part., 606,  
670.2.
- cavēre—with Subjv. for Impv., 271.2;  
with Dat., 346.n.2; constructions with,  
548.n.1 and 3.
- ce— appended to iste, 104.8.n.2; to ille,  
ib. n.3.
- cēdere—with Dat., 346.n.2; with Abl. of  
Separation, 390.2.n.2.
- cedo—defective, 175.6.
- cēlēre—with two Accs., or dī, 330 and n.  
1 and 3.n.1.
- celer—comparison of, 87.1, and n.
- cēnsēre—with Inf., 527.n.2; with ut, 544,  
n.1; cēnsēd, yes, 471.2.
- centimanus—defective, 85.2.
- cernere—with Inf., 527.n.1.
- certāre—with Dat., 346.n.6; rem cer-  
tāre, 333.2.R.
- certus—strengthens quidam, 312.n.5;  
with Gen., 374.n.9; certē, certō, yes,  
471.1; certō, strengthens at, 488.n.2;  
certius (quam), with Inf., 422.n.3;

- c**ertum est—with Inf., 423,2,n.2; certiōrem facere, with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**cōs̄kre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2.  
**(cōterus)**—Nom. masc. wanting, 74, n.2, 85,1; use of cōterum, 491; cōtera used partitively, 391, n.2; alias instead, 319, n.1; as Acc. of Respect, 338,2.  
**charge**—in Gen. with Judicial verbs, 378; with nōmine, ib. n.2; in Abl., ib. n.3.  
**chiasmus**—682 and n.  
**choosing**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 240; End with Dat. or ad., ib. n.2; vbs. of, with Final Dat., 356, n.2.  
**chorianubic**—feet, 794; rhythms, 801.  
**cīngi**—with Acc., 338, n.2.  
**cīrcū**—position of, 413, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,5; with Acc. Ger., 432 and n.1.  
**cīrciter**—as prep., 416,6.  
**cīrnum**—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; never repeated, ib. n.2; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,5.  
**cīrnumdare**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1.  
**cīrnumfundere**—with Acc. and Dat., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1.  
**cīrnumspice**—with direct question, 467, n.  
**circumstantial cum**—585–588.  
**cīs**—as prep., 416,7.  
**cīterior**—87,2 and 7.  
**cītius quam**—constr. after, 644, n.3.  
**cītrū**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,7.  
**cīvitās**—concord of, in pred., 211, n.6.  
**cīlam**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,8.  
**cīlanculum**—as prep., 416,8.  
**cīllivus**—decl. of, 67,2.  
**clothing**—vbs. of, with Acc. of Respect, 338, n.2; with Abl. of Means, 401, n.1.  
**cīnēre**—with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.1.  
**cōspicī**—175,5,a, and n.; with Inf., 423, n.3.  
**cōgēre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2; with nt, 553, 2; conclude, with Inf., 546, n.1, 553,2,n.  
**cōgitāre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2.  
**cōgitatiō**—in phrases with nt, 557, n.  
**Cogitate Accusative**—333,2; similar phrases, ib. n.; with second Acc., 341; with prohibēre, iubēre, ib. n.2.  
**cōgnōstus**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.  
**cōgnitiō**—in phrases with nt, 557, n.  
**cōgnōmen esse**—with Dat., 349, n.5.
- cōgnōscere**—with Inf., 527, n.1; cōgnitū as Sup., 438, n.1.  
**coincidence**—constr. with, 513, n.3.  
**cōfēre**—with Dat., 346, n.6.  
**cōfīgere**—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**cōfōlōcōre**—with in and Abl., 365, n.1; with in and Acc., ib. n.2.  
**cōlōs**—decl. of, 61, n.5.  
**cōmitīrī**—with Dat., 346, n.2.  
**cōmitis**—as Abl. of Time, 393, n.5.  
**cōmīserārī**—with Acc., 377, n.2.  
**cōmīttēre**—with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; with ut, 548, n.1.  
**cōmōvērē**—with ut, 553,2; cōmōtūs, to express cause, 406, n.2.  
**cōmōndīne**—as subst., 211, n.4; in phrases with ut, 557, n.; cōmōnis, with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.  
**comparative**—in ior, 86; in entior, 87,4,5; lacking, 87,6; with quam or Abl., 298 and n.; omission of quam, ib. n.4; age with nātūs, ib. n.5; with opīlinōne, ib. n.6; of Disproportion, 298; omission of ut after quam, ib. n.2; restriction of, 300; strengthened, 301; doubled, ib.; with Part. Gen., 372 and n.2; with Abl. of Respect, 298 and n.; with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1; with Abl. Ger., 431, n.2; with quam qui, 631,3.  
**COMPARATIVE SENTENCES**—638–644; division of, 638; moods in, 639; vb. omitted in, 640; in dependent clauses, 641; relatives in, 642; *the more—the more*, ib. n.2; with atque, 643; with quam, 644.  
**comparison**—of adjectives, 86; peculiarities, 87; by magis and māximūs, ib.6; by plūs and plūrimum, ib. 6, n.2; defective, 87,2,7,9; of participles, 88,89; of advs., 93; irregular, 90; standard of, omitted, 297; of qualities, 299; conditional sentences of, 602.  
**compelīng**—vbs. of, with nt, 553,2.  
**compensatory lengthening**—9,6,a.  
**cōpērō**—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,n.2.  
**cōpērīre**—with Gen., 378, n.1; with Inf., 527, n.1.  
**cōpētē**—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2, n.2.  
**cōplērē**—with Gen., 383,1.  
**complexus**—as a Present, 282, n.  
**compos**—with Gen., 374, n.3.  
**composition**—of words, 193–200; divisions, 193; of substs., 194–196; of vbs., 199, 200.

- compounds—attrib., 197, n.1; dependent, *ib.* 2; poss., 196; quantity in, 715.
- con**—see **cum**.
- cōmāri**—with Inf., 423, n.2.
- cōmātus**—defective, 68, 5.
- cōnōcēdere**—used personally in pass., 217, n.2; with Dat., 346, n.2; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; 532, n.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; with *ut*, 546, n.1.
- cōncērīng**—vbs. of, with obj. clause, 523.
- cōncēsīve**—Subj., 264; *cum*, 580, nn.1 and 2, 587; *qui*, 634; part., 609, 667, 670, 4.
- CÖNCÈSIVE SENTENCES**—603–609; with *etsi*, etc., 604; with *quamquam*, 605; with *quamvis*, etc., 606; with *licet*, 607; with *ut*, 608; representatives of, 609.
- cōnfidēdere**—with Inf., 527, n.2.
- concord**—210; pred. with subj., 211; violations of, *ib.* RR. 1–6, NN. 1–3; of subj. and pred. multiplied, 285–287; of app., 321; neut. for persons, 323, n.2; of rel., 614.
- cōncipiōns**—with Gen., 375, n.2.
- cōcurrēre**—with Dat., 346, n.6.
- cōdecēt**—with Inf., 422, n.4.
- cōndēmning**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., *ib.* n.2; with Abl., *ib.* n.3; enforced destination, *ib.* n.4.
- cōndicō**—in phrases with *ut*, 546, n.2.
- condition**—suffixes for, 181, 8; indicated by a question, 453, n.3; represented by part., 667, 670, 4.
- conditional *cum***—583.
- CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**—580–602; division of, 589; sign, 590; negatives, 591; two excluding, 592; equivalents of Protagos, 593; classification of, 594. **LOGICAL**, 595; in O.O., *ib.* n.1; with Subjv., *ib.* RR. 2, 3; *sive*, *ib.* n.4; *si quidem*, *ib.* n.5; *si modo*, *ib.* n.6; phrases, *ib.* n.1; range of tenses, *ib.* n.2. **IDEAL**, 596; for unreal, *ib.* n.1; shift to unreal, *ib.* n.2; after *nōn possum*, *ib.* n.3; in O.O., *ib.* n.5. **UNREAL**, 597; Impf. of Past, *ib.* n.1; Indic. in Apodosis, *ib.* RR. 2, 3; in O.O., *ib.* n.4; after a vb. requiring Subjv., *ib.* n.5; *abeque*, *ib.* n.1. **INCOMPLETE**, 598–601; omission of sign, 598; of vb. of Prot., 599; of Prot., 600; of Apod., 601; of COMPARISON, 602; in O.O. general consideration, 656; Logical, 657; Ideal, 658; Unreal, 659; Pf. Inf. and *potuisse*, *ib.* n.5.
- cōndūctīt**—with Dat., 346, n.2; with Gen., 379; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1.
- cōnfici**—with Inf., 533, n.1; with *tu*, 553, 3.
- cōfidēre**—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.2; with Abl., 401, n.6; with Inf., 527, n.2.
- cōfirmāre**—with Inf., 527, n.2.
- cōgruēre**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- cōjunction**—defined, 17; systems of, 120; first, 122; second, 123; irregular second, 124; third, 125; third in 15, 126; fourth, 127; deponents, 128; periphrastic, 129; notes on, 130, 131; change in, 136.
- cōjunction**—defined, 16, 7, and n.3.
- cōniungēre**—with Dat. or *cum*, 350, n.3.
- CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES**—exceptional sequence in, 513; syntax of, 551–558; general division, 551; Pure, 552; *tantum abest ut*, *ib.* n.1; with *dignus*, etc., *ib.* n.2; with idea of Design, *ib.* n.3; *ut nōn, without*, *ib.* n.4; Complementary, 553; vbs. of Effecting, 553; vbs. of Causation, *ib.* 1; of Compelling, etc., *ib.* 2; Happening, etc., *ib.* 3; impersonals, *ib.* 4; vbs. of Hindering, 554–556; *quīn* with vbs. of Preventing, 555, 1; with vbs. of Doubt, *ib.* 2; *quīn = ut nōn*, 556; *nōn dubitās quīn*, *ib.* n.1, 2; Explanatory *ut*, 557; Exclamatory question, 558; rel. sentences, 631; with def. antecedent, *ib.* 1; with indef. antecedent, *ib.* 2; with Comp., *ib.* 3; with adj., *ib.* 4; with *quīn*, 632; Indic. for Subjv., *ib.* 2, RR. 1, 2.
- cōsentāneum**—with Inf., 422, n.3.
- cōsentīre**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- cōsequī**—and **cōsequēns**, with *ut*, 553, 1 and 4.
- cōsiderē**—with *in* and Abl., 385, n.1.
- cōsilium**—in Abl. of Cause, 408, n.1; in phrases, with Inf., 422, n.2, and 428, n.2; “with dare and *ut*, 546, nn.1 and 2.
- cōsistēre**—with Abl. of Material, 396, n.1.
- cōsonants**—6; double, *ib.* 3; sounds of, 7; phonetic variations in, 9; combinations of, 10, n.1.
- cōnsors**—with Gen., 374, n.2.
- cōspicārī**—with Inf., 527, n.1.
- cōspicere**—with Inf., 527, n.1.
- cōstāre**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2; with Gen., 379; with Abl. of Material, 396, n.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.2.
- cōstituēre**—with *in* and Abl., 385, n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with *ut*, 546, n.1.
- cōstrūctiō**—*ad sēnsūm*, 211, R. 1, N. 3; *prae-gnās*, 699.

- cōnsuēscere**—with Inf., 422, n.2; **cōn-**  
**suētus**, with Inf., 421, n.1.c.  
**cōnsuētūdō**—in Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1;  
in phrases, with Inf., 422, n.2, or ut, 557,  
etc.  
**cōsulere**—with two Accs., 339 and n.1;  
with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.3; boni cō-  
sulere, 380, n.2.  
contemporaneous action—538–572; in Ex-  
tent, 569, 570; in Limit, 571–573.  
**contendere**—with Dat., 346, n.6; with  
Inf., 423, n.2; with ut, 546, n.1.  
**continēri**—with Abl. of Material, 396, n.1;  
contentus, with Abl., 401, n.6.  
**contingit**—with ut, 553, 3; contigit,  
with Dat., 346, n.2; sequence after, 513,  
n.2; attraction of pred. after, 535, n.3.  
**continēre**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, and  
n.2.  
**contrā**—position of, 412, n.1; as adv., 415;  
as prep., 416, 9; with atque, 643, n.3.  
**contracting**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.  
**contraction**—of shorts, 732.  
**contrāris**—with Gen. or Dat., 389, n.1;  
with atque, 643, n.3.  
**contrasts**—with hic—ille, 307, n.1.2;  
with ipse, 311, n.1; with aliquis, 314:  
alter—alter, etc., 323.  
**convenire**—Indic. for Subjv., 254, n.1;  
with Dat., 346, n.2, 347, n.2.  
**convicting**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; other  
constr., ib. n.2.  
**coördination**—defined, 472; without con-  
junction, 472, n.1; syntax of, 473–503;  
copulative, 474–482; adversative, 483–  
491; disjunctive, 492–497; causal and  
illative, 498–503.  
**cōspia**—with Inf., 428, n.2.  
**copula**—with pred., 205; itself a pred., ib.  
n.; omitted, 209; agrees with pred.,  
211, n.1, exx.c.  
**copulative**—vbs., 206; with Nom and Inf.,  
ib. n.3. Particles, 474; omitted, ib. n.,  
481. Sentences, 474–482; use of neg. to  
connect, 490.  
**cōr**—decl. of, 53, 8; cordi est, with Inf.,  
422, n.5.  
**cōfram**—as adv., 415; as prep., 417, 3.  
**cōrnus**—decl. of, 68, 5.  
**cōrpus**—decl. of, 48.  
**correlatives**—109–111; pronominal adjs.,  
109; advs., 110; cpds., 111; coördinating  
particles, as tum—tum, aliis—aliis,  
etc., 482; of Rel., 618; absorption of, 619,  
etc.; position of, 620; in comparative  
sentences, 643; omitted, 643, 3.  
**correction**—744.  
**cōs**—defective, 70, D.  
**countries**—in Acc., with prep., 237, n.1;  
without, ib. n.1; in Abl., 391, n.  
**cōsatisfādō**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.  
**cōrassus**—with Acc. of Extent, 336, n.1.  
**cōstātī**—as Loc., 411, n.1.  
**cōfāre**—with two Accs., 340; with two  
Noms., 206.  
**cōfātō**—vbs. of, with Inf., 230, 1.b.  
**cōfātō**—personal in pass., 217, n.1; with  
Dat., 346, n.2; with Inf., 527, n.2; or cōdi-  
tur, with Inf., 528, n.2.  
**cōfīcī**—foot, 734; substitutions for, 806;  
rhythms, 806–810.  
**cōfīcīfā**—with Inf., 529, n.1.  
**cōfīcīs**—as poss. pron., 106, n.4.  
**cōfīcī**—with Epexegetical Gen., 361, 2.  
**cōm**—and quom, 7; in composition, 9, 4;  
with subst. to form cpd. subj., 285, n.2;  
vbs. cpd. with take Acc., or Dat., 331,  
347; with Abl. of Attendance, 392, and  
n.1; to indicate Time, 394, n.2; with Abl.  
of Manner, 399; with unnatural produc-  
tions, 400, n.2; position of, 413, n.1; with  
Abl. Ger., 423; as prep., 417, 4; with eō  
and quod, 525, 2, n.2; (primum), as  
soon as, 561–563; Causal, 564, n.2; with

- cūra**—with **ut**, 546, n.2; **cūrae est**, with Inf., 422, n.5.
- cūrāre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; with part., 537, n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1; **cūrā ut** for Impv., 271, 1, and 2, n.2.
- curriculō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- Dactylic**—foot, 734; substitutions, 783; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 783-789.
- damnificus**—indeclinable, 85, C.
- daps**—defective, 70, D.
- dare**—Pf. **dedrot**, 131, 6; Pr. **danunt**, 133, IV, n.2; with ad. or Dat., 345, n.2; with Final Dat., 356, 2, **operam**; with Dat. Ger., 429, n.1, or **ut**, 546, n.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; **nūptium, etc.**, 435, n.1; with Pf. part., 537, n.2; **permit**, with **ut**, 553, 2.
- DATIVE**—defined, 23, 3; 1st decl. in **ī**, **ī**, **ībus**, **īs**, **īta**, 29, NN, 3, 4; 3d decl. in **īl**, **e**, 37, 2; 4th decl. in **ubus**, **ūl**, **ū**, 61, n.2; and n.2; 5th decl., uncommon, 63, n.1; in **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, n.2; in Greek substant., 66, n.2; in adj. in **īl**, **ī**, **ībus**, **īs** (for **īs**), 75, NN, 2, 6; in 1 of pron. adjs., 78, 2; with act. vb. unchanged in pass., 217, 346, n.1; given End with vbs. of Taking, etc., 340, n.2; with **ei** and **vae**, 343, I, n.2; of Indirect Obj., 344; with trans. vbs., 345; with vbs. of Taking Away, *ib.* n.1; and **prō**, *ib.* n.2; with intrans. vbs., 346; with cpd. vbs., 347; with vbs. cpd. with **dī**, **ex**, **ab**, *ib.* n.5; and Acc. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; of Possessor, 349; of Personal Interest, 350; Ethical, 351; of Reference, 358, 353; with particiles, 353; of Agent, 215, 354; Double, 356; with substant., 357; Local, 358; with adjs., 359; with cpds. of **dī**, **dis**, 390, 2, n.5; of Ger., 429.
- dī**—with Abl. for second Acc., 339, NN, 2, 3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347, n.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390, 1, and 2; to indicate Time, 394, n.2; with Abl. of Origin, 395, and n.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.1; with Abl. of Cause, 408, n.3; position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 418, 5; with Abl. Ger., 433; with part., 437, n.2; **dī eō quod**, 525, 2, n.2.
- death**—deponent vb. of a fact. in Abl. Abs., 410, n.1.
- dēbēre**—Indic. for Subjv., 254, n.1; Impf. as tenser of Disappointment, *ib.* n.2;
- with Pf. Inf., 280, 2, b, and n.8; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- decōrē**—with Pf. Inf., 280, 2, b, n.1; with Dat., 246, n.8; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2.
- dēcernere**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, and 546, n.1; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- declension**—defined, 17; varieties of, 27; rules for, 28; 1st, 29, 30, 2d, 31-33; stems in -ro and -ero, 32; 3d, 35-39; stems of, 35; formation of Nom. Sg., 38; liquid stems, 39-46; sibilant, 47-49; mute, 50-55; vowel, 56-59; 4th, 61, 62; 5th, 63, 64; vary between 5th and 3d, 63, n.2; of Greek substant., 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 73; of pron. adjs., 76; parts., 80.
- dēcōrūs**—with Abl., 397, n.2.
- decrewing**—vbs. of, with Dat. Ger., 429, 2.
- dēdeceſt**—with Inf., 422, n.4.
- dēeſſe**—with Dat., 349, n.4.
- dēffeſe**—with Gen. of Charge, 378, n.1.
- dēfēſſus**—with Inf., 421, n.1, c.
- dēfīcere**—with Acc., 346, n.3.
- dēfigere**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.
- dēgree**—advs. of, modify other advs., 459, n.2.
- dēicere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- dēlectārī**—with Acc., 346, n.3.
- deliberative questions—285; Subjv. in O.O., 651, n.2.
- dēliberātūm est**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- dēličium**—decl. of, 68, 3.
- dēligere**—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.
- dēmanding**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546.
- dēmergēre**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.
- dēmīrārī**—with Inf., 533, n.1.
- dēmōnstrārī**—with Inf., 527, n.2.
- demonstratives—104; attracted in Gender, 211, n.5, and n.3; syntax of, 305-307; **hic**, 308; **iste**, 306; **ille**, 307; **hic-ille**, *ib.* n.1, 2; advs. similarly used, *ib.* n.3; strengthened by **quidem**, *ib.* n.4; reflexive of, 521, n.5; followed by **quod**, 525, 2; continue a rel. clause, 636, n.1; position of, 676, n.1.
- dēmōvārī**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- denominative—179, 2 and n.; Pf. of vbs., 134, v.; formation of vbs., 192.
- dense growths—suffixes for, 181, 11.
- dentalis**—6, 1; suffixes with, 186.
- dēpellere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- deponent—113; conjugation, 128; list of, 163-166; semi-, 167; how used, 220.

- d&precarī**—with nō, 548, n.1.  
**déprehendi**—with Gen. of Charge, 378, n.1.  
**deprivē**—vbs. of, with Abl., 405, n.  
**derivative words**—179, 2.  
**descent**—suffixes for, 182, 11.  
**d&lderāre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**desiderative verbe**—formation of, 121, 3.  
**désinere**—with Inf., 423, 2, nn.2, 3.  
**desire**—adj. s. of, with Gen., 374 ; vbs. of, with Inf., 281, c. ; 423, 2, nn.2, 4; sequence after, 515, n.3 ; with Acc. and Inf., 532 ; with ut, ib. n.4 ; with part., 537, n.1 ; with complementary Final clause, 548.  
**d&misterē**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**d&sp&rāre**—with Dat., 346, n.2 ; with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**determinative pronouns**—103 ; syntax of, 308.  
**d&tterr&re**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2 ; with nō, 548, n.1 ; with quōminus, 549, n.1.  
**d&turb&re**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**deus**—decl. of, 33, n.6.  
**dexter**—decl. of, 74, n.1 ; Comp. of, 87, 1, n.1 ; ib. 2 and 7,  
**dieresis**—5, 753.  
**dialysis**—724.  
**diastole**—721.  
**dica**—defective, 70, D.  
**dicere**—with two Noms. in pass., 206 ; omission of, 209, n.5 ; dixerat as Aor., 241, n.1 ; dicat, dixerit aliquis, 257, 2 ; with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.1 ; with Nom. and Inf., 528, and n.1 ; dictur and dictum est, ib. n.2 ; not confined to 3d person, ib. n.4 ; with ut, 548, n.1 ; dic, with Indic. question, 457, n.1 ; dictū, in Sup., 426, n.  
**[dicīō]**—defective, 70, D.  
**dīs**—as Loc., 91, 3 ; as Abl. of Time, 303, n.5 ; dīs, by day, 91, 2, f.  
**difference**—measure of, 403 ; vbs. of, with Abl., ib. n.1.  
**differē**—with Dat., 346, n.6.  
**difficile**—comparison of, 87, 3 ; with est for Subjv., 254, n.1 ; with Inf., 421, n.1, c.  
**difficulty**—adj. s. of, with Abl. Sup., 436, n.2.  
**diffidere**—with Dat., 346, n.2, and n.2 ; not Abl., 401, n.6.  
**dign&ri**—with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2.  
**dignus**—with Gen., 374, n.10 ; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2 ; constr. after, 552, n.2 ; qui or ut, with Subjv., 631, 1, and n.2.  
**diluvium** heteroclite, 68, 6.  
**diminutive**—suffixes for, 181, 12, 182, 12 ; vbs., 192, 2.  
**diphthongs**—4 and n. ; length of, 14 ; quantity of, 705.  
**dis**—in composition, 9, 4.  
**disagreement**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346, n.6.  
**discere**—pass. of doct̄re, 336, n.4 ; with Inf., 527, n.1.  
**discrep&re**—with Dat., 346, n.6.  
**discurui&ri**—with Inf., 533, n.1.  
**disgust**—adj. s. of, with Gen., 374.  
**disinclination**—adj. s. of, for adva., 325, n.6.  
**disjunctive**—particles, 492 ; sentences, 492–497 ; particles omitted, 492, n. ; questions, 452 ; forms of, 458 ; indirect, 490, 2.  
**displeasure**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346 ; adj. s. of, with Abl. Sup., 426, n.2.  
**displac&re**—with Dat., 346, n.2 ; displacet, with Inf., 422, n.4.  
**disproportion**—by quam prō, qui, ut, etc., 296 ; by positive, with prepa., ib. n.2 ; omission of ut after quam, ib. n.2.  
**disput&re**—with Gen., 377, n.1 ; with Inf., 422, n.4.  
**dissentire**—with Dat., 346, n.6.  
**dissimilation**—of Consonants, 9, 5.  
**disimilis**—Comp. of, 87, 3.  
**disimilare**—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**dista&det**—with Gen., 377, n.1.  
**distare**—with Acc., or g and Abl., 235, n.2 ; with Dat., 346, n.6 ; with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1.  
**distributes**—97 ; with pluralia tantum, ib. n.3 ; for cardinals, ib. n.1, 296, n. ; syntax of, 296 ; in apposition, 223.  
**diverbum**—747.  
**dives**—Comp. of, 87, 10.  
**divinam rem facere**—with Abl. of Means, 401, n.4.  
**doct̄re**—with two Accs., or dīs, 336, and n.1 ; with ab, ib. n.2 ; doct̄us, ib. n.2, and n.4 ; discere as pass., ib. n.4 ; constr. after, 423, n.6.  
**doing**—vbs. of, take obj. clause, 523, and 525, 1, and n.4.  
**dol&re**—with Inf., 533, n.1 ; dolet, with Dat., 346, n.1 ; with Dat. and Inf., 533, n.1.  
**dol&s**—as Abl. of Mauner, 399, n.1.  
**domus**—decl., 61, n.2, 68, 5 ; Acc. as Limit of Motion, 337 ; Abl. of Separation, 300, 2 ; domi, 411, n.2 ; with Gen. of poss., pron., 411, n.4.

- dōnare**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1.  
**dōnec**—derivation, 568 and n.; of complete coextension, with Indic., 569; until, with Indic., 571; inverse, ib. n.6; with Subjv., 572; to express subordination, ib. n.2.  
**dōnicum**—568; range of, 571, n.4.  
**dōnique**—range of, 571, n.4.  
**doubt**—vbs. of, with **quin**, 555, 2.  
**dropping**—vbs. of, with **quod** clause, 528, 1; with **ut**, ib. n.4.  
**dubitare**—an, 457, 2; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; nōn dubitō, with **quin**, 555, 2, n.1; with Interrog., ib. n.2; with Inf., ib. n.3, and n.  
**dubium**—with an and Subjv., 457, 2.  
**dūcere**—with pred. Nom. or phrase, 206, -n.1; with Final Dat., 356, n.2; with Gen. of Price, 379; pēnsā dūcere, 390, 1, n.2; deem, with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2; lead, with **ut**, 553, 2.  
**dum**—enclitic, with Impv., 209; with Pr. Indic., 229, n.1; force of, 568, n.1; of complete coextension, 569; of partial coextension, 570; until, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572; to express subordination, ib. n.2; provided that, 573; with modo, ib.; with Pr. for participle, 570, nn.1 and 2; causal, ib.; retained, with Indic. in O.O., 655, n.3, 663, 1, n.1.  
**dummodo**—provided that, 573.  
**duo**—decl. of, 73, n. 96, and **ambō**, uterque, 292.  
**dūritia**—heteroclite, 68, 2.  
**duty**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and n.2.
- E**—sound of, 8; weakening of, 8, 1; length of final, 707, 2; 5 and ex in comp., 9, 4.  
**ease**—adj. of, with Abl. Sup., 436, n.2.  
**ebur**—decl. of, 44, 5.  
**ēcastor**—strengthens atque, 477, n.2.  
**ēcce**—with Acc. and Nom., 343, 1, n.2.  
**equis**—106 and n.5.  
**ecthipsis**—719, 2.  
**ēdere**—conjugation of, 172, n.  
**ēdōcere**—with Inf., 527, n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.  
**ēdōcere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**effecting**—vbs. of, have Final Sequence, 543, n.1, and n.2; constr. of, 553.  
**efferre**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**ēffōcere**—with Subjv. and **ut**, 553, 1 and 3; with Inf., 527, n.2, 553, 2, n.  
**egēnus**—Comp. of, 87, 5; with Gen. or Abl., 405, n.3.  
**egēre**—with Gen. or Acc., 383, 1, 405, n.2.  
**ego**—decl. of, 100; Gen. Pl. nostrum, nostrī, 100, n.2, 304, 2 and 3; poss. pron. instead, ib. 2, n.2; nōs in O.O., 660, 4.  
**ēgredi**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**ēgregiē**—adv. of Degree, 439, n.2.  
**ei**—with Dat. in exclamations, 343, 1, n.2.  
**ēcōcere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**ēlabi**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**Elegiambus**—621.  
**ēliōsis**—719, 1; in Iam. Sen., 759, n.3; in Dac. Hex., 784, n.5; in Pent., 786, n.2; in Sapphic, 797, n.3; in Asclepiadean, 802, n.2.  
**ellipsis**—688; see **Omission**.  
**ēm**—with Acc. of Exclamation, 343, 1, n.2.  
**ēmēre**—with Gen., 379; bene emere, 390, 2, n.  
**ēminēce**—words of, with Abl., 397, n.2.  
**ēmittere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.  
**ēmotion**—vbs. of, with Acc., 330, n. and n. 2, 333, 1, n.1; vbs. of, with Abl. of Cause, 408; with Acc. and Inf., 533; in Nom. of Part., 536, n.2; Causal sentences after, 542 and n.2; perplexing, with indirect question or si, 542, n.1.  
**ēphāsia**—in arrangement, 672, 2, a.  
**ēn**—in exclamations, 343, 1, n.2.  
**ēnallage**—693.  
**ēnclitics**—effect of, on pronunciation, 15, n.1.  
**ēndearor**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546, 1.  
**ēndōing**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, 2 and n.2.  
**ēndōings**—of cases, 26, 2, 27.  
**ēndōwing**—vbs. of, with Abl. of Means, 401, n.1.  
**ēnim**—position of, 413, n. 3, 484, n., 498, n.1; yes for, 471, n.; strengthens sed, 485, n. 3, 498; nōneverative, 498, n.2; combinations of, ib. n.6; after quia, ib. n.7.  
**ēnimvērō**—strengthens sed, 485, n.3.  
**ēnīti**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**ēnumerations**—in Abl. without in, 387.  
**ēpanorthosis**—484, n.1.  
**ēpenthesis**—of vowels, 8, 3; of consonants, 9, 7.  
**ēpēcēne substantives**—21, 3.  
**ēpōlūm**—heteroclite, 68, 3.  
**ērgē**—use of, 416, 10; with Acc. Ger., 422, n.1.

- ergō**—with Gen., 373; as adv., 399, n.1; with Gen. Ger., 428, n.2; usage of, 502 and n.1; position of, *ib.* n.2; combinations of, *ib.* n.3.
- ēripere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- ērudire**—with Abl. or dī, 330, n.2 and n.3; with in or Abl., 401, n.1.
- esse**—conjugation of, 116; early forms, *ib.* nn.; cpds., 117; as copula, 206; **esse prō**, in numerō, *etc.*, 206, n.1; omitted, 200 and nn., 280, 2, *b.* 2 and c; with Fut. part. to form periphrastic, 247; cpd. tenses with **fui**, *etc.*, *ib.* n.1; forem for **essem**, *ib.* n.1, 250, n.2, 251, n.2; with Pr. part., 247, n.2; **futurum esse ut**, 248; other forma, *ib.* nn.; in eō est ut, 249; with Pf. part., 250; variations, *ib.* nn., nn.; with Ger., 251, 1; with Final Dat., 354, n.2; with Double Dat., *ib.* n.3; with Gen., 379; with in and Acc., 385, n.3; with Abl., 401, n.7; with Gen. Ger., 428, n.2; with Dat. Ger., 429, 1; futurus as adj., 427, n.1; **esse quod**, 525, 1, n.2; est, it is the case, with ut, 533, 3; fuit cum, with Subjv., 580, n.1; restrictions with, 627, n.2; sunt qui, with Subjv., 631, 2.
- esseda**—heteroclite, 98, 1.
- et**—in numerals, 96, 4, 97, 4; **et**—**et**, with Pl., 235, n.; usage of, 476; = **et** *tamen*, *ib.* n.1; for **etiam**, *ib.* n.2, 482, 5, n.2; omitted, 481, 2, n. and 3; with adjs. of Likeness and Unlikeness, 643, n.2.
- etenim**—use of, 496 and nn.
- Ethical Dative**—351.
- etiam**—strengthens comparative, 301; syntax of, 478 and nn.; *yes*, 471, 1; and **quoque**, 479 n. and n.1; with **tum**, 478, n.1; after **sed**, **vérum**, 482, 5, and n.1.
- etiam si**—603 and n.; syntax of, 604 and nn.
- et si**—603; with Indic. or Subjv., 604; and *yet*, *ib.* n.2; with part., 609, n.1, 667, n.; with adj. or adv., *ib.* n.2; with Inf., 636, n.2.
- ēvādere**—with two Noms., 203.
- ēvenit**—with Dat., 246, n.2; with ut, 553, 3.
- ēvent**—suffixes for, 181, 2.
- ēvertere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- ex**—in comp., 9, 4; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347, n.5; with Abl. of Separation, 360, 1 and 2; with Towns, 391, n.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395 and n.2; with Abl. of Material, 396; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.1; with Abl. of Measure, 402, n.2; with Abl. of Cause, 408, n.3, 412, n.1; use as prep., 417, 6; with Abl. Ger., 433; **ex eō quod**, 525, 2, n.2.
- exadversus**—use of, 416, 2.
- exēdere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- excellere**—with Dat., 347, n.4; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.3; with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1.
- exceptō**—with **quod**, 525, 2, n.2.
- exclamations**—in Acc., 343, 1; in Gen., 383, 3; in Acc. and Inf., 584; exclamatory questions, 558.
- excludere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- excluding**—vbs. of. with Abl., 390, 2.
- exemplum**—in phrases with **ut**, 546, n.2.
- exigere**—with ordinal, 294; with two Accs., 339 and n.1.
- exire**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- existimare**—with Gen., 379; with ex and Abl., 402, n.2; with Nom. and Inf., 538, n.1; with Acc. and Inf., 537, n.2.
- exīx**—defective, 85, 2.
- exōrāre**—with ut, 553, 2.
- exōrdīrī**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- expedit**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- expellere**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- expērī**—with Gen., 374, n.2; with Abl., 390, 3, n.1.
- expētere**—with Pf. Inf. pass., 290, 2, n. n.
- explērī**—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2; explēnūt, 133, iv, n.2.
- explicative cum**—580, nn.1, 2, 582.
- expōnere**—with in and Acc., 385, n.2.
- expōscere**—with two Accs., 339 and n.1.
- exprimere**—with ut, 553, 1.
- expūgnāre**—with ut, 553, 1.
- exsequiās**—with fre, 333, 2, n.
- exsistērī**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- exsolvērī**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- expectātōne**—as Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1.
- expēsē**—defective, 85, 2.
- extēnt**—in Degree, 334; in Space, 335; in Time, 336; Acc. of. as subj. of pass., 336, n.3.
- extēriōr**—Comp. of, 87, 2 and 7.
- extorquērī**—with ut, 553, 1.
- extrē**—as adv., 416; as prep., 416, 11.
- extrēmūm**—Comp. of, 87, 2; with mass. subj., 211, n.4; with ut, 553, 4.
- exturbārē**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.

- exui**—with Acc. of Respect, 328, n.2; with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1.
- facere**—early Pt., *feced*, 131, 6; omission of, 200, n.5; *mirum factum*, 209, n.2; *fac* (*ut*) for Impv., 271, 1; *liddes* and second Acc., 342; with pred. Gen., 366, n.1; *nihil reliqui*, 369, n.2; *quod facere possum*, 372, n.3; with *reum* and Gen., 378, n.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; *boni*, *ib.* 1, n.2; (*sacrum*) *facere*, with Abl., 401, nn.4, 7; *finem facere*, with Dat. Ger., 420, n.1; *represent*, with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2; with Pf. part., 537, n.2; with consecutive clause, 553, 1; with Inf., 553, 2, n.; *facere (faxō) ut as periphrasis*, *ib.* 1; *nōn possum* (*facere*) *quin*, 556; Sup. of, 438, n.
- facilis**—comparison of, 87, 3; with Inf., 421, n.1.c.
- facinus**—with *est* and Inf., 422, n.2.
- faex**—decl. of, 52, 7, 70, C.
- fagus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- falsus**—without Comp., 87, 9; with *ut*, 553, 4.
- fama**—with *est* and Inf., 527, n.2.
- fames**—heteroclite, 68, 8.
- fari**—conj. of, 175, 3, and n.
- fas**—70, B.; with Inf., 422, n.2, 428, n.2; with Abl. Sup., 436, n.2.
- fastening**—vbs. of, with *ex*, *ab*, *dīs*, 385, n.2.
- fastidiosus**—with Gen., 374, n.5.
- fatīs**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.
- fatum**—with *est* and Inf., 422, n.2, and 428, n.2.
- [faux]**—decl. of, 52, 7.
- favōre**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- fear**—sequence after vbs. of, 515, n.3; clauses of, and Final Clauses, 543, n.3; syntax of clause of, 550; Inf. or Indirect question after, *ib.* nn.4, 5.
- femur**—decl. of, 44, 5, 68, 12.
- ferō**—position of, 677, n.1.
- ferre**—with *feedus*, 333, 2, n.
- ferōx**—with *est* and Inf., 533, n.1.
- ferre**—conj. of, 171; 18<sup>gem</sup> with *ut*, 546, n.1; in phrases with *ut*, 553, 1 and 2.
- fēstīnāre**—with Inf., 433, 2, n.2.
- ficus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- fidem**—habēre with Dat., 346, n.5.
- fidere**—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.2; with Abl., 401, n.6.
- fieri**—conjugation of, 173 and nn.; with two Noms., 206, 304, n.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; with *ex* or *dīs*, 396, n.2; = *to be sacrificed*, with Abl., 401, nn.5, 7; with *ut*, 553, 3; *fieri potis est ut, ib. n.*
- figure**—Whole and Part, 323, n.2; Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric, 688–700; of Prosody, 718–728.
- flīa**—decl. of, 29, n.4.
- fillīng**—vbs. of, with Abl., 406.
- flīum**—heterogeneous, 67, 2, b.
- FINAL SENTENCES** — with Interrogative particle, 470; general view, 543, 544; Pure, 545; *ut nōs*, or *ut nōn*, *ib.* n.1, 2; Complementary, 546–549; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546; Inf. instead, *ib.* 1; with vbs. of Hindering, 547–549; Subjv. without *ut*, *ib.* n.2; *ut nōs*, *ib.* n.3; with Substantives, *ib.* n.2; Inf. instead, *ib.* n.3; *nō* with vbs. of Preventing, 548; *quōminus*, 549; with vbs. of Fear, 550; eight circumlocutions for, 544, n.2; sequence in, 512.
- final syllables**—quantity of, 711–713.
- fine**—in Gen. or Abl., 378, n.3.
- fine(l)**—as prep., 417, 7.
- fitness**—adj., of, with Dat., 359; with Dat. Ger., 420.
- flīgitāre**—with Abl. or *E*, 339, n.1, and n.1; with *ut*, 546, nn.1, 3.
- flīgitū hominis**—369, n.1, 361, n.3.
- flīmen**—defective, 70, D.
- flīocī**—as Gen. of Price, 380, 1.
- fluere**—with Abl. of Means, 401, n.5.
- flīmen**—with Gen. of App., 361, n.1.
- foodus**—with *ferre*, 333, 2, n.; in phrases with *ut*, 546, n.2.
- following**—vbs. of, with *ut*, 553, 3.
- foot**—in Metre, 723; names of, 734; equality of, 740; conflict of Word and Verse, 750.
- forks**—91, 1, d.
- forbidding**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; with *nōs*, 548.
- forgetting**—vbs. of, with Gen. or Acc., 376 and n.2.
- FORMATION OF WORDS**—176–200; simple words, 179–192; primitives and derivatives, 179; suffixes, 180; formation of substant., 181; of adj., 182; with suffixes, 183. Suffixes in detail—vowels, 184; gutturals, 185; dentals, 186; labials, 187; *s*, 188; liquids, 189; formation of vbs., 190; *verbēlia*, 191;

- frequentatives or intensives, *ib.* 1; inchoatives, *ib.* 2; desideratives, *ib.* 3; causatives, *ib.* 4; meditatives, *ib.* 5; dēnominativa, 192; cpd. words, 193-200; substs., 191-198; vbs., 199, 200; see compounds.
- formidare**—with Inf., 423, n.2, and 533, n.1.
- fortis**—457, n.2.
- forte nisi**—591, n.4, and n.3.
- fortiter**—very, 439, n.3.
- forum**—defective, 70, D.
- fraude**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- fremere**—with Acc. and Int., 533, n.1.
- frequēns**—in pred. attribution, 325, n.6; with Abl., 405, n.3.
- frequente verbo**—formation of, 191, 1.
- fretum**—heteroclitic, 68, 5.
- fretus**—with Abl., 401, n.6.
- friendliness**—adj. of, with Dat., 359.
- frigi**—85, C.; Comp. of, 90.
- frui**—with Abl., 407, and n.2, b; personal Ger., 427, n.5.
- frūnise**—with Abl., 407, n.2, b.
- [**frūx**]—defective, 70, D.
- fugere**—with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2, n.2; fugit mō, with Pr. Inf., 281, 2, n.
- fugitāns**—with Gen., 275, n.2.
- fulmentum**—heteroclitic, 68, 3.
- fulness**—suffixes for, 182, 10.
- fulness**—adj. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Gen., 383, 1.
- function**—suffixes for, 181, 9; in Dat. Ger., 429.
- fungi**—with Abl., 406 and n.2, c; personal Ger., 427, n.5.
- fūstis**—heteroclitic, 68, 5.
- FUTURE**—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; early forms, 130, 3; part. in **firmum** for fem., 211, n.1; definition of, 223; usage of, 243; of **vōlō** and **possūm**, *ib.* n.2; as gnomic, *ib.* n.1; in Impv. sense, 243; periphrastic, 247; Indic. for Dellberative Subjv., 254, n.2; part. act., 283; part. as subst., 437, n.1; part. as an adj., 438, n.; representation of in O. O., 514, 515; periphrastic in Unreal Cond., *ib.* n.1; Inf., 530; in rel. sentences, 622; syntax of part., 669, 670.
- FUTURE PERFECT**—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; in **sō**, 131, 4, b, 1; defined, 223; syntax of, 244; as Fut., *ib.* n.1; with **nōlō**, **vōlō**, **possūm**, etc., *ib.* n.3; in both clauses, *ib.* n.4; independent use of, *ib.* n.1; periphrastic, with **habēd**, *ib.* n.2; as Impv., 245; Representation of, in O. O., 514, 515; Pf. and Plupf. periphrastic in Unreal Condition, 515, n.1; in rel. sentences, 622.
- Gallimadic Verse**—818.
- gaudēre**—with *sl.*, 542, n.1; **gēvisus** as Pr., 282, n.
- gender**—19; commoun, 21, 1; epicene, *ib.* 3; **substantiva mōbilis**, *ib.* 2; of 1st Decl., 30; of 2d Decl., 34; of 3d Decl., 36, 43, 46, 49, 55, 58; of 4th Decl., 62; of 5th Decl., 64; concord in, 286, neut. Pl. with feminines, *ib.* 2.
- GENITIVE**—defined, 23, 2; of 1st Decl. in **ss**, **sl**, **um**, **23, nn., nn.**; of 2d Decl. in **g** (from stems in **io**), **in um**, **in sl**, **23, nn., nn.**; of 3d Decl. in **us**, **es**, **37, 1**; in **um**, **ium**, **38, 2**, **54**, **57, n.3**; of 4th Decl. in **os**, **is**, **1, um**, **61, n.1**; of 5th Decl. in **ss**, **sl**, **8**, **63, n.1**; of Greek subst. in **ōn**, **ōm**, **65, n.1**; **oēs**, **66, n.1**; of adjs., **73**; in **l**, **sl**, **ses**, **es**, **um**, **75, nn.**; of pron. adjs. in **fus**, **76, 1**; of adjs. of three endings in **um**, **ium**, **79, n.2**, **82**, **83, n.2**; of Comp. of part., **89, n.3**; of Cardinals, **95, n.2**; of Distributives, **97, n.1**.
- not subj. of pass., 217, n.1; with **mille**, 293 and n.; with Comp. for Abl., 296, n.2; **mei**, etc., as objective, 304, 2; **nostrum** as Part., *ib.* 3; poss. pron. for Gen., 304, 2, n. 2; in app. to poss. pron., 321, n.2; Part. Gen. for Part. App., 323, n.; with **nōmen est**, 349, n.6; general view, 360; translated by abstract subst., *ib.* n.2; Adnominal, Appositive, 361; Epexegetical, 361; Possessive, 362; **flāgitium hominis**, 361, n.1; Family, 362, n.1; Chorographic, *ib.* n.2; Subjective and Objective, 363; two with one subst., *ib.* n.2, 1st and 2d persons as possessive, 364; of Quality, 365; as Pred., 366, with **facere**, *ib.* n.1; **auctōris**, *ib.* **generis**, 368, n.; with prepositional subst., 373; with adjs., 374 and nn.; with participles and verbs, 375; with vbs. of Memory, 376; with vbs. of Emotion, 377; with Judicial vbs., 378; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 379, 380; with **interest** and **refert**, 381; with vbs. of Fulness, 383, 1; with vbs. of Separation, *ib.* 2; in Exclamations, *ib.* 3; pred. with Inf., 422, n.5; Ger., 428; with **cōesse**, **causā**, etc., *ib.* n.

- 2; Ger. with Pl. subst., *ib.* n.1; Ger. with vb., *ib.* n.4; position of, 676 and nn.1.2.
- genus**—decl. of, 48; id **genus**, 336, n.2; with Epexegetical Gen., 361, 2.
- gerēns**—with Gen., 375, n.2.
- GERUND** and **GERUNDIVE**—112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; early forms, 120, 8; Agent of, in Dat., 215, 2; with **ease** to form periphrasis, 251; force of Gerundive, *ib.* n.1; syntax of, 425–432; and Inf., 425; and vb., 428; Gerundive for Gerund, 427; impersonal Gerundive, *ib.* n.2; from intrans. vbs., *ib.* n.4; Gen. of, 428; Inf. instead, *ib.* n.2; depending on vb., *ib.* n.4; Dat. instead, *ib.* n.5; Dat. of, 429; Acc. of, 430; Abl. of, 431; paralleled by part., *ib.* n.3; Acc. of, with preps., 432; with ad after vbs. of Hindering, *ib.* n.1; Abl. of, with preps., 433.
- gestire**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 533, r.1.
- gignere**—(*genitus*), with Abl. of Origin, 385, n.1.
- giving**—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348; with Inf., 423, n.1.2.; with Acc. Ger., 430.
- glōriārl**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, r.2.
- glōriōnum**—with est and Inf., 422, n.3.
- Glycmonic verse—795.
- gracilis**—Comp. of, 87, 3.
- gratiā**—with Gen., 373; with poss. pron., *ib.* n.2; with Gen. Ger., 428, r.2; **gratītis**, as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- gratificārl**—with Dat., 346, r.2.
- gratulārl**—with Dat., 346, r.2.
- gravārl**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- Greek substantives—decl. of, 65; Greek Acc., 338.
- growth**—vbs. of, in Abl. Abs., 410, n.1.
- guttural**—vowels, 2, 1; consonants, 6, 1; suffixes with, 185.
- habēre**—with two Noms. in pass., 206; with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of the Result, 238, 241, n.2, 244, n.2; first Impv. wanting, 267, n.; with two Accs., 340, n.1; with prō, locō, numerō, and a second Acc., *ib.*; with Final Dat., 356, n.2; with Gen. of Price, 379; pēnaf habēre, *ib.* 1, n.2; with in and Acc., 386, n.3; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; habeō dicendum, *ib.* n.2; *be able*, with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- habit**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and n.2.
- haerēre**—with Dat., 346, n.6.
- hanging**—vbs. of, with ex, ab, d5, 385, n.2.
- happening**—sequence after vbs. of, 512, r.2; vbs. of, with quod clause, 525, 1; ut instead, *ib.* n.5; vbs. of, with consecutive clause, 553, 3.
- hardening—in a verse, 723.
- hand**—441 and 443, with nn.; sciō an, 457, 2.
- (h)avēre—175, 4.
- helluārl**—with Abl., 407, n.2.c.
- hendizlys**—698.
- heteroclitics**—68.
- heterogeneous substantives**—67.
- heterologa**—69, c.
- hiatus**—defined, 720; in Iam. Oct., 763, n.; in Anap. Oct., 778, n.1; in Dact. Hex., 784, nn.6, 7, in Sapphic, 726, n.
- hic**—104, 1 and nn.; syntax of, 305; contemptuous character of, 306, n.; and illē, 307, nn.1, 2; strengthened by quidem, *ib.* n.4; two forms of, refer to different subsets., *ib.* n.3: hic—illē, hinc—hinc, hinc—inde, hinc—illinc, illinc—hinc, inde—hinc, 482, 2; hoc with ut, 557, n. hūius, in Gen. of Price, 390, 1; with Abl. of Time, 393, r.4; in Ö. O., 660, 3; hinc as coördinating conjunction, 503.
- hiems**—decl. of, 40; in Abl. of Time, 393, r.5.
- hindering**—sequence after vbs. of, 543, n.2 and n.2; vbs. of, with nō, 548; with quin, 554–556; and vbs. of Preventing, 555; and vbs. of Doubt, *ib.* 2.
- Historical cum—585 and nn.
- HISTORICAL INFINITIVE—parallel with Impt., 254, r.; syntax of, 647; conjunctions with, *ib.* n.2.
- HISTORICAL PERFECT—224; force of, 239; and Pure Pf., 235; and Impt., 231, 240; for Plupf., 239, n.; as Potential of Past, 258, n.2.
- HISTORICAL PRESENT—224 and 229; with dum, 229, n. 570.
- historical tenses—225.
- hodiernus**—in pred. Attrib., 325, r.6.
- homō**—in early Latin, 42, n.
- honor**—and honda, 45, n.
- hope**—constr. of, vbs. of, 423, n.5; sequence after, vbs. of, 515, r.3; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 527, r.4.
- HORACE**—Lyric Metres of, 828.

- horràre**—with Inf., 423, n. 2.  
**horràscere**—with Inf., 423, n. 2.  
**hortàri**—with Inf., 423, n. 2; with *ut*, 546, n. 1; **hortàtus**, as Pr., 282, n.; **hortàtū**, as Abl. of Cause, 408, n. 1.  
**humilis**—Comp. of, 87, 3.  
**humus**—in Abl. of Separation, 390, 2, n. 4; **humī**, as Loc., 411, n. 2.  
**hypallagē**—693.  
**hyperbaton**—696.  
**hypotaxis**—472.
- I**—and J., 1, R. 2; sound of, 3; weakening of, 8, 1; effect of, on preceding vowel, 12, n. 2; I-class of vb. stems, 133, vi.; length of final, 707, f.
- iam**—with Pr. Indic., 230; **iam dū**, **iam pridem**, *ib.*; with Impf. Indic., 234; **iam—iam**, 482, 1, and n. 1; **iam vèrō**, 487, n. 3; **iam dūdum**, with Impv., 260. **iambelegue** verse—820.
- iambic**—law, 716, 717; foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 757–767.
- ictus**—conflict of, with Accent, 749.
- IDEAL CONDITION**—from present point of view, 598, 1; from past point of view, *ib.* 2; = Ureal, *ib.* n. 1; shift to Ureal, *ib.* n. 2; after *nōn possum*, *ib.* n. 3; in O. O., *ib.* n. 5, 658.
- Idem**—decl. of, 103, 2, and nn.; syntax of, 310; with *que*, *et*, *atque*, *ib.* n. 1; *the same as*, with *qui*, *ut*, *atque*, *cum*, or Dat., 310, n. 3, 359, n. 6, 642, n. 1; not used with *is*, 310, n. 3; in pred. attrib., 325, n. 2.
- idōneus**—constrs. with, 552, n. 2; with *qui* and Subjv., 631, 1.
- iecur**—decl. of, 44, 6, 68, 12.
- īstūnus**—with Gen., 374, n. 1.
- igitur**—position of, 484, n.; usage of, 501; with *ergō*, 502, n. 3; correl. of *al*, 500, n. 1.
- ignorance**—adjn. of, in pred. app., 325, n. 6; with Gen., 374.
- Ignòrare**—with Inf., 527, n. 1.
- ignòscere**—with Dat., 346, n. 2.
- ILLATIVE SENTENCES**—499, 500.
- ille**—decl. of, 104, 3, and nn.; forms from *ollo*, *ib.* n. 1; Syntax of, 207; and *hic*, *ib.* n. 1, 2; *et ille*, *ib.* n. 2; strengthened by *quidem*, *ib.* n. 4; repeats a substant., *ib.* n. 2; two forms with different antecedents, *ib.* n. 3; refers to oblique case of *is*, *ib.* n. 4; with Abl. of Time, 203, n. 4; **illino**—*hinc*, *hinc*—*illine*.
- hic**—*illīc*, 482, 2; *illud* with *ut*, 557, n.; in O. O., 669, 2.
- illudere**—with Dat., etc., 347, n. 2.
- illustris**—with Abl. of Respect, 307, n. 2.
- imbēcillus**—and *imbēcillis*, 64, 1.
- imber**—decl. of, 44, 2, 45, n. 1.
- imberbis**—and *imberbus*, 64, 2.
- immāne**—with quantum and Indic., 487, n.
- immēnsūm**—with quantum and Indic., 487, n.
- immo**—use of, 471, c; scansion of, 717, n. 1.
- immōlare**—with Abl. of Means, 461, n. 4.
- immunis**—with Abl. of Sep., 390, 3, n. 1.
- impedimentō**—with *esse* and *nō*, 548, n. 1.
- impedire**—with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with *nō*, 548, n. 1; with *quōminus*, 549, n. 1.
- impellere**—with *ut*, 553, 2; *impulsus*, *impulstū*, of Cause, 408, nn. 1 and 2.
- impendō**—*very*, 439, n. 3.
- impendre**—with Dat., etc., 347, n. 2.
- impēns**—*very*, 439, n. 3.
- imperare**—with Dat., 346, n. 2; with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2, 532, n. 1; with *ut*, 546, n. 1.
- IMPERATIVE**—112, 4; early forms, 130, 5; Subjv. for, 263; answers deliberative question, 265, n.; usage, 266–275; First and Second, 267; strengthening words, 269; negative of, 270; pronouns with, 267, n.; concord with, 211, n. 2; periphrases of, 271; representatives of, 272; of Past, 272, 3; tenses of, 278; for Protagos, 593, 4; in Subjv. with O. O., 658 and n. 1.
- IMPERFECT**—112, 3; early forms, 130, 2; force of, 233, 231; and Hist. Pf., 233; of Endeavor, Disappointment, and Resistance to Pressure, 233; a tense of Evolution, *ib.* n. 1; overlapping, *ib.* n. 2, 563; of Awakening, *ib.* n. 3; with *iam*, etc., 234; of opposition to Present, 254, n. 2; in Apodosis of Action begun, *ib.* n. 3, 597, n. 2; as Potential of Past, 258; in Wish, 260; with *wellem*, *ib.* n.; Subjv. as Concessive, 284; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 272, 3; tense relations of Subjv., 277; in Sequence, 510, n.; in Coincidence, 513, n. 3. Subjv. as Principal Tense, 517, n. 2.
- impersonal verba**—206, 1 and 2; divine Agt. expressed, *ib.* 1, n.; vbs. of Saying, etc., 206, 2, n. 2, 528; in Ger. constr., 427, n. 4; with *ut*, 553, 4.

- impertire**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1; **laborem**, with Dat. Ger., 428, l.
- impetrare**—with ut, 553, l.
- implere**—with Gen., 383, l.
- implorare**—with ut only, 546, n.3.
- impunere**—with in and Acc., 385, n.2.
- impos**—with Gen., 374, n.3.
- imprimere**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.
- imprudens**—in pred. attrib., 325, n.6.
- impulsus**—as Abl. of Cause, 408, n.1.
- in**—in composition, 9, 4; vbs. cpd. with take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Countries and Towns, 337, n.1; with Acc. for Dat., 345, n.2; with app. to Towns, 386, n.1; with books, 387; *throughout*, 388, n.; with recipere, 389; with Abl. of Time, 394, n. and n.2; with Abl. of Cause, 408, n.3; position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 418, l.; with Acc. Ger., 432, and n.1; with Abl. Ger., 433 and n.1; with part., 437, n.2; in *ex quod*, 525, 2, n.2.
- inans**—with Gen., 374, n.1.
- incendere**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- incendi**—with Irsg and Inf., 533, n.1; in-  
census, of Moving Cause, 408, n.2.
- incertum**—with an and Subjv., 457, 2.
- inchoative verbs**—133, v., 191, 2.
- incidere**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- incidere**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.
- incipere**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with Ordinal, 294, n.
- incipitus**—of Moving Cause, 408, n.2.
- inclination**—suffixes for, 182, 2.
- inclination**—adj. of, in pred. attr., 325, n. 6; vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and n.2.
- includere**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.
- incommodare**—with Dat., 346, n.1.
- incorporation**—of antecedent, 616; **qui** prudentis es, 616, 1, n.2; of correlative, 619.
- incredbile**—with Inf., 422, n.3; with quantum and Indic., 467, n.
- increpare**—charge, with Gen., 378, n.1.
- increpitare**—charge, with Gen., 378, n.1.
- incubare**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- incumbere**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- [indago]**—defective, 70, D.
- inde**—as coördinating conj., 503; in contrast with **hinc**, 482, 2.
- indecrus**—and indecoris, 84, 1.
- indefinite pronouns**—107; syntax of, 313-319; **quidam**, 313; **aliquis**, 314; **quis**, 315; **quispiam**, 316; **quisquam** and **illus**, 317; **quisque**, 318; **alter** and **alius**, 319; rel. with **Iudic.**, 254, n.4, 625.
- INDICATIVE**—112, 4; early forms of, 130, 1-4; meaning of, 254; in **Apodosia**, 254, n.3; with indef. rel., ib. n.4; Pr. for Deliberative Subjv., ib. n.3; tense relations of, 276; neg. of, 257; in questions, 463, 464; after **nesciō quis**, etc., 467, n.1; in Relative Sentences, ib. n.2; in Temporal Sentences, 560, l.; to express Design., 630, n.2.
- indigere**—with Gen., 383, l, 405, n.2.
- indignari**—with Inf., 533, n.1; with si, 542, n.1.
- indignus**—with Gen., 374, n.10; with qui, ut, or Inf., 552, n.2; with qui and Subjv., 631, 1 and n.1.
- indigus**—with Abl. or Gen., 405, n.3.
- induere**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1; **indui**, with Acc. of Respect, 338, n.2.
- indulgere**—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.3.
- inermis**—and **inermus**, 84, 2.
- incesse**—with Dat., etc., 347, n.2.
- Inferior**—87, 2; with Dat., 296, n.3.
- INFINITIVE**—112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; early forms, 130, 6; sorr. in -xe, etc., 131, 4, 6, 4; Fut. in **assere**, ib.; act. for pass., 213, n. c.; usage of, 279; assubst., 280; after dēbet, ib. 2, b, n.3; after decuit, oportuit, ib. 2, b, n.1 and 2; as representative of Indic., 281; after memini, etc., ib. 2, n.; syntax of, 419-424; with Acc. as subj., 420; an subst., 421; traces of Locative nature, ib. n.1; as subj., 422; as obj., 423; ut instead, ib. n.4; as pred. with esse, 425; with preps., ib. n.; Fut. pass., 425, n.4; sequence after, 518; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 527; part. instead, ib. n.1; tenses after these vbs., 529-531; after posse, velle, ib. n.3; after spērare, ib. n.4; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; with vbs. of Emotion, 533; ut instead, 532, nn.3, 4; in Exclamations, 534; and quod, ib. n.1; Acc. and Inf. as subj., 535; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546, n.3; with vbs. of Fear, 550, n.5; with dignus, etc., 552, n.2; Acc. and Inf. in Relative Sentences, 635; after potius, etc., 644, n.3, 646; in O. O., 650. See Hist. Inf.

- infinitum**—with est instead of sit, 254, n.1; with quantum and Indic., 467, n.1  
**infittis**—70, A.; ire, 333, 2, n.  
**inflection**—17.  
**infrā**—with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 12.  
**infrānus**—and **infrānis**, 84, 1.  
**ingrātīs**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
**ingenīl**—as Loc., with adj., 374, n.7.  
**ingredi**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**inhaerēre**—with Dat., etc., 347, 2, n.2.  
**inhīkē**—with Dat., etc., 347, 2, n.2.  
**inicere manū**—with Acc., 342.  
**infrāris**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
**innatūs**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**inner Object**—Acc. of, 328, 330, 332; Abl. instead, 333, 2, n.4; after vbs. of Taste and Smell, ib., 2, n.5.  
**inopā**—with Gen., 374, n.1; with Abl., 405, n.3.  
**inquām**—175, 2; **inquit**, impersonal, 208, 2, n.2; in citing O. R., 648, n.2; lacking forms supplied by dīcere, ib., n.3.  
**inquirīng**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339, and 8, 1, n.1 and 2.  
**Inscrībere**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.  
**insculpēre**—with in and Abl., 385, n.1.  
**inservīre**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**insignīs**—with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2; insigniter as adv. of Degree, 439, n.2.  
**insidiārl**—with Dat., 346, n.2.  
**insinuāre**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**insistēre**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**instar**—70, B.; with Gen., 373.  
**instīre**—with Dat., 347, n.2; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**instruēre**—with dīs, 339, n.3.  
**instrument**—suffixes for, 181, 6; in Abl., 214, 401; with ab., 214, n.2; Abl. of contrasted with Abl. of Attendance, 382, n.2.  
**INSTRUMENTAL**—case, 23, n.  
**insuētūs**—with Gen., 374, n.4.  
**integrūm**—with Inf., 422, n.3.  
**intelligēre**—with Inf., 527, n.1; intelligēti as Sup., 426, n.  
**intendēre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; intentus, with Abl., etc., 359, n.5.  
**intensive verbs**—formation of, 101, 1.  
**inter**—with reflexive to express reciprocal action, 221; vbs. cpd. with take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; to designate Time, 394, n.2; position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 416, 13; with Acc. Ger., 432 and n.1; with part., 437, n.2.  
**intercalāris**—and **intercalātūs**, 84, 2.  
**intercōdēre**—with Dat., 347, n.2; with n.8, 548, n.1; with quin, 555, 1.  
**interclūdere**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1; with Abl., 390, 2, n.3; with n.8, 548, n.1; with quin, 555, 1.  
**intercurrēre**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**interdioce**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3; with n.8, 548, n.1; with quin, 555, 1.  
**interdūm**—coördinated with aliq., 452, 1, n.1.  
**interesse**—with Dat., 347, n.2; interest, with Gen. and Abl., 381; with Nom., ib., n.3; constr. of Object of Concern, 382, 1 and 2; constr. of Thing Involved, ib., 3; with ut, 553, 4.  
**Interest**—Dat. of Personal, 360.  
**interior**—87, 2 and 8.  
**interaction**—16, n.2; no syntax, 201, n.1.  
**intermittēre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**internecīō**—defective, 70, B.  
**interpolāre**—with n.8, 548, n.1.  
**interponēre**—with n.8, 548, n.1.  
**interrogāre**—with two Accs., or dīs, 339, n.1 and n.1; with Indic., 467, n.  
**interrogative pronouns**—106; distinguished from rel., 467, n.2; with part., 409; in Final Sentence, 470; doubling of, ib., n.2.  
**INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES**—450—470; simple and cpd., 453; particles in, 454—457; moods in, 452—457; Indic., 463, 464; Subjv., 455, 456; after vb. of Wonder, 542, n.1; after vb. of Fear, 550, n.4; for Protasis, 553, 4; in O. O., 551 and n.2.  
**intervenīre**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**intrī**—to designate Time, 394, n.2; position of, 413, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 14.  
**intransitive verbs**—used impersonally, 206, 2; used transitively, 213, n. b; construed as pass., 214, n.1; with neut. subj. in pass., 217; with personal Ger., 217, n.2; with Pf. part. pass. used actively, 220, n.1; Gerund of, used impersonally, 251, 2.  
**infītātūm**—with ut, 553, 4.  
**invādēre**—with Dat., 347, n.2.  
**invēnīrī**—with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.1; inventī in Sup., 426, n.  
**inverse**—dōneō, 571, n.6; cum, 581; attraction of rel., 617, n.2.  
**invicēm**—to indicate reciprocity, 231, n.2.

- invidēre**—with personal pass., 217, n.1; with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.2; with Inf., 533, n.1.
- invīdus**—constr. of, 359, n.5.
- invitō**—in pred. app., 325, n.6; **invitō est**, 353, n.2.
- iocūlō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- iocūs**—heterogeneous, 67, 2.
- ionic**—foot, 724; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 818–819; substitutions for, 815.
- ip̄e**—decl. of, 103, 3 and n.; **ip̄eūs**, *ib.* n.2; syntax of, 311; **et ip̄e**, *ib.* 1, n.2; emphasizes reflexive, *ib.* 2; used indeclinably, *ib.* 2, n.; in O. O., 660, 5.
- irā**—of Moving Cause, 406, n.2; **incendōr** *irā* with Inf., 533, n.1.
- irāsci**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- ire**—169, 2; omission of, 209, n.5; with Dat., 358, n.2; with Sup., 425, n.1; with **infinitīs**, etc., 333, 2, n.
- is**—decl. of, 103, 1 and n.; strengthened by **quidam**, 307, n.4; taken up by **ille**, *ib.* n.4; two forms with different antecedent, *ib.* n.3; syntax of, 306; = **tālis**, *ib.* n.1; with **et**, **atque**, **que**, *ib.* n.2; for reflexive, 309, n.1; **id temporis**, **aetatis**, 336, n.2; **et** as coordinating conj., 503; **ideō**, **idcirō**, *ib.*; with **qui** and Subjv., 631, 1; with **ut**, *ib.* n.1, 557, n.; in O. O., 660, 2.
- islands**—in Local Acc., 337; with **in**, *ib.* n.1 and n.3; **per**, omitted with Large Islands, *ib.* n.1.
- iste**—decl. of, 104, II. and NN.; syntax of, 306; contemptuous character of, *ib.* n.; strengthened by **quidem**, 307, n.4; in O. O., 660, 3.
- ita**—with **ut**, 422, 4; correlative of **si**, 590, n.1; **yes**, 471, a.1.
- Italicus Numerus**—756.
- itaque**—usage of, 500; position of, *ib.* n.; with **ergō**, 502, n.3.
- iter**—decl. of, 44, 5.
- iterative action**—566, 567; Subjv. in, *ib.* n.; with **cum**, 584; in Relative Sentences, 623.
- ithyphallic**—verse, 774.
- iubēre**—with two Accs., 341, n.2; with Acc. and Dat., 346, n.3; constr. after, 423, n.6; with Acc. and Inf., 528 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 532, NN.1, 2; with Subjv., 546, n.2; **iussū**, defective, 68, 5; **iussū** as Abl. of Cause, 408, n.1.
- iudicāre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- [**iūger**]—decl. of, 68, 7.
- iunctus**—with Dat., etc., 359, n.3.
- iūs**—with Inf., 422, n.2, 428, n.2; with **respondēre**, 333, 2, n.; in phrases with **ut**, 546, n.2; **iūre**, 399, n.1; **iūre** in Abl. of Respect, 397.
- iūstō**—as Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1.
- iuvāre**—with Acc., 346, n.3.
- iūvenis**—Comp. of, 87, 9.
- iūxtā**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 15.
- Judgment**—vbs. of, with Abl. of Standard, 402.
- K**—sounds of, 1, n.1; name of, *ib.* n.
- knowledge**—adj. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; adj. of, with Gen., 374.
- Labials**—6, 1; suffixes with, 187.
- labōrem**—with **impertirō** and Dat. Ger., 429, 1.
- labōrare**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- lae**—decl. of, 53, 8; 68, 12.
- laedere**—with Acc., 346, n.3.
- laetārī**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.
- lamentārī**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.
- largiri**—with **ut**, 553, 2.
- later**—defective, 70, D.
- lātitūdine**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- lātus**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- laurus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- leaving**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- lectus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- length**—by nature, 12, 1, and n.; by position, *ib.* 2; representation of long vowels, *ib.* n.
- lengthening**—compensatory, 9, 6, a.
- letters**—tenses in, 252; advs. in, *ib.*; dated from a place, 391, n.3.
- lettō**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- levāre**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.2.
- lēx**—in phrases with **ut**, 546, NN.1 and 2; **lēge**, 397 and n.1, 398, n.1.
- liberālis**—with Gen., 374, n.1.
- liberāre**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.2.
- libet**—added to rels., 111, 3; exact use of **libuerit**, 244, n.3; **libēns**, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; with Dat., 346, n.2.
- licēre**—exact use of Fut. Pl., 244, n.3; with Dat., 346, n.2; with Gen., 379; **licet**, / although, 603–607; with **quamvis**, *ib.* n. 2; with Indic., *ib.* n.3.
- likeness**—suffixes for, 182, 4.

- likeness*—adj. of, with Dat., 349; with atque(fo), 643.  
*linguals*—6.1.n.  
*linter*—decl. of, 44.2, 45.r.1.  
*liquids*—6.2.A ; 3d Decl. stems in, 39-46; suffixes with, 189.  
*litare*—with Abl. of Means, 401.n.4.  
*litotes*—644.n.1, 700.  
*litterae*—in phrases with ut, 546.n.2.  
*living*—vbs. of, with Abl., 401.n.1.  
*Local Dative*—358.  
*locality*—suffixes for, 181.5, 182.9.  
*locke*—with Gen., 379; with in and Abl., 386.r.1; with Acc. Gen., 430.  
*LOCATIVE*—23.n.; of 1st Decl., 29.n.2; of 2d Decl., 33.n.3-6; 3d Decl., 37.5; forms adve., 91.3; syntax of, 411; in 3d Decl., ib. n.1; other Locs., ib. n.2; app. to, in Abl., ib. r.3; domi, with poss. pron., ib. r.4.  
*locus*—67.2; in locū habēre, 340.r.1; Abl. without in, 385.n.1.  
*logocentric rhythms*—790-805.  
*LOGICAL CONDITION*—595; with Subjv. by Attraction, ib. n.2; with Ideal 2d Person, ib. r.3; sive—sive, ib. n.4; si quidem, ib. n.5; si modo, vērō, tamen, ib. r.6; teuses in, ib. n.2; in O. O., 657, 595, r.1.  
*longinquus* Comp. of, 87.9.  
*longitudine*—with Acc. of Extent, 335, r.1.  
*longum*—with east for Subjv., 254.r.1; long<sup>s</sup> strengthens Comp. or Superlative, 301, 303; with Acc., 335.r.1.  
*loqui*—with Acc. and Inf., 527.n.2; with Indic. question, 467.n.  
*lubidō*—in phrases with Inf., 422.n.2.  
*lūdo facere*—with Acc., 342.  
*lūgre*—with Inf., 533.r.1.  
*lūx*—70.D; in Abl. of Time, 393, r.5.
- M**—final omitted, 27.n.  
*macte*—85.C, 325.r.1.  
*maeräre*—with Inf., 533.r.1.  
*magnificus*—Comp. of, 87.4.  
*magnitudine*—with Acc. of Extent, 335, r.1.  
*magnus*—comparison of, 90; constr. with maior, 296.n.5; magis, in comparison of Qualities, 290; magni, as Gen. of Price, 380.1; magnis, with luf., 422.n.3; maximis, as Gen. of Price, 380, 1; non magis quam, 644.n.1.
- making*—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340.  
*maledicere*—with Dat., 346,n.2.  
*maledicus*—Comp. of, 87.4.  
*malle*—conj. of, 174 and n.3; mālueram, could have preferred, 254,n.1; mālim, māllem, as Potential, 257.2, 258,n.1; in Unreal Wish, 261,n.1; with Abl., 266, n.1; with Abl. of Measure, 403,n.1; with Inf. or ut, 423.2,n.2, 538 and n.3, 546, n.1.  
*malus*—comparison of, 90; male as neg., 430, n.2.  
*mālare*—with Abl. of Means, 401,n.5.  
*māndare*—with ut, 546,n.1.  
*mānare*—as copulative vb., 206,n.1; with Abl., 401,n.6.  
*māni*—as Loc., 411,n.1.  
*manifestus*—with Gen., 374,n.2; with Inf., 421,n.1.c.  
*Manner*—Abl. of, 399 and nn.  
*manus inicere*—with Acc., 342.  
*mare*—in Abl. without in, 385, n.1.  
*margarita*—heteroclite, 68.1.  
*māteria*—heteroclite, 68.2.  
*Material*—Abl. of, 396; indicated by adj., ib.; suffix for, 182.4.  
*mātūrare*—with Inf., 423,2,n.2.  
*mātūrus*—Comp. of, 87.1,r.2.  
*mātūtinus*—in pred. Attr., 325,n.6.  
*Means*—Abl. of, 401, and an .nn.; suffixes for, 181.6.  
*measure*—vbs. of, take Abl., 402.  
*Measure*—Abl. of, 402; of Difference, 403; Abl. of, with vbs. involving Difference, ib. n.1; with ante and post, ib. n.4.  
*medēri*—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.4.  
*medīoximus*—87.9.n.  
*meditārī*—with Inf., 423,2,n.2.  
*meditative verbs*—formation, 191.5.  
*medium*—suffixes for, 182.6.  
*medius*—in pred. attrib., 325,r.6; used partitively, 291,r.2; Abl. used without in, 288.  
*memini*—175.5.5; First Impv. wanting, 267.r.; with Pr. Inf., 281,2,n.1; with Acc., 376, 2; with Inf., 423,2,n.2, 527, n.2; with cum and Indic., 580, r.2.  
*memorātū*—as Abl. Sup., 436, n.  
*memorātū teneō*—with Pr. Inf., 281,2,n.  
*menōdum*—heteroclite, 68.3.  
*mēns*—in phrases with ut, 557, n.; in mentem venire, with Gen., 376, n.3; in mentem venire, with Inf., 422, n.6.

- meritus**—Comp. of, 87,9 : **meritō** as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
**-met-**—added to personal pron., 102, n.2; to *ipse*, 103, 3, n.5.  
**metaplasta**—68.  
**metathesis**—of consonants, 9,8.  
**metre**—730; unit of, 731.  
**metuere**—with Dat., 346, n.2; with *ut*, n.6, or Inf., 550 and n.1; with Inf., 422, 2, n.2.  
**metus**—with Inf., 550, n.5.  
**metus**—73, n., 76 ; Voc. of, 100, n.1; early forms of, *ib* n.2; *synizesis* in, *ib* n.3, 727, n. : *mea mihi*, 399, n.2; *mei* with Gen., Ger., 428, n.1; wit. *ut*, 557, n.  
**middle voice**—212, n., 218; with Acc. of Respect, 338, n.2.  
**militia**—in Abl. of Time, 393, n.5; in Loc., 411, n.2.  
**mille**—a subst. in Pl., 95, n.3; inscriptive forms of, *ib* n.4; **milia**, with masc. vb., 211, n.1, Ex.6, use of, in Sg. and Pl., 293; as subst. with Part. Gen., 293, n.; **milia** for distributive, 295, n.  
**minfari**, **minitfari**—with Dat., 346, n.2; with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**minor**—*quam* omitted with, 296, n.4; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380, 1.  
**minöris**, **minimi**, as Gen. of Price, *ib*; **minus**, *no*, 471, 6, 1: **minimē**, *no*, *ib*; **sin minus**, 692; **si minus**, *ib* n. : **nōn minus quam**, 644, n.1.  
**mirfari**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 533, n.1; with *quod*, 542 ; with *si*, *ib*, n.1.  
**mirum**—with *factum* and *ni*, *quantum*, *quin*, 209, n.2, 467, n. ; with *quod*, 542 ; with *si*, 542, n.1, with *ni*, *ib*, n.2 ; with Inf., 422, n.3 ; with *quam* and Indic., 467, n. ; with *ut*, 553, 4.  
**misföre**—85, with Dat., 346, n.6; with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, n.1.  
**miserfari**—with Acc., 377, n.2.  
**miserföre**—with Gen., 377, n.1; **miseret**, with Gen., 377; **misereor**, with Gen., *ib* : **miserföcō**, with Gen., *ib*, n.1.  
**mittere**—**mitte**, with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2, n.2; with Inf., 422, n.3; with *quod*, 525, 1, n.1; followed by Impf. Indic. to give Design, 630, n.2; **missū**, of Moving Cause, 408, n.1.  
**mixed class of Verbs**—133, vii.  
**moderfari**—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.2.  
**modo**—strengthens Impv., 260 ; **modo**—**modo**, 482, 1; contrasted with *tum*, 513, 1, 2.  
**viciassim**, 482, 1, n.2: **nōn modo**—**sed etiam**, 482, 5: **nōn modo nōn**, **sed nō quidem**, *ib*, n.1: *provided only*, 573 ; **modo nō**, *ib*, n.2.  
**möllrfi**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**monere**—with Gen. or Acc., 376 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2 ; with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
**mood**—112, 4, 233; **Indic.**, 294; **Subjv.**, 255, 265; **Impv.**, 266, 275; **Inf.**, 279–281; attraction of 508, 4; in Temporal Clauses, 580 ; in Relative Sentences, 624–635; in Comparative Sentences, 639 ; in O. O., 650–652.  
**morfari**—with n.5, 548, n.1.  
**mörigerfari**—with Dat., 346, n.2.  
**mōs**—(**mōris**) with Inf., 422, n.2 and 5 ; with *ut*, 557, n. : **mōribus**, 399, n.1.  
**motion**—vb. of, with Inf., 421, n.1, a. vb. of, with Sup., 435 ; vb. of, with Fut. part., 438, n. ; vb. of, with *quod*, 525, 1, n.6, end of, conceived as Rest, 412, n.1.  
**movföre**—syncope in Pf., 131, 3 ; with Abl. of Separation, 390, n.1 ; with *ut*, 553, 2: **mōtus**, of Moving Cause, 408, n.2.  
**Mulciber**—heteroclite, 68, 4.  
**multfare**—with Abl., 378, n.3.  
**multitude**—subs. of, with Pl., 211, n.1.  
**Ex. a.**  
**multitfödō**—with Pl. vb., 211, n.1, Ex. a.  
**multum**—for Abl. of Measure, 403, n.2; *very*, 439, n.3 ; **multō** with Comp., 301 ; with Superl., 303.  
**minus**—with Inf., 422, n.2 ; with *ut*, 546, n.2.  
**mittfare**—with Abl., 404, n.1.  
**minus**—6, 2, B.  
**mitufödō**—of reciprocal action, 221, n.2.  
**myrtus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.  
  
**Nam**—usage of, 498 and nn. : position of, *ib*, n.1 ; assertative, *ib*, n.2 ; *yes for*, 471, n.1.  
**naming**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340.  
**namque**—498; position of, *ib*, n.1.  
**närrföre**—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**nasal**—6, 2, A. ; nasal class of vbs., 133, rv.  
**näscf**—with two Noms., 206 : **nästus**, constr. of, 206, n.5 ; with Acc., 336, n.4 ; with Abl. of Origin, 395, NN, 1, 3 : **nätfü** in Abl. Sup., 436, n.  
**nätföra**—in phrases with *ut*, 557, n.  
**naucum**—defective, 70, B. ; **nauci**, as Gen. of Price, 380, 1.  
**nō**—neg. of Opt. Subjv., 260 ; of Impv., 513, 1, 2.

- 270; continued by **neque**, 260; by **nōve**, 270. 444.2; with Pl. Subjv., 270. n.2; syntax of, 441. 444; = **nōn**, 444.1. n.2; **nō—quidem**, *ib.* 1. n.2, 445. 448. n.2, 482.5 and n.1; in Final Sentences, 543. 4; **ut nō**, 545. n.1; **quō nō**, *ib.*; parenthetical, *ib.* n.3; after vbs. of Hindering, 548; after vbs. of Fear, 560; **nō nōn**, *ib.* n.1; with **dum**, 573; as Concessive, 608.
- ne**—added to **hic**, 104.1. n.3; to **iste**, *ib.* 2. n.3; to **ille**, 103.3. n.4; as interrogative, 454; asseverative, *ib.* n.2; added to interrogatives, *ib.* n.3; = **nōname**, *ib.* n.5; added to **num**, 458. n.; strengthens **an**, 457.1. n.2; to introduce double questions, 458; **necone** or **annōn**, 459; to introduce second member of an indirect question, 460.2.
- nearness**—adj. of, with Dat., 350.
- nec** = **nōn**, 442. n.3; see **neque**.
- necessarium**—with **ut**, 553.4.
- necessitate**—**—85.C.**; with **egi** instead of **Subjv.**, 254. n.1; with **Inf.**, 538; with **ut** omitted, 538. n.2, 553.4. n.1; with pred. attracted, 538. n.3; with **ut**, 553.4; with **habet** and **Inf.**, 423.2. n.2.
- necessity**—adj.s. of, with **Inf.**, 421. n.1. c; expressed by Indic., 254. n.1. 255. n.
- nōdum**—482.5. n.2.
- nēfīs**—70.B.; with **Inf.**, 428. n.2; with Abl. Sup., 436. n.2; with **Inf.**, 422. n.2.
- negāre**—use of, 444.1. n.2; continued by **neque**—**neque**, 445. n.; = **dicō nōn**, 447; with **Inf.**, 527. n.2.
- negative**—of Potential, 257; of Opt., 260; of Impv., 270; **nōn** with Opt., 260; **nōn** with Impv., 270. n.1; **nōlī** with Inf., 270. n.2; advs., 441-449; **nōn**, 449; haud, 443; **nec** = **nōn**, 442. n.3; **nō**, 444; subdivision of, 446; combinations, 446; resolution of, *ib.* n.2; positive supplied from, 447. n.; position of, 448, 449; two, 449; **nec nōn** for **et**, *ib.* n.3; in Copulative Sentences, 480; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543.4.
- negōtium**—in phrases with **ut**, 546. n.2; with **Inf.**, 422. n.5.
- nōmō**—decl. of, 70.D.; and **nullus**, 106; with Pl. vb., 211. n.1. Ex. a; with Impv. Subjv., 270. n.; and **quisquam**, 317.2; as adj., *ib.*; **et nōmō**, *ib.* 2. n.1; strengthened by **fīnus**; = **nōquis**, 446. n.3.
- nequam**—**—85.C.**; comparison of, 90.
- neque**—with Opt. Subjv. for **nō**, 260; adds Impv., 270. n.; **neque**—**neque** with Pl., 235. n.1; subdivides a general neg.. or **negō**, 445 and n.1; **nec nōn**, 449. n.3; for **et nōn**, 480 and n.1; for **nectamen**, *ib.* n.3; for **nō—quidem**, *ib.* n.1; compared with **nec**, *ib.* n.2; for **nōn**, *ib.* n.4; for **nōve**, 543. n.3.
- nequire**—conj. of, 170.b; **nequint**, 133. iv. n.2; with Inf., 423.2. n.2.
- Nērīd**—decl. of, 41.4.
- nescīd—an**, 457.2; **quis**, 457. n.1; **quōmodo**, *ib.* n.; with Inf., 423.2. n.2, 527. n.1.
- nēn**, **nōve**—444.2; adds Final Clause, 543.4; **neque** instead, *ib.* n.3.
- neuter**—decl. of, 76. 106; **neutiquam**, 442. n.2.
- neuter**—adj. with masc. subj., 211. n.4; demonstrative when subst. is expected, *ib.* n.3; Sg. sums up Pl., *ib.*; Pl. pred. to two fems., 286.3; in app. to persons, 221. n.2; prou. and adj. in Cognate Acc., 333.1, 341. n.2; pron. and adj. with Part. Gen., 360; pron. and adj. not attracted to Ger., 427. n.3.
- nōve**—see **nēn**.
- ni**—with **mirum**, 209. n.2; range of, 501. n.2.
- nihili**—for **nullus**, 106; with Impv. Subjv., 270. n.; neg. of **quisquam**, 317. 2; **no**, 471. b.1; **nihilī** as Gen. of Price, 380.1; for **nōn**, 442. n.2.
- nihilīminus**—490. n.
- nimis**—with **quam** and Indic., 457. n.
- nimium**—with **quantum**, 209. n.2, 457. n.; **very**, 430. n.3; **nimiō** as Abl. of Standard, 403. n.3.
- nisi**—with **quod**, 535.2. n.2, 501. b. n.3; with **ut**, 457. n.2, 501. b. n.4; and **si nōn**, 501. b.; **but, except**, *ib.* n.2; **si, ib.**; **nisi forte**, 500. n.; **nisi tamen**, *ib.* n.1; in asseverations, 501. b.2; with **Inf.**, 535. n.2; with participle, 607. n.
- niti**—with Abl., 401. n.6; with **Inf.**, 423.2. n.2; with **ut**, 546. n.1.
- nix**—decl. of, 52.7.
- no**—how translated, 470. b and c.
- noētre**—with Dat., 346.
- nōlīe**—conj. of, 174; exact use of **nōlīe**—**rit**, 244. n.3; **nōlim**, **nōliem**, as Potential, 257.2, 258; not in Unreal Wish, 209. n.; **nōli**, with **Inf.** for Impv., 270. n.2, 271.2; **nōlim**, with Subjv. for Impv.,

## GENERAL INDEX.

- 271,2,N.2**; with Pf. Inf. pass., 280,2,c.N.; **nōlēns**, in pred. app., 325,n.6; with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with **ut**, 546,N.1; with Inf. or **ut**, 538 and n.3.
- nōmen**—with **esse** and Dat., 349,n.5; with Appositional Gen., 361,1; with Gen. of Charge, 378,n.2.
- nōmināri**—with two Noms., 206.
- NOMINATIVE**—defined, 23,1; of 1st Decl., 29 and N.1; of 2d Decl., 31,33,N.4; of 3d Decl., 36,1 and 2, 38,1, 57,R.4; of Greek substantives, 68,N.4; of adjs., 75,N.4, 79, N.1; of Participles, 89,R.2; for Voc., 201, n.2; syntax of, 203; two Noms., 206; with Inf. after copulative vb., *ib.* R.3; for Voc. in app., 321,N.1; with **đ** and **đn**, or **ecce**, 343,1,N.1; with Inf. by attraction, 527,N.2; after pass. vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 528; **nōminatīrus pendens**, 627,N.2.
- nōn**—neg. of Potential, 257; neg. of Wish, 260; with Impv., 270,n.1; syntax of, 441, 442; with **fillus** for **nōllus**, 446,N.2; **nōn possum nōn**, 449,a.1; nec **nōn** = **et**, *ib.* n.3; no, 471,R.1; **nōn modo—sed etiam**, 482,5 and n.1; **nōn modo—sed nō—quidem**, *ib.* n.1; for **nō**, 573,N.2.
- nōnne**—syntax of, 456; with indirect question, 460,N.2; with rhetorical question, 464,n.
- nōnnullus**—108.
- nōscere**—syncope in Pf., 131,3; **novi**, 175,5,d.
- nostrī**—with Gen. Ger., 428,n.1.
- noun**—defined, 16; inflection of, 17; and pronoun, 16,N.2.
- nourishing**—vbs. of. with Abl., 401,N.1.
- novus**—Comp. of, 87,9; with Inf., 422,N.3; with **nt**, 553,4.
- nox**—decl. of, 53,8; with Abl. of Time, 393,R.5.
- nubēre**—with Dat., 346,R.2 and N.4.
- nūdus**—with Gen., 374,n.8.
- nūllus**—decl. of, 76,90; and **nēmō**, 108; with Impv. Subjv., 270,n.; and **fillus**, 317,2; for **nōn**, *ib.* n.2.
- num**—**456**; with **ne** and **nam**, *ib.* n.; in indirect questions, 460,1,a; in rhetorical questions, 464,R.
- number**—Sg. and Pl., 22; Dual, *ib.* n. and 112,1; concord of, 235 and NN.; violation of Concord in app., 321,n.1; substs. of, with Gen., 366; definite numbers in Abl. of Time, 393,n.2.
- numerals**—cardinals, 94; ordinals, 95 and 294; cpds., 96; omission of **centēna milia**, *ib.* 6; insertion of **et**, *ib.* 5; fractions, *ib.* 7; signs, 96,II.; distributives, 97 and 295; multiplicatives, 97; proportionals, 97; advs., 98; **duo**, **ambō**, **uterque**, 292; **mille**, 293; **singuli**, 295; distributives for cardinals, *ib.* n.; **aliquis** with, 314,n.2; **quisque** with, 318, 2; with Part. Gen., 370.
- numerō**—as adv., 299,N.1; (in) **numerō habēre**, 340,R.1.
- nunc**—strengthens **etiam**, 478,N.1; **nunc—nunc**, 482,1 and n.1.
- nūntiāre**—with Inf., 527,R.2; with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.1.
- nūperum**—defective, 85,1.
- O**—sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; as interjection, 201,n.2, 343,N.1; **ō** *sl* in Wishes, 261; length of final, 707,5.
- ob**—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331,347; to give the Cause, 408,N.3; as prep., 416,16; with Acc. Ger., 428,n.2, 432 and N.1.
- obēsse**—with Dat., 346,R.2, 347,n.2; with Inf., 422,N.4.
- obicare**—with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1.
- object**—direct, becomes subj. of pass., 216; indirect retained in pass., 217; direct, 330; inner, 330,332,333; outer, 338; indirect, 344; of Ger., 427,2; after Dat. Ger., 429,N.2; after Acc. Sup., 435, N.3; after Abl. Sup., 436.
- OBJECT SENTENCES**—523–537; with **quod**, 524,525; with Acc. and Inf., 526,527; with Nom. and Inf., 528; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; after vbs. of Emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; as subj., 535; in part., 536, 537; in **ō**. O., 555.
- Objective Genitive**—363; of pers. pron., 364,N.2.
- obligāre**—with **sg** and Gen. of Charge, 378,R.1.
- obligation**—expressed by Indic., 254,n.1, 255,R.
- oboēdire**—with Dat., 346,n.2.
- obrēpere**—with Dat., 347,n.2.
- obsaturāre**—with Gen., 383,1,N.2.
- obsecrō**—strengthen Impv., 269; without Inf., 546,N.3; with **ut**, 546,N.1.
- obsequi**—with Dat., 346,R.2.
- obsistere**—with Dat., 347,n.2; with **nō**, 548,N.1; with **quin**, 555,1.

- obstare**—with Dat., 347.n.2; with nō, 548.n.1; with *quid*, 555.1.  
**obstrepare**—with Dat., 347.n.2.  
**obtemperare**—with Dat., 346.n.2.  
**obst&torn**—with Inf., 546.n.3.  
**obtingere**—with Dat., 347.n.2.  
**obtrectare**—with Dat., 346.n.2 and n.2.  
**obvenire**—with Dat., 347.n.2.  
**obversari**—with Dat., 347.n.2.  
**occurrere**—with Dat., 347.n.2.  
**occursare**—with Dat., 347.n.2.  
**ōdor**—87.7.  
**ōdi**—conjugation of, 175.5.c; *odiō case* as pass. of, *ib.* N.  
**ōffice**—suffixes for, 181.10.  
**officere**—with Dat., 346.n.3.  
**officium**—in phrases with Inf., 422.n.2; with *ut*, 546.n.2.  
**olle**—for *ille*, 104.3, n.1.  
**omission**—of vowels, 8.2, 701.n.2.a; of consonants, 9.6; of subj., 207; of copula, 209; of other vbs., *ib.* n.5; of *case* in Pt. Inf. pass., 280.2 a, R.2 and c; of conjunction, 474.N., 481.483.N., 492.N.; of nōm, 482.5, R.1; of vb. of Saying, 545, n.3; of vb. with *sim*, 592.N.; of *si*, 596; of vb. of Protasis, 599; of Protasis, 600; of Apodosis, 601; of vb. after *quasi* and *tamquam*, 602.N.1; of vb. of comparative clause, 640.  
**omittere**—with *quod*, 525.1, n.1; with Inf., 423.2, n.2; *omit*, with Inf. for Impv., 271.2, n.2.  
**omitting**—vbs. of, with *quod*, 555.1; vbs. of, with Inf., 423.2.  
**omnīnō**—yes, 471.a.1.  
**omnis**—in Abl., without *in*, 388; *omnia*, as Acc. of Respect, 338.2.  
**onus**—with Inf., 422.n.2.  
**onustus**—with Gen., 374, n.1; with Abl., 405.n.3.  
**operam**—in phrases with Dat. Ger., 429, 1 and n.1; with Inf., 423, n.5; with *ut*, 546.n.1 and 2.  
**opiniō**—in phrases with Inf., 527.n.2; with *ut*, 557, n.; *opiniōne* as Abl. of Respect, 398.n.1.  
**opitulari**—with Dat., 346.n.2.  
**oporet**—Indic. for *Subjv.*, 284, n.1; with Pt. part. pass., 280.2, b, R.2; with Inf. or *Subjv.*, 535, n.2; with *ut*, 553, 4, R.1.  
**oppidō**—very, 439.n.3; with *quantum*, 467.N.  
**oppidum**—has pred. adj. in agreement, 211, n.6; requires prep., 337, n.1.; with Exegetical Gen., 336, n.1; in app. to Town in Abl., 356, n.1, 381, n.1; in app. to Loc., 411, n.3.  
**[op̄a]**—defective, 70.D.  
**opt̄are**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with *ut*, *ib.* n.4, 546, n.1; *opt̄atū*, as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
**OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**—260–265; in Wishes, 250; particles with, 261; in Asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263; as concessive, 264; in Deliberative Questions, 265.  
**optimum**—with Inf., 423, n.3.  
**opus**—with Abl., 406; with Gen., *ib.* n.3; with Nom., *ib.* n.4; with part., 437, n.2; with Inf., 422, n.2; with *ut*, 557, n.; with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.2.  
**ōrāre**—with two Accs., 330 and n.1, with Inf., 546, n.3; with *ut*, *ib.* n.1.  
**ÓRÁTIO OBLÍQUA**—508, 2, partial, *ib.* 3, *ib.* 4; sequence in, 516; in Relative Sentences, 628, n., 628, R., 629, R., 648, 649; comes in without notice, 649, n.2; shift to, *ib.* n.3; nouns in, 650–652; interrogative in, 651; Impv. in, 652; tensos in, 653–655; in Causal Sentences, 655; Conditional Sentences in, 656–659; Logical, 656, n.1, 657; Ideal, 656, n.5 655; Unreal, 657, n.4, 658; pronouns in, 660; by Attraction, 504, 6, 662; partial, 506, 3 663; Representation, 654 and n.  
**orbūs**—with Abl., 406, n.3.  
**order**—adj. of, in pred. attrib., 323, n.6.  
**ordinis**—94; early forms, 95, n.5; alter for *secundus*, 96, 5; in dates, 294; for cardinals, *ib.* and 336, n.1; with *quisque*, *ib.* n.318, 2; position of, 676, n.2.  
**ordine**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
**origin**—Abl. of, 395; prepa. with Abl. of, *ib.* n.2 and 3; suffixes of, 182, 7.  
**orīri**—166, 169, 1; *ortus*, with Abl. of Origin, 395, n.1.  
**orūndus**—with Abl. of Origin, 396, n.1.  
**ōs**—*bone*, decl. of, 48, R.; mouth, defective, 70.D.  
**ostendere**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.  
**ostrea**—heterochite, 68, 1.  
**overlapping action**—562, 571, n.1.  
**oxymoron**—694.  
**Paene**—with Indic. in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, n.3; position of, 677, n.1.  
**paenitet**—with Gen., 377; with neut.

- subj., *ib.* n.2; with Inf., 422, n.4; with quod, 542.
- palam**—as prep., 417, 8.
- palatae**—vowels, 2; consonants, 6, 1, n.
- palumbes**—heteroclyte, 68, 7.
- pánis**—heteroclyte, 68, 12.
- pár**—with *est* instead of Subjv., 254, n.1; with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1; with Dat. Ger., 429, n.1.
- parére**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; **paratus**, with Inf., 421, n.1, c.
- parataxis**—472.
- parcere**—with Dat., 346, n.2; **parce**, with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2, n.2.
- parenthetical ut** and **nō**—545, n.3.
- parfere**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- pariter**—**pariter**, 482, 3.
- part**—with Pl. vb., 211, n.1, Ex.a.; in Abl. without *in*, 385, n.1; **tuam partem**, 384, n.2.
- Part Affected**—in Acc., 338, 1.
- partial obliquity**—506, 3, 663.
- partioeps**—with Gen., 374, n.2.
- participation**—adj. of, with Gen., 374.
- PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES**—664–670; to express Time, 665; Cause, 666; Condition and Concession, 667; relative clauses, 668; Future similarly used, 669, 670.
- PARTICIPLE**—decl. of, 80, 82; Abl. of, 83; Nom. and Acc. Pl. of, *ib.* n.1; comparison of, 88, 89; Abl. of Comp., *ib.* n.1; Nom. Pl. of, *ib.* n.2; Gen. Pl. of, *ib.* n.3; defined, 112, 6; formation of, 115, 3; early forms of, 130, 7; Pf. pass., 135, I.; Fut. Act., *ib.* II.; Pf. pass. of Deponents as act., 167, n.1; Pf. pass. of intrans. vbs. used as act., 220, n.1; Pf. with **habeo** and **tendo**, 238; Fut. periphrastic, 247; Pr. periphrastic with **esse**, *ib.* n.2; Pf. with **fui**, 250; as adj., *ib.* n.2; as pred., 251, n.1; usage of Pr. and Pf., 282; usage of Fut. act., 283; concord with two subjs. in Abl. Abs., 285, n.3; Pr. with Gen., 375, contrasted with adj., *ib.* n.1; Comp. of, with Gen., *ib.* n.2; of Birth with Abl., 395; Pf. pass. with **opus** and **fusus**, 406; in Abl. Abs., 409, 410, and nn.; Pf. pass. parallel with Ger., 426, n.2, 427, n.1; as subst., 437; Fut. as subst., *ib.* n.1; as adj., 438; Fut. as adj., *ib.* n.1; parallel with rel. and Subjv., *ib.* n.2; with interrog., 469; sequence after, 518; after vbs. of Perception, etc., 527, n.1, 536; after vbs. of Causation, etc., 537; equiv. to **cum**, 535, n.2; for Prof., 593, 2; for Prot. in Comparative Sentence, 602, n.3; Concessive, 609; for rel., 637.
- particles**—copulative, 474; adversative, 483; disjunctive, 492; causal, 498; illative, 499; position of, 679.
- partitive apposition**—322.
- Partitive Genitive**—367–372; with substantia. of Quantity, etc., 368; with neut. sg., 369; with numerals, 370; with pronouns, 371; with comparatives and superlatives, 372; preps. instead, *ib.* n.2; with **uterque**, 371, n.1; extensions of, 372, nn.; contrasted with Gen. of Characteristic, 369, n.1.
- parts of speech**—18.
- parvus**—Comp. of, 90; in Gen. of Price, 380, 1.
- passive—voice**, 112, 2; vbs. with two Noms., 206; vb. agrees with pred., 211, n.1, Ex. b; defined, 214; Pf. with Dat. of Agent, 215, 1; as reflexive, 218; of something endured, 219; periphrastic forms of, 249–251; with Acc. of Respect, 338, n.2; impersonal, 346, n.1.
- pati**—with **ut**, 553, 2; with Inf., *ib.* n.
- patronymics**—182, 11.
- paulū, paulum**—with **ante** and **post**, 403, n.4, b.
- pause**—in Verse, 742.
- pavēre**—constr. of, 550 and n.1.
- pax**—decl. of, 70, D; in Abl. of Time, 393, n.5, 394, n.1.
- peculiaris**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.
- pecus**—heteroclyte, 68, 12.
- pellere**—with Abl. of Separation, 390, n.1.
- pendēre**—with Gen., 379.
- penes**—position of, 413, n.1; use of, as prep., 416, 17.
- pentameter**—elegiac, 785; Pf. Inf. in, 280, 2, b, n.2; position of words in, 683.
- penit**—11.
- penus**—heteroclyte, 68, 11.
- per**—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; with Acc. of Extent, 335, 336; to express Time, Within Which, *ib.* n.2, 393, n.1; **here and there in**, 385, n.3; for Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1; with Person Through Whom, 401; position of, 413, n.1, and n. 2; use as prep., 416, 18.
- percorrīn**—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with

- Nom., 528; with part., 527.n.1, 536;  
Nom. after, 536.n.2.
- percontari**—with two Accs., 230 and n.1.
- perdīns**—defective, 85.2.
- PERFECT**—defined, 112.2; System, 114.2  
and 3.b; formation of, 114. 115, 121.2;  
syncopated forms of, 131. 1-3; early  
forms of, 131.4 : Stem, 134 : part. pass.,  
135.1.; part. as subst., 187.n.1; pass.  
with Dat. of Agent, 215.1; part used as  
act., 220.n.1; defined, 223; Historical,  
225; Pure and Historical, 235; force of,  
236; trans. by Eug. Pr., ib. n.; with  
Aor. force, ib.; Guonic, ib. n.; for Fut.  
Pt., 237; part. with *habeō* and *teneō*,  
238; pass. with *fui*, 250; Subjv. as  
Potential, 257.2 and n.1; in wishes,  
260; Subjv. as Impv., 263.2.b, 270.n.2;  
tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf.  
as subj. or obj., 280.2; after *deceit*,  
ib. a. n.1; Emotional, ib.; after  
*oportuit*, ib. n.2; after *velle*, 280.  
2.b and n.1; after *posse*, ib.; after  
*deboō*, ib. n.3; after vbs. of Will and  
Desire, 280.2.c; use of part., 282 and  
n.; part. as subj., 437.n.1. Sequence  
after, 511.n.3.4; Subjv. in Final  
Sentences, 512.n.1; in Consecutive Sentences, 513 and n.; Inf. in  
O.O., 559.n.
- perficere**—with ut, 553.1.
- pergere**—with Inf., 423.2.n.2.
- perhibeō**—as copulative vb., 206.  
n.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528 and  
n.1.
- period**—Responsive and Apodetic, 685;  
forms distinguished by Nügelbach,  
686; Historical and Oratorical, 687.
- periphrasis** for Impv., 271; for Fut.  
periphrastic, 515.n.2; for Fut., 531 and  
n.1; for Apod. in Unreal Condition,  
597.n.5.
- PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**—129; act.,  
247; pass., 251; with *fui*, 247.n.1; with  
*forem*, ib. n.1; Pr. part. with *esse*, ib.  
n.2; with *futūrum esse ut*, 248; with  
*in eō est*, 249; with *posse*, *velle*, 248.  
n.; Pf. part. with *sum* and *fui*, 250 and  
n.1; with *forem* for *essēm*, ib. n.2;  
with Ger., 251; Fut. act., 253.
- perire**—pass. of *perdere*, 160.2.n.1.
- peritus**—with Gen., 374.n.4.
- permanēre**—with two Nouns., 205.n.1.
- permittēre**—used personally in pass.,  
217.n.2; with Inf., 423.2.n.2, 532.n.1  
553.2.n.; with ut, 553.2.
- permitting**—vbs. of, with Consecutive Clause, 553.2.
- pernox**—defective, 85.2.
- perperum**—defective, 85.1.
- perpetuus**—and *perpes*, 84.1; perpetuum, as adv. Acc., 336.n.1.
- perquam**—with Indic., 467.n.
- persequēns**—with Gen., 375.n.2.
- perseverāre**—with Inf., 423.2.n.2.
- persons**—in conjugation of vb., 112.1;  
concord of, 287; order of, ib. n.  
personal endings—114.
- personal pronoun**—204; omitted, ib. 1;  
Gen. of, as objective, ib. 2 364.n.2; poss.  
for, ib. 2, n.2; Gen. of, as Partitive, ib. 3;  
for poss., ib. 3, n.1; circumlocution for  
third personal pronoun, ib. 3, n.2.
- perspicere**—with Acc. and Inf., 527.n.1.
- persistēre**—with Inf., 423.2.n.2.
- persuadēre**—used personally in pass.,  
217.1; with Dat., 346.n.2, and n.2.4;  
with Inf., 423.2.n.2, 527.n.2, 546.n.1;  
with ut, 546.n.1.
- pertactum est**—with Gen., 377.
- pessum**—defective, 70.A; with frs., 435.  
n.1.
- petere**—with g and Abl., 239.n.1 and n.1;  
with Acc. Ger., 430.n.1; with Inf., 423.  
2.n.2; with ut, 546.n.1.
- Phalaecrau**—verse, 796.
- Pherecratean**—verse, 794.
- phonetic variations—in vowels, 8; in consonants, 9; in consonant stem-characteristic, 121.n.
- piget**—with Gen., 377; with subj., ib. n.2.
- pili**—as Gen. of Price, 260.1.
- pinus**—heteroclitic, 88.5.
- plus**—Comp. of, 87.6.n.
- place**—where, in Abl., 385; with vbs. of  
Placing, ib. n.1; with Towns, 390; as  
Cause, Means, etc., 280; with Books,  
etc., 387; with *tōtūs*, etc., 388; in Loc.,  
411; whence, in Abl., 390. 391; with  
Towns, 391; of origin, 395.n.2; whither,  
in Acc., 337.
- placēre**—with Dat., 346.n.2; use of Fut.  
Pt., 244.n.3.
- pleasure**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; adj. of,  
with Abl. Sup., 436.n.2.
- plōbs**—decl. of, 63.n.1, 68.8.
- plenty**—vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adj. of,  
with Gen. or Abl., ib. n.3.

- plenus**—with Gen., 374, n.1; with Abl., 405, n.3.  
**pleonasm**—692.  
**pléisque**—as Acc. of Respect, 338, 2.  
**pluere**—with Abl. of Means, 401, n.5.  
**PLUPERFECT**—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; Aor. forms of, 131, 4, 6, 8; defined, 223; force of, 241; translated by Impf., ib. n.; used as Aor., ib. n.1; periphrastic, with *habeo*, ib. n.2; Subjv. as Potential of Past, 258, n.2; in Wish, 260; with *vellem*, 261, n.; Subjv. as Concessive, ib. n.; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 273, 3; tense force in Subjv., 277; in Final Sentences, 512, n.1; to express Resulting Condition, 563, 1; Indic. in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, n.2.  
**plural**—of abstracts, 204, n.5; used for Sg., ib. NN, 6, 7; pred. with two subjs., 285; neut. pred. to two fems., 286, 3.  
**plus**—quam omitted with, 296, n.4; pluris, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380, 1; plurimum, with quantum, 407, n.; plurimi, as Gen. of Price, 380, 1.  
**pōma**—heteroclite, 68, 7.  
**pollērē**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**pollicēri**—with Inf., 527, n.2, 531, n.4.  
**pollis**—decl. of, 41, 4.  
**pondō**—defective, 70, A.  
**pōne**—usage of, 416, 19.  
**pōnere**—with in and Abl., 386, n.1 and n. 2; suppose, with Inf., 527, n.2.  
**pōscere**—with two Accs., 339 and n.1; with g and Abl., ib. n.1; with Inf. or ut, 546, NN, 1, 3.  
**position**—adj. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n. 6; of advs., 440; of neg., 448 and NN; of rel., 612; of correlative clause, 620; poetical peculiarities in, 683.  
**positive**—degree lacking, 87, 2, 7, 8, and 9; with prep. to express disproportion, 298, n.; in comparing qualities, 299; with quam after Comp., 299, n.2; with Part. Gen., 372, n.2; supplied from neg., 447, n.  
**posse**—conj. of, 119; potis for posse, 209, n.2; use of Fut. and Fut. Pf. of, 242, n. 2, 244, n.3; needs no periphrasis, 248, n.; Indic. for Subjv., 254, n.1; Impf. Indic. of Disappointment, ib. n.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 290, 2, 6, and n.1; with quam, etc., to strengthen superlative, 303; omitted, with quam, ib. n.1; with Inf., 423, n.2; nōn possum nōn, 449, n.1; in simple questions, 453, n.1; for periphrastic, 513, n.3, 531, n.3 and 4; in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, n.5, c; restrictions with, 627, n.2, in Logical Condition, 657, n.; in Unreal Condition in O.O., 659, n.  
**Possession**—Dat. of, 349; compared with Gen., ib. n.2; of qualities, ib. n.3; Gen. of, 362; in 1st and 2d person, ib. n.1; omission of governing word, ib. n.3.  
**possessive pronouns**—100–102, 106, n.4; usage of suns, 309, 4 and NN; syntax of, 312; intensive use of, ib. n.1; for Gen. of personal pron., 304, 2, n.2; with Gen. in app., 321, n.2; for 1st and 2d persons in Subjective Gen., 364; as pred., 366, n.3; with *interest* and *rōfert*, 381; with *domi*, 411, n.4; position of, 676, n.1.  
**possibility**—in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254, n.1, 255, n.  
**post**—vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; with Abl. or Acc. of Measure, 403, n.4; position of, 403, n.4, b, 413, n.1; omission of, with rel., 403, n.4; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 20; with Pf. part. pass., 437, n.2.  
**postē&quām**—see postquam.  
**postērū**—defective, 74, n.2; Comp. of, 87, 2 and 7.  
**postquam**—with Hist. Pf. or Pr., 561; with Impf., 562; with Plupf., 563; range of tenses with, ib. NN, 1–3; with Subjv., ib. n.4; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564 and n.1; in Iterative action, 566, 567.  
**postridiē quām**—577, n.5.  
**postulārē**—with g and Abl., 339, n.1 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 546, n.3; with ut, ib. n.3.  
**potēs**—with Gen., 374, n.3.  
**POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE**—257–259; for Pr. and Fut., 257; for Past, 258; in questions, 259; for Indic., 257, n.3; not conditional, 257, n.2, 600, 2; of Past coincides with Unreal of Present, 258, n.2.  
**potifī**—with Abl., 407 and n.2, d; with personal Ger., 427, n.5.  
**potis**, e—85, C; potior, 87, 7; potius strengthens comparative, 301; potius quam, with Subjv. or Inf., 577, n.6, 631, 3, n.2, 644, n.3; see posse.  
**power**—adj. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and n.2; sequence after vb. of, 515, n.3; in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254, n.1, 255, n.

- prae**—to express disproportion, 296, n.3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347; gives Preventing Cause, 408, n.4, as adv., 415; as prep., 417, 9; **prae quod**, 525, 2, n.2.
- praeocellere**—with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2.
- praecipere**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with ut, 546, n.1; used personally in pass., 217, n.2; **praecoptum**, with ut, 546, n.2.
- praeceps**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.3.
- praecepitum**—with ut, 557, n.
- praeceps**—with Dat. Ger., 429, 1.
- praeficere**—with Dat. Ger., 429, 1.
- praelestire**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- (in) **praesentia**—*for the present*, 304, n.
- praesidere**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- praestare**—with Dat., 347, n.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2; with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1; with ut, 553, 1.
- praestolidari**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- praeferre**—to express disproportion, 296, n.3; vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; position of, 413, n.3; use as prep., 416, 21; with Pt. part. pass., 437, n.2; **id quod**, quam quod, quod, 525, 2, n.2.
- praeferre**—with quod, 525, 1, n.1.
- præcūrī**—with ut, 546, n.1.
- predicare**—and copula, 206; with copulative vbs., 206; concord of, 211; violation of concord of, ib. n.1-6, nn.1-3; in Pl. with two subjs., 285; in Pl. with neque—neque, ib. n.1; concord of, in Gender, 285; in Person, 287; Attribution, 325; Apposition, ib. and n.6; with Abl. Abs., 410, n.6; after Inf., 538.
- prepositions**—assimilation of in composition, 9, 4; defined, 16, 6; repeated with cpd. vbs., 231, nn.2, 3; with Countries and Towns, 237, nn.1-4; with dominum, ib. n.3; omitted with Countries and Towns, 237, nn.1-3; instead of Dat., 347, n.1; omitted with vbs. and adjs. of Separation, 300, 2 and 3; with Abl. of Origin, 305, nn.2, 3; syntax of, 412-416; origin of, 412; position of, 413, 678; repetition and omission of, 414; as advs., 415; with Acc., 416; with Abl., 417; with Acc. and Abl., 418; two with same case, 414, n.4; improper, 412, n.; with participles for abstract substantives, 437, n.2.
- PRESENT**—118, 3; System, 114, 3, a; rules for formation of, 121, 1; notes on System, 120; formation of Stem, 123; de-
- fined, 223; Historical, 224, 229; Specific or Universal, 227; Progressive, ib. n.1; of Endeavor, ib. n.2; of Resistance to Pressure, ib. n.3; anticipates Fut., 228; with iam, etc., 230; contrasted with Pf. to give Effect in VERGON, ib. n.3; part. with esse, 247, n.2; Indic for Deliberative Subjv., 254, n.2; Subjv. as Potential, 267, 2; Subjv. in Wishes, 269; Subjv. as Impv., 263, 270, n.2, Subjv. as Concessive, 264; tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf. as subj. or obj., 280, 1; Inf. after memini, 281, 2, n., part., 282; part. as subat., 437, n.1; Hist sequence after, 511 n.1; Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 530; Inf. for Fut., 531, nn. 3 and 4.
- presenting**—vbs. of, with nō, quōminus, or quin, 548, 549, 555, 1.
- previous condition**—given by ex or ab, and Abl., 206, n.2, 306, n.2.
- Priapean**—verse, 806.
- Price**—Gen. of, 379; Abl. of, 404.
- pridi&quiam**—usage of, 577, n.5.
- primitive words**—179, 1.
- primōris**—defective, 85, 1.
- primus**—with quisque, 318, n.3; **primō**, **primum**, 325, n.7; in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; used partitively, 301; prior, 87, 8.
- principal parts**—120.
- principal tenses**—225.
- prinsquam**—with Indic., 574, 576; with Pr., 575; with pure Pt., ib. n.1; with Pt. or Fut., 576; nōm prinsquam = dum, ib. n.; with Subjv., 577; with ut or Inf., 644, n.3.
- prō**—to express disproportion, 296; with habēre, 340, n.1; with Nom. or Acc. in Exclamations, 343, 1, n.1; *for*, compared with Dat., 345, n.2; position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 417, 10; with Abl. Ger., 423; **prō eō quod**, 525, 2, n.2; **prō eō ut**, 548, n.4.
- probare**—with Inf., 527, n.2.
- prōcreatus**—with Abl. of Origin, 305, n.1.
- procūl**—with Abl. of Separation, 300, 3, n.2; as prep., 417, 11.
- prōcessus**—conj. of, 118; with Dat., 346, n.2; with Inf., 422, n.4.
- prōdigius**—with Gen., 374, n.1.
- protectus**—strengthens atque, 477, n.2.
- prōficere**—with ut, 553, 1.
- profundus**—never with Acc., 335, n.1.

- profusus**—with Gen., 374, n. 1.  
**prōgnatus**—with Abl. of Origin, 395, n. 1.  
**prohibēre**—with two Acces., 341, n. 2; with Abl., 390, 2, n. 3; with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with nō, 548, and n. 1, with quōminus, 549, and n. 1; with Inf., 532, n. 1. 549, n. 1.  
**prohibiting**—vbs. of, with Dat., 345, n. 1.  
**proinde**—strengthens Impv., 209; as coördinating conj., 503; and proin, ib.  
**prolepsis**—of subj. of leading clause, 468.  
**promising**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, n. 5, 527, n. 4; 531, n. 4.  
**prōmittere**—with Pr. Inf., 527, r. 2, 531, n. 4.  
**PRONOUNS**—defined, 16, 3; compared with nouns, ib., n. 2; decl. of, 17; Personal, 100–102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinite, 107; Pronounial Adjectives, 108; Possessive, 100–102; omitted, 207; with Impv., 287, n.; syntax of, 304–319; Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 306–307; hic, 305; iste, 306; ille, 307; Determinative is, 308; Reflexive, 309; idem, 310; ipse, 311; Possessive, 312; Indefinite, 313–319; quidam, 313; aliquis, 314; quis, 315; quispiam, 316; quisquam and illus, 317; quisque, 318; alter and alius, 319; with Part. Gen., 371; in Ō. O., 660.  
**prōnuntiare**—used personally in pass., 217, n. 2.  
**prōnus**—constr. of, 256, n. 5.  
**prope**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 22; position of, 678, n. 1; propior and proximus, 87, 8; with Acc. or ab., 389, n. 1.  
**properare**—with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2.  
**prōpinquare**—with Acc. Ger., 420, n. 1.  
**propinquus**—Comp. of, 87, 9.  
**prōpōnere**—with Acc. Ger., 420, n. 1.  
**prōpositum**—est, with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with ut, 546, n. 2.  
**proprius**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n. 1; with ut, 557, n.  
**propter**—compared with Abl. of Cause, 406, n. 3; position of, 413, n. 1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 23; with Acc. Ger., 422 and n. 1.  
**propterea**—503.  
**prosody**—701–823.  
**prōspicere**—with Dat., 346, n. 2; with Inf., 527, n. 1; with ut, 546, n. 1.  
**protetare**—with Gen. of Price, 379.  
**protasis**—defined, 589; equivalents of, 593; omission of vb. of, 599; total omission of, 600.  
**protraction**—743.  
**prōvidēre**—with ut, 546, n. 1.  
**promding**—vbs. of, with Abl., 401, n. 1.  
**prōvidus**—Comp. of, 87, 5.  
**proximum**—in phrases with ut, 557, n.  
**prūdēns**—in pred. attrib., 325, n. 6; with Gen., 374, n. 4.  
**-pte**—added to personal pronouns, 102, n. 3.  
**pudet**—with Gen., 377 and n. 1; with subj., ib., n. 2.  
**puer**—Voc. of, 33, n. 2.  
**pugnare**—with Dat., 346, n. 6; with ut, 546, n. 1.  
**purpose**—in Inf., 423, n. 1; in Dat. Ger., 423, 2; in Sup., 435; in Fnt. part., 438, n.; sequence in clauses of, 512; reflexive in clauses of, 521; rel. clauses of, 630; see Final Sentences.  
**pūrus**—with Abl. of Sep., 390, 3, n.  
**putāre**—with Gen. of Price, 379; with two Noms. in pass., 206; (nōn) putāveram, 254, n. 1; puts, ut puta, for example, 274; with Inf., 527, n. 2.  
**pulling**—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348.  
**Quā—quā**, 482, 3.  
**quaerere**—with s, dī, ex, 339, n. 1; with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with Direct Question, 467, n.  
**quaēdū**—175, 6; with Impv., 269; without Inf., 546, n. 3.  
**qualis**—in phrases instead of Comparative, 298, n. 3.  
**Quality**—possession of, 349, n. 3; Gen. of, 365 and n. 1; Gen. and Abl. of, ib., n. 2, 400, n. 1; Gen. of, as pred., 386; Abl. of, 400; personified quality as person, ib., n. 2; Comparison of qualities, 299.  
**quam**—after comparatives, 296 and n. 1; omission of, ib., n. 4; prepe. instead, ib., n. 3; atque instead, ib., n. 4; with prō, ut, quā, to express disproportion, 296; with positive for comparative, 299, n. 2; in comparison of qualities, 299; with potuit and superlative, 303; with quā and superlative, ib., n. 2; magis, nōn aliter, quam ut, 557, n. 2; quam si, with Subj. of Comparison, 602; with qui or ut after comparatives, 631, 3; with quam qui and superlative, 642, n. 5;

after *alius* or *secus*, 643, n.4; with Comparative Sentences, 644; with *potius*, *prius*, etc., n.3.  
*quamdiu*—608; with Indic., 500; range of, *ib.* n.1.  
*quamlibet*—606.  
*quamquam*—603 and n.; with Indic., 606; with Subjv., *ib.* n.1.2, and n.; and *ut*, *ib.* n.3; with part., 600, n.1, 607, n.; with Inf., 635, n.2.  
*quamvis*—603 and n.; with Subjv., 606; with Indic., *ib.* n.1; inflection of vb. of, *ib.* n.2; with licet, 607, n.2; with part., 600, n.1, 607, n.; with adj. or adv., 600, n.2.  
*quando*—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; early use, 538, n.3, 580, n.3; conditional use, 500, n.3.  
*quandōque*—with causal clause, 541, n.5; *quandōque*—*quandōque*, 482, n.1.  
*quantity*—rules for, 702–706; of final syllables, 707–713; of polysyllables, 707–709; of monosyllables, 710–713; of stem syllables, 714; of cpds., 715; in early Latin, 716, 717.  
*quantum*—12. subsets. of, with Gen., 368.  
*quantum*—with *mīrum*, *nīmīus*, etc., 209, n.2, 407, n.; with *mīxīmūs* and *potuit* to strengthen superlative, 303; *quantum qui*, with superlative, *ib.* n.2; *quanti*, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380; with advs. and Indic., 407, n.  
*quantumvis*—603 and n., 606.  
*quasi*—with subst., 439, n.4; with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with Indic., *ib.* n.1; to apologize, *ib.* n.2; to give an Assumed Reason, *ib.* n.4, 606, n.  
*quattuor*—as a Causal particle, 538, n.5.  
*quattuor*—early forms of, 95, n.3.  
*que*—added to rels., 111, 2; syntax of, 476 and n.; for *quoque*, 479, n.2; adds third member, 481, n.  
*quemadmodum*—sic, 482, n.  
*queri*—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.  
*questions*—with Potential Subjv., 269; deliberative, 265, 465; passionate equiv. to command, 273, 453, n.2; predicate and nominal, 451; rhetorical, 265, 451, n.2, 464, 466; direct simple, 453, 457; equiv. to Condition, 453, n.3; with *ne*, 454; with *nōnne*, 455; with *num*, 456; with *an*, 457; direct disjunctive, 458; neg. of, 459; particles in indirect, 460; moods in, 463–467; Indic. in, 463, 464; Subjv. in, 465, 466; indirect, 467; genuine, 463; disconnected, 467, n.; exclamatory, 558.  
*qui* interrogative—106 and n.  
*qui* relative—106 and n.; with *quam* and Subjv. to express disproportion, 206; after *dignus*, etc., 582, n.2; equiv. to *si quis*, 625, 2; explicative, 626; strengthened by *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *ib.* n.1; *quod sciam*, 627, n.1; equiv. to *cum is*, 626, n., 633, 634; equiv. to *ut is*, 630, 631; after comparatives with *quam*, 631, 3; equiv. to adj., *ib.* 4; sed *qui*, *qui tamen*, 626, n.2; *quō quisque*, with comparative, 642, n.2; see *quō* and *qui*.  
*quia*—after vbs. of Doing and Happening, 525, 1, n.4; origin of and, correlatives with, 538, n.1, 2; with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 542, n.; with Inf., 636, n.2.  
*quicunque*—106 and n.; with Indic., 254, 4, 625.  
*quidam*—107, 2; syntax of, 313; with *quasi*, 319, n.2; strengthened by *certus*, *fīsus*, 313, n.3.  
*quidem*—with demonstrative pron., 307, n.4; position of, 413, n.3, 679; yes, with *sānō*, 471, 4, 1.  
*quilibet*—107 and n.  
*quin*—with *mīrum*, 208, n.2; strengthens Impv., 200; *nōn quin* as Causal, 541, n.2; force of, 547; in Consecutive Sentences, 552, 3; with vbs. of Preventing, 556, 1; with vbs. of Doubt and Uncertainty, *ib.* 2; after *nōn dubitō*, *ib.* 2, n.1; equiv. to *ut nōn*, 556; after vbs. of Saying, etc., 556, 2; in Relative Sentences of Character, 632 and n.; facere *nōn possum quin*, 556.  
*quippe*—498, n.8; with *qui*, 621, n.1.  
*quipqui*—106 and n.4.  
*quire*—conjugation of, 170, a; with Inf., 438, 2, n.2.  
*quis* indefinite—and *qui*, 107, 1; for *aliquis*, *ib.* n.2 and n.1; syntax of, 313; *aliquis* instead, *ib.* n.1; familiar usage of, 317, 2, n.2.  
*quis* interrogative—106; and *qui*, *ib.* n.; old forms of, *ib.* n.1, 2; *qui* in Wishes, 261; for *uter*, 300, n.  
*quisnam*—106 and n.5.  
*quispiam*—107, 3, and n.1; syntax of, 313.

- quisquam**—107, 3, and n. 2; syntax of, 317; strengthened by *finus*, *ib.* 1, n. 1; negative of, *ib.* 2; as adj., *ib.* 1, n. 3.
- quisque**—107, 5, and n.; **quisquis** instead, 106, n. 4; with Pl. vb., 211, n. 1, Ex. c; with ordinal, 294, n., 318, 2; syntax of, 318; with superlatives, *ib.* 2; with reflexives, *ib.* 3; attraction of, *ib.* n. 2; *sum quisque*, *ib.* n. 4; with *quod* and comparative, 642, n. 2; *ut quisque*, with superlative, *ib.*
- quisquis**—105; as adj., *ib.* n. 4; with Indic., 254, 4, 625.
- quivis**—107, 4 and n.
- quod**—as Causal conjunction, 541, n. 2; *nōn quod* in Final Clauses, 545, 2; *quoniam*, *ib.* n. 1; *quod setius*, 549, n. 4.
- quoad**—force of, 568; of complete coextension, 569; *ut illi*, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572; *ut illi*, with Subjv., *ib.* n. 5.
- quod**—in Inner Obj., 333, 1, n. 1; introduces Object Sentences, 524; after vbs. of Adding and Dropping, 525, 1; after demonstratives, *ib.* 2; and *ut*, *ib.* 1, n. 5; *quid est quod*, *ib.* 1, n. 2; after *verba sentientia*, *ib.* n. 7; after demonstratives, with preps., *ib.* 2, n. 2; *as to the fact that*, with Subjv., *ib.* 2, n. 3; with Subjv. in O. O., *ib.* 3; after vbs. of Motion, *ib.* 1, n. 6; gives Ground in Exclamations, 534, n. 1; with Causal Sentence in Indic., 540; with Causal Sentence in Subjv., 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 542; with *diceret*, *ib.* n. 3; *nōn quod*, *ib.* n. 2; *magis quod*, 541, n. 2; correlatives of, 538, n. 1; and *qua*, *ib.* n. 2; *nisi quod*, 591, n. 3; *quod si*, 610, n. 2.
- quom**—see *cum*.
- quominus**—force of, 547; with vbs. of Preventing, etc., 549; for *nō*, 548, n. 2; and *quin*, 549, n. 3.
- quomodo**—with Direct Question, 467, n.
- quoniam**—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; original force of, 538, n. 3; early usage of, 580, n. 3.
- quoque**—syntax of, 479; and *etiam*, 479, n. and n. 1; *que* instead, *ib.* n. 2; with *sed* and *vērum*, 482, 5 and n. 1.
- Rating**—vbs. of, with Gen. and Abl., 379, 390.
- ratio**—in Abl. of Manner, 399, n. 1; with *ut*, 546, n. 2.
- recessus**—with Abl., 390, 3, n. 1.
- recipere**—with Abl. or in, 389.
- reciprocal relations**—given by *inter s̄*, 221; by *alter alterum*, etc., *ib.* n. 1; by *invicem*, *m̄tuō*, etc., *ib.* n. 2.
- recitation of verses**—754.
- recordari**—with Pr. Inf., 281, 2, n.; with Acc., 376, n. 2.
- rectum**—with Inf., 422, n. 3.
- refraſare**—with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with *nō*, 548, n. 1; with *quōminus*, 549 and n. 1; constr. with, 549, n. 1.
- red**—in composition, 9, 4, 715, n. 3.
- reddere**—with Pf. part., 537, n. 2; *reddi* and *fieri*, 206, n. 1, 340, n. 1.
- reduplication**—in Pr. stem, 133, II.; in Pf. stem, 134, III.; omitted in Pf. of cpd. vbs., *ib.*
- Reference**—Dat. of, 352.
- refert**—with Gen. and Abl., 381, 382; Nom. with, 381, n. 3; origin of, *ib.* n. 5; expression of Degree of Concern, 382, 1 and 2; expression of Thing Involved, *ib.* 3.
- refertus**—with Gen., 374, n. 1.
- reflexive**—218; passive used for, 218; approaches deponent, 218, n.; pronouns, 309; is retained instead of reflexive, *ib.* n. 1; strengthened, *ib.* n. 2; *sum quisque*, 318, n. 3; with *ipse*, 311, 2; with Acc. of Respect, 338, n. 2; in subordinate clauses, 520–522; not in Consecutive Sentences, 521, n. 1; refers to real subj., 309, 2, 521, n. 2; free use of, *ib.* n. 3; Indic. Relative Sentences, *ib.* n. 4; ambiguity in, *ib.* n. 3; demonstrative instead of, *ib.* n. 1, n. 3.
- reformidare**—with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2.
- refrigari**—with Dat., 346, n. 2.
- refraining**—vbs. of, with *quīn*, 555, 1.
- refusing**—vbs. of, with *nō*, 548; with *quōminus*, 549; with Inf., 548, n. 2; with *quin*, 555, 1.
- Reiūanus Versus**—822.
- regiō**—in Abl. without *in*, 386, n. 1.
- relation**—suffixes for, 181, 8.
- relationship**—suffixes for, 181, 7, 182, 11.
- relative pronouns**—105; made indefinite, 111, 1; or universal, *ib.* 2; in Inner Obj., 333, 1, n. 2; instead of app. with *refert*, 381, n. 2; contrasted with interrogative, 467, n. 2, 611, n. 2; indefinite with Indic., 364, n. 4; with Subjv., 567, n.; advs. instead, 611, n. 1; continued by demonstrative, 636, n. 1; repetition of, 615.

- RELATIVE SENTENCES**—610–637; for Pro-tasis, 593, n.1; general consideration of, 610; how introduced, 611; position of, 612; antecedent in, 613; concord in, 614 and *nz.*; *id quod, etc.*, in app. to a sentence, *ib. R.2*; incorporation of app., *ib. R.4*; repetition of antecedent, 615; incorporation of antecedent, 616; attraction of, 617; correlative of, 618; absorption of correlative, 619; position of correlative, 620; indefinite antecedent, 621; tensed in, 622, 623; in Iterative action, 623; mood in, 624–625; indefinite and generic relatives with Indic., 254, n.4, 625, 1; or Subjv., *ib. R.*; conditional, 625, 2; explanatory, 626; Subjv. in explanatory, 627; *quod sciam, etc.*, *ib. n.1*; restrictions with *esse, posse, attinet*, *ib. n.2*; with Subjv. by Partial Obliquity, 628; with Subjv. by Attraction, 629; Final, 630; attraction of *dico*, *ib. n.3*; Consecutive, 631; after definite antecedent, *ib. 1*; after indefinite antecedent, *ib. 2*; after comparative, *ib. 3*; parallel to *adj.*, *ib. 4*; with *quoniam*, 632; Causal, 633; Concessive and Adversative, 634; in Inf., 635; combination of, 636; participle instead, 637, 638; in *U. O.*, 655 and *nz.*  
**relitti**—as Sup., 436, n.  
**relieving**—vba. of, with Abl., 390, 2.  
**relinquere**—with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1.  
**reliquum est**—with *nt*, 553, 4.  
**reliquus**—used participially with *Subst.*, 291, n.2; alias for, 219, n.1; *reliqua*, as Acc. of Respect, 398, 2.  
**remembering**—vba. of, with Gen., 376; with Acc., *ib. R. 2*.  
**rēmox**—defective, 70, D.  
**reminding**—vba. of, with Gen., 376; with Abl. or Acc., *ib. Rn.1, 2*.  
**removing**—vba. of, with Abl., 390, 2.  
**rendering**—vba. of, with Inf., 431, n.1, b.  
**reperi**—with Nom. and Inf., 538, n.1.  
**repetition of relative**, 615.  
**repletus**—with Gen., 374, n.1.  
**repōnere**—with in and Acc., 385, n.2.  
**repōscere**—with two Accs., 399 and n.1.  
**representation**—654 and n., 656, n.1.  
**representation**—vba. of, with Acc. and Inf., 536, 537; with part., 537, n.1, 536.  
**reprimere**—with *nz*, 548, n.1.  
**repugnare**—with Dat., 346, n.2; with *nz*, 548, n.1.  
**requīs**—heteroclite, 68, 8.  
**requiring**—vba. of, with two Accs., 399 and n.1, n.1; with ab., *ib. n.2*.  
**rēfī**—part. of, with Pr. force, 332, n.  
**rēs**—for neut., 294, n.4; construed like neut., 211, n.2; with Appositional Gen., 361, 1; in phrases with Inf., 422, n.2; *divinam rem facere*, with Abl., 401, n.4; *rem certare*, 233, 2, n.  
**resistere**—with Dat., 346, n.2; with *nz*, 548, n.1; with *quoniam*, 553, 1.  
**resisting**—vba. of, with Dat., 346.  
**resolution**—of long syllable, 732.  
**resolving**—vba. of, with Inf., 423 and n.2; with *ut*, 548.  
**Respect**—Acc. of, 338; with vba. of Clothing, etc., *ib. n. 2*; Abl. of, 397; Abl. of, with comparatives, 298; Abl. of, with words of Eminence or Superiority, 397, n.2; prep. instead, *ib. n.1*.  
**responce**—with Direct Question, 467, n.  
**responde**—with Direct Question, 467, n.; *ius respondēre*, 333, 2, n.  
**rest**—conceived as end of Motion, 412, n.2.  
**restat**—with *ut*, 553, 4.  
**restrictions**—in Relative Sentences, 627, n.1, 2.  
**result**—for Sentences of, see Consecutive Sentences.  
**rētīs**—heteroclite, 68, 12.  
**retinēre**—with *nz*, 548, n.1.  
**reus**—with Gen., 374, n.2; 378, n.1.  
**ridēre**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.  
**rhōtacism**—47.  
**rhythm**—in arrangement, 627, 2, b; defined, 730; ascending or descending, 735; names of, 736; classes of, 737; rhythmical series, 736; union of language with, 746.  
**rōbur**—decl. of, 44, 5, 45, n.2.  
**rogāre**—with two Accs., 399 and n.1; with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; with *ut*, 546, n.1; with Direct Question, 467, n.; *rogātū*, of Moving Cause, 406, n.1; with Inf. or *ut*, 548, n.3.  
**root**—defined, 25, 1, n., 177.  
**rudis**—with Gen., 374, n.4.  
**rūs**—as limit of Motion, 397; in Abl. of Separation, 390, 2; *rūfī* in Loc., 411, n.2.  
**S**—final omitted, 27, n., 703, n.3; suffixes with, 188.

- sacer—with Gen. or Dat., 350, n.1; *sacrarium facere*, with Abl., 401, n.4.
- sacramētō—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- sacrificāre—with Abl., 401, n.4.
- sacrificing—vbs. of, with Abl., 401, n.4.
- saepe—as attrib. to subst., 429, n.4.
- saltem—strengthenes at, 488, n.2.
- salūtaris—has no superlative, 87, 9.
- salvare—conjugation of, 175, 4.
- sānē—strengthens Impv., 260: *verū*, 430, n.3; with concessive *nē*, 608: with *quam* and Indic., 467, n.3; yes, 471, a.
- sanguis—decl. of, 41, 4.
- sapiens—as subst., 437, n.1.
- sapientia—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.2; with *ut*, 557, R.
- Sapphic—verse, 797, 804.
- satis—heteroclite, 68, 8 and 12.
- satis—*verū*, 430, n.3; attraction of pred. after *satis est*, 535, n.3.
- saturare—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2.
- Saturnian—verse, 755.
- status—with Abl. of Origin, 395, n.1.
- saying—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; vbs. of, with *quod*, 525, 1, n.7; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527: vbs. of, with Nom. in pass., 528; vbs. of, attracted into Subjv. after *quod*, 541, n.3: vbs. of, omitted, 545, n.3; vbs. of, with *quīn*, 555, 2.
- scatēre—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2.
- scazon—verse, 762.
- scientia—in phrases with *ut*, 557, R.
- scilicet—yes, 471, a.2.
- scire—first Impv. wanting, 267, n.: *sciēns* iupred. attrib., 328, n.6; *quod sciām*, *quantum sciō*, 627, n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 527, R.1; followed by direct question, 467, n.; *sciēns*, with Gen., 375, n.2; *scitū* as Sup., 430, n.
- scribere—with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2; with *ut*, 546, n.1.
- season—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6.
- secondary words—see Derivatives.
- secundum—as prep., 416, 24: *alter* for *secundus*.
- secus—70, R.2; *sequinus*, 87, 8; strengthens sin, 594; with *quam*, 643, n.4.
- sed—in composition, 9, 4, 715, n.1.
- sed—introduces contrast to demonstrative, 307, n.4; with *etiam*, *quoque*, after *nōn modo*, 482, 5 and n.1; with *nē*—*quidem*, *ib.* n.1; omitted, *ib.* n.2; with *et*, *ib.* n.2; syntax of, 485; repeated, *ib.* n.2; strengthened, *ib.* n.3.
- seeking—vbs. of, with Final Dat., 355, n.2.
- seeming—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.
- semi-deponents—187.
- semi-hiatus—720, R.1.
- semi-vowels 6, 2, A.
- semipaternum—as adv. Acc., 336, n.1.
- senatus—decl. of, 61, 68, 5.
- sending—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- senex—decl. of, 56, 5; Comp. of, 67, 9.
- sentence—simple or cpd., 201; syntax of simple, 202, ff.; simplest form of, 202; simple expanded, 204, ff.; incomplete, 450–470; coördination of, 473; Copulative, 474–482; Adversative, 483–491; Disjunctive, 492–497; Causal and Illative, 498–503; Object, 523–537; Causal, 538–542; Final, 543–550; Consecutive, 551–558; Temporal, 559–568; Conditional, 569–602; Concessive, 603–609; Relative, 610–637; Abridged, 645–663; Participial, 664–670.
- sententia in phrases with *ut*, 546, n.2, 557, R.
- sentire—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.
- Separation—Gen. of, 374, n.8, 383, 2; Abl. of, 390.
- SEQUENCE OF TENSES—509–519; rule and modifications, 509; general considerations, 510; shift from primary to secondary sequence, 511, n.2; in sentences of Design, 512; in sentences of Result, 513; in coincident sentences, *ib.* n.3; representation of Subjv. in, 514, 515; in O. O., 516; after other moods, 517; after Inf. or part, 518; original Subjvs. in, 519; derangement of, *ib.* n.1; in Comparative Sentences, 602, R.1; after Hist. Pr., 511, R.1; after Pure Pf., *ib.* R.3, 613, R.1; after Hist. Pf., 511, R.4; after accident, etc., *ib.* n.2; after vb. with future character, 515, R.3.
- sequester—heteroclite, 68, 4.
- sequitur—with *ut*, 553, 3.
- seratum—heteroclite, 68, 3.
- servire—with Dat., 346, R.2.
- servus—omitted, 362, n.1.
- shortening—of penult, 701, R.2, b; of vowels, 716, 717.
- showing—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with Nom. and Inf., 528.
- si—with *o* in Wishes, 281 and n.1; with-

- out 5 in Wishes, *ib* n 1; *sia*, *södēs*, *sultis*, with Impv., 269; in Indirect Question after vbs. of Trial, 460,1,b; in Iterative action, 568, 567; sign of Condition, 560 and n 1; *siquidem*, *ib*. n 2, 595, n 5; *si nōn* and *nisi* 561; *sin*, 562; *si modo*, *tamen*, *vérō*, 565,n.6; *si forte*, *ib*. n 1. Concessive, 604, n 1; with Inf., 636, n 2.  
*wilbants*—6,2,A; suffixes with, 128.  
*alio*—coördinate with other particles, 482, 4,n.; correlative of *al*, 590, n.1.  
*sicut*—given Assumed Reason, 602, n.4.  
*significare*—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
*ignum*—in phrases with *ut*, 546, n.2.  
*silentiō*—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
*similis*—compared, 87,3; with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1 and n.4.  
*simul*—as prep., 417,12; *simul*—*simul*, 482,1 and n.1; Temporal, with *atque* (sc.), *as soon as*, 561, 563; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564 and n.; with Fut. and Fut. Pf., 565 and n.  
*simulare*—with Inf., 527, n.2.  
*sin*—use of, 592; strengthened by *minus*, etc., *ib*. n.  
*sine*—position of, 412, n.1; as prep., 417, 13; with Abl. Ger., 433, n.2.  
*sinere*—with Inf., 423, n.6, 553, 2,n.; with *ut*, 532, n.1, 553, 2.  
*singular*—in collective sense for Pl., 204, n 8; Voc. with Pl. vb., 211, n.2; neut. sums up preceding Pl., *ib*. n 3; as a subj. combined with *cum* and another word, 285, n.2.  
*singulare*—in phrases with Inf., 422, n 3; in phrases with *ut*, 553, 4.  
*singulus*—with numerals, 295.  
*siquidem*—560, n 2, 595, n 5.  
*sinister*—Comp. of, 87,1,n.1.  
*sīe*—strengthens Impv., 269.  
*sistī*—as copulative vb., 206, n.1.  
*sive*—use of, 496; *sive*—*sive*, *ib*. 2, 595, n.4; or *ib*. n.1; and *seu*, *ib*. n.3.  
*smell*—vbs. of, with Inner Object, 333, 2, n.5.  
*socer*—and *socrus*, 32, 1,n.  
*södēs*—strengthens Impv., 269.  
*solēre*—with Inf., 423, 2,n.2; *solitō*, as Abl. of Respect, 399, n.1.  
*sollicitari*—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.  
*sōlus*—decl. of, 78; in pred. attrib., 225, n.6; *nōn sōlūm sed*, etc., 423, 6, and n.1; with *qui* and Subjv., 631, 1.  
*solvere*—with Abl., 390, 2,n.2.  
*sonniſtre*—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.1.  
*sonauts*—6,2,B.  
*sortitō*—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
*Sotadcau*—verse, 816.  
*sound*—vbs. of, with neut. Acc. of Inner Object, 333, 2,n.6.  
*Specification*—Gen. of, 361.  
*spectare*—with ex and Abl., 402, n.2.  
*specus*—heteroclite, 68, 9.  
*spērare*—with Inf., 527, n.2; with Pr. Inf., 531, n.4.  
*spēs*—with *est* and Pr. Inf., 531, n.4; in phrases with Inf., 527, n.2; with *ut*, 546, n.2; in Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1.  
*spinter*—defective, 70, B.  
*sponte*—defective, 70, A.  
*Standard*—Abl. of, 402, 403; ex and Abl. instead of Abl., 402, n.2; Abl. of, with *ante* or *post*, 403, n.4; Acc. of Extent for Abl. *ib*. n. 3; of comparison omitted, 297.  
*stāre*—with Gen. of Price, 379; *to abide by*, with Abl., 401, n.6; *to persist in*, with Inf., 423, 2 n.2.  
*statuere*—with in and Abl., 385, n.1; with Inf., 423, 2,n.2; with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
*status*—in phrases with *ut*, 557, n.  
*stem*—25, 1, 122. Present, 114, 3,a, 123; Perfect, 114, 3,b, 124; Supine, 114, 3,c, 125; Formation of Verb stem, 122–125; varies between Conjugations, 126; quantity of stem syllables, 714.  
*stein*—characteristic—26, 120; euphonic changes in, 121, n.  
*stilltare*—with Abl., 401, n.5.  
*studire*—with Dat., 346, n.2; with Dat. Ger., 420, 1 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
*studiōsus*—with Gen., 374, n.5.  
*stultitiae*—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.2.  
*stūdēre*—with Dat., 346, n.2, and n.2; with Inf., 423, 2,n.2; with *ut*, 546, n.1.  
*sub*—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 321, 347; with *condicōne*, etc., 399, n.3; usage of, as prep., 418, 2.  
*subesse*—with Dat., 347, n.2; *timbrem*, with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.  
*subject*—201; in Nomin., 203; in Acc. with Inf., *ib*. n.1; forms of, 204; omitted, 207; of impersonal vbs., 206, 1,n. and 2,n.1; Multiplication of, 285, ff.; Qualification of, 288, ff.; *prolepsis* of subj. of

- dependent clause, 468; of Inf. omitted, 527, n.3, 532, n.2 and n.2; Acc. and Inf. as, 535; attraction of pred. after Acc. and Inf., *ib.* n.3.
- Subjective**—Genitive, 363, 364; poss. pron. instead, 364.
- SUBJUNCTIVE**—112, 4; early forms of, 130, 4; Aorist forms of Pf. and Plupf., 131, 4, b, 2, 3; Indic. for Deliberative, 254, n.2; with generic relatives, *ib.* n.6, 525, n.2; force of, 255; Indic. with vbs. of Possibility, etc., *ib.* n.; Ideal and Unreal, 256, 1; Potential and Opt., *ib.* 2 Potential of Pr. and Fut., 257–259; Potential for Indic., *ib.* n.3; Potential of Past, 258; Potential of Past with *velle*, etc., *ib.* n.1; Opt., 260; negs. of Opt., *ib.*, particles with Opt., 261; Impf. for Unreal wish, *ib.* n.2; in Asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263, 267, 270, n. 272; as concessive, 264 and n.; tense relations of, 277; with *quam ut* or *quam qui* to express disproportion, 298; in Deliberative or Rhetorical questions, 265, 465, 466; in Indirect questions, 467; after vb. with Fut. character, 515, n.3; Original in dependence, 519; with *quod, as to the fact that*, 525, 2, n.3; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 4; with *ut* for Inf., 557, n.1; in Temporal Clauses, 560, 2, 563, nn. 4, 5; in Iterative action, 567, n.; in Contemporaneous action, 572, 573; in Subsequent action, 577; with *cum*, 585, 588; in Relative Sentences, 627, 628; by Attraction, 500, 4, 629; after *potius*, 644, n.3; in O. O., 650–652.
- sublimis**—in pred. attrib., 325, n.6.
- subloct**—with Inf., 422, n.4.
- subordination**—defined, 472; syntax of Subordinate Clauses, 504, f.; division of, 506–507; mood in, 508; Sequence of Tenses in, 509, 519.
- subsequent action**—syntax of Sentences of, 574–577; with Indic., 574–576; with Subjv., 577.
- substantives**—defined, 16, 1, and n.1, n.1; inflection of, 17; division of, 18; gender of, 19, 20; *mōbilis*, 21, 2; epicene, *ib.* 3; irregular, 67–71; heterogeneous, 67; heteroclitics, 68; metaplasts, *ib.*; defective, 69; *singularia tantum*, *ib.* A; *pluralia tantum*, *ib.* B; heterologa, *ib.* C; formation of, 180, 181; without suffixes, 183; adjs. and parts used as, 204, nn.; Pl. of abstracts, *ib.* nn.5, 6; agreement of pred., 211 and *RR.*, nn.; with several adjs. in Sq., 290, n.2; common surname in Pl., 290, n.1; verbal with Acc., 290, n.3, 297, n.5; verbal with Dat., 256, n.3, 257, 258, n.2; in Abl. Abs., 410, n.5; with Dat. Ger., 428, n.5; with Inf. for Gen. Ger., *ib.* n.4; in phrases with Final Sentence, 544, n.2; in phrases with Consecutive Sentence, 557 and n.
- subter**—vbs. cpd. with *takē Acc.*, 331; as adv., 415; as prep., 418, 2.
- subvenire**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- succidere**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- succrēscere**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- suocumbere**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- suocurrere**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- stūdere**—with Abl. of Means, 401, n.5.
- sufferre**—Pf. of, 171, n.2.
- suffixes**—180; primary and secondary, *ib.* n.1; of substantives, 181; of adjs., 182; forming diminutives, 181, 12, 182, 12; in detail, 184–189; with vowels, 184; with gutturals, 185; with dentals, 186; with labials, 187; with s, 188; with liquids, 189.
- sufrāgīri**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- sui**—decl. of, 102 and n.1; with -met, *ib.* n.2; with -pte, *ib.* n.3; circumlocution for Part. Gen., 304, 3, n.2; usage of, 309, 520–522; complement of Inf., 309, 3; in instead, *ib.* n.1; with *suus*, *ib.* n.2.
- sultis**—strengthens Impv., 269.
- sum**—see *esse*.
- summus**—comparison of, 87, 2; used partitively, 291, n.2.
- supellīx**—decl. of, 44, 5.
- super**—vbs. cpd. with, *takē Acc.* or *Dat.*, 331, 347; as adv., 415; as prep., 418, 4; with Acc. Ger., 422, n.1; with Abl. Ger., 423; *id quod, quam quod*, 525, 2, n.2.
- superāre**—with Acc. of Respect, 397, n.2.
- superēsse**—with Dat., 347, n.2.
- superior**—87, 2 and 7.
- superiority**—vbs. of, with Acc. of Respect, 397, n.2.
- superlative**—in *issimus*, 86; in *rimus*, 87, 1; in *limus*, *ib.* 3; in *entissimus*, *ib.* 4 and 5; lacking, *ib.* 9; of parts., 89; of advs., 93; meaning of, varies with position, 291, n.2, 302; strengthened, 203; with *quam, quantum, quāl*, *ib.* n.2, 642,

- n.5; with *quisque*, 218,2; with Part. Gen., 373; with prep., *ib.* n.2; with *ut*, 642, n.2.
- superedēre**—with Abl., 300,2,n.3.
- superestes**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.
- superfine**—112,5; system, 114,3,c; formation of, 115,3, 121,3; stem, 125; in Abl. of Sep., 300,3,n.3, 496, n.4; in Abl. of Respect, 397,1; with *opus*, 406, n.5; defined, 434; Acc. of, 435; Abl. of, 436.
- suppetiae**—defective, 70, B.
- supplex**—with Dat., 346, n.5.
- supplicare**—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.4.
- suprā**—with *quam* after a comparative, 296, n.3; with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 25.
- surde**—6,2,B.
- surname**—common, in Pl., 200, n.1.
- sūs**—decl. of, 50.
- suscēnsāre**—with Det., 346, n.2.
- suscipere**—with Acc. Ger., 420, n.1.
- sūspicāri**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.
- sūspicere**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.1.
- sūspirāre**—with Acc. and Inf., 523, n.1.
- sūstinetāre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2.
- sunus (os)**—102; syntax of, 309; emphatic, *ib.* 2; with prep. phrases, *ib.* 4; is instead, *ib.* n.1; *suum quisque*, *ib.* n.3; *suō tempore*, *ib.* 4; with Gen. Ger., 423, n.1; in dependent clauses, 521; *suom* with *ut*, 557, n.2.
- syllaba anceps**—741.
- syllabes**—division of, 10; names for, 11; open, 11, n.; close, *ib.*; length of, 12; common, 12; quantity of final, 707–712; of polysyllables, 707–709; of monosyllables, 710–713.
- sylypaine**—690.
- synapheia**—723.
- synapcope**—725–743; in Pf. forms, 121, ff.
- synecdoche**—695.
- synesis**—727.
- syntax**—defined, 201.
- systole**—723.
- T**—sound of, 7; t-class of vbs., 123, III.
- tābēs**—heteroclite, 68, n.
- tābō**—defective, 70, A.
- taedet**—with Gen., 377; with pronoun as subj., 377, n.2.
- taking**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; End For Which given by Dat. or ad, *ib.* n.2; vbs. of Taking Away, with Dat., 347, n.5; with Acc. Ger., 420.
- tālāris**—and **tālārius**, 84,2.
- tālis**—with *qui* or *ut* and Subjv., 631,1 and n.1.
- tām**—with *quam*, *quantum*, *qui*, and superlative, 303, n.2; with *qui* or *ut* and Subjv., 631,1 and n.1.
- tāmen**—introduces contrast, 307, n.4; position of, 413, n.3; with *sed*, 485, n.3; syntax of, 490; with *at*, 488, n.2; emphasizes adversative relation, 587, n.1; with **tāmetai**, 604, n.3.
- tāmetai**—form, 603 and n.; usage, 604 and n.n.
- tāmquam**—with subst., 420, n.4; with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with Indic., *ib.* n.1; to give an Assumed Reason, *ib.* n.4; with part., 606, n.; **tāmquam al**, 603, n.4; coordinate with *al*, 422, n.3.
- tāti**—as Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- tātīdem**—as Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- tātus**—with *qui* or *ut* and Subjv., 631,1 and n.1; **tāti**, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380; **tāti est**, *it is worth while*, *ib.* n.1; **tātum**, with *quam*, *quantum*, *qui*, and superlative, 303, n.2; **tātum**, for Abl. of Measure, 412, n.2; **nōn tantum sed, etc.**, 422, 5; **tātum quod**, 525, n.2; **tātum abest ut**, 552, n.1.
- tāste**—vbs. of, with Inner Obj., 333,2,n.5.
- teaching**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 329 and n.n.2,3.
- temperāre**—with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.2; with *nō*, 548, n.1; **temperāna**, with Gen., 375, n.2.
- templum**—omitted, 362, n.3.
- TEMPORAL SENTENCES**—550 588: division of, 550; mōdes in, 560; Antecedent Action, 561–567; Iterative Action, 568, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 569–572; Subsequent Action, 574–577; with **cum**, 578–588; general view of, 579; Temporal **cum**, 560; **cum inversum**, 561. Explicative **cum**, 562; Conditional **cum**, 563; Iterative **cum**, 564; Circumstantial **cum**, 565 588; Historical **cum**, 565; Causal **cum**, 566; Concessive **cum**, 567; **cum**–**tum**, 588; in *ō. o.*, 565.
- tempāre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2.
- tempus**—with Inf. or Ger., 423, n.2: tempore or in tempore, 394, n.; id temporis, 394, n.2; with Inf., 422, n.2; **tempri**, 411, n.1.
- tendency**—suffixes for, 182,3.

- tendere manus**—with Dat., 358, n.3.  
**tenēre**—with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of Result, 238; **memoriā tenēs**, with Pr. Inf., 281, 2, n.1: (sō) with n.6, 548, n.1; with **quōminus**, 549; with **quin**, 555, 1; with **ut**, 553, 1; **tenēri**, with Gen. of Charge, 378, n.1.  
**tenses**—112, 3; signs of, 114, 2; formation of, 114, 115, 121; syntax of, 222–258; definitions, 223; of continuance, attainment, or completion, 224; Pr., 227–230; Impf., 231–234; Pure Pf., 235–236; Hist. Pf., 239, 240; Plupf., 241; Fut., 242, 243; Fut. Pf., 244, 245; periphrastic, 246–251; in Letters, 253; of Indic., 276; of Impv., 278; Sequence of, 509; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 8; in Relative Sentences, 622, 623; in O. O., 653–655; in Inf., 279, 653: of Subjv., 277, 654, 655; *Representatiō*, 654, n.  
**tenus**—position of, 413, n.1; usage of, as prep., 417, 14.  
**terminations of cases**—27.  
**terra**—in Abl. without in, 386, n.1; **terrae** as Loc., 411, n.2.  
**tertium**—**est** with **ut**, 553, 4.  
**tēstis est**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.  
**thematic class of verbs**—133, 1.  
**thickness**—how expressed, 335, n.1.  
**thinking**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with Object Sentence and **quod**, 523, 525, 1, n.7; with Inf., 527; vbs. of, attracted into Subjv. after **quod**, 541, n.3; vbs. of, with **quin**, 555, 2.  
**threat**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, n.5.  
**Tiburi**—as Loc., 411, n.1.  
**time**—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; suffixed for, 182, 8; **when**, in Abl., 393; **how long**, in Acc., 336; **within which**, in Abl., 393; with **per**, 336, 393, n.1; with **tōtūs**, ib. n.2; **when = for which**, ib. n.3; with **hic**, **ille**, ib. n.4; preps. for Abl., 394; lapses of, with **cum**, 580, n.3; given by part., 665, 670, 1.  
**timēre**—constr. of, 550 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.  
**timor**—**est**, with Inf., 550, n.5; **timōrem subesse**, with Inf., 533, n.1.  
**titles**—position of, 676, n.4.  
**tmesis**—728.  
**tōtūs**—decl. of, 76; in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; with Abl. of Place Where, 386; with Time How Long, 393, n.2.  
**towns**—with Acc., 337; in Abl. of Place Where, 386; in Abl. of Place Whence, 391; in Loc., 411; with preps., 337, n.3, 391, n.1; with appositives, 337, n.2, 386, n.1, 391, n.1, 411, n.3.  
**trāct&tilde;**—as Sup., 433, n.  
**trade**—suffixes for, 181, 4.  
**trādere**—with Acc. Ger., 430, n.1; with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.  
**tradesman**—suffixes for, 181, 3.  
**training**—vbs. of, with Abl., 401, n.1.  
**trajection**—696.  
**trāns**—in composition, 9, 4; vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as prep., 416, 26.  
**transitive verb**—defined, 213; used intrans., ib. n.a.  
**transposition**—of consonants, 9, 8.  
**trās**—decl. of, 96.  
**trial**—vbs. of, with **si**, 400, 1, b; with implied protasis, 601.  
**tribes**—in Abl. of Origin, 395, n.2.  
**tribuere**—with **ut**, 553, 2.  
**tribūtūm**—heteroclite, 68, 5.  
**tricorporis**—defective, 88, 1.  
**trīnī**—87, n.3.  
**tritūm**—with Inf., 422, n.3.  
**trochée**—shortened by Iambic Law, 717; trochaic foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 768–776.  
**trī**—decl. of, 101 and n.1; synesis in, ib. n.4; with **met** and **-pte**, 102, nn. 2, 3; **vestri** and **vestrum**, 304, 2 and 3, 304, n.; poss. pron. for, 304, 2, n.2; **tui**, **vestri**, with Ger., 428, n.1.  
**tu&tilde;rī**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.1.  
**tum**—with subst., 430, n.4; with **etiam**, 478, n.1; as coördinating particle, 482, 1 and n.1; **tum**—**tum**, 482, 1 and n.1; **cum**—**tum**, 588; correlative of **si**, 590, n.1.  
**tūsus (os)**—101 and n.3; **tūnum** with **ut**, 557, n.; **tūf** with Gen. Ger., 428, n.1.  
**U**—length of Final—707, 6.  
**ubi**—as soon as, with Indic., 561–563; Causal, with Indic., 564, n.1, 565 and n.1; with Iterative action, 566, 567: with Subjv., 567, n.; Conditional, 590, n.3.  
**illus**—decl. of, 76; and **quisquam**, 107, 3, n.2, 108; syntax of, 317.  
**ills**—416, 27.  
**ulterior**—87, 8; **ultimus** in pred. attrib., 325, n.6.  
**ultimate**—defined, 11.

- ultræ**—with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.1; position of, 412, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 27.
- uncertainty**—vbs. of, with **quid**, 555, 2.
- understatement**—definition of, 700.
- undertaking**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- unimanus**—defective, 85, 2.
- unlikeness**—adj.a. of, with **atque (sc.)**, 643.
- UNREAL CONDITION**—597; with Impf. of opposition to Past, *ib.* n.1; with Indic. in Apod., *ib.* n.2, 3; in **ō O**, *ib.* n.4, 659; Apod. in, after vb. requiring Subjv., 597, n.5; with **absque**, *ib.* n.
- unus**—decl. of, 78, 86, n.1; Pl. with plurilia tantum, 93, n.1; as distributive, 97, n.3; with superlative, 303; with **quidam**, 313, n.3; with **quisquam**, 317, 1, n.1; with **nōmō**, **nullus**, 317, 2, n.3; in pred. attrib., 328, n.6; with prep. for Part. Gen., 372, n.2; with **qui** and Subjv., 631, 1.
- unusquisque**—107, 5.
- urbs**—with name of Town, requires prep., 337, n.2, 386, n.1, 391, n.1, 411, n.3; with Appositional Gen., 361, n.1.
- urgērī**—with Gen. of Charge, 378 n.1.
- wr̄ging**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546.
- fusque**—with Acc. of Motion Whither, 237, n.4; usage of, as prep., 418, 28.
- fusus**—with Abl., 406; with other constr., *ib.* n.5; as pred., *ib.*; with Pf. part., 406, 437, n.2; in phrases with **ut**, 557, n.1; **fūd** **venit**, with **ut**, 553, 3.
- ut**—in wishes, 261; with **quam**, to express disproportion, 298, 631, 3, n.1; omitted, 298, n.2; with **potuit**, to strengthen superlative, 303; **ut**—**ita**, 482, 4; after vbs. of Adding and Happening, 525, 1, n.5; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543; **ut nōn**, *ib.* 4, 545, n.2, 552; parenthetical, *ib.* n.3; **ut nō**, 545, n.1, 546, n.3; after vbs. of Fear, 550 and n.1; to add restriction, 552 n.3; after vb. of Causation, 553, 1; after vbs. of Compelling and Permitting, *ib.* 2; after vbs. of Happening, *ib.* 3; after impersonals, *ib.* 4; Explanatory, 557; Exclamatory, 558; with **magis quam**, 557, n.2; **ut primum**, as soon as, with Indic., 561–563; Causal, 564, n.; with Iterative sentences, 566, 567; nisi **ut**, 567, n.2, 591, n.3; with **af** and Subjv., 602; with Subjv., to give an Assumed Reason, *ib.* n.4; Concess- sive, 606 and n.1; with **qui**, 626, n.1; after comparatives, 631, 3, n.1; with **quisque** and superlative, 642, n.2; pro **et** **ut**, as Causal, *ib.* n.4; **ut qui**, with superlative, *ib.* n.5; introduces **ō**. **O** after vbs. of Will and Desire, 652, n.1; with part. to give Assumed Reason, 666, n.
- utere**, **bag**—decl. of, 44, 2, 45, n.1.
- uter**, **which**—decl. of, 76, 106; **quis for**, 300, n.; **utrum** as interrogative particle, 458; in Indirect Question, 460, 2, n. 8; **utrum**, whether or no, 459, n.2.
- uterlibet**—108.
- uterque**—decl. of, 108; with Pl. vb., 211, n.1, Ex. a, 292, n.; to express reciprocal action, 221, n.1 and 2; force of, 292; with Part. Gen., 371, n.1.
- uterum**—heterogeneous, 32, 1, n.
- utervis**—108.
- uti**—with Abl., 407 and n.2, a; other constrs. of, *ib.* n.3; with personal Ger., 427, n.5.
- utinam**—in wishes, 261 and n. 1.
- utpote**—with **qui**, 626, n.1.
- V**—aud **u**, 1, n.2; pronunciation of, 7.
- vacare**—with Dat., 346, n.2; attraction of pred. after, 535, n.3.
- vacuus**—with Gen., 374, n.8.
- vae**—with Dat., 343, 1, n.1.
- valdō**—**very**, 439, n.3; with **quam** and Indic., 457, n.
- valere**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with **ut**, 553, 1.
- validus**—with Abl. or Gen., 406, n.3.
- vās**—heteroclitic, 88, 7.
- ve**—usage of, 496; **ve**—**ve**, *ib.* n.2.
- vehementer**—**very**, 439, n.3.
- vel**—with superlative, 303; usage of, 494; **vel**—**vel**, *ib.* 2; for example, *ib.* n.1; as well as, *ib.* n.3.
- velle**—conjugation of, 174; exact use of Fut. or Fut. Pf., 242, n.2 and n.3; has no periphrasis, 248, n. 1, 331, n.3; **vellem**, 257, 2; **vellem**, as Potential, 256, n. 1; **vellem**, as Unreal, 261, n.; with Subjv. for Impv., 270, n.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 280, 2, b, and n.1; with Pf. Inf. pass., 280, 2, c, n.; **volens** in pred. attrib., 326, n.6; **sibi velle**, 361, n.2; **volenti est**, 353, n.2; with Inf. or **ut**, 532, and n.3, 546, n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.

- velut—with Subjv., 602; with part. to give Assumed Reason, 666, n.  
 velut*sī*—with Subjv., 602.  
 vēnālis—with Abl., 404, n.4.  
 vēndere—with Gen. of Price, 379; bene vēndere, 380, 2, n.  
 venire—omitted, 209, n.5; venit mihi in mentem, with Gen., 376, n.3; with Sup., 435, n.1; ventūrs as adj., 438, n.; in suspicōnem, with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.2; with Inf., 422, n.5; usūl venit, with ut, 553, 3.  
 vēnire—pass. of vēndere, 169, 2, n.1; with Gen. of Price, 379.  
 venter—decl. of, 44, 2, 45, n.1.  
 verbs—defined, 179, 1; pred. agreement of, 211; subst. with Acc., 330, n.3, 337, n.5; adj. with Acc., ib. n.4; in bilis, with Dat., 385, n.; in sī, with Gen., 375; formation of *verbātīa*, 191.  
 verbs—defined, 16, 4; conjugation of, 17; inflection of, 114; deponents, 113; personal endings, 114; regular, 120, ff.; classes of, 123; Stem or Thematic class, 123, 1.; Reduplicated Class, ib. II.; T-class, ib. III.; Nasal class, ib. IV.; Inchoative class, ib. V.; i-class, ib. VI.; mixed class, ib. VII.; list of, 137–162; Deponents, 163–166; Semi-deponents, 167; Irregular, 168–174; Defective, 175; formation of, 190–200; division of, 190; Verbalia, 191; Denominative, 192; composition of, 199, 200; Impersonal, 208; intrans. used personally, ib. 2; Concord of, 210, 211, 285–287; trans. and intrans., 213; trans. used as intrans., ib. n. a.; intrans. used as trans., ib. n. b.  
 verbum—with Appositional Gen., 361, 1; in phrases with ut, 546, n.2.  
 verērī—constr. with, 550 and n.1; veritatis as Pr., 282, n.; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 533, n.1.  
 vērisimile—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.3; in phrases with ut, 553, 4.  
 vērō—position of, 413, n.3; yes, 471, n.1; with atque, 477, n.2; with sed, 485, n.3; syntax of, 487; with nisi, 591, n.4; with si, 592.  
 verse—745; methods of combining, 746; Italic, 755; Saturnian, 756; compound, 820, 823.  
 versification—729–823; anacrustic scheme of, 739.  
 versus—position of, 413, n.1; usage as prep., 416, 29; versus *Ialicus*—755.  
 vertere—with Final Dat., 356, n.2.  
 vērum—introduces contrast to demonstrative, 307, n.4; yes, 471, n.1; with etiam, 482, 5 and n.1; syntax of, 486; with Inf., 422, n.3; with ut, 553, 4.  
 very—translations of, 439, n.3.  
 ves̄ci—with Abl., 407 and n.2, c.; with personal Ger., 427, n.5, .  
 vesper—decl. o., 68, 10; in Abl. of Time, 393, n. 5; vesperi—37, 5, 411, n.1.  
 vester—101 and n.3.  
 vēt̄re—with Acc., 346, n.3; with Inf., 423, 2, n.3 and 6, 532, n.1 and 2.  
 vetus—decl. of, 82, 2; comp. of, 87, 1, n.2.  
 vī—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
 vicissim—gives reciprocal relation, 221, n.2; as coördinating particle, 482, 1, n.2.  
 vidērē—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2; with ut, 546, n.1; with nō, 548, n.1; with Direct Question, 467, n.; with two Noms. in pass., 206; vidērī, and vidētūr, 528, n.2; vidē, with Subjv. for Impv., 271, n.2, 548, n.3; viderīs, as Impv., 245, n.  
 vīllīs—with Abl. of Price, 404, n.2.  
 vincere—with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2; causam, 333, 2, n.  
 violentus—and violēns, 84, 1.  
 virus—defective, 70, C.  
 vīs—70, D; with Pl. vb., 211, n.1, Ex. a.; vī, as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
 -vīs—with relatives, 111, 3.  
 vitium—with Exegetical Gen., 361, 2; with Inf., 422, n.2; vītīs as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
 vivere—with Abl., 407, n.2, c.  
 [vix]—70, D; tuam vicem, 334, n.2.  
 VOCATIVE—defined, 23, 5; in I, 33, n.2; in adjs. of 1st and 2d Decl., 73; no syntax of, 201, n.1; Nom. instead, ib. n.2; in app., ib. n.3; in pred., 211, n.3; Sg. with Pl. vb., ib. n.2; Nom. instead, 321, n.1; in pred. app., 325, n.1; with ɔ or ɔɪ, 343, 1, n.1.  
 voice—112, 2, 212; act., 213; pass., 214; middle, 212, n.  
 voluntās—in phrases with ut, 546, n.2; voluntātē as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.  
 volup—indeclinable, 85, C.  
 vōmer—decl. of, 45, n.2.  
 vowels—2; sounds of, 3; phonetic varia-

- tions in, 8; weakening of, *ib.* 1; omission of, *ib.* 2; epenthesis of, *ib.* 3; assimilation of, *ib.* 4. quantity of final, 707; suffixes with, 184.
- vōx**—with Appositional Gen., 361,1.
- vulgō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- vultus**—heteroclite, 68,5.
- Want**—vbs. of. with Abl., 406; adj. of. with Gen. and Abl., *ib.* N.3.
- warning**—vbs. of. with ut, 546.
- weakening of vowels**—8,1, 701, N.2.
- weigh**—substs. of. with Gen., 369.
- will**—vbs. of. with Inf., 280,2,c. 423,2, 532; sequence after vbs. of, 515, N.3; ut instead of Inf. after, 532, N.1-4; with Final sentence, 546; with Inf. instead, *ib.* N.1; with simple Subjv., *ib.* N.2.
- wishes**—in Subjv., 260, 261; apodosis omitted with, 601.
- without**—translated by *ut nōn*, 552, N.4; *quin*, 556; *cum nōn*, 587, N.2.
- wonder**—constr. with vbs. of, 542, N.1.
- words**—Formation of, 176-200.
- Want**—vbs. of. with Abl., 406; adj. of. with Gen. and Abl., *ib.* N.3.
- warning**—vbs. of. with ut, 546.
- weakening of vowels**—8,1, 701, N.2.
- weigh**—substs. of. with Gen., 369.
- will**—vbs. of. with Inf., 280,2,c. 423,2, 532; sequence after vbs. of, 515, N.3; ut instead of Inf. after, 532, N.1-4; with Final sentence, 546; with Inf. instead, *ib.* N.1; with simple Subjv., *ib.* N.2.
- wishes**—in Subjv., 260, 261; apodosis omitted with, 601.
- without**—translated by *ut nōn*, 552, N.4; *quin*, 556; *cum nōn*, 587, N.2.
- wonder**—constr. with vbs. of, 542, N.1.
- words**—Formation of, 176-200.
- Y**—1, N.3; length of final, 707,3.
- yes**—trans. of, 471, a and c.
- yielding**—vbs. of. with Dat., 348.
- Z**—when introduced, 1, N.3; sound of, *ib.* N.
- zeugma**—590.

## SYNTAX OF INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS.

The syntactical usage of individual authors is treated as follows:

- ACCIUS**—358, N.1; 528, 1, N.1.
- AFRANIUS**—498, N.1.
- APULEIUS**—326, N.1; 365, N.; 406, N.3; 408, N.1; 591, N.3; 607, N.3; 626, N.1.
- CAELIUS**—574, N.
- CAENAR.**—208, 2, N.2; 209, N.5; 228, N.1; 230, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 260; 280, 2, c, N.; 285, N.2; 286, 3, N.; 311, 1, N.2; 323, N.1; 324; 335, N.; 336, N.2; 337, N.1; 341, N.2; 349, N.5; 354, N.2; 356, N.2 and 3; 358, N.3; 359, N.1; 366, N.2; 372, N.2 and 3; 374, N.1 and 9; 375, N.2; 381, N.4; 386, N.; 391, N.; 396, N.2; 401, N.7; 407, N.2, d; 410, N.4; 413, N.1; 415; 416, 2, 3, 8, 15, 16, 19, 22, and 24; 418, 2; 422, N.2; 423, N.2 and 3; 427, N.2; 429, N.1; 432, N.1; 435, N.2; 436, N.1; 443, N.3; 458, N.1; 460, 2, N.1 and 2; 467, N.; 475, N.3; 476, N.6; 478, N.2; 490, N.2 and 3; 493, 8; 492, 5, N.2 and N.1; 496, N.1; 503; 512, N.1; 513, N.1 and 2; 525, 2, N.3; 527, N.3; 528, N.1; 533, N.4; 541, N.1 and 3; 542, N.1; 545, N.1; 549, N.1 and 2; 553, N.2 and 3; 557, N.1; 560, N.1; 562, N.2; 563, N.2 and 3; 567, N.; 568, N.1; 571, N.3; 591, N.2 and N.2; 602, N.5; 615, N.; 616, 1, N.1; 626, N.1; 627, N.2; 636, N.1; 644, N.3; 647, N.2; 650, N.; 666, N.
- B. Hipp.**—407, N.2, d; 418, 8.
- B. Afr.**—407, N.2, d; 417, 7.
- CATO**—285, N.2; 394, 3, N.1; 401, N.7; 407, N.2; 417, 7; 418, 4; 437, N.2; 477, N.5; 548, N.3; 574, N.
- CATULLUS**—207, N.; 236, N.; 380; 417, 3; 454, N.2; 455, N.; 458, N.1; 477, N.5; 480, N.3; 546, N.3; 567, N.; 644, N.2.
- CELSUS**—602, N.4.
- CICERO**—204, N.7; 206, N.1; 209, N.3 and 5; 211, N.4 and N.3; 214, N.2; 228, N.1; 230, N.; 242, N.3; 245, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 258, N.; 254, N.6 and NN, 1, 2; 257, N.1; 261; 269; 271, 2, N.2; 280, 2, c, N.; 285, N.2; 293, N.; 296, N.1; 301; 311, 1, N.2; 318, N.1; 319, N.2; 323, N.1; 324; 336, N.2; 337, N.1, 2, and 4; 341, N.2; 343, N.1; 346, N.1 and 2; 347, N.2; 349,

## GENERAL INDEX.

- R.5; 361,N.1; 362,N.2; 364,N.2; 366,R.3  
and N.3; 367; 368,N.3 and 5; 361,N.1;  
362,N.1; 364,N.1; 369,N.2; 372,N.2 and 3;  
374,N.1,2,4, and 5; 375,N.2 and 3; 376,R.  
1,2, and 3; 380,L.N.1 and 4; 383,N.1; 385,  
N.1 and 2; 396,N.1; 398,N.1; 403,N.4; 406,  
N.5; 407,N.2,d; 410,N.4; 411,R.1 and 2,  
and N.1; 413,R.1; 416,1,2,3,5,7,13,14,15,  
16,19,24,25,28, and 29; 417,L.N.3 and 14;  
418,4; 422,N.2,3, and 5; 423,N.2 and 3;  
427,N.2 and 5; 428,R.2 and N.1; 429,N.1;  
432,N.1; 435,N.1; 436,N.1; 438,N.; 439,N.  
2,3 and 4; 443,N.3; 453,N.1; 457,L.N.1  
and 2,2 and N.; 458,N.1; 459,N.1; 460,L.  
N.2; 467,N.; 477,N.4 and 5; 478,  
N.2; 480,R.1 and N.3; 481,N.; 482,L.N.1  
and 2,2,3, and 5; 482,R.2 and N.1; 484,N.1  
and 2; 486,N.1 and 2; 488,N.; 488,N.1 and  
2; 489,N.1; 491,N.; 493,N.1; 494,N.1;  
495; 496,N.1; 497; 498,N.3,4,6 and 8; 501;  
503; 511,R.4; 513,R.1 and N.1; 525,L.  
N.1 and 4,2,N.2 and 3; 527,R.1 and 3,  
and N.2; 528,N.1 and 2; 532,N.1 and 3;  
533,R.1; 536,N.1; 538,N.4; 541,N.1,2,3 and  
5; 542,R. and N.1; 543,N.3; 548,N.3; 549,  
N.1,2 and 4; 550,N.1,2 and 5; 553,L.1; 555,  
R.1; 563,N.2,3,4 and 5; 567,N.; 569,N.1;  
571,N.2 and 3; 573,N.2; 574,N.; 576,N.1;  
577,N.4 and 5; 580,N.3; 590,N.1; 591,R.4  
and N.2; 602,N.5; 604,R.2; 605,N.; 606,N.  
1; 606; 615,N.; 616,L.N.2, and 2,N.; 617,  
N.1; 626,N.1; 627,R.1 and 2; 635,N.1 and  
2; 636,N.1; 643,N.4; 644,R.3; 647,N.2;  
666,N.; 677,N.
- COLUMELLA—502,N.
- CORNIFICIUS—439,N.3; 500,R.; 549,N.4.
- CURTUS—416,16; 532,N.1.
- DICTYS—545,R.1.
- ENNIIUS—411,R.2; 476,N.5.
- FLORUS—467,N.; 525,2,N.2.
- FRONTO—525,2,N.3.
- GAIUS—525,2,N.3.
- GELLIUS—580,N.3.
- HINTIUS—423,N.2; 532,N.1.
- HORACE—211,R.1, Ex.a,N.; 271,2,N.2; 301:  
346,N.2; 351,N.1; 416,5,17,19, and 21;  
417,8; 418,4; 421,N.1,c; 422,N.4; 427,N.  
2; 430,N.3; 454,N.2; 457,N.2; 458,N.1  
and 2; 460,2,N.3; 477,N.8; 480,N.1; 482,  
3; 496,N.1; 500,R.; 525,L.N.1, 2,N.2; 533,  
R.1; 536,N.1; 538,N.5; 541,N.5; 563,N.3;  
569,N.1; 591,R.2; 592,N.; 616,1,N.2; 644,  
N.2.
- JUVENAL—602,N.4; 605,N.
- LIVY—204,N.8; 209,N.3; 211,R.1,Ex.a,N.;  
247,N.1; 249,N.; 250,N.1 and 2; 285,Ex.  
3 and N.2; 293,N.; 311,L.R.2,2,N.; 317,N.  
1; 319,N.1; 323,N.1; 335,N.; 337,N.4;  
338,N.1; 346,N.2; 347,R.2; 350,L.N.; 361,  
N.1; 353,N.2; 356,N.2; 359,N.1 and 4;  
363,R.1; 366,R.1; 371,N.; 372,N.1 and 4;  
373,R.1; 374,N.2 and 3; 383,N.1; 385,N.  
1; 390,N.2; 391,R.1 and N.; 395,N.1;  
399,N.1 and 3; 401,N.2 and 6; 403,N.3;  
406,N.3; 410,N.2,3, and 4; 411,R.1 and  
N.1; 413,N.1; 415; 416,2,7,15,16,22,23,  
24, and 28; 417,1,8,10,11, and 14; 418,2,  
and 4; 423,N.2; 427,N.2; 429,2 and N.1;  
430,N.1; 435,N.2; 436,N.1; 437,N.2; 438,  
N.; 439,N.3 and 4; 442,N.3; 443,N.4;  
457,1,N.3; 458,N.1; 460,2,N.3; 467,N.;  
477,N.4,5 and 9; 478,N.1 and 2; 480,N.3;  
482,1,N.1,2 and 5,N.2 and N.1; 497; 498,  
N.1,3 and 8; 502,N.3; 503; 512,N.1 and  
2; 525,L.N.1 and 7 and 2,N.2; 532,N.1;  
536,N.1; 541,N.2 and 5; 542,R. and N.2;  
543,N.3; 545,R.1; 549,N.1; 550,N.5; 555,  
2,N.; 557,R. and N.2; 563,N.2,3, and 5;  
567,N.; 569,N.1; 570,N.4; 571,N.6; 576,  
N.2; 577,N.3,4, and 5; 597,R.5; 602,N.6;  
615,N.; 616,L.N.1 and 2, and 2,N.; 626,N.  
1; 635,N.2; 636,N.1; 644,R.3; 651,N.1;  
666,N.; 687.
- LUCAN—254,N.1; 458,N.1.
- LUCILIUS—383,1,N.2; 496,N.1.
- LUCRETIUS—372,N.2; 383,1,N.2; 405,N.3;  
406,N.6; 422,R.4; 459,N.1; 480,N.2; 482,  
1,N.1; 496,N.1; 500,R.; 525,L.N.1; 533,  
R.1; 564,N.1; 571,N.4; 606,N.1; 636,N.1.
- MARTIAL—280,2,b,N.1.
- NAEVIUS—533,N.1.
- NEPOS—249,N.; 250,N.2; 356,R.3; 406,N.2,  
c; 416,10; 513,N.1; 536,N.1; 555,2,N.;  
571,N.4; 606,N.; 606,N.1; 687.
- OVID—270,N.; 280,2,b,N.1; 349,R.5; 364,  
N.1; 401,N.7; 411,R.2; 416,7; 417,7; 427,  
N.2; 494,N.3; 525,L.N.; 545,R.1; 616,N.2.

- PETRONIUS—**207**,**n.1**; **525**,**l.n.1**.
- PLAUTUS—**206**,**n.1**; **211**,**r.1**, Ex. a.**N.**; **270**,  
**n.1**; **330**,**n.3**; **336**,**n.1**; **347**,**r.2**; **357**,**n**;  
**358**,**n.1**; **361**,**n.1**; **374**,**n.1,2,3**, and **5**;  
**375**,**n.3**; **383**,**l.n.2**, and **3**; **398**,**n.2**; **400**,  
**n.6**; **407**,**n.2**; **411**,**r.1**; **415**; **416**,**6,7,16**,  
**19,21**, and **24**; **417**,**7**; **418**,**4**; **422**,**n.2**;  
**430**,**n.3**; **454**,**n.2**; **455**,**n.1**; **457**,**n.1**; **476**,**n**;  
**3 and 5**; **477**,**n.1** and **6**; **478**,**n.2**; **487**,  
**n.1**; **494**,**n.1** and **6**; **496**,**n.1**; **498**,**n.3**;  
**502**,**n.3**; **525**,**l.n.4** and **2,n.2**; **533**,**r.1**;  
**538**,**n.1** and **3**; **541**,**n.1**; **545**,**r.1**; **546**,  
**n.3**; **548**,**n.3**; **549**,**n.2**; **563**,**n.3**; **569**,**n**;  
**1**; **571**,**n.5**; **576**,**n.1**; **577**,**n.5**; **580**,**n.1**  
and **3**; **597**,**n.1**; **602**,**n.5**; **610**,**n.1**; **615**,**n**;  
**626**,**n.1**; **643**,**n.3**; **677**,**n**.
- PLINY MAJOR—**381**,**n.3**; **398**,**n.2**, **460**,**2,n.3**;  
**467**,**n.1**; **482**,**2**; **498**,**l.n.1**; **592**,**n**.
- PLINY MINOR—**209**,**n.5**; **252**,**n.1**; **418**,**4**; **460**,  
**2,n.3**; **538**,**n.5**; **548**,**n.3**; **602**,**n.4**; **606**,**n**;  
**616**,**1,n.2**.
- POLLIO—**410**,**n.3**.
- PROPERTIUS—**406**,**n.3**; **421**,**n.1,c**; **457**,**l,n.2**;  
**458**,**n.1**; **480**,**n.2** and **3**; **498**,**n.1**.
- QUADRIGARIUS—**407**,**n.2,b**.
- QUINTILIAN—**359**,**n.5**; **406**,**n.3**; **512**,**n.1**;  
**525**,**n.2**; **538**,**n.5**; **602**,**n.4**; **604**,**r.2**;  
**627**,**r.1**.
- SALLUST—**207**,**n.1**; **208**,**2,n.2**; **247**,**n.1**; **250**,  
**n.1**; **280**,**2,c,n.**; **285**,**n.2**; **286**,**n.3**; **311**,  
**r.2**; **323**,**n.1**; **338**,**n.1**; **347**,**r.2**; **349**,**R.4**;  
**353**,**n.2**; **356**,**n.3**; **359**,**n.1** and **5**; **369**,**n**;  
**2**; **372**,**n.2** and **3**; **374**,**n.1,3**, and **8**; **390**,  
**3,n.1**; **391**,**n.1**; **407**,**n.2 d**; **410**,**n.1** and **4**;  
**416**,**2,4,7,16,20** and **24**; **417**,**7**; **418**,**4**; **423**,  
**n.2**; **428**,**r.2**; **435**,**n.1**; **436**,**n.1**; **437**,**n.2**;  
**439**,**n.3**; **460**,**2,n.1**; **467**,**n.1**; **475**,**n.3**; **476**,  
**n.5**; **478**,**n.2**; **480**,**n.3**; **482**,**3** and **5,n.2** and  
**n.1**; **488**,**n.2**; **491**,**n.1**; **496**,**n.1**; **501**; **503**;  
**512**,**n.1**; **513**,**n.1**; **525**,**2,n.2**; **532**,**n.1**; **536**,  
**n.1**; **538**,**n.1**; **541**,**n.2** and **3**; **542**,**n.1**; **545**,  
**n.1**; **548**,**n.3**; **563**,**n.2**; **566**,**n.1**; **561**,**r.2**;  
**604**,**r.2**; **616**,**l,n.1** and **2**; **626**,**n.1**; **636**,  
**n.1**.
- SENECA—**374**,**n.3**; **616**,**l,n.2**; **635**,**n.2**.
- SENECA RHETOR—**445**,**n**.
- SUETONIUS—**349**,**R.5**; **407**,**n.2,c**; **416**,**22**;  
**513**,**n.1**; **542**,**r.**; **546**,**n.3**; **577**,**n.5**; **603**,  
**n.4**; **665**,**n.2**.
- TACITUS—**206**,**2,n.2**; **209**,**n.3**; **211**,**r.1**, Ex.  
**a,N.**; **234**,**n.1**; **238**,**Ex.3** and **n.2**; **246**,**n**.
- THE HISTORIANS—**209**,**n.5**; **211**,**r.1**, Ex.  
**b**; **214**,**r.2**; **303**,**r.1**; **308**,**n.1**; **346**,**n.2**; **374**,  
**n.3**; **383**,**l,n.2** and **3**; **390**,**2,r.4**; **411**,  
**r.2**; **417**,**3**; **421**,**n.1,c**; **422**,**n.4**; **442**,**n.3**;  
**443**,**n.1**; **458**,**n.3**; **477**,**n.5**; **480**,**n.2**; **482**,  
**1,n.1** and **2**; **486**,**n.3**; **525**,**l,n.1**; **542**,  
**n.1**; **548**,**n.3**; **563**,**n.2**; **561**,**r.2**; **644**,**n.2**.
- VITRUVIUS—**253**,**n.1**; **386**,**n**; **416**,**5** and **25**,  
**418**,**3**; **439**,**n.3**; **536**,**n.1**; **548**,**n.2**; **571**,  
**n.4**.

- 1 and 2; 338, n.1 and 2; 346, n.6; 350, n.; 351, n.1; 352, n.; 354, n.2; 358; 361, n.1; 362, n.1; 373, r.1; 374, n.1, 3, 6, 8, and 10; 375; 383, l, n.1; 385, n.1; 386, n.; 390, 3, n.1 and 2; 391, n.; 394, 3, n.1; 396, n.1 and 3; 397, n.2; 401, n.4 and 6; 404, n.1; 407, n.2, e; 413, r.1 and 3, and n.1; 416, 14, and 20; 417, 5, 12, and 24; 418, 3 and 4; 421, n.1; 427, n.5; 428, n.2 and 3; 435, n.1; 436, n.1 and 3; 437, n.1; 439, n.2; 440, r.1; 446, n.2; 449, n.3; 454, n.3; 457, l, n.3; 460, 2, n.2; 467, n.; 476, n.2, 3, and 5; 477, n.4; 482, 3; 488, n.1 and 2; 495, n.2; 496, n.1; 498, n.1 and 5; 502, n.1; 525, n.7; 527, n.2; 532, n.1 and 6; 535, r.3; 536, n.2; 538, n.5; 546, r.2 and n.3; 552, r.2; 591, n.2; 604, r.2; 617, n.; 631, 2, n.1; 683
- THE COMIC POETS—211, l.1, Ex. a, n.; 228, n.1; 242, n.2; 243; 244, n.1; 247, n.2; 263, 2, n.; 267, n.; 269; 280, 2, n.; 346, n.1; 351, n.1; 406, n.2; 416, 4; 443, n.4; 453, n.1 and 2; 467, n.; 468, n.; 477, n.3; 553, 1; 617, n.2.
- LATER PROSE—211, l.1, Ex. a, n.; 217, n.1 and 2; 221, r.2; 269; 361, n.1; 372, n.3; 374, n.1 and 3; 375; 386, n.; 390, 2, n.3; 404, n.1; 413, n.1; 415; 416, 20, 23, 25, and 27; 417, 5; 427, n.5; 428, n.1, 2, and 3; 449, r.3; 460, l, n.4; 467, n.; 476, n.5; 477, n.4; 523, r.2 and n.4; 535, r.3; 538, n.5; 546, r.2; 555, 2, n.; 568, n.1.
- ANTECLASSICAL LATIN—211, n.1 and 2; 220, n.2; 221, r.2; 248, n.1; 254, n.2; 257, n.1; 260; 261, n.2; 271, l, n.1 and 2, and 2, n.1 and 2; 272, 3, n.; 280, 2, a, r.3; 293, n.; 296, n.1; 301; 303; 309, n.2; 319, n.1; 330, n.2; 339, n.1; 341, n.2; 346, n.3; 347, r.1; 350, l, n.1; 373, r.1; 374, n.4; 375, n.2; 383, l, n.2; 385, n.2; 390, 2, l, 1; 390, n.3; 391, r.2 and n.; 395, n.2; 397, n.2; 399, n.1; 403, n.3; 407, n.2; 408, n.6; 410, n.1, 4, and 5; 413, r.1; 416, 10, 12, 16, 23, 24, and 27; 417, 2, 9, and 10; 421, n.1; 422, n.2 and 4; 423, n.2 and 3; 427, n.2; 428, n.1; 430, n.1; 432, n.1; 433, n.2; 436, n.1 and 4; 437, n.2; 439, n.3; 442, n.3; 443, n.1 and 4; 444, l, n.2; 454, n.1 and 5; 456, n.; 457, l, n.1, 2, and 3, and 2, n.; 459, n.2; 475, n.1, 1; 476, n.1, 2, and 5; 479, n.1; 480, n.1; 482, l, n.1, and 5, n.1; 487, n.2; 488, n.1; 495, n.1; 498, n.5, 6, and 7; 500; 503; 513, n.1; 525, l, n.2, 6, and 7, and 2, n.2, and 3; 527, r.3; 528, n.1; 536, n.1; 537, n.2; 541, n.5; 542, r. and n.2; 546, n.3; 549, n.4; 550, n.1 and 2; 553, 3, n.; 557, r.; 563, n.1, 2, and 5; 564, n.1; 571, n.2, 3, and 5; 574, n.; 576, n.1; 577, n.1; 580, n.3; 591, r.2 and n.2; 602, n.5; 614, n.; 617, n.1 and 2; 626, n.1 and 2; 627, r.1; 634, n.; 636, n.1; 651, r.1.
- CLASSICAL LATIN—220, n.1; 241, n.1; 260; 263, 2, n.; 269; 270, n.; 282, n.; 286, Ex. 3; 301; 303; 309, n.2; 318, n.2; 320, n.2; 339, n.1 and 4; 342; 343, n.1; 346, n.2; 347, r.1; 348, r.2; 356, r.2; 359, n.4; 363, n.; 374, n.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 9; 381, n.1; 383, l, 1; 386, r.1 and n.1, 2, and 3; 390, 2, n.1, and 2; 391, r.1; 393, r.5; 394, n.1; 398; 399, n.1; 401, n.2 and 6; 403, n.3 and 4; 407, n.2; 408, n.6; 410, n.1, 2, 5 and 6; 413, r.3; 416, 9, 12, 16, 23, and 29; 417, 9 and 11; 421, n.1 and 2; 422, n.4; 423, n.4; 429, l, n.1; 430, n.1; 432, n.1; 437, l, 1; 438, n.; 439, n.3; 442, n.3; 444, l, n.2; 449, r.3; 460, l, n.1, and 2, n.3; 467, n.; 475, n.2; 477, n.8; 479, n.1, 482, 4, n.; 494, n.2 and 8; 499, n.3 and 4; 500, r.; 501, n.; 502, n.1; 503; 511, r.1; 522, l, n.1; 528, r.2, and n.1; 532, n.1, 3, and 4; 535, r.3; 537, n.2; 538, n.2 and 8; 541, n.1 and 2; 545, r.1; 546, n.3; 549, n.1; 556; 571, n.2; 602, n.1; 610, n.1; 631, 3, n.1; 643, n.3; 644, r.3; 651, r.1.
- POST-CLASSICAL LATIN—211, r.2; 239, n.; 241, n.2; 247, n.1; 251, n.2; 254, r.6, and n.2; 257, n.1; 271, 2, n.2; 292, n.; 296, n.1 and 2; 298, n.1; 299, n.2; 301; 308, n.2; 319, n.1; 330, n.4; 333, 2, n.6; 337, n.1 and 2; 338, n.2; 339, n.1 and 3; 346, r.2; 349, r.5; 355, n.; 356, r.3; 362, n.1 and 2; 366, r.2; 374, n.2 and 3; 378, r.4; 380, l, n.2; 390, 3, n.1; 391, n.; 393, r.5; 397, n.2; 398, n.1; 399, n.2; 403, n.4; 405, n.3; 407, n.9; 408, n.6; 410, n.1, 2, 3, and 5; 411, r.1; 415; 416, 7, 10, 12, 14, 16, 17, 18, and 22; 417, 7; 418, 4; 422, n.2, 4, and 5; 423, n.2 and 3; 431, n.1 and 3; 432, n.1; 433; 435, n.1; 436, n.1; 437, n.1; 438, n.; 439, n.2 and 3; 479, n.1 and 2; 480, n.1; 482, l, n.1 and 2, 3, 4, n., and 5, n.1 and 2; 494, n.2; 498, n.1, 3, 6, and 8; 503; 513, n.2; 525, l, n.7, and 2, n.2; 528, r.2; 532, n.1; 541, n.1; 543, n.3; 545, r.1; 546, n.3; 549, n.2; 553, 2, n. and 4, r.2; 557, n.2; 563, n.4 and 5; 573, n.2; 576, n.2; 590, n.1; 595, r.6; 602, n.5; 605, n.; 606, n.1; 616, 2, n.; 625, l, r. and 2, r.; 638, n.1; 669; 677, n.

PARALLEL REFERENCES OF THE OLD AND  
NEW EDITIONS.

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
1-7	1-7	70	64	149, 150	129
8	10	71, 72	65	151	181
9	11	73	66, R. <sup>1</sup> and 2.	152	188
10	12, <sup>1</sup> and 2.	74	67, 68	153	184
11	13	75	69	154	185
12	14	76	70	155	191, R.
13	12, <sup>3</sup>	77	68	156	190
14	15	78	67	157-181	187-102
15	16	79	68	182	167
16	17	80	71	183	168
17	18	81	72	184	169, <sup>1</sup>
18	19	82	73	185	169, <sup>a</sup> , 170
19	20	83	82	186	171
20	21	84	80	187	173
21	23	85, <sup>1-3</sup>	82	188	173
22	24, <sup>3</sup>	85, <sup>4</sup>	83, N. <sup>1</sup> and 2.	189	174
23	24, <sup>1</sup>	86	86	190	175
24	25	87	89	191	180, 181
25	26	88	87	192	201
26, <sup>1</sup>	26, R.	89	90	193	202
26, <sup>2</sup>	28	90	91	194	203
27	29	90, <sup>1</sup>	91, b	194, R. <sup>2</sup>	201, R. <sup>2</sup>
28	30	90, <sup>2</sup>	92, <sup>1</sup>	195	204
29	31, 33	90, <sup>3</sup>	91, 2, c	196	205
30	34	90, <sup>4</sup>	91, 1, c	197	206
31	31, 33	91	93	198	207
32	32, <sup>2</sup> , 74	92	95	199	208
33, 34	73	93	94	200	209
35	75	94	96	201	210
36, 37	35	95	97	202	211
36, 39	36	96	98	203	212
40	39	97	99	204	213
41	40	98	100	205	214
42	41	99	101	206	215
43	42	100	102	207	216
44	43	101	103	208	217
45	44	102	104	209	218
46, R.	44, N.	103	105	210	219
46	44, <sup>2</sup>	104	106	211	220
47	45	105	107	212	221
48	47	106	109	213	222
49	48	107	110	214	223
50	49	108	111	215	224
51	50	109	112, 1-4	216	225
52	51	110	112, <sup>5</sup>	217	226
53	52	111	114	218	227
54	52, <sup>6</sup>	112	116	219	228
54, R.	54	113	117	220	229
55	53, 1-6	114	118	221	230
56	53, 7, and 8	115	119	222	231
57	55	116-118	120	223	232
58, 59	56	119-122	123	224	233
60	57	123-126	128	225, 226	234
61	58	127, 129, 130	124	227	235
62	59	128	135, I. <sup>a</sup>	228	236
63-66	60	131-134	125	229	237
67	61	135-136	127	230	238
68	63	139, 140	126	231	239
69	68	141-148	128	232	240

## PARALLEL REFERENCES.

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
233	241	301	314	367	368
234	242	302	314	368	370
235	243	303	316	369	371
236	244	304	317	370	372
237	245	305	318	371	369
238	246	306	319	372	373
239	247	307	320	373	374
240	248	308	320	374	375
241	249	309	324	375	376
242	250	310	325	376	377
243	251	311	326	377	378
244	252	312	327	378	379
245	253	313	328	379	380, <sup>1</sup>
246	254	314	329	380	380, <sup>2</sup>
247	255	315	300	381, 382	381, 382
248	256, <sup>1</sup>	316	302	383	384
249	256, <sup>2</sup>	317	308	384	385
250	257	318	320	385	387
251	259	319	321	386	388
252	258	320	322	387	389
252, R. 1 and 3	257, N. 2 and 8	321	323	388	390
		322	349, R. 5	389	405
		323	324	390	406
253	260	324	325	391	392
254	261	325	326	392	393
255	262	326	327	393	394
256	263	327	328	394	omitted
257	264	328	329	395, 396	395, 396
258	265	329	330	397, 398	397, 402
259	266	330	331	399	398
260	267	331	331	400	403
261	268, <sup>1</sup>	332	332, 333, <sup>2</sup>	401	403
262	268, <sup>2</sup>	333, R. 2	333, <sup>1</sup>	402	400
263	270	333, R. 3	334	403	401
264	271	333, R. 4	333, 2, N. 4	404	404
265	272, <sup>1</sup>	334	338	405	407
266	272, <sup>2</sup>	335	339	406	406, N. 7
266, R. 3	272, <sup>3</sup>	336	340	407	406
267	263, 2, 4	335	335	408	409
268	273	336	335, R. 1	409	410
269	275	337	336	410	410
270	276	338	336, R. 4	410	337
271	277	339	343	411	391
272	278	340	343, <sup>1</sup>	412	396, 411
273	279	341	343, <sup>2</sup>	413	412
274	280, <sup>1</sup>	342	omitted	414	413
275	280, <sup>2</sup>	343	344	415	413, R. 2 and 3
276	281	344, R. 2	350, <sup>1</sup>	416	414
277	281, <sup>1</sup> and 2	344	345	416, R.	415
278	282	344, R. 3	358	417	416
279	283	345	346	418	417
280	284	346	347	419	418
281	285	347	346, N. 2	420	419
282	286	348	348	421	420
283	287	349	349	422	421
284	288	350	356	423	422
285	289	351	351	424	423
286	290	352	354	425	424
287	291, <sup>1</sup>	353	355	426	425
288	291, <sup>2</sup>	354	353	427	426
289	omitted	355	357	428	427
290	305	356	359	429	428
291	300	357	360, <sup>1</sup>	430	429
292	307	358	360, <sup>2</sup>	431	430
293	308	359	361	432	431
294	309	360	362	433	432
295	309, 1 and 2	361	363	434	433
296	310	362	364, 2 ; 364, N. 2	435	434
297	311, <sup>1</sup>	363	364	436	435
298	311, <sup>2</sup>	364	365	437	436
299	312	365	366	438	437
300	313	366	367	439	438

## PARALLEL REFERENCES.

49

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
440	439	509	508	615	613
441	440	510-518	510-518	616	614
442	441	518, Ex.	518	617	615
443, <sup>1</sup>	443	519-549	519-549	618	616
443, <sup>2</sup>	443	560	564	618,R.	616,1,N. <sup>2</sup>
444	445	551	556	619	617
445	446	552	550	620	618
446	447	553	551	621	619
447	448	554	552	622	620
448	449	555	553	623	621
449	444, <sup>1</sup>	556	552	624	622
450	444, <sup>2</sup>	557	558, <sup>1</sup>	625	624
451	450	558	558, <sup>3</sup> and 4	626	624
452	451	559	557	627	626
453	452, <sup>1</sup>	560	558	628	625, <sup>2</sup>
454	452, <sup>2</sup>	561	559	629	627
455	453	562	560	630	629
456	454	563	561	631	629
457	455	564	562	632	630
458	456	565	563, <sup>1</sup>	633	631, <sup>1</sup>
459	457, <sup>1</sup>	566	563, <sup>2</sup>	634	631, <sup>2</sup>
459,R.	457, <sup>2</sup>	567	564	635	632
460	458	568	566	636	633
461	459	569	567	637	634
462	460	570	568	638	635
463	461	571	569	639	636
464	462	572	570	640	637
465	463	573	571	641	638
466	464	574	572	642	639
467	465	575	573	643	640
468	466	576	574	644	641
469	467	577	575	645	642
470	468	578	576	646	643
471	469	579	577	647	644
472	470	580	578	648	645
473	471	581	579	649	646
474	472	581,R.	581	650	647
475	473	582	580	651	648
476	474	583	582	652	649
477	475	584	583	653	650
478	476	585	584	654	651
479	477	586	585	655	652
480	478	587	586	656	653
481	479	588	587	657	654
482	480	589	588	658	655
483	481	590	589	659	656
484	482	591	590	660	657
485	483	592	591	661	658
486	484	593	592	662	659
487	485	594	593	663	660
488	486	595	590,N. <sup>1</sup>	664	661
489	487	596	594	665	662
490	489	597	595	666	663, <sup>1</sup>
491	490	598	596, <sup>1</sup>	666,R. <sup>1</sup>	663, <sup>2</sup>
492	491	599,R. <sup>3</sup>	596, <sup>2</sup> ; 597,R. <sup>3</sup>	667	664
493	492	600	598	668	665
494	493	601	599	669	666
495	494	602	600	670	667
496	495	603	601	671	668
497	496	604	602	672	669
498	496, <sup>1</sup>	604	602	673	670
499	496, <sup>2</sup>	605	603	674	671
500	498	606	604	675	672
501	499	607	605	676	674
502	500	608	606	677	675
503	501	609	607	678	676
504	502	610	608	679	677
505	504	611	609	680	678
506	505	612	610	681	679
507	506	613	611	682	680
508	507	614	612	683	681

## PARALLEL REFERENCES.

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
684	682	724	730	761	784
685	684	725	731	762	785
686	685	726	732	763	777, 780, 781
687	omitted	727	733	764	790-793
688-692	686-692	728	734	765	794-796
693	696	729	736, 739	766	797
694	697	730	736	767	798
695	698	731	737	768	799
696	699	732	738	769	800
697	700	733	740	770	801-805
698	701	734	741	771	806-814
699	702	735	742	772	815
700	703	736	743	773	822, 823, 828, 829
701	704	737	744	774	818
702	705	738	745	775	820
703	706	739	746	776	821
704	707	740	748	777	826
705	708	741	749	778	826
706	709	742	750	779	827
707	710	743	752	780	176
708	711	744	753	781	177
709	712	745	754	782	178
710	713	746	758	783	179
711	714	747	774, 778, 779, 791	784	180
712	715	748	769	785, 786	184-189
713	718	749	770	787	191
714	719, 720	750, 731	737	788	192
715	721	752	768	789	198
716	722	753	768	790	194, 195
717	723	754	760-762	791	194, N.
718	724	755	764	792	199
719	725	756	758	793, 794	900
720	726	757	759	795	196
721	727	758	788	796	197, 2 ; 198
722	703, a, 3	759	789	797	197, 1
723	729	760	786, 787, 788		











